

# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PREPARATION, SUBMISSION, AND EXECUTION OF THE BUDGET**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20503

November 14, 2003

MEMORANDUM FOR USERS OF OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-11

FROM: Art Stigile  
Chief, Budget Concepts Branch

SUBJECT: Revisions to OMB Circular No. A-11 dated July 2003

We have updated the electronic version of OMB Circular No. A-11 to reflect several changes and clarifications. The updated Circular is available for viewing or downloading at the following Internet address:

<http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/index.html>

Paper copies of the updated pages will not be issued.

The revised guidance:

- Clarifies the treatment of reductions affecting spending authority from offsetting collections (sections **20.3**, **20.4**, and **82.8**).
- Adds two memorandum lines to MAX schedule P for reporting investments by the Railroad Retirement Board in non-Federal securities (**section 82.7**).
- Clarifies the types of expenses that are not considered administrative and may therefore be deducted from proceeds of sales, rather than paid from the credit program account (**section 185.3(a)**).
- Indicates that subsidy rates for direct loans and loan guarantees should now be entered into MAX using decimal points (section **185.10(c)**).
- Adds a line numbering scheme in schedule P for financing accounts similar to that for program accounts (section **185.11(a)**).
- Updates the MAX edit checks (**Appendix D**).



THE DIRECTOR

EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET  
WASHINGTON, D. C. 20503

July 25, 2003

CIRCULAR NO. A-11  
Revised  
Transmittal Memorandum No. 77

TO THE HEADS OF EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENTS AND ESTABLISHMENTS

SUBJECT: Preparing, Submitting, and Executing the Budget

OMB Circular No. A-11 provides guidance on preparing the FY 2005 Budget submission and includes instructions on budget execution.

For the FY 2005 Budget, agencies will prepare a performance budget that can be used for the annual performance plan required by the Government Performance and Results Act. The performance budget will be integrated with other elements of the agency budget request to OMB in September and the agency Congressional justification in February. The performance budget will include information from the PART assessments, where available, and all performance goals used in the assessment of program performance done under the PART process.

This year, we continued our ongoing review of reporting requirements and simplified and reduced those requirements, where appropriate. The Circular also now contains electronic links to the instructions for certain essential data collections that are not specifically required for preparation of the President's budget. The links will be maintained by the respective "owners" of the requirements and will be updated as necessary.

This Circular supersedes all previous versions. The summary of changes highlights the substantive changes made since last year.

Your proposals should reflect the policies of the President, including the government-wide initiatives and agency-specific management reform proposals identified in the President's Management Agenda. Your proposals should also be consistent with guidance provided by OMB, including that contained in OMB spring guidance memoranda.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "J. Bolten", with a long horizontal stroke extending to the right.

Joshua B. Bolten  
Director

Attachment



**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Guide to the Circular</b> .....		<b>xvii</b>
<b>Summary of Changes</b> .....		<b>xxi</b>
<b>PART 1—GENERAL INFORMATION</b>		
<b>Section 10—Overview of the budget process</b>		
What is the budget? .....	10.1	10–1
Why prepare a budget? .....	10.2	10–2
What kinds of information does the budget provide?.....	10.3	10–2
Which agencies does the budget cover? .....	10.4	10–2
What happens during the Federal budget process and when? .....	10.5	10–3
What is the Mid-Session Review? .....	10.6	10–5
What are the central financial agencies? .....	10.7	10–6
What are the responsibilities and functions of OMB? .....	10.8	10–6
What are the responsibilities and functions of the Treasury? .....	10.9	10–6
What are the responsibilities and functions of CBO? .....	10.10	10–7
What are the responsibilities and functions of GAO? .....	10.11	10–7
Do OMB, CBO, FMS, and GAO have any overlapping responsibilities? .....	10.12	10–7
<b>Section 15—Basic budget laws</b>		
What laws govern the budget cycle? .....	15.1	15–1
Why is the Budget and Accounting Act important? .....	15.2	15–1
How does Congress enact the Budget and what laws govern the process? .....	15.3	15–2
What laws govern the budget execution process when funds are actually spent? .....	15.4	15–3
What does the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993 require?...	15.5	15–3
What do I need to know about the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990? .....	15.6	15–4
<b>Section 20—Terms and concepts</b>		
What is the purpose of this section? .....	20.1	20–2
How do I use this section?.....	20.2	20–2
What special terms must I know?.....	20.3	20–2
What do I need to know about budget authority?.....	20.4	20–9
When should I record obligations and in what amounts?.....	20.5	20–18
What do I need to know about outlays? .....	20.6	20–22
What do I need to know about receipts, offsetting collections, and offsetting receipts? .....	20.7	20–24
What do I need to know about cash-equivalent transactions? .....	20.8	20–31
What do I need to know about discretionary spending, mandatory spending, and PAYGO? .....	20.9	20–32
What do I need to know about refunds? .....	20–10	20–35
What do I need to know about accounts and fund types?.....	20–11	20–36
What do I need to know about spending authority from offsetting collections?.....	20.12	20–41
Transfers of budgetary resources among Federal government accounts .....	Ex–20	20–44

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Section 22—Communications with Congress and the public and clearance requirements</b>		
Confidentiality of budget deliberations .....	22.1	22–1
Congressional testimony and communications .....	22.2	22–1
Clearance of materials for Congress and the media .....	22.3	22–2
Clearance of changes to the President’s budget .....	22.4	22–3
Information available to the public.....	22.5	22–3
Additional material to be included in congressional budget justifications.....	22.6	22–4
<b>PART 2—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF BUDGET ESTIMATES</b>		
<b>I. GENERAL POLICIES AND REQUIREMENTS RELATED TO DEVELOPING ESTIMATES AND PROPOSALS</b>		
<b>Section 25—Summary of requirements</b>		
Does Part 2 apply to me?.....	25.1	25–1
How do I get an exception from the requirements in Part 2? .....	25.2	25–2
For what items do I need advance approval? .....	25.3	25–2
When do I submit information to OMB?.....	25.4	25–2
What do I include in the initial submission? .....	25.5	25–3
What do I submit after passback?.....	25.6	25–4
<b>Section 26—Summary of performance information requirements</b>		
What do I need to know about preparing a strategic plan?.....	26.1	26-1
Where can I find information about the President’s Management Agenda? ...	26.2	26-1
What do I need to know about Performance Budgeting and the Budget and Performance Integration initiative? .....	26.3	26-2
<b>Section 30—Basic policies and assumptions</b>		
What should be the basis for my proposals? .....	30.1	30–1
What is the scope of the policy estimates? .....	30.2	30–1
What economic assumptions should I use when I develop estimates? .....	30.3	30–2
What assumptions should I make about growth in agency workload? .....	30.4	30–3
How do I develop unit cost information? .....	30.5	30–3
<b>Section 31—Compliance with administration policies and other general requirements</b>		
Advance appropriations.....	31.1	31–1
Environmental management.....	31.2	31–1
Equal opportunity .....	31.3	31–1
Full funding.....	31.4	31–2
Government perquisites.....	31.5	31–2
MAX electronic network.....	31.6	31–2
Multi-year appropriations.....	31.7	31–3
Management improvement initiatives and policies .....	31.8	31–3
Performance of commercial activities .....	31.9	31–4
User charges .....	31.10	31–4
Workforce planning and restructuring.....	31.11	31–5

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Section 32—Estimating employment levels, compensation, benefits, and related costs</b>		
What terms do I need to know? .....	32.1	32–1
What should be the basis for my personnel estimates? .....	32.2	32–2
What do I need to know about FTE budgeted levels? .....	32.3	32–4
How does OMB validate prior year civilian FTE totals (actuals)? .....	32.4	32–5
How do I account for active duty military personnel? .....	32.5	32–5
How do I treat agency benefit payments under the Federal Employee Compensation Act? .....	32.6	32–6
How do I reflect the effects of pay raises? .....	32.7	32–6
How do I budget for unemployment compensation? .....	32.8	32–6
How do I benefit for personnel benefit? .....	32.9	32–6
How do I budget for uniformed services health care? .....	32.10	32–7
<b>Section 33—Estimates related to specific types of programs and expenditures</b>		
Construction, leases of capital assets, and acquisition of real property .....	33.1	33–1
Hospital costs .....	33.2	33–2
Advisory committees and interagency groups .....	33.3	33–3
Radio spectrum-dependent communications-electronics systems .....	33.4	33–3
Taxes and tax expenditures .....	33.5	33–3
Miscellaneous policies and requirements .....	33.6	33–4
<b>II. THE INITIAL BUDGET SUBMISSION</b>		
<b>Section 51—Basic justification materials</b>		
Summary and highlight statement .....	51.1	51–1
General requirements for justifying programs and financing .....	51.2	51–2
Analysis of resources .....	51.3	51–4
Relationship of justification to account structure .....	51.4	51–5
Agency restructuring or work process redesign .....	51.5	51–6
Information on grant programs and infrastructure investment .....	51.6	51–6
Performance indicators and performance goals .....	51.7	51–6
Other analytical information .....	51.8	51–7
Information on program evaluation .....	51.9	51–8
Explanations relating to supplemental appropriations requests .....	51.10	51–8
Major changes in receipts estimates .....	51.11	51–8
Unobligated balances in liquidating accounts .....	51.12	51–8
<b>Section 52—Information on financial management</b>		
What are the general reporting requirements? .....	52.1	52–1
What other reporting requirements does this fulfill? .....	52.2	52–1
Who must report financial management information? .....	52.3	52–2
What materials are required in the budget justification? .....	52.4	52–2
What is the report on resources for financial management activities (exhibit 52)? .....	52.5	52–3
What are the line descriptions and coding for exhibit 52? .....	52.6	52–3
How do I submit exhibit 52 and when is it due? .....	52.7	52–5
Report on resources for financial management activities .....	Ex-52	52–6
<b>Section 53—Information technology and e-government</b>		
Why must I report on information technology investments? .....	53.1	53–1

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
How do I ensure that IT investments are linked to and support the President's Management Agenda?.....	53.2	53-3
What special terms must I know?.....	53.3	53-7
How do I determine whether I must report?.....	53.4	53-11
How do I submit exhibit 53 and when is it due?.....	53.5	53-11
If I submitted exhibit 53 last year, how do I revise it this year?.....	53.6	53-12
How is exhibit 53 organized?.....	53.7	53-12
How is exhibit 53 coded?.....	53.8	53-16
What are the steps to complete exhibit 53?.....	53.9	53-17
Agency information technology (IT) investment portfolio.....	Ex-53	53-19
<b>Section 54—Rental payments for space and land</b>		
Do I need to report on rental payments?.....	54.1	54-1
What materials must I provide?.....	54.2	54-1
What terms do I need to know?.....	54.3	54-2
How do I prepare the space budget justification?.....	54.4	54-2
What supporting information must I provide?.....	54.5	54-5
Space budget justification.....	Ex-54	54-6
<b>III. MAX DATA AND OTHER MATERIALS REQUIRED AFTER PASSBACK</b>		
<b>Section 71—Reporting by budget account</b>		
At what level of detail do I report MAX data, proposed appropriations language, and narratives?.....	71.1	71-1
How do budget accounts relate to Treasury accounts?.....	71.2	71-1
What do I need to know about changing account and budget structure?.....	71.3	71-2
How do I account for reimbursements?.....	71.4	71-2
How do I account for allocations?.....	71.5	71-2
When should I merge accounts?.....	71.6	71-2
When should I consolidate accounts?.....	71.7	71-3
What do I need to know about accounting adjustments under 31 U.S.C. 1534?.....	71.8	71-3
<b>Section 79—The budget data system</b>		
What is the MAX system?.....	79.1	79-1
What should I know about account identification codes?.....	79.2	79-2
How do I establish new accounts?.....	79.3	79-4
How do I report data in MAX?.....	79.4	79-6
What are MAX schedules?.....	79.5	79-6
MAX A-11 technical requirements for FY 2005 Budget.....	Ex-79A	79-10
Functional classification.....	Ex-79B	79-11
<b>Section 80—Development of baseline estimates</b>		
What are the basic requirements?.....	80.1	80-1
What general rules do I need to know?.....	80.2	80-1
What rules apply to discretionary spending and collections?.....	80.3	80-2
What rules apply to direct spending programs?.....	80.4	80-4
What rules apply to mandatory collections?.....	80.5	80-4
What rules apply to mandatory supplemental requests?.....	80.6	80-5
What rules apply to discretionary limitations on obligations?.....	80.7	80-5
What materials must I provide in support of baseline estimates?.....	80.8	80-5



<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Section 81—Policy and baseline estimates of budget authority, outlays, and receipts (schedules A, S, R, and K)</b>		
What are the basic requirements? .....	81.1	81–1
What information is automatically calculated? .....	81.2	81–2
What data classifications do I use to report the data? .....	81.3	81–3
What line codes do I use for schedules A, S, R, and K? .....	81.4	81–9
Relationships between schedules A, K, P, R, and S .....	Ex–81A	81–14
Setting up outlay calculations .....	Ex–81B	81–15
Setting up outlay calculations—resource with multiple outlay rates .....	Ex–81C	81–16
Automatic generation of discretionary outlays in schedule A .....	Ex–81D	81–17
<b>Section 82—Program and financing (schedule P)</b>		
What is the purpose of the program and financing schedule and how is it organized? .....	82.1	82–2
How do I report obligations? .....	82.2	82–2
How do I report the budgetary resources available for obligation? .....	82.3	82–6
How do I report obligated balances? .....	82.4	82–18
How do I report outlays? .....	82.5	82–20
How do I show net budget authority and outlays? .....	82.6	82–20
What additional information must I report on schedule P? .....	82.7	82–22
How do I present enacted rescissions and reductions of budget authority? .....	82.8	82–24
How do I present rescission proposals? .....	82.9	82–25
How do I present supplemental appropriations requests and items proposed for later transmittal? .....	82.10	82–25
How do I present transfers of resources? .....	82.11	82–26
How do I present transfers in the estimates? .....	82.12	82–26
How do I present merged accounts and consolidated schedules? .....	82.13	82–27
How should I treat allocation accounts? .....	82.14	82–27
Do the actuals I report in the P&F need to tie to the actuals I reported to Treasury? .....	82.15	82–28
Automatic generation of MAX schedule P data .....	Ex–82	82–32
<b>Section 83—Object classification (MAX schedule O)</b>		
What are object classes? .....	83.1	83–1
Why must I report object class information? .....	83.2	83–2
How do object classes compare to functional and character classes and program activity? .....	83.3	83–2
How does the object class schedule relate to the program and financing schedule? .....	83.4	83–2
How can I determine whether an obligation should be classified as direct or reimbursable? .....	83.5	83–3
How should I report obligations that are covered by statutory limitations? .....	83.6	83–4
What object class codes and definitions should I use? .....	83.7	83–4
What object classes are associated with civilian and military pay in the baseline? .....	83.8	83–21
How do I classify relocation expenses related to a permanent change of station (PCS)? .....	83.9	83–21
How do I classify purchases related to information technology (IT)? .....	83.10	83–22
How do I classify obligations for education and training? .....	83.11	83–23
How do I classify obligations for real property (space, land, and structures)? .....	83.12	83–23
How do I classify obligations for Federal civilian retirement under CSRS? .....	83.13	83–24
How do I classify obligations for military retirement? .....	83.14	83–25

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
How do I classify intragovernmental transactions? .....	83.15	83–26
How do I classify obligations under the Intergovernmental Personnel Act (IPA)? .....	83.16	83–27
How is object class information presented in MAX schedule O and the Appendix? .....	83.17	83–28
When I report data in MAX schedule O will it generate subtotals or totals? ..	83.18	83–29
Summary of object class codes and standard titles (MAX schedule O) .....	Ex–83A	83–31
Object classification—without allocation accounts.....	Ex–83B	83–32
Object classification—with allocation accounts.....	Ex–83C	83–33
<b>Section 84—Character classification (schedule C)</b>		
What is the purpose of the character classification system?.....	84.1	84–1
What terms do I need to know? .....	84.2	84–1
What do I need to know about reporting the data and relationships with other data requirements? .....	84.3	84–3
How do I report character classification in MAX?.....	84.4	84–5
Summary of character classification codes (schedule C) .....	Ex–84	84–11
<b>Section 85—Performance metrics (schedule V)</b>		
What do I need to know about the performance metrics schedule?.....	85.1	85–1
How does the performance metrics schedule relate to the P&F? .....	85.2	85–2
How does the line numbering work for the performance metrics schedule?...	85.3	85–2
What would an example of this schedule look like? .....	85.4	85–3
<b>Section 86—Other MAX data</b>		
What do I need to know about the personnel summary (schedule Q)?.....	86.1	86–1
What do I need to know about balance sheets (schedules F).....	86.2	86–2
What do I need to know about budget plans (schedule D)? .....	86.3	86–10
What do I need to know about reporting budget year appropriations requests in thousands of dollars (schedule T)? .....	86.4	86–10
What do I need to know about the schedule on the status of funds (schedule J)?	86.5	86–11
What do I need to know about the schedule on unavailable receipts (schedule N)?.....	86.6	86–16
What do I need to know about the summary of budget authority and outlays?	86.7	86–18
Balance sheet (MAX schedule F).....	Ex–86A	86–19
Budget year appropriations request in thousands of dollars (MAX schedule T)	Ex–86B	86–20
<b>Section 95—Budget Appendix and print materials</b>		
What is the budget <i>Appendix</i> ? .....	95.1	95–1
How is the <i>Appendix</i> organized? .....	95.2	95–1
How is the "Detailed Budget Estimates" section organized? .....	95.3	95–2
What is the process for getting print materials published in the Appendix ....	95.4	95–5
What do I need to know about revising appropriations language?.....	95.5	95–5
What supporting statutory references must I provide? .....	95.6	95–6
What are the special appropriations language requirements for credit programs? .....	95.7	95–6
What are the special language requirements for programs that disburse over a period longer than five fiscal years?.....	95.8	95–7
How do I prepare narrative statements? .....	95.9	95–7
What should narrative statements say about performance goals and indicators?	95.10	95–8
Are there any special requirements for narrative statements? .....	95.11	95–8
What do I need to know about footnotes and tables? .....	95.12	95–10
Revising appropriations language and narrative statements .....	Ex–95A	95–12

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Revising general provisions .....	Ex-95B	95-13
<b>PART 3—SELECTED ACTIONS FOLLOWING TRANSMITTAL OF THE BUDGET</b>		
<b>Section 110—Supplementals and amendments</b>		
How does the President propose changes in the budget in between his annual transmittals of the budget? .....	110.1	110-1
What are supplementals and amendments? .....	110.2	110-2
What do I need to send to OMB? .....	110.3	110-2
Supplemental requests—appropriations language.....	Ex-110A	110-4
Budget amendments—appropriations language.....	Ex-110B	110-6
<b>Section 111—Releases of contingent emergency funding</b>		
What are releases of contingent emergency funding? .....	111.1	111-1
How do I request a release? .....	111.2	111-1
Releasing contingent emergency funding.....	Ex-111	111-2
<b>Section 112—Rescission proposals and deferrals</b>		
What do I need to know about rescission proposals and deferrals (impoundments)?.....	112.1	112-2
What is an impoundment? .....	112.2	112-2
When are funds deferred or proposed for rescission withheld from obligation? .....	112.3	112-2
What materials are sent to Congress? .....	112.4	112-2
When do I need to submit material to OMB?.....	112.5	112-3
What materials do I submit for inclusion in a special message for a rescission proposal? .....	112.6	112-3
What materials do I submit for inclusion in a special message for a deferral? .....	112.7	112-4
What narrative information do I need to include with rescission or deferral reports? .....	112.8	112-4
What am I required to do when a previously reported deferral or rescission proposal changes? .....	112.9	112-5
What information is required for the supplementary report? .....	112.10	112-5
What are the responsibilities of OMB in preparing special messages? .....	112.11	112-6
What should I do to help OMB prepare cumulative reports? .....	112.12	112-6
What are my responsibilities after a deferral is reported to Congress? .....	112.13	112-6
What apportionment action is required when a rescission is enacted? .....	112.14	112-6
What apportionment action is required when a rescission is <i>not</i> enacted? .....	112.15	112-7
What apportionment action is required when a deferral is disapproved? .....	112.16	112-7
How do I treat proposals to lower limitations on trust or revolving funds? ....	112.17	112-7
What do I include on the different lines of the rescission, deferral, and supplementary reports? .....	112.18	112-8
How do I reflect the deferral or the proposed rescission on the SF132? .....	112.19	112-10
Rescission report—sample rescission proposal.....	Ex-112A	112-12
Apportionment or reapportionment request for rescission proposal reported in exhibit 112A.....	Ex-112B	112-13
Deferral report.....	Ex-112C	112-14
Apportionment or reapportionment request for deferral reported in exhibit 112C.....	Ex-112D	112-15
Revised deferral report—revision of deferral reported in exhibit 112C.....	Ex-112E	112-16
Apportionment or reapportionment request for revised deferral reported in exhibit 112E.....	Ex-112F	112-18
Apportionment or reapportionment request for deferral reported in exhibits 112C-F overturned by Congress.....	Ex-112G	112-19
Apportionment or reapportionment request for congressionally-initiated		

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
deferral for account illustrated in exhibit 112C.....	Ex-112H	112-20
<b>Section 113—Investment transactions</b>		
How do I record investment in securities, disinvestment, and earnings? .....	113.1	113-1
How do I treat an investment in a Federal security on an SF 133? .....	113.2	113-7
How do I treat the redemption of a Federal security on an SF 133? .....	113.3	113-7
How do I treat investments in securities issued by non-Federal entities on an SF 133?.....	113.4	113-8
Investment in Federal securities at a discount.....	Ex-113A	113-9
Investment in Federal securities at a premium—general fund appropriation or revolving fund accounts .....	Ex-113B	113-10
Federal security purchased at a discount and sold or redeemed at par—general fund appropriation or revolving fund accounts .....	Ex-113C	113-11
Federal security purchased at a discount and sold or redeemed at par—special or trust fund accounts (excluding trust revolving funds).....	Ex-113D	113-12

## PART 4—INSTRUCTIONS ON BUDGET EXECUTION

### I. APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENTS

#### Section 120—Apportionment/reapportionment process

What is an apportionment?.....	120.1	120-2
What are the purposes of the apportionment process? .....	120.2	120-3
Are apportionments made at the Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS) level, and what is a TAFS?.....	120.3	120-4
What types of resources are apportioned by OMB?.....	120.4	120-4
Are all apportionments based on the authority to incur obligations? .....	120.5	120-4
What TAFSs are apportioned? .....	120.6	120-4
What TAFSs are <i>not</i> apportioned? .....	120.7	120-5
What categories does OMB use to apportion funds?.....	120.8	120-5
Will OMB apportion funds for periods longer than one fiscal year? .....	120.9	120-5
How do I display funds that are <i>not</i> currently needed? .....	120.10	120-6
How do I request changes in the level or time periods of an apportionment? Do unobligated resources apportioned in earlier time periods of the same fiscal year remain available? .....	120.11	120-6
Must I request that funds apportioned in one fiscal year be apportioned in the next fiscal year if the funds were <i>not</i> obligated and remain available? ....	120.12	120-6
What is the status of previously approved apportionments when a new apportionment is approved, either in the same or a subsequent fiscal year? .....	120.13	120-6
What is the status of an apportionment that has been approved before the beginning of a fiscal year for a program covered by a continuing resolution? .....	120.14	120-7
What transactions will be covered by apportionments approved after a continuing resolution has been replaced by an enacted appropriation?....	120.15	120-7
Can I use an apportionment to resolve legal issues about the availability of funds? .....	120.16	120-7
How does OMB indicate its approval or disapproval of comments on the apportionment?.....	120.17	120-7
Who is responsible for preparing the apportionment request for allocation (transfer appropriation) accounts? .....	120.18	120-7
Must I include a footnote regarding the one percent apportionment requirement to cover obligations in the canceled phase? .....	120.19	120-7
Why must I base my apportionment/reapportionment requests on financial	120.20	120-8

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
plans? .....	120.21	120-8
Will I show the same level of detail in my financial plan from year-to-year? .....	120.22	120-8
Do I need to explain how I developed my financial plan? .....	120.23	120-8
What supporting data should I include with the apportionment request? .....	120.24	120-8
Will OMB request FTE plans to support the apportionment request? .....	120.25	120-8
What format is used for the apportionment request? .....	120.26	120-9
Can I combine TAFSS on the apportionment? .....	120.27	120-9
Will comments and attachments become part of the apportionment? .....	120.28	120-9
When are initial apportionments due at OMB? .....	120.29	120-9
Who can sign the apportionment request? .....	120.30	120-10
How many copies should I submit? .....	120.31	120-10
Should I assemble apportionment requests for multiple TAFSS in a single package? .....	120.32	120-10
How can I expedite OMB approval of my apportionment request? .....	120.33	120-10
How will OMB indicate its approval of my apportionment request? .....	120.34	120-10
What program changes will require that I submit a reapportionment request to OMB? .....	120.35	120-11
What adjustments can I make without submitting a reapportionment request? .....	120.36	120-11
How do I treat automatic adjustments on subsequent reapportionment requests? .....	120.37	120-12
When do I submit requests anticipating the need for supplemental authority? .....	120.38	120-12
How do I apportion foreign currency fund (FT) accounts? .....	120.39	120-13
How are funds appropriated to the President distributed to agencies? .....	120.40	120-13
Sample FTE plan .....	Ex-120	120-14
<b>Section 121—SF132, Apportionment and Reapportionment Schedule</b>		
How is the SF 132 organized? .....	121.1	121-2
How do program reporting categories fit into the apportionment process? .....	121.2	121-2
Why does OMB send the names of program reporting categories, category B projects to Treasury for use in FACTS II? .....	121.3	121-3
Can agencies add new program reporting categories or category B projects when reporting their FACTS II data? .....	121.4	121-3
What apportionment formats are available? And what information must I include in these formats? .....	121.5	121-4
Will all apportioned amounts be shown on these two formats? .....	121.6	121-4
How do I complete the excel spreadsheet to prepare the SF 132? .....	121.7	121-5
How do I complete the excel spreadsheet to prepare the letter apportionment? .....	121.8	121-7
What format do I use to show program reporting categories? .....	121.9	121-9
How do I treat extensions of the availability of unobligated balances? .....	121.10	121-11
What amounts should I allot? .....	121.11	121-12
One year appropriation—initial apportionment .....	Ex-121A	121-13
No-year appropriation—initial apportionment .....	Ex-121B	121-14
No-year appropriation—reapportionment .....	Ex-121C	121-15
One-year appropriations under continuing resolution .....	Ex-121D	121-16
Appropriations and unobligated balances under continuing resolution .....	Ex-121E	121-17
Reapportionment following a continuing resolution .....	Ex-121F	121-18
Public enterprise (revolving) or intragovernmental (revolving) fund—reapportionment .....	Ex-121G	121-19
Trust fund limitation .....	Ex-121H	121-20
Negative amount due to reduced unobligated balance .....	Ex-121I	121-21
Multiple-year account—apportionment in two fiscal years .....	Ex-121J	121-22
Trust fund with contract authority, appropriation to liquidate contract authority, and obligation limitation .....	Ex-121K	121-23
Trust fund (or special fund) with collections precluded from obligation .....	Ex-121L	121-24

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
SF132 format.....	Ex-121M	121-25
Letter apportionment format.....	Ex-121N	121-26
Program reporting categories format.....	Ex-121O	121-27
<b>Section 123—Apportionments under continuing resolutions</b>		
What is a continuing resolution? .....	123.1	123-1
How do I determine the amount available for obligation under a continuing resolution? .....	123.2	123-1
Do the amounts made available for obligation remain available after a continuing resolution expires? .....	123.3	123-2
Does the continuing resolution limit the purposes for which funds may be obligated? .....	123.4	123-2
Am I required to submit an apportionment request while I am funded by a continuing resolution? .....	123.5	123-2
Are my credit programs funded under a continuing resolution? .....	123.6	123-2
Do I need to request a reapportionment after my regular appropriation is enacted?.....	123.7	123-2
Will my regular appropriations cover obligations made during the continuing resolution? .....	123.8	123-3
<b>Section 124—Agency operations in the absence of appropriations</b>		
What types of actions may my agency conduct during a funding hiatus? .....	124.1	124-1
What plans should my agency make in anticipation of a funding hiatus? .....	124.2	124-1
When should my agency's shutdown plans be implemented? .....	124.3	124-2
<b>II. BUDGET EXECUTION REPORTS</b>		
<b>Section 130—SF 133 Report on budget execution and budgetary resources</b>		
What is the purpose of the SF 133 and how is it organized?.....	130.1	130-1
What are the general requirements for submitting SF 133s?.....	130.2	130-2
How do I report budgetary resources? .....	130.3	130-4
How do I report the status of budgetary resources? .....	130.4	130-4
How do I report obligations, and how are obligations shown on SF 133 reports? .....	130.5	130-4
How do I report the relation of obligations to outlays? .....	130.6	130-5
What should I report during the expired phase? .....	130.7	130-5
How do I report adjustments to expired TAFSs? .....	130.8	130-6
What must I do when I have extended disbursement authority? .....	130.9	130-7
How do I report expired TAFs that are being closed? .....	130.10	130-7
What disbursements can I make during the canceled phase? .....	130.11	130-7
How do I submit non-standard reports? .....	130.12	130-8
How do I report lower levels of detail? .....	130.13	130-8
How do I submit an SF 133 for allocation accounts? .....	130.14	130-9
How do I submit an SF 133 for credit TAFSs? .....	130.15	130-9
How do I ensure that my actuals are consistent? .....	130.16	130-9
Annual account—September 30 report .....	Ex-130A	130-12
Annual account with reimbursements—September 30 report.....	Ex-130B	130-13
No-year account—quarterly report.....	Ex-130C	130-14
Multi-year account apportioned for two fiscal years.....	Ex-130D	130-16
Public enterprise (revolving) or intragovernmental (revolving) fund—quarterly report.....	Ex-130E	130-17
Annual report—advance appropriation .....	Ex-130F	130-18
Annual account—reappropriation .....	Ex-130G	130-19

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Chart of SF 133 general requirements.....	Ex-130H	130-20
SF 133 outlay formula.....	Ex-130I	130-21
Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Treasury Combined Statement.....	Ex-130J	130-22
Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the program and financing schedule.....	Ex-130K	130-23
Trust fund (or special fund) with collections precluded from obligation.....	Ex-130L	130-27
Relationship between selected SF 133 and program and financing schedule lines (in millions of dollars) .....	Ex-130M	130-28
 <b>III. OTHER REPORTS</b>		
<b>Section 135—Procedures for monitoring Federal outlays</b>		
What is the purpose for these procedures?.....	135.1	135-1
Who is required to submit a plan?.....	135.2	135-1
What are the general reporting requirements?.....	135.3	135-1
What are the reporting requirements for large transactions?.....	135.4	135-2
What are the requirements for investment account reporting?.....	135.5	135-3
What are the requirements for financing account reporting?.....	135.6	135-4
What are the requirements for asset sale reporting?.....	135.7	135-6
What are the responsibilities of OMB and the Treasury Department?.....	135.8	135-6
When do I submit reports?.....	135.9	135-6
Reports on outlays—agency and program coverage.....	Ex-135A	135-8
Reports on outlays—initial report.....	Ex-135B	135-10
Investment account reporting format.....	Ex-135C	135-11
Financing accounting reporting format.....	Ex-135D	135-12
Asset sales reporting format.....	Ex-135E	135-13
 <b>Section 140—Reports on unvouchered expenditures</b>		
What are unvouchered expenditures?.....	140.1	140-1
Are there any exemptions?.....	140.2	140-1
What is the basis for coverage?.....	140.3	140-1
What are the requirements for submission?.....	140.4	140-1
What are OMB's responsibilities?.....	140.5	140-2
List of accounts containing unvouchered expenditures.....	Ex-140	140-3
 <b>Section 145—Requirements for reporting Antideficiency Act violations</b>		
What is the Antideficiency Act?.....	145.1	145-1
What violations must I report?.....	145.2	145-2
How do the requirements for reporting violations differ for credit programs?.....	145.3	145-3
Do the requirements for reporting violations differ for revolving funds?.....	145.4	145-3
Do the requirements for reporting violations differ for closed and expired accounts?.....	145.5	145-3
How do I treat anticipated budgetary resources?.....	145.6	145-4
How do I report a violation?.....	145.7	145-4
What if the GAO reports a violation?.....	145.8	145-5
What if OMB suspects a violation?.....	145.9	145-5
Antideficiency Act violation sample letter to the Director.....	Ex-145A	145-6
Antideficiency Act violation sample letter to the President.....	Ex-145B	145-7

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Section 150—Administrative control of funds</b>		
Why must my agency have a fund control system? .....	150.1	150-1
What is the purpose of my agency’s fund control system? .....	150.2	150-1
What is the relationship among my agency’s management controls, its internal controls, and its fund controls? .....	150.3	150-1
What is the relationship between my agency’s financial management system and its fund control system? .....	150.4	150-2
What is the U.S. Standard General Ledger (USSGL) and how does it relate to my agency’s financial management system? .....	150.5	150-2
What are Federal Financial Management Systems requirements and how are they related to my agency’s fund control systems? .....	150.6	150-3
When and how should I get OMB approval of my agency’s fund control regulations? .....	150.7	150-3
 <b>PART 5—FEDERAL CREDIT PROGRAMS</b>		
<b>Section 185—Federal credit</b>		
Does this section apply to me? .....	185.1	185-3
What background information must I know? .....	185.2	185-3
What special terms must I know? .....	185.3	185-5
Are there special requirements for reporting Antideficiency Act violations? ..	185.4	185-13
How do I calculate the subsidy estimate? .....	185.5	185-13
How do I calculate reestimates? .....	185.6	185-15
How do I calculate and record modifications? .....	185.7	185-21
What must I know about the sale of loan assets? .....	185.8	185-25
What are the budget formulation reporting requirements for credit accounts? ..	185.9	185-28
What do I report for program accounts? .....	185.10	185-29
What do I report for financing accounts? .....	185.11	185-33
What do I report for liquidating accounts? .....	185.12	185-40
What do I report for receipt accounts? .....	185.13	185-41
Must credit accounts be apportioned? .....	185.14	185-41
When do I submit an apportionment request (SF 132)? .....	185.15	185-41
How do I fill out the SF 132? .....	185.16	185-42
Do amounts for an upward reestimate (and the interest on the reestimate) need to be apportioned? .....	185.17	185-42
Do amounts for a downward reestimate (and the interest on the reestimate) need to be apportioned? .....	185.18	185-43
Do amounts for interest payments to Treasury need to be apportioned? .....	185.19	185-43
Do amounts for debt repayments to Treasury need to be apportioned? .....	185.20	185-43
How do I handle modifications? .....	185.21	185-43
Am I required to submit budget execution reports (SF 133)? .....	185.22	185-44
How do I fill out the SF133? .....	185.23	185-44
How do I calculate the initial subsidy cost estimate for execution? .....	185.24	185-44
What transactions do I report when the Government incurs direct loan obligations or makes loan guarantee commitments? .....	185.25	185-45
What transactions do I report when the Government disburses a direct loan or a private lender disburses a guaranteed loan? .....	185.26	185-45
How do I handle non-subsidy cost collections? .....	185.27	185-46
What transactions do I report when a guaranteed loan defaults? .....	185.28	185-47
What should I do with unobligated balances in the liquidating account? .....	185.29	185-47
How do I report modifications of post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees? ..	185.30	185-48
How do I report modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees? ..	185.31	185-48
Why do financing accounts borrow from Treasury? .....	185.32	185-49



<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Why do financing accounts earn interest?.....	185.33	185–50
Who calculates interest expense and income?.....	185.34	185–50
When do I calculate interest expense and income? .....	185.35	185–50
What interest rate do I use to calculate interest expense and income? .....	185.36	185–50
Program account, program and financing schedule (schedule P).....	Ex–185A	185–51
Program account, summary of loan levels and subsidy data (schedule U)....	Ex–185B	185–52
Direct loan financing account, program and financing schedule (schedule P)	Ex–185C	185–53
Direct loan financing account, status of direct loans (schedule G).....	Ex–185D	185–54
Direct loan financing account, balance sheet (schedule F).....	Ex–185E	185–55
Guaranteed loan financing account, program and financing schedule (schedule P).....	Ex–185F	185–56
Guaranteed loan financing account, status of guaranteed loans (schedule H).	Ex–185G	185–57
Guaranteed loan financing account, balance sheet (schedule F) .....	Ex–185H	185–58
Liquidating account, program and financing schedule (schedule P) .....	Ex–185I	185–59
Liquidating account, status of direct loans (schedule G).....	Ex–185J	185–60
Liquidating account, status of guaranteed loans (schedule H) .....	Ex–185K	185–61
Liquidating account, balance sheet (schedule F).....	Ex–185L	185–62
Standard Appropriations Language.....	Ex–185M	185–63
Initial apportionment—Program account.....	Ex–185N	185–64
Initial apportionment—Direct loan financing account.....	Ex–185O	185–65
Initial apportionment—Guaranteed loan financing account.....	Ex–185P	185–66
Initial apportionment—Side-by-side account comparison .....	Ex–185Q	185–67
Reapportionment for modification .....	Ex–185R	185–70
Reapportionment for upward reestimate .....	Ex–185S	185–71
Reapportionment for downward reestimate .....	Ex–185T	185–72
End of first quarter—Program account, report on budget execution.....	Ex–185U	185–73
End of first quarter—Direct loan financing account, report on budget execution	Ex–185V	185–74
End of first quarter—Guaranteed loan financing account, report on budget execution .....	Ex–185W	185–75
Budget execution reporting—End of first quarter side-by-side account comparison .....	Ex–185X	185–76
End of fiscal year—Program account, report on budget execution.....	Ex–185Y	185–81
End of fiscal year—Direct loan financing account, report on budget execution	Ex–185Z	185–82
End of fiscal year—Guaranteed loan financing account, report on budget execution .....	Ex185AA	185–83
Budget execution reporting—End of fiscal year, side-by-side account comparison .....	Ex–185BB	185–84

**PART 6—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF STRATEGIC PLANS, ANNUAL  
PERFORMANCE PLANS, AND ANNUAL PROGRAM PERFORMANCE REPORTS**

**Section 200—Overview of strategic plans, performance plans, and annual  
program performance reports (including performance and accountability  
reports)**

Overview .....	200.1	200–2
Definitions.....	200.2	200–2
Applicability .....	200.3	200–3

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Section 210—Preparing and submitting a strategic plan</b>		
Preparing a strategic plan: The main elements .....	210.1	210-1
Preparing a strategic plan: Format and other features .....	210.2	210-3
Submission of strategic plans .....	210.3	210-4
Interim adjustments to strategic plans .....	210.4	210-5
<b>Section 220—Preparation and submission of performance budgets</b>		
Preparation and submission of performance budgets .....	220	220-1
<b>Section 230—Preparation and submission of the annual program performance report, including the performance report portion of a performance and accountability report</b>		
Preparing the performance and accountability report or the annual program performance report .....	230.1	230-1
What does the annual program performance report contain? .....	230.2	230-2
Sending the annual program performance report to the President and Congress .....	230.3	230-6
<b>PART 7—PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND MANAGEMENT OF CAPITAL ASSETS</b>		
<b>Section 300—Planning, budgeting, acquisition, and management of capital assets</b>		
What is the purpose of this section? .....	300.1	300-1
Does this section apply to me? .....	300.2	300-2
What background information must I know? .....	300.3	300-2
What special terms must I know? .....	300.4	300-3
How will agencies manage capital assets? .....	300.5	300-7
How are capital asset acquisitions funded? .....	300.6	300-9
What is exhibit 300 and how is it organized? .....	300.7	300-9
What other requirements does exhibit 300 fulfill? .....	300.8	300-10
What must I report on exhibit 300 and when? .....	300.9	300-10
How will OMB evaluate the business cases in the exhibits 300? .....	300.10	300-13
What additional information should I know? .....	300-11	300-18
Capital asset plan and business case .....	Ex-300	300-19
<b>PART 8—APPENDICES</b>		
Scorekeeping guidelines .....	Appendix A	A-1
Scoring lease-purchases and leases of capital assets .....	Appendix B	B-1
Listing of OMB agency/bureau and Treasury codes .....	Appendix C	C-1
Explanation of MAX edit checks .....	Appendix D	D-1
Diagnostic reports .....	Appendix E	E-1
BEA questions and problems report (BEACK01) .....	Ex-E1	E-2
Total FTE employment: approved estimates vs. schedule Q (CKFTE) .....	Ex-E2	E-3
Policy and baseline agency/category account detail report—mandatory estimates (BEACAT) .....	Ex-E3	E-4
Format of SF 132 and SF 133 .....	Appendix F	F-1
Crosswalk between Antideficiency Act and Title 31 of the U.S. Code .....	Appendix G	G-1
Checklist for fund control regulations .....	Appendix H	H-1
List of FACTS II reporting providers .....	Appendix I	I-1
Principles of budgeting for capital asset acquisitions .....	Appendix J	J-1
Selected OMB guidance and other references regarding capital assets .....	Appendix K	K-1

---

<i>Title</i>	<i>Sec./Ex. No.</i>	<i>Page</i>
INDEX .....		Index-1
AGENCY COMMENT SHEET .....		----
ORDER FORM.....		----

---



## GUIDE TO OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-11

### What is the purpose of the Circular?

Part 1: Provides an overview of the budget process. It discusses the basic laws that regulate the budget process and the terms and concepts you need to know to understand the budget process and this Circular. (Sections numbered 10 through 22)

Part 2: Covers development of the President's budget and tells you how to prepare and submit materials required for OMB and Presidential review of agency requests and for formulation of the FY 2005 Budget, including development and submission of performance budgets for FY 2005. The performance budget replaces the annual performance plan required by the Government Performance and Results Act. A significant portion of this part focuses on the preparation of the budget *Appendix* and the related database. This year, detailed instructions for a number of requirements not directly related to the preparation and production of the budget have been moved from A-11 and are accessible through electronic links that are provided in [section 25](#). (Sections numbered 25 through 95)

Part 3: Discusses supplementals, amendments, releases of contingent emergency funding, rescission proposals and deferrals, and investments. (Sections numbered 110 through 113)

Part 4: Provides instructions on budget execution, including guidance on the apportionment and reappropriation process (SF 132), report on budget execution and budgetary resources (SF 133), and a checklist for fund control regulations. (Sections numbered 120 through 150)

Part 5: Covers Federal credit programs, including requirements related to the preparation of budget estimates and to budget execution. (Section number 185)

Part 6: Describes requirements for strategic plans and annual program performance reports and provides an overview of the performance budget. (Sections numbered 200 through 230)

Part 7: Discusses planning, budgeting and acquisition of capital assets, and tells you how to prepare and submit information on new and past acquisitions. (Section number 300)

Part 8: Contains supplementary materials. (Appendices numbered A through K)

### How do I find information in the Circular?

The Circular groups related requirements together and presents requirements chronologically, where appropriate (e.g., instructions related to budget formulation are included in Part 2, and instructions related to budget execution are included in Part 4).

The information in each part is divided into chapters and, in some cases, subchapters. The chapters are organized into a series of sections that consist of consecutively numbered subsections. Section numbers are not repeated between parts. We reserved certain section numbers for future use, so there are gaps in the numbering scheme. Page numbers identify the section number and page within that section.

At the beginning of the Circular, there is a table of contents that identifies all the parts, chapters, sections and associated page numbers.

There is also a table of contents at the beginning of each section that identifies the subsections and exhibits contained in that section. We summarize major changes in policies and requirements at the beginning of the Circular. In addition, we describe the changes that affect each section at the beginning of that section and use vertical revision bars in the margins to highlight new requirements and significant changes. At the end of the Circular, there is an index.

OMB circulars, memoranda, and bulletins, including Circular No. A-11, are available for viewing or downloading at the following Internet address:

[www.whitehouse.gov/omb](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb)

Presidential Executive Orders are available for viewing or downloading at the following Internet address:

[www.archives.gov](http://www.archives.gov)

The internet version of the Circular contains a number of hyperlinks that link the various parts of A-11 with each other and other web sites.

Normally, A-11 is fully revised annually. However, the guidance is usually updated in the fall to reflect changes and clarifications since the full revision. If you are working with a paper copy of A-11 or CD ROM, please check the Internet to make sure you have the latest version and updates.

### **What agencies are covered by the Circular?**

This Circular applies to all executive departments and establishments. In addition, some of the requirements apply to the legislative and judicial branches, to the District of Columbia, and to Government-sponsored enterprises.

If you want a modification to the requirements in this Circular, you must get OMB approval in advance (see [section 25.2](#)).

### **When are the materials required by this Circular due?**

Different materials are due on different dates.

The initial submission of budget justification and other materials required under Part 2 is due **September 8, 2003** for Cabinet agencies and other agencies subject to executive branch review. [Section 25](#) provides additional information on due dates for materials required in connection with the submission of budget estimates.

Materials required under Part 4 are due as follows:

Initial apportionments—August 21  
Reapportionments—30 days after enactment of appropriations  
SF 133—quarterly, unless OMB requires a monthly report

### **What common conventions does this Circular use?**

When the Circular refers to a specific year, assume it is a calendar year unless otherwise noted. The following phrases and abbreviations are used to identify specific fiscal years:

Fiscal Year	Description
Past year - 1 (PY-1)	The fiscal year immediately preceding the past year.
Past year (PY)	The fiscal year immediately preceding the current year; the last completed fiscal year.
Current year (CY)	The fiscal year immediately preceding the budget year.
Budget year (BY)	The next fiscal year for which estimates are submitted.
Budget year + 1 (BY+1) <i>through</i> budget year + 9 (BY+9)	The fiscal year following the budget year <i>through</i> the ninth fiscal year following the budget year.

Special budget terms, such as budget authority, obligations, and outlays, are defined in [section 20](#).

In Part 2, the term *schedule* refers to a set of data within the MAX budget database that is complete in itself and describes a view or slice of the President’s budget. Schedules are described in [section 79](#).

**Who can answer questions about the Circular?**

The following table lists OMB organizational units with primary responsibility for certain sections of the Circular. You should direct general questions on the instructions and underlying concepts to these units. Direct agency-specific questions on the application of these instructions, as well as on sections not listed below, to your OMB program examiner or Resource Management Office.

**OMB CONTACTS**

Section No.	Description	OMB Contact	Telephone No.*
<b>PART 2</b>			
51.12	Justification of unobligated balances in credit liquidating accounts	Budget Concepts Branch, Budget Review and Concepts Division	395-3172
52.4	Financial management budget justification	Financial Standards Reporting and Management Integrity Branch, Office of Federal Financial Management	395-3993
52.5	Report on resources for financial management activities	Federal Financial Systems Branch, Office of Federal Financial Management	395-3993
53	Information technology	Information Policy and Technology Branch, Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs	395-3785
54	Rental payments for space and land	Justice/GSA Branch, Transportation, Commerce, Justice, and Services Division	395-6106
<b>PART 6</b>	Strategic plans, performance budgets, and annual program performance reports	Budget Concepts Branch, Budget Review and Concepts Division	395-3172

Section No.	Description	OMB Contact	Telephone No.*
PART 7	Planning, budgeting, acquisition, and management of capital assets	Information Policy and Technology Branch, Office of Information and Regulatory Affairs	395-3787
—	MAX A-11 User's Guide	Budget Systems Branch, Budget Analysis and Systems Division	395-6934

\*Area code is 202



## SUMMARY OF CHANGES

*Note: Vertical revision bars " | " are used in the margin of the Circular to highlight new requirements and significant changes.*

Section No.	Change
204.	Clarifies the definition of reappropriations.
20.7	Simplifies the discussion of offsetting collections and offsetting receipts.
25.5	Consolidates requirements previously included in several separate sections (old sections 51, 55, 84, and 100) and provides electronic links to the instructions.  Requires agencies to submit activity-level homeland security and overseas combating terrorism information with their initial submission.  Requires agencies to submit overseas staffing information with their initial submission (previously section 58). This information is requested as part of the President's Management Agenda on rightsizing overseas presence and will be published as part of the budget documents.
26	This new section compiles and links to guidance about the integration and use of performance information, including the statutory requirements of the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA), the President's Management Agenda, and the use of the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART).
31.9	Requires information on the cost of managing competitive sourcing initiatives.
31.11	Provides guidance on human capital management.
32	Drops the requirement to report on the impact of fully accruing employee pensions and annuitant health benefits.
32.4	Provides information on how prior year FTE figures are obtained.
32.5	Provides additional guidance on FTE accounting for military personnel.
32.9	Includes guidance on personnel benefits, previously included in section 33.
33	Drops the requirement to provide information for the national security crosscut.  Moves data requirements related to aircraft and motor vehicles to section 25.
35	Section has been incorporated into sections 20, 86, and 130.
51.2, 51.7, 220	Agency budget submissions should be in the form of a "performance budget" to the greatest extent possible. The "performance budget" submission will replace the performance plan required by the Government Performance and Results Act.
51.3	Requires agencies to provide a breakout of resources for IT expenditures.
51.9	Updates guidance on program evaluation.
52	Drops the requirement to report on material weaknesses and nonconformances.
53, 300	Changes all terminology from IT "management" to "investments." The term IT investments includes projects, systems, IT workforce, and initiatives.
53.2	Adds information on the Federal Enterprise Architecture, its use during the agency budget formulation process, and the overall FY 2005 Budget process.

## SUMMARY OF CHANGES

---

Section No.	Change
53.3	Reflects the enactment of the Federal Information Security Management Act and the E-Government Act of 2002.
53.4	Requires submission of agencies' initial drafts of exhibit 53.
53.5	Adds information on attendant documents and their requirements.
53.7	Modifies definition and provides criteria for identifying systems as "Major IT Investment" or "Non-Major IT Investment."
55	Requirement for information on energy and transportation efficiency management is covered in section 25.5; section 55 has been eliminated.
56	Drops the requirement for information on drug control programs; section 56 has been eliminated.
57	Drops the requirement for information on erroneous payments; section 57 has been eliminated.
71	Moves guidance on alignment of budget accounts and programs to sections 51 and 82.
80.8	Incorporates requirement for information in support of baseline estimates previously included in section 100.
81.3	Drops sequestrable/exempt and user charge classifications from MAX.
81.4	Drops memorandum entries for the cost of fully accruing retirement costs; drops the requirement for to report limitations for direct and guaranteed loans.
82.1	Removes ability to override generated subtotals and totals.
82.2	Clarifies the reporting of obligations for program activities and provides non-add performance activity lines within a program that finance specific performance metrics.
82.3	Adds a line to schedule P for reporting extensions in the availability of expired funds that are not reported as reappropriations.  Identifies the schedule P lines that are automatically copied to schedule N.  Instructs agencies to report transfers from mandatory to discretionary accounts on corresponding lines.  Clarifies the treatment of reappropriations.
82.7	Adds memorandum entries for obligated and unobligated balances of contract authority.
82.8	Simplifies the presentation of rescissions and reductions of budget authority and distinguishes between temporary and permanent reductions.
82.20	Requires additional lines in schedule P to tie to amounts reported in FACTS II.
84	Moves requirement for information on research and development performed by colleges and universities and allocation of research funds to section 25.
84.3	Drops the projection of budget authority and outlays beyond the budget year, except for grant outlays, which will continue to be projected to BY+9.
84.4	Updates definitions of National Science and Technology Council crosscuts.
85	This new section describes performance metrics that will be published in the budget. In conjunction with other changes in the program and financing schedule, the new MAX schedule (V) will help provide a framework to better link cost and performance data.

Section No.	Change
86	Drops the schedule on the status of contract authority (schedule I).
86.1	Drops the commercial versus inherently governmental distinction in the personnel summary (schedule Q).
86.2	Drops the statement of operations (schedule E). Drops CY and BY data from the balance sheet (schedule F). Balance sheets are required for Government-Sponsored enterprises, financing vehicles, and credit accounts; they are optional for other funds.
86.5	Drops requirement for certain accounts to submit status of funds data (schedule J).
86.6	Schedule N will be refreshed each time the related accounts are uploaded and downloaded, rather than as part of the overnight production cycle. Drops offsetting collections from the schedule on unavailable receipts (schedule N). Clarifies how MAX calculates the "appropriation, net" lines in schedule N.
95	Consolidates requirements previously included in sections 95, 96, and 97. Drops the analysis of programs financed by multiple budget accounts.
100	Drops the requirements for information on motor vehicles, relocation expenses, and international travel; section 100 has been eliminated.
110	Drops the requirement to provide revised MAX schedules for supplementals and amendments.
112.19	Clarifies the description and title of SF 132 line 6B consistent with Appendix F.
113	Contains information on investments previously included in section 20.12 and 122; those sections have been eliminated.
120.1-120.2	Expands the purpose of apportionment. The process is now used to identify meaningful program reporting categories that agencies will report their obligations against when submitting budget execution reports.
120.3	Apportionments are made at the Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS) level.
120.8	Clarifies the descriptions of apportionment categories to state that one TAFS may potentially have anywhere from a single category B apportionment to dozens of category B apportionments.
120.26	Requires agencies to use only the formats described in section 121.5.
121.2-121.9	Describes how to use program reporting categories.
121.5	Describes the columns used on the SF 132 and letter apportionment Excel spreadsheets. Shows a new column, line split, to be used to distinguish between two or more amounts that you would normally report on a single line.
121.10	Clarifies the treatment of extensions of the availability of unobligated balances.
122	Moves instructions on investment transactions for budget execution to section 113.
145.6	Adds information on anticipated budgetary resources.
185.8	Provides guidance on sales of performing loan assets.
185.10	Drops outlay lines for reestimates in schedule U.

## SUMMARY OF CHANGES

---

Section No.	Change
220	Agencies' performance budgets will include information from the PART assessments, where available, and all performance goals used in the assessment of program performance done under the PART process.
300	Adds information on the Federal Enterprise Architecture, its use during the agency budget formulation process, and the overall FY 2005 Budget process.
300.9	Requires one business case for office automation, infrastructure, and telecommunications; requires that all exhibit 300s be in XML.  Describes the requirements for multi-agency business cases.
800	Drops the section on managing physical and financial assets.
Exhibit 300	Adds PART review questions; adds government FTE to the summary of spending.
Appendix B	Clarifies that the impact of changes to existing operating lease contracts needs to be evaluated against the criteria for operating leases.  Fair market value will not include the value of features or enhancements that were built or added for the Government's unique needs or special purposes. Such features should be financed up-front, separate from the lease.  Lease-backs from public/private partnerships with substantial private sector participation will be presumed to be capital leases; public/private partnerships without substantial private sector participation will be considered governmental for purposes of the budget.  When determining whether a lease contains a bargain-price purchase option, the purchase price includes the value of any rebates or income to the Government resulting from its purchase of the asset.  The assumptions used to perform lease analyses are subject to OMB approval.
Appendix E	Removes three of the six diagnostic reports included in last year's A-11. The reports have been converted to MAX edit checks.
Appendix J	Renumbers former Appendix 300A.
Appendix K	Renumbers former Appendix 300B.  Initial submissions of budget justification and other materials are due September 8, 2003.  OMB plans to lock prior year data in MAX by the middle of December.

# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 1**

### **GENERAL INFORMATION**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT**

**OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



## SECTION 10—OVERVIEW OF THE BUDGET PROCESS

## Table of Contents

*The Budget Process*

- 10.1 What is the budget?
- 10.2 Why prepare a budget?
- 10.3 What kinds of information does the budget provide?
- 10.4 Which agencies does the budget cover?
- 10.5 What happens during the Federal budget process and when?
- 10.6 What is the Mid-Session Review?

*The Central Financial Agencies*

- 10.7 What are the central financial agencies?
- 10.8 What are the responsibilities and functions of OMB?
- 10.9 What are the responsibilities and functions of the Treasury?
- 10.10 What are the responsibilities and functions of CBO?
- 10.11 What are the responsibilities and functions of GAO?
- 10.12 Do OMB, CBO, FMS, and GAO have any overlapping responsibilities?

**10.1 What is the budget?**

In this Circular, the term *budget* means the President's budget—*The Budget of the United States Government*. The budget consists of several volumes that set forth the President's financial proposal with recommended priorities for allocating resources. The main *Budget* volume contains the President's budget message and other broad statements of policy. The *Appendix* contains detailed information by agency, bureau or program group, budget accounts, programs, and activities. Other volumes, such as *Analytical Perspectives* and *Historical Tables*, provide complementary views of the budget. Most of the information contained in the budget is, or is based on, information you submit for your agency and programs in response to this Circular.

The term "budget" can mean other things in other contexts. It often refers to the full receipt and outlay proposals rather than the volumes in which these amounts are published. Some people refer collectively to the budget resolution and revenue and spending bills that Congress passes, which we describe below, as the "congressional budget." Ultimately, Congress and the President enact many laws that control the Government's receipts and spending, which we sometimes refer to collectively as the budget, as in "enacting the budget."

This section provides a broad overview of the budget process. You can read more about the budget process in a chapter of the *Analytical Perspectives* volume of the most recent budget, "Budget System and Concepts and Glossary," which is also available as a separate pamphlet. You can order budget documents, including the pamphlet, from the Government Printing Office, or you can view or download them at the following Internet addresses:

<http://www.access.gpo.gov/usbudget> (GPO), or

<http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/> (OMB)

## 10.2 Why prepare a budget?

A law requires the President to submit a budget (see [section 15.2](#)). The President formally transmits his proposals for allocating resources to Congress through the budget. Congress considers the recommendations and uses the information included in the budget as it drafts and passes laws that affect spending and receipts. Through this process the Government decides how much money to spend, what to spend it on, and how to raise the money it has decided to spend.

## 10.3 What kinds of information does the budget provide?

The budget focuses primarily on the budget year—the upcoming fiscal year for which Congress needs to make appropriations. However, it includes data for the most recently completed year, the current year, and at least the four years following the budget year (outyears) in order to reflect the effect of budget decisions over the longer term. In addition to proposed appropriations for the budget year, the budget may include proposed changes to appropriations for the current year (supplementals and rescissions), and legislative proposals that would affect the current year, the budget year, or the outyears.

The budget provides actual or estimated data (stated in millions or billions of dollars, depending on the context) for the following:

- The amount by account that each agency may obligate the Government to pay (budget authority) and estimates of payments (outlays) by agency and account;
- The amount of receipts each agency collects from various sources;
- Budget authority, outlays, and receipts by major function of Government, such as national defense; (This is why we assign each budget account a functional classification code(s).)
- Total budget authority, outlays, and receipts for the Government; and
- The actual or estimated surplus (when receipts exceed outlays) or deficit (when outlays exceed receipts).

The budget divides the Government totals for budget authority, outlays, and receipts into "on-budget" amounts and "off-budget" amounts. The off-budget amounts include the transactions of the Social Security trust funds and the Postal Service, which are excluded from the on-budget totals by laws.

The budget arrays data in many different ways. For example, one section of the budget discusses current operating expenditures versus capital investment. Also, while the budget focuses primarily on dollars, it also includes data on other resources, such as Federal employment levels.

## 10.4 Which agencies does the budget cover?

The budget covers the agencies of all three branches of government—Executive, Legislative, and Judicial—and provides information on Government-sponsored enterprises. In accordance with law or established practice, OMB includes information on agencies of the Legislative Branch, the Judicial Branch, and certain Executive Branch agencies as submitted by those agencies without change. By longstanding practice, the budget presents information about the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System but does not include amounts for the Board in the budget totals, even though it is a Government agency, because of the independent status of the System. The budget includes information about the Government-sponsored enterprises, such as the Federal National Mortgage Association (Fannie



Mae), but doesn't include them in the budget totals because they are privately owned. ([Section 25](#) discusses the applicability of Part 2 of this Circular to various agencies.)

### 10.5 What happens during the Federal budget process and when?

The budget process occurs in three main phases:

- *Formulation.* During this phase, the Executive Branch prepares the President's budget. OMB and the Federal agencies begin preparing the next budget almost as soon as the President has sent the last one to Congress. OMB officially starts the process by sending planning guidance to Executive Branch agencies sometime in the Spring. The President completes this phase by sending the budget to Congress on the first Monday in February, as specified in law, although occasionally Presidents have sent it later for various reasons. For example, in a year with a transition between outgoing and incoming Administrations, the timing of the President's budget transmittal changes. (President George W. Bush transmitted his first budget, the 2002 Budget, in April 2001.)
- *Congressional.* This phase starts in late January or February, when Congress receives the President's budget. Congress doesn't vote on the President's budget itself, and it doesn't enact a budget of its own, as such. It considers the President's budget proposals, passes an overall revenue and spending plan called a "budget resolution," and enacts the thirteen regular appropriations acts and other laws that control spending and receipts.
- *Execution.* This phase lasts for at least five fiscal years and includes two parts.
  - ▶ The *apportionment* part pertains to funds appropriated for that fiscal year and to balances of appropriations made in prior years that remain available for obligation. At the beginning of the fiscal year, and at such other times as necessary, OMB apportions funds—that is, specifies the amount of funds that an agency may use by time period, program, project, or activity—to Executive Branch agencies. Throughout the year, agencies hire people, enter into contracts, and enter into grant agreements, etc., in order to carry out their programs, projects, and activities. These actions use up the available funds by obligating the Federal government to make outlays, immediately or in the future.
  - ▶ The *reporting and outlay* part lasts until funds are canceled (one- and multiple-year funds are canceled at the end of the fifth year after the funds expire for new obligations) or until funds are totally disbursed (for no-year funds).

The following tables highlight the major events in each of the phases of the budget process. These tables show the planned timing or, when applicable, the timing specified in law. The actual timing may vary from the plan. For example, Congress frequently does not enact all appropriations acts by the start of the fiscal year, and on several occasions a President has submitted the budget later than specified for various reasons, including late enactment of appropriations for the previous fiscal year or a change in Administrations. Since budget cycles overlap, we must begin the next cycle before completing the last one.

MAJOR STEPS IN THE FORMULATION PHASE

What happens?	When?
<i>OMB issues Spring planning guidance to Executive Branch agencies for the upcoming budget.</i> The OMB Director issues a letter to the head of each agency providing policy guidance for the agency's budget request. Absent more specific guidance, the outyear estimates included in the previous budget serve as a starting point for the next budget. This begins the process of formulating the budget the President will submit the following February.	Spring
OMB and the Executive Branch agencies discuss budget issues and options. OMB works with the agencies to:  Identify major issues for the upcoming budget;  Develop and analyze options for the upcoming fall review; and  Plan for the analysis of issues that will need decisions in the future.	Spring and Summer
OMB issues Circular No. A-11 to all Federal agencies. This Circular provides detailed instructions for submitting budget data and materials.	July
Executive Branch agencies (except those not subject to Executive Branch review) make initial budget submissions. See section 25.	September 8
Fiscal year begins. The just completed budget cycle focused on this fiscal year. It was the "budget year" in that cycle and is the "current year" in this cycle.	October 1
OMB conducts its Fall review. OMB staff analyze agency budget proposals in light of presidential priorities, program performance, and budget constraints. They raise issues and present options to the Director and other OMB policy officials for their decisions.	October–November
OMB briefs the President and senior advisors on proposed budget policies. The OMB Director recommends a complete set of budget proposals to the President after OMB has reviewed all agency requests and considered overall budget policies.	Late November
"Passback." OMB usually informs all Executive Branch agencies at the same time about the decisions on their budget requests.	Late November
All agencies, including Legislative and Judicial Branch agencies, enter MAX computer data and submit print materials and additional data. This process begins immediately after passback and continues until OMB must "lock" agencies out of the database in order to meet the printing deadline.	Late November to early January *
Executive Branch agencies may appeal to OMB and the President. An agency head may ask OMB to reverse or modify certain decisions. In most cases, OMB and the agency head resolve such issues and, if not, work together to present them to the President for a decision.	December *
Agencies prepare and OMB reviews congressional budget justification materials. Agencies prepare the budget justification materials they need to explain their budget requests to the responsible congressional subcommittees.	January
President transmits the budget to Congress.	First Monday in February

\*OMB provides specific deadlines for this activity.

---

**MAJOR STEPS IN THE CONGRESSIONAL PHASE**


---

<b>What happens?</b>	<b>When?</b>
Congressional Budget Office (CBO) reports to Budget Committees on the economic and budget outlook.	January
CBO reestimates the President's budget based on their economic and technical assumptions.	February
Other committees submit "views and estimates" to House and Senate Budget Committees. Committees indicate their preferences regarding budgetary matters for which they are responsible.	Within 6 weeks of budget transmittal
Congress completes action on the concurrent resolution on the budget. Congress commits itself to broad spending and revenue levels by passing a budget resolution.	April 15
Congress needs to complete action on appropriations bill for the upcoming fiscal year. Congress completes action on regular appropriations bills or provides a "continuing resolution" (a stop-gap appropriation law).	September 30

---

**MAJOR STEPS IN THE EXECUTION PHASE**


---

<b>What happens?</b>	<b>When?</b>
Fiscal year begins.	October 1
OMB apportions funds made available in the budget process and other available funds. Agencies submit apportionment requests to OMB for each budget account by <i>August 21</i> or within <i>10 calendar days</i> after the approval of the appropriation, whichever is later. OMB approves or modifies the apportionment specifying the amount of funds agencies may use by time period, program, project, or activity.	September 10 (or within 30 days after approval of a spending bill)
Agencies incur obligations and make outlays to carry out the funded programs, projects, and activities. Agencies hire people, enter into contracts, enter into grant agreements, etc. in order to carry out their programs, projects, and activities.  Agencies record obligations and outlays pursuant to administrative control of funds procedures (see Appendix H), report to Treasury (see the Treasury Fiscal Requirements Manual and section 130), and prepare financial statements.	Throughout the fiscal year
Fiscal year ends.	September 30
Expired phase (no-year funds do not have an expired phase). Agencies disburse against obligated balances and adjust obligated balances to reflect actual obligations during the period of availability.  Agencies continue to record obligations and outlays pursuant to administrative control of funds procedures, report to Treasury, and prepare financial statements.	Until September 30, fifth year after funds expire.

**10.6 What is the Mid-Session Review?**

The law requires the President to send a report to Congress updating budget estimates on or before July 15th. This report contains revised budget estimates resulting from changes in economic assumptions, technical reestimates, Presidential initiatives, and completed congressional actions that have occurred

since transmittal of the budget. Your OMB representative will provide guidance on the development of these estimates at the appropriate time.

### **10.7 What are the central financial agencies?**

The central financial agencies are:

- The Office of Management and Budget (OMB), in the Executive Office of the President;
- The Department of the Treasury, Financial Management Service (FMS);
- The Congressional Budget Office (CBO), in the Legislative Branch; and
- The General Accounting Office (GAO), in the Legislative Branch.

### **10.8 What are the responsibilities and functions of OMB?**

OMB's predominant mission is to assist the President in overseeing the preparation of the Federal budget and to supervise its administration by the Executive Branch agencies. OMB evaluates the effectiveness of agency programs, policies, and procedures, assesses competing funding demands among agencies, and sets funding priorities. OMB ensures that agency reports, rules, testimony, and proposed legislation are consistent with the President's budget and with Administration policies.

In addition, OMB oversees and coordinates the Administration's procurement, financial management, information, and regulatory policies. In each of these areas, OMB's primary roles are to improve administrative management, develop better performance measures and coordinating mechanisms, and reduce any unnecessary burdens on the public.

For further information, please refer to the OMB web site at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb>.

### **10.9 What are the responsibilities and functions of the Treasury?**

Treasury, acting through the Financial Management Service (FMS):

- Disburses 950 million Federal payments like Social Security, veterans' benefits and income tax refunds to more than 100 million people; (The Defense Department does not use FMS to disburse its funds.)
- Collects more than \$2 trillion in Federal revenues;
- Oversees a daily cash flow of \$10 billion;
- Provides centralized debt collection services to most Federal agencies; and
- Provides government-wide accounting and reporting.

FMS gathers and publishes government-wide financial information that is used by the public and private sectors to monitor the government's financial status and establish fiscal and monetary policies. These publications include: the Daily Treasury Statement; the Monthly Treasury Statement; the Treasury Bulletin; the Combined Statement of Receipts, Outlays and Balances of the United States Government; and the Financial Report of the U.S. Government, which is the Federal government's first set of audited financial statements, a requirement of the Government Management and Reform Act of 1994.

For further information, please refer to the FMS web site at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/>.

#### **10.10 What are the responsibilities and functions of CBO?**

CBO was created by the Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974. CBO's mission is to provide the Congress with the objective, timely, nonpartisan analyses needed for economic and budget decisions and with the information and estimates required for the Congressional budget process. CBO prepares analyses and estimates relating to the budget and the economy and presents options and alternatives for the Congress to consider but does not make recommendations on policy. CBO's services can be grouped into four categories: helping the Congress formulate a budget plan, helping it stay within that plan, helping it assess the impact of federal mandates, and helping it consider issues related to the budget and economic policy.

For further information, please refer to the CBO web site at <http://www.cbo.gov/>.

#### **10.11 What are the responsibilities and functions of GAO?**

The General Accounting Office is the investigative arm of Congress. GAO helps the Congress meet its Constitutional responsibilities and helps improve the performance and accountability of the Federal government for the American people. GAO examines the use of public funds, evaluates Federal programs and activities, and provides analyses, options, recommendations, and other assistance to help the Congress make effective oversight, policy, and funding decisions. In this context, GAO works to continuously improve the economy, efficiency, and effectiveness of the Federal government through financial audits, program reviews and evaluations, analyses, legal opinions, investigations, and other services. GAO's activities are designed to ensure the executive branch's accountability to the Congress under the Constitution and the government's accountability to the American people. GAO is dedicated to good government through its commitment to the core values of accountability, integrity, and reliability.

For further information, please refer to the GAO web site at <http://www.gao.gov/>.

#### **10.12 Do OMB, CBO, FMS, and GAO have any overlapping responsibilities?**

Yes. Here are a few examples:

- After OMB submits the President's Budget, CBO is responsible for re-estimating the Budget.
- Both OMB and CBO score the costs of legislation (both appropriations and direct spending included in authorization bills). Congress uses the CBO estimates during congressional consideration of individual bills to ensure that they are consistent with the budget resolution totals. The President uses OMB estimates to determine whether budget-related legislation exceeds the limits set by the Budget Enforcement Act. OMB reconciles or explains differences between the two sets of estimates.
- OMB and FMS work together to establish any new Treasury accounts, both during the preparation of the Budget and after bills become laws.
- OMB provides its scoring to FMS to assist in FMS' responsibility to prepare warrants.
- OMB and FMS work together to estimate actual outlays during the course of a year.

## **SECTION 10—OVERVIEW OF THE BUDGET PROCESS**

---

- FMS gathers financial information through FACTS II (Federal Agencies' Centralized Trial-Balance System) that allows agencies to submit one set of accounting data (mostly budgetary, some proprietary) that fulfills the needs of the SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources, the FMS 2108 Year-End Closing Statement, and the prior-year column of the Program and Financing schedule in the President's Budget.
- OMB and FMS worked together to develop the FACTS II systems. FMS develops U.S. Standard General Ledger guidance to comply with OMB definitions.
- Both FMS and GAO provide guidelines used by financial managers as they account for Federal finances.
- OMB uses GAO audits and evaluations as part of its review of agency programs.

## SECTION 15—BASIC BUDGET LAWS

**Table of Contents**

- 15.1 What laws govern the budget cycle?
- 15.2 Why is the Budget and Accounting Act important?
- 15.3 How does Congress enact the budget and what laws govern the process?
- 15.4 What laws govern the budget execution process when funds are actually spent?
- 15.5 What does the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993 require?
- 15.6 What do I need to know about the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990?

**15.1 What laws govern the budget cycle?**

The Federal budget cycle can be divided into three distinct phases that are generally sequential and yet intertwined. The first phase, which culminates in the transmittal of the President's budget proposals to Congress, is called the budget formulation phase. In the next phase, Congress acts upon laws that together constitute the enacted budget. Once the laws have been enacted, executive agencies carry out the laws in the budget execution phase. The Federal budget cycle is governed mainly by the following six laws, which we describe below:

- Budget and Accounting Act.
- Congressional Budget Act.
- Antideficiency Act.
- Impoundment Control Act.
- Government Performance and Results Act.
- Federal Credit Reform Act.

**15.2 Why is the Budget and Accounting Act important?**

Before this law, which was enacted in 1921, there was no annual centralized budgeting in the executive branch. Federal Government agencies usually sent budget requests independently to Congressional committees with no coordination of the various requests in formulating the Federal Government's budget. The Budget and Accounting Act required the President to coordinate the budget requests for all Government agencies and to send a comprehensive budget to Congress. It created the Bureau of the Budget, now the Office of Management and Budget, to help the President implement these requirements. It also required the President to include certain information in the budget. Congress has amended the requirements many times and has codified them as [Chapter 11, Title 31, U.S. Code](#). These are some of the requirements:

- "On or after the first Monday in January but not later than the first Monday in February of each year, the President shall submit a budget of the United States Government for the following fiscal year."
- "Each budget shall include a budget message and summary and supporting information. The President shall include in each budget the following...." The provision goes on to list about thirty items, such as expenditures and receipts for the past year through the fourth year following the budget year, information on debt, financial information, and information on employment levels.

- "Under regulations prescribed by the President, each agency shall provide information required by the President in carrying out this chapter. The President has access to, and may inspect, records of an agency to obtain information."
- "Estimated expenditures and proposed appropriations for the legislative branch and the judicial branch...shall be submitted to the President before October 16 of each year and included in the budget by the President without change."

### 15.3 How does Congress enact the budget and what laws govern the process?

Congress does not enact a budget, as such. Instead, the budget is enacted through several different types of legislation:

- Congress is first scheduled to adopt a concurrent resolution that sets forth the total budget outlays (spending) and budget receipts for the upcoming fiscal year.
- Next, legislation authorizing changes in programs and in taxes is scheduled to be enacted consistent with the budget resolution.
- Finally, Congress is scheduled to enact appropriations in as many as 13 regular appropriations bills for the up-coming fiscal year

Before the Congressional Budget Act (CBA), there was no annual centralized budgeting in the legislative branch. Each of the 13 regular annual appropriations bills was acted on separately by Congress and changes in taxes were authorized in another process. In addition, there was no established process to add up the total receipts and total spending in all the bills to reach the Federal Government's bottom line, whether it was a surplus or a deficit.

The CBA established the concurrent resolution on the budget, also known as the budget resolution, the House and Senate Budget Committees, the Congressional Budget Office, and procedures for relating individual appropriation actions to the budget totals. Also, the CBA defines some key budget terms, such as budget authority, that are used in all phases of the President's budget formulation process and the Congressional budget process.

The CBA was amended extensively by a series of laws that prescribed rules and procedures (including "sequestration") designed to constrain spending and receipts legislation. The latest was the Budget Enforcement Act (BEA) which was first enacted in 1990. The most recent version of the BEA constrained legislation enacted through 2002 that would increase spending or decrease receipts. It applied to appropriations acts and other laws, so it affected almost every aspect of budgeting. Key enforcement provisions of the BEA, including the discretionary caps, expired at the end of 2002.

The BEA divided spending into two types:

- *Discretionary spending*, which means the budget authority controlled by annual appropriations acts and the outlays that result from the budget authority; and
- *Mandatory spending*, which means budget authority and outlays resulting from permanent laws.

The BEA applied one set of rules to discretionary spending and another to mandatory spending and receipts. It includes receipts under the same rules that apply to mandatory spending because receipts are generally controlled by permanent laws. [Section 20.9](#) explains these rules and BEA reporting requirements in detail.



#### 15.4 What laws govern the budget execution process when funds are actually spent?

Chapters 13, 15, and 33 of Title 31, United States Code, prescribe rules and regulations for budget execution. Among these, the major laws are the Antideficiency Act, the Impoundment Control Act, the provisions known as the Economy Act which are found in section 1535, the provisions that govern the closing of accounts which are found in sections 1551 through 1555; and the "Miscellaneous Receipts Law" which is found in section 3302.

The Antideficiency Act requires OMB to apportion the accounts and to monitor spending; prohibits agencies from spending more than the amounts appropriated or apportioned, whichever is lower; requires that agencies control their spending; and provides penalties for overspending.

Specifically, agencies may not:

- Purchase services and merchandise *before* appropriations are enacted and accounts are apportioned;
- Enter into contracts that *exceed* the appropriation for the year or the amount apportioned by OMB, whichever is lower; or
- Pay bills when there is *no cash* in the appropriation or fund account.

The head of each agency is required to establish, by regulation, a system of administrative control of funds that:

- Restricts *both* obligation and expenditure (for example, outlays or disbursements) from each account to the *lower of* the amount apportioned by OMB or the amount available for obligation and/or expenditure.
- Enables the head of the agency to identify the person(s) responsible for violating the Act.

There are administrative and criminal *penalties* for violating the Antideficiency Act. Also, the agency head is required to report any violations to the President, through the OMB Director, and to the Congress. See [section 145](#) for instructions on reporting violations.

The Impoundment Control Act, which was enacted in 1974, requires that the President notify Congress whenever the Executive Branch withholds, delays, or precludes the obligation or expenditure of budget authority. There are two types of impoundment: the temporary *deferral* of funds and *rescission proposals* to permanently cancel spending. The Act also prescribes the rules that must be followed whenever the executive branch impounds funds. See [section 112](#) for instructions on reporting deferrals and rescission proposals and the rules that must be followed.

#### 15.5 What does the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993 require?

This law emphasizes managing for results—emphasizing what a program accomplishes and how well the accomplishments match with the program's purpose and objectives. It requires agencies to prepare strategic plans, annual performance plans, and annual performance reports. [Part 6](#) of this Circular addresses the requirements of this law.

### **15.6 What do I need to know about the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990?**

This law governs Federal credit programs—ones that make direct loans and loan guarantees. The Act prescribes a special budget treatment for direct loans and loan guarantees that measures their subsidy cost, rather than their cash flows. For most credit programs, Congress must provide budget authority equal to the subsidy cost in annual appropriations acts before the program can make direct loans or loan guarantees. [Section 185](#) of this Circular addresses the requirements of this law, which was enacted as an amendment of Title V of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974.

## SECTION 20—TERMS AND CONCEPTS (CLICK HERE TO GET UPDATED FILE)

### Table of Contents

- 20.1 What is the purpose of this section?
- 20.2 How do I use this section?
- 20.3 What special terms must I know?
- 20.4 What do I need to know about budget authority?
  - (a) Definition of budget authority
  - (b) Forms of budget authority
  - (c) Determining the period of availability of budget authority
  - (d) Determining the amount of budget authority
  - (e) Discretionary or mandatory budget authority
  - (f) Unobligated balance of budget authority
  - (g) Balance of unpaid obligations and obligated balances
  - (h) Reappropriation
  - (i) Rescission
  - (j) Transfer
  - (k) Transfer in the estimates
  - (l) Allocation
- 20.5 When should I record obligations and in what amounts?
- 20.6 What do I need to know about outlays?
- 20.7 What do I need to know about receipts, offsetting collections, and offsetting receipts?
  - (a) Overview
  - (b) How are collections presented in the President's Budget?
  - (c) Why are some collections placed in receipt accounts and others in expenditure accounts?
  - (d) How are offsetting collections and receipts classified?
  - (e) User charges
  - (f) Means of financing
- 20.8 What do I need to know about cash-equivalent transactions?
- 20.9 What do I need to know about discretionary spending, mandatory spending, and PAYGO?
- 20.10 What do I need to know about refunds?
- 20.11 What do I need to know about accounts and fund types?
- 20.12 What do I need to know about spending authority from offsetting collections?

Ex-20 Transfers of Budgetary Resources Among Federal Government Accounts

### Summary of Changes

Excludes information on recording investments in securities, disinvestment, and earnings, which was moved to section 113.

Clarifies the definition of reappropriations (section 20.4(h)).

Simplifies the discussion of offsetting collections and offsetting receipts (section 20.7).

### 20.1 What is the purpose of this section?

In this section we define budget terms—such as *budget authority*, *obligation*, and *outlay*—that you need to know in order to understand the budget process and this Circular. We also explain certain of the terms in depth.

### 20.2 How do I use this section?

- Go to the next section (section 20.3) if you just need a brief definition of a term commonly used in the budget process. That section lists the terms in alphabetical order.
- Go to sections 20.4–20.12 if you need a fuller explanation of the terms and concepts listed in the section titles of the Table of Contents above.
- Go to section 113 if you need to know about investing fund balances in Federal securities or other securities.
- Go to section 185, Federal credit, if you need to know more about the credit terms defined in section 20.3.

### 20.3 What special terms must I know?

***Advance appropriation*** means appropriations of new budget authority that become available one or more fiscal years beyond the fiscal year for which the appropriation act was passed. (See [section 20.4\(c\)](#).)

***Advance funding*** means appropriations of budget authority provided in an appropriations act to be used, if necessary, to cover obligations incurred late in the fiscal year for benefit payments in excess of the amount specifically appropriated in the act for that year, where the budget authority is charged to the appropriation for the program for the fiscal year following the fiscal year for which the appropriations act is passed. (See [section 20.4\(c\)](#).)

***Agency*** means a department or establishment of the Government for the purposes of this Circular. (Compare to *bureau*.)

***Allowance*** means a lump-sum included in the budget to represent certain transactions that are expected to increase or decrease budget authority, outlays, or receipts but that are not, for various reasons, reflected in the program details. For example, the budget might include an allowance to show the effect on the budget totals of a proposal that would affect many accounts by relatively small amounts, in order to avoid unnecessary detail in the presentations for the individual accounts. The President doesn't propose that Congress enact an allowance as such, but rather that it modify specific legislative measures as necessary to produce the increases or decreases represented by the allowance.

***Apportionment*** means a distribution made by OMB of amounts available for obligation in an appropriation or fund account into amounts available for specified time periods, program, activities, projects, objects, or any combinations of these. The apportioned amount limits the obligations that may be incurred. An apportionment may be further subdivided by an agency into allotments, suballotments, and allocations.

***Appropriated entitlement***—See entitlement authority.

**Appropriation** means a provision of law (not necessarily in an appropriations act) authorizing the expenditure of funds for a given purpose. Usually, but not always, an appropriation provides budget authority (see [section 20.4.](#))

**Baseline** means an estimate of the receipts, outlays, and deficit or surplus that would result from continuing current law through the period covered by the budget. (See [section 80.](#))

**BEA** means the Budget Enforcement Act of 1990, as amended. (See [section 15.3.](#))

**Borrowing authority** is a type of budget authority that permits obligations and outlays to be financed by borrowing. (See [section 20.4.](#))

**Budget** means the *Budget of the United States Government*, which sets forth the President's comprehensive financial plan and indicates the President's priorities for the Federal Government. (See [section 10.1.](#))

**Budget authority (BA)** means the authority provided by law to incur financial obligations that will result in outlays. Specific forms of budget authority include appropriations, borrowing authority, contract authority, and spending authority from offsetting collections. (See [section 20.4.](#))

**Budget totals** means the totals included in the budget for budget authority, outlays, receipts, and the surplus or the deficit. Some presentations in the budget distinguish on-budget totals from off-budget totals. On-budget totals reflect the transactions of all Federal Government entities, except those excluded from the budget totals by law. Off-budget totals reflect the transactions of Government entities that laws exclude from the on-budget totals (those of the Social Security trust funds and the Postal Service). The budget presents combined on- and off-budget totals to derive totals for Federal activity, sometimes called the unified budget totals. For example, see the end of the chapter "Federal Programs by Agency and Account" in the *Analytical Perspectives* volume of the most recent budget.

**Budgetary resource** means an amount available to enter into new obligations and to liquidate them. Budgetary resources are made up of new budget authority (including direct spending authority provided in existing statute and obligation limitations), and unobligated balances of budget authority provided in previous years.

**Bureau** means the principal subordinate organizational units of an agency.

**Cap** means the legal limits for each fiscal year on the budget authority or outlays for a category of discretionary spending. (See [section 20.9.](#))

**Cash equivalent transaction** means a transaction in which the Government makes outlays or receives collections in a form other than cash, or in which the outlays or receipts recorded in the budget differ from the cash because the cash does not accurately measure the value of the transaction. (See [section 20.8.](#))

**Collection** means money collected by the Government that the budget records as either a receipt, an offsetting collection, or an offsetting receipt. (See [section 20.7.](#))

**Contract authority** permits you to incur obligations in advance of an appropriation, offsetting collections, or receipts to make outlays to liquidate the obligations. Typically, Congress provides contract authority in an authorizing statute to allow you to incur obligations in anticipation of the collection of receipts or offsetting collections that will be used to liquidate the obligations. (See [section 20.4.](#))

**Cost** means the price or cash value of the resources used to produce a program, project, or activity. This term is used in many different contexts. When used in connection with Federal credit programs, the term means the estimated long-term cost to the Government of a direct loan or loan guarantee, calculated on a net present value basis, excluding administrative costs and any incidental effects on governmental receipts or outlays. (See [section 185](#).) For specific instructions on estimating costs, refer to the pertinent OMB instructions: for cost principles for educational institutions, see Circular No. A-21; for estimating costs for user charges, see Circular No. A-25; for rental and construction costs of Government quarters, see Circular No. A-45; for allowable costs for audits, see Circular No. A-50; for cost estimates in performing commercial activities, see Circular No. A-76; and for cost principles for State, local and Indian Tribal Governments, see Circular No. A-97.

**Credit program account** means a budget account that receives and obligates appropriations to cover the subsidy cost of a direct loan or loan guarantee and disburses the subsidy amount to a financing account. (See [section 185](#).)

**Current services estimates**—See baseline.

**Deficit** means the amount by which outlays exceed receipts in a fiscal year. It may refer to the on-budget, off-budget, or unified budget deficit. (See *budget totals*.)

**Deferral** means any executive branch action or inaction that temporarily withholds, delays, or effectively precludes the obligation or expenditure of budgetary resources. The President reports deferrals to Congress by special message. They are not identified separately in the budget. (See [section 112.1](#).)

**Deposit fund** means an account established to record amounts held temporarily by the Government until ownership is determined (for example, earnest money paid by bidders for mineral leases) or held by the Government as an agent for others (for example, State and local income taxes withheld from Federal employees' salaries and not yet paid to the State or local government). (See [section 20.11\(f\)](#).)

**Direct loan** means a disbursement of funds by the Government to a non-Federal borrower under a contract that requires the repayment of such funds with or without interest. The term also includes certain equivalent transactions that extend credit. (See [section 185](#).) (Compare to *loan guarantee*.)

**Direct spending**—See mandatory spending.

**Discretionary spending** means budgetary resources (except those provided to fund mandatory spending programs) provided in appropriations acts. (See [section 20.9](#).) (Compare to *mandatory spending*.)

**Emergency appropriation** means an appropriation that the President and the Congress have designated as an emergency requirement under the BEA. (See [section 20.9](#).)

**Entitlement authority** means the authority, generally provided by an authorizing statute, to make payments (including loans and grants) to persons or non-federal entities who meet the requirements established by law. Examples of entitlement authority include benefit payments for Social Security, medicare, and unemployment insurance. Some programs, such as the food stamp program, veteran's compensation, and Medicaid, are classified as entitlements even though they are funded by appropriations acts, because the authorizing statute for the program obligates the United States to make payments. These are referred to as *mandatory appropriations* or *appropriated entitlements*. Also see *mandatory spending* ([section 20.9](#).)

**Expenditure transfer**—See transfers.

**FACTS II** means the Treasury Federal Agencies' Centralized Trial-balance System II. Agency staff use this system to electronically submit the accounting data that (a) support the SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources and (b) are used for much of the initial set of past year data in MAX schedule P. (See [sections 82.15](#) and [130.2](#))

**Federal funds group** refers to the moneys collected and spent by the Government through accounts other than those designated as trust funds. The Federal funds group includes general, special, public enterprise, and intragovernmental funds. (See [section 20.11](#).) (Compare to *trust funds*.)

**Financing account** means a non-budgetary account that records all of the cash flows resulting from direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments made on or after October 1, 1991. At least one financing account is associated with each credit program account. Separate financing accounts are required for direct loan cash flows and for guaranteed cash flows if the program account provides subsidy cost for both forms of credit. The transactions of the financing accounts, which are a *means of financing*, are not included in the budget totals. (See [section 185](#).) (Compare to *liquidating account*.)

**Fiscal year** means the Government's accounting period. It begins on October 1 and ends on September 30, and is designated by the calendar year in which it ends.

**Forward funding** means appropriations of budget authority that become available for obligation in the last quarter of the fiscal year for the financing of ongoing grant programs during the next fiscal year. (See [section 20.4\(c\)](#).)

**Full-time equivalent (FTE) employment** is the basic measure of the levels of employment used in the budget. It is the total number of hours worked (or to be worked) divided by the number of compensable hours applicable to each fiscal year. (See [section 32.1](#).)

**Functional classification** means the array of budget authority, outlays, and other budget data according to the major purpose served—for example, agriculture, national defense, and transportation. (See [section 79.3](#).)

**General fund** means the accounts for receipts not earmarked by law for a specific purpose, the proceeds of general borrowing, and the expenditure of these moneys.

**Impoundment** means any executive action or inaction that temporarily or permanently withholds, delays, or precludes the obligation or expenditure of budgetary resources.

**Intragovernmental fund**—See revolving fund.

**Liquidating account** means a budget account that records all cash flows to and from the Government resulting from direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments made prior to October 1, 1991. Unlike financing accounts, these accounts are included in the budget totals. (See [section 185](#).) (Compare to *financing account*.)

**Loan guarantee** means any guarantee, insurance, or other pledge with respect to the payment of all or a part of the principal or interest on any debt obligation of a non-Federal borrower to a non-Federal lender. The term does not include the insurance of deposits, shares, or other withdrawable accounts in financial institutions. (See [section 185](#).) (Compare to *direct loan*.)

**Mandatory appropriation**—See entitlement authority.

**Mandatory spending** means spending controlled by laws other than appropriation acts (including spending for entitlement programs) and spending for the food stamp program. Although the BEA uses the term *direct spending* to mean this, *mandatory spending* is commonly used instead. (See [section 20.9](#).) (Compare to *discretionary spending*.)

**Means of financing** refers to borrowing, the change in cash balances, and certain other transactions that are involved in financing a deficit. The term is also used to refer to the debt repayment, the change in cash balances, and certain other transactions involved in using a surplus. By definition, the means of financing are not treated as receipts or outlays. (See [section 20.7\(f\)](#).)

**Non-expenditure transfer**—See transfer.

**Obligated balance** means the cumulative amount of budget authority that has been obligated but not yet outlayed. It is also known as unpaid obligations (which are made up of accounts payable and undelivered orders) net of accounts receivable and unfilled customers orders. (See [section 20.4\(g\)](#).)

**Obligation** means a binding agreement that will result in outlays, immediately or in the future. Budgetary resources must be available before obligations can be incurred legally. (See [section 20.5](#).)

**Obligation limitation** means a type of budgetary resource appropriated to accounts in a manner similar to budget authority that limits the amount of budget authority already made available for obligation by another law. The obligation limitation is effectively the amount of new budget authority available for obligation for that period. Obligation limitations are quite common in Transportation and General Service Administration accounts.

**Off-budget**—See budget totals.

**Offsetting collections** mean collections that, by law, are credited directly to expenditure accounts and deducted from gross budget authority and outlays of the expenditure account, rather than added to receipts. Usually, they are authorized to be spent for the purposes of the account without further action by Congress. They result from business-type or market-oriented activities with the public and intragovernmental transactions with other Government accounts. The authority to spend offsetting collections is a form of budget authority. (See [sections 20.4\(b\)](#) and [20.7](#).) (Compare to *receipts* and *offsetting receipts*.)

**Offsetting receipts** mean collections that are deposited in offsetting receipt accounts and deducted from gross budget authority and outlays, rather than added to receipts. Usually they are deducted at the level of the agency and subfunction, but in some cases they are deducted at the level of the government as a whole. They are not authorized to be credited to expenditure accounts. The legislation that authorizes the offsetting receipts may earmark them for a specific purpose and either appropriate them for expenditure for that purpose or require them to be appropriated in annual appropriations acts before they can be spent. Like offsetting collections, they result from business-type or market-oriented activities with the public and intragovernmental transactions with other Government accounts. (Compare to *receipts* and *offsetting collections*.)

**On-budget**—See budget totals.

**Outlay** means a payment to liquidate an obligation (other than the repayment of debt principal). Outlays generally are equal to cash disbursements but also are recorded for cash-equivalent transactions, such as the subsidy cost of direct loans and loan guarantees, and interest accrued on public issues of the public debt. Outlays are the measure of Government spending. (See [section 20.6](#).)



**Outyear estimates** mean estimates presented in the budget for the years beyond the budget year (usually four) of budget authority, outlays, receipts, and other items (such as debt).

**Pay-as-you-go (PAYGO)** means the requirements of the BEA that result in a sequestration if the estimated combined result of legislation affecting mandatory spending or receipts is a net cost for a fiscal year. (See [section 20.9](#).)

**Public enterprise fund**—See revolving fund.

**Reappropriation** means an extension of the availability of unobligated balances of budget authority that have expired or would otherwise expire as a result of legislation enacted subsequent to the law that provided the budget authority. (See [section 20.4\(h\)](#), [section 121.10](#).)

**Receipts** mean collections that result from the Government's exercise of its sovereign power to tax or otherwise compel payment, and gifts of money to the Government. They are compared to outlays in calculating a surplus or deficit. (See [section 20.7](#).) (Compare to *offsetting collections* and *offsetting receipts*.)

**Reduction** means either a) rescission (see [section 20.4\(i\)](#)), b) across-the-board reduction (see [section 82.8](#)) or c) sequestration (see [section 20.9](#)).

**Refund** means the return of excess payments to or by the Government. (See [section 20.10](#).)

**Reimbursable obligation** means an obligation financed by offsetting collections credited to an expenditure account in payment for goods and services provided by that account. (See [section 83.5](#).)

**Rescission** means a legislative action that permanently cancels new budget authority or the availability of unobligated balances of budget authority prior to the time the authority would otherwise have expired. (See [section 20.4\(i\)](#).)

**Revolving fund** means a fund that conducts continuing cycles of business-like activity, in which the fund charges for the sale of products or services and uses the proceeds to finance its spending, usually without requirement for annual appropriations. There are three types of revolving funds: Public enterprise funds, which conduct business-like operations mainly with the public, intragovernmental revolving funds, which conduct business-like operations mainly within and between Government agencies, and trust revolving funds, which conduct business-like operations mainly with the public. (See [section 20.11](#).)

**Scorekeeping** means measuring the budget effects of legislation, generally in terms of budget authority, receipts, and outlays for purposes of the BEA. (See [section 20.9](#).)

**Sequestration** means the cancellation of budgetary resources provided by discretionary appropriations or mandatory spending legislation, following various procedures prescribed by the BEA. A sequestration may occur in response to a discretionary appropriation that causes discretionary spending to exceed the discretionary spending caps set by the BEA or in response to net costs resulting from the combined result of legislation affecting mandatory spending or receipts (referred to as a "pay-as-you-go" sequestration). (See [section 20.9](#).)

**Special fund** means a Federal fund account for receipts earmarked for specific purposes and the expenditure of these receipts. (See [section 20.11](#).)

**Spending authority from offsetting collections** is a type of budget authority that permits obligations and outlays to be financed by offsetting collections (see [section 20.4](#)). (Compare to *offsetting collections*.)

**Subsidy** means the same as "cost" when it is used in connection with Federal credit programs. (See [section 185](#).)

**Surplus** means the amount by which receipts exceed outlays in a fiscal year. It may refer to the on-budget, off-budget, or unified budget surplus. (See *budget totals*.)

**Supplemental appropriation** means an appropriation enacted subsequent to a regular annual appropriations act, when the need for funds is too urgent to be postponed until the next regular annual appropriations act. (See [section 110.2](#).)

**Transfer** means to move budgetary resources from one budget account to another. Depending on the circumstances, the budget may record a transfer as an expenditure transfer, which means a transfer that involves an outlay, or as a nonexpenditure transfer, which means a transfer that doesn't involve an outlay. (See [section 20.4\(j\)](#).)

**Transfer in the estimates** means a proposal to stop funding an activity through one budget account and begin funding it through another account. A transfer in the estimates doesn't involve a transfer of budgetary resources between the accounts. (See [section 20.4\(k\)](#).)

**Treasury Appropriation Fund Symbol (TAFS)** refers to the separate Treasury accounts for each appropriation title based on the availability of the resources in the account. The TAFS is a combination of Federal account symbol and availability code (e.g., annual, multi-year, or no-year). (See [section 20.4](#).)

**Trust fund** refers to a type of account, designated by law a trust fund, for receipts or offsetting receipts earmarked for specific purposes and the expenditure of these receipts. Some revolving funds are designated as trust funds, and these are called trust revolving funds. Trust revolving funds have no receipt account and the collections are credited directly to the expenditure account. (See [section 20.11](#).) (Compare to *special funds* and *revolving funds*.)

**Trust funds group** refers to the moneys collected and spent by the Government through trust fund accounts. (See [section 20.11](#).) (Compare to *Federal funds group*.)

**Unexpended balance** means the sum of the unobligated and obligated balances.

**Unobligated balance** means the cumulative amount of budget authority that is not obligated and that remains available for obligation under law.

**User charges** are charges assessed for the provision of Government services and for the sale or use of Government goods or resources. The payers of the user charge must be limited in the authorizing legislation to those receiving special benefits from, or subject to regulation by, the program or activity beyond the benefits received by the general public or broad segments of the public (such as those who pay income taxes or customs duties). User charges are defined and the policy regarding user charges is established in [OMB Circular A-25](#), "User Charges" (July 8, 1993). The term encompasses proceeds from the sale or use of government goods and services, including the sale of natural resources (such as timber, oil, and minerals) and proceeds from asset sales (such as property, plant, and equipment). (See [section 20.7\(e\)](#).)

**Warrant** means an official document issued by the Secretary of the Treasury, pursuant to law, that establishes the amount of appropriations that can be obligated and disbursed.

## 20.4 What do I need to know about budget authority?

### (a) *Definition of budget authority.*

Budget authority (BA) means the authority provided by law to incur financial obligations that will result in outlays. This definition is the same as the one contained in section 3(2) of the Congressional Budget and Impoundment Control Act of 1974, which Congress uses in the congressional budget process. You violate the law if you enter into contracts, issue purchase orders, hire employees, or otherwise obligate the Government to make a payment before a law has provided budget authority for that purpose ([see Appendix G](#)).

### (b) *Forms of budget authority.*

Most laws provide budget authority in the form of appropriations, but some laws provide budget authority in the form of contract authority, authority to borrow, or spending authority from offsetting collections. The following table summarizes the characteristics of each form of budget authority, and the text following the table discusses them in more depth.

#### FORMS OF BUDGET AUTHORITY

Form of budget authority	Summary of Characteristics
Appropriation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Authorizes obligations and outlays using general funds, special funds, or trust funds.</li> <li>• Provided in appropriations acts and other laws.</li> <li>• May authorize the use of cash-equivalent payments.</li> <li>• Not all appropriations provide budget authority.</li> </ul>
Contract authority	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Authorizes obligations but not outlays.</li> <li>• Typically provided in authorizing laws with variations in the way obligations are liquidated.</li> </ul>
Authority to borrow	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Authorizes obligations with outlays to be financed by borrowing, usually from Treasury.</li> <li>• Typically provided in laws that authorize business-like operations and require the borrowing to be repaid, with interest, out of the business proceeds.</li> </ul>
Spending authority from offsetting collections.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Authorizes obligations and outlays using offsetting collections.</li> <li>• Typically provided in authorizing laws.</li> <li>• Appropriations acts limit obligations in some cases.</li> <li>• Obligations may be incurred against orders from other Federal accounts, but not from the public.</li> </ul>

- (1) *Appropriations*, as a type of budget authority, permit you to incur obligations and make outlays (payments). (Not all appropriations provide budget authority, as explained below.) Congress enacts appropriations in annual appropriations acts and other laws. An appropriation may make funds available from the general fund, special funds, or trust funds, or it may authorize the spending of offsetting collections, which are credited to expenditure accounts (including revolving funds).

A law that authorizes you to incur obligations and liquidate them through cash-equivalent payments (see [section 20.8](#)) constitutes an appropriation of budget authority.

Some appropriations do not provide budget authority, because they do not provide authority to incur new obligations. Amounts appropriated to liquidate contract authority, to liquidate deficiencies, or to repay debt provide the cash needed to liquidate obligations already incurred. Because they do not authorize you to incur new obligations, they are not appropriations of budget authority, and you do not record them as such. Although there are many variations in the language providing such appropriations, usually the appropriation heading for such appropriations includes a subheading such as "(Liquidation of Contract Authority)", and the language reads something like, for "payment of obligations...."

For purposes of the Antideficiency Act, the definition of the term "appropriations" is broader. As defined by the Act, it means all new budget authority and balances of budget authority as described here.

- (2) *Contract authority* permits you to incur obligations in advance of an appropriation, offsetting collections, or receipts that enable you to make outlays to liquidate the obligations. Typically, Congress provides contract authority in an authorizing statute to allow you to incur obligations in anticipation of the collection of receipts or offsetting collections that will be used to liquidate the obligations. When you receive the appropriated receipts or the collections, you replace the contract authority with the appropriation or the spending authority from the offsetting collections to cover the obligations and subsequently liquidate the obligations.

For some programs, the law authorizes you to use offsetting collections to liquidate the obligations incurred against the contract authority without further appropriation action. In a few cases, such as the foreign military sales program, the law that provides the contract authority also appropriates the receipts without further appropriation action.

For other programs, such as certain highway and airport and airway programs, Congress as a matter of custom requires you to seek an appropriation of receipts to liquidate the obligations.

In some instances, if the program does not have sufficient collections to liquidate the obligations incurred against contract authority, Congress may enact a general fund appropriation.

- (3) *Authority to borrow* permits you to incur obligations and authorizes you to borrow funds to liquidate the obligations. Usually, the law authorizing the borrowing specifies that you must borrow from the Treasury, but in a few cases it authorizes borrowing directly from the public. Laws usually authorize borrowing for business-like operations, such as the Tennessee Valley Authority, which generates and sells electrical power. Such laws require the program to repay the borrowing, with interest, out of business proceeds.
- (4) *Spending authority from offsetting collections* permits you to incur obligations and to make outlays using offsetting collections.

You record *new* spending authority from offsetting collections and the offsetting collections in the program and financing schedule of an account (see [sections 82.3](#) and [82.6](#)).

For *annual* and *multi-year* accounts, the spending authority from the offsetting collections belongs to the Treasury account that filled the order. (See section 20.11(a) for the distinction between Treasury accounts (TAFS) and budget accounts.) The availability of the spending authority is generally the same as the Treasury account to which it belongs. If the annual or multi-year Treasury account has *expired*, then you should NOT record the collection as *new* spending authority (schedule P lines 6800 and 6900) because it is not available to incur new obligations. It is not new budget authority. However, collections that belong to expired Treasury accounts are available to pay old bills, until the authority is canceled. You record collections in expired accounts as offsetting collections along with the collections in unexpired accounts (schedule P lines 8800 through 8845). You report the portion credited to expired accounts only on schedule P line 8896. For more information on determining the period of availability of budget authority, see [section 20.4\(c\)](#). As discussed in [section 20.11\(a\)](#), each budget account covers all the Treasury accounts with the same appropriation title. The program and financing schedule covers:

- the unexpired accounts (annual, multi-year and no-year); and
- all the expired accounts (for example, the five expired annual accounts illustrated in 20-11(a)).

You subtract all offsetting collections (unexpired and expired) from gross outlays to yield net outlays so that the contribution of the budget account to the Federal Government's bottom line (the surplus or deficit) can be determined.

For *no-year* accounts, you record gross new budget authority (spending authority from offsetting collections) (schedule P lines 6800 and 6900) equal to the collections for the year and record the collections (schedule P lines 8800 - 8845) as an offset to the budget authority.

The Congressional Budget Act defines offsetting receipts and collections as negative budget authority. In the congressional budget process, this subjects proposed provisions of law that affect offsetting receipts and collections to the rules that pertain to budget authority.

*Amount precluded from obligation.* A law may preclude you from using some of the collections to incur obligations. For example, in some cases Congress enacts obligation limitations in appropriations acts that limit the authority to spend offsetting collections provided in authorizing laws. In other cases, the law authorizing the collection may itself limit the amount of obligations you may incur, such as through a benefit formula that determines the amount of benefits that may be obligated. In these cases you need to reduce the spending authority from cash collections by the precluded amount to determine the amount of budget authority that is available. The budget presents the unavailable amounts in an unavailable receipts schedule (see [section 86.6](#)).

You record budget authority in the year when the collections become available for obligation under the law. As a general rule, you must record obligations first against budget authority from collections in that year. To the extent that budget authority from collections in that year are not adequate to cover obligations, you then record obligations against budget authority that is made available from previously unavailable balances, as long as you do not exceed the obligation limitation.

You always deduct the full amount of offsetting collections (cash) from gross budget authority and gross outlays in the year you collect them, even where a law precludes you from obligating all or a portion of the collections in that year. For this reason, an account can have negative net budget authority or outlays.

(c) *Period of availability of budget authority.*

When a law appropriates budget authority, it sets the period during which you can use it to incur new obligations. We call this the period of availability for *new obligation* of the budget authority, and the period normally is specified in the law providing the budget authority. The period of availability for incurring new obligations is shorter than the period of availability for making *disbursements*, which is covered by a general law. Each is described below.

*Period of availability for incurring new obligations*

- *Annual budget authority.* This term refers to budget authority that is available for obligation during only one fiscal year or less. One year is the default period of availability for annual appropriations acts, because a general provision in each of the acts specifies that the amounts provided in the act are available for one year, unless the act expressly provides otherwise. Even if there were not such a provision, the preamble of an appropriations act says that it is for a specific fiscal year. For example, the following language in an appropriation act would provide one-year budget authority: "For expenses of the Office of the Secretary, \$1,500,000."
- *Multi-year budget authority.* The language for a specific appropriation of budget authority in an appropriations act or the authorization of the appropriation may make all or some portion of the amount available for obligation for a specified period of time in excess of one fiscal year. Usually, the period covers two or more whole fiscal years, but it may cover a period that includes part of the second fiscal year. We refer to such budget authority as multi-year budget authority or, specifically, as two-year budget authority, three-year budget authority, etc. For example, if the following language appeared in an appropriations act for 2003, it would provide two-year budget authority: "For research and development, \$1,500,000, to remain available until September 30, 2004."
- *No-year budget authority.* The language for a specific appropriation of budget authority or the authorization of the appropriation may make all or some portion of the amount available until expended. That means you can incur obligations against it indefinitely. We refer to this as no-year budget authority. For example, the following language provides no-year budget authority: "For construction, improvements, repair or replacement of physical facilities, \$1,500,000, to remain available until expended." Authorizing laws that make appropriations seldom limit the period of availability, so most budget authority provided in authorizing laws is no-year budget authority.

Usually an appropriations act makes budget authority available beginning on October 1 of the fiscal year for which the appropriation act is passed. However, there are three types of appropriations where that is not the case. They are described below, and the budget *Appendix* lists the accounts in the budget with such appropriations under the heading, "Advance Appropriations, Advance Funding, and Forward Funding."

- *Advance appropriation* means appropriations of new budget authority that become available one or more fiscal years beyond the fiscal year for which the appropriation act was passed. For example, if the following language appeared in an appropriations act for fiscal year 2003, it would provide an advance appropriation for fiscal year 2004: "For operating expenses, \$1,500,000, to

become available on October 1, 2003." Under current BEA scoring guidelines, new budget authority for advance appropriations is scored in the fiscal year in which the funds become available for obligation. In this example, you would record the budget authority in fiscal year 2004.

- *Advance funding* means appropriations of budget authority provided in an appropriations act to be used, if necessary, to cover obligations incurred late in the fiscal year for benefit payments in excess of the amount specifically appropriated in the act for that year, where the budget authority is charged to the appropriation for the program for the fiscal year following the fiscal year for which the appropriations act is passed. When such budget authority is used, the budget records an increase in the budget authority for the fiscal year in which it is used and a reduction in the budget authority for the following fiscal year. The following language, when added to regular appropriation language, provides advance funding: "...together with such sums as may be necessary to be charged to the subsequent year appropriation for the payment of compensation and other benefits for any period subsequent to August 15 of the current year."
- *Forward funding* means appropriations of budget authority that are made for obligation in the last quarter of the fiscal year for the financing of ongoing grant programs during the next fiscal year. The budget records the budget authority in the fiscal year in which it is appropriated. The following language, if it appeared in an appropriation act for 2003, would provide forward funding, which would be recorded in fiscal year 2003: "... of which \$2,000,000,000 shall become available on July 1, 2003 and shall remain available through September 30, 2004 for academic year 2003–2004."

*Period of availability for making disbursements.*

Under a general law, *annual* budget authority and *multi-year* budget authority may disburse during the first two phases of the following three phases that make up the life cycle of the budget authority.

- *Unexpired* phase. During this time period the budget authority is available for incurring "new" obligations. You may make "new" grants or sign "new" contracts during this phase and you may make disbursements to liquidate the obligations. This phase lasts for a set number of years. Annual budget authority lasts for up to one fiscal year. Multi-year authority lasts for longer periods, currently from over one fiscal year up to 15 fiscal years, and no-year authority lasts indefinitely.
- *Expired* phase. During this time period, the budget authority is no longer available for new obligations but is still available for disbursement. This phase lasts five years after the last unexpired year unless the expiration period has been lengthened by legislation. Specifically, you may not incur new obligations against expired budget authority, but you may liquidate existing obligations by making disbursements.
- However, you may use the expired budget authority to make certain adjustments to obligations that were incurred before the budget authority expired. For example, you could make an upward adjustment in previously recorded obligations for transportation charges, under an agreement to pay actual transportation charges, if they turned out to be greater than originally estimated. Unless there is an exception in law, you may use expired authority to make adjustments to obligations or disbursements only during a period of five years after the last unexpired year. The expired period can be lengthened by legislation. If you have a program with a legitimate need to disburse funds for more than five years after the authority expires for obligation—for example, to make disbursements over many years under direct loan contracts, to pay termination costs under a contract, or to make payments under a lease—and your OMB representative approves, you may

propose special language to disburse over a period longer than five years. ([section 95.8](#)). You may disburse during the longer period only if the special language is enacted in law.

- *Canceled* phase. After the last expired year, the account is closed, and the balances are canceled. The authority to disburse is canceled and is no longer available for any purpose. Any offsetting collections credited to the account at the time the account is canceled or subsequently must be transferred to miscellaneous receipts in the Treasury. Any old bills with valid obligations that show up after the account is closed must be obligated against and disbursed from budget authority that is available for the same general purpose but still in the unexpired phase. For example, an old bill from obligations incurred against an FY 1998 annual salaries and expense (S&E) account that arrives after the authority is canceled must be obligated and disbursed against the corresponding FY 2004 annual S&E account.

*No-year* authority usually stays in the unexpired phase until fully obligated and disbursed. When the purposes for which the authority was made available have been achieved, the account may be closed and the authority canceled.

(d) *Determining the amount of budget authority.*

If a law provides budget authority in a specific amount, we refer to it as *definite* budget authority. We consider the budget authority definite even if the language reads "not to exceed" a specified amount. You record the specified amount as budget authority. For example, this language would provide definite budget authority of \$100 million: "For salaries and expenses, not to exceed \$100,000,000."

If a law doesn't specify an amount of budget authority, but, instead, specifies a variable factor that determines the amount, we refer to the budget authority as *indefinite*. If the law provides "such sums as may be necessary" to cover the obligations resulting from an entitlement (such as unemployment insurance), record budget authority in the past year equal to the amount obligated and in other years equal to your estimate of obligations. If a law authorizes you to obligate all of the receipts from a specified source, record budget authority equal to the amount of receipts you collected in the past year and equal to amounts you estimate you will collect in other years.

If a law appropriates a specific amount to be derived from receipts, it limits the amount of budget authority actually provided to the lower of the actual receipts or the amount specified. For example, if the language read, "... and, in addition, \$75,000,000 of the amounts collected under section 101 of the Authorization Act of 1995," you could obligate only the amount actually collected, up to \$75,000,000. Similarly, if a law appropriates an amount to be derived from a special or trust fund, it limits the amount of budget authority actually provided to the lower of the amount of the balances in the fund or the specified amount. For example, language that reads, "For necessary expenses, \$1,500,000, to be derived from the Land Restoration Trust Fund," allows you to obligate only the amount actually in the fund and no more than \$1,500,000. If a law authorizes you to obligate all of the receipts credited to a fund, record budget authority equal to the amount of receipts collected by the fund in the past year and equal to the amounts you estimate you will collect in other years.

Some laws that provide authority to borrow limit the amount of debt that may be outstanding at any one time. This may limit your ability to incur obligations indirectly, because you must consider your ability to borrow the cash needed to liquidate the obligations that will become due, but it doesn't determine the level of obligations directly. In such cases, treat the budget authority as indefinite and record the amount that you obligated in the past year or estimate you will obligate in other years. Under the BEA scorekeeping guidelines, OMB will score legislation that imposes or changes a limit of this type only to the extent that we estimate that it will alter the amount of obligations that will be incurred (see [Appendix A](#), scorekeeping guideline no. 16).



Most budget authority provided in appropriations acts is definite, and most budget authority provided in other laws is indefinite.

(e) *Discretionary or mandatory budget authority.*

The Budget Enforcement Act of 1990 (BEA) requires us to classify budget authority (and outlays) as either discretionary spending or mandatory spending, and applies a different set of rules to each type of spending. We explain this further in section 20.9.

(f) *Unobligated balance of budget authority*

An unobligated balance consists of the cumulative amounts of budget authority that are not obligated and that remain available for obligation under law.

In budget execution, the unobligated balance of budget authority at the end of the year is the total amount that is available for obligation during the fiscal year.

In budget formulation, there is a related but not identical concept called "unobligated balance carried forward." These are the unobligated balances net of the balances that expire at the end of the fiscal year. Unobligated balances carried forward must meet *all* of the following conditions:

- They are balances of budget authority that have never been obligated or that have been obligated and deobligated.
- They are balances of budget authority that do not expire at the end of the fiscal year.
- You can quantify the amount by subtracting the obligations to date from the amount of budget authority provided (new budget authority and unobligated balances carried forward at the start of the year from the previous fiscal year). That is, the law providing the budget authority must have specified a definite amount or an indefinite amount based on the appropriation of collections from a specified source. You can not quantify "such sums as may be necessary".

You shouldn't count unavailable offsetting receipts or unavailable offsetting collections as budget authority and, therefore, you shouldn't have any unobligated balances as a result of them. Report them in a schedule of unavailable receipts (see [section 86.6](#)).

In budget schedules, such as the program and financing schedule, the unobligated balance carried forward at the end of a year is equal to the unobligated balance at the start of the next year.

The balances you report for the start and end of the past year must be consistent with the amounts reported in the Treasury Combined Statement (TCS) published by the Department of the Treasury (previously called the Treasury Annual Report (TAR)). (See [section 82.15](#).)

(g) *Obligated balance.*

The term obligated balance is a term of art that is defined in law as a "net" concept. It is *not* the unpaid obligations. The obligated balances are calculated as follows:

- Take the unpaid obligations (which is the sum of the accounts payable and the undelivered orders).
- Subtract the accounts receivable and the unfilled orders from Federal sources.

(h) *Reappropriation.*

A reappropriation is an extension of the availability of unobligated balances of budget authority that have expired or would otherwise expire as a result of legislation enacted subsequent to the law that provided the budget authority. The term no longer applies to extensions of the availability of unobligated balances of budget authority that result from standing provisions of law, enacted before the budget authority was provided, or from provisions of law included in the same law that appropriates the funds.

Reappropriations of expired balances that are newly available for obligation in the current or budget year will be recorded as new budget authority (reappropriations) in the year they are newly available, in the full amount of the potential extension.

Unlike previous years, reappropriations of unexpired balances or reappropriations of expired balances that cannot take effect until a fiscal year beyond the budget year will be scored as cap adjustments under BEA scoring (i.e., reductions will be made to outyear BA caps for newly enacted authority) and will be reported as balance transfers in the year they are newly available for obligation.

In the past, because of the difficulty in estimating in advance exactly how much would be extended and when, reappropriations were not always treated consistently in budget formulation and execution. Under the revised treatment, reappropriations will be treated in the same manner for both.

Similar to reappropriations of unexpired balances, extensions in availability resulting from standing provisions of law or from provisions of law included in the same law that appropriates the funds will be shown as balance transfers. See [section 121.10](#) for a complete discussion on reporting for all types of extensions in availability.

(i) *Rescission.*

Rescission means a permanent cancellation in law of budgetary resources (budget authority or unobligated balances). You record a rescission as negative budget authority in the year it takes effect, regardless of whether it cancels budget authority or unobligated balances. A law that precludes the obligation of budgetary resources in one year and authorizes their obligation in a subsequent year in which they were not available for obligation, constitutes a rescission and a reappropriation. In such cases, you record a rescission in the first year and a reappropriation in the second. Include enacted rescissions in the regular program and financing and other regular schedules. Proposed rescissions require separate budget schedules (see section 82.9).

Amounts rescinded from special fund accounts revert either to unavailable collections of the special fund or to the general fund of the Treasury, depending on the circumstances and the specific requirements of the law making the rescission. As a general rule, amounts rescinded from an annually appropriated special fund account revert to unavailable collections, which may be appropriated subsequently. However, if the rescinding law indicates that the rescinded amounts are *permanently* canceled, the amounts revert to the general fund and are not available for subsequent appropriation. A rescission of permanently appropriated special fund receipts reverts to the general fund of the Treasury, and the receipts are no longer available for appropriation as special fund receipts.

(j) *Transfer.*

- (1) *Definition.* Transfer means to reduce budgetary resources (budget authority and unobligated balances) in one account and increase them in another, by the same amount.

- (2) *Authority*. You can't make a transfer unless a law authorizes it. The law may specify a particular transfer or provide general transfer authority within specified limits.
- (3) *Expenditure transfer or nonexpenditure transfer*. You record a transfer as an *expenditure* transfer, one that involves an outlay, or as a *nonexpenditure* transfer, one that doesn't involve an outlay. Which you record usually depends on the purpose of the transfer, as explained in the following table. See also [exhibit 20](#).

If the transfer...	Record as...
(1) purchases goods or services that benefit the transferring account for example, Economy Act transactions or purchases from revolving funds (including working capital funds), such as, a rental payment to GSA's Federal Buildings Fund...	An expenditure transfer.
(2) shifts budgetary resources between Federal funds (general, special, and revolving fund accounts) and trust funds (trust fund and trust revolving fund accounts), regardless of the purpose...	An expenditure transfer.
(3) reduces budgetary resources available for the activities of the transferring account and increases them for the activities of the receiving account (for example, a transfer of unobligated balances from the construction account to the salaries and expense account to fund pay raises) other than between Federal and trust funds...	A non-expenditure transfer.
(4) corresponds to a transfer of an activity from one account to another (such as in a reorganization)...	A non-expenditure transfer.

(4) *Recording transfers in the budget:*

- *Expenditure transfers*. Record an expenditure transfer as an obligation (against new budget authority or unobligated balances) and an outlay in the transferring account and as an offsetting collection or offsetting receipt in the receiving account (see [section 20.7](#)). If the receiving account is a general fund appropriation account or a revolving fund account (including a trust revolving fund), credit the amount as an offsetting collection to the appropriation or revolving fund account. If the receiving account is a special fund or trust fund account, credit the amount as an offsetting receipt to a receipt account of the fund.
- *Nonexpenditure transfers*. Do not record an obligation or an outlay or an offsetting collection or offsetting receipt. Record nonexpenditure transfers as a decrease either in budget authority or unobligated balances in the transferring account and as an increase either in budgetary authority or unobligated balances in the gaining account. Whether you record the reduction and increase as a change in budget authority or unobligated balances, depends on the circumstances, as described in the following table.

If you transfer...	And the transfer...	Record...
(1) unobligated balances	Results from a transfer <u>specified in law</u> that changes the purpose for which the funds will be used	a decrease in budget authority in the transferring account and an increase in budget authority in the gaining account.

If you transfer...	And the transfer...	Record...
(2) unobligated balances	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• results from general transfer authority, or</li> <li>• corresponds to a transfer of an activity such that the purpose does not change</li> </ul>	a decrease in unobligated balances in the transferring account and an increase in unobligated balances in the gaining account.
(3) budget authority in the year it becomes available	Is for any purpose	a decrease in budget authority in the transferring account and an increase in budget authority in the gaining account.

(k) *Transfer in the estimates.*

A transfer in the estimates means the budget proposes to stop funding an activity under one budget account and start funding the activity under another budget account, beginning in the budget year. This does not involve a transfer of budgetary resources, like that discussed in subsection (j). You simply stop showing budget authority in the one account and start showing it in the other. A transfer in the estimates usually reflects a proposal to do one of the following in the budget year:

- Transfer the funding of an activity from one account to another.
- Consolidate funding for related activities from two or more accounts into a single account.
- Disaggregate the funding for an activity from one account between two or more accounts.

You must indicate a transfer in the estimates by footnoting the program and financing schedules of the transferring and receiving accounts (see [section 82.12](#)).

(l) *Allocation.*

Allocation means a delegation, authorized in law, by one agency of its authority to obligate budget authority and outlay funds to another agency. When an agency makes such a delegation, the Treasury Department establishes a subsidiary account called a "transfer appropriation account", and the receiving agency may obligate up to the amount included in the account. The budget doesn't show the transfer appropriation account separately. The budget schedules for the parent account include the obligations by the other agency against the subsidiary account without separate identification, except in the object class schedule (see [section 83.17](#)). Allocations are appropriate where the receiving agency is acting as the agent for the allocating agency. Where the receiving account is simply providing goods or services on a reimbursable basis, such as transactions under the Economy Act, record an expenditure transfer (see [section 20.4\(j\)](#)).

**20.5 When should I record obligations and in what amounts?**(a) *The general rule.*

Obligation means a legally binding agreement that will result in outlays, immediately or in the future. When you place an order, sign a contract, award a grant, purchase a service, or take other actions that require the Government to make payments to the public or from one Government account to another, you incur an obligation. It is a violation of the Antideficiency Act ([31 U.S.C. 1341\(a\)](#)) to involve the Federal Government in a contract or obligation for payment of money *before* an appropriation is made, unless authorized by law. This means you can not incur obligations in a vacuum; you incur an obligation against budget authority in a Treasury account that belongs to your agency. It is a violation of the Antideficiency Act to incur an obligation in an amount *greater* than the amount available in the Treasury account that is available. This means that the account must have budget authority sufficient to cover the total of such obligations at the time the obligation is incurred. In addition, the obligation you incur must conform to other applicable provisions of law, and you must be able to support the amounts reported by the documentary evidence required by [31 U.S.C. 1501](#). Moreover, you are required to maintain certifications and records showing that the amounts have been obligated ([31 USC 1108](#)). The following provides additional guidance on when to record obligations for the different types of goods and services or the amount.

(b) *Personnel compensation and benefits*

For personnel compensation and benefits the issue is usually the "timing" of the obligation and not the "amount" of the obligation. The amount is prescribed by laws that cover the civil service and the uniformed service and determined by well-established personnel procedures. As for the timing of the obligation, the amounts generally are recorded as obligations as the amounts are earned during the reporting pay period, with the following exceptions:

<b>Type of obligations...</b>	<b>At the time ...</b>	<b>Because...</b>
Severance pay.	It is paid on a pay period by pay period basis.	Severance pay is not earned with regular salaries and wages.
Authorized reimbursable expenses estimated to be paid to employees for real estate, temporary subsistence, and other expenses incident to relocation at the request of the Government.	The individual travel orders are approved.	The travel is a bona fide need at the time the order is approved.
Cash awards that do not become part of the employee's basic rate of pay. Allowances for uniforms and quarters. Subsidies for commuting costs.	When payable to the employee.	This is the time the amount is definite.
Unemployment compensation payments to the Department of Labor for former Federal employees	When the agency receives the bills rendered by Labor.	Underlying law.

Type of obligations...	At the time ...	Because...
Annual leave	When it becomes due and payable as terminal leave or taken in lieu of a lump sum payment	Normally, annual leave is unfunded.
Funded annual leave	When you transfer a person from a revolving fund to another revolving fund, you obligate the employee's share of funded annual leave and you pay it to the fund to which the employee is transferred.	The revolving fund to which the employee is transferred will pay the employee's salary and wages when the employee takes the annual leave or will pay the lump sum terminal leave for any annual leave not taken.
	When you transfer a person from a revolving fund to a non-revolving fund, you obligate the employee's portion of the funded annual leave and pay miscellaneous receipts in the general fund of the Treasury	The appropriation from the general fund in the Treasury will pay the employee's salaries and wages when the employee takes the annual leave or will pay the lump sum terminal leave for any annual leave not taken.

(c) *Contractual services and supplies.*

Services and supplies that are purchased by contract and any potential Federal Government cancellation and/or termination costs are recorded as obligations at the time there is a binding agreement, which is usually when the contract is signed, and in the amount of the maximum liability to the Federal Government under the terms of the contract. The following provides the nuances of contracts with certain characteristics.

Contracts with...	Amount obligated is...	At the time ...
A maximum price	The maximum price. Amount of downward adjustments, i.e. deobligation, if any.	The contract is signed. There is documentary evidence that the price is reduced.
Letters of intent and letter contracts.  However, IF the letters constitute binding agreements under which the contractor is authorized to proceed.	Normally, no amount is obligated.  The maximum amount indicated in the letter that the contractor is authorized to incur to cover expenses prior to the execution of a definitive contract.	The letter is signed.
Contracts for variable quantities.	Normally, no amount is obligated.	The contract is signed.

<b>Contracts with...</b>	<b>Amount obligated is...</b>	<b>At the time ...</b>
The contracts are usually followed by "purchase orders" that do obligate the Government.	The amount of actual orders.	The order is issued.
Orders where a law "requires" that you to place orders with another Federal Government account.	The amount of the order.	The order is issued.
Voluntary orders with other Federal Government accounts:	The amount of the order.	
If the order is for common-use standard stock item the supplier has on hand or on order at published prices.		That you issue the order to the supplier.
If the order is for stock items other than the above.		You receive a formal notification that the items are on hand or on order.
If the order involves execution of a specific contract.		The supplying agency notifies you that it has entered into the contract.

(d) *Land and structures*

Contracts for lands and structures generally follow the same rules as for contracts specified above with the following exceptions.

<b>Contracts with...</b>	<b>Amount obligated is...</b>	<b>At the time ...</b>
Condemnation proceedings.	The estimated amount for the price of the land, adjusted to the amount of the payment to be held in escrow where there is a declaration of taking.	When you ask the Attorney General to start condemnation proceedings.
Lease-purchases and capital leases covered by the score keeping rules developed under the Budget Enforcement Act.	The present value of the lease payments, discounted using the Treasury interest rate used in calculating the budget authority provided for the purchase.	The contract is signed.
	The imputed interest costs (that is, the financing costs Treasury would have incurred if it had issued the debt to acquire the asset)	During the lease period.

(e) *Grants and fixed charges.*

Discretionary grants will be obligated after the amounts are determined administratively and recorded at the time the grant award is signed. The grant award is normally the documentary evidence that the grant has been awarded. Letters of credit are issued after the grant awards are made and generally are not obligating documents.

For grants and fixed charges with formulas in law that automatically fix the amount of the charges, record the amount determined by the formula or, if there is an appropriation, then record the amount appropriated, whichever is smaller. The obligation is reported at the time the grantee is awarded the grant and is liquidated when the payment is made to the grantee. To the extent that a grant is no longer valid, you will record a recovery of prior year obligations.

The exceptions follow.

<b>Grants or fixed charges..</b>	<b>Amount obligated is...</b>	<b>At the time ...</b>
In lieu of taxes.	The amount appropriated.	The taxes are due.
Interest.	The amount owed.	The interest is payable.
Dividends.	The amount declared.	The dividend is declared.

(f) *Federal credit programs.*

Obligations in Federal credit programs generally follow the same rules as for "personnel compensation and benefits" and "contracts" specified above with the following exceptions.

<b>The amount is..</b>	<b>Amount obligated is...</b>	<b>At the time ...</b>
Subsidy in direct loan program account	The portion of the subsidy cost for the direct loan contract that you are signing	You sign the direct loan contract and incur the direct loan obligation in the credit financing account.
Subsidy in guaranteed loan program account.	The portion of the subsidy cost for the binding agreement to make a loan guarantee.	You make the loan guarantee commitment, that is, when you enter into a binding agreement to make a loan guarantee when special conditions are fulfilled by the borrower, the lender, or any other party to the guarantee agreement.

**20.6 What do I need to know about outlays?**

Outlay means a payment to liquidate an obligation (other than the repayment to the Treasury of debt principal). Outlays are a measure of Government spending. As required by law, the budget presents some outlays as "on-budget" and some as "off-budget". Total outlays for the Federal Government include both on-budget and off-budget outlays. Government-wide outlay totals are stated net of refunds,



offsetting collections, and offsetting receipts. Function, subfunction, and agency outlay totals are stated net of related refunds, offsetting collections, and offsetting receipts for most budget presentations. (Offsetting receipts from a few sources do not offset any specific function, subfunction, or agency but only offset Governmentwide outlay totals.) Outlay totals for accounts with offsetting collections are stated both gross and net of the offsetting collections credited to the account. However, the outlay totals for special and trust funds with offsetting receipts are not stated net of the offsetting receipts.

The Government usually makes payments in the form of cash (currency, checks, or electronic fund transfers), and you normally record outlays equal to the disbursement at the time of the disbursement. Normally the amount of cash disbursed appropriately measures the value of the transaction. In other cases, however, the cash disbursed does not accurately measure the value of the transactions. In these cases, we require you to record the cash-equivalent value of the transactions (see section 20.8).

Not every disbursement is an outlay, because not every disbursement liquidates an obligation. You don't record outlays for the following:

- Repayment of debt principal, because we treat borrowing and the repayment of debt principal as a means of financing.
- Disbursements to the public by Federal credit programs for direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments made in fiscal year 1992 or later (and those made prior to that year if they have been modified), because we treat the cash flows to and from the Government for credit programs as a means of financing. We record outlays equal to the subsidy cost of direct loans and loan guarantees when the underlying direct or guaranteed loans are disbursed. Disbursements from liquidating accounts for direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments made prior to fiscal year 1992 are treated as outlays (see [section 185](#)).
- Disbursements from deposit funds, because these funds are on deposit with the Government but are not owned by the Government and are therefore excluded from the budget (see [section 20.7](#)).
- Refunds of receipts that result from overpayments, because they are recorded as decreases in receipts, rather than as increases in outlays (see [section 20.10](#)).

The timing for recording outlays for interest payments varies. Treasury records outlays for the interest on the public issues of Treasury debt securities as the interest accrues, not when it pays the cash. However, most Treasury debt securities held by Government accounts are in the Government account series. Treasury normally records the interest payments on these securities when it pays the cash. (And you normally record an offsetting collection or receipt on a cash basis.) Four trust funds in the Department of Defense, the Military retirement trust fund, the Education benefits trust fund, the Defense cooperation fund, and the Medicare-eligible health care fund, routinely have relatively large differences between purchase price and par. For these funds, we've instructed the Department to record the holdings of debt at par but record the differences between purchase price and par as adjustments to the assets of the funds that are amortized over the life of the security. The Department records interest as the amortization occurs. We discuss the budget treatment of investment transactions in [section 113](#).

Outlays during a fiscal year may liquidate obligations incurred in the same year or in prior years. Obligations, in turn, may be incurred against budget authority provided in the same year or against unobligated balances of budget authority provided in prior years. Outlays, therefore, flow in part from budget authority provided for the year in which the money is spent and in part from budget authority provided in prior years. The ratio of the outlays resulting from budget authority enacted in any year to the amount of that budget authority is referred to as the spendout rate for that year.

Outlays for the past year must agree with amounts reported in the Treasury Combined Statement (formerly the Department of the Treasury's Annual Report), unless OMB approves an exception.

## 20.7 What do I need to know about receipts, offsetting collections, and offsetting receipts?

### (a) *Overview.*

We use the term collections for the universe of money collected by the Federal Government and its accounts. Collections result from the following transactions:

- Sovereign power - collections from the public that result primarily from the Government's exercise of its sovereign power to tax or otherwise compel payment and from gifts of money.
- Business-type transactions with the public - collections from the public in exchange for goods and services.
- Intragovernmental transactions - collections from other Federal Government accounts.

The universe of money collected also includes the proceeds of borrowing and the other means of financing which are not treated as collections in the budget because they do not represent a transfer of economic assets. They are not discussed in this section but are discussed in [section 20.7 \(f\)](#).

The Federal Government normally receives collections in the form of cash and normally records collections equal to the amount of cash received at the time of collection. Usually the amount of cash collected appropriately measures the value of the transaction. In some cases, the cash collected does not accurately measure the value of the transaction. In these cases, you record the cash equivalent value of the transactions (see [section 20.8](#)).

Collections are presented in the President's budget as either *receipts* or *offsets to outlays*, based on the nature of the activity generating the collection, as recommended by the 1967 President's Commission on Budget Concepts. Collections resulting from sovereign power are recorded as receipts, while business-type collections and intragovernmental collections are offset against (deducted from) outlays. In this way, the budget totals for receipts and outlays represent governmental rather than market activity. Offsets to outlays are either *offsetting receipts* or *offsetting collections*. Offsetting collection *line codes* and receipt *source category codes* are used to generate budget tables using these concepts.

The Government places collections in either *receipt accounts* or *expenditure accounts* based on interpretation of laws and longstanding budget concepts and practice. See [section 20.11](#) for more detail on the characteristics of receipt and expenditure accounts.

### (b) *How are collections reported in the President's budget?*

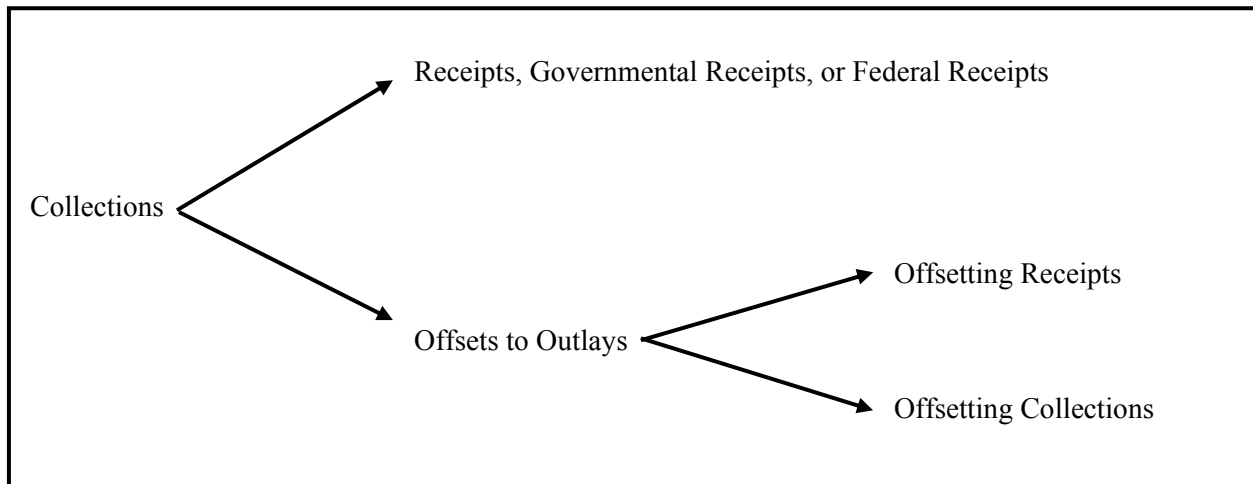
The budget records money collected by Government agencies as either receipts or offsets to outlays depending on the nature of the activity generating the collection.

Receipts. Receipts are collections that result from the Government's exercise of its sovereign power to tax or otherwise compel payment and from gifts of money. Sometimes they are called governmental receipts to distinguish them from offsetting receipts and sometimes they are called Federal receipts. For more information on receipts, see [chapter 4](#), "Federal Receipts" in the *Analytical Perspectives* volume of the President's budget.

**Offsets to outlays.** Offsets to outlays result from one of three kinds of transactions:

- **Business-like or market-oriented activities with the public.** The budget records the proceeds from the sale of postage stamps, the fees charged for admittance to recreation areas, and the proceeds from the sale of Government-owned land, for example, as offsetting collections or receipts. This treatment produces budget totals for receipts, budget authority, and outlays that represent governmental rather than market activity.
- **Intragovernmental transactions.** The budget also records collections by one Government account from another as offsetting collections or receipts. For example, the General Services Administration records payments it receives from other Government agencies for the rent of office space as offsetting collections in the Federal Buildings Fund. These transactions are exactly offsetting and do not affect the surplus or deficit. However, they are an important accounting mechanism for allocating costs to the programs and activities that cause the Government to incur the costs. Intragovernmental offsetting collections and receipts are deducted from gross budget authority and outlays so that the budget totals measure the transactions of the Government with the public.
- **Offsetting governmental transactions.** These are collections that are governmental in nature but are required by law to be misclassified as offsets to outlays.

Offsets to outlays are either offsetting receipts or offsetting collections. They are offsetting collections when the collections are authorized by law to be credited to expenditure accounts. Otherwise, they are deposited in receipt accounts and called offsetting receipts. See section 20.7(c) for an explanation of why some collections are placed in receipt accounts and others in expenditure accounts.



For more information on how the budget treats collections and the reasons for the treatment, see the section on "Receipts, Offsetting Collections, and Offsetting Receipts" in the chapter on "[Budget System and Concepts and Glossary](#)" in the *Analytical Perspectives* volume of the President's budget.

(c) *Why are some collections placed in receipt accounts and others in expenditure accounts?*

**Receipt accounts.** A general law requires that, except as provided by another law, an official or agent of the Government who receives money for the Federal Government from any source shall *deposit* the money in the Treasury as soon as practicable. This law is generally referred to as the "Miscellaneous Receipts Act". The Department of the Treasury, in consultation with OMB, interprets this law as

requiring all collections to be deposited in *general fund* receipt accounts, which as a group comprise part of "the general fund."

Some laws  *earmark* collections from a certain source for a specific purpose. Treasury deposits these collections in *trust fund* receipt accounts, if so required by law, and deposits the remainder in *special fund* receipt accounts or, as explained below, credits the collections to expenditure accounts, including revolving fund accounts. Also, the legislation will specify whether the earmarked receipts are (i) simultaneously appropriated, i.e., *available* for obligation and outlay without further action by Congress, or (ii) unavailable receipts, i.e., *not available* for obligation or outlay until Congress makes the amounts available in annual appropriations acts.

Expenditure accounts. When the collections in the receipt accounts are available for obligation and outlay, the amounts are appropriated to general fund expenditure accounts, special fund expenditure accounts, or trust fund expenditure accounts.

Still other laws override the requirement to first deposit collections in receipt accounts. These collections are *credited directly to expenditure accounts*, where the collections are generally available for obligation and outlay without further action by Congress. These collections are called *offsetting collections*. Most revolving funds operate under such authority. These include public enterprise, intragovernmental, and trust revolving funds. In addition, the Economy Act allows Federal agencies or bureaus within agencies to do work for each other. When one account reimburses another account for this work, the Act authorizes the collections to be credited directly to the expenditure account that provided the goods and services.

(d) *How are offsetting collections and receipts classified?*

Offsetting collections and receipts are classified according to the type and source of the money collected and how it is treated in the budget.

Offsetting collections. Collections credited to expenditure accounts automatically offset the outlays at the expenditure account level. Line codes are used to identify the source of the collections. See the table on "Offsets" in [section 82.6](#) for the offsetting collection line entries and the definitions. The lines are presented in the program and financing (schedule P) in the Appendix to the President's budget. See [section 20.4\(b\)\(4\)](#) for information on spending authority from offsetting collections.

Receipts. Collections deposited in receipt accounts are coded to identify the type of receipt (e.g., governmental, proprietary, intragovernmental) and how it is treated (e.g., offset at the agency and function level). Each receipt type also has a number of unique and associated source category codes that enable MAX to produce tables needed for the Budget. These are assigned by OMB when the account is established.

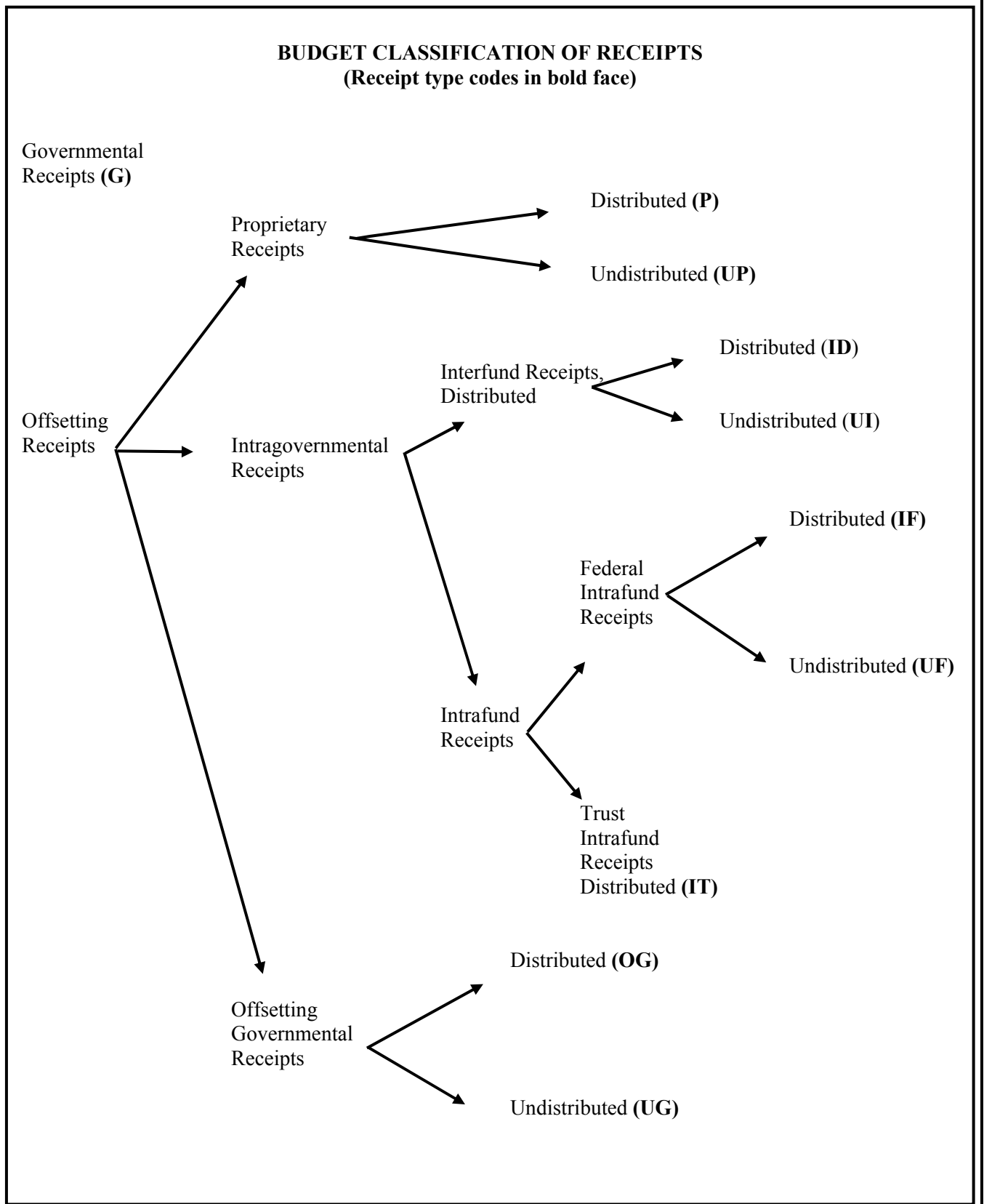
Offsetting receipt classification serves two purposes. The first purpose is to identify the type of receipt. There are three major types:

- **Proprietary receipts from the public.** These are collections from the public that arise out of the business-type or market-oriented activities of the Government.
  - ▶ Most proprietary receipts are deducted from the budget authority and outlay totals of the agency that conducts the activity generating the receipt and of the subfunction to which the activity is assigned. For example, fees for using National Parks are deducted from the totals for the Department of Interior, which has responsibility for the parks, and the Recreational Resources subfunction.

- ▶ Proprietary receipts from a few sources are not offset against any specific agency or function and are classified as undistributed offsetting receipts. They are deducted from the Government-wide totals for budget authority and outlays. For example, the collection of rents and royalties from outer continental shelf lands are undistributed because the amounts are large and for the most part are not related to the spending of the agency that administers the transactions and the subfunction that records the administrative expenses.
- **Intragovernmental transactions.** These are collections of payments from expenditure accounts that are deposited into receipt accounts. Most intragovernmental transactions are deducted from the budget authority and outlays of the agency and subfunction that produces the goods or services, not the one that uses the goods and services. In this way, the cost of the activity is reflected as a net cost in the agency and function that uses the goods or services provided. However, in two cases intragovernmental transactions are classified as undistributed offsetting receipts. These are agencies' payments as employers into federal employee retirement trust funds and interest received by trust funds. They appear as special deductions in computing total budget authority and outlays for the Government rather than as offsets at the agency level. This special treatment is necessary because the amounts are large and would distort measures of the agency's activities if they were attributed to the agency.
- **Offsetting governmental receipts.** These are collections that are governmental in nature but are required by law to be misclassified as offsetting and are not authorized to be credited directly to expenditure accounts.

The second purpose is to identify those that are distributed and those that are undistributed for purposes of offsetting budget authority and outlays. Most offsetting receipts deposited in receipt accounts are offset at the agency and subfunction levels. We call these *distributed* offsetting receipts. A few offsetting receipts are offset at government-wide totals. We call these *undistributed* offsetting receipts. For more information on the magnitude of undistributed offsetting receipts see [Table 4](#), Undistributed Offsetting Receipts, in the Object Class Analysis report that accompanies the President's annual budget.

The following chart shows the receipt types, with associated codes in parentheses, for the various types of receipts.



The following chart provides the relationships between the nature of the transaction and the source of the collection for offsetting receipts and offsetting collections. Collections deposited in receipt accounts are identified by receipt source categories and codes. Collections credited to expenditure accounts are identified by offsetting collection line in the program and financing schedule, the line titles and line codes.

<b>Nature of the Transaction</b>	<b>Receipt Type by Source</b>	<b>Offsetting Collection Line Titles and Codes</b>
Business-like or market-oriented activities with the public	Proprietary receipts from the public (P, UP)	Non-Federal sources (line 8840)
Intragovernmental transaction	Intragovernmental receipts (ID, IF, UF, IT)	Federal sources (line 8800) Interest on Federal securities (line 8820) Interest on uninvested funds (line 8825)
Offsetting governmental transaction	Offsetting governmental receipts (OG,IG)	Offsetting governmental collections (line 8845)

(e) *User charges.*

User charge means a fee, charge, or assessment the Government levies on a class directly benefiting from, or subject to regulation by, a Government program or activity. We record user charges as receipts, offsetting collections, or offsetting receipts using the criteria described above. The authorizing law must limit the payers of the charges to those benefiting from, or subject to regulation by, the program or activity. The group of payers may not be so broad as to consist of the general public or a broad segment of the public.

User charges include:

- Collections from non-Federal sources for goods and services provided (for example, the proceeds from the sale of goods by defense commissaries, electricity by power marketing administrations, and stamps by the Postal Service; fees charged to enter national parks; and premiums charged for flood and health insurance);
- Voluntary payments to social insurance programs, such as Medicare Part B insurance premiums;
- Miscellaneous customs fees (for example, United States Customs Service merchandise processing fees);
- Proceeds from asset sales (property, plant, and equipment);
- Proceeds from the sale of natural resources (such as timber, oil, and minerals);
- Outer Continental Shelf receipts;
- Spectrum auction proceeds;
- Many fees for permits, and regulatory and judicial services; and
- Specific taxes and duties on an exception basis.

User charges do not include:

- Collections from other Federal accounts;
- Collections associated with credit programs;
- Realizations upon loans and investments;
- Interest, dividends, and other earnings;
- Payments to social insurance programs required by law;
- Excise taxes;
- Customs duties;
- Fines, penalties, and forfeitures;
- Cost-sharing contributions; and
- Federal Reserve System deposits of earnings.

(f) *Means of financing.*

These are monies received or paid by the Government that are not counted in the budget totals as either income (receipts, offsetting collections, or offsetting receipts) or outgo (outlays). Borrowing and the repayment of debt are the primary means of financing. Others are listed below. These monies finance outlays when there is a deficit—that is, when outlays (net of offsetting collections and offsetting receipts) exceed receipts. When there is a surplus—that is, when receipts exceed outlays (net of offsetting collections and offsetting receipts)—the means of financing may be used, together with the surplus, to retire debt.

The means of financing frequently have opposite effects, and some themselves require financing. For example, if the disbursements from credit financing accounts exceed their collections, which is normal, the difference must be financed by receipts or the other means of financing. The means of financing other than borrowing and repayment of debt include:

- Net financing disbursements by direct loan and guaranteed loan financing accounts.
- Seigniorage (the profit from coining money) and profits on the sale of gold (a monetary asset).
- Certain exchanges of cash, such as deposits by the U.S. in the International Monetary Fund.
- Changes in Treasury's operating cash balance, compensating balances, uninvested deposit fund balances, and checks outstanding.
- Treasury debt buyback premiums and discounts (see [section 113](#)).



## 20.8 What do I need to know about cash-equivalent transactions?

Normally the amount of cash disbursed or collected is the appropriate measure of the value of the transaction, and you record outlays or collections equal to the cash that changes hands. In other cases, however, the cash disbursed or collected doesn't accurately measure the value of the transactions. In these cases, you should record the cash-equivalent value of the transactions in the budget. The following are some examples of cash-equivalent transactions:

- *Federal employee salaries.* You record an outlay for the full amount of an employee's salary, even though the cash disbursement is net of Federal and state income taxes, retirement contributions, life and health insurance premiums, and other deductions. We record collections for the deductions that are payments to the Government.
- *Debt instruments.* When the Government receives or makes payments in the form of debt instruments (such as bonds, debentures, monetary credits, or notes) in lieu of cash, we record collections or outlays in the budget on a cash-equivalent basis. The Government can borrow from the public to raise cash and then outlay the cash proceeds to liquidate an obligation, or, if authorized in law, it may liquidate the obligation by issuing securities in lieu of the cash. The latter method combines two transactions into one—borrowing and an outlay. Combining these transactions into one does not change the nature of the transactions. Since the two methods of payment are equivalent, we require you to record the same amount of outlays for both cases. Similarly, when the Government accepts securities in lieu of cash from the public in payment of an obligation owed to the Government, we record collections. In one program, for example, a Government agency may choose whether to pay default claims against it in cash or by issuing debentures in lieu of cash; the agency records the same amount of outlays in either case. In turn, a recipient of these debentures may choose to pay the fees that it owes to the Government either in cash or by returning debentures of equivalent value that it holds. The agency records the same amount of collections in either case.
- *Lease-purchases.* We require you to record an outlay for the acquisition of physical assets through certain types of lease-purchase arrangements as though the transaction was an outright purchase or direct Federal construction. Lease-purchase transactions in which the Government assumes substantial risk are equivalent to the Government raising cash by borrowing from the public and purchasing the asset directly by disbursing the cash proceeds. You must report outlays over the period that the contractor constructs, manufactures, or purchases the asset that will be leased to the Government, not when the Government disburses cash to the developer for lease payments. Because the Government pays no cash up front to the nominal owner of the asset, the transaction creates a Government debt. In such cases, we treat the subsequent cash lease payments as the equivalent of interest outlays on that debt and principal repayments. (See [Appendix B](#)).

The scorekeeping effect of cash-equivalent transactions applies to budget authority, as well as to outlays and collections. You record the authority to incur obligations that will be liquidated through cash-equivalent payments as budget authority.

The use of cash-equivalents often results in an increase or decrease in Federal debt. In the previous example of the Government using debentures to pay claims, we record the issuance of a debenture as an increase in debt, and we record the Government's acceptance of a debenture for payment of fees as a decrease in debt. We also record an increase in debt as the means of financing the cash-equivalent outlays of lease-purchase arrangements in which the Government assumes substantial risk.

## 20.9 What do I need to know about discretionary spending, mandatory spending, and PAYGO?

### (a) *Overview.*

The Budget Enforcement Act of 1990 (BEA) (see [section 15.3](#)) significantly amended the laws pertaining to the budget process. The BEA expired at the end of 2002. The Administration proposes to extend the BEA's mechanisms for constraining legislation that would increase spending or decrease receipts. This section describes the BEA requirements under the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act, as extended in 1997.

The Act divides spending into two types:

1. *Discretionary spending* means the budget authority controlled by annual appropriations acts and the outlays that result from that budget authority. For example, the budget authority and outlays for the salaries and other operating expenses of Government agencies are usually controlled by annual appropriations acts and, therefore, are usually discretionary.
2. *Mandatory spending* means budget authority and outlays resulting from permanent laws. For example, permanent laws authorize payments for Medicare and Medicaid, unemployment insurance benefits, and farm price supports, so the budget authority and outlays for these programs are mandatory. In addition, the BEA defines several programs as "appropriated entitlements" and "mandatories" and classifies their spending as mandatory spending. In these cases, appropriations acts nominally provide the budget authority but don't actually control it, because the authorizing law creates an entitlement. Also, the BEA specifically defines funding for the Food Stamp program as mandatory spending, even though annual appropriations acts provide funding for the program and the authorizing legislation doesn't create an entitlement. Mandatory spending is the term commonly used for this kind of spending, although the BEA calls it "direct spending".

The Joint Explanatory Statement of the Committee of Conference for the Balanced Budget Act of 1997 ([Public Law 105-33](#)), which most recently amended the BEA, listed all accounts under the Appropriations Committees' jurisdiction at the time. It classified accounts as discretionary by category or as appropriated entitlements and mandatories. The "scorekeepers" (House and Senate Budget Committees, CBO, and OMB) consult on the classification of new accounts and may reclassify an existing account. OMB indicates the BEA classification for an account when it is established in the MAX database (see [section 81.3](#)). While mandatory and discretionary classifications are used for measuring compliance with the BEA, they do not determine whether a program provides legal entitlement to a payment or benefit. You should address questions about BEA classifications and legal entitlements to your OMB representative.

The BEA applies one set of rules to discretionary spending and another to mandatory spending and receipts. The BEA applies the same rules to receipts as apply to mandatory spending, because receipts are generally controlled by permanent laws. The BEA refers to the rules that apply to mandatory receipts and spending as "pay-as-you-go" (PAYGO) requirements. The BEA itself sets the basic rules, but the Explanatory Statement referred to in the previous paragraph provided scorekeeping guidelines that the scorekeepers must use in interpreting the rules. The BEA authorizes the scorekeepers to revise the guidelines if all agree on the revision. [Appendix A](#) contains the current guidelines.

### (b) *Discretionary spending caps.*

The BEA defined categories of discretionary spending that have varied from year to year. For 2001 they were highways, mass transit, and all other discretionary spending. The Interior appropriations act for 2001

added the conservation spending category to the existing categories beginning in 2002. This category is divided into six subcategories: Federal and State Land and Water Conservation Fund; State and Other Conservation; Urban and Historic Preservation; Payments in Lieu of Taxes; Federal Deferred Maintenance; and Coastal Assistance. The BEA specifies caps through 2003 for the highways and mass transit categories and through 2006 for the conservation spending category, although the discretionary spending provisions of the BEA will expire after 2002 if not extended by law. In some earlier years there were separate categories for defense and for violent crime reduction. The BEA caps both budget authority and outlays for each fiscal year for the conservation spending and other discretionary categories, but it caps only outlays for each fiscal year for highways and mass transit.

The BEA requires OMB to adjust the caps upward for appropriations for emergencies—any appropriation designated as emergency spending by both the Congress and the President—and appropriations for certain specified purposes, such as continuing disability reviews by the Social Security Administration. Thus, these appropriations cannot trigger a sequestration. The BEA also requires OMB, in consultation with Congress, to adjust the caps for the effects of conceptual changes. If the Congress and the President designate an appropriation as an emergency requirement, we score the appropriations act for the budget authority and estimated outlays when it is enacted, and we increase the discretionary caps by the same amounts in the next sequestration report. This is the case even if the language makes the appropriation contingent on the President's notifying Congress that he is making the appropriation available for emergency spending.

The BEA requires special cap adjustments for the highways and mass transit categories to align the cap levels with highway receipts. It also requires a special cap adjustment for the conservation spending category. If appropriations in this category are less than the levels specified, the caps for the following year are adjusted upward by the amount of the shortfall. In addition, the BEA specifies minimum levels of spending for six subcategories of conservation spending. If appropriations for a subcategory for a fiscal year are less than the amount specified, the minimum level for the following year is adjusted upward by the amount of the shortfall. The subcategory levels are not caps. That is, appropriations in excess of a subcategory level would not necessarily trigger a sequestration. A sequestration would be triggered only if the aggregate of amounts appropriated for conservation spending exceeded the overall cap for the conservation spending category. In general, Appropriations Committee actions are discretionary.

The BEA requires that substantive changes to or restrictions on entitlement law or other mandatory spending law in appropriations laws (including changes in offsetting receipts or collections) be treated as changes in discretionary spending for the purposes of scoring those appropriations laws. However, in the subsequent budget, OMB may decide to reclassify such changes, especially in accounts that are generally mandatory, and make a compensating adjustment to the discretionary caps. This is sometimes referred to as "rebasing".

Where obligation limitations set in appropriations acts limit permanent budget authority, except trust fund accounts in the Department of Transportation, we redefine the budget authority for the account as discretionary in an amount equal to the limit. For Transportation trust funds, the budget authority remains mandatory, although the funds' outlays are discretionary.

If the amount of budget authority provided in appropriations acts for the year exceeds the cap on budget authority for a category, or if OMB estimates of the amount of outlays for the year resulting from all discretionary budget authority exceed the cap on outlays for a category, the BEA specifies a procedure, called sequestration, for reducing the spending in that category. The BEA requires the President to issue a sequestration order reducing most programs in the category by a uniform percentage. Special rules apply in reducing some programs, and the BEA exempts some programs from sequestration.

The BEA's sequestration rules cover supplemental appropriations enacted during the fiscal year. From the end of a session of Congress through the following June 30th, discretionary sequestrations take place whenever an appropriations act for the current fiscal year breaches a cap. Because a sequestration in the last quarter of a fiscal year might disproportionately disrupt Government operations, the BEA requires OMB to reduce the applicable cap for the next fiscal year, in lieu of a sequestration in the fourth quarter.

(c) *PAYGO requirements.*

The BEA doesn't cap mandatory spending. Instead, it requires all laws enacted through 2002 that affect mandatory spending or receipts to be enacted on a "pay-as-you-go" basis. This means that if a provision of law increases the deficit or decreases the surplus in the budget year or any of the four following years, another provision of law (in the same or another law) must offset the increase with a decrease in spending or increase in receipts in each affected year. A provision that increases benefit payments, for example, would have to be offset by a provision decreasing other mandatory spending or increasing receipts. Otherwise, the BEA requires the President to issue a sequestration order at the end of the session of Congress in the fiscal year in which the deficit is increased. (Note: Although the BEA requires estimates of the effects of legislation for the budget year and the four following years, OMB requires budget policy estimates for 9 years beyond the budget year (see [section 30.2.](#)))

The BEA sequestration procedures require a uniform reduction of mandatory spending programs that are neither exempt nor subject to special rules. The BEA exempts Social Security, interest on the public debt, Federal employee retirement, Medicaid, most means-tested entitlements, deposit insurance, other prior legal obligations, and most unemployment benefits from sequestration. A special rule limits the sequester of Medicare spending to no more than 4 percent, and special rules for some other programs limit the size of a sequestration for those programs. As a result of exemptions and special rules, only about 3 percent of all mandatory spending is subject to sequestration, including the maximum amounts allowed under the special rules.

The PAYGO rules don't apply to increases in mandatory spending or decreases in receipts that don't result from new laws. For example, mandatory spending for benefit programs, such as unemployment insurance, rises when the population of eligible beneficiaries rises, and many benefit payments are automatically increased for inflation under existing laws. Likewise, tax receipts decrease when the profits of private businesses decline as the result of economic conditions.

If both the Congress and the President designate a provision of mandatory spending or receipts legislation as an emergency requirement, we don't score the effect of the provision as PAYGO.

(d) *OMB and CBO estimates.*

The BEA requires OMB, using the methods prescribed by the BEA, to make the estimates and calculations that determine whether there is to be a sequestration and report them to the President and Congress. The President's sequestration order may not change any of the particulars of the OMB report. The BEA requires the Congressional Budget Office (CBO) to make the same estimates and calculations, and requires OMB to explain any differences between the OMB and CBO estimates. Congress uses the CBO estimates for enforcing constraints during the congressional budget process.

(e) *Reporting requirements.*

The BEA requires OMB to issue five different kinds of reports to the President and the Congress, which the following table describes. The BEA requires CBO to issue like reports, with its estimates, 5 days earlier than the OMB reports.

## BEA REPORTS

What OMB reports...	When...
<i>Preview report.</i> This report discusses the status of discretionary and PAYGO sequestration based on current law. It also explains OMB adjustments to the discretionary caps, under the BEA's adjustment provisions, and publishes the revised caps. By custom, OMB publishes its report as a chapter of the <i>Analytical Perspectives</i> volume of the budget.	With the President's budget
<i>7-day after reports.</i> As part of enforcing the discretionary spending caps, OMB must issue a report for each appropriation act (including a supplemental appropriations act) estimating the amount of new budget authority and outlays provided by the act for the current year and budget year. As part of enforcing the PAYGO rules, OMB must also issue a report for each authorizing act that changes receipts or outlays.	7 days after enactment of a bill
<i>Update report.</i> This report revises the preview report estimates to reflect the effects of newly enacted discretionary and PAYGO legislation.	August 20
<i>Final report.</i> This report also revises the preview report estimates, this time to reflect the effects of legislation enacted through the end of the session of Congress. The estimates in this report determine whether the President must issue a sequestration order.	15 days after the end of a session of Congress (usually in the fall of each year)
<i>Within-session report.</i> The BEA requires OMB to report if an appropriation for a fiscal year in progress is enacted before July 1 that breaches a cap. The report triggers a sequestration order. (If an appropriation is enacted after July 1 that breaches a cap, the BEA requires OMB to reduce the cap for the following year.)	Between the end of a session of Congress and July 1

## 20.10 What do I need to know about refunds?

You might think that you should record refunds received as collections and refunds paid as outlays, but that isn't always the case. The following table explains how to record refunds *received*. (We cover refunds paid after the table.)

If you...	And the appropriation against which the obligation was incurred...	You...
(1) receive a refund of funds that were obligated and outlayed in that year	remains available (usually the case)	reduce the total amount of obligations and outlays recorded for the year in the budget schedules.
(2) receive a refund of funds that were obligated and outlayed in a previous year	remains available for new obligations	record the refund as an offsetting collection, increasing spending authority from offsetting collections.
(3) receive a refund of funds that were obligated and outlayed in a previous year	has expired but is not yet canceled	record the refund as an offsetting collection and as a portion of cash collections credited to expired accounts (line 8896 of the P&F schedule). These offsetting collections are not reported as new spending authority from offsetting

If you...	And the appropriation against which the obligation was incurred...	You...
		collections (part of gross budget authority), and the amount on line 8896 reduces the offset applied to gross budget authority.
(4) receive a refund of funds that were obligated in a previous year	has been canceled	deposit the refund miscellaneous receipts of the Treasury.

Record refunds *paid* as follows:

- Record refunds paid by an expenditure account as an obligation and an outlay of the account.
- Record refunds of receipts that result from overpayments (such as income taxes withheld in excess of a taxpayer's income tax liability) as reductions of receipts, rather than as outlays. This does not include payments to a taxpayer for credits (such as an earned income tax credit) that exceed the taxpayer's income tax liability. Record these as outlays, not as refunds.

## 20.11 What do I need to know about accounts and fund types?

### (a) *Accounts.*

An *account* may mean a "receipt" account or an "expenditure" account. The term may refer to a "Treasury" account or a "budget" account.

For receipt accounts, the budget accounts generally are coterminous with Treasury accounts.

For expenditure accounts (which includes both "appropriations" and "fund" accounts), Treasury establishes separate Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS) accounts for each appropriation title based on the availability of the resources in the account. Treasury establishes separate TAFS accounts for each annual, multi-year, or no-year amount appropriated.

In budget execution, the term "account" normally refers to the TAFS.

The budget accounts are based on actual and proposed accounts. Normally a budget account in the MAX database is a consolidation of all the Treasury accounts with the same appropriation title, for example, "Salaries and expenses". As an illustration, the FY 2003 column of the program and financing schedule for "Salaries and expenses" in the budget Appendix would cover outlays made in FY 2003 from the unexpired FY 2003 annual appropriation, the FY 2001–2003 multi-year appropriation, the no-year appropriation, and the five expired annual appropriations (FY 1998 through FY 2002).

For more information on account identification codes see [section 79.2](#).

### (b) *Overview of fund types.*

Agency activities are financed through general funds, special funds, and revolving funds (public enterprise revolving funds and intragovernmental revolving funds), which constitute the Federal funds group, and trust funds and trust revolving funds, which constitute the trust funds group. General, special, and trust fund collections and disbursements may be held *temporarily* in clearing accounts pending clearance to the applicable account. In some cases, agencies account for amounts that are not

Government funds in deposit funds. The following table summarizes the characteristics of these funds. The text following the table discusses the types of funds in more depth.

### CHARACTERISTICS OF FUND TYPES AND THEIR ACCOUNTS

<b>Fund Type/Account</b>	<b>What is the purpose of the account?</b>	<b>Are receipt accounts and expenditure accounts linked?</b>	<b>Are these funds included in the budget?</b>
Federal funds:			
General fund receipt accounts (0000–3899)	Record unearmarked receipts.	No.	Yes.
General fund expenditure accounts (0000–3899)	Record budget authority, obligations, and outlays of general fund receipts and borrowing. Record offsetting collections authorized by law, such as the Economy Act, and associated budget authority, obligations, and outlays.	No, general fund appropriations draw from general fund receipts collectively.	Yes.
Special fund receipt accounts (5000–5999)	Record receipts earmarked by law for a specific purpose (other than business-like activity).	Yes.	Yes.
Special fund expenditure accounts (5000–5999)	Record budget authority, obligations, and outlays of special fund receipts. Record offsetting collections authorized by law, such as the Economy Act, and associated budget authority, obligations, and outlays	Yes.	Yes.
Public enterprise revolving funds (4000–4499)	Record offsetting collections earmarked by law for a specific purpose and associated budget authority, obligations, and outlays for a business-like activity conducted primarily with the public.	Not applicable. Collections are credited to the expenditure account.	Yes. <sup>1</sup>
Intragovernmental revolving funds (including working capital funds) (4500–4999)	Record offsetting collections earmarked by law for a specific purpose and associated budget authority, obligations, and	Not applicable. Collections credited to the expenditure account.	Yes.

SECTION 20—TERMS AND CONCEPTS

Fund Type/Account	What is the purpose of the account?	Are receipt accounts and expenditure accounts linked?	Are these funds included in the budget?
Treasury Account Symbol	outlays for a business-like activity conducted primarily within the Government.		
Trust funds:			
Trust fund receipt accounts	Record receipts earmarked by law for a specific purpose (other than a business-like activity).	Yes.	Yes. <sup>1</sup>
(8000–8399 and 8500–8999)	Record budget authority, obligations, and outlays of trust fund receipts. Record offsetting collections authorized by law, such as the Economy Act, and associated budget authority, obligations, and outlays.	Yes.	Yes. <sup>1</sup>
Trust revolving funds (8400–8499)	Record offsetting collections earmarked by law for a specific purpose and associated budget authority, obligations, and outlays for a business-like activity conducted primarily with the public.	Not applicable. Collections credited to the expenditure account.	Yes.
Other:			
Clearing accounts (F3800–F3885)	Temporarily hold general, special, or trust fund Federal Government collections or disbursements pending clearance to the applicable receipt or expenditure accounts.	Not applicable. Deposits and disbursements are recorded in the same account.	Yes
Deposit funds (6000–6999)	Record deposits and disbursements of monies not owned by the Government or not donated to the Government (amounts donated to the Government are deposited in a special or trust fund account).	Not applicable. Deposits and disbursements are recorded in the same account.	No.



<sup>1</sup> By law, the budget authority and the outlays (net of offsetting collections) of the Postal Service Fund (a revolving fund), and the receipts, budget authority, and outlays of the two social security trust funds (the Old-Age and Survivors Insurance Trust Fund and the Disability Insurance Trust Fund) are excluded from the budget totals. The budget documents present these amounts as "off-budget" and adds them to the budget totals to show totals for the Federal Government (sometimes called unified budget totals).

(c) *Federal funds.*

Federal funds comprise several types of accounts or funds. A *general fund receipt account* records receipts not earmarked by law for a specific purpose, such as individual income tax receipts. A *general fund expenditure account* records appropriations from the general fund and the associated transactions, such as obligations and outlays. General fund appropriations draw from general fund receipts collectively and, therefore, are not specifically linked to receipt accounts.

The Federal funds group also includes *special funds* and *revolving funds*, both of which earmark collections for spending on specific purposes. We establish a special fund where the law requires us to earmark collections from a specified source to finance a particular program, and the law neither authorizes the fund to conduct a cycle of business-type operations (making it a revolving fund) nor designates it as a trust fund. For example, a law established the Land and water conservation fund, earmarking a portion of rents and royalties from Outer Continental Shelf lands and other receipts to be used for land acquisition, conservation, and recreation programs. The receipts earmarked to a fund are recorded in one or more *special fund receipt accounts*. More than one receipt account may be necessary to distinguish different types of receipts (governmental, proprietary, etc.) and receipts from significantly different types of transactions (registration fees vs. fines and penalties, for example). The fund's appropriations and associated transactions are recorded in a *special fund expenditure account*. Most funds have only one expenditure account, even if they have multiple receipt accounts. However, a large fund, especially one with appropriations to more than one agency (such as the Land and water conservation fund), may have more than one expenditure account. The majority of special fund collections are derived from the Government's power to impose taxes, fines, and other compulsory payments, and they must be appropriated before they can be obligated and spent.

Revolving funds conduct continuing cycles of business-like activity. They charge for the sale of products or services and use the proceeds to finance their spending. Instead of recording the collections in receipt accounts (as offsetting receipts), the budget records the collections and the outlays of revolving funds in the same account. The laws that establish revolving funds authorize the collections to be obligated and outlayed for the purposes of the fund without further appropriation. The law of supply and demand is expected to regulate such funds. However, in some cases, Congress enacts obligation limitations on the funds in appropriations acts as a way of controlling their expenditures (for example, a limitation on administrative expenses). There are two types of revolving funds in the Federal funds group. *Public enterprise funds*, such as the Postal Service Fund, conduct business-like operations mainly with the public. *Intragovernmental funds*, such as the Federal Buildings Fund, conduct business-like operations mainly within and between Government agencies.

(d) *Trust funds.*

Trust funds account for the receipt and expenditure of monies by the Government for carrying out specific purposes and programs in accordance with the terms of a statute that designates the fund as a trust fund (such as the Highway Trust Fund) or for carrying out the stipulations of a trust agreement where the Nation is the beneficiary (such as any of several trust funds for gifts and donations for specific purposes). Like special funds and revolving funds, trust funds earmark collections for spending on specific purposes. Many of the larger trust funds finance social insurance payments for individuals, such as Social Security, Medicare, and unemployment compensation. Other major trust funds finance military and Federal civilian employees' retirement, highway and mass transit construction, and airport and airway development.

A trust fund normally consists of one or more receipt accounts to record receipts and an expenditure account to record the appropriation of the receipts and associated transactions. Some trust funds have multiple receipt accounts for the same reasons that special funds have them. Also, like special funds, large trust funds (such as the Highway Trust Fund) may have multiple expenditure accounts. A few trust funds, such as the Veterans Special Life Insurance fund and the Employees Life Insurance Fund, are established by law as revolving funds. These funds operate the same way as revolving funds in the Federal funds group, and we call them *trust revolving funds*. They conduct a cycle of business-type operations. The collections are credited to the expenditure account as offsetting collections and their outlays are displayed net of collections in a single expenditure account.

The Federal budget meaning of the term "trust", as applied to trust fund accounts, differs significantly from its private sector usage. In the private sector, the beneficiary of a trust usually owns the trust's assets, which are managed by a trustee who must follow the stipulations of the trust. In contrast, the Federal Government owns the assets of most Federal trust funds, and it can raise or lower future trust fund collections and payments, or change the purposes for which the collections are used, by changing existing laws. There is no substantive difference between these trust funds and special funds or between trust revolving funds and public enterprise revolving funds. Whether a particular fund is designated in law as a trust fund is, in many cases, arbitrary. For example, the National Service Life Insurance Fund is a trust fund, but the Servicemen's Group Life Insurance Fund is a Federal fund, even though both are financed by earmarked fees paid by veterans and both provide life insurance payments to veterans' beneficiaries. There are a few Federal trust funds that are managed pursuant to a trust agreement. These are identified in the budget as "gift funds". In addition, the Government does act as a true trustee on behalf of some entities outside of the Government where it makes no decisions about the amount of these deposits or how they are spent. For example, it maintains accounts on behalf of individual Federal employees in the Thrift Savings Fund, investing them as directed by the individual employee. The Government accounts for such funds in deposit funds (see the section after next).

(e) *Clearing accounts*

You use clearing accounts to temporarily account for transactions that you *know belong to the Government* while you wait for information that will allow you to match the transaction to a specific receipt or expenditure account. For example:

- To temporarily credit unclassified transactions from the public when there is a reasonable presumption that the amounts belong to a Federal Government account other than miscellaneous receipts in the Treasury.
- To temporarily credit unclassified transactions between Federal agencies, including On-line Payment and Collection (OPAC) transactions.

You should not use clearing accounts to mask an overobligation or overexpenditure of an expenditure account.

(f) *Deposit funds*

You use deposit funds to account for monies that *do not belong to the Government*. This includes monies held temporarily by the Government until ownership is determined (such as earnest money paid by bidders for mineral leases) or held by the Government as an agent for others (such as State and local income taxes withheld from Federal employees' salaries and not yet paid to the State or local government). We exclude deposit fund transactions, as such, from the budget totals because the funds are not owned by the Government. Therefore, the budget records transactions between deposit funds and budgetary accounts as transactions with the public. For example, when the mineral leasing process has

been completed, the winning bidder's earnest money is transferred from the deposit fund to the appropriate receipt account and the budget records a receipt. Similarly, outlays are recorded in an agency's salaries and expense account when a Federal employee is paid, even though some of the amount is transferred to a deposit fund for State and local income taxes withheld and paid later to the State and local government. Deposits and associated disbursements are recorded in the same account.

## 20.12 What do I need to know about spending authority from offsetting collections?

### (a) *Spending authority from offsetting collections*

*Spending authority from offsetting collections* is the budget authority that is financed by payments and repayments authorized by law to be credited to an appropriation or fund account. Offsetting collections consist of:

- Advances and reimbursements,
- Refunds, and
- Other income.

You may not retain collections unless you are authorized by a law. This prohibition is in [31 U.S.C. 3302\(b\)](#). If you do not have statutory authority to accept collections, they must be deposited in the Miscellaneous Receipt account in the Treasury.

### (b) *Advances*

Advances are amounts of money prepaid to a Federal Government account for the later receipt of goods, services, or other assets, or as matching funds.

When an advance is required, the budgetary resource provided by the order is denominated by the cash accompanying the order. The advance, per se, is not available for obligation. If both the order and the advance were to be available for obligation, budgetary resources would be double-counted.

Deposit advances *with orders* in the appropriate appropriation/fund or receipt account.

Deposit advances *without orders* as follows:

<b>If the advance is from...</b>	<b>Deposit the advance in...</b>
A non-Federal source	Deposit fund account (6500)
A Federal source	An intragovernmental clearing account (F3885)

### (c) *Refunds*

Refunds are the repayments of excess payments. The amounts are directly related to previous obligations incurred and outlays made against the appropriation. Deposit refunds to the credit of the appropriation or fund account charged with the original obligation as follows:

- Refunds collected by unexpired annual and multi-year appropriations and uncanceled no-year appropriations:

- ▶ Net refunds received in the same fiscal year as the obligations are incurred against Obligations incurred (line 8 of the SF 133) without further identification. These amounts have already been apportioned to the current year.
- ▶ Enter refunds of prior year obligations on line 3A1 when collected. These amounts must be reapportioned before being reobligated.
- ▶ Refunds receivable usually are not budgetary resources available for obligation until the refund is collected.
- Refunds collected by expired annual and multi-year appropriations are available for upward adjustments of valid obligations incurred during the unexpired period but not recorded.
- Deposit refunds to canceled annual, multi-year, or no-year appropriations in miscellaneous receipts in the Treasury.

(d) *Advances or reimbursements collected in return for providing others with goods and services*

The types of laws that allow you to use advances or reimbursements for providing goods and services are:

- Laws that establish revolving funds, including franchise funds and working capital funds;
- The Economy Act ([31 U.S.C. 1535](#)); and
- Provisions in your appropriations act, your authorizing legislation, or other substantive laws that allow you to use the amounts that you collect.

(e) *Revolving fund*

You may use a revolving fund when a law establishes the revolving funds and authorizes you to credit payments to the revolving fund that performs the work. Revolving funds operate on a reimbursable basis when working capital (undisbursed cash) is available. Otherwise, advance payments must accompany orders. You may *not* disburse revolving funds into a negative cash position in anticipation of Federal or non-Federal reimbursements because of the Antideficiency Act.

(f) *Economy Act*

The Act authorizes the head of an agency or major organizational unit within an agency to place an order with a major organizational unit within the same agency or another Federal agency for goods or services provided that:

- The ordering agency has enough money to pay for the order.
- The head of the ordering agency or unit decides the order is in the best interest of the United States Government.
- The agency or unit to fill the order is able to provide or get by contract the ordered goods or services.
- The head of the ordering agency decides that the ordered goods or services cannot be provided by contract as conveniently or cheaply by a commercial enterprise.

Transactions authorized by the Economy Act are limited by the statutory requirement that the amount obligated by the ordering appropriation is required to be deobligated to the extent that the agency or unit filling the order has not incurred obligations before the end of the period of availability of the ordering appropriation.

Under the Economy Act, payment (via expenditure transfer) may be made in advance or reimbursements may be made. Advances and reimbursements from other Federal Government appropriations are available for obligation when the ordering appropriation records a valid obligation to cover the order.

(g) *Reimbursable work with Federal agencies under the Economy Act*

When you anticipate but have not yet received an order, whether or not you received an advance, enter the amount on line 3C of the SF 133, "Anticipated for rest of year: Without advance".

When you receive the order, move the amount of the order from line 3C to line 3B2, "Change in unfilled customer orders: Without advance from Federal sources." If the order is accompanied or preceded by an advance payment, move the advance payment (up to the amount of the order) to line 3B1, "Change in unfilled customers' orders: Advance received."

If you do not record valid obligations to cover all or part of an order before the period of availability to make obligations of the ordering account expires, then you may not fill that part of the order. You must send back any cash advances not covered by obligations back to the ordering account. If you are the ordering agency, deobligate funds not covered by obligations by the performing account and record the corresponding adjustments. Use line 4A of the SF 133, "Recoveries of prior year obligations, actual", for obligations incurred in prior fiscal years. For obligations incurred in the current fiscal year, net the amount against the appropriate line 8, "Obligations incurred". If a cash advance accompanied the order, use line 3A1 when you collect the refund. These will be start of year unobligated balances available for adjustments but not new obligations in the expired years.

When you fill the order, move the amounts earned and collected to line 3A1, "Earned: Collected". Move the amounts earned but *not* collected to line 3A2, "Earned: Receivable from Federal sources".

If you receive payment for a filled order *after* the period of obligational authority of the performing appropriation has *expired*, credit the payment to the expired appropriation, unless the law expressly prescribes other procedures.

If you receive payment *after* your performing account has been *canceled*, you must send the amounts to miscellaneous receipts in the Treasury.

If the period of disbursement for your account is canceled before you reimburse the appropriation that performed the work, you can only make the repayment from an unexpired appropriation that is available for the same purpose as the closed account.

(h) *Payments from the public*

If the law authorizes an expenditure account to perform work for the public and to credit collections from the public as spending authority, you may cover obligations incurred by the account by:

- Advances collected up to the amount of accompanying orders. (You must deposit amounts greater than accompanying orders in a deposit fund. The expenditure account may *not* incur obligations against amounts *greater than* the order.)
- Working capital that is available for this purpose.

### Transfers<sup>1</sup> of Budgetary Resources Among Federal Government Accounts

TYPE OF TRANSACTION	NATURE OF TRANSACTION	TREASURY ACCOUNTING TREATMENT	BUDGET TREATMENT
<b>I. NONEXPENDITURE TRANSFERS</b>			
A. TRANSFER OF AUTHORITY TO OBLIGATE	Transfers to carry out the purposes of the RECEIVING ACCOUNT, for example, to shift resources from one purpose to another or to reflect a reorganization.	TRANSFER via S.F. 1151	The TRANSFERRING ACCOUNT reports a transfer out of budget authority or balances. THE RECEIVING ACCOUNT reports a transfer in.
B. ALLOCATION OF AUTHORITY TO OBLIGATE i.e., transfers to transfer appropriation accounts	Transfers to carry out the purposes of the PARENT ACCOUNT.	TRANSFER via S.F. 1151	Obligations and outlays are reported by the PARENT ACCOUNT.
<b>II. EXPENDITURE TRANSFERS</b>			
A. EXPENDITURE TRANSFER PAYMENTS BETWEEN TWO FEDERAL FUNDS OR BETWEEN TWO TRUST FUNDS	<p>Payments to carry out the purposes of the PAYING ACCOUNT, such as payments in return for goods and services authorized under the Economy Act.</p> <p>Payments that represent financial interchanges between Federal government accounts that are not in exchange for goods and services.</p>	PAYMENTS via S.F. 224 or electronic funds transfer. <sup>2</sup>	Obligations and outlays are reported by the PAYING account. Offsetting collections are reported by the RECEIVING account. The collections are (1) ADVANCES or (2) REPAYMENTS in the form of REIMBURSEMENTS or REFUNDS.
B. EXPENDITURE TRANSFER PAYMENTS BETWEEN FEDERAL AND TRUST FUNDS	All transfers between the two fund groups are expenditure transfers.	PAYMENTS via S.F. 224 or electronic funds transfer.	Same as above.

<sup>1</sup> A transfer is distinguished from a reprogramming in that a reprogramming is the shifting of budgetary resources within an Treasury account whereas a transfer is the shifting of budgetary resource between two Treasury accounts.

<sup>2</sup> For non-Treasury disbursing offices, the equivalent of the SF 224 is the SF 1219, Statement of Accountability and SF 1220, Statement of Transactions.

**SECTION 22—COMMUNICATIONS WITH CONGRESS AND THE PUBLIC AND  
CLEARANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Table of Contents**

22.1	Confidentiality of budget deliberations
22.2	Congressional testimony and communications
22.3	Clearance of materials for Congress and the media
22.4	Clearance of changes to the President's budget
22.5	Information available to the public
22.6	Additional material to be included in congressional budget justifications.

**22.1 Confidentiality of budget deliberations.**

The nature and amounts of the President's decisions and the underlying materials are confidential. Do not release the President's decisions outside of your agency until the budget is transmitted to Congress. Do not release any materials underlying those decisions at any time, except in accordance with this section. Presidential decisions on current and budget year estimates (other than forecasts of items that will be transmitted formally later), both in total and in detail, become the "proposed appropriations" as that term is used in the Budget and Accounting Act of 1921, as amended, and must be justified by your agency. Do not release agency justifications provided to OMB and any agency future year plans or long-range estimates to anyone outside the executive branch, except in accordance with this section.

**22.2 Congressional testimony and communications.**

The Executive Branch communications that led to the President's budget decisions will not be disclosed either by the agencies or by those who have prepared the budget. In addition, agency justifications provided to OMB and any agency future year plans or long-range estimates will not be furnished to anyone outside the executive branch, except in accordance with this section.

When furnishing information on appropriations and budgetary matters, you (and your agency representatives) should be aware of the following limitation on communications:

"... An officer or employee of an agency may submit to Congress or a committee of Congress an appropriations estimate or request, a request for an increase in that estimate or request, or a recommendation on meeting the financial needs of the government only when requested by either House of Congress."

You should also be aware of restrictions on communications to influence legislation that are not conducted through proper official channels ([18 U.S.C. 1913](#)).

After formal transmittal of the budget, an amendment, or a supplemental appropriation request, the following policies apply when testifying before any congressional committee or communicating with Members of Congress:

- Witnesses will give frank and complete answers to all questions.

**SECTION 22—COMMUNICATIONS WITH CONGRESS AND  
THE PUBLIC AND CLEARANCE REQUIREMENTS**

---

- Witnesses will avoid volunteering personal opinions that reflect positions inconsistent with the President's program or appropriation request.
- If statutory provisions exist for the direct submission of the agency budget request to Congress, OMB may provide you additional materials supporting the President's budget request that you will forward to Congress with the agency testimony. Witnesses will be prepared to explain the agency submission, the request in the President's budget, and any justification material.
- When responding to specific questions on program and appropriations requests, witnesses will not provide the agency request to OMB or plans for the use of appropriations that exceed the President's request. Typically, witnesses are responsible for one or a few programs, whereas the President is responsible for all the needs of the Federal Government given the revenues available. Where appropriate, witnesses should explain this difference in perspective and that it is therefore not appropriate for them to support appropriations above the President's request.
- When asked to provide a written response that involves a statement of opinion on program and appropriations requests, witnesses will provide a reply through the agency head.
- Do not let your communications be perceived as an "appropriations estimate or request ... or an increase in that estimate or request" ([31 U.S.C. 1108](#)). You are expected to support the President's budgetary decisions and seek adjustments to those decisions only through established procedures if your agency head determines such action is necessary.

**22.3 Clearance of materials for Congress and the media.**

Policy consistency between the President's budget and the budget-related materials prepared for Congress and the media is essential. To ensure this consistency, you are required to submit budget-related materials to OMB for clearance prior to transmittal to congressional committees, individual Members of Congress or their staff, or the media. Unless a specific exemption is approved by OMB, materials subject to OMB clearance include:

- All budget justifications and budget-related oversight materials;
- Testimony before and letters to congressional committees;
- Written responses to congressional inquiries or other materials for record;
- Materials responding to committee and subcommittee reporting requirements;
- Capability statements;
- Appeals letters;
- Reprogramming requests;
- Related cost information;
- Financial management documents addressing budget and policy issues (e.g., some accountability reports or transmittal documents for audited financial statements); and



- Proposed press releases relating to the President's budget.

Provide this information to OMB five working days in advance to allow adequate review time. OMB review of reprogramming requests may take longer in some circumstances (e.g., if the request has not been coordinated or if supporting materials have not been provided concurrently). In exceptional circumstances, where the response time is very short, agencies may request oral clearance or make other arrangements for expedited review. Immediately after the budget transmittal and after subsequent transmittals, provide OMB with a schedule of anticipated congressional reviews that require agency oral and written participation. Revise this schedule as appropriate.

Address any questions you have about this subsection to the OMB representatives whom you normally consult on budget-related matters.

#### **22.4 Clearance of changes to the President's budget.**

If you want to propose changes to the President's budget (e.g., appropriations language, limitations, balance sheets required by the Government Corporation Control Act, and dollar amounts), you must follow the confidentiality and clearance guidance provided in this section and submit a written request as described in section [110.3](#). OMB will notify you whether a formal transmittal of the change will be made.

When it is possible to reduce the amount of an appropriations request before action has been taken by the Appropriations Committee of either House, the head of your agency should inform OMB promptly. Before your agency head decides to request restoration of a reduction, the reasons for the reduction, the circumstances under which it was made, and its significance to the President's program should be carefully considered.

#### **22.5 Information available to the public.**

Many agency budget documents that are subject to the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) are exempt from mandatory release pursuant to [5 U.S.C. 552\(b\)\(5\)](#). Depending on the nature of the record requested, other FOIA exemptions may apply. When deciding whether to withhold a budget document that is exempt from mandatory release, follow the FOIA memorandum issued by the Attorney General on October 12, 2001. Any discretionary decision by an agency to disclose protected information should be made only after full and deliberate consideration of the institutional interests that could be implicated by disclosure, as well as after consultation with OMB. Agency heads are responsible for determining the propriety of record releases under FOIA.

Certain agencies headed by a collegial body may be required to hold their meetings open to public observation unless the agency properly determines that the matter to be discussed warrants the closing of those meetings for reasons enumerated in the Government in the Sunshine Act (Public Law 94-409). Some meetings covered by that Act may pertain to budgetary information discussed in this Circular. Although, as with the FOIA, it is not possible to determine merely by the generic category of such information whether such an agency would be authorized to close a particular meeting covered by the Government in the Sunshine Act, the premature disclosure of budgetary information may "be likely to significantly frustrate implementation of a proposed agency action" ([5 U.S.C. 552b\(c\)\(9\)\(B\)](#)). Furthermore, other exemptions from the open meeting requirements of the Act may apply. Such agencies are responsible for the propriety of determinations that would lead to the disclosure of this budgetary information.

**22.6 Additional material to be included in congressional budget justifications.**

(a) *Materials for performance budget submission to Congress.*

For FY 2005, you will have submitted your budget to OMB as a performance budget, presenting what you propose to accomplish in the upcoming year and what resources your proposal will require. Descriptions of the performance budget are presented in Sections 26 and 51.

You should revise the performance budget submission to reflect decisions made in the Administration's budget process, and use the performance budget format as the basis for your justification of the budget request to Congress. You should consult with your Congressional representatives to agree on the performance budget format prior to submitting your Congressional justification. Your OMB representative should be included in those consultations as appropriate.

Your Congressional justification should be in the form of a "performance budget" to the greatest extent possible. A "performance budget" should include:

- A description of what you plan to accomplish, organized by strategic goal,
- Background on what you have accomplished,
- Performance targets for current and budget years and how you expect to achieve those targets, and
- What resources you are requesting to achieve the targets.

Where possible, you should include the full cost of a program, and you should align budget accounts with programs.

You should provide your proposed justification to Congress to your OMB representative with sufficient time for review.

(b) *Material to be included in congressional budget justifications*

[41 U.S.C. 433\(h\)](#) requires you to identify funding levels requested for education and training of the acquisition workforce in your budget justifications to the Congress.

Public Law 100-615 requires you to identify funds requested for energy conservation measures in your budget justifications to the Congress.

You should provide Congress with information to assess current and proposed capital projects that is consistent with the Administration's budget proposals, including appropriate information on planning; budgeting, including the current or proposed use of incremental or full funding; acquisition; and management of the projects.

You must submit all budget justification materials to OMB for clearance before transmitting them to Congress.

# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 2**

# **PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF BUDGET ESTIMATE**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



## SECTION 25—SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS

**Table of Contents**

- 25.1 Does Part 2 apply to me?
- 25.2 How do I get an exception from the requirements in Part 2?
- 25.3 For what items do I need advance approval?
- 25.4 When do I submit information to OMB?
- 25.5 What do I include in the initial submission?
- 25.6 What do I submit after passback?

**Summary of Changes**

Consolidates requirements previously included in several separate sections (old sections 51, 55, 58, 84, and 100) and provides electronic links to instructions (section 25.5).

Requires agencies to submit activity-level homeland security and overseas combating terrorism information with their initial submission (section 25.5).

Requires agencies to submit overseas staffing information with their initial submission (previously section 58). This information is requested as part of the President's Management Agenda on rightsizing overseas presence and will be published as part of the budget documents (section 25.5).

**25.1 Does Part 2 apply to me?**

By law ([31 U.S.C. 1104](#)), the President's budget must include information on all agencies of all three branches of the Federal government. Therefore, the instructions in Part 2 generally apply to all government agencies. In addition, these instructions apply to the District of Columbia, which must submit information in support of Federal payments to the District. OMB includes the information submitted by certain agencies in the budget without change (see below). In addition, Government-sponsored enterprises (GSEs) submit some of the information required of Government agencies on a comparable basis, and OMB includes it in the budget for information purposes (see section 25.6).

If your agency appears in the following list, it is not subject to Executive Branch review by law or custom. That means that the requirements for the initial submission (see section 25.5) do not apply to you. However, you do need to submit the information required for inclusion in the budget database and documents (see section 25.6), which OMB incorporates without revision.

- Legislative Branch agencies.
- Judicial Branch agencies.
- Executive Branch agencies, as follows:
  - ▶ Milk, Fruit, and Vegetable Marketing Orders, USDA.
  - ▶ International Trade Commission.
  - ▶ Postal Service.
  - ▶ Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System.

- GSEs, as follows:
  - ▶ Student Loan Marketing Association.
  - ▶ Federal National Mortgage Association.
  - ▶ Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation.
  - ▶ Banks for cooperatives.
  - ▶ Agriculture credit banks.
  - ▶ Farm credit banks.
  - ▶ Federal Agricultural Mortgage Corporation.
  - ▶ Federal home loan banks.
  - ▶ Financing Corporation.
  - ▶ Resolution Funding Corporation.

Contact your OMB representative if you have questions about the applicability of these instructions.

## 25.2 How do I get an exception from the requirements in Part 2?

For the sake of comparability among the budget data and presentations, OMB does not grant many exceptions to the specific requirements in this Part. However, if you believe special circumstances warrant an exception in your case, submit a written request detailing the circumstances and the specific exception needed to your OMB representative by August 1. If OMB approves the exception, it is valid only for one budget.

## 25.3 For what items do I need advance approval?

You must get advance approval from your OMB representative for the items shown in the table below.

Item	See section...	Timing
(1) Form and content of justification materials.	<a href="#">51.2</a>	Prior to initial submission.
(2) Program activity structure in the program and financing schedule.	<a href="#">82.2</a>	By October 1.
(3) Changes in functional and receipt classifications.	<a href="#">71.3, 79.3</a>	By October 1.
(4) Changes in budget account structure (new accounts, merged accounts, changes in account titles, etc.)	<a href="#">71.3, 79.3</a>	Prior to October 1 or as soon as possible thereafter for changes dependent on congressional action or other circumstances beyond agency control.

## 25.4 When do I submit information to OMB?

You generally submit information in two stages, although your OMB representative will work with you to determine specific timing requirements:

(1) *As part of your initial budget submission.* This stage includes the information and materials supporting your budget request. Executive branch agencies subject to Executive Branch review (see section 25.1) and the District of Columbia must provide their budget justifications and other initial submission materials to OMB by September 8<sup>th</sup>. Agencies that are not subject to Executive Branch review (see section 25.1) do not make initial submissions.

(2) *After passback.* Usually beginning in late November, this stage includes MAX computer data, print materials, and additional information used to prepare the budget documents and supporting

database. Also, you may need to revise and resubmit some materials included in the initial submission to reflect the effects of final decisions. Your OMB representative will provide deadlines for the materials required after passback. Agencies that are not subject to Executive Branch review need to submit information for inclusion in the budget documents and the budget database.

In the following sections, we tell you more about each stage, including the timing of submissions, the items required, the criteria for determining whether the item applies to your agency, and where to find more detailed guidance on the item.

**25.5 What do I include in the initial submission?**

You should include the budget justification and other materials described below in Table 1. In addition, if the criterion listed in the first column of Table 2 applies to you, include the information described in the second column. In addition to the information specified in the tables, your OMB representative may require you to include other materials in your initial submission (for example, information about your budget request by account and by Budget Enforcement Act category).

**TABLE 1: CONTENTS OF INITIAL SUBMISSION—ALL AGENCIES<sup>1</sup>**

Include these items...	See section...
Summary and highlight statement	<a href="#">51.1</a>
Justification materials	<a href="#">51.2–51.11</a>

<sup>1</sup>Excluding agencies not subject to Executive Branch review (see section 25.1).

**TABLE 2: CONTENTS OF INITIAL SUBMISSION—CERTAIN AGENCIES<sup>1</sup>**  
 Access web links at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/current\\_year/s25.pdf](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/current_year/s25.pdf)

If your agency...	Then include this...	See section or link...
Is covered by the Chief Financial Officers Act	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Financial management budget justification; and</li> <li>Report on resources for financial management activities <sup>2</sup></li> </ul>	<a href="#">52</a>
Is not covered by the Chief Financial Officers Act	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Brief summary of your financial management plan</li> </ul>	
Has motor vehicles	Motor vehicle fleet report	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Is requesting IT funding via a Capital Asset Plan or has budget authority of \$500,000 or more for financial management systems	Agency Information Technology Investment Portfolio <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">53</a>
Has credit liquidating accounts with unobligated balances that carry over into the current year	Justification of unobligated balances in liquidating accounts	<a href="#">51.12, 185.3</a>

**TABLE 2: CONTENTS OF INITIAL SUBMISSION—CERTAIN AGENCIES<sup>1</sup>**  
 Access web links at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/current\\_year/s25.pdf](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/current_year/s25.pdf)

<b>If your agency...</b>	<b>Then include this...</b>	<b>See section or link...</b>
Has geospatial data investments greater than \$500,000	Information on geospatial data acquisitions <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Controls its federally-owned building space or directly pays the utilities on its leased space or operates a Federal fleet of 20 or more light duty motor vehicles	Information on funds for energy efficiency management	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Has overseas employees at embassies or consulates	Information on overseas staffing <sup>3</sup>	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Implements homeland security and overseas combating terrorism related initiatives	Homeland security and overseas combating terrorism data collection <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">Instructions</a>
Has competitive sourcing initiatives	Competitive sourcing program costs	<a href="#">31.9</a>
Has technology transfers	Information on technology transfers	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Is subject to GPRA requirements	Merge annual performance plan into performance budget	<a href="#">51</a>
Has major capital acquisitions	Capital asset plan and business case <sup>2</sup>	<a href="#">300</a>

<sup>1</sup> Excluding agencies not subject to Executive Branch review (see section 25.1).

<sup>2</sup> If final decisions require changes to this information, revised materials must be submitted.

<sup>3</sup> This information is requested as part of the President's Management Agenda on rightsizing. It will be utilized to build comprehensive, accurate information on trends in overseas staffing and to help rationalize decisions on staffing. Agencies must submit complete data on overseas staffing and cost at the same time as their initial submission to OMB on September 8, 2003. In addition, as part of the initial submission, agencies must include a statement as to whether the overseas staffing information has been submitted. Data, or summaries of the data, will be published as part of the budget documents. Any agency that has questions about the requirement or does not believe it will be able to provide this information on time should contact James Kulikowski (202-395-6124) by August 15, 2003.

## 25.6 What do I submit after passback?

### (a) Overview.

After the President has considered the estimates and made his decisions, you will be notified. You submit three types of information after passback, as explained in more detail in the following sections:

- *MAX computer data*, submitted through the MAX budget data system (see sections 79–86).
- *Print materials*, which OMB uses to prepare parts of the budget *Appendix* (see [section 95](#)).

If the decisions affect other budget accounts (such as the amount of transfers), you need to coordinate these changes with whomever is responsible for the budget submission of those other accounts.



When you are informed of the President’s decisions, your agency head will determine the best and most appropriate distribution of amounts that have been left flexible. This Circular does not address the process by which you appeal passback decisions. We issue separate guidance on the appeals process at the time of passback.

(b) *Timing.*

Passback usually occurs around the end of November. At that time, your OMB representative will give you deadlines for providing the information described below. These deadlines are based on the very tight schedule that OMB must maintain in order to transmit the budget on time. In order to meet the deadlines, you must begin providing the required information based on passback decisions. Do not wait until you have resolved appeals. Appeals generally affect very little of the information you submit, and you will have an opportunity to change the information as necessary to reflect the appeal resolution. Unless your OMB representative agrees, do not submit information that assumes an appeal resolution different from passback. When an appeal results in changes to passback decisions, the changes often differ from the agency proposal.

(c) *MAX computer data.*

You must submit the MAX computer data described below in the Table 3 for each applicable budget account. In addition, if the criterion listed in the first column of Table 4 applies to you, submit the data described in the second column for each applicable budget account. In both tables, we indicate the MAX data section or sections involved and tell you where to find guidance on the requirement.

**TABLE 3: MAX COMPUTER DATA—ALL AGENCIES \***

<b>Submit for each applicable account...</b>	<b>MAX data schedule..</b>	<b>See section..</b>
Estimates of budget authority and outlays	A, S	<a href="#">81</a>
Program and financing schedules	P	<a href="#">82</a>
Object classification schedules	O	<a href="#">83</a>
Personnel summary	Q	<a href="#">86.1</a>
Performance metrics	V	<a href="#">85</a>
Character classification	C	<a href="#">84</a>

\* Including agencies not subject to Executive Branch review. Federal Reserve Board submits data for sections A, P, and O only. Nothing in this table applies to GSEs.

**TABLE 4: MAX COMPUTER DATA—CERTAIN AGENCIES <sup>1,2</sup>**

<b>If your agency has...</b>	<b>Then submit this for each applicable budget account...</b>	<b>MAX data schedule...</b>	<b>See section...</b>
Receipt accounts	Receipt estimates	K and R	<a href="#">81</a>

TABLE 4: MAX COMPUTER DATA—CERTAIN AGENCIES <sup>1,2</sup>

If your agency has...	Then submit this for each applicable budget account...	MAX data schedule...	See section...
Credit liquidating or financing accounts; or non-credit revolving funds that conduct business-type activities (as determined by OMB), including GSEs.	Balance sheet	F	<a href="#">86.2</a>
Appropriations language requests	Budget year appropriations requests in thousands	T	<a href="#">86.4</a>
Major trust funds and certain other accounts (as determined by OMB)	Status of funds	J	<a href="#">86.5</a>
Unavailable special or trust fund receipts	Data on unavailable receipts	N	<a href="#">86.6</a>
Credit programs	Federal credit data	G, H, U, and Y	<a href="#">185</a>

<sup>1</sup> Including agencies not subject to Executive Branch review. GSEs submit data for schedules F, G, and H only. Nothing in this table applies to the Federal Reserve Board.

<sup>2</sup> DOD-Military submits budget plan (MAX schedule D), see section [86.3](#).

(d) *Print materials.*

Print materials include these items printed in the *Budget Appendix*:

- *Appropriations language.* You must submit language for each account for which appropriations or limitation language was enacted in the CY or is proposed in the CY or BY, including supplemental appropriations requests. You must also submit any general provisions that pertain to you (see section 95).
- *Narrative statements, footnotes, and tables.* You must provide a narrative statement for each account with activity in the current or budget year and separate statements for supplemental requests, rescission proposals, and items proposed for later transmittal. You may be required to provide tables and footnotes that are not generated by MAX under certain circumstances (see section 95).

(e) *Additional materials.*

In addition, if the criterion listed in the first column of Table 5 applies to you, submit the data described in the second column.

**TABLE 5: ADDITIONAL MATERIALS —CERTAIN AGENCIES**Access web links at [http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/current\\_year/s25.pdf](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/current_year/s25.pdf)

<b>If your agency...</b>	<b>Then include this...</b>	<b>See section or link...</b>
Has research funding	Allocation of research funds	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Funds R&D that is performed by colleges and universities	R&D performed by colleges and universities	<a href="#">Instructions</a> <a href="#">Spreadsheet</a>
Has major formula grants to state and local governments	Provide budget data by program	<a href="#">Instructions</a>



## SECTION 26—SUMMARY OF PERFORMANCE INFORMATION REQUIREMENTS

**Table of Contents**

- 26.1 What do I need to know about preparing a strategic plan?  
 26.2 Where can I find information about the President's Management Agenda?  
 26.3 What do I need to know about Performance Budgeting and the Budget and Performance Integration initiative?

**Summary of Changes**

This section compiles and links to guidance about the integration and use of performance information, including the statutory requirements of the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA), the President's Management Agenda, and the use of the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART).

**26.1 What do I need to know about preparing a strategic plan?**

Performance-based management and budgeting must begin with an overarching strategic plan. Such plans are already required by the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA). Strategic plans require the agencies to define long-term strategic goals to carry out their mission, identify strategies for achieving them, and demonstrate sustained, coordinated efforts on reaching key goals.

You can find information on developing and revising strategic plans in [section 210](#).

**26.2 Where can I find information about the President's Management Agenda?**

The President's Management Agenda [[http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/budintegration/pma\\_index.html](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/budintegration/pma_index.html)], published in August, 2001, consists of 5 cross-cutting initiatives and 9 agency-specific initiatives. The 5 cross-cutting initiatives are:

- Strategic Management of Human Capital;
- Competitive Sourcing;
- Improved Financial Performance;
- Expanded E-government; and
- Budget and Performance Integration.

For each of these initiatives, OMB prepares a quarterly scorecard consisting of red, yellow and green ratings, reflecting agency status and progress in meeting the standards for success for a given initiative.

You may access the current standards for success for each of the initiatives by clicking on the links in the table below.

Additional information for the initiatives can be found in:

Initiative	See A-11 section . . .	Additional links . . .
Strategic Management of Human Capital	31.11	<a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/humancapital5-03.html">http://www.results.gov/agenda/humancapital5-03.html</a> <a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf">http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf</a>

Initiative	See A-11 section . . .	Additional links . . .
Competitive Sourcing	31.9	<a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/competitivesourcing5-03.html">http://www.results.gov/agenda/competitivesourcing5-03.html</a> <a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf">http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf</a>
Improved Financial Performance	52	<a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/financialperformance5-03.html">http://www.results.gov/agenda/financialperformance5-03.html</a> <a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf">http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf</a>
Expanded E-government	53, 300	<a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/egov5-03.html">http://www.results.gov/agenda/egov5-03.html</a> <a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf">http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf</a>
Budget and Performance Integration	51, 85, 200, 210, 220, 230	<a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/budgetperformance5-03.html">http://www.results.gov/agenda/budgetperformance5-03.html</a> <a href="http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf">http://www.results.gov/agenda/standards.pdf</a>

### 26.3 What do I need to know about Performance Budgeting and the Budget and Performance Integration initiative?

- (a) *Integration of the annual performance plan and report into the performance budget and the Performance and Accountability Report*

The annual performance plan, aligned with the recently approved strategic plan and incorporating all actions identified in completed PARTS, should explain the planned activities for 2005, including those currently underway, that justify the agency's budget request. The agency's plan should be integrated into and form the basis of the agency's "performance budget" submission to OMB in September. You should modify the performance budget to reflect Administration decisions in your Congressional Justification to Congress in February. Because the legal requirements for an annual performance plan would be met by the performance budget, you should not submit a separate performance plan to comply with GPRA. See Sections 51 and 220 for details on how to prepare the performance budget justifications.

GPRA also requires an annual performance report, which for Cabinet Departments and nine independent agencies<sup>1</sup> will be fulfilled by the Performance and Accountability Report (PAR). The PAR also includes agency financial statements. All other agencies will submit an annual performance report. Additional guidance for the annual performance report is in Section 230.

- (b) *Use of the Performance Assessment Rating Tool (PART)*

For the FY 2004 Budget, OMB and the agencies began the process of systematic assessment of program performance using the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART). This process is a permanent part of the budget development process in OMB and in the agencies. The PART consists of four sections:

- Program purpose and design;
- Strategic planning;
- Program management; and
- Program results/ accountability.

In FY 2005, OMB is expanding PART ratings to 40 percent of programs in order to assess their effectiveness and improve their performance. The PART process will be expanded each year until all programs have been assessed, with the PART eventually becoming the comprehensive vehicle to measure and assess program performance. The performance measures, effectiveness ratings, and planned actions to address weaknesses identified in the PART assessments should be included in your FY 2005

"performance budget" submissions to OMB and to the Congress. You may have additional and more detailed performance measures that are relevant for program managers or for other internal purposes. These additional detailed measures, while important for internal management, need not be reported in budget documents. If they are, they should be considered "supplemental," and must be consistent with the goals validated in the PART.

Instructions for preparing the PART can be found at [www.whitehouse.gov/omb/part/bpm861.pdf](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/part/bpm861.pdf)

***Budget information in PART summaries.*** For FY 2005, the PART worksheet includes spaces to enter the program funding level and to identify the composition of the funding; e.g. budget authority, spending authority from offsetting collections, obligation limitations, recoveries of prior year obligations, etc. To ensure a standard interpretation of "program funding level", the level and composition of funding entered should be defined as budgetary resources (see section 20).

***Planning for PART assessments in future years.*** As part of your budget submission to OMB in September, please include a complete list of suggested programs to evaluate using the PART. You must use this [Excel template](#) to complete this list. Here are some general instructions:

- For FY 2004 and 2005, show the programs you have already evaluated. If programs were redefined, please note that and identify any overlap in funding.
- For FY 2006 through 2008, show the programs you propose be evaluated in each of these fiscal years.
- This program list should be comprehensive, covering the total funding for your agency.
- You should identify the accounts that finance the program.
- To the extent possible, you should identify the strategic goal and performance objective(s) to which each PART contributes.

(c) *Performance budget submission*

Your budget submission to OMB in September should be in the form of a "performance budget" to the greatest extent possible. A "performance budget" should include:

- A description of what you plan to accomplish, organized by strategic goal;
- Background on what you have accomplished;
- Performance targets for current and budget years and how you expect to achieve those targets; and
- What resources you are allocating in the current year and requesting in the budget year to achieve the targets.

For your agency's programs that have been evaluated by the PART for FY 2004 and FY 2005 budgets, the performance budget submission should include the performance measures and targets that were included in the PARTs. For other agency programs that have not been reviewed using the PART, the performance budget should include measures and targets consistent with the strategic plan goals and that meet the standard of the PART. These measures may be modified as those programs are assessed by the PART in the coming years.

You should identify programs or activities that are being undertaken with other agencies to achieve a common purpose or objective (i.e. interagency and cross-cutting programs). Some of these programs may be included in those areas where OMB is working to develop common measures. Where applicable, you should include common measures in your performance budget and in the PARTs.

***Where possible, include the full cost of a program.*** In some cases, you may want to consider requesting budgetary resources to cover all indirect costs in the budget account or program activity that funds the program, and paying for all central services as they are used. In other cases, you may want to request appropriations for some central accounts providing support services; in these cases, you should include a table showing the full cost of resources used by each program, whether paid from its budget account or not.

***Where possible, align budget accounts and program activity lines with programs or the components of the program that contribute to a single strategic goal or objective.*** Last year, agencies began to forge a much greater alignment between resources and performance. Where possible, you should attempt to align your budget accounts with the programs, distinguishing among components that contribute to different strategic goals. This should relate PARTs with budget accounts or sub-accounts. This process usually requires close consultation with appropriations committee staffs. Agencies should engage these staffs early and be prepared with strong justifications for planned changes.

In addition, when practical you should align program activities in the program and financing (P&F) schedule to correspond to the programs that will be evaluated by the PART.

***Compliance with the Government Performance and Results Act.*** Your performance budget submitted in your congressional justifications will serve as your annual performance plan required by the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA). You should consult with your congressional committees to ensure that they are aware of your plans to revise the format of your budget documents.

(d) *Performance and Accountability Report (PAR)*

The annual performance report required by GPRA included information on your actual performance and your progress in achieving the goals and objectives in your strategic plan. [OMB Bulletin 01-09](#) (September 25, 2001) on "Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements" requires 15 Cabinet departments and nine independent agencies<sup>1</sup> to combine the program performance report with the accountability report and to transmit a combined Performance and Accountability Report to the President, Congress, and OMB. The FY 2003 report should be transmitted not later than January 30, 2004.

For the FY 2004 budget, PART-approved program performance measures were included in the PART summaries (published in the *Performance and Management Assessments* volume). Over time, these tables will provide an overview of whether or not the program was successful in achieving its performance goals—the first requirement for the annual performance report—and should be included in the PAR. In addition, an explanation of why a performance goal was not met—the other past-year focused section of the performance report—should also be included in the PAR. Goals and explanations consistent with the strategic plan and previous performance reports should also be included in the PAR for programs not yet assessed by the PART.

Your performance budget submission (see (c) above) will include performance information for past years, and will thus fulfill some of the requirements of GPRA. More forward looking information and discussions required in the report (i.e., evaluating the performance plan for the current fiscal year; schedules for achieving the established performance goal; and, if the performance goal is impractical or infeasible, why that is the case and what action is recommended) are often sensitive components of the



President's Budget and should be included in the performance budget for the subsequent year and not included in the PAR.

(e) *Performance information in the Appendix*

In the past two years, some agencies used informational tables to show performance metrics for some of their accounts in the *Appendix*. As an upgrade to the informational tables used in the past, the FY 2005 Budget will include a schedule that shows performance metrics, particularly short-term outcomes that relate to long-term outcomes in the agency strategic plan, outputs, and output characteristics. The program and financing (P&F) schedule has also been changed for the FY 2005 Budget so you can relate performance metrics to obligations in the P&F. See [section 85](#) for further information.

(f) *Tracking PART programs in budget execution reports*

OMB has changed instructions for budget execution reporting to more readily allow agencies to report obligations for PART programs without using separate Category B projects to apportion these programs. Starting in FY 2004, you may report obligations for PART programs in your SF 133 Reports on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources (see sections 120, 121, and 130).

<sup>1</sup>Agency for International Development, Environmental Protection Agency, General Services Administration, National Aeronautics and Space Administration, National Science Foundation, Nuclear Regulatory Commission, Office of Personnel Management, Small Business Administration, Social Security Administration



## SECTION 30—BASIC POLICIES AND ASSUMPTIONS

<b>Table of Contents</b>
--------------------------

30.1 30.2 30.3 30.4 30.5	What should be the basis for my proposals? What is the scope of the policy estimates? What economic assumptions should I use when I develop estimates? What assumptions should I make about growth in agency workload? How do I develop unit cost information?
--------------------------------------	--

**30.1 What should be the basis for my proposals?**

Your proposals should result from a comprehensive system that integrates analysis, planning, evaluation, and budgeting. They should reflect:

- The policies of the President, including full implementation of the President's Management Agenda;
- Guidance provided by OMB, including that contained in spring guidance memoranda sent to the heads of agencies in April 2003, which include guidance on:
  - ▶ The National Strategy for Homeland Security;
  - ▶ Budget and performance integration management initiatives (including effectiveness ratings for those programs covered by the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART));
  - ▶ Funding guidance (within the amount that was included in the FY 2004 Budget for your agency)
- The judgment of the agency head regarding the scope, content, performance, and quality of programs and activities proposed to meet the agency's missions, goals, and objectives.

In developing the estimates, consider the effect that demographic, economic, or other changes can have on program levels beyond the budget year. Be prepared to discuss the impact that program levels and changes in methods of program delivery, including advances in technology, will have on program operations and administration. Also consider the appropriate roles for Federal, State, and local governments, as well as the private sector, in conducting the covered activities. Involve State and local officials in the development of policy and budget priorities and programs with significant State and local impact. Make sure your estimates are consistent with strategic and annual performance plans.

**30.2 What is the scope of the policy estimates?**

(a) *Presidential policy estimates for CY and BY.*

(1) *Regular annual estimates.* Your regular annual estimates must reflect all requirements anticipated at the time of budget submission, and should cover:

- Continuing activities, including those that must be reauthorized for the budget year;
- Authorized activities that are proposed for the budget year;

- Amounts necessary to meet specific financial liabilities imposed by law; and
- Decreases for activities proposed for termination.

(2) *Legislative proposals.* If you and your OMB representative determine that proposals for new legislation require a further budget request or result in a change in revenues or outlays, you must separately identify and provide a tentative forecast of the estimate in your submission. These proposals must be consistent with the items that appear in your legislative program, as required by [OMB Circular No. A-19](#).

(3) *Supplemental proposals.* You should make every effort to conduct your programs within the amounts appropriated for the current year and to postpone actions that require supplemental appropriations. OMB will only consider supplemental requests that meet the criteria provided in [section 110](#). Supplemental requests that are known at the time the budget is prepared and approved are normally transmitted to Congress with the budget, rather than later as separate transmittals. However, each case will be decided separately after OMB receives the agency's initial submission (see [section 51.10](#)). OMB representatives will tell you which supplementals will be transmitted with the budget so you can submit the necessary information.

(b) *Presidential policy outyear estimates.*

Policy estimates for the nine years following the budget year (BY+1 through BY+9) enable the President to present the long-term consequences of proposed program or tax policy initiatives. (Baseline estimates, described in [section 80](#), provide a basis for assessing alternatives, including Presidential policy estimates.) OMB may centrally calculate outyear policy estimates for discretionary programs with some exceptions. In this case, you may be asked to identify and justify any deviations from these estimates, by program or activity, that you believe are warranted.

When you develop outyear policy estimates, they should be consistent with the general policies and information required for the budget year and indicate the degree to which specific policy decisions made for the budget year or any subsequent year affect budget authority, outlay, and receipt outyear levels. Take into consideration changes in spending trends, economic assumptions, and other actions or events when you prepare estimates of budget authority, outlays, and receipts for BY+1 through BY+9.

### **30.3 What economic assumptions should I use when I develop estimates?**

All budget materials, including those for the outyear policy and baseline estimates, must be consistent with the economic assumptions provided by OMB. The specific guidance below applies to outyear policy estimates.

OMB policy permits *consideration* of price changes for goods and services as a factor in developing estimates. However, this does not mean that you should automatically include an allowance for the full rate of anticipated inflation in your request.

For *mandatory programs*, reflect the full inflation rate where such an allowance is required by law and there has been no decision to propose less than required. For *discretionary programs*, you may include an allowance for less than the full rate of anticipated inflation or even no allowance for inflation. In many cases, you must make trade-offs between budgeting increases for inflation versus other increases for programmatic purposes. Unless OMB determines otherwise, you must prepare your budget requests to OMB within the budget planning guidance levels provided to you, regardless of the effect of inflation.

Economic assumptions may be revised shortly before final budget decisions are made. These revisions will not usually result in changes to the previous budget guidance on your agency totals.

Reflect Federal pay raises in your estimates of personnel compensation and benefits (see [section 32.2\(b\)\(1\)](#)).

You must identify the anticipated price level changes reflected in the financial resources required to finance each program level in your justification materials (see [section 51.3](#)).

#### **30.4 What assumptions should I make about growth in agency workload?**

Assume that growth in your agency workload will be offset by productivity. Use personnel currently funded to the maximum extent in staffing new programs and expansions of existing programs. These actions should be part of your agency's overall human capital strategy, aligned with the President's Management Agenda, and reflected in the integrated performance plan ([sections 31.11, 32.2\(a\)\(1\)](#), and [220](#)).

#### **30.5 How do I develop unit cost information?**

Unit cost is used to make "apples to apples" comparisons between federal programs that have similar goals. Unit cost should reflect the average cost of the program producing a specific result. The unit cost should reflect the full cost of producing a result including overhead and other indirect costs. Where possible, you should separate costs into fixed and variable components so that marginal costs can be derived in addition to unit costs. Such information will also provide a credible base for projections of future costs and the need for budgetary resources. Upon request, you must provide both unit cost and marginal cost information to OMB.



**SECTION 31—COMPLIANCE WITH ADMINISTRATION POLICIES AND OTHER  
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

**Table of Contents**

31.1	Advance appropriations
31.2	Environmental management
31.3	Equal opportunity
31.4	Full funding
31.5	Government perquisites
31.6	MAX electronic network
31.7	Multi-year appropriations
31.8	Management improvement initiatives and policies
31.9	Performance of commercial activities
31.10	User charges
31.11	Workforce planning and restructuring

**Summary of Changes**

Requires information on the cost of managing competitive sourcing initiatives (section 31.9).

Provides additional guidance on human capital management (section 31.11).

**31.1 Advance appropriations.**

Do not request advance appropriations if the only purpose is to shift budget authority for a program that would normally be provided in the budget year. For example, if you would normally request budget authority in the budget year to cover a cohort of obligations for a grant program, even though some of the obligations will not be incurred until the following fiscal year, you may not request an advance appropriation of budget authority to cover the obligations expected to be incurred in the following fiscal year.

**31.2 Environmental management.**

The OMB/CEQ joint letter of April 1, 2002 applauds those agencies developing and implementing effective environmental management systems (EMS). Federal agencies should develop and implement environmental management systems in order to integrate environmental accountability into agency day-to-day decision-making and long-term planning processes, across all agency missions, activities, and functions. These efforts must be funded within guidance totals. They should include, but not be limited to, the following components: initial self-assessments, development of performance measures, policy, and establishment of management systems.

**31.3 Equal opportunity.**

Your estimates should reflect the Administration's commitment to programs designed to ensure or promote equal opportunity regardless of race, color, religion, national origin, sex, disability, or age. These civil rights activities include the following:

**SECTION 31—COMPLIANCE WITH ADMINISTRATION POLICIES  
AND OTHER GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

---

- Implementation of statutes or regulations requiring fair housing.
- Nondiscrimination in federally assisted or conducted programs.
- Equal credit opportunity.
- Full voting rights.
- Civil and Constitutional rights.
- Equal employment opportunity (including nondiscrimination by Federal agencies).
- Efforts to increase Federal contracting and subcontracting opportunities for minorities, women, and disadvantaged entrepreneurs.

**31.4 Full funding.**

Requests for acquisition of capital assets must propose full funding to cover the full costs of the project or a useful segment of the project, consistent with the policy stated in section [300.6\(b\)](#). Specifically, requests for procurement programs must provide for full funding of the entire cost. In addition, requests for construction programs must provide for full funding of the complete cost of construction. You should not submit estimates for construction funds for major construction projects unless planning will reach a point by the end of the current year that will ensure that a contract for construction could be awarded during the budget year. Remember that Administration policy and the Antideficiency Act require you to have sufficient budget authority or other budgetary resources to cover the full amount of unconditional obligations under any contract.

For policies related to leases of capital assets and lease-purchases, see section [33.1](#) and [Appendix B](#). For guidance on budget submissions for capital asset acquisitions, see Part 7 of this Circular. For guidance on principles and techniques of planning, budgeting, procurement, and management of capital assets, see the supplement to this Circular, the *Capital Programming Guide*, which is published separately and available on the OMB website with this Circular at:

<http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a11/cpgtoc.html>

**31.5 Government perquisites.**

Your estimates should reflect Administration policy to limit the use of government vehicles, government aircraft, first class air travel, executive dining facilities, and conferences, in accordance with Presidential memoranda, dated February 10, 1993.

**31.6 MAX electronic network.**

For the purpose of cost distribution specified in [OMB Circular No. A-130](#), OMB is the user of MAX. Accordingly, you are not required to pay for use of the MAX electronic network required by this Circular.



### 31.7 Multi-year appropriations.

Consider whether it is appropriate to request appropriations with multi-year availability, particularly for buildings, equipment, and other types of fixed capital assets, including major ADP and telecommunications systems, with long acquisition cycles. Where multi-year appropriations requests are appropriate, you should match the period of availability to the expected length of the acquisition cycle.

### 31.8 Management improvement initiatives and policies.

Your estimates should reflect the Administration's commitment to improve program performance, e-Government, management integrity and controls, program delivery, and financial management.

- *Capital planning and investment control.* Your estimates should reflect the Administration's commitment to IT investments that directly support agency strategic missions, employ an integrated planning, budgeting, procurement process, are citizen-centered, and are consistent with the Clinger Cohen Act of 1996, the Paperwork Reduction Act, the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act, and OMB Circular A-130, Management of Federal Information Resources (see also section [53](#) and [section 300](#), where applicable).
- *Electronic transactions and electronic recordkeeping.* Your estimates should prioritize and manage e-Government projects effectively through your agency's capital planning process and enterprise architecture. Initiatives should create a citizen-centered electronic presence (maximizing use of the Internet) and advance an e-Government strategy that includes specific outcomes to be achieved. Your estimates should reflect the requirements of the Government Paperwork Elimination Act (GPEA) and OMB's guidance. Under GPEA, all transactions should have an electronic option and associated electronic recordkeeping by October 2003 if practicable. The National Archives and Records Administration has issued records management guidance for agencies implementing electronic signature technologies. The guidance can be found at the following Internet address:

[http://www.archives.gov/records\\_management/](http://www.archives.gov/records_management/)

- *Security.* Your estimates should reflect a comprehensive understanding of OMB security policies and NIST guidance, including compliance with the Government Information Security Reform Act, and OMB Memorandum No. M-01-08, "Guidance on Implementing the Government Information Security Reform Act," by:
  - ▶ Demonstrating that the costs of security controls are understood and are explicitly incorporated in the life-cycle planning of the overall system, including the additional costs of employing standards and guidance more stringent than those issued by NIST;
  - ▶ Demonstrating how the agency ensures that risks are understood and continually assessed;
  - ▶ Demonstrating how the agency ensures that the security controls are commensurate with the risk and magnitude of harm;
  - ▶ Identifying additional security controls for systems that promote or permit public access, other externally accessible systems, and those that are interconnected with systems over which program officials have little or no control;

**SECTION 31—COMPLIANCE WITH ADMINISTRATION POLICIES  
AND OTHER GENERAL REQUIREMENTS**

---

- ▶ Demonstrating how the agency ensures the effective use of security controls and authentication tools to protect privacy for those systems that promote or permit public access; and
- ▶ Demonstrating how the agency ensures that the handling of personal information is consistent with relevant government-wide and agency policies.
- *Privacy.* Your estimates should reflect the Administration's commitment to privacy and should include a description of your privacy practices and steps taken to ensure compliance with all OMB privacy policies.
- *Financial systems.* Your estimates should reflect plans to achieve a single, agency-wide, integrated financial management system and CFO plan initiatives. The scope of agency financial systems activities will include the following:
  - ▶ Core financial systems, as described in the JFMIP Core Financial System Requirements Document.
  - ▶ Financial and mixed systems critical to effective agency-wide financial management, financial reporting, or financial control.

[Sections 52](#) and [53](#) describe the materials that must be submitted for agency financial management systems.

**31.9 Performance of commercial activities.**

Your estimates should reflect (1) the probable results generated by competitions under [OMB Circular No. A-76](#), and (2) the estimated A-76 personnel and other costs to provide resources to support the competitive sourcing initiative of the President's Management Agenda (PMA) within the agency. Provide a separate breakout of savings results and A-76 review personnel and other study costs through FY 2008 in each bureau's budget submission materials that are consistent with the agency's competition plan.

**31.10 User charges.**

Under OMB Circular No. A-25, you must review user charges for your programs at least once every two years, and you must report the result of the review and any resultant proposals in the Chief Financial Officers Annual Report required by the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 (see section 8(e) of OMB Circular No. A-25). Develop your estimates in accordance with the full cost recovery policy for user charges set forth in that Circular. User charges normally should recover the full cost of providing goods or services to the public. The exception to this rule is when the Government provides goods or services under business-type conditions, including amounts collected for the use or sale of natural resources; in such cases, the user charge should be set at the market price.

There has been a growth in user charges, and some have been classified by law as offsetting collections or offsetting receipts when they more appropriately should have been classified as governmental receipts. Only user charges that arise from business-type transactions should be classified as offsetting collections or offsetting receipts. User charges are discussed further in [section 20.7\(e\)](#).

If you propose new user charges that require authorizing legislation, provide a clear explanation of the new user charge and the legislation that will be required to authorize it. Include a detailed discussion of plans for achieving enactment of the legislation and the administrative actions planned for collecting the

charges if the legislation is enacted. Assess the proposal's chances of enactment, taking into account the likely reaction to the proposal by Congress and the users. Describe the basis for your assessment in detail. If you believe that the proposal will lack support, explain why you believe the President should propose it in the budget anyway.

### **31.11 Workforce planning and restructuring**

Your budget submission and performance plan must identify the specific human capital management and development objectives, key activities, and associated resources that are needed to support agency accomplishment of programmatic goals.

Furthermore, your budget submission and performance plan should describe the specific activities and/or actions planned to meet the standards for success under the Human Capital initiative of the President's Management Agenda, the associated resources, the expected outcomes, and how performance will be measured. For example, you should:

Identify the specific organizational changes you are proposing to:

- ▶ Reduce the number of managers, reduce organizational layers, and reduce the time it takes to make decisions.
- ▶ Increase the span of control, and redirect positions within the agency to ensure that the largest number of employees possible are in direct service delivery positions and retrain and/or redeploy employees as part of restructuring efforts to make the organization more citizen centered.

Identify the training, development, leadership development, and staffing actions you propose to take to:

- ▶ Ensure continuity of leadership.
- ▶ Ensure that leaders and managers effectively manage people.
- ▶ Sustain a learning environment that drives continuous improvement in performance.
- ▶ Prepare for and respond to changes driven by e-Government and competitive sourcing.

Identify the competency and skill needs (or gaps) you have identified as part of your workforce planning effort and how you plan to address those needs through recruitment, development, and related strategies.



SECTION 32—ESTIMATING EMPLOYMENT LEVELS, COMPENSATION, BENEFITS, AND  
RELATED COSTS

**Table of Contents**

*Reporting Employment Levels*

- 32.1 What terms do I need to know?
- 32.2 What should be the basis for my personnel estimates?
- 32.3 What do I need to know about FTE budgeted levels?
- 32.4 How does OMB validate prior year civilian FTE totals (actuals)?
- 32.5 How do I account for active duty military personnel?

*Reporting Personnel Compensation and Related Costs*

- 32.6 How do I treat agency benefit payments under the Federal Employee Compensation Act?
- 32.7 How do I reflect the effects of pay raises?
- 32.8 How do I budget for unemployment compensation?
- 32.9 How do I budget for personnel benefits?
- 32.10 How do I budget for uniformed services health care?

**Summary of Changes**

Provides information on how prior year FTE figures are obtained (section 32.4).

Provides additional guidance on FTE accounting for military personnel (section 32.5).

Includes guidance on personnel benefits, previously in section 33.11 (32.9).

Updates guidance on budgeting for uniformed services health care (32.10).

Drops the requirement to report on the impact of fully accruing employee pensions and annuitant health benefits.

**32.1 What terms do I need to know?**

**Employee**, as defined in [5 U.S.C. 2105](#), means an officer or individual who is appointed under a delegated authority, is engaged in the performance of a Federal function, and is subject to the supervision of an officer or employee of the Federal Government.

**Full-time equivalent (FTE) employment** means the total number of regular straight-time hours (i.e., not including overtime or holiday hours) worked by employees divided by the number of compensable hours applicable to each fiscal year. Annual leave, sick leave, compensatory time off and other approved leave categories are considered "hours worked" for purposes of defining full-time equivalent employment that is reported in the personnel summary (see section [86.1](#)). This definition is consistent with guidance provided by the Office of Personnel Management (OPM) in connection with reporting FTE data as part of the SF 113G reporting system. A list of compensable days (with associated hours) for fiscal years 2003 through 2008 is provided in section [32.3\(b\)](#).

### 32.2 What should be the basis for my personnel estimates?

(a) *Personnel.*

(1) *Staffing requirements.* Base estimates for staffing requirements on the assumption that improvements in skills, organization, procedures, and supervision will produce a steady increase in productivity. Personnel should be reassigned, to the maximum extent, to meet new program requirements. Reductions generally should be planned where the workload is stable. Where information technology systems are installed or enhanced, gains in productivity should result in lower personnel requirements after the first year.

Where appropriate, use calculations converting workload to required personnel that include an estimate of available workhours per employee. Exclude annual leave, sick leave, administrative leave, training, and other non-work time from these calculations. Base estimates of available time on current data, reflect steps taken to improve the ratio of available time to total time, and recognize differences in available time by organization, location, or activity. Base exclusions for annual and sick leave on current experience of actual leave taken rather than leave earned. Employment levels should reflect budget proposals and assumptions with regard to workload, efficiency, proposed legislation, interagency reimbursable arrangements, and other special staffing methods. Employment intended for proposed legislation, or for carrying out proposed supplemental appropriations, cannot begin until the additional funds become available by congressional action. Employment proposed for activation of new facilities or start-up of new programs cannot begin until the new activity begins. Employment under estimated reimbursable arrangements also cannot begin until such arrangements have been negotiated and justified.

(2) *Personnel resources.* You should base estimates of personnel resources on the total number of regularly scheduled straight-time hours (worked or to be worked) in the fiscal year (see section [32.3\(b\)](#)). Note that, although budgetary resources must be sufficient to cover any extra compensable days in a fiscal year, some of the corresponding outlays may not occur until the following year.

(3) *Requirement for FTE data.* Wherever entries in schedules or materials required by this Circular pertain to personnel requirements or total employment levels, state such entries for all years in terms of FTEs, as defined in section [32.1](#), unless another measure is explicitly required. For military employment, see section [32.5](#).

(b) *Personnel compensation.*

(1) *Pay scales.* Unless instructed otherwise by OMB, base estimates on compensation scales in effect at the time of submission of the estimates, adjusted for pay raises contained in the Mid-Session Review economic assumptions.

The Mid-Session Review pay raise assumptions will apply to the statutory pay systems (General Schedule, Foreign Service, and Veterans Health Administration), the Executive Schedule, the Senior Executive Service (SES), and wage grade employees. The pay raises encompass both the Employment Cost Index (ECI)-based national schedule adjustment and locality pay without assumption as to how the total increase will be distributed between the two. Use pay scales that reflect the most recent locality pay rates in preparing your estimates.

You may need to adjust your estimates when final pay assumptions for the budget are released. You should be prepared to provide supporting detail on calculating pay costs, including separate identification of the pre-pay raise wage base reflected in the submission. You must explicitly justify any increases in average compensation for the budget year, other than those due to changes in pay scales.

(2) *Hourly rates.* Base compensation for all employees (as defined in [5 U.S.C. 5504\(b\)](#)) on hourly rates of compensation determined by dividing the annual rate of basic pay by 2,087, in accordance with section 15203(a) of the Consolidated Omnibus Budget Reconciliation Act of 1985 (Public Law 99–272).

(3) *Within-grade increases.* Additional resources for within-grade increases are normally not allowed. Offset the net cost, if any, of within-grade salary increases (i.e., costs after turnover, downgrades, and other grade or step reducing events are taken into account) by savings due to greater productivity and efficiency.

(4) *Vacancies.* Base estimates related to vacancies expected to be filled in the budget year on the entrance salary for the vacancies involved.

(5) *Savings in personnel compensation.* Give full consideration to savings in personnel compensation due to personnel reductions, delay in filling vacant positions, leave without pay, lag in recruitment for new positions, filling vacancies at lower rates of pay, part-time employment, and grade reduction actions. Identify terminal leave payments, including those for SES, as offsets against such savings.

(6) *Positions above grade GS/GM–15.* Reflect these positions, including SES, only to the extent that positions have been authorized in those grades by OPM or other authority, or are specifically authorized in substantive law.

(7) *Awards.* Estimates should include amounts for all cash incentive awards. Upon request by OMB, be prepared to provide detailed information on your cash incentive awards program, including a narrative explanation of the basis on which your agency distributes awards and how that relates to its overall performance management program.

(8) *Executive selection and development programs.* Include in your estimates provisions for reasonable amounts for such programs, as required under Title IV of the Civil Service Reform Act of 1978 and by implementing guidelines issued by the Office of Personnel Management.

(9) *Premium pay and overtime.* Fully justify increases over amounts for the preceding year for premium pay. In preparing estimates for overtime, you should analyze the use of overtime to ensure that it is used in a prudent and efficient manner; explore all reasonable alternatives to overtime (such as improved scheduling); and ensure that adequate approval, monitoring, and audit procedures are in place to avoid overtime abuses.

(10) *Special rates for experts and consultants.* Authority to pay special rates for experts and consultants may be requested only when your agency demonstrates that the type and caliber of services required cannot be obtained at the maximum daily rate payable for grade GS–15 under the Classification Act. When such authority is justified and specifically authorized, special rates may not exceed the maximum rate for senior level positions under [5 U.S.C. 5376](#).

(11) *Severance pay.* Estimate severance pay at the amount needed for the fiscal year. However, obligations will be incurred on a pay-period by pay-period basis, notwithstanding the fact that a liability arises at the time of an employee's separation. Your estimates must include changes in severance pay and personnel compensation that would occur upon the application of instructions covered in [OMB Circular No. A–76](#).

(12) *Physicians comparability allowance.* Reflect in your estimates approved plans to pay bonuses to physicians in accordance with the Federal Physicians Comparability Allowance Amendments of 1987

**SECTION 32—ESTIMATING EMPLOYMENT LEVELS,  
COMPENSATION, BENEFITS, AND RELATED COSTS**

---

(Public Law 100–140) and the Federal Employees Health Care Protection Act of 1998 (Public Law 105–266). Instructions for reporting on the physicians comparability allowance program are issued separately.

(13) *Bonuses and allowances.* Reflect in your estimates approved agency plans for paying recruitment and relocation bonuses and retention allowances. You should be prepared to supply information on planned and actual expenditures upon request by OMB.

(14) *Retirement costs.* Reflect in your estimates the cost effects of changes in the distribution of employees between the Civil Service Retirement System (CSRS) and the Federal Employees' Retirement System (FERS).

**32.3 What do I need to know about FTE budgeted levels?**

(a) *Policy.*

Consistent with the general policy of making the most effective use of Government resources, each agency head will ensure close management of budgeted FTE levels for his or her agency. Agencies should not convert the work of their employees to contractors unless they first undertake cost comparisons that demonstrate that such a conversion is of financial advantage to the Government.

(b) *Determining FTE usage.*

You must prepare budget estimates relating to personnel requirements in terms of FTE employment, as specified in this Circular.

To determine FTE employment, divide the total number of regular hours (worked or to be worked) by the number of compensable hours in each fiscal year. The table below shows the number of compensable hours for FY 2003 through 2008.

**COMPENSABLE DAYS AND HOURS FOR FISCAL YEARS 2003–2008**

<b>Year</b>	<b>Days</b>	<b>Hours</b>
2003.....	261	2,088
2004.....	262	2,096
2005.....	261	2,088
2006.....	260	2,080
2007.....	260	2,080
2008.....	262	2,096

FTE employment levels apply to straight time hours only. Department of Defense indirect hire employees are not included in FTE employment totals. FTEs funded by allocations from other agencies will be included with the performing agency where the employees work and are payrolled.

Be sure to include in FTE employment estimates all Federal employees, including persons appointed under the Worker Trainee Opportunity Program, Presidential Management Interns, Federal Cooperative Education Program, summer aids, Stay-in-School Program, and the Federal Junior Fellowship Program.



(c) *Justification of FTE usage.*

The FTE estimates for each agency are determined at the time of the annual budget review, for the fiscal year in progress and for the succeeding fiscal year. You must ensure that the FTE estimates are consistent with all applicable laws. In particular, some statutes providing agencies with authority to use voluntary separation incentive proposals or buy-outs stipulate that agency-wide FTE levels must be reduced one-for-one for each buy-out. Further, FTE estimates must represent an effective and efficient use of resources to meet program requirements.

Actual FTE usage reported in the PY column of the budget must equal the year-end FTE usage reported on the SF 113G to OPM (see section [32.4](#)).

Current year FTE estimates should be consistent with PY actuals, should be fully funded, and should be very close to the actual usage reported at the end of the fiscal year. For example, the 2003 estimate in the FY 2004 Budget should be very close to the 2003 actuals to be published in the 2005 Budget.

(d) *FTE transfers between agencies.*

Prior to entering into new or expanded agreements to perform work for other agencies on a reimbursable basis, you must prepare a cost justification in accordance with OMB Circular No. A-76. As part of this agreement, you may transfer FTEs on a one-for-one basis, provided that you notify OMB prior to making such a transfer. You may proceed with the FTE transfer fifteen days after notification to OMB unless OMB objects.

(e) *Adjustment requests.*

Send all requests for adjustments in employment levels, including agreements to transfer FTEs between agencies, to your OMB representative.

### **32.4 How does OMB validate prior year civilian FTE totals (actuals)?**

Agencies use the Office of Personnel Management (OPM) SF-113G reporting system to submit their actual, civilian FTE data to OPM each month. OPM transfers these data to OMB on a monthly basis, and in November provides OMB with total FTEs by agency for the fiscal year that ended September 30. During budget season, OMB compares the OPM totals to the prior year FTE data that agencies enter in their MAX A-11 personnel summaries (Schedule Qs).

The OMB and OPM employment totals must match at the agency level. If you believe the OPM total is not correct, you must work with OPM to change the total in OPM's SF-113G system. Once OPM revises the total, OMB will revise the OPM total it keeps in the MAX database. In the vast majority of cases, the OPM number is correct, and the agency must adjust the PY column in one or more accounts in Schedule Q so that the OMB FTEs agree with the OPM FTEs at the agency level.

OPM does not collect or report military data to OMB. For military employment, see section [32.5](#).

### **32.5 How do I account for active duty military personnel?**

Your budget submission should also account for all active duty personnel in the seven Uniformed Services. These Services include the Army, Air Force, Navy, Marines, Coast Guard, NOAA and PHS Commissioned Corps. Since active duty personnel are always full-time employees, attempting to compute full-time equivalents is not appropriate. Therefore, for active duty personnel, "average strength"

is used in place of FTEs for the prior fiscal year. Estimate average strengths for current and budget years as well. For the non-DoD Uniformed Services, record military average strengths in the MAX A-11 personnel summaries using the line designated for military (see [section 86.1](#) regarding Schedule Q line numbers). The Department of Defense will continue to provide military employment data directly to their OMB representative.

### **32.6 How do I treat agency benefit payments under the Federal Employee Compensation Act?**

For accounts subject to appropriations action, include in your budget year estimates the amount billed by the Employment Standards Administration of the Department of Labor for benefits paid on behalf of employees of your agency in the past year under the Federal Employee Compensation Act.

For accounts not subject to appropriations action, you must pay the bill in the current year.

### **32.7 How do I reflect the effects of pay raises?**

For the following three types of budget accounts, reflect the effects of the increased agency contribution to employee retirement and of civilian and military pay raises using the pay raise assumptions specified for these accounts in the Mid-Session Review:

- Governmental receipt accounts containing Federal employee contributions to Federal employee retirement.
- Offsetting receipt accounts (employer share, employee retirement) containing employing agency contributions to Federal employee retirement.
- General fund contributions to Federal employee retirement.

Major agencies with accounts in these categories include DOD, State, Treasury, and OPM.

### **32.8 How do I budget for unemployment compensation?**

In general, you should not budget for the costs of unemployment compensation for former Federal civilian and military personnel. The congressional intent is that such unemployment compensation be paid from appropriations available to the employing agencies. The liable agencies must absorb these reimbursements when they are required to be paid.

If you do not employ large numbers of temporary employees or other personnel expected to lead to significant unemployment compensation claims, your estimates for the current and budget year will not contain any special provisions for the costs of reimbursing the unemployment trust fund for such payments.

If you employ large numbers of temporary employees to meet part-year workload, you may request approval from OMB to budget for unemployment compensation costs for your temporary employees. OMB will consider such requests if you can demonstrate that you have a sound administrative control system for unemployment compensation claims.

### **32.9 How do I budget for personnel benefits?**

- (a) *Medicare and Medicaid.*

If you provide benefit payments for Medicare and Medicaid, you should work with OMB to develop assumptions on medical care prices related to the consumer price index, utilization rates, number of beneficiaries, and other factors.

(b) *Other benefit payments.*

For other benefit estimates (including old-age, survivors, and disability insurance; railroad retirement; civilian and uniformed services retirement; supplemental security income; and veterans' compensation, pensions, and readjustment benefits) multiply the expected number of beneficiaries in each future year by average benefit payments per beneficiary for each future year. Determine the average benefit payments by identifying changes in the earnings base, as applicable, on which the benefit is computed, unless existing law or Administration-supported legislation provides otherwise. When existing or proposed legislation provides for automatic cost-of-living adjustments, multiply the result by a cost-of-living or other adjustment factor to be supplied by OMB.

**32.10 How do I budget for uniformed services health care?**

- *For uniformed services post-retirement medical care.* Post retirement medical care for "Medicare-eligible" retirees and their dependents/survivors was funded on an accrual basis beginning in FY 2003. Budget estimates in the FY 2005 budget submission must assume inclusion of all Medicare-eligible retirees and families. Agencies must calculate the following estimates for their budget submission:
  - Accrual contribution to the Uniformed Services Health Accrual Trust Fund (see below).
  - Estimate of the health care dollars to be expended in FY 2005 for all retirees.
- *Accrual contribution to the Uniformed Services Health Accrual Trust Fund.* To develop appropriate annual accrual contribution estimates, agencies must use the per-capita rates provided below. Agencies must multiply these rates by the estimated average number of current uniformed service personnel for FY 2005. The resulting calculation is the accrual contribution, which should be budgeted in the agency's personnel account.
  - Active duty per-capita rates .....\$ 5,364
  - Reservist per-capita rates .....\$ 3,132
- *Estimate of the health care dollars to be expended in FY 2005 for all retirees.* Agencies must estimate the FY 2005 expenditures for retiree health care. (Separate estimates must be provided for Medicare-eligible retirees and non Medicare-eligible retirees). The Medicare-eligible estimates are needed to develop the Trust Fund outlays for uniformed service health care during FY 2005 and the non-Medicare eligible estimates to be included in agency budgets. To prevent double counting Medicare-eligibles, each agency must ensure that their health care account request does not include any amount for Medicare-eligible retiree health care other than the accrual contribution amounts.



**SECTION 33—ESTIMATES RELATED TO SPECIFIC TYPES OF PROGRAMS AND  
EXPENDITURES**

**Table of Contents**

- 33.1 Construction, leases of capital assets, and acquisition of real property
- 33.2 Hospital costs
- 33.3 Advisory committees and interagency groups
- 33.4 Radio spectrum-dependent communications-electronics systems
- 33.5 Taxes and tax expenditures
- 33.6 Miscellaneous policies and requirements

**Summary of Changes**

Moves data requirement for motor vehicles to section 25.

Drops requirement for information on the National security crosscut.

**33.1 Construction, leases of capital assets, and acquisition of real property**

(a) *Construction of Federal facilities.*

If you are proposing construction of Federal facilities, you must:

- Comply with Executive Order No. 12088 for pollution control standards,
- Include the amounts required to ensure that existing facilities provide safe and healthful workplaces for Federal employees consistent with the standards promulgated under section 19 of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970, the provisions of Executive Order No. 12196, and the related Safety and Health Provisions for Federal Employees of the Secretary of Labor (29 CFR, Chapter XVII, Part 1960),
- Comply with requirements of the Architectural Barriers Act of 1968 to eliminate structural barriers impeding the mobility of individuals with disabilities,
- Have reviewed the GSA inventory of Federal laboratories and indicate the reasons you want to acquire new space instead of using existing laboratories that have sufficient space available, according to the GSA inventory,
- Comply with Executive Order Nos. 11988 and 11990 if you are proposing to use sites located in floodplains or wetlands.

(b) *Construction of federally-owned housing.*

If you are proposing to construct federally-owned housing, make sure you:

**SECTION 33—ESTIMATES RELATED TO SPECIFIC TYPES OF PROGRAMS AND EXPENDITURES**

---

- Do not include estimated funding for construction of housing for civilian employees, except where necessary to maintain continuity and efficiency of service and where private capital cannot be found,
- Meet the requirements for *public quarters, service or protection*, and lack of available housing.

(c) *Construction in the District of Columbia*

You must consult the Commission of Fine Arts regarding plans for the construction of buildings and other structures in the District of Columbia that may affect in any important way the appearance of the city, and other questions involving artistic considerations with which the Federal Government is concerned.

(d) *Acquisition of land in the National Capital Area.*

You must consult with the National Capital Planning Commission in advance regarding proposed developments and projects or commitments for the acquisition of land in the National Capital area, in accordance with 40 U.S.C. 8723(a) (see <http://www.ncpc.gov>).

(e) *Leasing capital assets.*

If you propose to lease capital assets rather than purchase them, you should check the requirements in [OMB Circular No. A-94](#). For additional information, see [Appendix B](#).

(f) *Real property acquisition.*

If you plan to acquire real property, you must:

- Include estimates consistent with the policies of [Executive Order No. 12512](#) in your budget submission,
- Make sure that estimates for acquisition of real property under contract are consistent with obligations reported in object class 32 (see [section 83.7](#)).

### **33.2 Hospital costs**

If you are developing estimates for hospital costs:

- Use data based on the use of resources allocated by diagnosis-related groups and compare these data with payment rates of other payers using similar groupings,
- Indicate whether or not capital and depreciation costs are contained, and describe the cost allocation method underlying the data,
- Identify the amount of reimbursement collected from third parties and Federal agencies if you provide hospital care on a reimbursable basis.

If you provide estimates for inpatient care facilities and medical care services, make sure they are consistent with Executive Order No. 12372.

### 33.3 Advisory committees and interagency groups

If you have advisory committees and interagency groups:

- Reflect the results of the committee reviews required by Executive Order No. 12838, which requires agencies to reduce the number and cost of non-statutory advisory committees,
- Use the ceilings established by [OMB Circular No. A-135](#),
- Separately identify the costs of advisory committees established by statute that you are proposing for termination.

You are prohibited from financing *interagency groups* (including boards [except Federal Executive Boards], commissions, councils, committees, and similar groups) by contributions from member agencies' appropriations by a government-wide general provision unless such financing is specifically authorized by statute. Therefore, you must propose financing for such groups in the budget in one of the following forms:

- Appropriations specifically for the interagency group.
- Specific language authorizing interagency funding.

### 33.4 Radio spectrum-dependent communications-electronics systems

The National Defense Authorization Act of 1999 (P.L. 105–261) requires the private sector to reimburse Federal agencies for costs associated with relocating or modifying systems to make spectrum available to new commercial licensees. The Act requires you to submit cost estimates to OMB for such relocations or modifications of radio spectrum-dependent communications-electronics systems anticipated under section 113 of the National Telecommunications Information Administration Organization Act ([47 U.S.C. 923](#)). These estimates will form the basis for estimates that must be provided to the Commerce Department's National Telecommunications and Information Administration in advance of an auction of the spectrum that has been reallocated for commercial use. OMB will issue separate instructions regarding this requirement. In addition, you must obtain a certification by the National Telecommunications and Information Administration, Department of Commerce that the radio frequency required can be made available before you submit estimates for the development or procurement of major radio spectrum-dependent communication-electronics systems (including all systems employing space satellite techniques).

### 33.5 Taxes and tax expenditures

Reflect full and explicit consideration of the resources made available by the Federal Government through tax expenditures and other tax incentives. *Tax expenditures* are attributable to provisions of the Federal income tax laws that allow a special exclusion, exemption, or deduction from gross income or that provide a special credit, rate of tax, or deferral of tax ([2 U.S.C. 622](#)). Tax expenditures include subsidies provided through the income tax system.

You must consult with the Office of Tax Analysis, Department of Treasury on all proposals for new or modifications of existing taxes whether or not the modification results in a tax expenditure. After consulting with the Office of Tax Analysis submit a justification of the proposal to OMB. The justification should include the views of the Office of Tax Analysis and address the following items:

- The nature and extent of the problem addressed by the proposal.

**SECTION 33—ESTIMATES RELATED TO SPECIFIC TYPES OF PROGRAMS AND EXPENDITURES**

---

- The reason a subsidy is needed.
- The non-tax alternatives.
- The reason a tax change is preferable to the non-tax alternatives.

In addition, you should be prepared to submit justifications for continuing or reenacting existing taxes and tax expenditures in the program areas for which you have primary responsibility. Such justifications will contain the information described above.

In general, tax expenditures are subject to the same degree of performance evaluation as spending and regulatory programs. Tax expenditures often complement or substitute for agencies' spending or regulatory programs, and the resources and incentives provided through tax expenditures can be substantial. Work with the Office of Tax Analysis, which has lead responsibility for tax policy and analysis of tax expenditures, to develop data and methods to evaluate the effects of tax expenditures that affect (or are directed at the same goals as) your programs. You should be prepared to furnish, upon request, problem analyses, estimates of economic effects, and other materials that will provide explicit quantitative information on the relationship of existing or proposed tax expenditures to proposed budget expenditures. See [Part 6](#) for guidance on inclusion of tax expenditure data in annual performance plans.

### **33.6 Miscellaneous policies and requirements**

Develop your budget estimates consistent with the following laws, rules, and policies:

#### **MISCELLANEOUS REQUIREMENTS**

<b>Type of program or expenditure</b>	<b>Policies and requirements</b>
Activities covered by the Coastal Barrier Resources Act	Do not include any new Federal expenditures or financial assistance prohibited by the <a href="#">Coast Barrier Resources Act</a> (Public Law 97-348).
Foreign currencies	Refer to guidelines in the <a href="#">Treasury Financial Manual</a> (chapters 3200 and 9000) and the <a href="#">Department of State Foreign Affairs Manual</a> (Volume 4, chapter 360).
Remedial environmental projects at Federal facilities	Follow the policies in Executive Order No. 12088.
Mail	Include sufficient amounts for official use of United States mail, package delivery, and/or private carrier service, including postage due. Assume maximum use of available postage discounts.
Records storage	Include sufficient amounts for the costs of storing and servicing temporary and inactive records.
Space and related requirements	Include payments for space, structures and facilities, land, and building service provided by GSA and others.
Systems acquisitions	Follow the guidance in the <a href="#">Capital Programming Guide, Title V of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994</a> , and the <a href="#">Clinger Cohen Act of 1996</a> .  Ensure that electronic and information technology acquisitions meet the requirements of section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 and allow individuals with disabilities access to and use of data.



**SECTION 33—ESTIMATES RELATED TO SPECIFIC TYPES OF  
PROGRAMS AND EXPENDITURES**

---

<b>Type of program or expenditure</b>	<b>Policies and requirements</b>
Travel	Minimize official travel. Reflect the allowances authorized under the Federal Travel Regulations issued by GSA or comparable regulations issued by the Department of Defense for travel of military personnel and by the Department of State for foreign service personnel.
Tort claims	Do not include amounts for payment of tort claims unless a substantial volume of claims is presented regularly.
Water and sewer payments to the District of Columbia	Include amounts for payment for water and sewer services
Construction of nuclear reactors	Obtain a letter from the Department of Energy setting forth its recommendations before submitting estimates.
Contractor claims	Include amounts for reimbursement of the Claims and judgment fund for the full amount paid from the fund on behalf of the agency during the past year.



## SECTION 51—BASIC JUSTIFICATION MATERIALS

**Table of Contents**

51.1	Summary and highlight statement
51.2	General requirements for justifying programs and financing
51.3	Analysis of resources
51.4	Relationship of justification to account structure
51.5	Agency restructuring or work process redesign
51.6	Information on grant programs and infrastructure investment
51.7	Performance indicators and performance goals
51.8	Other analytical information
51.9	Information on program evaluation
51.10	Explanations relating to supplemental appropriations requests
51.11	Major changes in receipts estimates
51.12	Unobligated balances in liquidating accounts

**Summary of Changes**

The changes in this section support the creation of a "performance budget" justification for 2005. A performance budget starts from an overview of what the agency intends to accomplish in the budget year. The overview, structured like the recently revised strategic plan, would show past and expected outcomes for each strategic goal, how supporting programs would work together toward them, and how past shortcomings would be remedied. Summary tables would show the "pyramid" of how PART and program outcomes and targets support the outcomes for the strategic goals and objectives. Tables would also show the full cost paid by the agency toward each strategic goal and for each program.

The remainder of the budget may be presented by bureau or other organization, but each entity should analyze its contributions to strategic goals, followed by detailed analysis of supporting programs—based on the PART wherever available. Your budget request should be justified on the basis of resources needed to make planned progress toward the strategic goals, and achieve the annual targets set for the program outcomes. Because the plan would be integrated into the performance budget, a separate annual performance plan would not be needed to satisfy GPRA requirements.

Requires a breakout of resources for IT expenditures (section 51.3).

Updates guidance on program evaluation (section 51.9).

**51.1 Summary and highlight statement.***(a) Required information.*

You must prepare a summary and highlight statement (in the form of a transmittal letter from the head of the agency) that covers the budget submission of your agency. Summarize in this narrative the highlights of your agency's budget and related major legislative proposals. Identify the following:

- The broad policies and strategies proposed and the total amounts of discretionary and mandatory budgetary resources and FTE requested.

- The relationship of the policies, strategies, and resources requested to the implementation of the President's Management Agenda.
- The relationship of the policies, strategies, and resources requested to the planning guidance for budgetary resources and for FTE provided by OMB.
- Significant proposed differences, if any, from current Administration policies.
- The most important program performance indicators and performance goals, including those that are positive and negative with respect to performance and that are the basis for the major proposed policies.
- Any significant proposals for changes in the current year budget, and the relationship of such changes to the budget year and outyear requests.
- Any significant proposals or changes in spending patterns for the five to ten year period beyond the budget year, and their relationship to outyear planning guidance and the policies proposed for the current and budget year.

You must also include a listing of the budget authority and outlays and FTE requested through BY+9, where applicable. Itemize this list by account showing proposed supplementals, pending supplementals, rescission proposals, and legislative proposals separately. Deduct offsetting receipts to arrive at the net amount of the agency request. In addition, include an analysis of outlay estimates reflected in your agency budget request, with the form and level of detail to be determined in consultation with the OMB representative.

Refer to sections 30 through 35 for general information and policies related to developing estimates and proposals and responsibilities in reporting data. Remember that development of your budget request and annual performance plan should be coordinated.

(b) *Certification of obligations.*

[31 U.S.C. 1108\(c\)](#) requires the head of each Federal agency, in connection with submission of all requests for proposed appropriations to OMB, to certify that any statement of obligations furnished consists of valid obligations, as defined in [31 U.S.C. 1501\(a\)](#). The certification may be in the form of the following paragraph:

"As required by section 1108(c) of Title 31, United States Code, I am reporting that all statements of obligations furnished to the Office of Management and Budget in connection with the [name of agency] requests for proposed appropriations for the fiscal year 20[BY] consist of valid obligations as defined in section 1501(a) of that title."

You must furnish this certification no later than November 20th. You may include it in the summary and highlight statement or transmit it separately at a later date.

## **51.2 General requirements for justifying programs and financing.**

You must provide a written justification when you submit your budget. You should determine specific informational requirements and formats in consultation with your OMB representative. You should reach agreement with your OMB representative on the form and specific content of the budget submission in the spring and summer preceding the budget submission.

Your budget submission to OMB in September should be in the form of a "performance budget" to the greatest extent possible. The "Summary of Changes" in the box at the head of this section shows how such a budget could be structured, with an overview by strategic goal followed by bureau presentations showing the contributions to strategic goals of each bureau and program. A "performance budget" should include:

- A overview of what you plan to accomplish, organized by strategic goal;
- Background on what you have accomplished;
- Analyses of the strategies the agency uses to influence strategic outcomes and how they could be improved;
- Analyses of the programs that contribute to each goal and their relative roles and effectiveness, using PART assessments when available;
- Performance targets for current and budget years for programs and strategic goals, how they relate in a "pyramid" of outcomes, and how you expect to achieve those targets; and
- What resources you are requesting to do so, including the usual supporting documentation.

Where possible, you should include the full cost of a program, and you should align budget accounts and program activity lines with programs or the components of the programs that contribute to a single strategic goal or objective.

Your request should be consistent with the funding levels included in policy guidance. If the request is not consistent with policy guidance, you must provide a summary display of what your budget request would be at the policy guidance levels and the reasons why a budget request consistent with the guidance is not appropriate. In addition, you may be asked by your OMB representative to identify and discuss the implications of other funding levels.

Prepare your justification in concise, specific terms and cover all programs and activities of your agency. Use tables, charts, and graphs in lieu of or to supplement text. Prepare materials in a manner designed to provide all of the information that you and OMB have agreed is necessary for OMB to understand and evaluate your agency's request and make its determinations.

You must identify the anticipated price level changes reflected in the financial resources required to finance each program level in your justification materials.

If you have funding requests for major capital asset acquisitions, follow the guidance in [Part 7](#) of this Circular. Additional guidance appears in the [Capital Programming Guide](#), which is published separately.

You are required to provide the following with the justification materials:

- An analysis of resources.
- Where possible, the full cost of a program and budget accounts aligned with programs.
- Information on agency workforce planning and restructuring to make the agency more citizen-centered (see sections [30.4](#) and [31.11](#)).
- Information on grant programs and infrastructure investment (see section [51.6](#)).

- Integrated information on performance indicators and performance goals as a "performance budget" (see section [51.7](#)).
- Information on program assessment through the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART) (see section [51.9](#)).

At the discretion of OMB, you should include the following information for legislative proposals:

- Your estimates of the costs of implementing or administering proposed legislation.
- The assumptions underlying your estimates, including new work years, program outputs, and costs of inputs such as materials, contract costs or personnel costs. You should also include a discussion of alternative implementation strategies considered (e.g., contracting out versus in-house), and a discussion of any models used to develop your estimates.
- The budget category for the cost of implementation and administration of the legislative proposal along with a written justification for your selection.
- Productivity savings and/or offsets for these costs. You should also provide a discussion of the methods and assumptions underlying your estimates for productivity savings and offsets.

You should also include the following:

- A comparison of total program benefits and total program costs, using quantitative, objective data to the maximum extent possible, as well as qualitative or judgmental material.
- A comparison of the marginal benefits and the marginal costs associated with the additional funds or reduced funding proposed.
- Supporting information that takes into consideration agency and outside (e.g., think tanks, GAO, CBO, universities, interest groups) program evaluations and related analytic studies, whether or not they agree with the proposed policy.

At the discretion of your OMB representative, these requirements may be modified or alternative justification materials specified. It should be emphasized that late decisions on proposed law provisions for the budget will require flexibility in this process. Other materials may be requested by your OMB representative.

### **51.3 Analysis of resources.**

Use a tabular presentation to identify the financial and personnel resources required at the program levels under consideration. Include also a breakout of resources (financial, and if available, personnel) within each program level for all IT expenditures, and for all expenditures on major IT investments (those for which exhibit 300 is required). All justifications should clearly show in text and tables the IT investment request within each account and program activity level. To the extent possible, you should attempt to align your budget accounts with programs, distinguishing among components that contribute to different strategic goals or objectives. This should relate PARTs (see [section 220](#)) and budget accounts or sub-accounts.

In addition, you should include the full cost of a program where possible.

- In some cases, you may want to consider requesting budgetary resources to cover all indirect costs in the budget account or program activity that funds the program, and paying for all central services as they are used.
- In other cases, you may want to request appropriations for some central accounts providing support services; in these cases, you should include a table showing the full cost of resources used by each program, whether paid from its budget account or not.

Present resources required for PY and CY, as well as the estimated requirements for each funding option for BY through BY+9, where applicable. If current year rescissions, deferrals, or supplementals are pending or proposed, identify these separately. A subsidiary breakdown of such items as personnel compensation, capital outlay, or other categories of special concern would be useful.

Generally, present financial data in terms of new budget authority and outlays. However, your OMB representative may require additional measures, such as unobligated balances and offsetting collections.

Express personnel requirements in terms of full-time equivalents (see section [32.1](#)). You must demonstrate that requests for FTE levels:

- Are an effective and efficient use of resources to meet program requirements;
- Are consistent with Administration policy;
- Are consistent with proposed funding levels;
- Can be justified in conjunction with requests for other resources;
- Comply with applicable laws (e.g., buyout offset requirements); and
- Are realistic in light of past, actual FTE usage. In those instances in which budgeted positions greatly exceed actual or projected FTEs, the FY 2005 request for budgeted positions (if applicable) should be realigned/reduced to reflect the reality of agency's FTE levels.

Fully justify changes to the FTE levels in any year in terms of program management requirements. If you request an increase, prepare an analysis of agency-wide FTE that fully documents why FTE cannot be moved from another function to meet the identified need.

Describe budgetary resources and FTE requests in the context of your management plan for the programs and activities. Describe resources requested for IT investments in the context of your program requirements. For IT expenditures proposed, demonstrate that all opportunities for coordination with the Administration's goals, and eliminating redundant activities, have been explored. Explain the analysis used to determine the resources needed to accomplish program and Administration goals, and demonstrate that all opportunities for making more efficient and effective use of resources have been explored.

#### **51.4 Relationship of justification to account structure.**

To the extent possible, you should attempt to align your budget accounts with programs, distinguishing among components that contribute to different strategic goals or objectives (see above). Where the major programs in your justification materials do not coincide with the budget account structure, prepare a table to show the relationship. Arrange this table by program, with all relevant accounts and parts of accounts listed, showing budgetary resources (usually budget authority) in millions of dollars and FTE. Include

breakouts of financial resources within each account activity line for total IT expenditures. Report programs that are mainly grants, contracts or other transfers of funds to entities other than your agency, related salaries and expenses accounts and parts of accounts, including allocations of overhead amounts. Where it is helpful to explain the coverage of the table or the relationship among accounts, prepare a short narrative to accompany the table. This requirement only applies to major programs and activities. You should consult your OMB representative to ensure that you provide tables for appropriate activities and that you avoid unnecessary paperwork.

#### **51.5 Agency restructuring or work process redesign.**

You should identify restructuring or process reengineering activities resulting from proposed and current investments in information technology and other areas that yield budgetary savings. Indicate how these activities allow your agency to utilize existing resources better while improving program management and service delivery.

#### **51.6 Information on grant programs and infrastructure investment.**

Include copies of systematic economic analyses of expected benefits and costs completed in accordance with [Executive Order 12893](#). OMB Bulletin No. 94-16 provides additional guidance on this Executive Order, including a listing of the accounts covered by the Order.

#### **51.7 Performance indicators and performance goals.**

For FY 2005, the "performance budget" submission will replace the performance plan required by the Government Performance and Results Act. You should not submit a separate performance plan to comply with GPRA. Your submission should cover all of your agency's programs. For programs that have been assessed using PART, include the measures and targets that were included in the PART. For other programs that have not yet been rated, the measures and targets included in the performance budget should be consistent with the strategic goals and meet the standards of the PART.

You should provide integrated budget and performance information for the listed outcomes and outputs in sufficient detail to allow OMB to pass back both budget and performance levels. In addition, you may include in your budget justification additional relevant performance information to explain major program issues or resource requirements. Any additional performance information that you include in your justification materials must be consistent with the performance information in the PARTs for programs that have been rated.

Your submission should include up to six years of performance data (PY-3 thru BY) and three years of budget resource data (PY, CY, and BY) and update performance target estimates to reflect Congressional action. In addition, you need to consider other statutory requirements of the "annual performance plan" required by GPRA:

- Descriptions of means and strategies, and
- Verification and validation of reported performance data.

Your submission should include descriptions of the means and strategies, including resources, processes, and technologies, to be used in achieving the performance goals. In many instances, these means and strategies are considered to be inputs. A well-conceived and thoughtful description of the means and strategies to be employed will help bolster confidence that there an understanding of what is needed to achieve a certain performance level, and the likelihood the goal will be achieved.



The "means" include:

- Operational processes, such as changes in work methods or sequencing, workforce adjustments, and shifts in responsibility for particular tasks;
- Staff skills, and the development, introduction, and use of technologies; and
- Human, capital, information, and other resources.

The descriptions of these means should be brief, focusing on the resources, processes, and technologies reflected in the budget request, with more detailed elaboration provided when a significant change (increase or decrease) from the previous year's levels or operating modes is proposed.

The "strategies" an agency intends to apply in achieving particular performance goals should also be highlighted. These strategies include program, policy, managerial, regulatory, and legislative initiatives and approaches.

Agencies should note the increasing emphasis on the use of workforce planning and other specific strategies that align human resources with the fulfillment of an agency's mission and objectives, and the need to secure a diverse Federal workforce that is skilled, flexible, and performance-oriented with a customer focus.

The description need not be confined to initiatives or changes that are newly funded in the fiscal year. Initiatives or investments started in prior years, but which become operational or will be completed during the fiscal year, can be included. Some changes can carryover and affect performance in future years as well.

If you prepare annual financial statements, you should confirm, for the budget year, continuing use of the program performance indicators used in previous years' statements, and identify any new indicators you plan to use in these statements. In addition, you should include in your budget submission to OMB and the Congress the portions of the annual performance report that will not be included in the Performance and Accountability Report:

- Evaluations of the performance plan for the current year;
- Revised schedules for achieving performance goals; and
- If the performance goal is impractical or infeasible, why that is the case and what action is recommended.

### **51.8 Other analytical information.**

Additional information may be required in budget justifications on the following:

- Workload analyses.
- Unit costs.
- Productivity trends.
- Impact of capital investment proposals on productivity.

Use productivity measurement, unit costs, and organizational performance standards to the maximum extent possible in justifying staffing and other requirements.

Include as a specific element in productivity improvement for activities of Federal staff the gains planned or being realized from streamlining, including reduction of unnecessary overhead, creative use of technology, and elimination of low priority tasks and programs.

You should also be prepared to provide information on the basis for distributing funds (e.g., formulas or principles for allocation, matching, policies regarding the awarding of loans, grants or contracts, etc.) and data on resulting geographic distribution (e.g., by State, etc.), with identification of any issues.

#### **51.9 Information on program evaluation.**

Program evaluation is an important aspect of program planning and monitoring, assessing program results, and determining future funding levels. Program evaluation is an essential tool in determining whether agencies have achieved long-range performance goals. The Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART) provides guidelines on program evaluations, see question 2.6 in the PART guidance for the FY 2005 Budget in OMB Budget Procedures Memorandum No. 861 (see [www.omb.gov/PART](http://www.omb.gov/PART)).

If you have made an interim adjustment to your strategic plan, you should include it with your budget submission.

#### **51.10 Explanations relating to supplemental appropriations requests.**

When you forecast the need for a program supplemental appropriation, you must prepare justification material in accordance with this section. Provide information indicating why the request was not included in the regular estimates for the period concerned and the reasons why it is considered essential that the additional appropriation be granted during the year. Submit proposals for offsets to be made elsewhere in your agency for both mandatory and discretionary resources along with your requests for supplementals, and indicate related FTE savings or requirements and appropriate financing changes. If the estimate is approved for later transmittal (rather than in the budget), you will be required to submit further justification of the supplemental estimate to OMB (see section [110.3](#)). Show the effect of requested supplementals in the appropriate portions of the justification material for the program elements affected.

#### **51.11 Major changes in receipts estimates**

Provide narrative explanations for major changes from one fiscal year to the next in the amounts of receipts reported for any account, trends in receipt estimates for the related programs, and any other unusual circumstances relating to the estimates.

Advise OMB of increases in amounts reported to the Treasury Department accounts 1435.00 (General fund proprietary interest receipts, not otherwise classified) and 3220.00 (All other general fund proprietary receipts) when you expect that the amounts collected from a single source will exceed \$10 million in any year or when legislation is proposed that will affect any receipts reported to those accounts.

Make your explanations of legislative proposals consistent with your legislative program and outyear policy estimates. Cover the expected timing of enactment and the annual level of receipts anticipated.

#### **51.12 Unobligated balances in liquidating accounts**

You must submit information justifying any unobligated balances you expect to carry forward into the current year (see section [185.3\(k\)](#)).

## SECTION 52—INFORMATION ON FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT

**Table of Contents**

- 52.1 What are the general reporting requirements?
- 52.2 What other reporting requirements does this fulfill?
- 52.3 Who must report financial management information?
- 52.4 What materials are required in the budget justification?
- 52.5 What is the report on resources for financial management activities (exhibit 52)?
- 52.6 What are the line descriptions and coding for exhibit 52?
- 52.7 How do I submit exhibit 52 and when is it due?

Ex-52 Report on Resources for Financial Management Activities

**Summary of Changes**

Drops the requirement to report on material weaknesses and nonconformances.

### 52.1 What are the general reporting requirements?

Agencies are required to provide two reports on financial management:

- Financial management budget justification materials (including agency financial management plans); and
- Report on resources for financial management activities (exhibit 52).

### 52.2 What other reporting requirements does this fulfill?

For the 24 agencies covered by the Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 (CFO), the materials required in this section fulfill the following requirements:

- CFO Act: Requires each agency CFO to prepare a financial management plan to implement the Government-wide financial management five-year plan.
- The Federal Financial Management Improvement Act of 1996 (FFMIA): Requires each agency head to determine **substantial** compliance with the Act. When the agency head determines that the agency's financial management systems do not comply with FFMIA, the Act requires the agency to submit a remediation plan to bring the agency's financial management systems into substantial compliance with FFMIA and with the agency's budget justifications materials. Guidance in this section outlines the information that must be provided on remediation activities to fulfill FFMIA requirements.
- OMB Circular A-127, Financial Management Systems: Requires each agency to develop, prepare, and maintain financial management systems plans.

### 52.3 Who must report financial management information?

*CFO Act agencies.* All CFO Act agencies must submit the materials prescribed by section 52.4 with their initial budget submission. The CFO Act assigns to the CFO responsibility for preparing and revising the agency's financial management plan and developing the agency's financial management budget.

*Non-CFO Act agencies.* Non-CFO Act agencies must include in their initial budget submission a brief summary of their financial management plans to ensure sound financial management practices.

### 52.4 What materials are required in the budget justification?

The budget justification should describe financial management operations and improvement initiatives, including desired results and performance measures. It should include plans for financial management throughout the agency and financial management performance measures. The justification should align with the agency's mission and programs and address the President's Management Agenda.

The financial management plan should include:

- *Goals and strategies.* Briefly discuss how the agency will achieve the goals and strategies for implementing government-wide financial management improvements that are associated with the President's Management Agenda. Include information on the status of financial management activities to provide a context for the agency's plans and resources request.
- *Financial performance.* Briefly discuss impediments to improving the agency's financial performance, especially those identified in your agency's most recent Executive Branch Management Scorecard. Describe plans to overcome the impediments, such as efforts to reduce erroneous payments, eliminate material weaknesses identified by previous audits, and material weaknesses and nonconformances identified under the FMFIA process, obtain and sustain clean audit opinions on financial statements, ensure timely and useful financial reporting including financial performance measurement, and meet accelerated year-end reporting.
- *Financial management systems structure.* Present an overview of current and targeted financial management systems structure and plans for achieving targeted systems structure, covering core financial management systems and financial and mixed systems critical to effective agency-wide financial management, financial reporting, or financial control (see section [53.3](#)). Include an inventory and brief description of baseline financial and mixed systems, including an assessment of major problems. (Guidance and instructions for the systems inventory update will be available on the Internet; a separate memorandum will be distributed to Deputy CFOs advising them of the location and posting date.) Include a synopsis of critical projects currently underway or planned to accomplish the target structure. Identify FMFIA remediation activities planned and underway and describe (either in this synopsis or by referencing other documents or budget exhibits) the resources, remedies, interim target dates, and officials responsible for bringing systems into substantial compliance with FMFIA.
- *Grants management.* Describe grants management policies and practices, including:
  - ▶ How the agency ensures policy consistency across grant programs.
  - ▶ How program-specific requirements (e.g., application forms, financial reports, and award conditions) are reviewed to ensure consistent treatment of grantees.

- ▶ Agency efforts to coordinate policies and practices with other agencies.
- ▶ Recommendations for changes in law to improve the effectiveness, performance, coordination, and accountability of grant programs, including program-specific statutes.
- ▶ Efforts to ensure quality of audits performed by non-Federal auditors in accordance with the Single Audit Act Amendments of 1996 and OMB Circular A–133. Information should be included for the prior, current, and budget years, addressing the number of audit quality control reviews, FTE for audit quality efforts, results of the audit quality efforts, actions taken or planned to improve quality of non-Federal audits, and other relevant information to assess your agency's reliance on audits under Circular A–133 in grant management.
- ▶ Participation and efforts in the Grants.gov (formerly known as the E-Grants) initiative, including systems efforts to interface with the government-wide Grants.gov system for simplified grant application and management processes. Include a discussion of how your agency participates in implementing Public Law 106-107, the Federal Financial Assistance Management Improvement Act of 1999 (grant-making agencies only).

**52.5 What is the report on resources for financial management activities (exhibit 52)?**

Each CFO Act agency is asked to report total budgetary resources and full-time equivalent (FTE) employment data for CY and BY and obligations for PY for each of the following categories of financial management activities:

- Accounting and reporting;
- Audits of financial statements; and
- Financial management systems.

In addition, in-house and contract data are required on resources for accounting and reporting and the audits of financial statements.

**52.6 What are the line descriptions and coding for exhibit 52?**

Report obligations (PY) and budgetary resources (CY and BY) in millions of dollars and FTE employment data for the entries described below. Use the fourth digit of the line number to identify data as obligations or budgetary resources (xxx2) or as FTE data (xxx1). Resource information should represent the agency's best estimate of salaries, contracts, or other major expenses to be reported. Allocation of overhead expenses is not required.

**REPORT ON RESOURCES FOR FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT ACTIVITIES**

---

Entry	Description
Line coding	Use the first three digits of the line number to identify the financial management activities to be reported (e.g., accounting and reporting) and the fourth digit to distinguish FTE (e.g., 2001) from obligation and budgetary resources (e.g., 2002) data.
200x In-house accounting and reporting	Include in-house resources for processing, recording, and reporting of revenues, receipts, appropriations, apportionments, allotments, obligations, outlays, expenditures, assets, liabilities, and other financial

**SECTION 52—INFORMATION ON FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
	transactions; reconciliation of asset and liability accounts, such as accounts or loans receivable, with subsidiary records and with external data, such as Treasury cash records; funds control; and preparation of financial statements.
2102 Contractor Accounting and Reporting	Include resources for contracts to perform accounting and reporting activities. Report PY obligations and budgetary resources only.
300x Audits of financial statements	Include resources for performing audits of financial statements, with separate identification for contract and in-house costs, as detailed in exhibit 52. Do not include resources for preparation of financial statements.
400x Financial management systems	Include resources for financial management systems, which consist of financial systems and financial portions of mixed systems necessary to support financial management. (See definitions of financial management systems in section 53.3.) Include in this category grants management systems as either a financial or mixed system (see section 53.3). Data reported should be consistent with information reported as the estimated percentage of total system budgetary resources associated with financial components in exhibit 53.
500x Subtotal	The sum of corresponding amounts reported on lines 200x through 400x.
600x Adjustments (–)	Include adjustments to eliminate double counting (a minus entry). For example, costs for a loan system reported under the "asset management" category may also be reported under the "financial management systems" category. If any adjustments are reported on lines 6001-6002, a hard copy list should describe the adjustments and be available to OMB upon request.
700x Total, net	Equals the total of corresponding amounts on lines 500x and 600x.
8102 Audits of financial statements, contract costs	Include resources for contracts to perform audits of financial statements. Do not include preparation costs on lines 8102 through 9402.
820x Audits of financial statements, in-house costs	Include resources to perform audits of financial statements in-house.
9102 Organization-wide financial statements, contract costs	Include resources for contracts to perform organization-wide audits of financial statements.
920x Organization-wide financial statements, in-house costs	Include resources for performing organization-wide audits of financial statements in-house.
940x Total, all reporting entities	For total FTE (line 9401), report the sum of lines 8201 and 9201. This total must be equal to line 3001. For total budget resources (line 9402), report the sum of lines 8102, 8202, 9102, and 9202. This total must equal line 3002.
9998 Agency contact	Include the name of the individual responsible for answering the above questions.
9999 Telephone number	Include telephone number of agency contact.

**52.7 How do I submit exhibit 52 and when is it due?**

[Exhibit 52](#) is due with the initial budget submission. It should be approved by the agency CFO before submission to OMB. E-mail the exhibit using the formatted spreadsheet provided at <http://www.cio.gov>. Send the completed exhibit 52 spreadsheet to [exhibit52@omb.eop.gov](mailto:exhibit52@omb.eop.gov). Before sending the completed spreadsheet, verify that the subject line has the three-digit OMB agency code (see [Appendix C](#)) and the full agency name. Update the data on exhibit 52 to reflect final budget decisions.

Report on Resources for Financial Management Activities

Department of Government (in millions of dollars)		PY	CY	BY	Report obligations for PY and budgetary resources for CY and BY.
Accounting and Reporting					
2001	No. of FTE.....		250	250	
2002	Budgetary Resources.....		15,500	16,120	
Contractor Accounting and Reporting					
2102	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	2,000			
Audits of Financial Statements					
3001	No. of FTE.....		35	35	Amounts reported for financial management systems on line 4002 must be consistent with the percentage of budgetary resources for financial management systems in exhibit 53.
3002	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	2,250	2,250	2,290	
Financial Management Systems					
4001	No. of FTE.....		728	731	If any adjustments are reported on lines 6001-6002, a list describing them should be prepared in hard copy.
4002	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	86,500	87,016	96,456	
Subtotal					
5001	No. of FTE.....		1,013	1,016	Do not include preparation costs on lines 8102- 8202.
5002	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	90,750	104,766	114,866	
Adjustments					
6001	No. of FTE.....		-20	-30	Total, all reporting entities, should equal the corresponding entries for audits of financial statements reported on lines 3001-3002.
6002	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	-900	-1,000	-1,800	
Total, Net					
7001	No. of FTE.....		993	986	
7002	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	89,850	103,766	113,066	
Audits of Financial Statements					
Component Contract Audits					
8102	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	1,100	1,250	1,250	
Component In-House Audit Costs					
8201	No. of FTE.....		35	35	
8202	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	1,000	1,000	1,040	
Organization-wide (department) financial statements					
Contract Audit Costs					
9102	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	4,000			
In-House Audit Costs					
9201	No. of FTE.....				
9202	Budgetary Resources.....				
Total, all reporting entities					
9401	No. of FTE.....		35	35	
9402	Obligations/Budgetary Resources.....	6,100	2,250	2,290	
9998	Agency Contact.....		R.W. Rogers		
9999	Telephone Number.....		(202) 696-4712		



## SECTION 53—INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY AND E-GOVERNMENT

**Table of Contents**

- 53.1 Why must I report on information technology investments?
- 53.2 How do I ensure that IT investments are linked to and support the President's Management Agenda?
- 53.3 What special terms must I know?
- 53.4 How do I determine whether I must report?
- 53.5 How do I submit exhibit 53 and when is it due?
- 53.6 If I submitted exhibit 53 last year, how do I revise it this year?
- 53.7 How is exhibit 53 organized?
- 53.8 How is exhibit 53 coded?
- 53.9 What are the steps to complete exhibit 53?

Ex-53 Agency Information Technology (IT) Investment Portfolio

**Summary of Changes**

Changes all terminology for IT management to Investments. The term IT investments includes projects, systems, IT workforce, and initiatives.

Adds information on the Federal Enterprise Architecture, its use during the agency budget formulation process, and the overall FY 2005 budget process (section 53.2).

Adds the submission of agency's initial draft of exhibit 53 (section 53.4).

Adds information on attendant documents and their requirements (section 53.5).

Reflects the enactment of the Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA) and the E-government Act of 2002 (P.L. 107-347) (section 53.3).

Modifies definition and provides criteria for identifying systems as "Major IT Investment" or "Non-Major IT Investment" (section 53.7).

**53.1 Why must I report on information technology Investments?**

The information required allows the agency and OMB to review and evaluate each agency's IT spending and to compare IT spending across the federal government. Specifically the information helps the agency and OMB to:

- Ensure that initiatives create a citizen-centered electronic presence and advance an E-government strategy that includes specific outcomes to be achieved;
- Understand the amount being spent on development and modernization of IT versus the amount being spent on operating and maintaining the status quo for IT;
- Identify the funding sources for agency IT investments;

- Identify investments for IT security as part of agency life-cycle costs for specific investments and IT security that is crosscutting or infrastructure related under the Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA);
- Provide a full and accurate accounting of IT investments for the agency as required by the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995 and the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996;
- Ensure that spending on IT supports agency compliance with the requirements of Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act Amendments of 1998 (Electronic and Information Technology Accessibility) and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (Reasonable Accommodation);
- Identify spending and priorities consistent with agency Government Paperwork Elimination Act (GPEA) plans;
- Ensure compliance with E-government Act of 2002 and that privacy is considered and protected in electronic activities;
- Identify investments that support Homeland Security goals and objectives;
- Review requests for agency financial management systems; and
- Prepare the government-wide five-year plan required by the Chief Financial Officers (CFOs) Act of 1990.

You must provide this information using the Agency IT Investment Portfolio (exhibit 53) reporting format. This format was developed jointly by OMB and the Chief Information Officers' Council and provides basic information your agency needs to link its internal planning, budgeting, acquisition, and management of IT resources (i.e., the capital planning and investment control process). In addition, as an output of your agency's internal capital planning process, your budget justification for IT must provide results oriented information on IT operations and improvement initiatives in the context of the agency's missions and operations. Your budget justification, including the status and plans for information systems, should be consistent with your agency's submissions on financial management activities required by section [52](#) and the applicable guidance in [Part 7](#) of this Circular.

Total investments costs must cover the life of each system and include all budgetary resources (direct appropriation, working capital fund, revolving funds, etc.). Budgetary resources are defined in section [20](#) of this circular. Life cycle costs should also be risk adjusted to include any risks addressed on the Capital Asset Plan and Business Case that have not been mitigated. Examples of areas that may cause the adjustment of life-cycle costs would be strategic risks, technological risks, human capital issues, acquisition strategy, IT security and privacy risks, enterprise architecture, and any other issues identified on the capital asset plan. These total investment costs must be formulated and reported in order for OMB to meet the Clinger-Cohen Act's requirement that "at the same time that the President submits the budget for a fiscal year to Congress under section [1105\(a\) of title 31, United States Code](#), the Director shall submit to Congress a report on the net program performance benefits achieved as a result of major capital investments made by executive agencies in information systems and how the benefits relate to the accomplishment of the goals of the executive agencies."

### 53.2 How do I ensure that IT investments are linked to and support the President's Management Agenda?

All IT Investments must support the President's Management Agenda and must clearly demonstrate that the investment is needed in order to close a specific performance gap in the agency's ability to meet strategic goals and missions. The President's Management Agenda scorecard items are:

- Human capital;
- Competitive sourcing;
- Financial performance;
- E-government; and
- Budget and performance integration.

The President's Budget also defines guiding principles for the investments supporting the President's Management Agenda. The principles OMB will use to implement the PMA and the supporting IT investments are to ensure that investments:

- Create a citizen centered, results oriented, and market based government;
- Support homeland security, war on terrorism, and revitalizing the economy;
- Identify and manage corporate measures of success;
- Simplify and unify redundant activities, both within and across agencies;
- Where appropriate, investments are aligned with the President's E-Gov initiatives, identified at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/>;
- Represent sound business cases that address overall solutions (human capital, competitive sourcing, financial performance, e-government, and budget and performance integration) as applicable; and
- Include strategic partnerships to perform business with State, local, other Federal agencies, non-profit organizations, and private industry as appropriate.

OMB will give priority consideration to IT investments that leverage technology purchases across multiple entities, ensure operational objectives are met, utilize technology that improves decision making, employ knowledge management tools, support the Federal Enterprise Architecture, and ensure that systems and information are secure.

Agencies are creating departmental/agency-wide programs for office automation, infrastructure, and telecommunications investments. These investments will be reported on a single integrated business case from the agency and meet the requirements of supporting the President's Management Agenda by simplifying and unifying redundant activities, both within and across the agencies. In effect, this approach will lead agencies to more effectively manage technology infrastructures across their enterprise and help OMB and the government connect these investments to the infrastructure layer of the Federal Enterprise Architecture.

The PMA and the E-government Act of 2002 require agencies to improve government performance through business-focused collaboration and shared use of effective technologies. The Federal Enterprise

Architecture (FEA) provides agencies and OMB with a set of tools to help meet those requirements. Agencies, OMB, and the Presidents Management Council (PMC) will also use the FEA to identify opportunities to improve performance and reduce costs.

OMB has used and will continue to use the existing budget process to prioritize investments that are consistent with this approach. During the FY 2004 budget formulation process agencies and the Administration used the FEA Business Reference Model (BRM) to identify six business lines where improvement was needed and/or redundancy existed. These six business lines are: Financial Management, Data and Statistics, Human Resources, Monetary Benefits, Criminal Investigations, and Public Health Monitoring. Consistent with this there is a governance process to identify these opportunities and Line of Business Owners where needed. A similar but more rigorous approach will be used during the FY 2005 budget formulation to identify further improvement opportunities. This will be largely driven through the characterization of major IT initiatives against selected reference models as collected by OMB through exhibit 300s.

This more rigorous approach requires a common way for OMB and agencies to characterize IT investments by not only the business line they support, but also the performance they seek to achieve and the components and supporting technology that comprise them. During the FY 2005 budget formulation process, an FEA Performance Reference Model, Service Component Reference Model, and Technical Reference Model are available for agencies to characterize their major IT investments in this manner. Once this characterization is complete, OMB, the CIO Council, and agencies can work together through the budget process to identify additional improvement and collaboration opportunities.

Major IT investments must align with the Federal Enterprise Architecture. Agencies must align each major IT initiative with the FEA Business Reference Model. This alignment will be identified through the numbering scheme included within the Unique Project ID, which is described in more detail in section [53.8](#) of this guidance. This will identify the FEA Business Area, Line of Business, and Sub-function to which the initiative aligns. The purpose of this alignment is to begin to organize major IT investments so that potential opportunities for collaboration can be identified. Once explored further, these collaboration opportunities may be to leverage common business processes, application and technology components, and/or eventually, data.

For FY 2005, agencies are required to use the FEA Performance Reference Model (PRM) to identify performance measurements for each major new development/modernization/enhancement (DME) IT investment. The PRM Version 1.0, available at <http://www.feapmo.gov>, includes detailed guidance about how to incorporate PRM Indicators into the performance goals and measures into the exhibit 300. Agencies should use the PRM to identify specific measurements in the following Measurement Areas: (1) Mission and Business Results; (2) Customer Results; (3) Processes and Activities; and (4) Technology. Each of these Measurement Areas includes Measurement Categories and specific Indicators that agencies can "operationalize" or tailor for their environment. Agencies should document their alignment with the PRM through the Performance and Goals table in section [I.C of exhibit 300](#). This structure will begin to provide performance information that aligns IT initiative to specific process outputs and ultimately to customer and business outcomes. Agencies should think carefully about the cause/effect relationship of the IT initiative, the processes it is designed to improve, the outcomes and the process influences.

OMB will present investments for the President's E-government initiatives, as well as new e-government investments identified through the Federal Enterprise Architecture, using an integrated budget process that compliments each agency's investment portfolio. OMB will work with agencies to build from the IT and E-government strategy outlined in this section and section [300](#) in identifying these cross-agency investments. Accordingly, where one agency's activities should be aligned with those of another agency in order to serve citizens, businesses, governments, and internal Federal operations, OMB will give priority to agencies that have worked collectively to present and support activities in an integrated

fashion. The FY 2005 Budget will appropriately reflect such interagency collaboration, and agencies will be expected to use exhibit 300 to demonstrate these efforts. For the FY 2005 budget formulation process, these reference models will be a key method by which agencies, OMB, and the President's Management Council can identify improvement opportunities. More detailed information can be found at [www.feapmo.gov](http://www.feapmo.gov).

Each of the line items for major investments on [exhibit 53](#) are a roll-up of particular line items and elements from exhibit 300 detailed in section 300. Exhibit 300 is where the agency makes the business cases, and serves as the primary means of justifying IT investment proposals as well as managing IT investments once they are funded.

As detailed in section [300](#), business cases (exhibit 300s) for IT investments, must:

- Demonstrate the overall strategy outlined in this section;
- Follow the guiding principles of this section;
- Support the agency's strategic plans and annual performance plans;
- Link to and support the agency's Information Resources Management (IRM) Strategic Plans;
- Be a visible part of the modernization strategy of the agency (enterprise architecture);
- Address solutions (people, processes, and technology) rather than hardware and software alone;
- Demonstrate strong acquisition strategies that identify, control, and mitigate the risk to the Federal government;
- Demonstrate strong project (investment) management;
- Demonstrate how the investment is specifically addressing a performance gap or business need of the agency and how it supports the agency's strategic and performance goals;
- Demonstrate the use of earned value management system information to manage and control the investment;
- Ensure information and systems are secure and that security is part of the management of the process from initial concept and throughout the entire life cycle of the investment;
- Protect privacy in a manner consistent with relevant laws and OMB policies, including privacy impact assessments where appropriate;
- Demonstrate that the investment is achieving at least 90 percent of planned costs, schedule, and performance goals; and
- Ensure life cycle costs as formulated are risk adjusted as necessary and are as inclusive as the business case would require.

The governance processes required as attendant documents to this section (Agency IRM Strategic Plan, Documented CPIC process, and Agency Enterprise Architecture) are used in connection with the business cases (exhibit 300) and this "Agency IT Investment Portfolio" (exhibit 53) to demonstrate the agency

management of IT investments and how these governance processes are used to make decisions about IT investments within the agency.

The individual agency's exhibit 53 is used to create an overall "Federal IT Investment Portfolio" that is published as part of the President's budget. OMB's portfolio review and budget process will ensure that IT investments support the strategy identified in this section and ensure that the Federal IT Investment Portfolio includes the most effective portfolio of investments that:

- Simplify and integrate processes across redundant or duplicative programs to make it easier for citizens to get service;
- Directly improve the management of programs to achieve better program outcomes;
- Ensure sound security of government information systems and appropriate protection of information held in those systems;
- Eliminate redundant or non productive IT investments;
- Bring successful e-business practices to government administrative operations, such as effective procurement and human capital management strategies, including maximizing web-based architectures;
- Make appropriate use of technology components identified through the component based architecture work of OMB and CIO Council;
- Support the Federal Enterprise Architecture;
- Support the President's E-government Initiatives and Strategy;
- Focus IT spending on high priority modernization initiatives;
- Have major IT investments that are within 10% of cost, schedule, and performance objectives;
- Have major IT investments that are certified, accredited, or otherwise authorized as being properly secured;
- Reflect the negotiated enterprise-wide Enterprise Software licenses; and
- Reduce redundant IT spending in the six overlapping lines of business identified in the FY 2004 budget by defining government-wide solutions.

Annually, Chapter 22 of the Analytical Perspectives of the President's budget provides the results of OMB reviews of the agency's capital planning processes, enterprise architectures, business cases, efforts on expanding e-government, IT performance management, and overall health and well being of the management of the agency IT Investments. A companion document entitled "Performance Information for Major IT Investments" uses information from the exhibit 300s and this section to provide a snapshot of IT investments, their planned investments, support of the agency's strategic goals, and the performance goals and measures identified for the investments.

***Supporting the President's Management Agenda by Expanding E-Government:***

What it means to be green

- ✓ The agency has a Modernization Blueprint that focuses IT investments on important agency functions and defines how those functions will be measurably improved.
- ✓ All major systems investments have an acceptable business case (security and privacy, measures of success linked to the Modernization Blueprint, program management, risk management, and cost, schedule, and performance goals).
- ✓ For all major IT investments, cost and schedule overruns average less than 10% and performance shortfalls average less than 10%.
- ✓ Inspector General verifies that there is a Department-wide IT Security Plan of Action and Milestone (POA&M) remediation process.
- ✓ 90% of operational IT systems are properly secured (e.g., certified and accredited), including mission critical systems.
- ✓ Agency demonstrates consistent progress in remediating IT security weaknesses through their POA&Ms.
- ✓ Agency contributes to, and participates in, 3 of the 4 categories of E-Gov initiatives rather than creating redundant, or agency unique, IT investments.

What it means to be yellow

- ✓ More than 50% of major systems investments have an acceptable business case.
- ✓ Security Reports to OMB document consistent security improvement and either:
  - ✓ 80% of operational IT systems are properly secured **OR**
  - ✓ Inspector General verifies that there is a Department-wide IT Security Plan of Action and Milestone remediation process.
- ✓ For all major IT investments, cost and schedule overruns average less than 30% and performance shortfalls average less than 30%.
- ✓ Agency contributes to, and participates in, 2 of the 4 categories of E-Gov initiatives rather than creating redundant, or agency unique, IT investments.

**53.3 What special terms must I know?**

***Capital planning and investment control (CPIC)*** is the same as capital programming and is a decision-making process for ensuring that information technology (IT) investments integrate strategic planning, budgeting, procurement, and the management of IT in support of agency missions and business needs. The term comes from the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996 and generally is used in relationship to IT management issues.

***E-business (Electronic Business)*** means doing business online. E-business is often used as an umbrella term for having an interactive presence on the Web. A government e-business initiative or investment

includes web-services type technologies, component based architectures, and open systems architectures designed around the needs of the customer (citizens, business, governments, and internal Federal operations).

**E-government** is the use by the government of web-based Internet applications and other information technologies, combined with processes that implement these technologies.

**Earned value management (EVM)** is a project (investment) management tool that effectively integrates the investment scope of work with schedule and cost elements for optimum investment planning and control. The qualities and operating characteristics of earned value management systems are described in American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) Standard –748–1998, *Earned Value Management Systems*, approved May 19, 1998. It was reaffirmed on August 28, 2002. A copy of Standard 748 is available from Global Engineering Documents (1-800-854-7179). Information on earned value management systems is available at <http://www.acq.osd.mil/pm>.

**Federal Enterprise Architecture (FEA)** is a framework for describing the relationship between business functions and the technologies and information that support them. Major IT investments will be aligned against each reference model within the FEA framework. The reference models required to be used during the FY 2005 budget formulation process are briefly described below. (The FEA will also ultimately include a Data Reference Model.)

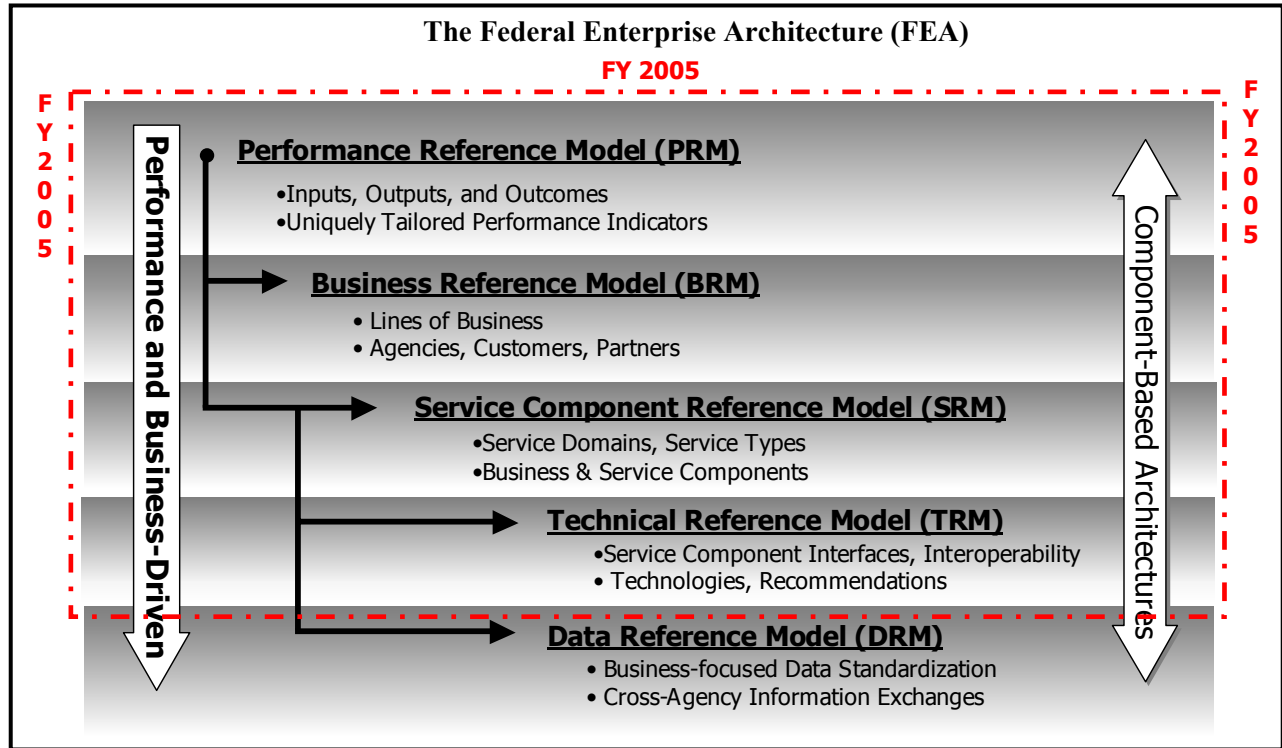
**Business Reference Model (BRM)** is a function-driven framework to describe the Lines of Business and Internal Functions performed by the Federal government independent of the agencies that perform them. Major IT investments are mapped to the BRM to identify collaboration opportunities.

**Performance Reference Model (PRM)** is a standardized performance measurement framework to characterize performance in a common manner where necessary. The PRM will help agencies produce enhanced performance information; improve the alignment and better articulate the contribution of inputs, such as technology, to outputs and outcomes; and identify improvement opportunities that span traditional organizational boundaries.

**Service Component Reference Model (SRM)** provides a common framework and vocabulary for characterizing the IT and business components that collectively comprise an IT investment. The SRM will help agencies rapidly assemble IT solutions through the sharing and re-use of business and IT components. A component is a self-contained process, service, or IT capability with pre-determined functionality that may be exposed through a business or technology interface.

**Technical Reference Model (TRM)** provides a foundation to describe the standards, specifications, and technologies supporting the delivery, exchange, and construction of business (or Service) components and e-Gov solutions. The TRM unifies existing agency TRMs and electronic Government (e-Gov) guidance by providing a foundation to advance the re-use of technology and component services from a government-wide perspective.





**Financial management systems** are financial systems and the financial portion of mixed systems (see definitions below) that support the interrelationships and interdependencies between budget, cost and management functions, and the information associated with business activities.

**Financial systems** are comprised of one or more applications that are used for any of the following:

- Collecting, processing, maintaining, transmitting, and reporting data about financial events;
- Supporting financial planning or budgeting activities;
- Accumulating and reporting cost information; or
- Supporting the preparation of financial statements.

A financial system supports the processes necessary to record the financial consequences of events that occur as a result of business activities. Such events include information related to the receipt of appropriations or resources; acquisition of goods or services; payment or collections; recognition of guarantees, benefits to be provided, or other potential liabilities or other reportable activities.

**Funding source** means the direct appropriation or other budgetary resources an agency receives. You need to identify the account and the budget authority provided. Report those accounts that provide the financing for a particular investment. *To avoid double counting, do not report any accounts receiving intra-governmental payments to purchase IT investments or services as funding sources.*

**IRM Strategic Plan** is strategic in nature and addresses all information resources management of the agency. Agencies must develop and maintain the agency's Information Resource Management Strategic Plan (IRM) as required by [44 U.S.C. 3506\(b\)](#) (2). IRM Strategic Plans should support the agency's Strategic Plan required in OMB Circular A-11, provide a description of how information resources management activities help accomplish agency missions, and ensure that IRM decisions are integrated

with organizational planning, budget, procurement, financial management, human resources management, and program decisions.

**Information system** means a discrete set of information technology, data, and related resources, such as personnel, hardware, software, and associated information technology services organized for the collection, processing, maintenance, use, sharing, dissemination or disposition of information.

**Information technology**, as defined by the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996, sections 5002, 5141, and 5142, means any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment that is used in the automatic acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information. For purposes of this definition, equipment is "used" by an agency whether the agency uses the equipment directly or it is used by a contractor under a contract with the agency that (1) requires the use of such equipment or (2) requires the use, to a significant extent, of such equipment in the performance of a service or the furnishing of a product. Information technology includes computers, ancillary equipment, software, firmware and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources. It does not include any equipment that is acquired by a Federal contractor incidental to a Federal contract.

**Integrated Project Team (IPT)** means a multi-disciplinary team lead by a program manager responsible and accountable for planning, budgeting, procurement and life-cycle management of the investment to achieve its cost, schedule and performance goals. Team skills include: budgetary, financial, capital planning, procurement, user, program, value management, earned value management, and other staff as appropriate.

**Life-cycle costs** means the overall estimated cost, both government and contractor, for a particular program alternative over the time period corresponding to the life of the program, including direct and indirect initial costs plus any periodic or continuing costs of operation and maintenance.

**Major IT Investment** means a system or investment that requires special management attention because of its importance to an agency's mission; investment was a major investment in the FY 2004 submission and is continuing; investment is for financial management and spends more than \$500,000; investment is directly tied to the top two layers of the Federal Enterprise Architecture (Services to Citizens and Mode of Delivery); investment is an integral part of the agency's modernization blueprint (EA); investment has significant program or policy implications; investment has high executive visibility; investment is defined as major by the agency's capital planning and investment control process. OMB may work with the agency to declare other investments as major investments. All major investments must be reported on exhibit 53. All major investments must submit a "Capital Asset Plan and Business Case," exhibit 300. Investments that are e-government in nature or use e-business technologies must be identified as major investments regardless of the costs. If you are unsure about what investments to consider as "major," consult your agency budget officer or OMB representative. Systems not considered "major" are "non-major."

**Mixed system** means an information system that supports both financial and non-financial functions of the Federal Government or components thereof.

**New IT Investment** means an IT investment that is newly proposed by the agency and has not been previously funded by OMB. This does not include investments that have existed within the agency but have not previously been reported to OMB.

**Non-financial system** means a system that supports management functions of the Federal Government or components thereof and does not record financial events or report financial information.

**Non-major IT Investment** means any initiative or investment not meeting the definition of major defined above but that is part of the agency's IT investments. All non-major investments must be reported individually on the exhibit 53.

**On-Going IT Investment** means an investment that has been through a complete budget cycle with OMB and represents budget decisions consistent with the President's budget for the current year (BY-1).

**Operational (steady state)** means an asset or part of an asset that has been delivered and is performing the mission.

**Planning** means preparing, developing or acquiring the information you will use to design the investment; assess the benefits, risks, and risk-adjusted life-cycle costs of alternative solutions; and establish realistic cost, schedule, and performance goals, for the selected alternative, before either proceeding to full acquisition of the capital project (investment) or useful segment or terminating the investment. Planning must progress to the point where you are ready to commit to achieving specific goals for the completion of the acquisition before proceeding to the acquisition phase. Information gathering activities may include market research of available solutions, architectural drawings, geological studies, engineering and design studies, and prototypes. Planning is a useful segment of a capital project (investment). Depending on the nature of the investment, one or more planning segments may be necessary.

**Privacy Impact Assessment (PIA)** means a process for examining the risks and ramifications of collecting, maintaining and disseminating information in identifiable form in an electronic information system. It is a process for identifying and evaluating protections and alternative processes in order to mitigate the impact on privacy when collecting information in identifiable form. Consistent with forthcoming OMB guidance implementing the privacy provisions of the E-government Act, agencies must conduct privacy impact assessments for all new or significantly altered information technology investments administering information in identifiable form collected from or about members of the public. Agencies may choose whether to conduct privacy impact assessments for IT investments administering information in identifiable form collected from or about agency employees.

**Useful segment** means an economically and programmatically separate component of a capital project (investment) that provides a measurable performance outcome for which the benefits exceed the costs, even if no further funding is appropriated.

#### **53.4 How do I determine whether I must report?**

Submit an agency IT investment portfolio (exhibit 53) to OMB if either of the following are true:

- Your agency is requesting funding for IT investments via a Capital Asset Plan and Business Case (see section [300](#)). If you are unsure whether your agency will submit exhibit 300, consult your OMB representative.
- Your financial management system budgetary resources are above \$500,000 in any given year.

#### **53.5 How do I submit exhibit 53 and when is it due?**

Section 53 requires the submission of the exhibit 53 and several attendant documents. OMB Circular A-130, "Management of Federal Information Resources", requires that the agency's initial budget submissions include:

- Agency IRM Strategic Plan;
- Documented Capital Planning and Investment Control (CPIC) process; and
- Agency Enterprise Architecture.

The agency's Capital Planning and Investment Control Process is scored against the CIO Self Assessment Criteria located at [www.cio.gov](http://www.cio.gov) and the agency's Enterprise Architecture (Modernization Blueprint) is scored against the CIO Council's Practical Guide for Enterprise Architecture (EA) and assessed for alignment with the Federal Enterprise Architecture. For additional information on what should be included in these attendant documents and their requirements, please refer to section 8B of Circular A-130. OMB Circular A-130 is available on the OMB Website at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars/a130/a130trans4.html>.

*Initial draft of exhibit 53.* In order for OMB and the agency to agree on what major investments and non-major investments will be reported for the FY 2005 process, OMB will be working with agencies to create initial draft exhibit 53s during the Summer of 2003. These initial drafts will include several of the columns from the exhibit 53 format but not all of them. OMB will work with the individual agencies to determine when the initial draft exhibit 53 is due to OMB. Draft exhibit 53 will include the unique ID, investment title, and investment description. This draft exhibit 53 will be used to determine what should be reported as major investments thereby providing business cases in the 2005 Budget.

You must submit [exhibit 53](#) in an electronic format either by e-mailing a spreadsheet version of exhibit 53 provided at [www.cio.gov](http://www.cio.gov) to [exhibit53@omb.eop.gov](mailto:exhibit53@omb.eop.gov) or if your agency uses an automated capital planning tool, by submitting it directly from that tool to the same e-mail address. The subject line of the e-mail must have the three digit OMB agency code (see [Appendix C](#)) and the full agency name. The PIA's must be submitted separately to [PIA@omb.eop.gov](mailto:PIA@omb.eop.gov) and identified using the investment's unique project identifier. The attendant documents must all be submitted electronically in whatever format the agency used to create the documents. All of these items will be assessed as part of the budget process and information provided to the agency via passback.

Your exhibit 53 and the attendant documents (including the PIA) are due to OMB by September 8<sup>th</sup> in a manner that is fully integrated with your agency's overall budget submission. In addition, you must update each exhibit 53 and the accompanying Capital Asset Plans and Business Cases (exhibit 300) you submitted in September to reflect any changes due to final budget decisions.

### **53.6 If I submitted exhibit 53 last year, how do I revise it this year?**

If your agency provided an exhibit 53 for the FY 2004 Budget, the file should be updated to reflect any new column headings in the FY 2005 reporting requirements. It is important that you ensure that the file is updated to reflect PY for FY 2003, CY for FY 2004, and BY for FY 2005. The exhibit 53 will also need to be updated to add the financial percentage, IT security percentage of spending, and answer the Homeland Security question for the entry.

### **53.7 How is exhibit 53 organized?**

#### *(a) Overview.*

As a general rule, exhibit 53 covers IT investments for your agency as a whole. Provide investment amounts in millions (to one decimal point) for PY through BY. Information reported here must be consistent with data you report in MAX schedule O, object classification (specifically, object classes 11.1 through 12.2, 23.1, 23.2, 25.2, 25.3, 25.7, 26.0, 31.0, and 41.0). Include all major IT investments, including financial management systems, reported in exhibit 300.

Exhibit 53 has four major parts:

- Part 1. IT investments by mission area.
- Part 2. IT infrastructure and office automation.
- Part 3. Enterprise architecture and planning.
- Part 4. Grants management.

All parts use the following common data elements:

- **Unique Project Identifier (UPI)** means an identifier that depicts agency code, bureau code, mission area (where appropriate), part of the exhibit where investment will be reported, type of investment, agency four-digit identifier, year the investment entered the budget, and mapping to the Federal Enterprise Architecture. Details are provided in section [53.8](#).
- **UPI used for 2004 Budget** means the Unique Project Identifier used to report the investment during the 2004 Budget. As agencies mature their capital planning processes and investments are aligned to the FEA, there will be required changes in the Unique Project Identifiers. Indicating the UPI used for the 2004 Budget process allows cross-walk and historical analysis crossing fiscal years for tracking purposes.
- **Investment title** means a definitive title that explains what the investment is entitled.
- **Investment description** means a short description for each investment (major and non-major) of one-hundred words or less. This description should explain the entry item, its components, and what program(s) it supports. This description should be understandable to someone who is not an expert in the agency. If the investment is part of a multi-agency initiative or part of another business case, please provide description of where that business case is located in the appropriate agency budget submission. For example, if the investment represents your agency's participation in one of the Presidential E-Gov Initiatives, the description should state that this investment represents your agency's participation in one of the E-Gov initiatives and should refer to the managing partner's budget for the business case.
- **Development/modernization/enhancement (DME)** means the program cost for new investments, changes or modifications to existing systems that improve capability or performance, changes mandated by Congress or agency leadership, personnel costs for project (investment) management, and direct support. This amount equals the sum of amounts reported for planning and full acquisition of that system in exhibit 300.
- **Steady state** means maintenance and operation costs at current capability and performance level including costs for personnel, maintenance of existing information systems, corrective software maintenance, voice and data communications maintenance, and replacement of broken IT equipment. This amount equals amounts reported for maintenance of that system in exhibit 300.
- **Percentage financial** means an estimated percentage of the total IT investment budget authority associated with the financial components. See the financial system definition for a description of financial functions.
- **Supports Homeland Security** means an IT investment that supports the homeland security mission areas of 1) Intelligence and Warning, 2) Border and Transportation Security, 3) Defending Against Catastrophic Threats, 4) Protecting Critical Infrastructure and Key Assets, 5) Emergency Preparedness and Response, 6) Other. If the investment supports one of these mission areas,

indicate which one(s) by listing the corresponding number(s) listed above. If the investment does not support homeland security, please leave blank.

- **Percentage IT security** means an estimated percentage of the total investment for budget year associated with IT security for a specific investment. Federal agencies must consider the following criteria to determine security costs for a specific IT investment:
  1. The products, procedures, and personnel (Federal employees and contractors) that are primarily dedicated to or used for provision of IT security for the specific IT investment. Do not include activities performed or funded by the agency's Inspector General. This includes the costs of:
    - risk assessment;
    - security planning and policy;
    - certification and accreditation;
    - specific management, operational, and technical security controls (to include access control systems as well as telecommunications and network security);
    - authentication or cryptographic applications;
    - education, awareness, and training;
    - system reviews/evaluations (including security control testing and evaluation);
    - oversight or compliance inspections;
    - development and maintenance of agency reports to OMB and corrective action plans as they pertain to the specific investment;
    - contingency planning and testing;
    - physical and environmental controls for hardware and software;
    - auditing and monitoring;
    - computer security investigations and forensics; and
    - reviews, inspections, audits and other evaluations performed on contractor facilities and operations.
  2. Other than those costs included above, security costs may also include the products, procedures, and personnel (Federal employees and contractors) that have as an incidental or integral component, a quantifiable benefit to IT security for the specific IT investment. This includes system configuration/change management control, personnel security, physical security, operations security, privacy training, program/system evaluations whose primary purpose is other than security, systems administrator functions, and, for example, system upgrades within which new features obviate the need for other standalone security controls.

3. Many agencies operate networks, which provide some or all necessary security controls for the associated applications. In such cases, the agency must nevertheless account for security costs for each of the application investments. To avoid "double-counting" agencies should appropriately allocate the costs of the network for each of the applications for which security is provided.

In identifying security costs, some agencies find it helpful to ask the following simple question, "If there was no threat, vulnerability, risk, or need to provide for continuity of operations, what activities would not be necessary and what costs would be avoided?" Investments that fail to report security costs will not be funded. Therefore, if the agency encounters difficulties with the above criteria they must contact OMB prior to submission of the budget materials.

- **Funding source** means any budgetary resource used for funding the IT Investment. Budgetary resource is defined in section 20. For each funding source, identify the budgetary resources (direct appropriation or other specific budgetary resources such as working capital funds, revolving funds, user fees, etc) for a project or investment. Identify the budget account and organization or operating division. Add as many funding source line items as are appropriate for the investment or project. To avoid double counting, do not report any accounts receiving intra-governmental payments to purchase IT investments or services.
- **Funding source subtotal** means the totals of all funding sources used for funding the IT Investment.

(b) *Part 1. IT investments by mission area.*

Consistent with your agency's strategic and annual performance plan, report amounts for IT investments that directly support an agency-designated mission area (e.g., human resource management, financial management, command and control). Report each mission area in which IT investments are funded. For each mission area, itemize each "major" and "non-major" IT investment. Major investments should account for at least 60 percent of the IT investment portfolio for FY 2005 reporting. This is the performance goal to focus on achieving and increasing as agencies use capital planning and investment control processes to better manage information technology.

You must have a mission area titled "Financial Management", and it must be reported as the first mission area. Some IT investments support financial functions in addition to other functions. If an IT investment supports financial functions, you must include an estimated percentage of the total IT investment obligations associated with the financial components. See the financial system definition for a description of financial functions. Systems that predominately support financial functions should be included in the first mission area, "Financial Management". If the IT investment reported is 100 percent financial, indicate 100 percent in the column. For mixed systems or investments, indicate the appropriate percentage that is financial. For those investments that are fully non-financial, enter zero.

(c) *Part 2. IT infrastructure and office automation.*

Report all IT investments that support common user systems, communications, and computing infrastructure. These investments usually involve multiple mission areas and might include general LAN/WAN, desktops, data centers, cross-cutting issues such as shared IT security initiatives, and telecommunications. Report your IT security initiatives and investments that are not directly tied to a major investment on a separate line identified as "non-major."

*(d) Part 3. Enterprise architecture and planning.*

Report amounts for IT investments that support strategic management of IT operations (e.g., business process redesign efforts that are not part of an individual investment or initiative, enterprise architecture development, capital planning and investment control processes, procurement management, and IT policy development and implementation).

*(e) Part 4. Grants management.*

Report amounts for IT investments that represent planning, developing, enhancing or implementing a grants management system or portion thereof. Highlight any grants systems initiatives as defined by this section. To highlight a system, which is not defined as major/critical, agencies should identify the grants system as non-major.

**53.8 How is exhibit 53 coded?**

Use the following 23 digit line number coding system to update or complete your exhibit 53:

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
XXX-xx-xx-xx-xx-xxxx-xx- xxx-xxx	The first three digits are your agency code (see <a href="#">Appendix C</a> ).
xxx-XX-xx-xx-xx-xxxx-xx- xxx-xxx	The next two digits are your bureau code (see <a href="#">Appendix C</a> ). If this is a department only reporting, use 00 as your bureau code.
xxx-xx-XX-xx-xx-xxxx-xx- xxx-xxx	These two digits indicate the four parts of exhibit 53: 01 = Part 1. IT Investments by Mission Area 02 = Part 2. IT Investments for Infrastructure, Office Automation, and Telecommunications 03 = Part 3. IT Investments for Enterprise Architecture and Planning 04 = Part 4. IT Investments for Grants Management Systems
xxx-xx-xx-XX-xx-xxxx-xx- xxx-xxx	These two digits indicate the mission area. Assign a unique code for each mission area reported.
xxx-xx-xx-xx-XX-xxxx-xx- xxx-xxx	These two digits indicate your agency's type of investment. Select one of the following two digit codes according to the type of investment you are reporting: 01 = Major IT investments (see definition in section <a href="#">53.3</a> ) 02 = Non-major IT investments (see definition in section <a href="#">53.3</a> ) 03= IT investment portion of a larger asset and for which there is an existing business case for the overall asset. Description of the IT investment should indicate where the 300 for the major asset can be found. With demonstration of the 300 for the overall asset, these line items are counted as major IT investments within the overall IT portfolio. 04 = Major IT investment that represents a joint effort for more than one agency. Use the 04 indicator to identify projects where the business case for the major IT investment is reported in another agency's exhibit 53. Description of the IT investment should indicate where the business case can be found.



Entry	Description
xxx-xx-xx-xx-xx-XXXX-xx- xxx-xxx	This is a four digit identification number that identifies a specific IT investment. If a new investment is added to exhibit 53, locate the area of exhibit 53 where you are going to report the IT investment and use the next sequential number as your four digit identification number.
xxx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xxxx-XX- xxx-xxx	<p>These two digits identify which part of the investment you are reporting. Select one of the following two digit codes according to what you report on the title line:</p> <p>00 = Total investment title line, or the first time the agency is reporting this particular investment. If this is one of the PMC E-Gov initiatives or an individual agency's participation in one of the PMC E-Gov initiatives, this two-digit code should be "24".</p> <p>04 = Funding source or appropriation</p> <p>09 = Any subtotal</p>
xxx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xxx-xx- XXX-xxx	<p>These three digits identify the <i>primary</i> Business Area and Line of Business from the Federal Enterprise Architecture Business Reference Model that this major or non-major IT investment supports (major systems must identify all BRM mappings -- primary and non-primary -- in Section 300 part II). If you cannot identify a primary Line of Business (this is not common), you may identify the appropriate number (1 through 4) for the Business Area followed by two zeros.</p> <p>1XX: Primary mapping to the Services for Citizen layer</p> <p>2XX: Primary mapping to the Mode of Delivery layer</p> <p>3XX: Primary mapping to the Support Delivery of Services layer</p> <p>4XX: Primary mapping to the Management of Government Resources layer</p> <p>Two digit codes for each of the Lines of Business, as well as guidance on how to determine your <i>primary</i> mapping can be found at <a href="http://www.feapmo.gov">http://www.feapmo.gov</a>.</p>
xxx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xxx-xx-xxx- XXX	The final three digits identify the <i>primary</i> Sub-Function within the Line of Business of the FEA BRM that this IT investment supports (major systems must identify <i>all</i> BRM mappings -- primary and non-primary -- in Section 300 part II). Non-major investments are expected to identify the primary Sub-Function where possible. Questions about the appropriate sub-function may be discussed with the agency's OMB Budget Examiner and IPT analyst. For those limited circumstances where a primary mapping cannot be identified, please enter 999 as this entry. The code 999 indicates that a further review of the Sub-Functions must be performed.

### 53.9 What are the steps to complete exhibit 53?

The following provides step-by-step instructions to complete each part of exhibit 53. See section [53.3](#) and [53.7](#) for definitions.

## AGENCY IT INVESTMENT PORTFOLIO

Entry	Description
Part 1. IT Investments by Mission Area	<p>Report amounts for IT investments that directly support an agency-designated mission area. Report each mission area in which IT investments are funded. This information should map directly to your agency's strategic and annual performance plan. For IT investments that cover more than one agency, report in the mission area with oversight of the IT investment. Mission area 01 is reserved for your "financial management" IT investments.</p> <p>Step 1: For each mission area, list each major IT investment and the corresponding investment costs. For BY only, if financial or mixed, identify what percentage is financial. For BY only, if IT security costs are included, identify what percentage of the total investment is IT security. If this IT investment supports Homeland Security (HS) goals and objectives (see section <a href="#">53.7</a>) provide the number for the HS mission area. Provide the development/modernization/enhancement and steady state costs.</p> <p>Step 2: For each mission area, list each non-major investment. If either of these has financial, mixed, or IT security, identify the appropriate percentages. If this system or investment supports Homeland Security goals and objectives (see section <a href="#">53.7</a>), answer yes.</p>
Part 2. IT Infrastructure and Office Automation	Each agency should have one business case (exhibit 300) that covers all office automation, infrastructure, and telecommunications for the agency. This section of the exhibit 53 should have one line item indicating the major investment Unique ID for this departmental/agency-wide investment. If you are unsure what investments should be included in this area contact your OMB representative for clarification.
Part 3. Enterprise Architecture and Planning	<p>Each agency should have one business case (exhibit 300) for the enterprise architecture (modernization blueprints) efforts. Any capital planning and investment control process investments may be reported separately in this section.</p> <p>Follow the step-by-step instructions outlined in Part 1.</p>
Part 4. Grants Management	<p>Report amounts for IT investments that support grants management operations.</p> <p>See classification instructions in section <a href="#">53.7</a> under Grants Management.</p>

These columns are required for the 2005 exhibit 53, Agency IT Investment Portfolio:

- Column 1: UPI
- Column 2: UPI used during the 2004 budget process if different than the 2005 UPI.
- Column 3: Investment Title
- Column 4: Investment Description
- Column 5: Prior Year Total Investment (2003)
- Column 6: Current Year Total Investment (2004)
- Column 7: Budget Year Total Investment (2005)
- Column 8: Financial Percentage
- Column 9: IT Security
- Column 10: Homeland Security Priority Identifier (select all that apply)
- Column 11: Development, Modernization, Enhancement (DME) (2003)
- Column 12: Development, Modernization, Enhancement (DME) (2004)
- Column 13: Development, Modernization, Enhancement (DME) (2005)
- Column 14: Steady State (SS) (2003)
- Column 15: Steady State (SS) (2004)
- Column 16: Steady State (SS) (2005)

**Sample Exhibit 53**

Note: Add a column to reflect the UPI from the 2004 Process.

UPI	Investment Title	Investment Description	Total Investment			Percentage		Homeland Security	DME			Steady State		
			PY	CY	BY	Financial	IT Security	Priority Identifier (select all that apply)	PY	CY	BY	PY	CY	BY
123-45-00-00-0000-00	Agency, Total IT Investment Portfolio (sum of all parts 1, 2, 3, 4)		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-00-0000-00	<b>Part 1. IT Investments by Mission Area</b> (subtotal for all mission areas under part 1)		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-0100-00	Title of mission area and subtotal for all major and non-major IT investments under the mission area		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-0110-00	Major IT investment title and total investment		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-0110-04	Funding Source		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-0110-09	Funding Source subtotal		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-020000-00	Non-major IT investment and total investment		X	X	X	X	X	X						
123-45-02-00-000000-00	<b>Part 2. IT Infrastructure and Office Automation</b> (subtotal for all investments under part 2)		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-02-01-011010-00	Major IT Investment title and total investment		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-011010-04	Funding Source subtotal		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-011010-09	<b>Part 3. Enterprise Architecture and Planning</b> (subtotal for all investments under part 3)		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-03-00-000000-00	Major IT investment title and total investment		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-03-01-011010-00	Non-major IT Investment and total investment		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-03-01-020000-00	Funding Source		X	X	X	X	X	X						
123-45-01-01-011010-04	Funding Source subtotal		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-011010-09	<b>Part 4. Grants Management</b> (subtotal for all investments under part 4)		X	X	X				X	X	X	X	X	X

123-45-04-00-0000-00	Major IT investment title and total investment		X	X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-04-00-02-1010-00	Non-major IT investment and total investment		X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-04-00-02-0000-00	Funding Source		X	X	X	X	X						
123-45-01-01-01-1010-04	Funding Source subtotal		X	X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X
123-45-01-01-01-1010-09			X	X	X			X	X	X	X	X	X

X in any position above indicates it is required for that type of investment.

## SECTION 54—RENTAL PAYMENTS FOR SPACE AND LAND

## Table of Contents

- 54.1 Do I need to report on rental payments?
- 54.2 What materials must I provide?
- 54.3 What terms do I need to know?
- 54.4 How do I prepare the space budget justification?
- 54.5 What supporting information must I provide?

Ex-54 Space Budget Justification

**54.1 Do I need to report on rental payments?**

If your agency obligates more than \$5 million annually for rental payments to GSA or to others (e.g., other Federal agencies or commercial landlords) for rental of space, structures and facilities, and land and building services, you must submit a space budget justification in the format of exhibit 54. OMB uses this information to evaluate your budget request for rent in the context of personnel and program changes (e.g., downsizing). The General Services Administration (GSA) uses this information to refine its estimates of rental costs. You should use this information to analyze your space requirements and rental costs.

For reporting purposes, *include* amounts for the services covered by the basic rental charge assessed by GSA as obligations for rental payments to GSA, but *exclude* amounts above standard services, such as overtime utility services. From GSA's monthly bill, use line D, "Total Annual Rental" plus, in some cases, line 14a "Billing Adjustments and Corrections, Current Year" to compare to the amount on the line "GSA rent estimate" of exhibit 54. These amounts are already *net* of obligations for the cost of operations in buildings where GSA has delegated authority for building operations. The cost of building operations in buildings whose operational authority is delegated should be budgeted in the appropriate object classes, such as 25.4, operations and maintenance of facilities. These costs should appear on exhibit 54.

Make your obligations for rental payments to GSA (Part 1 of exhibit 54) and your obligations for other space services paid to non-GSA entities (Part 2) consistent with data reported as rental payments under the appropriate object classes (see section [54.4](#)).

**54.2 What materials must I provide?**

You must submit an overall summary report in the format of exhibit 54 for the agency as a whole. This report provides a justification of your agency's budget request for rent. In addition, you must submit a separate report for each bureau or subordinate organization that makes rental payments. Submit a single agency-wide summary report if these costs are paid for centrally from one account.

*You must complete exhibit 54 using an electronic spreadsheet (Excel or Lotus) available from GSA (phone: 202-219-0370 or <http://hydra.gsa.gov/exhibit54>). The spreadsheet format includes inflation factors to calculate outyear estimates automatically and it generates total obligations for rental costs and funding sources.*

The report contains information for PY through BY+1 on:

- Rental payments to GSA, which reconciles the GSA rent estimate with actual, planned, and requested changes in inventory.

- Funding sources for these rental payments to GSA.
- Rental payments to others, both non-Federal and Federal sources.
- Supporting detail on all changes from the GSA rent bill or GSA estimates of rental costs (see section [54.5](#)).

Your submission must support your budget year request and list all applicable appropriations and/or other funding sources by account.

Report space requirements to the nearest square foot; state obligations in thousands of dollars and round to the nearest thousand. Where an amount falls exactly halfway in between, round to the nearest even figure (for example, both \$11,500 and \$12,500 round to \$12.) Do not identify amounts of \$500 or less.

Provide copies of these materials (electronic versions) to GSA (attention: OMBExhibit54@gsa.gov) at the same time you submit them to OMB.

### 54.3 What terms do I need to know?

*Agency* means departments and establishments of the Government, and *bureau* means the principal subordinate organizational units of an agency.

*GSA bureau code* means the agency/bureau code(s) recorded on the GSA rent bills or GSA budget estimates for each bureau making rental payments. (This number is *not* the same as the 2-digit OMB bureau code described in section 79.2 and Appendix C.)

*GSA rent estimate* means a document developed by GSA and sent to customer agencies once a year. This document provides budget year data on estimated assigned space and the associated costs of that space. It is used by GSA's customers for planning and budgeting purposes. You should use this year's GSA budget estimate (available this summer) to report the GSA rent estimate for the CY and BY.

*OMB-approved inflation factor* means the inflation factor used in the GSA budget estimate. Mid-Session Review inflation factors will be used for CY through BY+1. The electronic spreadsheet format provided to you will use these factors to automatically inflate certain outyear estimates.

*Chargeback (or adjustments to the bill)* means the process by which GSA's customers contest a GSA billing. If you claim a chargeback, you are required to complete a Standard Form 238, "SIBAC Adjustment Voucher For Chargeback" and provide supporting chargeback data justifying your claim.

### 54.4 How do I prepare the space budget justification?

The following table explains the information needed to prepare the space budget justification (see exhibit [54](#)). Exhibit 54 illustrates the summary page of the submission. There are five worksheets that contain the detail for the chargebacks, planned changes to inventory and the requested program changes. One worksheet is for the chargebacks, and there is one for each year in which to detail planned changes to inventory and the requested program changes (i.e., PY, CY, BY and BY+1). The summary justification consists of two parts:

- Rental payments to GSA (Part 1). (With the exception of the lines "Other adjustments," "Statutorily-imposed rent caps," and "Funding sources for Rental Payments to GSA," data in this part is derived by formula from five back-up worksheets); and

- Rental payments to others (Part 2).

Subtotals, totals, and certain other entries indicated in **boldface** will be automatically calculated (see exhibit [54](#)).

### INFORMATION REQUIRED FOR THE SPACE BUDGET JUSTIFICATION

Entry	Description
	<p>Report in dollars and to the nearest square foot on the individual worksheets. The totals will be automatically calculated for the summary page, with obligations rounded to the nearest thousand.</p> <p>Report net estimates of rental costs and square feet (i.e., net of any adjustments within the relevant category being reported).</p>
<b>PART 1. RENTAL PAYMENTS TO GSA</b>	In Part 1, include information on rental payments to GSA only. Report data on rental payments to others in Part 2.
GSA rent estimate	<p>For the chargeback and PY worksheets, report amount of the annual (i.e., full year) rental cost. To calculate the annual rental cost, use the monthly GSA bill with the same date as the date on the GSA rent estimate and multiply the rent estimate for the current month by the number of months remaining in the fiscal year and add this amount to the year-to-date rent estimate on the monthly bill.</p> <p>Report the total square feet in the monthly GSA rent bill with the same date as the date on the GSA rent estimate for the BY. (The monthly GSA bill reflects total square feet billed for the month.)</p> <p>For the CY worksheet, report the square feet and rent estimate reflected in the CY column of GSA rent estimate for the BY.</p> <p>For the BY worksheet, report the square feet and rent estimate reflected in the GSA rent estimate for the BY.</p> <p>Note: GSA will provide agencies with the supporting documentation for the BY rent estimate, as required.</p> <p>The electronic spreadsheet will calculate rent estimates for BY+1 automatically, using OMB-approved inflation factors. Estimates of square feet will be generated by the spreadsheet for BY+1 at the BY level.</p>
Actual adjustments to the bill Enter PY only	Report the net amount of any chargeback (resolved or unresolved) and actual changes in the inventory for the PY that has not been reflected in the monthly rent bill used above and the associated net square feet. This may include disputes over rates, space classifications, and current space requirements.
PY Worksheet planned changes in inventory	For the PY worksheet, report the net amount of approved and planned changes in the inventory and adjustments from the base month (as reflected in the GSA rent estimate) to the end of the fiscal year. Adjustments may be an increase or decrease from the monthly rent bill used above for PY.
Enter the inventory changes for the remainder of the year	Enter the square feet and the estimated annual rent under the "Agency Information" columns. Enter the effective date of the project. The annual change and the part-year change for rent are automatically calculated.

**SECTION 54—RENTAL PAYMENTS FOR SPACE AND LAND**

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
CY, BY and BY+1 worksheets	<p>For the CY, BY, and BY+1 worksheets, include the approved and planned changes in inventory and associated adjustments that are not reflected in GSA rent estimates, including projects in the pipeline.</p> <p>Enter the changes in the worksheet for the year in which the change will first occur. The worksheet will automatically generate outyear estimates.</p>
Requested program changes in inventory	<p>For CY, BY, and BY+1 worksheets, report inventory changes that will result from changes in programs that have been enacted by law, are reflected in the President's budget, and/or are included in your BY request to OMB.</p> <p>Enter the CY, BY, and BY+1 requested program changes in each corresponding worksheet. The worksheet will automatically generate outyear estimates.</p>
<b>Space budget justification—the summary worksheet</b>	
Other adjustments	Use this space to enter any other adjustments that are not included in the individual worksheets. Include an explanation of these items.
Statutorily-imposed rent caps	<p>Report only on those rental payments to GSA that you consider constrained for legal reasons. Include as a footnote the legal reference (i.e., public law citation).</p> <p>Supporting detail must be provided, as described in section 54.5.</p>
<b>Total, net rental payments to GSA</b>	The Space Budget Justification worksheet will automatically generate these totals.
<b>FUNDING SOURCES FOR RENTAL PAYMENTS TO GSA</b>	
Funded by direct appropriations:	List each direct appropriation that funds rental payments to GSA, by account title and identification (ID) code. Use a 9-digit ID code, that includes the OMB agency/bureau code, followed by the 4-digit basic account symbol assigned by Treasury (xxx-xx-xxxx) (see section <a href="#">79.2</a> ).
Account title and ID code	<p>For PY-BY+1, include the amount of obligations for rental payments to GSA that are funded from annual appropriations and permanent appropriations to general, special, and trust funds.</p> <p>If there are more than three accounts listed, change the electronic spreadsheet to add rows, as needed.</p>
<b>Subtotal, direct appropriation</b>	Report the sum of amounts of direct appropriations for a year for accounts listed. If more than 3 accounts are listed, change the spreadsheet formula to calculate the amount funded by direct appropriations.
Funded by other sources:	List all other sources of funding for rental payments to GSA (i.e., other than direct appropriation) by account title and ID code (described above).
Account title and ID code	<p>Include additional information on the line stub to identify the source of funding, as necessary.</p> <p>For PY-BY+1, include the amount of obligations for rental payments to GSA that are funded from reimbursements, other offsetting collections, and allocations.</p> <p>If there are more than three accounts listed, change the electronic spreadsheet to add rows, as needed.</p>



Entry	Description
<b>Subtotal, other funding sources</b>	Report the sum of amounts for other funding sources for a year for accounts listed. If more than 3 accounts are listed, change the spreadsheet formula to calculate the amount funded by other sources.
<b>Total, net rental payments to GSA (object class 23.1)</b>	Report the sum of amounts paid to the GSA Federal building fund for all funding sources (direct appropriations plus other funding sources) for a year for accounts listed. Report amounts that are consistent with obligations classified as "Rental payments to GSA" (object class 23.1). Make the totals for each year equal to the corresponding "Total, net rental payments to GSA" reported above (see exhibit <a href="#">54</a> ).
<b>PART 2. RENTAL PAYMENTS TO OTHERS</b>	In Part 2, report information on rental payments to Federal agencies other than GSA and to entities outside the Federal Government. Exclude data on rental payments to GSA, which are reported in Part 1.
Non-Federal sources (object class 23.2)	<p>Include obligations for possession and use of space, land, and structures leased from non-Federal sources (i.e., commercial landlords).</p> <p>Report amounts consistent with obligations classified as "Rental payments to others" (object class 23.2).</p>
Federal sources other than GSA (object class 25.3)	<p>Include obligations for payments to Federal agencies other than GSA for space, land, and structures that are subleased or occupied by permits, regardless of whether the space is owned or leased.</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Typically, with the approval of the Administrator of GSA, you may sublease your GSA-assigned space to another agency or bureau. In such cases, if you are the agency assigned the space by GSA, report rental payments for this space in Part 1 as "Rental payments to GSA". If you are the agency or bureau subleasing space from another agency or bureau, report payments for the sublease in Part 2 as "Federal sources other than GSA."</p> <p>Report amounts consistent with obligations for rental payments to Federal sources reported as "Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts" (object class 25.3).</p>
<b>Total, rental payments to others</b>	Report the sum of amounts as rental payments to non-Federal sources and to Federal sources other than GSA. Make the totals consistent with rental obligations classified in object classes 23.2 and 25.3.

#### 54.5 What supporting information must I provide?

Complete and submit all six worksheets of exhibit 54 that support the Space Budget summary page. For each change, include the GSA bureau code, the GSA building number (if known), city and State, type of action, effective date, square feet, and rent on the appropriate worksheet. For any program changes requested, provide supporting information that identifies the program initiatives related to the requested changes. In addition, provide a list that identifies major acquisitions, renovations, or consolidations required to implement agency planned space changes, as well as the timing, amount of work space, and cost of each action.

**Space Budget Justification**

Agency \_\_\_\_\_  
 Bureau \_\_\_\_\_  
 GSA Bureau Code \_\_\_\_\_

Shaded entries are automatically generated by the electronic spreadsheet.

Note: The PY GSA RENT estimate is based on the monthly rent bill with "date of inventory" that matches the GSA budget estimate for BY. CY and BY rent estimates are taken from the GSA budget estimates for the BY.

Round dollars to the nearest thousand, as required by section 54.2. Report space requirements to the nearest square foot.

**Department of Government**  
 (obligations in thousands of dollars)

	PY		CY		BY		BY + 1	
	Sq. Ft.	\$	Sq. Ft.	\$	Sq. Ft.	\$	Sq. Ft.	\$
<b>PART 1: RENTAL PAYMENTS TO GSA</b>								
GSA rent estimate.....	26,500,000	\$400,000	28,300,000	\$425,000	28,300,000	\$438,000	28,300,000	\$447,636
Actual adjustments to the bill:								
Chargebacks (PY only).....	-500,000	-\$4,000	-500,000	-\$7,500	-500,000	-\$7,658	-500,000	-\$7,826
Other adjustments.....								
Statutorily imposed rent caps.....								
Planned changes to inventory:								
PY.....	200,000	\$2,000	200,000	\$3,000	200,000	\$3,063	200,000	\$3,130
CY.....			100,000	\$1,200	100,000	\$1,500	100,000	\$1,533
BY.....					135,000	\$1,750	135,000	\$2,150
BY + 1.....							115,000	\$1,000
BY + 2.....								
Requested program changes:								
CY.....			115,000	\$1,000	115,000	\$1,700	115,000	\$1,737
BY.....					100,000	\$1,200	100,000	\$1,500
BY + 1.....								
BY + 2.....								
Total, net rental payment to GSA.....	26,200,000	\$398,000	28,215,000	\$422,700	28,450,000	\$439,555	28,565,000	\$450,860
<b>FUNDING SOURCES FOR RENTAL PAYMENTS</b>								
Funded by direct appropriations:								
Account title and ID code:								
Acct. 1 Salaries and expenses 016-10-1166.....		\$366,250		\$367,750		\$372,387		\$377,000
Acct. 2.....								
Acct. 3.....								
Subtotal, direct appropriations.....		\$366,250		\$367,750		\$372,387		\$377,000
Funded by other sources:								
Account title and ID code:								
Acct. 1 Water resources control 016-12-2650.....		\$31,750		\$54,950		\$67,168		\$73,860
Acct. 2.....								
Acct. 3.....								
Subtotal, other funding sources.....		\$31,750		\$54,950		\$67,168		\$73,860
Total, net payments to GSA (object class 23.1).....		\$398,000		\$422,700		\$439,555		\$450,860
<b>PART 2: RENTAL PAYMENTS TO OTHERS</b>								
Non-Federal sources (object class 23.2).....	24,000,000	\$290,000	25,000,000	\$300,000	22,900,000	\$275,000	22,900,000	\$275,000
Federal sources (object class 25.3).....	150,000	\$1,800	150,000	\$1,800	150,000	\$2,000	150,000	\$2,000
Total, rental payments to others.....	24,150,000	\$291,800	25,150,000	\$301,800	23,050,000	\$277,000	23,050,000	\$277,000

Dollar amounts for "Total, net rental payments to GSA" above should equal the corresponding entries at the end of Part 1. Supporting detail is required on each actual, planned, and requested change in inventory (see section 54.5).

Pursuant to section 83.12, only payments made directly to the GSA Federal buildings fund should be classified as object class 23.1. All other rental payments should be classified as object class 23.2 or object class 25.3.

## SECTION 71—REPORTING BY BUDGET ACCOUNT

**Table of Contents**

- 71.1 At what level of detail do I report MAX data, proposed appropriations language, and narratives?
- 71.2 How do budget accounts relate to Treasury accounts?
- 71.3 What do I need to know about changing account and budget structure?
- 71.4 How do I account for reimbursements?
- 71.5 How do I account for allocations?
- 71.6 When should I merge accounts?
- 71.7 When should I consolidate accounts?
- 71.8 What do I need to know about accounting adjustments under 31 U.S.C. 1534?

**Summary of Changes**

Guidance concerning alignment of budget accounts and programs is now covered in sections 51 and 82.

**71.1 At what level of detail do I report MAX data, proposed appropriations language, and narratives?**

Budget accounts are the basic building block of the President's Budget. You report data at the budget account level in the MAX A-11 system. Budget information is presented at the budget account level in the *Budget Appendix* and is aggregated to provide the totals in many tables in all volumes of the President's budget. In addition, budget accounts are the basis for congressional action on the budget. Section [79](#) contains more information about account structure and types of accounts. Receipt accounts are also included in the budget database and used to derive budget totals. Receipt data are printed in the *Budget Appendix* and reflected in printed budget summary tables.

You must update all the data in the MAX budget system and provide print materials for each budget account. Section [79.5](#) lists and describes the various MAX budget schedules, and section [95.4](#) lists the materials that will be printed in the detailed budget estimates by agency portion of the *Budget Appendix*.

**71.2 How do budget accounts relate to Treasury accounts?**

When Congress provides budget authority for a particular purpose or under a particular title, it also provides a specific period for which the budget authority is available for obligation. This period of availability may be annual, multi-year, or no-year. Treasury establishes appropriations and fund accounts based on the availability of the resources in the account. Treasury establishes separate accounts for each annual, multi-year, or no-year amount appropriated.

For presentation of information in the budget, appropriations and other types of budget authority provided to an account with the same or similar titles for the years covered by the budget are considered to be a single account under a single title. In addition, two or more Treasury accounts may be merged or consolidated for budget presentation purposes into a single budget account (see sections [71.7](#) and [71.8](#)). Note that this differs from budget execution requirements, where you must report data for each separate appropriation or fund account established by Treasury (see sections [79.2](#) and [130](#)).

### **71.3 What do I need to know about changing account and budget structure?**

You must obtain approval from OMB if you want to propose changes in account or organizational structure. These changes include the following:

- Establishment of new accounts (see section [79.3](#));
- Changes in account titles;
- Account mergers (see section [71.7](#));
- Account consolidations (see section [71.8](#));
- Changes in the presentation sequence of existing accounts (see section [95.3](#));
- New methods of financing programs;
- Changes in the activity structure used for the program and financing schedule (see section [82.2](#));
- Changes in functional, subfunctional, and receipt classifications (see section [79.3](#)); and
- Reorganizations.

Until requests are approved, base budget materials on the existing structure. If changes are approved, you must revise budget schedules and other materials accordingly. After requests for account mergers or consolidations are approved, you must ensure that they are reflected correctly on the Budget Account Title (BAT) file (see section [79.1](#)).

You should request approval for changes in budget structure by October 1, unless OMB specifies an earlier due date. If a change is dependent on pending decisions or results from late congressional action or other circumstances beyond your control, submit the request as soon as possible after October 1. If prospective internal reorganizations are likely to require budget structure changes, obtain OMB approval prior to implementing the reorganization.

### **71.4 How do I account for reimbursements?**

Include advances or reimbursements lawfully credited to expenditure accounts (including advances received under the authority of the Economy Act ([31 U.S.C. 1535](#) and [1536](#))) as spending authority from offsetting collections in the budget schedules of the receiving account. If the payments are from other government accounts, the paying account will include obligations in the amount of the payment in its schedules.

### **71.5 How do I account for allocations?**

Allocations are the amounts of budget authority and other resources transferred to other agencies or bureaus to carry out the purposes of the parent account that are placed in separate Treasury transfer appropriation accounts (see section [20.4\(1\)](#)). For the purposes of budget presentation, the budget schedules of the parent account will reflect these transactions as part of that account's regular activities. However, FTEs funded by allocations will be reported in the receiving account, not the parent account. Object class schedules and personnel summaries will identify allocations separately (see section [86.1](#) and exhibit [83A](#)).

### **71.6 When should I merge accounts?**

Sometimes, amounts from several accounts may be merged into a single account for budget presentation purposes:

- When two or more appropriation accounts are replaced by a single appropriation, amounts in the old accounts will be merged into the schedules for the single account.
- When it is desirable to merge several appropriations into a single account and to request budget year appropriations on that basis. The objective of account mergers is to permit flexibility in achieving program goals by managing and budgeting at a higher level of aggregation. However, this objective must be balanced against other needs, including the need for public disclosure and review and control by the President and Congress.
- Revolving fund feeder accounts, which are appropriation accounts whose budgetary resources are available only for transfer to specified revolving fund accounts, will be merged into the revolving funds to which they relate. Do not separately identify the amounts included in the feeder accounts.

#### **71.7 When should I consolidate accounts?**

You should consider consolidating accounts and submitting a single set of schedules for two or more accounts of a bureau (or an agency, when appropriations are not made by bureaus) for:

- Federal fund accounts for which no budget authority is anticipated after the past year;
- Permanent general and special fund appropriations that are used for similar purposes or where accounts contain small sums that have no direct bearing on programs financed by current appropriations; and
- Small trust fund accounts.

You should also consolidate below threshold accounts (that is, accounts with amounts of \$500,000 or less) with larger accounts. For this purpose, below threshold trust fund accounts may be consolidated with general fund accounts.

#### **71.8 What do I need to know about accounting adjustments under 31 U.S.C. 1534?**

When an appropriation is available to an agency to pay a cost that benefits another appropriation that is also available to pay the cost, [31 U.S.C. 1534](#) permits the first appropriation to be charged initially, as long as the charge is moved to the appropriation benefited before the end of the fiscal year. Do not report the initial charge and succeeding adjustment.



## SECTION 79—THE BUDGET DATA SYSTEM

Table of Contents	
79.1	What is the MAX system?
79.2	What should I know about account identification codes?
79.3	How do I establish new accounts?
79.4	How do I report data in MAX?
79.5	What are MAX schedules?
Ex-79A	MAX A-11 Technical Requirements for FY 2005 Budget
Ex-79B	Functional Classification

**79.1 What is the MAX system?**

The MAX budget system (MAX) is a computer system used to collect and process most of the information required for preparing the budget. MAX collects the budget data using a series of schedules that are sets of data within the MAX data base. Each schedule describes a view or slice of the President's budget. (See [exhibit 79A](#) for a description of the hardware and software required to support the MAX system.)

The system controls data entry through expenditure and receipt account titles and classifications that are assigned at the account level (see [section 71](#)). The Budget Account Title (BAT) file controls accounts for which data may be entered into MAX. Among other things, the BAT contains information on:

- The account title, as it will be printed in the budget;
- The Treasury and OMB identification codes;
- Subfunction classification;
- Budget Enforcement Act (BEA) category;
- Congressional subcommittee assignment;
- Type of account (e.g., trust, special, revolving);
- Whether more than half of the collections are user charges;
- Whether the account will finance payments to individuals;
- Whether the account is sequestrable or exempt;
- Whether the account has obligation limitations;
- For receipt accounts, the receipt type; and for offsetting receipts, character classification; and
- Where the account will be placed in the budget (see [section 95.3](#)).

If you need to establish a new account or make changes to an existing account, coordinate with your agency's OMB budget representative. OMB will make all changes or additions centrally. Use the information in [section 79.3](#) to ensure the information in the BAT file is complete and accurate.

Enter your budget data into the MAX schedules by account. An overview of all the schedules, with references to additional sections, is provided at [section 79.5](#).

MAX contains numerous crosschecks or error messages ("edit checks") to help ensure consistency of the data. [Appendix D](#) provides an explanation of the basic principles underlying MAX edit checks. In addition, [Appendix E](#) describes a number of diagnostic reports produced by OMB to ensure that the data

reported in the data base are consistent both within and between schedules and comply with standard budget concepts.

The MAX A-11 User's Guide is a comprehensive reference document that provides information on how to use MAX. It is available, upon request, from the Budget Analysis and Systems Division, OMB (phone: 202-395-6934 or 395-7517) or electronically from the MAX web site (see [exhibit 79A](#)). MAX training is also available upon request.

You will find up-to-date information on the MAX home page at:

<http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/max/>

This page is accessible to MAX users and requires both a user name and password as follows:

username: ombmax  
password: omb2000

This web site will include instructions for revising reprinted galley (see [section 95](#)). Another web site located at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/reports/> includes a listing of accounts with past year data loaded from the FACTS II reporting system (see [section 82.15](#)).

## 79.2 What should I know about account identification codes?

OMB, in consultation with the Department of Treasury, assigns account identification codes. These codes are used to store and access data in MAX, run computer reports, and identify accounts in OMB and Treasury documents and MAX computer reports. While you can access your accounts in MAX without knowing the account number, you are required to perform several steps that can be eliminated if you know the account number. Each account can be identified in several ways. For example, you can access your accounts in MAX by entering either the "OMB account number" or the "Treasury account number," but when you want to find your account in the [Treasury Combined Statement](#) Appendix, you must use the "Treasury account number" or the name of the account within the agency listing. Regardless of which number you use, familiarity with the following coding options is helpful.

- OMB agency code—Each department or independent agency has a unique three digit number assigned by OMB (see [Appendix C](#) for list).
- OMB bureau code—Each bureau within each department or major agency has an agency-unique two digit number assigned by OMB. Agencies that do not have distinct bureaus have a bureau code of "00" (see [Appendix C](#) for list). Most receipt accounts do not have a distinct bureau and have a bureau code of "00".
- Treasury agency code—Each agency also has a two digit number assigned by Treasury (see [Appendix C](#) for list).
- Account symbol—Each account has an agency-unique number assigned by Treasury or, in the case of merged or consolidated accounts, by OMB that corresponds to the fund type (e.g., general, special). For expenditure accounts this number is four digits, unless subaccount information is being reported (requires prior OMB approval); for receipt accounts this number is six digits. [Section 79.3\(b\)](#) lists the types of funds and coding.
- Transmittal code—Each account in MAX has a one digit code that identifies the nature or timing of the associated schedules as described below.

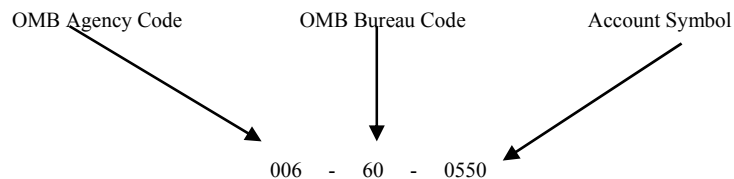


Transmittal Code	Title and description	Footnotes used in "Federal Programs by Agency and Account" listing in the budget.
0	Regular budget schedules.	
1	Supplemental proposal. Use only for requesting supplemental CY amounts.	A
2	Legislative proposal, not subject to PAYGO. Use for legislative proposals requiring authorizing legislation that are not subject to PAYGO. Do not use for routine reauthorization of agency programs.	J
3	Appropriations language to be transmitted later. Use only with prior approval of OMB when language for a significant policy proposal cannot be transmitted in the budget.	I
4	Legislative proposal, subject to PAYGO. Use for legislative proposals requiring authorizing legislation that have a PAYGO effect. Do not use for routine reauthorization of ongoing programs.	B
5	Rescission proposal. Use only for requesting rescission of CY amounts.	H
9	Reserved for OMB use.	

- Fund code—[Section 79.3\(b\)](#) explains fund codes.
- Subfunction code—OMB assigns each account a three digit code that corresponds to the account's subfunctional classification (e.g., national defense, income security, agriculture). (See [section 79.3\(d\)](#) and [exhibit 79B](#) for listing.)

The following example illustrates the various account code combinations for the Salaries and expenses account of the National Telecommunications and Information Administration of the Department of Commerce:

► **OMB account number**





## FUND TYPES AND CODES

Account symbol	Type of fund	Fund Code
0000–3899	General fund	1
5000–5999	Special fund	2
4000–4499	Public enterprise revolving fund	3
4500–4999	Intragovernmental revolving fund	4
3900–3999	Management fund	4
8000–8399 and 8500–8999	Trust non-revolving fund	7
8400–8499	Trust revolving fund	8
6000–6999	Deposit funds	N/A
F3800-F3899	Clearing accounts	N/A
90xx	<i>Assigned by OMB to designate allowances</i>	
991x–998x	<i>Assigned by OMB to designate consolidated accounts</i>	

In MAX data entry, the account symbol can be used to identify fund type. For allowances, "90" is used for the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> positions. In cases where two or more accounts with different account symbols are included in a consolidated schedule (see [section 71.8](#)), "99" is used for the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> positions, the 3<sup>rd</sup> position designates the fund type, and the 4<sup>th</sup> position uniquely identifies the consolidated schedules. OMB will assign the account symbols for allowances and consolidated accounts.

(c) *BEA category.*

For each expenditure or receipt account, OMB assigns a BEA category (e.g., discretionary, mandatory) that designates how the budgetary resources of the account will be classified for BEA purposes (see [section 81.3](#)). In cases where the account will contain resources classified in more than one BEA category, OMB will identify the account as a "split" account.

(d) *Functional and subfunctional classification.*

OMB normally assigns each new expenditure and offsetting receipt account a single subfunction code (see [exhibit 79B](#)). In rare cases, an appropriation account may be split between two or more subfunctions. If the subfunctions are in the same function, the code of the function is used (e.g., 500, 550, etc.). If two or more functions are involved, the code "999" is used. Annually, OMB consults with CBO and other relevant budget and appropriation committee staff members regarding functional and subfunctional classification. This process, which is required by statute, typically occurs from October through December (see [section 25.3](#)).

(e) *User charge classification.*

OMB designates whether any collections related to the account are user charges, as defined in [section 20.7](#). Receipts, offsetting receipts, and offsetting collections may be classified as user charges (see [section 81.3](#)).

(f) *Receipt type.*

Receipt accounts are classified either as governmental receipts or offsetting receipts (see [section 20.7](#)). The classification takes into account:

- The source of the receipt;
- The authority for the collection and the nature of the transaction; and
- Whether the receipt offsets agency or government-wide totals.

Each receipt account is assigned a receipt type (see [section 20.7](#) for definitions and classifications of receipts). If the receipts associated with a particular program have more than one classification, separate receipt accounts must be established for each classification.

(g) *Source category code.*

Each receipt type has a number of unique source category codes that enable MAX to produce tables needed for the Budget. OMB assigns the codes when a new receipt account is established by determining the receipt type for the account and selecting an appropriate program category within that receipt type.

**79.4 How do I report data in MAX?**

If you have computer access to MAX, you must use the system to submit your budget data. If data has already been entered for a particular account and transmittal code, you can retrieve and change the data using MAX. For a new account or transmittal code, you must create new MAX schedules before you can enter data. The User's Guide provides detailed instructions on how to create and edit MAX schedules. You can also use MAX to generate several diagnostic computer reports (see [Appendix E](#)).

If you do not have computer access to MAX, your agency's OMB representative will provide you copies of MAX reports containing the budget schedules. Write the revised data directly on these reports and provide them to your OMB representative.

**79.5 What are MAX schedules?**(a) *MAX schedules.*

The following table lists the MAX schedules that appear in the MAX computer reports and on the MAX computer screen:

**MAX SCHEDULES**

<b>MAX schedule</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>A-11 section number</b>
SCHEDULE A	POLICY ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY AND OUTLAYS	<a href="#">81</a>
SCHEDULE C	CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION	<a href="#">84</a>
SCHEDULE D	BUDGET PLAN	<a href="#">86.3</a>
SCHEDULE F	BALANCE SHEET	<a href="#">86.2</a>

MAX schedule	Description	A-11 section number
SCHEDULE G	STATUS OF DIRECT LOANS, PRESIDENTIAL POLICY	<a href="#">185.11</a>
SCHEDULE H	STATUS OF GUARANTEED LOANS, PRESIDENTIAL POLICY	<a href="#">185.11</a>
SCHEDULE J	STATUS OF FUNDS	<a href="#">86.5</a>
SCHEDULE K	RECEIPTS, BASELINE ESTIMATES	<a href="#">81</a>
SCHEDULE N	DATA ON UNAVAILABLE RECEIPTS	<a href="#">86.6</a>
SCHEDULE O	OBJECT CLASSIFICATION	<a href="#">83</a>
SCHEDULE P	PROGRAM AND FINANCING	<a href="#">82</a>
SCHEDULE Q	PERSONNEL SUMMARY	<a href="#">86.1</a>
SCHEDULE R	RECEIPTS, PRESIDENTIAL POLICY	<a href="#">81</a>
SCHEDULE S	BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY AND OUTLAYS	<a href="#">81</a>
SCHEDULE T	BUDGET YEAR APPROPRIATIONS REQUESTS IN THOUSANDS OF DOLLARS	<a href="#">86.4</a>
SCHEDULE U	LOAN LEVELS AND SUBSIDY DATA, PRESIDENTIAL POLICY	<a href="#">185.10</a>
SCHEDULE V	PERFORMANCE METRICS	<a href="#">85</a>
SCHEDULE W	GENERAL FUND CREDIT RECEIPT ACCOUNTS	<a href="#">185.13</a>
SCHEDULE Y	FEDERAL CREDIT DATA, BASELINE ESTIMATES	<a href="#">185.11</a>

(b) *Summary of MAX line code and other changes.*

The following table list changes that will affect the FY 2005 Budget:

#### MAX LINE CODE CHANGES

MAX schedule, line code, and title	Change
<i>Policy Estimates of Budget Authority and Outlays (A)</i>	
Sequester/exempt and user charge classifications are no longer required.	
<i>Character Classification (C)</i>	
1441-01 Direct costs to colleges and universities	Delete
1442-01 Indirect costs to colleges and universities	Delete
1451-xx Research performed at congressional direction	Delete
1452-xx Inherently unique research	Delete
1453-xx Merit-reviewed research with limited competitive selection	Delete
1454-xx Merit-reviewed research with competitive selection and internal (program) evaluation	Delete

**SECTION 79—THE BUDGET DATA SYSTEM**

<b>MAX schedule, line code, and title</b>		<b>Change</b>
1455-xx	Merit-reviewed research with competitive selection and external (peer) evaluation	Delete
1463-xx	Climate change science programs	Modify
<p>Related information will be collected on the allocation of research costs (old lines 1441-1455). See <a href="#">section 25.6</a>.</p>		
<i>Statement of Operations (E)</i>		
Schedule E is no longer required.		
<i>Status of Contract Authority (I)</i>		
Schedule I is no longer required.		
<i>Program and Financing (P)</i>		
xxxx.XX	Accounts with performance activities	Add
xx35	[Budget authority] permanently reduced (-)	Modify
xx36	Unobligated balance permanently reduced (-)	Modify
xx37	[Budget authority] temporarily reduced (-)	Add
xx38	Unobligated balance temporarily reduced (-)	Add
xx74-xx79	Reduction pursuant to P.L. xxx-xxx (-)	Delete
xx85	Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177 (-)	Delete
2230	Expired unobligated balance transfer to unexpired account (+)	Add
2441	Unobligated balance returned to receipts	Add
4053	Portion substituted for borrowing authority (-)	Add
9900	Budget authority [accruals]	Delete
9901	Outlays [accruals]	Delete
9301	Unobligated balance, start of year: Contract authority	Add
9302	Unobligated balance, end of year: Contract authority	Add
9303	Obligated balance, start of year: Contract authority	Add
9304	Obligated balance, end of year: Contract authority	Add
<i>Personnel Summary (Q)</i>		
xxx9	Memorandum entries [commercial versus inherently governmental activities]	Delete
<i>Baseline Estimates of Budget Authority and Outlays (S)</i>		
2140	Sequesterable unobligated balances (defense only)	Delete
9994	Outlays from sequesterable unobligated balances	Delete
Sequester/exempt and user charge classifications are no longer required.		

---

MAX schedule, line code, and title		Change
<i>Loan Levels and Subsidy Data, Presidential Policy (U)</i>		
1360	Upward reestimate subsidy outlays	Delete
1380	Downward reestimate subsidy outlays	Delete
2360	Upward reestimate subsidy outlays	Delete
2380	Downward reestimate subsidy outlays	Delete

---

**MAX A-11 TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS FOR FY 2005 BUDGET (Fall 2003)****Software Requirements:**

MAX A-11 Data Entry Application is supported on the following Operating System:

- Windows NT4.0 (with SP 6a)
- Windows 2000
- Windows XP

To access the EOP for MAX A-11 Data Entry, the following are required:

- A port must be open for secure web communication (https protocol);
- 128-bit (or better) encryption level for your web browser; and
- Up-to-date Trusted Root Certificate Authority.

**Getting the Software:**

The MAX A-11 Software for FY 2005 will be available for download and installation from the MAX A-11 Web Site:

<http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/max/>

\*Note that the site address is case sensitive. Please enter it exactly as shown into your Web browser.

The web site also contains general information regarding the status of the MAX system, an on-line MAX A-11 User's Guide, the hours of operation, who to call for help, schedules of classes, and scheduled deadlines as well as other pertinent MAX information and documents. If you do not have access to the Internet, you will be able to request a copy of the software on CD or diskette. More information regarding how to get the software will be forthcoming. Watch for details!

**About Your Password:**

For the FY 2005 President Budget, you will receive a temporary MAX password via E-mail from OMB. When you log on for FY 2005 Budget, you will use the temporary password to establish your permanent password. You may not repeat a previously used password. If you forget your permanent password, you can call the EOP Computer Support office at (202) 395-7370 for assistance.

**About Who to Call:**

Please keep the EOP Computer Support number handy! Those individuals serve as our front line support team and will refer your problem or question to the appropriate person. If you have questions specifically regarding the Technical Requirements for the upcoming Budget Season, please call EOP Computer Support, report your question and give a valid phone number where you or your Technical Support Staff can be reached.

**(202) 395-7370**



## FUNCTIONAL CLASSIFICATION

**050 NATIONAL DEFENSE**

- 051 Department of Defense-Military
- 053 Atomic energy defense activities
- 054 Defense-related activities

**150 INTERNATIONAL AFFAIRS**

- 151 International development and humanitarian assistance
- 152 International security assistance
- 153 Conduct of foreign affairs
- 154 Foreign information and exchange activities
- 155 International financial programs

**250 GENERAL SCIENCE, SPACE AND TECHNOLOGY**

- 251 General science and basic research
- 252 Space flight, research and supporting activities

**270 ENERGY**

- 271 Energy supply
- 272 Energy conservation
- 274 Emergency energy preparedness
- 276 Energy information, policy and regulation

**300 NATURAL RESOURCES AND ENVIRONMENT**

- 301 Water resources
- 302 Conservation and land management
- 303 Recreational resources
- 304 Pollution control and abatement
- 306 Other natural resources

**350 AGRICULTURE**

- 351 Farm income stabilization
- 352 Agricultural research and services

**370 COMMERCE AND HOUSING CREDIT**

- 371 Mortgage credit
- 372 Postal Service
- 373 Deposit insurance
- 376 Other advancement of commerce

**400 TRANSPORTATION**

- 401 Ground transportation
- 402 Air transportation
- 403 Water transportation
- 407 Other transportation

**450 COMMUNITY AND REGIONAL DEVELOPMENT**

- 451 Community development
- 452 Area and regional development
- 453 Disaster relief and insurance

**500 EDUCATION, TRAINING, EMPLOYMENT, AND SOCIAL SERVICES**

- 501 Elementary, secondary, and vocational education
- 502 Higher education
- 503 Research and general education aids
- 504 Training and employment
- 505 Other labor services
- 506 Social services

**550 HEALTH**

- 551 Health care services
- 552 Health research and training
- 554 Consumer and occupational health and safety

**570 MEDICARE**

- 571 Medicare

**600 INCOME SECURITY**

- 601 General retirement and disability insurance (excluding social security)
- 602 Federal employee retirement and disability
- 603 Unemployment compensation
- 604 Housing assistance
- 605 Food and nutrition assistance
- 609 Other income security

**650 SOCIAL SECURITY**

- 651 Social security

**700 VETERANS BENEFITS AND SERVICES**

- 701 Income security for veterans
- 702 Veterans education, training, and rehabilitation
- 703 Hospital and medical care for veterans
- 704 Veterans housing
- 705 Other veterans benefits and services

**750 ADMINISTRATION OF JUSTICE**

- 751 Federal law enforcement activities
- 752 Federal litigative and judicial activities
- 753 Federal correctional activities
- 754 Criminal justice assistance

**800 GENERAL GOVERNMENT**

- 801 Legislative functions
- 802 Executive direction and management
- 803 Central fiscal operations
- 804 General property and records management
- 805 Central personnel management
- 806 General purpose fiscal assistance
- 808 Other general government
- 809 Deductions for offsetting receipts

**900 NET INTEREST**

- 901 Interest on Treasury debt securities (gross)
- 902 Interest received by on-budget trust funds
- 903 Interest received by off-budget trust funds
- 908 Other interest
- 909 Other investment income

**920 ALLOWANCES**

- 921-929 Allowances [Assigned by OMB]

**950 UNDISTRIBUTED OFFSETTING RECEIPTS**

- 951 Employer share, employee retirement (on-budget)
- 952 Employer share, employee retirement (off-budget)
- 953 Rents and royalties on the Outer Continental Shelf
- 954 Sale of major assets
- 959 Other undistributed offsetting receipts

**999 MULTIFUNCTION ACCOUNT [used for accounts that involve two or more major functions]**



## SECTION 80—DEVELOPMENT OF BASELINE ESTIMATES

**Table of Contents**

- 80.1 What are the basic requirements?
- 80.2 What general rules do I need to know?
- 80.3 What rules apply to discretionary spending and collections?
- 80.4 What rules apply to direct spending programs?
- 80.5 What rules apply to mandatory collections?
- 80.6 What rules apply to mandatory supplemental requests?
- 80.7 What rules apply to discretionary limitations on obligations?
- 80.8 What materials must I provide in support of baseline estimates?

**Summary of Changes**

Incorporates requirement for information in support of baseline estimates previously included in section 100.2 (section 80.8).

**80.1 What are the basic requirements?**

OMB produces baseline estimates following the rules in section 257 of the Budget Enforcement Act of 1990 (BEA). These estimates are used for sequestration reporting purposes. Each agency, including the legislative and judicial branches, must submit estimates of budgetary resources, outlays, and receipts that project the CY levels into BY through BY+9, except as noted below. Government-sponsored enterprises do not have to submit baseline estimates.

Sections 80.2 through 80.7 describe the guidelines for developing baseline estimates. Report baseline data for all programs conducted under current law in the following MAX schedules:

- Schedule S for data on budgetary resources and outlays (CY through BY+9). See [section 81](#).
- Schedule Y for credit liquidating and financing accounts (CY through BY+4). See [section 185.11](#).
- Schedule K for receipts data (CY through BY+9). See [section 81.4\(e\)](#).

The law provides explicit instructions on how to develop the baseline estimates. Some apply to all baseline estimates. However, most rules are specific to two categories of collections and spending:

- Those that are controlled through annual appropriations acts (discretionary spending); and
- Those that are controlled through authorizing legislation (direct spending and receipts).

The classification of collections and spending (as discretionary or direct spending) follow the criteria specified in the BEA. Consult your OMB representative if you have questions concerning BEA classification.

**80.2 What general rules do I need to know?**

The baseline is a projection of the current year (CY) levels of budgetary resources, outlays, and receipts into the outyears based on laws already enacted. The following rules apply to all baseline estimates:

- *Legislative proposals.* Legislative proposals are considered to be changes from current law. Do not reflect their budgetary effects in the baseline estimates.
- *Supplementals.* Include only supplementals associated with mandatory programs in the baseline.
- *Regulations, management initiatives, and administrative actions.* Include the effect of these, including planned regulations that are not final, in the baseline estimates, as long as they can be implemented without further legislation.
- *Reductions pursuant to a sequester order.* Reflect CY reductions resulting from sequestration in the baseline estimates without separate identification.
- *Credit programs.* Base the estimates for credit programs on enacted appropriations of subsidy budget authority for direct loans and guaranteed loan commitments.

### **80.3 What rules apply to discretionary spending and collections?**

The BEA requires the baseline estimates for discretionary spending and collections to be based on the levels provided in the most recent appropriations act or full-year continuing resolution (CR). If a part-year CR is in effect, base the estimates on the annualized level of the CR. Except for advance appropriations, the most recent appropriations act or full-year CR is normally for the current year. The BEA provides special rules for estimating the baseline for BY through BY+9, when no appropriations have been enacted.

#### *(a) Current year base.*

Estimates will equal the enacted current year amounts reported in MAX schedules A and R for accounts under transmittal code 0. Exclude proposed supplementals from the estimates. Consistent with the BEA scoring rules, include the effects of enacted rescissions and transfers in the current year estimates. Score the rescission or transfer of unobligated balances to another account as a reduction in current year budget authority. Score transfers of unobligated balances into an account as increases in budget authority in the receiving account.

You must separate discretionary budgetary resources, except those related to spending authority from offsetting collections, into pay-related and non-pay portions. If you want to use MAX to calculate *mandatory outlays*, you must also separate mandatory budgetary resources into pay and non-pay portions. (See [section 81.3](#) for pay and non-pay definitions.)

#### *(b) BY through BY+9 baseline estimates.*

In most cases, baseline estimates of budgetary resources equal the most recent full year appropriation (generally the CY level), adjusted for anticipated inflation using factors supplied by OMB.

You must make special adjustments for assumptions about expiring housing contracts and social insurance administrative expenses. For the four BEA-specified accounts with social insurance administrative expenses (the Federal hospital insurance trust fund, the supplementary medical insurance trust fund, the unemployment trust fund, and the rail industry pension fund), report estimates of the beneficiary population in MAX schedule S on line 9993. Affected agencies should contact their OMB representative for guidance in developing estimates for expiring housing contracts.

In developing your discretionary baseline estimates, use the additional instructions provided in the following subsections, as appropriate:

- For advance appropriations, see subsection (c);
- For credit accounts, see subsection (d);
- For offsetting collections and receipts, see subsection (e);
- For multi-account appropriations, see subsection (f); and
- For accounts with negative budget authority, see subsection (g).

Outlays from budgetary resources provided prior to the budget year should be the same in the baseline and in the Presidential policy estimates, unless policy proposals restrict or accelerate spending from such balances. New budgetary resources generally should outlay at a rate that is consistent with Presidential policy spendout rates.

MAX will automatically calculate the baseline estimates for discretionary budgetary resources and outlays (including outlays financed by offsetting collections) in MAX schedule S based on:

- The level of CY budgetary resources entered into MAX by agencies;
- Outlays from end of PY balances entered into MAX by agencies;
- CY and BY spendout rates entered into MAX by agencies; and
- Pay-related and non-pay deflators entered into MAX by OMB.

[Section 81.2](#) explains how to enter information on outlays from end of PY balances and spendout rates into MAX.

*(c) Advance appropriations.*

If an account is completely funded through advance appropriations, the baseline estimate of new budgetary resources should equal the advance appropriation, not the CY inflated level. The last year of the advance appropriation becomes the base for calculating the baseline estimate for the remaining years, using the rules described in (b) above.

If an account is funded with both current and advance appropriations, inflate the current appropriation as described in (b) above; for the advance appropriation, follow the guidance in the paragraph above.

*(d) Discretionary credit accounts.*

The OMB subsidy model inflates CY subsidy budget authority using the annual adjustment factor for non-pay costs from the economic assumptions for the budget. The model derives subsidy outlays from the subsidy budget authority. The estimated subsidy rate for the BY should be a separate and distinct calculation from that done for the CY. The OMB subsidy model computes the subsidy rate using the economic assumptions for the budget. (See [section 185.5](#) for instructions on calculating baseline subsidy estimates, including programs with negative subsidies.) We do not collect baseline direct loan obligations and guarantee commitments.

*(e) Discretionary offsetting collections and receipts.*

The baseline estimates should be consistent with the levels of budgetary resources assumed for the account conducting the activity that generates the collections. When the level of collections is independent of the appropriated level, reflect the level of activity anticipated under current law.

*(f) Multi-account appropriations.*

If an appropriation covers more than one account and does not specify the amount provided for each account, such as the limitation on administrative expenses for the Social Security Act, the distribution of

the budget authority by account in the CY is the base for subsequent years. Inflate the CY amount by account to derive the budget authority for BY through BY+9.

(g) *Accounts with negative budget authority in the CY.*

- If the account has negative budget authority as a result of a rescission, reduction, or transfer of balances, estimate the budget authority for BY through BY+9 as zero.
- If the account has negative budget authority because the offsetting collections credited to the account exceed the spending authority from those offsetting collections (e.g., as a result of limitations on administrative expenses or repayments of debt), provide your best estimate of the *offsetting collections* under current law, and
  - ▶ If the *spending authority is controlled by appropriations*, project the authority using the guidance in section 80.3(b).
  - ▶ If the *spending authority from offsetting collections is indefinite*, reflect the level of activity anticipated under current law.

#### **80.4 What rules apply to direct spending programs?**

The BEA requires the estimates for budgetary resources provided in authorizing law and for appropriated entitlements to reflect the level of activity anticipated under current law, using the same economic and technical assumptions that are used for the Presidential policy estimates. Include the effect of changes to programs and activities directed by already enacted legislation (such as a change in a benefit formula that becomes effective in BY+2) in the year that the changes become effective. The following special rules apply:

- *Expiring authorizations.* Assume that programs that would expire under current law will expire, with one exception. If CY outlays are greater than \$50 million, assume the program will continue at current levels. However, assume an expiring provision of law (in contrast to the entire program) will expire if that assumption does not have the effect of terminating the basic program.
- *Veterans' compensation cost-of-living-adjustment (COLA).* Assume enactment of a COLA for veterans' compensation that is equal to the COLA required by law for veterans' pensions.

Affected agencies should contact their OMB representative for guidance.

The BEA requires that substantive changes to or restrictions on entitlement law or other mandatory spending law in appropriations laws (including changes in offsetting receipts or collections) be treated as changes in discretionary spending for the purposes of scoring those appropriations laws (see [Appendix A](#)). However, in the subsequent budget, OMB may decide to reclassify such changes, especially in accounts that are generally mandatory. If advised by OMB to reclassify the change, the mandatory spending entries for the account should reflect the change made in appropriations law. OMB will make a compensating adjustment to the discretionary caps.

#### **80.5 What rules apply to mandatory collections?**

Base estimates of mandatory receipts, offsetting receipts, and offsetting collections on current law. Also base collections affected by Federal pay rates on rates used for Presidential policy, not on the levels of compensation assumed in the baseline for the pay portion of discretionary accounts. The estimates should

assume that expiring provisions of law will expire, except that provisions providing for excise taxes dedicated to a trust fund will be assumed to continue at current levels.

#### **80.6 What rules apply to mandatory supplemental requests?**

Baseline estimates for mandatory supplemental requests will reflect *current year* baseline estimates of budget authority and the related outlays. Budget authority estimates for BY through BY+9 will be zero. However, you should reflect the spendout of current year budget authority, as appropriate, over the period BY through BY+9.

#### **80.7 What rules apply to discretionary limitations on obligations?**

Where limitations are established, including those established to report the effect of reductions pursuant to the G-R-H law, as amended (see [section 81.4](#)), provide baseline estimates of limitations for CY through BY+9

#### **80.8 What materials must I provide in support of baseline estimates?**

After final budget decisions, you must submit a table showing the impact on the baseline of estimates of:

- Major regulations;
- Expiring provisions of law;
- Caseloads for major mandatory programs;
- Management initiatives;
- Administrative actions; and
- Other major program assumptions included in the baseline.

Show the budgetary impact of each major assumption separately. For example, a change in outlays resulting from a regulatory change should be shown separately from a change resulting from the expiration of a provision of law. Consult with your OMB representative on the format and content of this table.





**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

**Table of Contents**

- 81.1 What are the basic requirements?
- 81.2 What information is automatically calculated?
- 81.3 What data classifications do I use to report the data?
- 81.4 What line codes do I use for schedules A, S, R, and K?
  - (a) Budgetary resources
  - (b) Limitations
  - (c) Offsets
  - (d) Outlays
  - (e) Receipts data

Ex-81A Relationships between Schedules A, K, P, R, and S

Ex-81B Setting Up Outlay Calculations

Ex-81C Setting Up Outlay Calculations—Resource with Multiple Outlay Rates

Ex-81D Automatic Generation of Discretionary Outlays in Schedule A

**Summary of Changes**

Drops sequestrable/exempt and user charge classifications from MAX (section 81.3).

Drops memorandum entries for the cost of fully accruing retirement costs (section 81.4).

Drops the requirement report limitations for direct and guaranteed loans (section 81.4).

**81.1 What are the basic requirements?**

MAX contains detailed information on budgetary resources, outlays, and receipts for *presidential policy* (schedules A and R) and *baseline* (schedules S and K).

- Presidential policy data covers the period PY through BY+9.
- Baseline data covers the period CY through BY+9.
- Schedules A and S are used to report on budget authority and outlays.
- Schedules R and K are used to report on receipts.

OMB uses this information to prepare the budget documents. The baseline estimates are also used for scoring PAYGO legislation under the Budget Enforcement Act (BEA).

You must submit policy data for all accounts except credit financing accounts and Government-sponsored enterprises. You must submit baseline data for the regular budget schedule (transmittal code "0") of all accounts except for credit financing accounts and Government-sponsored enterprises. You must also submit baseline data for supplemental requests (transmittal code "1") that are classified as *mandatory* (such as payments under entitlement programs). Do not provide baseline estimates for other transmittals (codes "2", "3", "4", "5"), unless specifically requested by OMB.

Use the guidance in sections 30-33 to develop the policy estimates. Use the guidance in [section 80](#) to develop the baseline estimates.

## 81.2 What information is automatically calculated?

[Exhibit 81A](#) describes the relationships between schedules A, K, P, R, and S and indicates which data MAX automatically generates.

### (a) *Automatic calculations and data loaded from Treasury.*

(1) *Outlays.* MAX automatically calculates *discretionary outlays (policy and baseline)* in schedules A and S for CY through BY+9 based on:

- The levels of budgetary resources reported;
- Outlay rates; and
- Outlays from end of PY balances.

You input outlays from end of PY balances as memorandum entries in schedule S and report outlay rates in schedules A and S using the separate MAX drop-down menu that is accessible for each budgetary resource, as described in the MAX A-11 User's Guide (see [exhibits 81B](#) and [81C](#)). MAX uses this information to automatically generate the outlays from balances that are reported on line 9x21 of MAX schedules A and S. To support the automatic outlay generation feature in MAX, you must enter information developed using the method of calculation (i.e., the waterfall method) that is specified in this Circular and the MAX A-11 User's Guide (see [exhibit 81D](#)). As a general rule, you cannot override automatically generated discretionary outlay amounts. If you need to reflect separate outlay rates (e.g., for enacted rescissions and reductions of unobligated balances, pay/non-pay) within an account, report the budget authority and corresponding outlays from end of PY balances using a line sequence number in the range 01-39.

If you want to generate separate discretionary outlays for certain programs within an account, report the budget authority and corresponding outlays from end of PY balances using a line sequence number in the range 40-79, as explained in the MAX A-11 User's Guide.

You can also use MAX's automatic outlay generation feature to calculate *mandatory outlays*. If you enter outlay rates in schedule S for mandatory resources, MAX will automatically generate the outlays in schedule S (baseline) and copy them to schedule A (policy). Remember to include information on outlays from end of PY balances if you use the automatic feature. You can override the automatically generated mandatory outlay amounts in schedule S.

### (2) *Budget authority and offsetting collections.*

- As a general rule, MAX automatically calculates *discretionary policy budget authority and offsetting collections entries* in schedule A through BY+9 for the years that are subject to across-the-board rules.
- MAX also automatically calculates *discretionary baseline budget authority and offsetting collections entries* in schedule S for BY through BY+9 based on the CY budgetary resources entered by the agency and inflation factors entered by OMB.
- For discretionary offsetting collections entries (lines 6890, 8800-8845), you may overwrite these amounts, if necessary, in schedules A and S.

(3) *Receipts.*

- Past year data will be loaded into schedule R from Treasury data. These amounts cannot be overridden.
- MAX automatically calculates *discretionary policy receipts* in schedule R through BY+9 for the years that are subject to across-the-board rules. You may overwrite these amounts, if necessary.
- MAX also automatically calculates *discretionary baseline receipts* in schedule K for BY through BY+9 based on the CY budgetary resources entered by the agency and inflation factors entered by OMB. You may overwrite these amounts, if necessary.

(b) *Data copied by MAX from one schedule to another.*

(1) *From schedule S to schedule A.* MAX automatically copies the following data from schedule S (baseline) to schedule A (policy):

- Mandatory budgetary resources (budget authority and limitations) for CY through BY+9.
- Mandatory outlays for CY through BY+9.
- Memorandum information on outlays from end of PY balances (lines 9x22).

To change the policy estimates for these entries, you must revise the baseline estimates. Because of the automatic copy feature, you may wish to enter or revise data in MAX by updating schedule S before updating schedule A.

(2) *From schedule K to schedule R.* MAX automatically copies the mandatory baseline receipts data (offsetting and governmental) you enter in schedule K to schedule R. To change the policy estimates, you must revise the baseline estimates. Because of the automatic copy feature, you should update schedule K before schedule R.

(3) *From schedule A to schedule P.* MAX aggregates gross outlay data from schedule A and copies it to lines 86xx in the program and financing schedule (see [section 82.5](#) and [exhibit 82](#)). To change amounts on lines 86xx in schedule P, you must change the outlay data in schedule A. Because of the automatic copy feature, schedule A must be updated before you can complete schedule P.

### 81.3 What data classifications do I use to report the data?

In schedules A, S, R, and K, you report data through BY+9 using the data classifications specified below. Multiple entries are required when more than one classification applies to a budgetary resource, limitation, offset, or outlay. When inserting or revising data, you choose the appropriate line number, BEA category, and other classifications from a list provided on the MAX screen. In schedules A and S, you may make non-print notations on stub entries to document information reported (e.g., to clarify the nature of data entered when multiple lines of the same type are used). See the MAX A-11 User's Guide for details.

MAX schedules A and S will be used to track spending on homeland security and overseas combating terrorism activities. For selected budget enforcement subcategories, MAX will prompt you to indicate whether the amounts should be further classified as:

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY, OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

---

- Homeland security;
- Overseas combating terrorism; or
- Regular.

**Homeland security** activities are focused on combating and protecting against terrorism. These activities may occur within the United States and its territories, or outside of the United States and its territories in support of domestically based systems or activities (e.g. visa processing). Such activities include efforts to detect, deter, protect against, and, if needed, respond to terrorist attacks. A complete definition can be found in the National Strategy for Homeland Security.

**Overseas combating terrorism** activities are focused on combating and protecting against terrorism and occur outside the United States and its territories. Such activities include efforts to detect, deter, protect against, and if needed respond to terrorist attacks.

**Regular** means those programs, projects, and other activities that are not classified as either homeland security or overseas combating terrorism.

**DATA CLASSIFICATIONS FOR SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K**

<b>Classification</b>	<b>Description</b>
SCHEDULE	Alpha character designation of the type of schedule in the MAX budget system that appears at the beginning of each schedule.
LINE NUMBER	For schedules A and S, a 4-digit code that indicates the data being reported (see section 81.4). For schedules K and R, a 6-digit code (xxxx–xx) that indicates the character classification (see <a href="#">sections 81.4</a> and <a href="#">84.4</a> ). A line number appears on each line for which data are provided.
SUBFUNCTION	For accounts with a single subfunctional classification (see <a href="#">section 79.3</a> ), you can enter data without specifying the subfunction; MAX automatically provides the subfunction designation. For multifunction accounts, you must enter data under each of the appropriate subfunctions.
CIVILIAN PAY/ MILITARY PAY/ NON-PAY  <i>Only applies to schedule S.</i>	<p>Indicates whether amounts are used to fund personnel compensation and benefits or other activities.</p> <p>Applies to baseline budget authority (other than spending authority from offsetting collections) and limitations.</p> <p><b>Civilian pay</b> means the amount of new budgetary resources used to fund personnel compensation and benefits for civilian personnel, consistent with the definitions for object classes 11.1 through 11.5 and 12.1.</p> <p><b>Military pay</b> means the amount of new budgetary resources used to fund personnel compensation and benefits for military personnel, consistent with object classes 11.7 and 12.2.</p> <p>Amounts designated as <b>pay</b> should reflect personnel compensation financed from discretionary budget authority or limitations only.</p> <p><b>Non-pay</b> means the amount of new budgetary resources not used to fund personnel compensation. Applies to mandatory budget authority even if it funds personnel compensation.</p>
BUDGET	Indicates:

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

Classification	Description
ENFORCEMENT CATEGORY/ SUBCATEGORY/ JURISDICTION/	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• BEA category (i.e., discretionary, mandatory, net interest, governmental receipt);</li> <li>• Subcategory (i.e., emergency, asset sales, third scorecard, modification to a mandatory account, conservation spending, highway, mass transit);</li> <li>• Jurisdiction (appropriations or authorizing committee); and</li> <li>• Whether the amount is for homeland security or overseas combating terrorism.</li> </ul> <p>Report data by the categories listed in the next table, "Summary of BEA Data Classifications." Use multiple entries if more than one classification applies to the budgetary resources and outlays in an account.</p> <p>Applies to all line entries <i>except</i> the number of beneficiaries (line 9993).</p> <p>In most cases, if an account is classified as discretionary under the BEA, you classify any spending authority from offsetting collections (line 6890), the offsetting collections from which they are derived (lines 8800–8896), and the outlays from the offsetting collections (line 93xx) as <i>discretionary</i>. Likewise, you classify these amounts as <i>mandatory</i> in accounts designated as mandatory under the BEA, except for administrative expenses, which are classified as discretionary.</p> <p>All discretionary resources are under the jurisdiction of appropriations committees. The classification for mandatory resources differentiates between appropriations and authorizing committee jurisdiction.</p>

**SUMMARY OF BEA DATA CLASSIFICATIONS**

If the resource is classified by the BEA as ...	And is controlled by the ...	And the following conditions apply ...	Then the data classification is ...
Discretionary	Appropriations committee	None of the conditions described below applies.	<p>DISCRETIONARY</p> <p><i>This category includes spending authority that requires appropriations committee action and the associated outlays, as well as receipts made available through action by appropriations committees in discretionary accounts.</i></p> <p><i>Do not use this category if amounts can be classified in any of the other discretionary categories described below.</i></p>
		The amounts include <b><i>proposed emergency funding</i></b> (i.e., funding that is proposed to be designated as emergency by the President and Congress in statute).	DISCRETIONARY, EMERGENCY
		Use for amounts from the Emergency Response Fund	<p><i>Only applies to new emergency funding proposed in the budget. Use only with OMB approval.</i></p> <p>DISCRETIONARY, TERRORIST RESPONSE</p>

SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)

If the resource is classified by the BEA as ...	And is controlled by the ...	And the following conditions apply ...	Then the data classification is ...
		established pursuant to P.L. 107-38 and other emergency funding provided in FY 2002 supplemental appropriations acts for response and recovery activities related to the September 11, 2001 terrorist attacks.	<i>Use only with OMB approval.</i>
		The amounts include <i>asset sales</i> enacted in an appropriations act that cannot be counted for BEA scoring (i.e., those where the net financial cost to the Government is a loss (see <a href="#">Appendix A, rule 15</a> )).	DISCRETIONARY, ASSET SALES <i>Use only with OMB approval.</i>
		The amounts are under the <i>discretionary highway category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Transportation Equity Act for the 21 <sup>st</sup> Century (P.L. 105-178).	DISCRETIONARY, HIGHWAY <i>Classify amounts in excess of the highway category spending cap as "discretionary" not as "discretionary, highway."</i>
		The amounts are under the <i>discretionary mass transit category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Transportation Equity Act for the 21 <sup>st</sup> Century (P.L. 105-178).	DISCRETIONARY, MASS TRANSIT <i>Classify amounts in excess of the mass transit category spending cap as "discretionary" not as "discretionary, mass transit."</i>
		The amounts are under the <i>Federal and State land and water conservation fund sub-category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2001 (P.L. 106-291).	DISCRETIONARY, CONSERVATION SPENDING, FEDERAL AND STATE LAND AND WATER CONSERVATION FUND
		The amounts are under the <i>State and other conservation sub-category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2001 (P.L. 106-291).	DISCRETIONARY, CONSERVATION SPENDING, STATE AND OTHER CONSERVATION
		The amounts are under the <i>urban and historic preservation sub-category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the	DISCRETIONARY, CONSERVATION SPENDING, URBAN AND HISTORIC PRESERVATION

SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)

If the resource is classified by the BEA as ...	And is controlled by the ...	And the following conditions apply ...	Then the data classification is ...
		<p>Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2001 (P.L. 106–291).</p> <p>The amounts are under the <i>payments in lieu of taxes sub-category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2001 (P.L. 106–291).</p>	<p>DISCRETIONARY, CONSERVATION SPENDING, PAYMENTS IN LIEU OF TAXES</p>
		<p>The amounts are under the <i>Federal deferred maintenance sub-category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2001 (P.L. 106–291).</p>	<p>DISCRETIONARY, CONSERVATION SPENDING, FEDERAL DEFERRED MAINTENANCE</p>
		<p>The amounts are under the <i>coastal assistance sub-category</i> of the BEA, as amended by the Department of the Interior and Related Agencies Appropriations Act, 2001 (P.L. 106–291).</p>	<p>DISCRETIONARY, CONSERVATION SPENDING, COASTAL ASSISTANCE</p>
		<p>Appropriations action modifies the spending authority or receipts in an otherwise mandatory account.</p>	<p>DISCRETIONARY, MODIFICATION OF A MANDATORY ACCOUNT</p> <p><i>Does not apply to baseline estimates. Use only with OMB approval.</i></p>
Mandatory	Appropriations committee	<p>None of the conditions described below applies.</p>	<p>MANDATORY, APPROPRIATIONS COMMITTEE</p> <p><i>Do not use this category if amounts can be classified in any of the other mandatory categories described below.</i></p>
		<p>The amounts include <i>emergency funding</i> (i.e., funding that is proposed to be designated as emergency by the President and Congress in statute).</p>	<p>MANDATORY, EMERGENCY, APPROPRIATIONS COMMITTEE</p> <p><i>Use only with OMB approval.</i></p>
		<p>The amounts result from proposed legislative changes to mandatory budget authority, outlays or receipts that are not scored as PAYGO or subject to discretionary limits under the BEA. Includes changes that</p>	<p>MANDATORY, THIRD SCORECARD, APPROPRIATIONS COMMITTEE</p> <p><i>Does not apply to schedules K or S.</i></p>

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY, OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

<b>If the resource is classified by the BEA as ...</b>	<b>And is controlled by the ...</b>	<b>And the following conditions apply ...</b>	<b>Then the data classification is ...</b>
		are "level of effort" changes, or when the level of receipts is dependent upon the amount of annual appropriations.	
	Authorizing committee	None of the conditions described below applies.	MANDATORY, AUTHORIZING COMMITTEE  <i>Do not use this category if amounts can be classified in any of the other mandatory categories described below.</i>
		The amounts include <b>emergency funding</b> (i.e., funding that is proposed to be designated as emergency by the President and Congress in statute.)	MANDATORY, EMERGENCY, AUTHORIZING COMMITTEE  <i>Use only with OMB approval.</i>
		The amounts include <b>asset sales</b> that are enacted in an authorization act that cannot be counted for BEA scoring (i.e., those where the net financial cost to the Government is a loss (see Appendix A, rule 15)).	MANDATORY, ASSET SALES, AUTHORIZING COMMITTEE  <i>Use only with OMB approval.</i>
		The amounts result from proposed legislative changes to mandatory budget authority, outlays, or receipts that are not scored as PAYGO or subject to discretionary limits under the BEA.	MANDATORY, THIRD SCORECARD, AUTHORIZING COMMITTEE  <i>Does not apply to schedules K or S.</i>
Net interest		None of the conditions described below applies.	NET INTEREST  <i>Applies to budget authority, outlays, and offsetting receipts included in the net interest functions (function 900).</i>
		The amounts result from proposed legislative changes to interest budget authority, outlays, or receipts under authorizing committee jurisdiction that are not scored as PAYGO or subject to discretionary limits under the BEA.	NET INTEREST, THIRD SCORECARD  <i>Does not apply to schedules K or S.</i>
Governmental receipts	Authorizing committee	None of conditions described below applies.	GOVERNMENTAL RECEIPTS  <i>Applies to governmental receipts in</i>



SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)

If the resource is classified by the BEA as ...	And is controlled by the ...	And the following conditions apply ...	Then the data classification is ...
			<i>schedules K and R.</i>
		The amounts result from proposed legislative changes to Governmental receipts under authorizing committee jurisdiction that are not scored as PAYGO or subject to discretionary limits under the BEA.	GOVERNMENTAL RECEIPTS, THIRD SCORECARD <i>Applies to governmental receipts in schedule R; does not apply to schedule K.</i>
	Appropriations committee	The amounts result from appropriations action modifying Governmental receipts.	DISCRETIONARY MODIFICATION OF GOVERNMENTAL RECEIPTS <i>Applies to governmental receipts in schedule R; does not apply to schedule K. Use only with OMB approval.</i>

**81.4 What line codes do I use for A, S, R, and K?**

(a) *Budgetary resources.*

The line numbers indicate the type of budgetary resource and whether it is discretionary or mandatory. The following table indicates the line numbers used to report budgetary resources. The lines apply to schedules A and S unless otherwise specified.

**BUDGETARY RESOURCES\***

Entry	Description
4300–5590	<b>Discretionary budget authority.</b> Use total lines (lines 4300, 4790, 4990, 5300, 5590) to report the appropriate amounts from the program and financing schedule for each applicable type of authority (see <a href="#">section 82.3</a> ). Use separate lines to report rescissions and reductions of unobligated balances if a different outlay rate is needed.
6250–6790	<b>Mandatory budget authority.</b> Use total lines (lines 6250, 6390, 6590, 6690, or 6790) to report the appropriate amounts from the program and financing schedule for each applicable type of authority (see <a href="#">section 82.3</a> ).
6890	<b>Discretionary spending authority from offsetting collections.</b> Use line 6890 to report the appropriate amounts from the program and financing schedule (see <a href="#">section 82.3</a> ).
6990	<b>Mandatory spending authority from offsetting collections.</b> Use line 6990 to report the appropriate amounts from the program and financing schedule (see <a href="#">section 82.3</a> ).
700x <i>Memorandum entry</i>	<b>Limitations.</b> Amount of the limitation where “x” indicates the specific limitation involved. Includes enacted or proposed limitations on obligations or administrative expenses. See <a href="#">section 81.4(b)</a> for the coding scheme for limitations.

Mandatory budget authority that is subject to a discretionary limitation on obligations

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY, OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

Entry	Description
	established in an appropriations act is scored as discretionary budget authority rather than as a limitation for all affected accounts except trust fund accounts in the Department of Transportation.
9993 <i>Memorandum entry</i> <i>Only applies to schedule S</i>	<b>Number of beneficiaries (in thousands).</b> Report the annual average number of beneficiaries that are served by Federal hospital insurance, supplementary medical insurance, unemployment insurance, and rail industry pension fund programs. MAX uses these data to generate discretionary baseline budget authority for administrative expenses for these programs.

\*Do not report baseline data (schedule S) for the PY.

(b) *Limitations.*

MAX includes data on limitations for selected accounts where limitations on program level or administrative expenses are enacted or proposed. Limitation lines are also used, with OMB approval, for special purposes, such as to report information on mandatory administrative expenses for the social security and medicare trust funds.

The limitation(s) applicable to an account must be specified on the BAT file (see [section 79.1](#)) before you can report limitation data in MAX. When more than one limitation is applicable, report each one separately. Present any supplemental requests involving limitations in a schedule under a separate transmittal code, even if a separate program and financing schedule is not required. Limitation lines apply to schedules A and S.

(c) *Offsets.*

Provide data on offsetting collections (i.e., cash credited to the account) and changes in receivables and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources for all accounts with spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890 or 6990). The following table indicates the line numbers used to report offsets. The lines apply to schedules A and S.

**OFFSETS\***

Entry	Description
	Offsetting collections (cash) from: (see <a href="#">section 82.6</a> for line definitions)
8800	Federal sources
8820	Interest on Federal securities
8825	Interest on uninvested funds
8840	Non-Federal sources
8845	Offsetting governmental collections (from non-Federal sources)

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

Entry	Description
8895	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired
8896	Portion of cash collections credited to expired accounts (-)

\* Do not report baseline data (schedule S) for the PY.

(d) *Outlays.*

For discretionary programs, you must report outlays from end of PY balances as memorandum (non-add) entries in schedule S through BY+9. MAX will automatically copy this information to schedule A and use it (along with the outlay rates you provide) to calculate discretionary policy and baseline outlay estimates. Specifically, MAX will use the data entered for these memorandum entries (lines 9122, 9322, or 9822) to calculate the corresponding outlays from balances (lines 9121, 9321, and 98xx). If you enter these data for mandatory programs, along with outlay rates, MAX will calculate the corresponding outlays. However, you may override and change the automatically calculated mandatory outlays.

The total gross outlays reported for PY through BY in schedule A (i.e., the sum of lines 91xx through 98xx, excluding memorandum entries) must be consistent with those reported in MAX schedule P on line 7320. The distribution of PY outlays between those from new budget authority and those from balances of prior authority should be available from accounting records. Estimate the distribution of outlays for CY through BY+9 between those from new budget authority and those from balances based on experience in the timing of outlays for the respective obligations.

The following table indicates the line numbers used to report outlays. The lines apply to schedules A and S unless otherwise specified.

**OUTLAYS\***

Entry	Description
9111	<p><b><i>Outlays from new authority.</i></b> The outlays from new budget authority for that year. These outlays may not exceed the sum of budget authority entries in the program and financing schedule (lines 40xx through 67xx) for that year.</p> <p>Exclude outlays from new limitations reported on line 97xx and outlays from new spending authority from offsetting collections reported on line 93xx.</p>
9121	<p><b><i>Outlays from balances.</i></b> The outlays from balances (both obligated and unobligated) of budget authority brought forward from the previous year. The sum of outlays on lines 9121 and 9221 may not exceed balances at the start of the year (lines 2140 and 7240 of schedule P), plus or minus adjustments in those balances during the year (lines 2221, 2222, 7331, 7332, and 7340 of schedule P).</p> <p>Exclude outlays from prior limitations reported on line 98xx and outlays from balances of spending authority from offsetting collections reported on line 9321.</p>

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY, OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
9122 <i>Memorandum entry</i>	<p><b><i>Outlays from end of PY balances.</i></b> The outlays that will occur each year (CY-BY+9) from balances of budget authority made available prior to the current year. Do not report outlays from new budget authority provided in CY-BY+9.</p> <p>Include outlay impact (+ or –) of balance transfers (lines 2221, 2222, 7331, 7332 in schedule P) and adjustments in expired accounts (line 7340 in schedule P).</p> <p>Exclude outlays from end of PY balances of prior limitations reported on line 9822 and outlays from end of PY balances of prior spending authority from offsetting collections reported on line 9322.</p> <p>MAX will copy the data entered in schedule S to schedule A and use it to calculate discretionary outlays from balances on line 9121.</p>
9311	<p><b><i>Outlays from new spending authority from offsetting collections.</i></b> The outlays from new spending authority from offsetting collections becoming available in that year. These outlays cannot exceed the total amount reported on lines 68xx and 69xx of the program and financing schedule for that year.</p>
9321	<p><b><i>Outlays from balances of spending authority from offsetting collections.</i></b> The outlays from balances (both obligated and unobligated) of spending authority brought forward from a previous year.</p>
9322 <i>Memorandum entry</i>	<p><b><i>Outlays from end of PY balances of spending authority from offsetting collections.</i></b> The outlays that will occur each year (CY-BY+9) from balances of spending authority from offsetting collections made available prior to the current year. Do not report outlays from new spending authority provided in CY through BY+9.</p> <p>Include outlay impact (+ or –) of balance transfers (lines 2221, 2222, 7331, 7332 in schedule P) and adjustments in expired accounts (line 7340 in schedule P).</p> <p>Exclude outlays from end of PY balances of budget authority reported on line 9122 and outlays from end of PY balances of prior limitations reported on line 9822.</p> <p>MAX will copy the data entered in schedule S to schedule A and use it to calculate discretionary outlays from balances on line 9321.</p>
970X	<p><b><i>Outlays from new limitations.</i></b> The outlays from new limitations (i.e., outlays from limitations in the year the limitations were enacted or proposed), where "X" indicates the specific limitation involved. Include outlays from spending authority from offsetting collections that are controlled through new limitations.</p>
980X	<p><b><i>Outlays from prior limitations.</i></b> The outlays from prior limitations (i.e., outlays from limitations that were enacted in prior years), where "X" indicates the specific limitation involved. Include outlays from spending authority that are controlled through prior limitations.</p>
9822 <i>Memorandum entry</i>	<p><b><i>Outlays from end of PY balances of prior limitations.</i></b> The outlays that will occur each year (CY-BY+9) from balances of limitations that were enacted prior to the current year. Do not report outlays from limitations enacted or proposed for CY through BY+9.</p> <p>Exclude outlays from end of PY balances of budget authority reported on line 9122 and outlays from end of PY balances of spending authority from offsetting collections reported on line 9322.</p> <p>MAX will copy the data entered in schedule S to schedule A and use it to calculate discretionary outlays from prior limitations balances on line 98xx.</p>

\*Do not report baseline data (schedule S) for the PY.

**SECTION 81—POLICY AND BASELINE ESTIMATES OF BUDGET AUTHORITY,  
OUTLAYS, AND RECEIPTS (SCHEDULES A, S, R, AND K)**

---

(e) Receipts data

You must report data on all collections deposited in receipt accounts (i.e., receipts and offsetting receipts) in schedules R and K. The line numbers for offsetting receipts are also used to designate receipt character classification (see [section 84.4](#)). Only one character classification (line number) is valid for each receipt account and that information must be specified on the BAT file (see section 79.1) before you can report the character classification data for the applicable account. The following table indicates the line numbers used to report receipts in schedules K and R:

**RECEIPTS\***

Entry	Title	Description
0000-00	<i>Receipts</i>	Report all collections classified as governmental receipts (see <a href="#">section 20.7</a> ).
	<i>Offsetting receipts:</i>	Report all offsetting receipts based on the character classification of the receipts (see <a href="#">section 84.4</a> ). <i>Most offsetting receipts will be reported on line 2004-03.</i>
1330-03	Proceeds from sale of commodities	
1340-03	Receipts from sales of property or assets	
1352-03	Receipts from other physical assets	
1512-03	Receipts for education and training	
2004-03	All other offsetting receipts	

\*Baseline data (schedule K) are not reported for the PY.

## Relationships Between Schedules A, K, P, R, and S

This exhibit provides some basic tips for updating MAX. Although there are many ways to revise the database, the following approach takes advantage of the automatic copy features in MAX.

In updating the database, agencies usually complete the PY column before entering data for CY and beyond. As a general rule, users should update PY data in schedule P and, since MAX copies some schedule A data to schedule P, revise the PY column of schedule A before updating other data. For CY through BY+9, users should revise schedule S before updating schedule A, since MAX copies some schedule A data from schedule S. Likewise, since MAX copies some schedule K data to schedule R, update schedule K before schedule R.

### SCHEDULE P (PROGRAM AND FINANCING SCHEDULE)

#### For PY:

- Obligations, balances, and outlays are automatically loaded into the obligations line (1000), balance lines (2140, 2440, 7240, and 7440), and net outlays line (9000) from the *FACTS II*.<sup>1</sup>
- Other data (e.g., appropriations, reductions, etc.) should be consistent with the corresponding data reported to Treasury via *FACTS II*.
- End of year balances are copied to the CY column and provide a good starting point for beginning to revise the detail in this column. Note that gross outlay data for schedule P (lines 86xx) are imported from schedule A; they cannot be entered directly in schedule P.

Before updating CY and BY, agencies may wish to revise schedules S and A, as follows.

### SCHEDULE S (BASELINE BUDGET AUTHORITY AND OUTLAYS)

#### For CY-BY+9:

- Mandatory baseline budget authority, limitations, and outlays reported under transmittal code 0 must be entered in schedule S and are copied to schedule A.
- You may use MAX to calculate mandatory baseline outlays through BY+9. Enter the mandatory budgetary resources for CY through BY+9, CY and BY outlay rates, and outlays from end of PY balances of mandatory resources (9x22) to generate mandatory baseline outlays.
- MAX calculates discretionary baseline budget authority, offsetting collections, and outlays through BY+9. Enter CY discretionary budgetary resources, CY and BY outlay rates, and outlays from end of PY balances of discretionary budgetary resources to generate discretionary baseline estimates. Users may overwrite the amounts for offsetting collections (lines 6890 and 8800-8845).
- Outlays from end of PY balances of budgetary resources (lines 9x22) are copied to schedule A. MAX uses these data to calculate discretionary outlays from balances (lines 9x21) in schedules A and S.

### SCHEDULE A (POLICY BUDGET AUTHORITY AND OUTLAYS)

#### For PY:

- Enter data for mandatory and discretionary policy estimates directly into schedule A.

#### For CY-BY+9:

- Mandatory policy estimates in schedule A are copied from schedule S; to revise amounts in schedule A, change the amounts in schedule S<sup>2</sup>.
- MAX calculates discretionary policy budget authority as well as offsetting collections entries for BY+1 through BY+9. Users may overwrite the amounts for offsetting collections (lines 6890 and 8800-8845).
- MAX calculates discretionary policy outlays through BY+9. Enter discretionary budgetary resources through BY and CY and BY outlay rates. Outlays from end of PY balances of discretionary resources (lines 9x22) must be entered in schedule S, are copied to schedule A, and are used to calculate discretionary policy outlays from balances (lines 9x21).

#### For PY-BY:

- Outlay data in schedule A will be copied to lines 86xx in schedule P.

### SCHEDULE K (BASELINE RECEIPTS)

#### For CY-BY+9:

- Mandatory current law baseline receipts must be entered in schedule K under transmittal code 0 and are copied to schedule R.
- Other baseline receipts entered in schedule K are not copied to schedule R.

### SCHEDULE R (POLICY RECEIPTS)

#### For PY:

- PY receipt data are automatically loaded in receipt accounts from Treasury data.<sup>1</sup>

#### For CY-BY+9:

- Mandatory current law policy receipts in schedule R are copied from schedule K; to revise amounts in schedule R, change the amounts in schedule K.<sup>2</sup>
- MAX calculates discretionary policy offsetting receipts for BY+1 through By+9 (based on policy growth rates). Users may overwrite these amounts.
- Other policy receipts can be entered directly to schedule R.

<sup>1</sup>PY data on these lines cannot be revised by agencies. If an agency does not agree with the obligations, balances, net outlay or receipt amounts loaded into MAX, an explanation of the differences should be submitted to the agency's OMB representative (see [section 82.15](#)).

<sup>2</sup>Applies to transmittal code 0 only. Data for other transmittal codes are entered directly in schedule A or R, as appropriate.

### Setting Up Outlay Calculations

S-4300 01 Appropriation (total) Discretionary						
	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Year 6
CY Rates <sup>1</sup>	5.155	44.43	20.16	13.87	10.88	2.85
BY Rates <sup>2</sup>	10.12	54.13	20.10	10.83	1.50	1.32
	Year 7	Year 8	Year 9	Year 10	Year 11	Total <sup>3</sup>
CY Rates <sup>1</sup>	1.15	.75	.50	.25	.005	100.0
BY Rates <sup>2</sup>	1.05	.90	.05	---	---	100.0

S-6890 01 Spending authority from offsetting collections (total) Discretionary						
	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Year 6
CY Rates <sup>1</sup>	100.0	---	---	---	---	---
BY Rates <sup>2</sup>	95.0	5.00	---	---	---	---
	Year 7	Year 8	Year 9	Year 10	Year 11	Total <sup>3</sup>
CY Rates <sup>1</sup>	---	---	---	---	---	100.0
BY Rates <sup>2</sup>	---	---	---	---	---	100.0

<sup>1</sup> Enter the outlay rates for the budgetary resources provided in the current year. For this purpose, Year 1 represents CY, Year 2 represents BY, etc. Outlay rates must be provided for each type of budgetary resource. *Amounts will be reported as percentages, with the option to include up to six decimal places.*

<sup>2</sup> Enter the outlay rates for the budgetary resources provided in the budget year. For this purpose, Year 1 represents BY, Year 2 represents BY+1, etc. Outlay rates must be provided for each type of resource. *Amounts will be reported as percentages, with the option to include up to six decimal places.*

<sup>3</sup> Outlay rates should total 100 percent unless the budget authority does not spend out within eleven years; the total should never exceed 100 percent.

*Note: Agencies have the option of using MAX to automatically calculate mandatory outlays.*

Setting Up Outlay Calculations -- Resource with Multiple Outlay Rates

Use multiple line sequence numbers when you have multiple outlay rates (e.g., reductions or rescissions of unobligated balances) or want to generate separate outlay data (see Exhibit 81D).

BA, Limitations, and Outlays--Baseline (S)  
 4300 01 Appropriations (total)  
 Discretionary \*\*OL Rates\*\*  
 Non-Pay

PY	CY	BY	BY+1	BY+2	BY+3	BY+4	BY+5
	8,098	8,341	8,600	8,866	9,141	9,424	9,820

Estimates for BY+6 through BY+9 can be viewed by scrolling across the MAX screen.

Outlay rates (entered for line 4300 01) for non-pay. Outlay rates are entered from the EDIT SETUP OUTLAY CALCULATION menu.

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Year 6
CY Rates:	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00
BY Rates:	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00
	Year 7	Year 8	Year 9	Year 10	Year 11	Total
CY Rates:	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00	---	100.00
BY Rates:	10.00	10.00	10.00	10.00	---	100.00

4300 02 Appropriations (total)  
 Discretionary \*\*OL Rates\*\*  
 Civilian-Pay

PY	CY	BY	BY+1	BY+2	BY+3	BY+4	BY+5
	23,296	24,438	25,464	26,533	27,648	28,809	30,019

Estimates for BY+6 through BY+9 can be viewed by scrolling across the MAX screen.

Outlay rates (entered for line 4300 02) for civilian pay. Outlay rates are entered from the EDIT SETUP OUTLAY CALCULATION menu.

	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Year 6
CY Rates:	85.00	15.00	---	---	---	---
BY Rates:	85.00	15.00	---	---	---	---
	Year 7	Year 8	Year 9	Year 10	Year 11	Total
CY Rates:	---	---	---	---	---	100.00
BY Rates:	---	---	---	---	---	100.00



### Automatic Generation of Discretionary Outlays in Schedule A

To generate outlays automatically, enter discretionary budgetary resources and outlay rates in schedule A and enter outlays from end of PY balances in schedule S, which MAX then copies to schedule A

Budget authority reported under line sequence numbers 01-39 are rolled up into a single outlay entry with a line sequence number of 01 for each BEA category. To generate separate discretionary outlay data for programs within an account, report the corresponding budget authority using a line sequence number in the range 40-79.

On line 9111, MAX calculates outlays using the first year outlay rate for new discretionary budget authority (line 4300) reported for the year.

BA, Limitation and Outlays---Policy A	PY	CY	BY	BY+1	BY+2	BY+3	BY+4	BY+5	BY+6	BY+7	BY+8	BY+9
4300 01 751 Appropriation Discretionary **OL Rates**	40	45	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50	50
9111 751 Outlays from new authority discretionary	8	9	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
9121 751 Outlays from balances discretionary	14	14	22	34	39	33	40	40	40	40	40	40
Line 9121 is comprised of:												
Outlays from end of PY balances	n/a	14.0	6.0	12.0								
Spendout of CY balances			15.8	6.8	13.5							
Spendout of BY balances				15.0	10.0		7.5					
Spendout of BY+1 balances					15.0	10.0	7.5					
Spendout of BY+2 balances						15.0	10.0	7.5	7.5			
Spendout of BY+3 balances							15.0	10.0	7.5	7.5		
Spendout of BY+4 balances								15.0	10.0	7.5	7.5	
Spendout of BY+5 balances									15.0	10.0	7.5	7.5
Spendout of BY+6 balances										15.0	10.0	7.5
Spendout of BY+7 balances											15.0	10.0
Spendout of BY+8 balances												15.0
9122 751 Outlays from end of PY balances discretionary		14	6	12								

Agencies enter line 9x22 information in schedule S. MAX copies the data from schedule S into schedule A. These data are necessary to generate correct amounts on lines 9x21.

Assumption:	Year 1	Year 2	Year 3	Year 4	Year 5	Total
CY outlay rates..	20.00	35.00	15.00	30.00		100
BY outlay rates..	20.00	30.00	20.00	15.00	15	100

Note.--MAX applies the BY outlay rates to budget authority for BY and beyond.

To enter CY and BY outlay rates, select "Edit," "Setup Outlay Calculations" from the pull down menu (see exhibits 81B and 81C).

Outlays from balances equal outlays from end of PY balances in BY+1 plus third year spendout of CY balances plus second year spendout from BY balances. Outlays from balances in other years are calculated by MAX in a similar manner.

The shaded portion of this exhibit displays calculations needed to generate outlays from balances. While not visible on this MAX screen, the calculations can be reviewed by selecting "View," "Outlay Calculations" from the pull down menu. (Although displayed in a different format in MAX, the method of calculation is the same.)



SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P) ([CLICK HERE TO GET UPDATE FILE](#))**Table of Contents***Overview*

82.1 What is the purpose of the program and financing schedule and how is it organized?

*Detailed Guidance on the Program and Financing Schedules*

- 82.2 How do I report obligations?  
 82.3 How do I report the budgetary resources available for obligation?  
 82.4 How do I report obligated balances?  
 82.5 How do I report outlays?  
 82.6 How do I show net budget authority and outlays?  
 82.7 What additional information must I report on schedule P?

*Special Requirements*

- 82.8 How do I present enacted reductions of budget authority?  
 82.9 How do I present rescission proposals?  
 82.10 How do I present supplemental appropriations requests and items proposed for later transmittal?  
 82.11 How do I present transfers of resources?  
 82.12 How do I present transfers in the estimates?  
 82.13 How do I present merged accounts and consolidated schedules?  
 82.14 How should I treat allocation accounts?  
 82.15 Do the actuals I report in schedule P need to be tie to the actuals I reported to Treasury?

Ex-82 Automatic Generation of MAX Schedule P Data

**Summary of Changes**

Removes ability to override generated subtotals and totals (section 82.1).

Clarifies the reporting of obligations for program activities and provides non-add performance activity lines for use when the level of funding within a program that finances a specific performance metric is known (section 82.2).

Adds a line to schedule P for reporting extensions in the availability of expired funds that are not reported as reappropriations (section 82.3).

Identifies schedule P lines that are copied into schedule N (section 82.3).

Instructs agencies to report transfers from mandatory to discretionary accounts on corresponding lines (section 82.3).

Clarifies description of reappropriations (section 82.3).

Simplifies the presentation of rescissions and reductions of budget authority and distinguishes between temporary and permanent reductions (sections 82.3 and 82.8).

Drops memorandum entries for fully accruing retirement costs (section 82.7).

Adds four memorandum lines for unobligated and obligated balances of contract authority (section 82.7).

Requires additional lines in schedule P to tie to amounts reported in FACTS II (section 82.15).

### **82.1 What is the purpose of the program and financing schedule and how is it organized?**

This Appendix schedule presents information on agency programs, the allocation of budgetary resources by activity, the status of those resources, and spending patterns. It is used to:

- Analyze and evaluate the estimates;
- Compare enacted funding levels to the President's request;
- Relate budget formulation to budget execution (estimates to actuals); and
- Identify programmatic and historical trends.

The schedule covers PY through BY, except Defense agencies must also report on BY+1 in the years they are required to submit a biennial budget request. MAX generates schedule P from data that you enter:

- Directly into schedule P;
- Into schedule A; and
- Into Treasury systems for preparation of the Treasury Combined Statement.

The MAX system automatically generates totals and subtotals, start of year balances, and selected other entries, including net outlays for the past year (see [exhibit 82](#)). In most cases, you will not be able to override the generated amounts. [Section 79](#) describes the MAX budget system, and the MAX A-11 User's Guide provides detailed information on the system.

Schedule P consists of the following parts:

- Obligations by program activity ([section 82.2](#)).
- Budgetary resources available for obligation ([section 82.3](#)).
- New budget authority (gross), detail ([section 82.3](#)).
- Change in obligated balances ([section 82.4](#)).
- Outlays (gross), detail ([section 82.5](#)).
- Offsets to gross budget authority and outlays ([section 82.6](#)).
- Net budget authority and outlays ([section 82.6](#)).
- Memorandum (non-add) entries ([section 82.7](#)).

### **82.2 How do I report obligations?**

Schedule P shows the activities or projects financed by the account and the amount of budgetary resources required to finance these activities and projects. It presents the new obligations estimated to be incurred for each activity (see [section 20.5](#) for instructions on when to record obligations). In some cases, schedule P also contains non-add performance activities within a program activity. See paragraph (e) below for additional information on performance activities.

(a) *Selecting program activities.*

Use activities that provide a constructive basis for analyzing and evaluating the estimates. Keep the number of activities to a reasonable minimum without sacrificing clarity. Do not use subactivities (such as projects or recipient institutions), unless the amounts are significant and the breakdown necessary to provide full understanding. The activities should:

- Clearly indicate the services to be performed or the programs to be conducted;
- Finance no more than one strategic goal or objective;
- Distinguish investment, developmental, grant and subsidy, and operating programs; and,
- Relate to administrative control and operation of the agency.

Unless otherwise noted, you must

- Distinguish direct obligations from reimbursable programs; and,
- Have adequate accounting support for obligations shown in the actual column.

Having adequate accounting support means that your agency's financial system records obligations in a way that allows you to create a straight-forward cross-walk between the projects or limitations in the financial system and schedule P program activities. Typically, you will have many projects or limitations in your financial systems that correspond to one schedule P activity.

Prior to publication of the FY 2005 Budget, about 40 percent of executive branch programs will have been evaluated using the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART). When a PART program corresponds to a schedule P program activity, you should indicate in the narrative statement that the schedule P activity has been evaluated with the PART.

In those cases when a PART program fits within a budget account, but is not currently a schedule P program activity, you are encouraged to modify the program activity section so that the PART program becomes a discrete schedule P activity.

Obtain approval for any changes in activity structure from OMB prior to your initial submission.

(b) *Allocating expenses to activities.*

Charge personnel compensation to activities on the basis of organizational units or on the basis of specific assignments. When feasible, distribute other administrative and overhead expenses among activities. However, you must be able to readily separate these overhead expenses from other charges. If you need to distribute amounts between two or more activities, base the distribution on readily supportable factors. Be consistent from year to year, and do not rely on overly detailed procedures.

Do not report adjustments to obligations in expired accounts in this part of schedule P. Report them under changes in obligated balances, on line 7340 of (see [section 82.4](#)). For the regular budget schedules (transmittal code 0), you must report all obligations as positive amounts.

(c) *Reimbursable programs.*

If your account includes reimbursable obligations (see [section 20.5](#)), show the obligations financed by reimbursements separately from direct obligations. Use the side headings "Direct program" and "Reimbursable program" (illustrated in [exhibit 130](#)) to distinguish between the different types of obligations. List activities under each side heading if the amounts are significant or add to the

**SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)**

understanding of the program. If the same activities are conducted on both a direct and reimbursable basis, you may list the same entries in both sections.

Report all the obligations in non-credit revolving fund accounts as reimbursable; report all the obligations in credit program and liquidating accounts as direct. You must report direct and reimbursable obligations in schedule P and in the object classification schedule on a consistent basis and the amounts must tie.

(d) *Program activity codes.*

Program activity codes are unique to each account and have no relationship to the codes shown in other schedules, except for credit programs (as described below). Use the four-digit line numbering scheme described in the following table to code the activities and subactivities listed in schedule P. Code descriptive side headings only if no activities are listed under the side heading and amounts are reported opposite the side heading.

(e) *Performance activities.*

When you know the level of funding within a program activity that finances a specific performance metric (e.g., outcomes or outputs), you should show the metric and its obligations on a performance activity line. The obligations for performance activities are non-add entries.

**OBLIGATIONS BY PROGRAM ACTIVITY**

Entry	Description
<b>All accounts:</b>	
0xxx	The first digit will always be zero (0).
<b>Non-credit programs:</b>	
	The line codes are unique to each account and have no relationship to information shown in other schedules.
<b>Direct programs:</b>	
0Xxx	For the second digit, use the values 0 through 8 to identify the activity or subactivity group.
0xXX	For the third and fourth digits, use the values 01 through 89 to identify activity or subactivity detail items. Any number sequence in this range is valid.  For subtotals, use the values 91 through 98 as follows: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Xx91—Single activity or subactivity group subtotal</li> <li>• Xx92—Subtotal of two activity or subactivity groups</li> <li>• Xx93—Subtotal of three activity or subactivity groups</li> </ul> Use the value 00 for running subtotals (i.e., previous subtotal plus additional activity or subactivity group).
<b>Reimbursable programs:</b>	
	If coding requirements for reimbursable programs create difficulties in developing the account display, consult with OMB.  The second digit will always be 9.
09Xx	For the third digit, use the values 0 through 8; for the fourth digit, use the values 1 through 8 to identify activity or subactivity detail items.

Entry	Description
09xX	<p>For subtotals, use the value 9 for the fourth digit as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0909—Subtotal of activities on lines 0901 through 0908</li> <li>• 0919—Subtotal of activities on lines 0910 through 0918</li> <li>• 0929—Subtotal of activities on lines 0920 through 0928</li> <li>• 0939—Subtotal of activities on lines 0930 through 0938</li> </ul> <p>Use the value 0999 for reporting total reimbursable obligations when both direct and multiple reimbursable activities are reported.</p>
<b><i>Credit programs:</i></b>	Use the following standard line coding scheme for credit programs. See <a href="#">sections 185.10</a> and <a href="#">185.11</a> for more information on requirements related to credit financing and liquidating accounts.
<b>Credit program accounts:</b>	
0001	Direct loan subsidy
0002	Loan guarantee subsidy
0003	Subsidy for modifications of direct loan terms
0004	Subsidy for modifications of loan guarantees
0005	Reestimates of direct loan subsidy
0006	Interest on reestimates of direct loan subsidy
0007	Reestimates of loan guarantees
0008	Interest on reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy
0009	Administrative expenses
<b>Credit financing accounts:</b>	
0001–0009	Obligations for post–1991 direct loan disbursements, default claims, interest supplements to lenders, interest on debt owed to Treasury
0801	Negative subsidies paid to receipt accounts
0802	Downward reestimates paid to receipt accounts
0803	Adjusting payments to liquidating accounts
<b>All accounts:</b>	
<b>1000</b>	Total new obligations. This is the final entry in this part of schedule P. MAX requires this line whenever new obligations are reported and will generate this line from the detail you enter. Equals line 2395, with the opposite sign.
<b><i>Accounts with performance activities:</i></b>	Show performance activities using the same line number as the program activity, but include a line serial number for each performance activity.
xxxx.XX	Note that each performance activity line in schedule P must have a corresponding line in the performance metrics schedule (see <a href="#">section 85</a> ).

**82.3 How do I report the budgetary resources available for obligation?**

Schedule P identifies all the budgetary resources available for obligation in the account and provides detailed information on the new budget authority in the account.

**(a) Budgetary resources available for obligation.**

Schedule P tracks the status of budgetary resources available for obligation from the start of the fiscal year to the end of the fiscal year. The resources include unobligated balances carried over from prior years, new budget authority, and adjustments to those amounts (such as transfers of balances to and from other budget accounts and recoveries resulting from downward adjustments of prior year obligations). You deduct new obligations and expiring or withdrawn amounts to arrive at the end-of-year unobligated balances. Do not include expired amounts or amounts unavailable for obligation.

Use the entries in the following table to prepare this section of schedule P. Consult with OMB if you want to modify the standard line titles. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

**BUDGETARY RESOURCES AVAILABLE FOR OBLIGATION**

Entry	Description
<b>2140 Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year</b>	Unobligated balance of appropriations or other budgetary resources carried forward from the preceding year and available for obligation without new action by Congress. MAX copies CY and BY from the end of year amounts reported on line 2440 for the previous year. Includes uninvested balances and balances invested in Federal securities (par value), adjusted for unrealized discounts (a negative amount). Includes all unobligated balances (appropriations, authority to borrow, contract authority, fund balances) at the start of the year. Does not include any deficiencies reported in the prior year's budget on line 2397 that have been liquidated by an appropriation or spending authority from offsetting collections; expired unobligated balances; or special and trust fund amounts and offsetting collections that are not available for obligation because provisions of law, such as benefit formulas or limitations on obligations (see <a href="#">section 20</a> ).
<b>2200 New budget authority (gross)</b>	The total amount of gross budget authority. Automatically generated from the sum of the detailed budget authority entries on lines 4000 through 6962. It also equals line 7000.
2210 Resources available from recoveries of prior year obligations	Amount made available for obligation in no-year and <i>unexpired</i> multiple-year accounts through recoveries (i.e., deobligation or downward adjustments) of obligations incurred in prior years. Equals line 7345, but with opposite sign.
Use line 2210 only for PY or CY if recoveries have already occurred prior to transmittal of the budget—unless specifically approved in advance by OMB.	Note: Net recoveries of current year obligations against new obligations for the same year without further identification. Report recoveries of prior year obligations in expired annual and multiple-year accounts on line 7340.
2221 Unobligated balance transferred to other accounts (-) [xx-xxxx]	Amount of unexpired unobligated balance transferred to other accounts that represents an adjustment to the accounts involved and does not involve an obligation or an outlay (see <a href="#">section 20</a> ).



Entry	Description
2222 Unobligated balance transferred from other accounts (+) [xx-xxxx]	<p>Use only for transfers of balances of prior year resources when the purpose of the funding has not changed (e.g., transfers of activities under reorganization plans) or transfers of balances resulting from general transfer authority. Show transfers of balances of prior year resources that result from legislation that changes the purpose for which the amounts are available as adjustments to budget authority on line 4100. Generally, transfers to other accounts cannot exceed the unobligated balance at the start of the year.</p> <p>Amount of unexpired available unobligated balances transferred from other accounts that represents an adjustment to the accounts involved and does not involve an obligation or an outlay (<a href="#">section 20</a>). Use only for transfers of balances of prior year resources when the purpose of the funding has not changed (e.g., transfers of activities under reorganization plans) or transfers of balances resulting from general transfer authority. Show transfers of balances of prior year resources that result from legislation that changes the purpose for which the amounts are available as adjustments to budget authority on line 4200.</p> <p>Note: You must identify each account involved in each transfer (gaining and losing) in MAX using the 6-digit Treasury basic account symbol (see <a href="#">section 79.2</a> and <a href="#">Appendix C</a>).</p>
2230 Expired unobligated balance transfer to unexpired account (+)	<p>Amount of expired unobligated balances transferred into this account as the result of authority to extend the period of availability of expired balances. Do not use for expired balance transfers that are considered to be reappropriations and must be reported as new budget authority (see <a href="#">sections 20.4(h)</a> and <a href="#">121.10</a>). Also, amount of any expired expenditure transfers receivable transferred from an expired account to an unexpired account.</p> <p><i>See lines 5000/6300 for expired balance transfers that are classified as reappropriations.</i></p>
2240 Capital transfer to general fund (-)	<p>Amount of balances deposited to Treasury capital transfer receipt accounts, such as "Earnings of Government-owned enterprises," or "Repayments of capital investment, Government-owned enterprises." Don't include interest payments or capital transfers of offsetting collections received during the year (see lines 6827 and 6927).</p>
2260 Portion applied to repay debt (-)	<p>Amount of balances used for repayment of debt. Do not include appropriations or new offsetting collections used to retire outstanding debt (see lines 4047, 6047, 6847, and 6947).</p>
2270 Balance of authority to borrow withdrawn (-)	<p>Use these entries to report withdrawn unobligated balances of indefinite borrowing or contract authority realized in no-year or multiple year accounts through deobligation or downward adjustments of prior year obligations reported on lines 2210 and 7345.</p>
2275 Balance of contract authority withdrawn (-)	<p>Note: When new appropriations or spending authority from offsetting collections are used to liquidate obligations initially incurred against authority to borrow, report the amounts on lines 6053, 6853, or 6953, as appropriate.</p>

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Description	
2380	Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177 in unobligated balances (discretionary) (-)	Amount of cancellation of unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources pursuant to Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H). <i>Use only for PY and CY and only in accounts in the national defense function (050).</i>
2385	Reduction pursuant to P.L. 99-177 in unobligated balances (mandatory) (-)	
<b>2390</b>	<b>Total budgetary resources available for obligation</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 2140 through 2385, when there are multiple entries on lines 2140 through 2385.
<b>2395</b>	<b>Total new obligations (-)</b>	Automatically copied from line 1000, with opposite sign.
2397	Deficiency (-)	Amount of obligations (as of the end of the year) that exceeds the budgetary resources available for obligation and requires an appropriation or future offsetting collections to liquidate. This amount is reportable as a violation of the Antideficiency Act. Use this entry in the year in which the deficiency is incurred. Also report the deficiency on line 9190 until liquidated.  Note: See <a href="#">section 145</a> for additional reporting requirements on deficiencies.
2398	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (-)	Amount available for obligation during the year that ceased to be available for obligation during the fiscal year (other than amounts rescinded by law). Include expiring unobligated balances (even if they have been reappropriated) and unobligated balances returned to unappropriated receipts. Include unobligated balances of unexpired amounts written off or withdrawn by administrative action. Also, include recoveries of prior year obligations and cash refunds of previously appropriated receipts that are available for a subsequent appropriation and are returned to unappropriated receipts. Do not include cancellation of unobligated balances that expired in prior years. Do not include withdrawals of indefinite contract authority or borrowing authority when obligated balances are liquidated by offsetting collections (see lines 6849, 6949, 6853, and 6953).
<b>2440</b>	<b>Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year</b>	Unobligated balance carried forward and available for obligation in the following year. Include uninvested balances and balances invested in Federal securities (par value), adjusted for unrealized discounts (a negative amount). Include all unobligated balances available for obligation (appropriations, authority to borrow, contract authority, fund balances) at the end of the year. Do not include expired unobligated balances. Do not include special and trust fund amounts and offsetting collections that are not available for obligation <i>because</i> of provisions of law, such as benefit formulas or limitations on obligations (see <a href="#">section 20.4</a> ). Equals the sum of detail lines 2140 through 2398.
<i>Memorandum entry:</i>		
2441	Unobligated balance returned to receipts	Portion of unobligated balance of special and trust fund appropriations expiring (reported on lines 2398 and 7340) that are returned to the receipt account and are available for subsequent appropriation action.  <i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>

(b) *New budget authority (gross) detail.*

The entries indicate the type of budget authority (such as appropriations, contract authority, spending authority from offsetting collections) and whether the authority:

- Is discretionary or mandatory; and
- Pertains to a special or trust fund account.

Use separate entries to identify adjustments resulting from transfers, temporary and permanent reductions, capital transfers, repayments of outstanding borrowing, etc.

**Discretionary budget authority** means budget authority under the jurisdiction of appropriations committees and controlled by annual appropriations acts. It includes spending authority provided in appropriations acts except where such authority funds direct-spending programs, such as appropriated entitlements. Use the appropriate discretionary entries to report budget authority that is classified as *discretionary* under the BEA (see [sections 20.4](#) and [81.3](#)).

**Mandatory budget authority** means budget authority resulting from permanent laws and includes programs the BEA defines as "appropriated entitlements and mandatories." Use the appropriate mandatory entries to report all budget authority that is classified as *mandatory* under the BEA, as well as budget authority that is classified as *net interest*. Also use the appropriate mandatory entries to report budget authority associated with credit financing accounts.

Use the entries in the following table to prepare this section of schedule P. The table is arranged by type of budget authority and shows the applicable discretionary and mandatory entries for each. Consult with OMB if you want to modify the standard line titles. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

## NEW BUDGET AUTHORITY (GROSS), DETAIL

Entry	Discre- tionary	Man- datory	Description
<i>APPROPRIATIONS</i>			
Appropriation	4000	6000	Amount appropriated, estimated or requested to be appropriated from general funds. Include amounts for liquidation of contract authority, debt reduction, and liquidation of deficiencies, when applicable. For indefinite amounts, the past year amount will equal the amount certified by appropriation warrants after being reduced by any excess resources returned to the Treasury.  Report the amount of emergency appropriations enacted or requested as discretionary appropriations, including amounts that are contingent on the President submitting a budget request to Congress designating the amount as an emergency requirement.
Appropriation (special fund)	4020	6020	Amount appropriated or requested to be appropriated from special fund receipts.  <i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
Appropriation (trust fund)	4026	6026	Amount appropriated or requested to be appropriated from trust fund receipts.  <i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>
Appropriation (unavailable balances)	n/a	6028	For special and trust funds with mandatory appropriations that are precluded from obligation by provisions of law (see the description of line 6045), the amount of budget authority that becomes available for obligation from balances of receipts previously unavailable and included in the amounts reported in schedule N (see <a href="#">section 86.6</a> ). <i>Use only with OMB approval.</i>  <i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>
Advance funding:			Advance funding is generally used to finance higher than anticipated costs in benefit programs. <i>Use only in PY and CY and only with OMB approval.</i>
Appropriation available from subsequent year	4028	n/a	Portion of the succeeding year's appropriation made available for obligation as advance funding.  <i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>
Appropriation available in prior year (–)	4029	n/a	Portion of the appropriation made available for obligation as advance funding in the preceding year.
<i>Reductions:</i>			
Appropriation permanently reduced (–)	4035	6035	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of appropriations; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).  (See <a href="#">section 82.9</a> for rescission proposals.)  <i>Amounts are returned to the general fund of the Treasury and are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i>
Unobligated balance permanently reduced (–)	4036	6036	Amount of unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources that are permanently rescinded. Do not include rescissions of contract authority on line 4936.  When legislation defers existing budget authority (or unobligated balances) from a year in which it was available for obligation to a year in which it was not available for obligation, report the deferred amount as a rescission and show reappropriations in the first year of the extended availability.  <i>Amounts are returned to the general fund of the Treasury and are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i>

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
Appropriation temporarily reduced (–)	4037	6037	<p>Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of appropriations; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources temporarily canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).</p> <p>(See <a href="#">section 82.9</a> for rescission proposals.)</p> <p><i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i></p> <p><i>Amounts are not returned to the general fund of the Treasury but are available for subsequent appropriation. Use only for special and non-revolving trust funds in PY and CY.</i></p>
Unobligated balance temporarily reduced (–)	4038	6038	<p>Amount of rescission of unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources.</p> <p><i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i></p> <p><i>Amounts are not returned to the general fund of the Treasury but are available for subsequent appropriation. Use only for special and non-revolving trust funds in PY and CY.</i></p>
Portion precluded from obligation (–)	n/a	6045	<p>For special and trust funds with mandatory appropriations, amount precluded from obligation in a fiscal year by a provision of law (such as a limitation on obligations or a benefit formula). This amount is treated as a balance of budgetary resources (see the description of line 6028). <i>Use only with OMB approval.</i></p> <p><i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i></p>
<i>Adjustments:</i>			Use the following lines only if the appropriations language specifies that the appropriations are for these purposes:
Portion applied to repay debt (–)	4047	6047	Amount of appropriations used to repay debt.
Portion applied to liquidate deficiencies (–)	4048	6048	Amount of appropriations used to eliminate a deficiency incurred in a previous year.
Portion applied to liquidate contract authority (–)	4049	6049	Amount of appropriations used to liquidate contract authority.
Portion of appropriation to liquidate contract authority withdrawn (–)	4050	n/a	Amount of appropriations used to liquidate contract authority. <i>Use only in PY or CY and only with OMB approval.</i>
Portion substituted for borrowing authority (–)	4053	6053	Amount of appropriations used to liquidate obligations initially incurred against authority to borrow when the borrowing is not exercised.

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discre- tionary	Man- datory	Description
<i>Transfers:</i>			
Transferred to other accounts (-) [xx-xxxx]	4100	6100	<p>Amount transferred to another account in the same year the authority becomes available for obligation when the transfer does not involve an obligation or an outlay. Use this line to show adjustments in budget authority resulting from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transfers under reorganization plans;</li> <li>• Transfers authorized by Congress in lieu of appropriations; or</li> <li>• Transfers where the purpose of the funding has changed.</li> </ul> <p>Also use for transfers of unobligated balances that result from legislation that changes the purpose for which the balances are available. (Show transfers of balances for which the purpose has not changed or resulting from general transfer authority on line 2221.)</p> <p>For PY and CY, show amounts transferred from mandatory accounts to discretionary accounts pursuant to appropriations law on line 4100 in the losing account and line 4200 in the receiving account. For BY, consult your OMB representative.</p>
Transferred from other accounts (+) [xx-xxxx]	4200	6200	<p>Amount transferred from other accounts in the same year the authority becomes available for obligation when the transfer does not involve an obligation or an outlay. Use this line to show adjustments in budget authority resulting from:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transfers under reorganization plans;</li> <li>• Transfers authorized by Congress in lieu of appropriations; or</li> <li>• Transfers where the purpose of the funding has changed.</li> </ul> <p>Also use for transfers of unobligated balances that result from legislation that changes the purpose for which the balances are available. (Show transfers of balances for which the purpose has not changed or transfers of balances resulting from general transfer authority on line 2222.)</p> <p>For PY and CY, show amounts transferred to discretionary accounts from mandatory accounts, pursuant to appropriations law, on line 4200 in the receiving account and on line 4100 in the losing account. For BY, consult your OMB representative.</p> <p>Identify each account involved in each transfer (gaining and losing) in MAX using the 6-digit Treasury basic account symbol (see <a href="#">section 79.2</a> and <a href="#">Appendix C</a>).</p>

## SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
<b>Appropriation (total)</b>	<b>4300</b>	<b>6250</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 4000 through 4200 is the discretionary total., when there are multiple entries on these lines.  Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6000 through 6200 is the mandatory total., when there are multiple entries on these lines.
<i>AUTHORITY TO BORROW</i>			
Authority to borrow	4700	6710	Amount of new authority authorized or requested to be authorized to be expended from moneys derived from borrowing from the Treasury or from investors other than Treasury. To the extent that indefinite borrowing authority is used to cover obligations, report authority to borrow for all such obligations even though subsequent appropriations or offsetting collections will ultimately be used to liquidate the obligations.  For indefinite authority to borrow, record the amount that you obligated in the past year or estimate you will obligate in CY and BY.
Authority to borrow (12 U.S.C. 2281–96)	n/a	6716	Amount of authority to borrow for direct loan obligations from the Federal Financing Bank. <i>Use only for liquidating accounts.</i>
Authority to borrow permanently reduced (–)	4735	6735	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of authority to borrow and (2) budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177). Report permanent rescissions of unobligated balances of authority to borrow on line 4036 (discretionary) or line 6036 (mandatory).  <i>Amounts are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i>
<b>Authority to borrow (total)</b>	<b>4790</b>	<b>6790</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 4700 through 4735 is the discretionary total, when there are multiple entries on these lines.  Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6710 through 6735 is the mandatory total, when there are multiple entries on these lines.
<i>CONTRACT AUTHORITY</i>			
Contract authority	4900	6610	Amount of new authority to incur obligations in advance of collections or an appropriation to liquidate contract authority.  For indefinite contract authority, record the amount that you obligated in the past year or estimate you will obligate in CY and BY.
Contract authority permanently reduced (–)	4935	6635	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of contract authority; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
Unobligated balance permanently reduced (–)	4936	n/a	law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).  <i>Amounts are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i>
Portion precluded from obligation (limitation on obligations) (–)	4945	n/a	Amount of contract authority precluded from obligation in a fiscal year by a limitation on obligations. <i>Use only with OMB approval.</i>
Transferred to other accounts (–) [xx-xxxx]	n/a	6661	Amount of contract authority transferred to other accounts.
Transferred from other accounts (+) [xx-xxxx]	n/a	6662	Amount of contract authority transferred from other accounts.  Note: You must identify each account involved in each transfer (gaining and losing) in MAX using the 6-digit Treasury basic account symbol (see <a href="#">section 79.2</a> and <a href="#">Appendix C</a> ).
<b>Contract authority (total)</b>	<b>4990</b>	<b>6690</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 4900 through 4945 is the discretionary total, when there are multiple entries on these lines.  Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6610 through 6662 is the mandatory total, when there are multiple entries on these lines.
<i>REAPPROPRIATIONS</i>			
Reappropriation	5000	6300	Amount of new budget authority resulting from legislation enacted after the law that provided the budget authority and that extends the period of availability of funds that have expired or would otherwise expire. Such extensions of availability are counted as new budget authority in the first year of the extended availability (see <a href="#">sections 20.4(h)</a> and <a href="#">121.10</a> ).  <i>Use line 2230 for expired unobligated balance transfers that are not reported as new budget authority.</i>
Reappropriation permanently reduced (–)	5035	6335	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of reappropriations; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).



## SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
			Report permanent rescissions of unobligated balances on line 4036 (discretionary) or line 6036 (mandatory). <i>Amounts are returned to the general fund of the Treasury and are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i>
<b>Reappropriation (total)</b>	<b>5300</b>	<b>6390</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 5000 through 5035, when there are multiple entries on these lines.  Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6300 through 6335, when there are multiple entries on these lines.
<i>ADVANCE APPROPRIATIONS</i>			
Advance appropriation	5500	6500	Appropriation that becomes available for obligation one fiscal year or more beyond the fiscal year for which the legislation is enacted. Report amount in the year in which it first becomes available for obligation.
Advance appropriation (special fund)	5520	n/a	
Advance appropriation (trust fund)	5526	6526	<i>Lines 5520, 5526 and 6526 are copied into schedule N.</i>
Advance appropriation permanently reduced (–)	5535	6535	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of advance appropriations; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).  Report permanent rescissions of unobligated balances on line 4036 (discretionary) or line 6036 (mandatory). <i>Amounts are returned to the general fund of the Treasury and are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i>
Advance appropriation temporarily reduced (–)	5537	6537	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions of advance appropriations; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources temporarily canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).  Report temporary rescissions of unobligated balances on line 4038 (discretionary) or line 6038 (mandatory). <i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
<i>Amounts are not returned to the general fund of the Treasury but are available for subsequent appropriation. Use only for special and non-revolving trust funds in PY and CY.</i>			
<b>Advance appropriation (total)</b>	<b>5590</b>	<b>6590</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 5500 through 5537, when there are multiple entries on these lines.  Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6500 through 6537, when there are multiple entries on these lines.
<i>SPENDING AUTHORITY FROM OFFSETTING COLLECTIONS</i>			As a general rule, you classify spending authority from offsetting collections as discretionary for accounts classified as discretionary by the BEA and as mandatory for accounts classified as mandatory under the BEA.
Offsetting collections (cash)	6800	6900	For unexpired accounts only:  Amount of offsetting collections (cash) credited to the account and refunds that pertain to obligations recorded in prior fiscal years.
Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired)	6810	6910	For unexpired accounts only:  Amount of increase (+) or decrease (–) in accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources from the start of year to the end of year. The amounts reported on these lines are added and automatically copied to line 7400, but with the opposite sign.
From offsetting collections (unavailable balances)	6826	6926	For accounts with limitations on the use of offsetting collections, the amount of budget authority that becomes available for obligation from unavailable balances of offsetting collections reflected in the schedule on unavailable collections (see <a href="#">section 86.6</a> ).
<i>Adjustments:</i>			
Capital transfer to general fund (–)	6827	6927	Amount of offsetting collections deposited to Treasury receipt accounts for "Earnings of Government-owned enterprises," or "Repayments of capital investment, Government-owned enterprises." Do not include interest payments. <i>Primarily used by revolving funds; however, may be used by other accounts with OMB approval.</i>
Portion applied to liquidate deficiencies (–)	6833	6933	Amount of offsetting collections used to eliminate a deficiency incurred in a previous year.
Portion temporarily reduced (–)	6837	6937	Amount of (1) account-specific offsetting collections rescinded; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources temporarily canceled by

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
			sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177). <i>Use only in PY and CY.</i>
Portion precluded from obligation (limitation on obligations) (–)	6845	6945	Amount of offsetting collections credited to the account that are not available for obligation because of limitations on program level in appropriations acts.
Portion applied to repay debt (–)	6847	6947	Amount of offsetting collections used for repayments of outstanding .
Portion applied to liquidate contract authority (–)	6849	6949	Amount of offsetting collections used to liquidate contract authority.
Portion substituted for borrowing authority (–)	6853	6953	Amount of offsetting collections used to liquidate obligations initially incurred against authority to borrow when the borrowing is not exercised.
<i>Transfers:</i>			
Transferred to other accounts (–) [xx–xxxx]	6861	6961	Amount transferred to another account in the same year the authority becomes available for obligation when the transfer is treated as an adjustment in budget authority to the accounts and does not involve an obligation or outlay (see the description of line 4100 for more information). Transfers of balances should be reported on lines 2221 or 7331, as appropriate. Although the spending authority is transferred to another account, the offsetting collection will be credited to the account that initially received the collection on line 88xx.
Transferred from other accounts (+) [xx–xxxx]	6862	6962	Amount transferred from other accounts in the same year the authority becomes available for obligation when the transfer is treated as an adjustment in budget authority to the accounts and does not involve an obligation or outlay (see the description of line 4200 for more information). Transfers of balances should be reported on lines 2222 or 7332, as appropriate. Although the spending authority is transferred from another account, the offsetting collection will be credited to the account that initially received the collection on line 88xx.
			Note: You must identify each account involved in each transfer (gaining and losing) in MAX using the 6–digit Treasury basic account symbol (see <a href="#">section 79.2</a> and <a href="#">Appendix C</a> ).
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (total)</b>	<b>6890</b>	<b>6990</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6800 through 6862, when there are multiple entries on these lines.  Automatically generated from the sum of lines 6900 through 6962, when there are multiple entries on these lines.

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Discretionary	Mandatory	Description
<b>Total new budget authority (gross)</b>	<b>7000</b>	<b>7000</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of combined total of mandatory and discretionary budget authority (lines 4000 through 6990) when more than one type is used. It also equals line 2200.

(c) *Financing obligations and adjustments.*

As a general rule, if unobligated balances from prior years and new budget authority are commingled in an account, charge new obligations against unobligated balances brought forward before charging against new budget authority. Similarly, charge capital transfers, redemption of debt, and liquidating of contract authority against unobligated balances before new budget authority.

**82.4 How do I report obligated balances?**

The schedule P includes a section that bridges between start and end of year obligated balances. Report the start of year obligated balance. New obligations are added to the start of year balance, and gross outlays are deducted. Adjustments, such as transfers of obligated balances and the change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (both unexpired and expired), are added or subtracted, as appropriate, to determine the obligated balance at the end of the year. In addition to reporting transactions in unexpired accounts, reflect outlays from and adjustments in expired (but not canceled) accounts.

*Unpaid obligations and uncollected customer payments from Federal sources* are included in the obligated balance and are not separately identified.

Use the entries in the following table to prepare this section of schedule P. Consult with OMB if you want to modify the standard line titles. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

**CHANGE IN OBLIGATED BALANCES**

Entry	Description
<b>7240 Obligated balance, start of year</b>	<p>Sum of amounts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounts payable plus undelivered orders (also known as unpaid obligations.)</li> </ul> <p>Minus</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources (also known as uncollected customer payments.)</li> </ul> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uninvested balances;</li> <li>• Balances invested in Federal securities (par value), adjusted for unrealized discounts (a negative amount); and</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amounts obligated against contract authority.</li> </ul>
<b>7310 Total new obligations</b>	Automatically copied from line 1000.
<b>7320 Total outlays (gross) (–)</b>	Total disbursements made by the account. Automatically generated from the sum of the amounts on lines 8690 through 8698, with opposite sign.
7331 Obligated balance transferred to other accounts (–) [xx–xxxx]	Amount of unpaid obligations transferred to other accounts.
7332 Obligated balance transferred from other accounts (+) [xx–xxxx]	Amount of unpaid obligations transferred from other accounts. Note: You must identify each account involved in each transfer (gaining and losing) in MAX using the 6–digit Treasury basic account symbol (see <a href="#">section 79.2</a> and <a href="#">Appendix C</a> ).
7340 Adjustments in expired accounts (net)	Net amount of upward (+) or downward adjustments (–) in obligations in accounts that <i>expired</i> prior to the beginning of the fiscal year.  Use only for PY, unless specifically approved by OMB.
<b>7345 Recoveries of prior year obligations (–)</b>	Amount made available for obligation in no-year and <i>unexpired</i> multiple-year accounts through recoveries (i.e., deobligation or downward adjustments) of obligations incurred in prior years. Automatically copied from line 2210, but with the opposite sign.
<b>7400 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired)</b>	<i>For unexpired accounts only:</i> Amount of increase (–) or decrease (+) in accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources from the start of year to the end of year. Automatically generated from the sum of the amounts on lines 6810 and 6910, but with the opposite sign.
7410 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (expired)	<i>For expired accounts only:</i> Amount of increase (–) or decrease (+) in accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources from the start of year to the end of year.
7440 Obligated balance, end of year	Sum of amounts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounts payable plus undelivered orders (also known as unpaid obligations.)</li> </ul> Minus <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources (also known as uncollected customer payments.)</li> </ul> Include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Uninvested balances;</li> <li>• Balances invested in Federal securities (par value), adjusted for unrealized discounts (a negative amount); and</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amounts obligated against contract authority.</li> </ul> <p>Equals the sum of lines 7240 through 7410.</p>

### 82.5 How do I report outlays?

The schedule P shows the account's gross outlays distributed on the basis of the type of budget authority that financed the outlay. This part presents separately, outlays from discretionary and mandatory budget authority and outlays from new authority and carryover balances.

#### OUTLAYS (GROSS), DETAIL

Entry	Description
<b>8690</b> <b>Outlays from new discretionary authority</b>	MAX calculates these entries based on the outlays reported in schedule A on lines 9111 through 9322.
<b>8693</b> <b>Outlays from discretionary balances</b>	
<b>8697</b> <b>Outlays from new mandatory authority</b>	You should not use these lines for credit financing accounts.
<b>8698</b> <b>Outlays from mandatory balances</b>	
<b>8700</b> <b>Total outlays (gross)</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of the amounts on lines 8690 through 8698, when multiple lines 8690-8698 are reported.

### 82.6 How do I show net budget authority and outlays?

The schedule P shows the offsets used to arrive at net budget authority and outlays for the account. Gross outlays are reduced by cash collections (both unexpired and expired). Gross budget authority is reduced by cash collections (unexpired only) *and* orders from Federal sources that are not accompanied by cash.

The *offsets* part of schedule P indicates the source of the offsetting collections (e.g., Federal sources, interest on Federal securities, non-Federal sources).

The change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources from the start to the end of the year is deducted from gross budget authority only. Increases in uncollected customer payments from the start to the end of the year increase the amount of the offset because the increase constitutes an increase in gross budget authority; decreases reduce the amount of the offset because a decrease means that a portion of the offsetting collections (cash) received has been applied to liquidate obligations for which an offset was already counted. Only unexpired offsetting collections (cash) are offset from gross budget authority because gross budget authority includes only unexpired amounts.

Use the entries in the following table to prepare this section of schedule P. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**. Consult with OMB if you want to modify the standard line titles. See special line title requirements below for lines 8840 and 8845.

## OFFSETS

Entry	Description
<i>Against gross budget authority and outlays:</i>	
Offsetting collections (cash) from:	Amount of cash credited to the account. (Includes refunds that pertain to obligations recorded in prior fiscal years, as long as the account has not been canceled.) Identify the source of the payment (see the descriptions below). Use subentries when there are significant amounts of different types of income, such as insurance premiums, loan repayments, interest, fees, etc.
	Note: Amounts for lines 8800 through 8890 under transmittal code 0 should be reported as positive amounts in MAX, but will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign.
8800 Federal sources	Amount from other Federal Government accounts except interest received from investments in Federal securities and interest on uninvested funds. Do not include orders and contracts that are valid obligations of ordering accounts that are not accompanied by advances. Include collections from general, special, trust, revolving, and management fund accounts. Also include collections from off-budget Federal entities.
8820 Interest on Federal securities	Amount of interest on investments in marketable and nonmarketable Federal securities. Use for general and revolving fund accounts only.
8825 Interest on uninvested funds	Amount of interest from Federal on balances not invested in marketable and nonmarketable Treasury securities.
8840 Non-Federal sources	Amount received from non-Federal sources as a result of business-type transactions (e.g., repayments of loan principal, interest on outstanding loans, user charges) and amount of orders received from non-Federal sources that are accompanied by advances. Exclude collections that arise from the Government's sovereign or governmental powers. Report such amounts on line 8845.
	Use line titles to identify separately the primary sources of collections. Small amounts may be aggregated. See <a href="#">exhibits 185C, 185F and 185I</a> .
8845 Offsetting governmental collections (from non-Federal sources)	Amount received from non-Federal sources that are governmental in nature (e.g., tax receipts, regulatory fees, compulsory user charges, custom duties, license fees) but required by law to be credited to the account (see <a href="#">section 20.7</a> ).
	Use line titles to identify separately the primary sources of collections.
<b>8890 Total offsetting collections (cash)</b>	Automatically generated from the sum of lines 8800 through 8845, when there are multiple entries on these lines.
<i>Against gross budget authority only:</i>	
<b>8895 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired)</b>	Amount of increase (+) or decrease (–) in accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources from the start of year to the end of year. Automatically generated from the sum of amounts on lines 6810 and 6910.

SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)

Entry	Description
	Amount will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign compared to what you enter in MAX.
<b>8896 Portion of offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts</b>	Amount of offsetting collections (cash) and refunds that pertain to an account that has expired but is not yet canceled (see <a href="#">section 20.10</a> ). Automatically generated from the sum of amounts on lines 6800 and 6900 minus the amount on lines 8800 through 8845. Amount will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign compared to what you enter in MAX.

**NET BUDGET AUTHORITY AND OUTLAYS**

Entry	Description
<b>8900 Budget authority (net)</b>	Automatically generated from the total new budget authority (gross) on line 2200 minus the amounts on lines 8800 through 8845 and on lines 8895 and 8896. This line will always be used, even if the amount is zero.
<b>9000 Outlays (net)</b>	Automatically generated from the total outlays (gross) on lines 8690 through 8698 minus the amounts on lines 8800 through 8845. This line will always be used, even if the amount is zero.

**82.7 What additional information must I report on schedule P?**

Schedule P displays supplementary information related to G-R-H sequesters; obligations in excess of available budgetary resources; investments in Federal securities; and balances of contract authority. The amounts are not added or deducted from the budget authority or outlay amounts reported above. Use the entries in the following table to prepare this section of schedule P. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**. Consult with OMB if you want to modify the standard line titles.

**MEMORANDUM (NON-ADD) ENTRIES**

Entry	Description
9110 Outlays prior to reduction pursuant to P.L. 99–177	Amount of outlays that would have occurred <i>in the current year only</i> if resources had not been sequestered under G-R-H. Use only if line 9180 or 9185 is used.
9180 Sequestration pursuant to P.L. 99–177 (discretionary) (–)	Amount of reduction in outlays <i>in the current year only</i> associated with a G-R-H sequester of budgetary resources for discretionary programs.
9185 Sequestration pursuant to P.L. 99–177 (mandatory) (–)	Amount of reduction in outlays <i>in the current year only</i> associated with a G-R-H sequester of budgetary resources for mandatory programs.
9190 Unpaid obligations, end of year: Deficiency	Amount of obligations included in unpaid obligations, end of year that exceeded the resources available when the obligations were incurred and will require an appropriation or offsetting collections to liquidate the deficiency. For any year, the amount will equal the amount reported on this line in the previous year,



Entry	Description
	plus any amount on line 2397, minus amounts on lines 4048, 6048, 6833, and 6933 plus or minus any revisions to the amount reported in the previous year. (These revisions are not reflected on schedule P..)
	<i>Note: See <a href="#">section 145</a> for additional reporting requirements on deficiencies.</i>
<i>Investments in Federal securities:</i>	Report the par value of Federal securities; do not reflect unrealized discounts. Include all the balances invested at the start of the year, including those that are not available for obligation, i.e., those reported in the unavailable collections schedule (MAX schedule N). If a special or trust fund has multiple expenditure accounts, report the invested portion of the unavailable collections in schedule P of the account that receives the largest appropriation from the fund.
<b>9201 Total investments, start of year: Federal securities: Par value</b>	Amount of start of year balances that have been invested in Federal securities, brought forward from the end of the preceding year. For CY and BY, equals the corresponding entry at the end of the preceding year.
9202 Total investments, end of year: Federal securities: Par value	Amount of end of year balances that have been invested in Federal securities.
<i>Contract authority:</i>	<i>Contract authority is unfunded. When appropriation or offsetting collections are provided to liquidate contract authority, the amounts are no longer considered to be contract authority, and the balance should no longer be included as contract authority.</i>
<b>9301 Unobligated balance, start of year: Contract authority</b>	Unobligated balance of unfunded contract authority at the beginning of the year. Excludes contract authority for which spending authority from offsetting collections or appropriations to liquidate are not provided or requested. Cannot exceed the amount on line 2140 of the program and financing schedule. . For CY and BY, equals the corresponding entry at the end of the preceding year.
9302 Unobligated balance, end of year: Contract authority	Unobligated balance of unfunded contract authority at the end of the year. Cannot exceed the amount on line 2440 of the program and financing schedule.
<b>9303 Obligated balance, start of year: Contract authority</b>	Obligated balance of unfunded contract authority at the beginning of the year. Excludes contract authority for which spending authority from offsetting collections or appropriations to liquidate are not provided or requested. Cannot exceed the amount on line 7240 of the program and financing schedule. . For CY and BY, equals the corresponding entry at the end of the preceding year.
9304 Obligated balance, end of year: Contract authority	Obligated balance of unfunded contract authority at the end of the year. Cannot exceed the amount on line 7440 of the program and financing schedule.

**82.8 How do I present enacted reductions of budget authority?**

Include enacted reductions including account-specific rescissions, across-the-board reductions mandated in appropriations acts, and G-R-H reductions in the regular (transmittal code 0) budget schedules. If enacted legislation defers existing budget authority from a year in which it was available for obligation to a year in which it was not available for obligation, then reflect this deferred amount as a reduction in the regular budget schedules and show a reappropriation in the first year of the extended availability (see [section 20.4](#)). Show reductions separate from the budget authority initially appropriated for all years covered by schedule P.

Reductions can impact all types of budget authority (e.g., appropriations, borrowing authority, contract authority, advance appropriations, offsetting collections) and can be temporary or permanent. Normally, temporary reductions only apply to special funds, non-revolving trust funds and spending authority from offsetting collections. Beginning this year, the budget will distinguish between temporary and permanent reductions. Reductions of new budget authority will be reported by type. However, reductions of unobligated balances of budgetary resources other than contract authority will be reported on either lines 4036, 4038, 6036 or 6038 regardless of the type of budget authority involved. Reductions of balances of contract authority will be reported on line 4936. The two-digit suffixes listed below are used to denote the temporary or permanent nature of the reductions of budget authority. (See the corresponding entries under appropriations (lines 40xx and 60xx) in [section 82.3](#) for more information on how the suffixes are used.) If necessary to fulfill reporting requirements, OMB may tell you to use a different two-digit suffix to identify the appropriate appropriation acts.

Entry	Description
xx35 [type of authority] permanently reduced (-)	<p>Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).</p> <p><i>Amounts are returned to the general fund of the Treasury and are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i></p> <p>Note: Show rescission proposals in a separate program and financing schedule with transmittal code "5," and modify the stub title to read "Rescission proposal."</p>
xx36 unobligated balance permanently reduced (-)	<p>Amount of unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources that are permanently rescinded. Do not include rescissions of contract authority on line 4936.</p> <p>When legislation defers existing budget authority (or unobligated balances) from a year in which it was available for obligation to a year in which it was not available for obligation, report the deferred amount as a rescission and show reappropriations in the first year of the extended availability.</p> <p><i>Amounts are returned to the general fund of the Treasury and are not available for subsequent appropriation. Use only in PY and CY.</i></p>

Entry	Description
xx37 [type of authority] temporarily reduced (-)	Amount of (1) account-specific rescissions; (2) across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be taken from more than one account, and the agency head or other Executive Branch official is authorized to distribute the reduction to affected accounts; and (3) budgetary resources temporarily canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H, P.L. 99-177).
	<i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>
	<i>Amounts are not returned to the general fund of the Treasury but are available for subsequent appropriation. Use only for special and non-revolving trust funds in PY and CY.</i>
xx38 unobligated balance temporarily reduced (-)	Amount of rescission of unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources.
	<i>This line is copied into schedule N.</i>
	<i>Amounts are not returned to the general fund of the Treasury but are available for subsequent appropriation. Use only for special and non-revolving trust funds in PY and CY.</i>

### 82.9 How do I present rescission proposals?

Reflect the effect of rescission proposals that already have been transmitted or will be transmitted to Congress concurrently with the budget in a separate schedule under transmittal code 5 (see [section 79.2](#)), not in the regular schedule P for the affected account. The combination of the regular and rescission schedules should display the condition of the account if Congress accepts the rescission proposal. Please note that the Impoundment Control Act of 1974 requires the President to transmit a special message whenever a rescission is proposed (see [section 112](#)).

Show enacted rescissions on lines 4035 (appropriation rescinded) and 4036 (unobligated balance rescinded) in schedule P under transmittal code 0 (see [section 82.3](#)).

The rescission schedule under transmittal code 5 should reflect the changes to amounts in the regular schedule that would result from the rescission proposal. For example, if the budget authority would otherwise be obligated in the event that the rescission is not accepted, display negative amounts for obligations and outlays (outlay savings) in the rescission schedule. In cases where the amounts proposed for rescission could not otherwise be obligated and are shown as expiring in the regular schedule, show a positive entry on line 2398 "Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn," on the rescission proposal schedule. Enter this same amount as a rescission proposal on the appropriate budget authority line.

### 82.10 How do I present supplemental appropriations requests and items proposed for later transmittal?

The account identification code includes a transmittal code that identifies the nature of the request (e.g., supplementals and items proposed for later transmittal (see [section 79.2](#))). Most requests that are transmitted to the Congress in the President's Budget are for appropriations for the upcoming fiscal year. These requests are normally reported under transmittal code 0. Separate schedules using non-zero transmittal codes are required to identify proposed supplementals, supplementals requested in the budget, and items proposed for later transmittal under either existing or proposed authorizing legislation and their

effect on the information presented in the regular schedule for the account. The combination of the regular schedule and the non-zero transmittal code schedule should display the condition of the account as it would exist if Congress enacts the proposals.

One of the following titles will be shown, as appropriate, at the top of schedule P to identify proposed supplementals and items proposed for later transmittal:

- Supplemental now requested (transmittal code 1)
- Legislative proposal, not subject to PAYGO (transmittal code 2)
- Appropriations language to be submitted later (transmittal code 3)
- Legislative proposal, subject to PAYGO (transmittal code 4)

When a supplemental proposal or legislative proposal involves a transfer between accounts, omit the transaction from the regular (transmittal code 0) schedules and display it in separate schedules for each of the affected accounts.

### **82.11 How do I present transfers of resources?**

Transfers between agencies resulting from Presidential reorganization plans or enacted reorganization legislation may involve unique problems. Agency staff must consult with OMB representatives in each instance. As a general rule, exclude the transferred activities from the schedules of the losing agency and show them in the gaining agency on a three-year comparable basis. Use footnotes to identify the amounts involved. (See [section 82.13](#) for an example of how the footnote should be worded and [section 95](#) for guidance on submitting the footnotes for printing.) When the gaining agency assumes *all* of the activities previously financed under a single account in another agency, the losing agency should omit budget schedules and appropriation language for the affected account and the gaining agency should show the transferred activities and appropriation language with its schedules.

### **82.12 How do I present transfers in the estimates?**

When a transfer in the estimates (see [section 20.3](#)) for the budget year results in a significant increase to or decrease from the amount of budget authority for the past or current year, include footnotes explaining the transfer after the program and financing schedule. (See [section 95](#) for guidance on submitting the footnotes for printing.)

For the account assuming the responsibility, use the following footnote:

Note—Includes \$—million in budget authority in BY for activities previously financed from:

	PY	CY
--	----	----

[List the full title of each losing account, including agency and bureau, and the budget authority amount applicable to each. Where it is appropriate to show the amount on some other basis, such as obligations, you may modify the footnote accordingly.]

If the entire BY estimate is for the transferred activity, the footnote may be worded, "BY estimate is for activities previously financed from [List agency, bureau, and account title]."

For the account losing the activity, use the following footnote:

Note.—Excludes \$—million in budget authority in BY for activities transferred to:

[List the title of each gaining account, including agency and bureau, and the budget authority amount applicable to each. Where it is more appropriate to show the amount on some other basis, such as obligations, modify the footnote accordingly.]

Comparable amounts for PY (\$-million) and CY (\$-million) are included above.

You only need to provide a transfer in the estimates footnote in the year the transfer proposal is made. If you use more than one footnote, include them under a centered heading, "NOTES." Modify the wording of footnotes as necessary to explain current year transfers.

At the discretion of OMB, transfers in the estimates may be shown on a three-year comparable basis. If they are, the footnotes should be modified accordingly.

### **82.13 How do I present merged accounts and consolidated schedules?**

(a) *Merged accounts.*

Where two or more appropriations have been or are proposed to be replaced by a single appropriation (see [section 71.7](#)), submit a single set of schedules for the new appropriation covering PY through BY. Show a distribution of budget authority and outlays by account at the end of each merged program and financing schedule. Also use the following footnote:

Note.—The activities previously financed under [agency title, bureau title, account title in PY and CY are presented in these schedules and are proposed to be financed in this account in BY. Budget authority and outlays are distributed by account above.

(See [section 95](#) for guidance on submitting the footnotes for printing.)

(b) *Consolidated schedules.*

When two or more accounts are consolidated in a single set of schedules (see [section 71.8](#)), list the title of each unexpired account as an activity. You may use subentries to identify activities carried under the individual accounts when the amounts are significant. Show a distribution of budget authority and outlays by account at the end of the program and financing schedule.

(c) *Distribution of budget authority and outlays.*

When you consolidate or merge accounts, append a distribution of budget authority and outlays by account to the bottom of the program and financing schedule. List each merged or consolidated budget account by name and provide data for PY through BY. (See [section 95](#) for guidance on submitting the distribution of budget authority and outlays for printing.)

### **82.14 How should I treat allocation accounts?**

Combine schedule P information for allocation accounts with the parent account without separate identification (see [section 71.6](#)). However, you must identify the obligations incurred by allocation accounts in a separate section of the object class schedule of the parent account (see [section 83.17](#)).

Receiving agencies should include the following note at the end of each bureau that receives funding through allocations:

Note.—Obligations incurred under allocations from other accounts are included in the schedules of the parent appropriations as follows: [list agency, bureau, and account title for each parent appropriation].

(See [section 95](#) for guidance on submitting the note for printing.)

**82.15 Do the actuals I report in schedule P need to tie to the actuals I reported to Treasury?**

Actuals reported in the budget must be consistent with amounts reported to Treasury and must be based on actual accounting data.

Typically, one group within your agency (for example, the accounting office) reports amounts to Treasury (see [section 130.2](#)) while another group (for example, the budget office) prepares budget schedules. Before your accounting office submits its actuals to Treasury in FACTS II (described below), you must ensure that the amounts are conceptually and numerically consistent with the amounts that you are going to report in MAX A-11. FACTS II facilitates, and to a large extent eliminates the need for, this reconciliation. If you find an error, then please see [sections 82.15](#).

See [exhibit 130J](#), [exhibit 130K](#) and [exhibit 130M](#) for relationships among actuals reported in the following reports: SF 133/Statement of Budgetary Resources, schedule P, and Treasury Combined Statement.

Invested balances reported in MAX should equal invested balances reported to the Treasury Department, as follows:

Reported to Treasury Department	MAX data
Invested balances, start of year	<p><b><i>For all accounts:</i></b></p> <p><b>Schedule P (program and financing schedule):</b> 9201—Total investments, start of year: Federal securities: Par value</p> <p><b><i>For accounts with schedule J:</i></b></p> <p><b>Schedule J (status of funds schedule):</b> 0101—Unexpended balance, start of year, Federal Securities Par value</p>
Invested balances, end of year	<p><b><i>For all accounts:</i></b></p> <p><b>Schedule P (program and financing schedule):</b> 9202—Total investments, end of year: Federal securities: Par value</p> <p><b><i>For accounts with schedule J:</i></b></p> <p><b>Schedule J (status of funds schedule):</b> 0701—Unexpended balance, end of year, Federal Securities Par value</p> <p><i>Note: Amounts reported in these MAX schedules represent total invested balances, including those that are not available for obligation.</i></p>

**(a) What actuals in the schedule P are imported from the actuals I reported to Treasury?**

In order to reduce duplicate reporting while improving the consistency of year-end data, your agency accounting office reports U.S. Standard General Ledger (USSGL) accounting information at the Treasury account-level into a Treasury-operated system named Federal Agencies Centralized Trial-Balance System II (FACTS II), which was developed by agencies, Treasury and OMB. The FACTS II information is then translated/crosswalked and copied into the following reports:

- SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources (used to monitor SF 132 Apportionments and used as the basis of the audited Statement of Budgetary Resources),
- FMS 2108 Year-end Closing Statement (used as a primary source of the Treasury Combined Statement), and
- Much of the PY column of schedule P.
- For more information about FACTS II and the USSGL and crosswalks from the USSGL to schedule P, see Treasury Transmittal Letter No. S2-01-02, a supplement to the Treasury Financial Manual (TFM) and <http://www.fms.treas.gov/factsii/index.html>.

When year-end FACTS II information is submitted, the information must not only pass a number of FACTS II edit-checks, but a person separate from the "preparer" (i.e. data entry person) named a "certifier" must certify that the information is correct. In addition, GAO requires your auditors to determine whether controls exist to ensure that the amounts in your systems and the amounts submitted via FACTS II agree. See GAO-02-126G "Guide for Auditing the Statement of Budgetary Resources".

Each month, Treasury provides your agency with the SF 6653 "Undisbursed Appropriation Account Ledger" on the fifteenth workday of each month. The SF 6653 reflects all activity reported to Treasury. You are required to reconcile the SF 6653 with your accounting system each month. At year-end, this reconciliation should be accomplished before submitting your FACTS II data.

In the future, MAX A-11 will ensure that all amounts in the PY column of schedule P will tie to amounts reported via FACTS II. For the preparation of the 2005 Budget, outlays will continue to be locked and eleven lines will be controlled by edit-checks. (See [section 82.15](#)).

(b) *What do I do if I do not agree with the PY amount on line P 9000 "Outlays (net)?"*

If you do not agree with the amount on line P 9000 "Outlays (net)", after the FACTS II database is locked (mid-November), and the outlay is reported in FACTS II and imported into MAX A-11, then you must submit a written explanation of the difference to your OMB representative. The explanation must be signed by your budget officer and accounting officer and explain why the error happened. Include affected accounts and amounts. Include a revised SF 224 and a statement that the amounts will be revised in FACTS II when FACTS II opens for revisions to fourth quarter actuals if appropriate. If the explanation is accepted, then line P 9000 will be changed centrally. Ensure that the actuals are revised in FACTS II as described in the previous section. You should get PY-related matters like this taken care of as soon as the budget database opens so that you can concentrate on the BY column later.

Similarly, submit a written explanation if your agency does not agree with the receipt actuals that have been imported into MAX schedule R from Treasury SF 224 data. (See [section 81.1](#)). Receipt account information is not collected via FACTS II.

(c) *What do I do if I do not agree with the PY amount on lines that have MAX A-11 edit-checks and require me to tie to FACTS II?*

For the 2005 Budget, the following lines have MAX A-11 edit-checks that will require you to tie to FACTS II:

1000	Total new obligations
2140	Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year
2210	Resources available from recoveries of prior year obligations

**SECTION 82—PROGRAM AND FINANCING (SCHEDULE P)**

2398	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn
2440	Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year
4000	Discretionary appropriation
6800	Discretionary spending authority from offsetting collections (cash)
7240	Obligated balance, start of year
7340	Adjustments in expired accounts
7440	Obligated balance, end of year
8800	Offsetting collections from Federal sources

If you feel that you need to revise what your agency reported and certified as correct in FACTS II for these five lines, then the following table provides an overview of actions you should take:

<b>If an error is found...</b>	<b>And if...</b>	<b>Then...</b>
<u>Before</u> MAX A-11 agency lock-out	Financial audit was NOT complete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consult with your accounting office.</li> <li>• Submit request to suppress MAX A-11 edit-check.</li> <li>• Correct the amount in MAX A-11.</li> <li>• Ensure that your accounting office revises the amount in FACTS II.</li> <li>• Add a footnote to financial statements.</li> </ul>
<u>Before</u> MAX A-11 agency lock-out	Financial audit was complete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consult with your accounting office.</li> <li>• Submit request to suppress MAX A-11 edit-check.</li> <li>• Correct the amount in MAX A-11.</li> <li>• Ensure that your accounting office revises the amount in FACTS II.</li> </ul>
<u>After</u> MAX A-11 agency lock-out	Financial audit was NOT complete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consult with your accounting office.</li> <li>• Ensure that your accounting office revises the amount in FACTS II.</li> <li>• Add a footnote to financial statements.</li> </ul>
<u>After</u> MAX A-11 agency lock-out	Financial audit was complete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Consult with your accounting office.</li> <li>• Ensure that your accounting office revises the amount in FACTS II.</li> </ul>

The request to suppress the MAX A-11 edit-check that you submit to your OMB representative must contain the following information:

- Affected accounts and amounts;
- An explanation of what happened and why;
- A statement that the amounts will be revised in FACTS II; and



- Contact information for the responsible FACTS II "certifier" and budget office staff (e.g. e-mail and phone number).

After the request is received and approved, the edit check will be suppressed centrally in MAX A-11 and you will be notified. You should get PY-related matters like this taken care of as soon as the budget database opens so that you can concentrate on the BY column later.

(d) *What do I do if I do not agree with other PY amount imported from Treasury?*

You may over-write amounts imported from FACTS II. However, before over-writing an amount in the PY column of schedule P in MAX A-11, you should talk with the person who entered the data into FACTS II to see why they entered that amount. If you both find that an amount reported via FACTS II was incorrect, then over-write the amount and let the person who entered the information in FACTS II know, so that they can revise it. If you over-write amounts imported from FACTS II for lines P 1000, P 2140, P 2210, P 2398, P 2440, P 4000, P 6800, P 7240P 7340, P 7440, P 8800, and P 9000, an error message is generated.

(e) *Why do I need to revise FACTS II if I do not agree with PY amounts imported from Treasury?*

After the MAX A-11 agency lock-out, the FACTS II database opens for revisions. You must revise the incorrect information in FACTS II, because the revised FACTS II database is used as a basis for revised SF 133s, audited Statements of Budgetary Resources, and central analysis. Information is copied from FACTS II to MAX A-11 once per year before MAX A-11 opens to agency budget offices. However, information is not ever copied from MAX A-11 to FACTS II.

Revisions are intended to help you correct errors (not to give you extra time to verify your data) and should be used sparingly. For FACTS II reporting periods, see <http://www.fms.treas.gov/factsii/index.html>.

(f) *Where is guidance related to adding a footnote to financial statements?*

Conceptually, the actuals in the Budget, Statement of Budgetary Resources, and SF 133 should tie. However, if they do not, just explain the differences in a footnote in your financial statements. Your accounting office will find the guidance related to this footnote in [OMB Bulletin 01-09 "Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements" section 9.33](#).

(g) *How can I prepare?*

Consult with your accounting office for any differences that you are aware of and review your obligations and balances reported on your quarterly SF 133 throughout the year. Also, review any differences from last year at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/reports/> to prevent these differences from reoccurring.

**Automatic Generation of MAX Schedule P Data**

The program and financing schedule shown below indicates the lines automatically generated by MAX. Some lines are copied from other entries in MAX; others are automatically calculated from detail entries. For subtotals and totals, you cannot override the generated amounts.

Program and Financing (in millions of dollars)			PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
Identification code 16-1186-0-1-755					
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>					
Direct program:					
00.01	Policy and program development.....				
00.02	Departmental management and administration.....				
00.03	Facilities operations, maintenance, and repair.....				
00.91	Subtotal, direct program.....	Calculated from direct program detail.			
09.01	Reimbursable program.....	Calculated from direct and reimbursable program detail.			
10.00	Total new obligations.....	For PY, imported from FACTS II. For CY and BY, copied from corresponding end-of-year lines.			
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>					
21.40	Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year.....				
22.00	New budget authority (gross).....	Calculated from budget authority entries on lines 4000-6962.			
22.10	Resources available from recoveries of prior year obligations.....	Calculated if multiple lines 2140-2385 are reported.			
23.90	Total budgetary resources available for obligation.....	Copied from line 1000, with opposite sign.			
23.95	Total new obligations.....	For PY, imported from FACTS II. For CY and BY, calculated as the sum of detail lines 2140 through 2398.			
23.98	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn.....				
24.40	Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year.....				
<b>New budget authority (gross), detail:</b>					
Discretionary:					
40.00	Appropriation.....				
Discretionary spending authority from offsetting collections:					
68.00	Offsetting collections (cash).....				
68.10	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	Total budget authority lines by type (e.g., 6890) are calculated, if multiple detail lines (e.g., 6800-6885) are reported.			
68.90	Spending authority from offsetting collections (total discretionary).....	Calculated from budget authority entries on lines 4000-6985.			
70.00	Total new budget authority (gross).....	For PY, imported from FACTS II. For CY and BY, copied from corresponding end-of-year lines.			
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>					
72.40	Obligated balance, start of year.....	Copied from line 1000.			
73.10	Total new obligations.....	Calculated as the sum of lines 8690-8698, with opposite sign.			
73.20	Total outlays (gross).....	Copied from line 2210.			
73.40	Adjustments in expired accounts (net).....				
73.45	Recoveries of prior year obligations.....	Calculated as sum of lines 6810 and 6910, with opposite sign.			
74.00	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	For PY, imported from FACTS II.			
74.40	Obligated balance, end of year.....				
<b>Outlays (gross), detail:</b>					
86.90	Outlays from new discretionary authority.....	Lines 86xx are calculated from schedule A data.			
86.93	Outlays from discretionary balances.....				
86.97	Outlays from new mandatory authority.....				
86.98	Outlays from mandatory balances.....	Calculated as the sum of lines 8690-8698, if multiple lines 8690-8698 are reported.			
87.00	Total outlays (gross).....				
<b>Offsets:</b>					
Against gross authority and outlays:					
Offsetting collections (cash) from:					
88.00	Federal sources.....				
88.40	Non-Federal sources.....				
88.90	Total offsetting collections (cash).....	Calculated if multiple lines 8800-8845 are reported.			
Against gross budget authority only:					
88.95	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	Calculated as sum of lines 6810 and 6910.			
88.96	Portion of offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts.....	Calculated as sum of lines 6800 and 6900 minus lines 8800 through 8845.			
<b>Net budget authority and outlays:</b>					
89.00	Budget authority (net).....	Calculated (line 2200 minus (lines 8800-8845) and lines 8895 and 8896).			
90.00	Outlays (net).....	Calculated for CY and BY (line 8700 minus (lines 8800-8845)).			

## SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

## Table of Contents

*General Information*

- 83.1 What are object classes?
- 83.2 Why must I report object class information?
- 83.3 How do object classes compare to functional and character classes and program activity?
- 83.4 How does the object class schedule relate to the program and financing schedule?
- 83.5 How can I determine whether an obligation should be classified as direct or reimbursable?
- 83.6 How should I report obligations that are covered by statutory limitations?
- 83.7 What object class codes and definitions should I use?
- 83.8 What object classes are associated with civilian and military pay in the baseline?

*Classifying Specific Types of Transactions*

- 83.9 How do I classify relocation expenses related to a permanent change of station (PCS)?
- 83.10 How do I classify purchases related to information technology (IT)?
- 83.11 How do I classify obligations for education and training?
- 83.12 How do I classify obligations for real property (space, land, and structures)?
- 83.13 How do I classify obligations for Federal civilian retirement under CSRS?
- 83.14 How do I classify obligations for military retirement?
- 83.15 How do I classify intragovernmental transactions?
- 83.16 How do I classify obligations under the Intergovernmental Personnel Act (IPA)?

*The Object Class Schedule and MAX Schedule O*

- 83.17 How is object class information presented in MAX schedule O and the Appendix?
- 83.18 When I report data in MAX schedule O will it generate subtotals or totals?

- Ex-83A Summary of Object Class Codes and Standard Titles (MAX Schedule O)
- Ex-83B Object Classification—Without Allocation Accounts
- Ex-83C Object Classification—With Allocation Accounts

**83.1 What are object classes?**

Object classes are categories in a classification system that presents *obligations by the items or services purchased* by the Federal Government. These are the major object classes:

- 10 Personal compensation and benefits.
- 20 Contractual services and supplies.
- 30 Acquisition of assets.
- 40 Grants and fixed charges.
- 90 Other.

We divide these major classes into smaller classes and present them in the Budget Appendix in object class schedules.

The object classes present obligations according to their initial purpose, *not the end product or service*. For example, if you pay a Federal employee who constructs a building, classify the obligations for the

employee's wages under *Personal compensation and benefits*, rather than *Acquisition of assets*. If you purchase a building, classify the contractual obligations under *Acquisition of assets*.

You record *obligations* when the Federal Government places an order for an item or a service, awards a contract, receives a service, or enters into similar transactions that will require payments in the same or a future period (see section [20.5](#)). You also record obligations when you make an *expenditure* transfer between Federal Government accounts (see section [20.4\(j\)](#)).

### 83.2 Why must I report object class information?

You must report object class information because the law ([31 U.S.C. 1104\(b\)](#)) requires the President's budget to present obligations by object class for each account.

### 83.3 How do object classes compare to functional and character classes and program activity?

The following table shows how the object classification system differs from the other classification systems used in the President's budget.

Classification System	What is classified?	What does it tell me?
Object class	Obligations	Goods or services or items purchased, for example, supplies, rent, or equipment
Program activity (see section <a href="#">82.2</a> )	Obligations	Activity, project, or other programmatic distinction
Functional class (see section <a href="#">79.3(d)</a> )	Budget authority, outlays, and offsetting receipts	Major purpose served, for example, national defense, health, income security
Character class (see section <a href="#">84.4</a> )	Budget authority, outlays, and offsetting receipts	Whether the amount pays for an <i>investment</i> or an operating cost;  If investment, then, what type: physical asset, conduct of R&D, or education and training; or  Whether the amount is a <i>grant</i> to a State and local government or a <i>direct</i> Federal program.

### 83.4 How does the object class schedule relate to the program and financing schedule?

You report object class information whenever you report obligations on a program and financing (P&F) schedule (except you do not report object class information for credit financing accounts). This means you report obligations by object class separately for the regular budget requests, supplemental budget requests, rescission proposals, and legislative proposals.

In addition, object class schedules separately identify the following types of obligations:

- Direct and reimbursable obligations (see section [83.5](#)).
- Obligations covered by statutory limitations (see section [83.6](#)).
- Obligations for allocations between agencies (see section [83.17](#)).

**83.5 How can I determine whether an obligation should be classified as direct or reimbursable?**

In general, reimbursable obligations are those financed by offsetting collections received in return for goods and services provided, while all other obligations are direct. However, there are exceptions. Classify *obligations within the account* as "direct" or "reimbursable" in accordance with the following criteria:

<b>If the obligations are . . .</b>	<b>And if . . .</b>	<b>The classification is . . .</b>
NOT financed from offsetting collections	The account is NOT a REVOLVING FUND	Direct
Financed from any type of budgetary resources, including offsetting collections	The account is a CREDIT program or liquidating account	Direct
Financed from offsetting collections from: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Asset sales;</li> <li>• Interest on Federal securities;</li> <li>• Interest on uninvested funds;</li> <li>• Compulsory collections from the public, such as taxes, compulsory user charges, customs duties, license fees; or</li> <li>• Intragovernmental expenditure transfers with no benefit (e.g., goods and services) to the paying account</li> </ul>	Direct	
Financed from offsetting collections received in return for goods or services provided, including: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Reimbursements under the IPA (see section <a href="#">83.16</a>); and</li> <li>• Voluntary insurance premiums</li> </ul> <p>Note: Compulsory collections (as opposed to voluntary collections) are coded 8845 in schedule P (see section <a href="#">82.7</a>).</p>	The offsetting collections are NOT from any of the sources identified in the previous case, that is, asset sales, interest, etc.	Reimbursable
Financed from any type of budgetary resources, including offsetting collections	The account is a REVOLVING FUND but is NOT a credit liquidating account	Reimbursable
Financed from offsetting collections from other Federal government account(s)	The collections are for a jointly funded grant or project	Reimbursable

The amounts you classify as reimbursable obligations in both MAX schedule O and MAX schedule P for a budget account should be identical. There are three exceptions:

- Line 9995, *Below reporting threshold*, in MAX schedule O may contain a mixture of direct and reimbursable obligations. These amounts are not material because they are normally \$4 million or less;
- Credit financing accounts do not have any MAX schedule O; and
- All the obligations may be rolled up on line 1000 in MAX schedule P and there may be a mixture of direct and reimbursable obligations on that line.

*MAX schedule O.* Use the 4-digit object class line numbers in exhibit 83A when you enter obligations by object class in MAX schedule O. Be sure to use the right prefix to distinguish reimbursable from direct obligations. For reimbursable obligations, if the obligations are for the parent account use 2xxx and if the obligations are in a limitation schedule use 7xxx.

*MAX schedule P.* Use the 4-digit program activity codes in section [82.2](#) when you enter obligations in MAX schedule P. For reimbursable obligations, use x9xx.

**83.6 How should I report obligations that are covered by statutory limitations?**

When a law limits administrative or other expenses for a revolving or trust fund, you must separately identify the object classes that are covered by the limitation from those that are not covered. See exhibit [83A](#) for the prefix and codes used to identify obligations under limitations and section [83.17](#) for the relationship between MAX schedule O and the *Budget Appendix*.

**83.7 What object class codes and definitions should I use?**

Earlier, we said that we divided the major object classes into smaller ones. The following table provides the codes, standard titles, and definitions used to identify detailed object class data. Exhibit [83A](#) provides a summary of the codes and standard titles used in MAX schedule O.

	Entry	Description
10	<b>PERSONAL COMPENSATION AND BENEFITS</b>	This major object class consists of object classes 11, 12, and 13.
11	Personnel Compensation	Compensation directly related to duties performed for the Government by Federal civilian employees, military personnel, and non-Federal personnel. Object class 11 covers object classes 11.1 through 11.8.
11.1	Full-time permanent	For full-time civilian employees with permanent appointments, report: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular salaries and wages paid to the employees (some of which may be withheld from the employee’s check to pay taxes, to pay a bill in a credit union, or to pay the employee’s share of life and health insurance).</li> <li>• Other payments that become part of their basic pay (for example, geographic differentials, and critical position pay).</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
11.3 Other than full-time permanent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Regular salaries and wages paid while the employees are on paid leave, such as annual, sick, or compensatory leave.</li> <li>• Lump sum payments for annual leave upon separation (also known as terminal leave payments).</li> </ul> <p>Exclude <i>compensation above the basic rate</i>, for example, overtime or other premium pay, which will be classified in object class 11.5, <i>Other personnel compensation</i>.</p> <p>Full-time permanent employees are those who are full-time civilian employees with <i>permanent appointments as defined by the Office of Personnel Management (OPM)</i>. The nature of the employee's appointment is controlling, not the nature of the position. Include <i>full-time permanent employees</i> in the:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Competitive Service</i> with career and career-conditional appointments.</li> <li>• <i>Excepted Service</i> whose appointments carry no restriction or condition. Include those serving trial periods or whose tenure is equivalent to career-conditional tenure in the Competitive Service. Exclude those serving on indefinite appointments and appointments limited to a specific time.</li> <li>• <i>Senior Executive Service (SES)</i> with career appointments as defined in <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 3132(a)(4)</a> and non career appointments as defined in <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 3132(a)(7)</a>.</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> Refer to your agency's human resources office for assistance on the types of appointments for staff in your agency.</p> <p>Exclude full-time <i>temporary</i> employees who are full-time civilian employees with <i>temporary appointments as defined by OPM</i> who will be classified in object class 11.3, <i>Other than full-time permanent</i>.</p> <p>Regular salaries and wages paid to civilian employees for part-time, temporary, or intermittent employment.</p> <p>Other than full-time permanent employees include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Part-time permanent employees</i>, that is, employees with appointments that require work on a prearranged schedule of fewer hours or days of work than prescribed for full-time employees in the same group or class.</li> <li>• <i>Temporary employees</i>, that is, employees with appointments for a limited period of time that is generally less than a year. For example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) full-time temporary employees,</li> <li>(b) seasonal employees without permanent appointments,</li> <li>(c) employees with term appointments, and</li> <li>(d) employees with indefinite appointments.</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <i>Intermittent employees</i>, that is, employees with appointments that require work on an irregular or occasional basis and who are paid only for the time actually employed or services actually rendered.</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
11.5 Other personnel compensation	<p><i>Note:</i> For personal services contracts with individuals who are classified by OPM as Federal employees, classify the basic pay in this object class and classify compensation above the basic pay in object class 11.5, <i>Other personnel compensation</i>. On the other hand, classify the payments to a contractor principally for the personal services of a group of the contractor's employees according to the type of contract involved (for example, classify personal services contracts for operation and maintenance of facilities under object class 25.4).</p> <p>Compensation <i>above the basic rates</i> paid directly to civilian employees. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Overtime</i>, which is pay for services in excess of the established work period as defined in <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5542</a>, standby duty and administratively uncontrollable overtime as defined in <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5545</a>, and unscheduled availability duty hours for criminal investigations as defined in <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5545(a)</a>.</li> <li>• <i>Holiday pay</i> as defined in <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5546(b)</a>.</li> <li>• <i>Night work differential</i>, which is pay above the basic rate for regularly scheduled night work.</li> <li>• <i>Post differentials</i>, which are authorized under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5925</a> above the basic rate for service at hardship posts abroad that are based upon conditions of environment substantially different from those in the continental United States and warrant additional pay as a recruitment and retention incentive.</li> <li>• <i>Hazardous duty pay</i>, which is pay above the basic rate because of assignments involving performance of duties that subject the employee to hazards or physical hardships.</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> Post differentials and hazardous duty pay result from the job or services performed. For example, a job performed at a hardship post abroad or under hazardous duty is different from what might appear to be the same job performed elsewhere and under non-hazardous conditions. Hence, both are classified with other pay in object class 11 and not as benefits in object class 12. By contrast, compensation in the form of cost of living allowances are classified as benefits in object class 12 because they do not result from the job or services performed. The cost for a job in one locale is different from the same job in another locale simply because the cost of living is higher in one locale.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Supervisory differential</i>, which is pay above the basic rate to adjust the compensation of a supervisor to a level greater than the highest paid subordinate. The differential applies to a General Schedule employee who supervises one or more employees not covered by the General Schedule.</li> <li>• <i>Cash incentive awards</i>, which are payments for cash awards that do not become part of the Federal civilian employee's basic rate of pay, such as those authorized under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 4503</a>, <a href="#">4504</a>, <a href="#">4505(a)</a>, <a href="#">4507</a>, and <a href="#">5384</a>.</li> <li>• <i>Other payments above basic rates</i>, which are payments for other premium pay, such as stand-by pay and premium pay in lieu of overtime and special pay that is paid periodically during the year</li> </ul>



SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
	<p>in the same manner and at the same time as regular salaries and wages are paid. Exclude other payments which are classified in object class 12.1, <i>Civilian personnel benefits</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Royalties</i> to Federal scientists and inventors which may last up to 17 years and may be paid after the employee has left Federal service or to the employee's beneficiary.</li> </ul>
11.7 Military personnel	<p>The regular salaries and wages paid to personnel of the uniformed service, including the commissioned corps of the Public Health Service and the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (some of which may be withheld from the employee's check to pay taxes, to pay a bill in a credit union, or to pay the employee's share of life and health insurance) as well as amounts above the basic pay rates. For "amounts above the basic pay rates", apply the same definitions as for civilian employees in object class 11.5 plus:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Flight pay.</li> <li>• Basic allowance for subsistence (BAS) and for quarters (BAQ).</li> <li>• Extra pay based upon conditions of environment (except cost of living allowances for locations outside the contiguous 48 States and the District of Columbia which will be classified in object class 12.2, Military personnel benefits).</li> </ul>
11.8 Special personal services payments	<p>Payments for personal services that do not represent salaries or wages paid directly to Federal employees and military personnel. Include payments for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Reimbursable details</i>, that is, payments to other accounts for services of civilian employees and military personnel on reimbursable detail (both compensation and personnel benefits).</li> <li>• <i>Reemployed annuitants</i>, that is, payments by an agency employing an annuitant to reimburse the Civil service retirement and disability fund for the annuity paid to that employee under 5 U.S.C. <a href="#">8339 through 8344</a>.</li> <li>• <i>Non-Federal civilians, such as witnesses</i>; casual workers, patient and inmate help, and allowances for trainees and volunteers.</li> <li>• <i>Salary equalization</i> (authorized under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 3372</a> and <a href="#">3584</a>) to individuals on leave of absence while employed by international organizations or State and local governments, when the equalization payment is 50 percent or less of the person's salary.</li> <li>• <i>Staff of former Presidents</i> paid by GSA under <a href="#">3 U.S.C. 102(b)</a>.</li> </ul>
11.9 Total personal compensation	<p>Use this line when there is more than one entry on object classes 11.1 through 11.8.</p>
12 & 13 Personnel Benefits	<p>Benefits for <i>currently employed</i> Federal civilian, military and certain non-Federal personnel. Exclude benefits to certain <i>former</i> civilian and military personnel that are classified in object classes 13.0 and 42.0. Covers object classes 12.1 and 12.2.</p>
12.1 Civilian personnel benefits	<p>Cash payments (from the agency, not funds withheld from employee compensation) to other funds for the benefit of Federal civilian employees or direct payments to these employees.</p>

Entry	Description
12.2 Military personnel benefits	<p>Include payments to or for certain non-Federal employees as required by law. Non-Federal civilian employees are employees who are not reportable to the Office of Personnel Management as Federal employees, such as witnesses, casual workers, trainees, volunteers. For example, Peace Corps and VISTA volunteers, Job Corps enrollees, and U.S. Department of Agriculture Extension Service agents.</p> <p>Civilian personnel benefits include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Insurance and annuities</i>, which are the employer's share of payments for life insurance, health insurance, employee retirement (including payments to finance fiduciary insurance costs of the Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board), work injury disabilities or death and professional liability insurance (which are payments to reimburse qualified Federal employees for up to one half the cost of professional liability insurance premiums, as authorized by P.L. 104–208 and amended by P.L. 106–58).</li> <li>• Recruitment, retention, and other incentives, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Payments above the basic rate for recruitment bonuses, relocation bonuses, and retention allowances authorized by <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5753</a> and <a href="#">5754</a>.</li> <li>Payment to the loan holder (e.g., the bank) to repay an employee's student loan as a recruitment incentive.</li> <li>Relocation and other expenses related to permanent change of station (PCS), except expenses for travel and transportation and the storage and care of vehicles and household goods (see section <a href="#">83.9</a>).</li> <li>Cash allowances for separate maintenance, education for dependents, transfers for employees stationed abroad, and personal allowances based upon assignment or position, and overseas differentials.</li> <li>Cost-of-living allowances (COLAs) as authorized under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5924</a> and <a href="#">5941</a> and other laws.</li> <li><i>Note:</i> COLAs are classified as benefits in object class 12 (and not as compensation in object class 11) because they are not related to the job or service performed.</li> <li>Student loan repayments authorized by <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5379</a>.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><i>Other allowances and payments</i> such as allowances for uniforms and quarters, special pay that is paid in a lump sum (such as compensatory damages or employee settlements), reimbursements for notary public expenses, and subsidies for commuting costs, that is, payments to subsidize the costs of Federal civilian employees in commuting by public transportation.</p> <p>Cash allowances and payments of employer share to other funds for military personnel. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cash allowances such as <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Uniform allowances.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Entry	Description
13.0 Benefits for former personnel	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Reenlistment bonuses.</li> <li>— Cost-of-living allowances.</li> <li>— Dislocation and family separation allowances.</li> <li>— Personal allowances based upon assignment or rank.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude hazardous duty pay, flight pay, extra pay based upon conditions of work environment, and other such pay, which are classified as military personnel compensation in object class 11.7, and benefit payments to veterans resulting from their past service, which are classified as benefits to former personnel in object class 13.0.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payments to other funds, such as the employer's share of military retirement, Federal Insurance Contribution Act taxes, Servicemen's Group Life Insurance premiums, and education benefits.</li> <li>• Subsidies for commuting costs, which are payments to subsidize the costs of military personnel in commuting by public transportation.</li> </ul> <p>Benefits for former officers and employees or their survivors that are based (at least in part) on the length of service to the Federal Government. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Retirement benefits</i> in the form of pensions, annuities, or other retirement benefits paid to former military and certain civilian Government personnel or to their survivors, exclusive of payments from retirement trust funds, which are classified as insurance claims and indemnities under object class 42.0.</li> <li>• <i>Separation pay</i>, which are severance payments to former employees who were involuntarily separated through no fault of their own and voluntary separation incentive (VSI) payments, also known as "buy-outs" to employees who voluntarily separate from Federal service.</li> <li>• <i>Payments to other funds</i> for ex-Federal employees and ex-service personnel (e.g., agency payments to the unemployment trust fund for ex-employees and one-time agency payments of final basic pay to the civil service retirement fund for employees who took the early-out under buy-out authority) and other benefits paid directly to the beneficiary. Also, Government payment to the Employees health benefits and life insurance funds for annuitants.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude benefits provided <i>in-kind</i>, such as hospital and medical care, which are classified under the object class representing the nature of the items purchase.</p>
20 <b>CONTRACTUAL SERVICES AND SUPPLIES</b>	This major object class covers purchases of contractual services and supplies in object classes 21.0 through 26.0.
21.0 Travel and transportation of persons	Travel and transportation costs of Government employees and other persons, while in an authorized travel status, that are to be paid by the Government either directly or by reimbursing the traveler. Consists of both travel away from official stations, subject to regulations governing civilian and military travel, and local travel and transportation of persons

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
22.0 Transportation of things	<p>in and around the official station of an employee. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Contracts to transport people from place to place</i>, by land, air, or water, such as commercial transportation charges; rental or lease of passenger cars; charter of trains, buses, vessels, or airplanes; ambulance service or hearse service; and expenses incident to the operation of rented or chartered conveyances. (Rental or lease of all passenger-carrying vehicles is to be charged to this object class, even though such vehicles may be used incidentally for transportation of things.)</li> <li>• Incidental travel expenses which are other expenses directly related to official travel, such as baggage transfer, and telephone and telegraph expenses, as authorized by travel regulations.</li> </ul> <p>Transportation of things (including animals), the care of such things while in process of being transported, and other services incident to the transportation of things. (Exclude transportation paid by a vendor, regardless of whether the cost is itemized on the bill for the commodities purchased by the Government.) Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Freight and express</i> charges by common carrier and contract carrier, including freight and express, switching, crating, refrigerating, and other incidental expenses.</li> <li>• <i>Trucking and other local transportation</i> charges for hauling, handling, and other services incident to local transportation, including contractual transfers of supplies and equipment.</li> <li>• <i>Mail transportation</i> charges for express package services (i.e., charges for transporting freight) and postage used in parcel post. (Exclude other postage and charges that are classified under object class 23.3.)</li> <li>• <i>Transportation of household goods related to permanent change of station (PCS)</i>.</li> </ul>
23 Rent, Communications, and Utilities	<p>Payments for the use of land, structures, or equipment owned by others and charges for communication and utility services. Object class 23 covers object classes 23.1 through 23.3. Exclude payments for rental of transportation equipment, which are classified under object class 21.0, <i>Travel and transportation of person</i>, or object class 22.0, <i>Transportation of things</i>.</p>
23.1 Rental payments to GSA	<p>Payments to the General Services Administration (GSA) for rental of space and rent related services.</p> <p>Exclude payments:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To a non-Federal source, which will be reported in object class 23.2, <i>Rental payments to others</i>.</li> <li>• To agencies other than GSA for space, land, and structures that are subleased or occupied by permits, which will be classified in object class 25.3, <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>, regardless of whether the space is owned or leased by the agency other than GSA.</li> <li>• For related services provided by GSA in addition to services provided under rental payments, e.g., extra protection or extra</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
23.2	Rental payments to others
23.3	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges
	<p>cleaning, which will be classified in object class 25.3, <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>.</p> <p>Payments to a non-Federal source for rental of space, land, and structures.</p> <p>Payment for information technology, utilities and miscellaneous charges.</p> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Rental or lease of information technology equipment</i>, include any hardware or software, or equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment that is used in the automatic acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information, such as mainframe, mid-tier, and workstation computers.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude contractual services involving the use of equipment in the possession of others, such as computer time-sharing or data center outsourcing, which will be classified in object class 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Information technology services</i>, include data, voice, and wireless communication services, such as long-distance telephone services from other Federal agencies or accounts.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude charges for maintenance of information technology and related training and technical assistance, when significant and readily identifiable in the contract or billing, which will be classified in object class 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Postal services and rentals</i>, include postage (exclude parcel post and express mail service for freight); contractual mail (include express mail service for letters) or messenger service; and rental of post office boxes, postage meter machines, mailing machines, and teletype equipment.</li> <li>• <i>Utility services</i>, include heat, light, power, water, gas, electricity, and other utility services.</li> <li>• <i>Miscellaneous charges</i>, for example, periodic charges under purchase rental agreements for equipment. (Payments subsequent to the acquisition of title to the equipment should be classified under object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.)</li> </ul> <p>Exclude payments under lease-purchase contracts for construction of buildings, which will be classified in object class 32.0, <i>Land and structures</i>, or object class 43.0, <i>Interest and dividends</i>, and for lease-purchase contracts for information technology and telecommunications equipment which will be classified in object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.</p>
24.0	Printing and reproduction
	<p>Printing and reproduction obtained from the private sector or from other Federal entities:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Typesetting and lithography.</li> <li>• Duplicating.</li> <li>• Standard forms when specially printed or assembled to order and printed envelopes and letterheads.</li> </ul>

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
25 Other Contractual Services	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Publication of notices, advertising, radio and television time.</li> <li>• Photo composition, photography, blueprinting, photostating, and microfilming.</li> <li>• The related composition and binding operations performed by the Government Printing Office, other agencies, or other units of the same agency on a reimbursable basis, and commercial printers or photographers.</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> In determining subclasses for administrative use, agencies may appropriately maintain a distinction between traditional printing technologies and photostatic reproduction.</p>
25.1 Advisory and assistance services	<p>Object class 25 covers object classes 25.1 through 25.8</p> <p>Services acquired by contract from non-Federal sources (that is, the private sector, foreign governments, State and local governments, tribes), as well as, from other units within the Federal Government. This object class consists of three types of services:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Management and professional support services.</li> <li>• Studies, analyses, and evaluations.</li> <li>• Engineering and technical services.</li> </ul> <p>Each is described in further detail below.</p> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Information technology consulting services, which have large scale systems acquisition and integration or large scale software development as their primary focus. Classify these in object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.</li> <li>• Personnel appointments and advisory committees. Classify these in object class 11.3, <i>Other than full-time permanent</i>.</li> <li>• Contracts with the private sector for operation and maintenance of information technology and telecommunication services. Classify these in object class 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>.</li> <li>• Architectural and engineering services as defined in the Federal Acquisition Regulations (FAR) 36.102 (<a href="#">40 U.S.C. 541</a>).</li> <li>• Research on theoretical mathematics and basic medical, biological, physical, social, psychological, or other phenomena which will be classified in object class 25.5, <i>Research and development contracts</i>.</li> <li>• Other contractual services classified in object classes 25.2, <i>Other services</i>, through 25.8, <i>Subsistence and support of persons</i>, and 26.0, <i>Supplies and materials</i>.</li> </ul> <p>Management and professional support services, that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Assist, advise, or train staff to achieve efficient and effective management and operation of organizations, activities, or systems</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<p>(including management and professional support services for information technology and R&amp;D activities).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Are normally closely related to the basic responsibilities and mission of the agency contracting for the services.</li> <li>• Support or contribute to improved organization of program management, logistics, management, project monitoring and reporting, data collection, budgeting, accounting, performance auditing, and administrative/technical support for conferences and training programs.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude auditing of financial statements, which will be classified in object class 25.2, <i>Other services</i>.</p> <p><i>Studies, analyses, and evaluations</i> provide organized analytic assessments or evaluations in support of policy development, decision-making, management, or administration. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Studies in support of information technology and R&amp;D activities.</li> <li>• Models, methodologies, and related software supporting studies, analyses, or evaluations.</li> </ul> <p><i>Engineering and technical services</i> (excluding routine engineering services and operation and maintenance of information technology and data communications services) that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support the program office during the acquisition cycle by providing such services as information technology architecture development, systems engineering, and technical direction (FAR 9.505–1(b)).</li> <li>• Ensure the effective acquisition, operation, and maintenance of a major acquisition, weapon system or major system, as defined in OMB Circular No. A–109 and in this Circular's supplement, Capital Programming Guide.</li> <li>• Provide direct support of a major acquisition or weapons system that is essential to planning, R&amp;D, production, or maintenance of the acquisition or system.</li> <li>• Include information technology consulting services, such as information technology architecture design and capital programming, and investment control support services.</li> <li>• Include software services such as implementing a web-based, commercial off-the-shelf software product that is an integral part of a consulting services contract.</li> </ul>
25.2 Other services	<p>Report contractual services with non Federal sources that are <i>not otherwise classified</i> under this object class. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auditing of financial statements when done by contract with the private sector.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude performance auditing by contract with the private sector, which will be classified in object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i> and auditing of financial statements when done by contract with another Federal Government entity, which will be classified in object class 25.3, <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>.</p>

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
25.3 Other purchases of goods and services from Government accounts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Typing and stenographic service contracts with the private sector.</li> <li>• Tuition for the general education of employees (e.g., for courses for credit leading to college or post graduate degrees). Exclude tuition for training closely-related to the basic responsibilities and mission of the agency, which are classified under object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>.</li> <li>• Fees and other charges for abstracting land titles, premiums on insurance (other than payments to the Office of Personnel Management), and surety bonds.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advisory and assistance services contracts, which are classified under object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>.</li> <li>• Contractual services reported in other object classes 21.0, 22.0, 23.1–23.3, 24.0, 25.1, 25.3–25.8, and 26.0.</li> <li>• Services in connection with the initial installation of equipment, when performed by the vendor, which will be classified in object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.</li> <li>• Expenditure transfers between Federal accounts, which are classified in object classes 25.3, <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>, and 92.0, <i>Undistributed</i>, as described below.</li> <li>• Repair, maintenance, and storage of vehicles and storage of household goods, which are reported in object class 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>.</li> <li>• Repairs and alterations to buildings, which are classified in object classes 25.4, <i>Operation and maintenance of facilities</i>, or 32.0, <i>Land and structures</i>, as appropriate.</li> <li>• Subsistence and support of persons, which is classified as object class 25.8, <i>Subsistence and support of persons</i>.</li> <li>• Research and development contracts which will be classified in object classes, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>, 25.4, <i>Operation and maintenance of facilities</i>, and 25.5, <i>Research and development contracts</i>, as appropriate.</li> </ul> <p>Purchases from other Federal Government agencies or accounts <i>that are not otherwise classified</i>. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rental payments to Federal Government accounts other than the GSA Federal Buildings Fund.</li> <li>• Interagency agreements for contractual services (including the Economy Act) for the purchase of goods and services, except as described below.</li> <li>• Expenditure transfers between Federal Government accounts for jointly-funded grants or projects.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Purchases from State and local governments, the private sector,</li> </ul>



Entry	Description
25.4	Operation and maintenance of facilities
25.5	Research and development contracts
25.6	Medical care
	<p>and Government sponsored enterprises that are not otherwise classified. Classify these in object class 25.2, <i>Other services</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Data communication services (voice, data, and wireless) from other agencies or accounts. Classify these in object class 23.3, <i>Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges</i>.</li> <li>• Agreements with other agencies to make repairs and alterations to buildings. Classify these in object classes 25.4, <i>Operation and maintenance of facilities</i>, or 32.0, <i>Land and structures</i>, as appropriate.</li> <li>• Storage and maintenance of vehicles and household goods. Classify these in object class 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>.</li> <li>• Subsistence and support of persons. Classify these in object class 25.8, <i>Subsistence and support of persons</i>.</li> <li>• Development of software, or maintenance of software or hardware. Classify these in object classes 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>, and 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>, respectively.</li> <li>• Advisory and assistance services. Classify these in object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>.</li> <li>• Payments made to other agencies for services of civilian employees or military personnel on reimbursable detail. Classify these in object class 11.8, <i>Special personal services payments</i>.</li> <li>• Contractual services classified under object classes 21.0, 22.0, 23.1–23.3, 24.0, 25.2, 25.4–25.8, and 26.0.</li> </ul>
	<p>Operation and maintenance of facilities when done by contract with the private sector or another Federal Government account. Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Government-owned contractor-operated facilities (GOCOs).</li> <li>• Service contracts and routine repair of facilities and upkeep of land.</li> <li>• Operation of facilities engaged in research and development activities.</li> </ul>
	<p>Exclude alterations, modifications, or improvements to facilities and land, which will be reported in object class 32.0, <i>Land and structures</i>.</p>
	<p>Contracts for the conduct of basic and applied research and development. Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Advisory and assistance services for research and development (object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>).</li> <li>• Operation and maintenance of R&amp;D facilities (object class 25.4, <i>Operation and maintenance of facilities</i>).</li> </ul>
	<p>Payments to contractors for medical care. Include payments to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Medicare contractors.</li> <li>• Private hospitals.</li> </ul>

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
25.7	<p>Operation and maintenance of equipment</p> <p>Operation, maintenance, repair, and storage of equipment, when done by contract with the private sector or another Federal Government account.</p> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Nursing homes.</li> <li>• Group health organizations for medical care services provided to veterans.</li> <li>• Carriers by the <i>Employees and retired employees health benefits fund</i> and CHAMPUS.</li> </ul> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contracts with individuals who are reportable under Office of Personnel Management regulations as Federal employees (object class 11.3, <i>Other than full-time permanent</i>, or 11.5, <i>Other personnel compensation</i>, as appropriate).</li> <li>• Payments to compensate casual workers and patient help (object class 11.8, <i>Special personal services payments</i>).</li> </ul> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Contracts with individuals who are reportable under Office of Personnel Management regulations as Federal employees (object class 11.3, <i>Other than full-time permanent</i>, or 11.5, <i>Other personnel compensation</i>, as appropriate).</li> <li>• Payments to compensate casual workers and patient help (object class 11.8, <i>Special personal services payments</i>).</li> </ul> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Storage and care of vehicles and storage of household goods, including those associated with a permanent change of station (PCS).</li> <li>• Operation and maintenance of information technology systems, including maintenance that is part of a rental contract, when significant and readily identifiable in the contract or billing.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rental of information technology systems, services and other rentals, which are classified in object class 23.3, <i>Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges</i>.</li> <li>• Contracts where the principal purpose is to develop or modernize software, which are classified in object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.</li> </ul>
25.8	<p>Subsistence and support of persons</p> <p>Contractual services with the public or another Federal Government account for the board, lodging, and care of persons, including prisoners (except travel items, which are classified under object class 21.0, <i>Travel and transportation of persons</i>, and hospital care, which is classified under object class 25.6, <i>Medical care</i>).</p>
26.0	<p>Supplies and materials</p> <p>Commodities that are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ordinarily consumed or expended within one year after they are put into use.</li> <li>• Converted in the process of construction or manufacture.</li> <li>• Used to form a minor part of equipment or fixed property.</li> <li>• Other property of little monetary value that does not meet any of the three criteria listed above, at the option of the agency.</li> </ul> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Office supplies</i>, such as pencils, paper, calendar pads, notebooks, standard forms (except when specially printed or assembled to order), unprinted envelopes, other office supplies, and property of</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<p>little monetary value, such as desk trays, pen sets, and calendar stands.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Publications, such as pamphlets, documents, books, newspapers, periodicals, records, cassettes, or other publications whether printed, microfilmed, photocopied, or otherwise recorded for auditory or visual use that are off-the-shelf rather than specially ordered by or at the request of the agency.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude publications acquired for permanent collections, which are classified under object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Information technology supplies and materials</i>, such as manuals, data storage media (CD-ROM, diskettes, digital tape), and toner cartridges for laser printers or fax machines.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude purchases of software, which should be classified in either object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>, or object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Chemicals, surgical and medical supplies.</li> <li>• <i>Fuel</i> used in cooking, heating, generating power, making artificial gas, and operating motor vehicles, trains, aircraft, and vessels.</li> <li>• <i>Clothing and clothing supplies</i>, such as materials and sewing supplies used in manufacture of wearing apparel.</li> <li>• Provisions such as food and beverages.</li> <li>• Cleaning and toilet supplies.</li> <li>• Ammunition and explosives.</li> <li>• <i>Materials and parts</i> used in the construction, repair, or production of supplies, equipment, machinery, buildings, and other structures.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude charges for off-the-shelf software purchases which should be classified in object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>, if the purchase is an integral part of a consulting services contract, or object class 31.0, <i>Equipment</i>, if the purchase is considered equipment.</p>
<b>30</b>	<b>ACQUISITION OF ASSETS</b>
31.0	<p>Equipment</p> <p>Purchases of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Personal property of a durable nature, that is, property that normally may be expected to have a period of service of a year or more after being put into use without material impairment of its physical condition or functional capacity.</li> <li>• The initial installation of equipment when performed under contract.</li> </ul> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transportation equipment.</li> <li>• Furniture and fixtures.</li> <li>• Publications for permanent collections.</li> </ul>

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
32.0 Land and structures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tools and implements.</li> <li>• Machinery including construction machinery.</li> <li>• Instruments and apparatus</li> <li>• Information technology hardware or software, custom and commercial off-the-shelf software, regardless of cost, such as central processing units (CPUs), modems, signaling equipment, telephone and telegraph equipment, and large scale system integration services.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude software that is an integral part of consulting services contracts, as defined in object class 25.1, <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>. Also exclude rental of information technology systems and services, which are classified under object class 23.3, <i>Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Armaments</i> including special and miscellaneous military equipment.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude supplies and materials classified under object class 26.0, <i>Supplies and materials</i>; purchase of fixed equipment, which is classified under object class 32.0, <i>Land and structures</i>; and operation, maintenance and repair of equipment classified in object class 25.7, <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>.</p> <p>Purchase and improvement (additions, alterations, and modifications) of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Land</i> and interest in lands, including easements and rights of way.</li> <li>• <i>Buildings and other structures</i>, including principal payments under lease-purchase contracts for construction of buildings.</li> <li>• <i>Nonstructural improvements</i> of land, such as landscaping, fences, sewers, wells, and reservoirs.</li> <li>• <i>Fixed equipment</i> when acquired under contract (whether an addition or a replacement). These are fixtures and equipment that become <i>permanently</i> attached to or a part of buildings or structures. Examples include elevators, plumbing, power-plant boilers, fire-alarm systems, lighting or heating systems, and air-conditioning or refrigerating systems. Include the cost of the initial installation when performed under contract.</li> </ul>
33.0 Investments and loans	<p>Exclude routine maintenance and repair, which will be classified in object class 25.4, <i>Operation and maintenance of facilities</i>.</p> <p>Purchase of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stocks, bonds, debentures, and other securities that are <u>neither</u> U.S. Government securities <u>nor</u> securities of wholly-owned Federal Government enterprises.</li> <li>• Temporary or permanent investments.</li> <li>• Interest accrued at the time of purchase and premiums paid on all investments.</li> </ul> <p>For credit programs, see section <a href="#">185</a> for object classification related to defaults.</p>

Entry	Description
<b>40 GRANTS AND FIXED CHARGES</b>	This major object class covers object classes 41.0 through 44.0.
41.0 Grants, subsidies, and contributions	<p>Cash payments to States, other political subdivisions, corporations, associations, and individuals for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Grants (including revenue sharing).</li> <li>• Subsidies (including credit program costs).</li> <li>• Gratuities and other aid (including readjustment and other benefits for veterans, other than indemnities for death or disability).</li> </ul> <p>Contributions to foreign countries, international societies, commissions, proceedings, or projects that are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Lump sum or quota of expenses.</li> <li>• Fixed by treaty.</li> <li>• Discretionary grants.</li> </ul> <p>Taxes imposed by State and local taxing authorities where the Federal Government has consented to taxation (excluding the employer's share of Federal Insurance Contribution Act taxes) and payments in lieu of taxes.</p> <p><i>Note:</i> Obligations under grant programs that involve the furnishing of services, supplies, materials, and the like by the Federal Government, rather than cash, are not charged to this object class, but to the object class representing the nature of the services, articles, or other items that are purchased.</p>
42.0 Insurance claims and indemnities	<p>Benefit payments from the social insurance and Federal retirement trust funds and payments for losses and claims including those under the Equal Access to Justice Act. Include:</p> <p><i>Social insurance and retirement</i> payments for individuals from trust funds for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Social security.</li> <li>• Medicare.</li> <li>• unemployment insurance.</li> <li>• Railroad retirement.</li> <li>• Federal civilian retirement.</li> <li>• Military retirement.</li> <li>• Other social insurance and retirement programs.</li> </ul> <p>Insurance payments from Federal insurance revolving funds, such as the Bank Insurance Fund, for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Liquidation and insurance.</li> <li>• Litigation settlements due receivers and trustees.</li> <li>• Working capital outlays.</li> <li>• Net case resolution losses.</li> <li>• Other unpaid resolution obligations, not otherwise classified.</li> </ul>

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

Entry	Description
	<p><i>Note:</i> Classify other payments by Federal insurance revolving funds to the object classes to which they apply, for example classify premiums on investments in object class 33.0, <i>Investments and loans</i>, and interest expenses in object class 43.0, <i>Interest and dividends</i>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Other claim or indemnity payments:</li> <li>• To veterans and former civilian employees or their survivors for death or disability, whether service-connected or not.</li> <li>• Of claims and judgments arising from court decisions or abrogation of contracts; indemnities for the destruction of livestock, crops, and the like; damage to or loss of property; and personal injury or death.</li> <li>• To or for persons displaced as a result of Federal and federally assisted programs, as authorized under <a href="#">42 U.S.C. 4622–4624</a>.</li> <li>• For losses made good on Government shipments.</li> <li>• From liquidating accounts on guarantees where no asset is received and where forgiveness is not provided by law.</li> </ul>
43.0 Interest and dividends	<p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payments to creditors for the use of moneys loaned, deposited, overpaid, or otherwise made available.</li> <li>• Distribution of earnings to owners of trust or other funds.</li> <li>• Interest payments under lease-purchase contracts for construction of buildings.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude the interest portion of the payment of claims when a contract has been delayed by the Government. Classify these costs under the same object class used for the original contract.</p>
44.0 Refunds	<p>Payments of amounts previously collected by the Government.</p> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payments to correct errors in computations, erroneous billing, and other factors (see section <a href="#">20.10</a>).</li> <li>• Payments to former employees or their beneficiaries for employee contributions to retirement and disability funds (e.g., payments made when employees die before retirement or before their annuities equal the amount withheld).</li> </ul> <p><i>Note:</i> In the account receiving the refund, previously recorded obligations will be reduced in the appropriate object class(es) by the amount of the refund, if the refund is received in the same year as the obligations are reported (see section <a href="#">20.10</a>).</p>
<b>90 OTHER</b>	This major object class covers object classes 91.0 through 99.5.
91.0 Unvouchered	Charges that may be incurred lawfully for confidential purposes and are not subject to detailed vouchering or reporting.
92.0 Undistributed	Charges that cannot be distributed to the object classes listed above. Use this object class only with the prior approval of OMB.

Entry	Description
93.0	Limitation on expenses This object class is used when there is an annual limitation on administrative or other expenses for revolving and trust funds. (See section <a href="#">83.6</a> ).
94.0	Financial transfers This object class is used for obligations that represent financial interchanges between Federal government accounts that are not in exchange for goods and services.
<b>99.0</b>	<b>Subtotal, obligations</b> This entry is automatically generated by MAX: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For <i>direct or allocation</i> account obligations, the subtotal stub entry should appear when more than one object class category is reported in a single account.</li> </ul> For <i>reimbursable</i> obligations, the subtotal stub entry, "Reimbursable obligations," should appear, even if all reimbursable obligations are classified in a single object class category.
99.5	Below reporting threshold Use this object class adjustment line when: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The sum for an object class entry is \$500 thousand or less, that is, it is below the reporting threshold, <i>and</i></li> <li>The sum of <i>all</i> the below threshold amounts rounds to \$1 million or more.</li> </ul> There will be <i>only one</i> adjustment line per object class schedule. It will: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Follow the last subtotal (object class 99.0) for the schedule.</li> <li>Be coded 9995 in MAX.</li> </ul> Do not report amounts of more than \$4 million in this object class, unless approved by OMB.
99.9	Total new obligations This entry is automatically generated by MAX.

### 83.8 What object classes are associated with civilian and military pay in the baseline?

*Civilian pay* means the budgetary resources used to fund civilian compensation and benefits consistent with object classes 11.1 through 11.5 and 12.1.

*Military pay* means the budgetary resources used to fund military personnel compensation and benefits consistent with object classes 11.7 and 12.2.

### 83.9 How do I classify relocation expenses related to a permanent change of station (PCS)?

When an employee accepts a Federal position at a different location, such as at a different State, this is called a permanent change of station. An agency, at its discretion, may reimburse the employee for a variety of expenses related to the relocation. Follow the instructions in the table to classify these expenses among the object classes.

**SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)**

<b>If the obligations are for ...</b>	<b>Then classify in object class ...</b>
Transportation, per diem while in travel status, or reimbursement of actual travel expenses for the employee or the employee's immediate family	21.0 <i>Travel and transportation of persons</i>
Transportation of household goods, house trailers, and effects	22.0 <i>Transportation of things</i>
Storage and care of vehicles and household goods	25.7 <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>
All other relocation expenses for <i>civilian</i> employees, such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Allowances for expenses incurred in connection with a sale of a residence or settlement of an unexpired lease.</li> <li>• Subsistence when occupying temporary quarters (in contrast to per diem while in travel status, above).</li> <li>• Reimbursements of amounts equal to income taxes incurred by transferred employees for moving or storage expenses under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5724(b)</a>.</li> <li>• Contractual charges for relocation services under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5724(c)</a>.</li> <li>• Miscellaneous moving expenses under <a href="#">5 U.S.C. 5724(a)</a>.</li> </ul>	12.1 <i>Civilian personnel benefits</i>
All other relocation expenses for <i>military</i> personnel	12.2 <i>Military personnel benefits</i>

**83.10 How do I classify purchases related to information technology (IT)?**

For some reason, we have had many questions on how to classify IT obligations among the various object classes. The general rule is to focus on the nature of the services, articles or other items for which obligations are first incurred. The following table shows the application of this rule.

<b>If the obligations are for ...</b>	<b>Then classify in object class ...</b>
IT services or the rental of IT equipment	23.3 <i>Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges</i>
Operation and maintenance of IT systems by the private sector	25.7 <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i>
Operation and maintenance of IT systems by another Federal Government account	25.3 <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>
IT hardware and software	31.0 <i>Equipment</i>
IT supplies and materials, such as manuals, diskettes, toner cartridge	26.0 <i>Supplies and materials</i>



If the obligations are for ...	Then classify in object class ...
IT consulting services in the form of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Management and professional support services.</li> <li>• Studies, analyses, and evaluations.</li> <li>• Engineering and technical services.</li> </ul>	25.1 <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>

### 83.11 How do I classify obligations for education and training?

We have also had many questions on how to classify education and training obligations among the various object classes. The general rule is to focus on the nature of the services, articles or other items for which obligations are first incurred. The following table shows the application of this rule.

If the obligations are for ...	Then classify in object class ...
Payments of tuition to universities or colleges leading to a degree, or for attendance at conferences	25.2 <i>Other services</i>
All other payments to a private sector company for training courses	25.1 <i>Advisory and assistance services</i>
Payments to other Federal government agencies for training courses	25.3 <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>
Cash allowances for the education of dependents that are provided as recruitment and retention incentives for civilian employees	12.1 <i>Civilian personnel benefits</i>
Payment to the loan holder (e.g., the bank) to repay an employee's student loan as a recruitment incentive	12.1 <i>Civilian personnel benefits</i>
Cash allowances for the education of dependents that are provided as recruitment and retention incentives for military personnel	12.2 <i>Military personnel benefits</i>

### 83.12 How do I classify obligations for real property (space, land, and structures)?

Classify obligations for the *purchase, including lease purchase, or improvement* (that is, alteration or modification) of real property in object class 32, *Land and structures*.

Classify the *rental or lease* of real property, as follows:

If the obligation are for ...	And if ...	Then classify in object class ...
Payment to another Federal government account	The other account is GSA's Federal Buildings Fund*	23.1 <i>Rental payments to GSA</i>
Payment to another Federal government account	The other account is NOT GSA's Federal Buildings Fund	25.3 <i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts</i>

SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)

If the obligation are for ...	And if ...	Then classify in object class ...
		Note: The paying account must use this <u>object class code</u> but may change the title to "Rental payments to GSA."
Payment to the private sector		23.2 <i>Rental payments to others</i>

\* Classify amounts for the *standard* services, such as cleaning and security, covered by the *basic rental charge* assessed by GSA in object class 23.1, *Rental payments to GSA*. However, if the payment is for rent "related" services provided by GSA in addition to services provided under rental payments, for example, extra protection or extra cleaning, report the amounts under object class 25.3, *Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts*.

**GSA operating delegations.** When GSA *delegates* the operation of a facility back to an agency ("operating delegations"), the agency is in charge of operating the facility.

GSA bills for basic rental charges differ depending on whether the building is owned or leased by GSA.

For GSA-leased buildings, the GSA bills the total (gross) amount of the basic rental charge which includes a charge for operating the building. In these cases, the following transactions occur:

- GSA bills the agency for the *gross* amount of the basic rental charge.
- Agency records obligations in object class 23.1, *Rental payments to GSA*, and pays GSA's Federal Buildings Fund the *gross* amount.
- GSA *rebates* the amount for operating the facility back to the agency.
- Agency records the amount rebated as offsetting collections.
- If the agency, in turn, contracts with the private sector to clean the facilities, the obligations are classified in object class 25.4, *Operation and maintenance of facilities*.
- If the agency, in turn, contracts with another agency (for example, to guard the building), the obligations are classified in object class 25.3, *Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts*.

The above treatment will continue for rental of ***GSA-leased buildings***.

***Beginning in FY 1999, for GSA-owned buildings only***, GSA began billing agencies with operating delegations for the *net* amount. Amounts for *standard* services that have been delegated back to the agencies are no longer included in object class 23.1.

**83.13 How do I classify obligations for Federal civilian retirement under CSRS?**

Use the following:

If the obligations are for ...	Then classify in object class ...
The accrual for the future retirement cost of current civilian personnel covered by CSRS that is charged to the	12.1 <i>Civilian personnel benefits</i>

If the obligations are for ...	Then classify in object class ...
<p>accounts that pay direct compensation to those personnel</p> <p>Note: The corresponding receipts credited to the civil service retirement and disability trust fund are treated as undistributed offsetting receipts (Employer share, employee retirement on the inter fund transaction line).</p>	
<p>The Government's share of retirement costs that amortize increases in the static unfunded liability created since October 20, 1969 by any statute which authorizes new or liberalized benefits, an extension of retirement coverage, or pay increases</p> <p>Note: This applies to OPM's "Payment to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund" account only.</p>	12.1 <i>Civilian personnel benefits</i>
<p>Interest on the static unfunded liability and annuity disbursements attributable to military service and the payment to provide annuities to former spouses of annuitants who died between September 1978 and May 1986 and who did not elect survivor coverage</p> <p>Note: This applies to OPM's "Payment to the Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund" account only.</p>	13.0 <i>Benefits for former personnel</i>
<p>Payments to CSRS retirees</p> <p>Note: This applies to OPM's "Civil Service Retirement and Disability Fund" account only.</p>	42.0 <i>Insurance, claims, and indemnities</i>

### 83.14 How do I classify obligations for military retirement?

Since 1985, when the financing of military retirement changed to an accrual basis, the payments should be classified as follows:

If the obligations are ...	Then classify in object class ...
<p>The accrual for the future retirement cost of current military personnel that is charged to the accounts that pay direct compensation to those personnel</p> <p>Note: The corresponding receipts credited to the military retirement trust fund are treated as undistributed offsetting receipts (Employer share, employee retirement on the inter fund transaction line).</p>	12.2 <i>Military personnel benefits</i>
<p>From general revenues to the military retirement fund to finance retirement costs for service prior to 1985</p> <p>Note: This applies to the "Payment to Military Retirement Fund" account only.</p>	13.0 <i>Benefits for former personnel</i>

If the obligations are ...	Then classify in object class ...
Made to military retirees Note: This applies to the "Military Retirement Fund" account only.	42.0 <i>Insurance, claims, and indemnities</i>

### 83.15 How do I classify intragovernmental transactions?

For payments between two Federal government accounts for:

- Relocation expenses, see section [83.9](#);
- Information technology, see section [83.10](#);
- Education and training, see section [83.11](#);
- Real property, see section [83.12](#);
- Federal civilian retirement under CSRS, see section [83.13](#); and
- Military retirement, see section [83.14](#).

For other payments between two Federal government accounts, classify the obligations as follows:

If the obligations are ...	Then classify in object class ...
Transfers by the paying account to reimburse the receiving account for an asset or a service <i>with a specific object class</i>	<p>The paying account should classify the <i>direct</i> obligations in the object class that best describes the purchase, such as:</p> <p>21.0 <i>Travel and transportation of persons</i></p> <p>22.0 <i>Transportation of things</i></p> <p>23.1 <i>Rental payments to GSA</i></p> <p>23.2 <i>Rental payments to others</i></p> <p>23.3 <i>Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges</i></p> <p>24.0 <i>Printing and reproduction</i></p> <p>25.1 <i>Advisory and assistance services</i></p> <p>25.4 <i>Operation and maintenance of facilities</i></p> <p>25.5 <i>Research and development contracts</i></p> <p>25.6 <i>Medical care</i></p> <p>25.7 <i>Operation and maintenance of equipment</i></p> <p>25.8 <i>Subsistence and support of persons</i></p> <p>26.0 <i>Supplies and materials</i></p> <p>31.0 <i>Equipment</i></p> <p>32.0 <i>Land and structures</i></p> <p>33.0 <i>Investment and loans</i></p> <p>43.0 <i>Interest and dividends</i></p>

If the obligations are ...	Then classify in object class ...	
Transfers by the paying account to reimburse the receiving account for an asset or a service <i>without a specific object class</i>	44.0	<i>Refunds</i>
Transfers where the transfer merely moves resources between Federal and trust fund accounts. Normally these transfers result from appropriations action or general transfer authority where the obligations are simply accounting transfers.	25.3	<i>Purchases of goods and services from Government accounts.</i> Do not use this object class if a more specific object class applies.
	94.0	<i>Financial transfers</i>
		Note: The paying account should report direct obligations in object class 94.0 and the receiving account should distribute the obligations as direct obligations in the appropriate object classes.

### 83.16 How do I classify obligations under the Intergovernmental Personnel Act (IPA)?

Under the IPA, a Federal employee, with his or her consent, may be assigned temporarily to a non-Federal organization.

- *Detailed Federal employees.* A detailed Federal employee continues to receive pay, allowances, and benefits from the Federal agency. In some cases, these costs are reimbursed by the non-Federal organization.
- *Federal employees on LWOP.* A Federal employee on LWOP is paid by the non-Federal organization to which he or she is assigned. The salary paid by the non-Federal organization may be more or less than the employee's current Federal salary. If the rate of pay of the non-Federal organization is less, then the Federal agency may pay a supplemental salary to the employee.

Also under the IPA, an employee of a non-Federal organization may be assigned temporarily to a Federal agency either (1) with a temporary Federal appointment or (2) on detail.

- *Non-Federal employees with temporary Federal appointments.* A non-Federal employee with a temporary Federal appointment is paid by the Federal agency to which he or she is assigned. However, he or she is eligible to enroll in the Federal Employees Health Benefits program only if the Federal appointment results in the loss of coverage under the non-Federal health benefits system. He or she is not covered by any retirement system for Federal employees or by the Federal Employees Group Life Insurance Program.
- *Non-Federal employees detailed to a Federal Position.* A non-Federal employee who is detailed to a Federal agency continues to receive pay, allowances, and benefits from the non-Federal organization to which he or she is employed. In some cases these costs may be reimbursed by the Federal agency. In addition, if the non-Federal salary of the employee on detail is less than the minimum rate of pay for the Federal position, the Federal agency may supplement the salary to make up the difference.

Cost-sharing arrangements for IPA assignments are negotiated between the participating organizations. The Federal agency may agree to pay all, some, or none of the costs associated with an assignment. These include basic pay, supplemental pay, fringe benefits, and travel and relocation expenses. A Federal agency may not reimburse a non-Federal organization for indirect or administrative costs associated with the assignment.

**SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)**

Because of these cost sharing arrangements you should use the following table to classify these obligations.

<b>If the obligations are ...</b>	<b>And if the employees is ...</b>	<b>Then classify in object class ...</b>	
Regular salaries and wages	Federal full-time and on detail to a non-Federal organization	11.1	<i>Full-time permanent</i>
	Federal but not full-time and on detail to a non-Federal organization	11.3	<i>Other than full-time permanent</i>
	non-Federal <i>with a temporary Federal appointment.</i>		
	non-Federal <i>on detail to a Federal agency to provide consulting services</i>	25.1	<i>Advisory and assistance services</i>
	non-Federal <i>on detail to a Federal agency to provide services other than consulting</i>	11.8	<i>Special personal services payments</i>
Supplemental pay	Federal on LWOP non-Federal on detail	11.8	<i>Special personal services payments</i>
Cash incentive awards	Federal	11.5	<i>Other personnel compensation</i>
	non-Federal <i>with a temporary Federal appointment</i>  (Note: you cannot give this type of award to a non-Federal employee who is detailed to a Federal position.)		
Travel or relocation expenses		See sections <a href="#">83.5</a> and <a href="#">83.9</a>	
Other expenses		See section <a href="#">83.5</a>	

**83.17 How is object class information presented in MAX schedule O and the Appendix?**

You must first enter all object class information in MAX schedule O in order to populate the Appendix with object class data. The *Appendix* presents object class information in tables called object class schedules, which display the object class codes, the object class titles, and the amounts of obligations in the past, current, and budget year.

*MAX schedule O.* Object class data are displayed in MAX on the basis of a 4-digit line number. This line number is made up of a *prefix* and a *3-digit object class code*. See the box on exhibit [83A](#) for the type of obligations indicated by each prefix. Also, see exhibit [83A](#) for a list of the 3-digit object class codes.

Note: The 3-digit object class code in MAX schedule O is the same 3-digit object class code in the *Appendix*, except that in the *Appendix* there is a decimal before the last digit. See section [83.7](#) for the definitions of the object classes.

*Appendix schedules.* The object class schedules in the *Appendix* present the 3-digit object class codes and the object class titles.

Normally, the *Appendix* will include a separate object class schedule for each P&F schedule that reports obligations (see exhibits [83B](#) and [83C](#)). However, when all obligations in a P&F schedule are classified in a *single object class*, there will be no object class schedule in the *Appendix*. Instead, the code for the appropriate object class will be identified in the P&F schedule in parentheses () at the end of the line for total new obligations. For example, if all obligations in a P&F are for grants, then "(object class 41.0)" will be at the end of the stub entry on line 10.00 of the P&F. Although there will be no object class schedule in the *Appendix*, you must enter the data in MAX schedule O.

Normally, the *Appendix* includes only one object class line for each object class code and uses the standard titles listed in section [83.7](#). However, you may insert additional object class lines in MAX and edit the standard titles. For example, to present employee travel separately from grantee travel in object class 21.0, *Travel and transportation of persons*, you may insert another line in MAX schedule O, edit the standard titles, and distribute the obligations between the two lines.

When there is a *statutory limitation* on obligations for administrative or other expenses for a revolving or trust fund, you must separately identify the obligations that are covered by the limitation from those that are not. Enter the appropriate prefix (see the box on exhibit [83A](#)) in MAX schedule O. The *Appendix* will present two object class schedules:

- The regular object class schedule will present the *total* obligations for the account. The portion of the obligations that are covered by the statutory limitation is not distributed among the object classes. Instead, the obligations covered by the statutory limitation are presented as a lump-sum on object class line 93, *Limitation on expenses*.
- A separate object class schedule will distribute the obligations covered by the statutory limitation among the various object classes. Since the regular schedule presents total obligations, on line 99.9, to prevent double counting obligations, this schedule presents the sum of the obligations on object class line 93 as a negative (–) amount and the total obligations, on line 99.9, as zero.

*Allocations between agencies.* In some cases, funds appropriated to the President or to an agency are allocated to one or more agencies that help to carry out the program. Obligations incurred under such allocations are included in the data for the account to which the appropriation was made in the allocating agency, that is, the parent account. You must enter the data in MAX schedule O. Use the appropriated prefix in the box on exhibit [83A](#) as the first digit in the 4–digit line number. See exhibit [83C](#) for an illustration of an *Appendix* galley of an object class schedule for a parent account with allocations.

### **83.18 When I report data in MAX schedule O will it generate subtotals or totals?**

Yes. MAX will generate subtotals for different types of obligations from the amounts that you entered, as follows:

- For "reimbursable" obligations (lines 2XXX and 7XXX), MAX will automatically generate subtotal lines (2990 and 7990) when you enter "at least one" amount on lines 2XXX or 7XXX.
- For all other obligations (lines 1XXX, 3XXX, 6XXX, and 8XXX), MAX will automatically generate subtotal lines (1990, 3990, 6990, and 8990) when you enter "more than one" amount on lines 1XXX, 3XXX, 6XXX, or 8XXX.

MAX will generate "Total new obligations" on line 9999, when you enter more than one amount above this line.

**SECTION 83—OBJECT CLASSIFICATION (MAX SCHEDULE O)**

---

Amounts that are generated for you by MAX will appear as the color "blue" on the screen of most personal computers. You may override these amounts by entering a different amount in MAX. Amounts that you override will appear as the color "green." However, you will receive error messages when the amounts are not within rounding tolerances (see [Appendix D](#)).



Summary of Object Class Codes and Standard Titles (MAX Schedule O)

3-digit object class code	Standard Titles	4-digit object class line number in MAX schedule O.
	<b>Personnel compensation and benefits</b>	
	Personnel compensation	
X111	Full-time permanent	
X113	Other than full-time permanent	
X115	Other personnel compensation	
X117	Military personnel	
X118	Special personal services payments	
<b>X119</b>	<b>Total personnel compensation*</b>	
X121	Civilian personnel benefits	
X122	Military personnel benefits	
X130	Benefits for former personnel	
	<b>Contractual services and supplies</b>	
X210	Travel and transportation of persons	
X220	Transportation of things	
	Rent, communications, and utilities	
X231	Rental payments to GSA	
X232	Rental payments to others	
X233	Communications, utilities, and miscellaneous charges	
X240	Printing and reproduction	
	Other contractual services	
X251	Advisory and assistance services	
X252	Other services	
X253	Other purchases of goods and services from Government accounts	
X254	Operation and maintenance of facilities	
X255	Research and development contracts	
X256	Medical care	
X257	Operation and maintenance of equipment	
X258	Subsistence and support of persons	
X260	Supplies and materials	
	<b>Acquisition of assets</b>	
X310	Equipment	
X320	Land and structures	
X330	Investments and loans	
	<b>Grants and fixed charges</b>	
X410	Grants, subsidies, and contributions	
X420	Insurance claims and indemnities	
X430	Interest and dividends	
X440	Refunds	
	<b>Other</b>	
X910	Unvouchered	
X920	Undistributed	
X930	Limitation on expenses	
X940	Financial transfers	
<b>X990</b>	<b>Subtotal, obligations *</b>	
9995	Below reporting threshold	
<b>9999</b>	<b>Total new obligations *</b>	
	* Automatically calculated by MAX	

Prefix	Type of obligation
1xxx	Parent account -- direct
2xxx	Parent account -- reimbursable
3xxx	Allocation account
6xxx	Limitation schedule -- direct
7xxx	Limitation schedule -- reimbursable
8xxx	Limitation schedule -- allocation
9xxx	Total new obligation

**Object Classification—Without Allocation Accounts**

**DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY  
Salaries and Expenses**

Report data rounded to the nearest million. If the total of amounts that fall below the threshold rounds to \$1 million or more, report the total in object class 99.5. To determine the amount on line 99.5, add the below threshold amounts in thousands, and round the total to the nearest million.

Use to show payments that do not represent salaries or wages paid directly to Federal employees (section 83.5).

VGOV08161166  
S3643

**Object Classification (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 09-2650-0-1-301		PY act.	CY est.	BY est.
Direct obligations:				
Personnel compensation:				
11.1	Full-time permanent.....	113	112	115
11.3	Other than full-time permanent.....	3	3	3
11.5	Other personnel compensation.....	3	3	3
11.8	Special personal services payments.....	1	1	1
11.9	Total personnel compensation.....	120	119	122
12.1	Civilian personnel benefits.....	24	24	25
23.1	Rental payments to GSA.....	23	23	24
25.4	Operation and maintenance of facilities.....	5	5	5
25.7	Operation and maintenance of equipment.....	1	1	1
-----				
99.2	Undistributed.....	4	4	4
99.0	Direct obligations.....	211	208	209
99.0	Reimbursable obligations.....	26	27	28
99.5	Below reporting threshold.....	1	2	2
99.9	Total new obligations.....	238	237	239

Use this entry to report transfers between Federal and trust funds resulting from appropriation action or general transfer

The reimbursable subtotal line will always appear whenever more than one category (e.g., direct, reimbursable, allocation, etc.) is reported and whenever any reimbursable obligations are reported in nonrevolving fund accounts.

Total new obligations and subtotals for direct and reimbursable obligations will agree with the corresponding amounts on the program and financing schedule.

**Object Classification—With Allocation Accounts**

**DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
BUREAU OF PUBLIC WORKS  
Construction**

VGOV08161166  
S3643

**Object Classification** (in millions of dollars)

Identification code 16-3044-0-1-452 PY act. CY est. BY est.

BUREAU OF PUBLIC WORKS				
Personnel compensation:				
11.1	Full-time permanent.....	47	54	56
11.3	Other than full-time permanent.....	2	3	3
11.5	Other personnel compensation.....	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>
11.9	Total personnel compensation.....	50	57	60
12.1	Civilian personnel benefits.....	9	12	12
21.1	Travel and transportation of persons.....	4	2	2
99.0	Subtotal, obligations, Bureau of Public Works.....	971	711	561

Where there is only one allocation, the center heading and the subtotal line will contain the name of the organizational unit involved and the distribution below will be omitted.

ALLOCATION ACCOUNTS				
Personnel compensation:				
11.1	Full-time permanent.....	23	27	28
11.3	Other than full-time permanent.....	1	2	2
11.5	Other personnel compensation.....	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>	<u>1</u>
11.9	Total personnel compensation.....	25	30	31
12.1	Civilian personnel benefits.....	5	6	6
99.0	Subtotal, obligations, allocation accounts.....	<u>60</u>	<u>55</u>	<u>50</u>
99.9	Total new obligations.....	1,031	766	611

This entry will agree with the total new obligations on the program and financing schedule.

Obligations are distributed as follows:				
	Bureau of Public Works.....	971	711	561
	Bureau of Inspection.....	30	35	30
	Department of the Interior.....	10	5	5
	General Services Administration.....	20	20	25

In the distribution of total obligations, the parent organizational unit will be listed first, followed, as applicable, by (a) other bureaus within the same agency, and (b) other agencies in budget order.



## SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)

**Table of Contents**

84.1	What is the purpose of the character classification system?
84.2	What terms do I need to know?
84.3	What do I need to know about reporting the data and relationships with other data requirements?
84.4	How do I report character classification in MAX?
Ex-84	Summary of Character Classification Codes (Schedule C)

**Summary of Changes**

Drops the projection of budget authority and outlays beyond the budget year, except for grant outlays, which will continue to be projected to BY+9 (section 84.3(d)).

Moves memorandum R&D entries on R&D performed by colleges and universities and allocation of research funds to spreadsheet submission (section 25.5).

Updates definitions of National Science and Technology Council crosscuts (section 84.4).

**84.1 What is the purpose of the character classification system?**

We use character classification to distinguish between investment and non-investment activities. Investments finance activities that yield benefits largely in the future. We also use character classification to report data on grants to State and local governments separately from direct Federal programs. Character class line numbers include the following:

- Investment activities:
  - ▶ Lines 13xx, physical assets.
  - ▶ Lines 14xx, research and development (R&D).
  - ▶ Lines 15xx, education and training.
- Non-investment activities:
  - ▶ Lines 2xxx.

The classification system also allows for compilation of additional information on R&D funding that is used by OMB and others in the review of agency budget requests, Government-wide resource allocation, and R&D budget presentations.

See exhibit [84](#) for a summary of character classification line numbers. See section [84.4](#) for detailed descriptions of all of the line numbers that you must use to report character classification.

**84.2 What terms do I need to know?**

(a) *State or local governments.*

For preparing character classification data, State or local governments include the following:

## SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)

---

- The 50 States and the District of Columbia.
- Cities, counties, townships, school districts, special districts, and other local governmental units, as defined by the Bureau of the Census.
- Puerto Rico, the Virgin Islands, and other U.S. territories.
- The Federated States of Micronesia, Marshall Islands, and Palau, if the payments are a relatively small part of the accounts that have grants to State or local governments.
- Indian Tribal governments when:
  - ▶ The legislation authorizing the payment includes such entities within the definition of eligible State or local units.
  - ▶ The Tribal government acts as a nonprofit agency operating under State or local auspices.
- Quasi-public nonprofit entities, such as community action agencies, when the boards of such entities must either be elected in State or local elections, or must include significant representation of State or locally-elected officials.

### (b) *Grants to State and local governments.*

Report budget authority and outlays as grants to State and local governments if the Federal government's resources support State or local programs of government operations or provision of services to the public. For reporting character classification data, grants include the following:

- Direct cash grants to State or local governmental units, to other public bodies established under State or local law, or to their designee.
- Payments for grants-in-kind, such as purchases of commodities distributed to State or local governmental institutions, for example, school lunch programs.
- Payments to nongovernmental entities when such payments result in cash or in-kind services or products that are passed on to State or local governments, for example, payments to the Corporation for Public Broadcasting, or to the American Printing House for the Blind.
- Payments to regional commissions and organizations that are redistributed at the State or local level to provide public services.
- Payments to State and local governments for research and development that is an integral part of the State and local governments' provision of services to the general public (e.g., research on crime control financed from law enforcement assistance grants, or on mental health associated with the provision of mental rehabilitation services; see discussion below for exclusions related to research and development and payments for services rendered).
- Direct loan or loan guarantee subsidies to State or local governments.
- Shared revenues. These payments to State or local governments are computed as a percentage of the proceeds from the sale of certain Federal property, products, or services (e.g., payments from receipts of Oregon and California grant lands). Also included are tax or other collections by the

Federal Government that are passed on to State or local governments (e.g., internal revenue collections for Puerto Rico).

Exclude the following:

- Federal administrative expenses associated with grant programs.
- Grants directly to profit-making institutions, individuals, and non-profit institutions not covered above, for example, payments to Job Corps centers and trainees.
- Payments for research and development not directly related to the provision of services to the general public, for example, basic research awarded via competitive grants.
- Payments for services rendered, for example, utility services, training programs and expenses for Federal employees, research and development for Federal purposes conducted under contracts, grants, or agreements by such agencies as the National Institutes of Health (NIH), the National Science Foundation (NSF), the Department of Energy (DOE), the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA), and the Department of Defense (DOD).
- Federal grants to cover administrative expenses for regional bodies and other funds not redistributed to the States or their subordinate jurisdictions, for example, the administrative expenses of the Appalachian Regional Commission.

(c) *Direct Federal programs.*

Federal programs that are not classified as grants to State and local governments will be classified as direct Federal programs.

### **84.3 What do I need to know about reporting the data and relationships with other data requirements?**

(a) *Expenditure accounts.*

Report total budget authority and outlays net of offsetting collections. This means that the sum of budget authority and outlay entries in schedule C (excluding memorandum entries) will equal budget authority and outlays net of offsetting collections in schedule A.

You must report offsetting collections from the sale of physical assets (e.g. land, structures, equipment, or commodities) in the corresponding physical asset character classes.

You must report credit reform program accounts related to investments (i.e., for physical assets, the conduct of research and development, or the conduct of education and training) net of offsetting collections.

You must report budget authority and outlays by subfunction.

Do not report character class for credit financing accounts.

OMB does not control the character classification of expenditure accounts. If the nature of an account changes and requires the use of different classes, you may enter budget authority and outlays in MAX under the appropriate character class without advance approval from OMB.

## SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)

---

As a general rule, if a transaction fits into more than one classification, report it in the classification category with the lowest numerical character classification code. For example, record amounts for construction of research and development facilities in the appropriate 13xx grouping, not in the 14xx grouping.

If grants to State or local governments or investments are financed by payments from one Federal account to a second Federal account, you must ensure that the amounts are recorded as grants or investments only once (i.e., ensure that they are not double-counted). As a general rule, the amounts should be recorded as follows:

- For all grants to State or local governments, record the grants in the second account, i.e., the account that actually makes the payment to the State or local government.
- For direct Federal investment (which includes all investments except grants to State or local governments), record the investment in the account that is primarily responsible for funding the investment. (Note that grants to research institutions are classified as direct Federal investment, not as grants to State or local governments). This is usually the initial account. For example, if the Environmental Protection Agency provides funds to the National Science Foundation for research, record the R&D in the EPA account that funds the research, not in NSF. However, in certain cases, primary responsibility might occur in the second account. For example, regarding rental payments to the GSA Federal Buildings Fund, some of the rental receipts may ultimately be used for construction by GSA. In these situations, the investment should be recorded in the second account because primary responsibility for the investment would be in that account.

Where accounts are split between two or more character classifications, omit a classification involving less than \$1 million in each of the three fiscal years, and include the amounts in some larger classification for that particular account.

**Grants:** You must report grants by BEA subcategory (e.g. discretionary or mandatory). In some cases, grants to State and local governments allow the recipient jurisdiction the option of using funds for current or investment-type purposes, such as in community development block programs. In such instances, record all of the budget authority and outlays for grants in the category where the majority of the funds is anticipated to be used.

**R&D:** Schedule C previously contained memorandum entries that supplemented, and were a subset of, R&D information reported on lines 1311–xx through 1432–xx. Information on R&D performed by colleges and universities, and allocation of research funds will now be collected via an Excel spreadsheet (see section 25.5). Memorandum entries will continue to be used to collect information on crosscutting R&D data for specific areas identified by the National Science and Technology Council (NSTC).

### (b) *Receipt accounts.*

You must also report offsetting receipts for PY through BY by character class in schedules K and R. OMB controls the character classification of offsetting receipts centrally, and you must ask your OMB representative to change the classification in the Budget Account Title (BAT) file before you can enter data under a different code. (See section [79.1](#) for proposing changes to the BAT file. )

Report character class information for collections deposited in offsetting receipt accounts in schedules K (baseline) and R (policy) using the instructions in section 81.4 (e). You must use line 2004–xx for offsetting receipt accounts, with the following two exceptions:



- You must report the proceeds from the sale of physical assets (e.g., land, structures, equipment, or commodities) in the corresponding physical asset character classes; and
- You must report credit reform offsetting receipt accounts for downward reestimates and negative subsidies for investment-related programs (i.e., for physical assets or for the conduct of education and training) on the appropriate investment line number (i.e., 13xx or 1512).

(c) *Relationships with other data requirements.*

For each account, the totals for character class entries in schedule C (excluding the memorandum (non-add) entries for cross-cutting R&D data) must equal total budget authority and outlays net of offsetting collections reported in schedule A in each year.

You should be able to reconcile information reported in this schedule related to the conduct of research and development with information reported in the National Science Foundation Annual Survey of Federal Funds for Research and Development (see description of line 14xx).

Actual outlays for past year grants and shared revenue must be consistent with the respective amounts reported to the Department of Commerce, Bureau of the Census, pursuant to the instructions regarding its "Federal Aid to States" publication.

(d) *Outyear projections.*

A-11 data will be reported for PY through BY. MAX will automatically generate outyear projections of grant outlays through BY+9 based on in-year data. Other entries will be shown through BY only.

For the projection of grant outlays, using an algorithm, MAX will assume that the percentage of grant outlays estimated for the outyears is the same as that reported in the BY. For example, if 18 percent of outlays in the account is on line 1511-02 (grant outlays for education and training) in BY, then 18 percent of net outlays will be estimated on line 1511-02 for each outyear. Agencies may view these outyear projections on-screen. If projections do not accurately reflect outyear policy, you may override the projections by entering the correct amounts (not percentages) directly into MAX.

#### **84.4 How do I report character classification in MAX?**

Character class data in schedules C, K, and R are identified by a line number that consists of a four-digit number and a two-digit suffix (xxxx-xx). The line number identifies data as investment or noninvestment, and as grants or direct Federal programs.

Classify all investment activities in the 1xxx series and all noninvestment activities in the 2xxx series. For credit program accounts, classify subsidies for direct loans and loan guarantees and their administrative expenses according to the purpose of the program. For example, credit subsidies for construction should be in the character class for construction and rehabilitation, and credit subsidies for the conduct of education should be in the character class for the conduct of education and training.

The two-digit suffix differentiates among budget authority, outlays, and offsetting receipts, as follows:

- 01—Budget authority.
- 02—Outlays.
- 03—Offsetting receipts.

Ensure that data are reported in the correct categories. For example, report data on R&D activities using the appropriate R&D character class entries. Report data on activities other than R&D in non-R&D

**SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)**

character classes. Only some of the following codes apply to offsetting receipts; they are specifically noted below with an asterisk (\*). All of the line numbers apply to budget authority and outlays.

The following table indicates the line numbers you use to report character classification. See exhibit [84](#) for a summary of the coding structure.

Entry	Description
<b>1xxx INVESTMENT ACTIVITIES</b>	Budget authority, outlays, or offsetting receipts for programs that yield benefits largely in the future.
<b>13xx Physical assets:</b>	Amounts for the purchase, construction, manufacture, rehabilitation, or major improvement of physical assets regardless of whether the assets are owned or operated by the Federal Government, States, municipalities, or private individuals. Physical assets are land, structures, equipment, and intellectual property (e.g., software) that have an estimated useful life of two years or more; and commodity inventories. The cost of the asset includes both its purchase price and all other costs incurred to bring it to a form and location suitable for its use.
131xx Construction and rehabilitation:	Amounts for construction and rehabilitation, including both grants and direct Federal programs. Construction and rehabilitation means the design and production of fixed works and structures or substantial alterations to such structures or land. Includes new works and major additions, alterations, improvements to and replacements of existing works. Excludes preliminary surveys, maintenance, repair, administration of such facilities and other Federal operating expenses.
Research and development facilities: 1311-xx Grants to State and local governments 1312-xx Direct Federal programs	Amounts for the construction and rehabilitation of research and development facilities (see category 14xx for the definition of research and development). Includes the acquisition, design, and construction of, or major repairs or alterations to, all physical facilities for use in R&D activities. Facilities include land, buildings, and fixed capital equipment, regardless of whether the facilities are to be used by the Government or by a private organization, and regardless of where title to the property may rest. Includes the international space station and such fixed facilities as reactors, wind tunnels, and particle accelerators.  Include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Construction of R&amp;D facilities only.</li> </ul> Exclude: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Other facility funding (show on line 1313-xx or 1314-xx).</li> <li>• Movable R&amp;D equipment (show on line 132x-xx).</li> </ul>
Other construction and rehabilitation:	Amounts for all other construction and rehabilitation.

**SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)**

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
1313–xx Grants to State and local governments	
1314–xx Direct Federal programs	
132x Major equipment:	Amounts for identifiable items of major equipment, including information technology (see section 53), vehicles, ships, machine tools, aircraft, tanks, satellites and other physical assets in space, and nuclear weapons. Excludes routine purchases of ordinary office equipment or furniture and fixtures. However, where there are major programs for acquisition of equipment, includes all equipment purchases.
Research and development equipment:	
1321–xx Grants to State and local governments	Amounts for major equipment for research and development. (See category 14xx for the definition of research and development.) Includes acquisition or design and production of movable equipment, such as spectrometers, research satellites, detectors, and other instruments. At a minimum, this should include programs devoted to the purchase or construction of R&D equipment.
1322–xx Direct Federal programs	
Other major equipment:	Amounts for all other major equipment.
1323–xx Grants to State and local governments	
1324–xx Direct Federal programs	
Commodity inventories:	Amounts for federally-owned commodities held for resale or in stockpiles.
1330–xx* Direct Federal programs	
Proceeds from the sale of commodities	Offsetting receipts collected from the sale of federally-owned commodities that were previously purchased by the government or from reduction in stockpiles.
Purchases and sales of land and structures for Federal use:	Amounts for purchase, including lease-purchases, of land and structures for use by the Federal Government and sales of such land and structures. Includes office buildings and park and forest lands. Does not include land or structures acquired as temporary inventory, such as collateral on defaulted loans.
1340–xx* Direct Federal programs	
Receipts from sales of property or assets	Offsetting receipts collected from sales of federally-owned property or assets used by the Federal Government. Includes office buildings and park and forest lands.
Other physical assets:	Amounts for all other physical assets, such as conservation, reforestation and range improvements; grants to State or local governments for the purchase of land or structures; and amounts for certain privately-held assets, including improvements to private farms, land and structures acquired as collateral on defaulted loans, and sales of such land and structures. Does not include operation and maintenance of land and structures.
1351–xx Grants to State and local governments	
1352–xx* Direct Federal programs	
Receipts from sales of other physical Assets	Offsetting receipts collected from the sale of physical assets not used by the Federal Government. Includes

SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)

Entry	Description
	sales of assets obtained by the Federal Government as collateral on defaulted loans.
<b>14xx Conduct of research and development (R&amp;D):</b>	<p>Research and development (R&amp;D) activities comprise creative work undertaken on a systematic basis in order to increase the stock of knowledge, including knowledge of man, culture and society, and the use of this stock of knowledge to devise new applications.</p> <p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Administrative expenses for R&amp;D.</li> </ul> <p>Exclude:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Physical assets for R&amp;D such as R&amp;D equipment and facilities (show on line 13xx).</li> <li>• Routine product testing, quality control, mapping, collection of general-purpose statistics, experimental production, routine monitoring and evaluation of an operational program, and the training of scientific and technical personnel.</li> </ul> <p>Definitions of basic and applied research and development are provided below. You should be able to reconcile information reported in this schedule with information subsequently reported in the National Science Foundation Annual Survey of Federal Funds for Research and Development.</p>
<p>Basic research:</p> <p>1411-xx Grants to State and local governments</p> <p>1412-xx Direct Federal programs</p>	Basic research is defined as systematic study directed toward fuller knowledge or understanding of the fundamental aspects of phenomena and of observable facts without specific applications towards processes or products in mind.
<p>Applied research:</p> <p>1421-xx Grants to State and local governments</p> <p>1422-xx Direct Federal programs</p>	Applied research is defined as systematic study to gain knowledge or understanding necessary to determine the means by which a recognized and specific need may be met.
<p>Development:</p> <p>1431-xx Grants to State and local governments</p> <p>1432-xx Direct Federal programs</p>	Development is defined as systematic application of knowledge or understanding, directed toward the production of useful materials, devices, and systems or methods, including design, development, and improvement of prototypes and new processes to meet specific requirements.
<b>Memorandum R&amp;D entries for the conduct of National Science and Technology Council (NSTC) crosscuts</b>	
1463-xx Climate Change Science Programs, which incorporate the U.S. Global Change Research Program and the Climate Change Research Initiative	<p><i>Research focused on:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Observing and documenting global environmental changes and identifying their causes.</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
1464–xx Networking and information technology R&D	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Predicting the responses of the Earth system.</li> <li>• Determining the ecological, human health, and socioeconomic consequences of these changes.</li> <li>• Identifying strategies for adaptation and mitigation that will most benefit society and the environment.</li> </ul> <p>Additionally, near-term, results-oriented research focused on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Emerging science areas that offer prospect of significant improvement where additional resources would accelerate progress.</li> <li>• Observations, monitoring and data management.</li> <li>• Decision support tools for national, regional, and local discussions.</li> </ul> <p>P.L. 101–606 requires this program crosscut.</p> <p>Research and development focused on:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Large scale networking</i>, including component and communications technologies, network engineering, simulation, modeling, and systems software.</li> <li>• <i>High-end computing research and development</i>, including emphasis on usability and effectiveness, storage systems, system software, devices, and architectures.</li> <li>• <i>High-end computing infrastructure and applications</i>, including R&amp;D and tools for computation- or information-intensive applications; algorithms; programming environments; test systems; and collaboration, visualization, and data management.</li> <li>• <i>High confidence software and systems</i>, including R&amp;D for tools, techniques, and engineering, experimentation, and demonstration to improve system security, survivability, availability, reliability, and safety.</li> <li>• <i>Human computer interface and information management</i>, including research in perception, attention, pattern recognition, decision-making, multilingual document translation and understanding; collaboratories; digital libraries; and information management, exploitation, and visualization.</li> </ul>

SECTION 84—CHARACTER CLASSIFICATION (SCHEDULE C)

Entry	Description
1465–xx National nanotechnology initiative	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Software design and productivity</i>, including end-user programming, component-based software, software for embedded systems, and autonomous software.</li> <li>• <i>Social, economic, and workforce</i>, including implications of IT and IT workforce development</li> </ul>
1465–xx National nanotechnology initiative	<p>Research and technology development at the atomic, molecular, or macromolecular levels, in the length scale of approximately 1–100 nanometer range, to provide a fundamental understanding of phenomena and materials properties at the nanoscale and to model, create, characterize, manipulate, and use structures, devices, and systems that have novel properties and functions because of their small or intermediate size. The novel and differentiating properties and functions are developed at a critical length scale of matter typically under 100 nanometers. Nanotechnology research and development includes integration of nanoscale structures into larger material components, systems, and architectures. Within these larger scale assemblies, the control and construction of their structures and components devices remains at the nanometer scale.</p>
<b>15xx Conduct of education and training:</b>	<p>Amounts for programs whose primary purpose is education, training, and vocational rehabilitation. Includes veterans' education and training; operating assistance for elementary, secondary, vocational, adult, and higher education; agricultural extension services; and income support activities directly contingent upon participating in such programs. Excludes training of military personnel or other persons in government service. Also excludes amounts for physical assets, which are classified in 13xx, and amounts for the conduct of research and development, which are classified in 14xx.</p>
1511–xx Grants to State and local governments	
1512–xx* Direct Federal programs	
Receipts from education and training	<p>Offsetting receipts for negative subsidies, and downward reestimates of loan subsidies that are associated with the conduct of education and training.</p>
<b>2xxx NON-INVESTMENT ACTIVITIES</b>	Amounts that are not classified as investment activities.
Grants to State and local governments:	Grant amounts that are not classified as investment activities.
2001–xx Other than shared revenues	
2003–xx Shared revenues	
2004–xx* Direct Federal programs	<p>Amounts for all other non-investment activities. Includes transactions related to credit liquidating accounts.</p>
All other offsetting receipts	<p>Offsetting receipts collected and deposited in receipt accounts that are not otherwise classified.</p>

Summary of Character Classification Codes (Schedule C)

4 digit prefix	Standard titles	Schedule C's 6 digit line numbers are comprised of a 4 digit prefix and a 2 digit suffix.
<b>INVESTMENT ACTIVITIES</b>		
	<b>Physical assets:</b>	
	Construction and rehabilitation:	
1311-xx <sup>1</sup>	Research and development facilities: Grants	2 digit suffix xxxx-01 Budget authority xxxx-02 Outlays xxxx-03 Offsetting receipts
1312-xx	Research and development facilities: Direct Federal programs	
1313-xx <sup>1</sup>	Other construction and rehabilitation: Grants	
1314-xx	Other construction and rehabilitation: Direct Federal program	
	Major equipment:	Totals for budget authority and outlays reported in schedule C must equal those reported in schedule A net of offsetting collections.
1321-xx <sup>1</sup>	Research and development equipment: Grants	
1322-xx	Research and development equipment: Direct Federal programs	
1323-xx <sup>1</sup>	Other major equipment: Grants	
1324-xx	Other major equipment: Direct Federal programs	
1330-xx	Commodity inventories: Direct Federal programs	
1340-xx	Purchases and sales of land and structures for Federal use: Direct Federal programs	
1351-xx <sup>1</sup>	Other physical assets: Grants	
1352-xx	Other physical assets: Direct Federal programs	
	<b>Conduct of research and development:</b>	
1411-xx <sup>1</sup>	Basic research: Grants	The ten shaded categories are used to report R&D activities.
1412-xx	Basic research: Direct Federal programs	
1421-xx <sup>1</sup>	Applied research: Grants	
1422-xx	Applied research: Direct Federal programs	
1431-xx <sup>1</sup>	Development: Grants	
1432-xx	Development: Direct Federal programs	
	<i>Memorandum (non-add) R&amp;D entries</i>	
1463-xx	National Science and Technology Council (NSTC) crosscuts: Climate change science programs	
1464-xx	Networking and information technology R&D	
1465-xx	National nanotechnology initiative	
	<b>Conduct of education and training:</b>	
1511-xx <sup>1</sup>	Grants	
1512-xx	Direct Federal programs	
<b>NON-INVESTMENT ACTIVITIES</b>		
2001-xx <sup>1</sup>	Grants-other than shared revenues	1 You must report budget authority and outlays for grants by BEA subcategory (e.g. discretionary or mandatory).
2003-xx <sup>1</sup>	Grants-shared revenues	
2004-xx	Direct Federal programs	





## SECTION 85—PERFORMANCE METRICS (SCHEDULE V)

**Table of Contents**

- 85.1 What do I need to know about the performance metrics schedule?
- 85.2 How does the performance metrics schedule relate to the P&F?
- 85.3 How does the line numbering work for the performance metrics schedule?
- 85.4 What would an example of this schedule look like?

**Summary of Changes**

This new section describes performance metrics that we will publish in the budget. In conjunction with other changes in the P&F schedule, this new schedule will help provide a framework to better link cost and performance data. Agencies are encouraged, but not required, to show performance metrics for accounts in the FY 2005 Budget.

### 85.1 What do I need to know about the performance metrics schedule?

In the past two years, some agencies used informational tables to show performance metrics for some of their accounts in the *Appendix*. These metrics typically included outputs or workload measures. The performance metrics added a new dimension to the *Appendix*, but they failed to tell a complete story as they did not include related cost information. In addition, even informed readers could not necessarily make a link between the performance metrics and cost information in other Budget schedules, particularly the program activities in the program & financing (P&F) schedule.

As an upgrade to the informational tables used in the past to show performance metrics, the FY 2005 Budget will include a schedule that shows these metrics. Using a schedule, rather than informational tables, provides a better framework to collect performance metrics, and better relates them to obligations in the P&F. Your performance metrics will consist of either short-term outcomes (that relate to long-term outcomes in the agency strategic plan and/or performance budget) or outputs and output characteristics described in your agency's performance budget. (See [section 26](#) for information on performance budgets.) You may find it helpful to use the following two criteria to select performance metrics for this schedule:

First, choose a small number of the most important metrics you wish to showcase in the budget. You will not typically include all metrics, which readers can find in your agency's performance budget. You should use metrics from the Performance Assessment Rating Tool (PART) if the account, or a component of the account, has been rated by the PART. As the PART performance measures focus on outcomes, which may be difficult to relate to annual funding levels, you may choose to include output metrics not explicitly listed in the PART. In addition, during the PART assessment you should tell your OMB examiner what metrics you propose to highlight in the Budget.

Second, when possible, show metrics that you can directly track against obligations. For some accounts, this alignment may be impractical.

Agencies are encouraged, but not required, to show performance metrics for accounts in the FY 2005 Budget. Cabinet departments and major independent agencies are encouraged to show performance metrics for at least one account per bureau. Other agencies are also encouraged to show performance metrics for at least one of their accounts.

### **85.2 How does the performance metrics schedule relate to the P&F?**

The program by activity section in the P&F schedule has been modified so that agencies can show performance activities, and their related obligations, within program activities. You use performance activity lines in the P&F to show the financing that is directly related to a specific performance metric (e.g., outcomes or outputs).

For example, in the FY 2004 Budget, the Bureau of Land Management within the Department of the Interior (DOI) showed a Management of lands and resources account, which includes a program activity named Land resources. One component of land resources involves managing wild horses and burros, and was shown in the FY 2004 Budget in an information table on workload and performance measures.

If DOI could readily determine the obligations related to wild horses and burros, and decided this was an important performance metric to include in the FY 2005 Budget, it could do so by showing the outputs related to the wild horses and burros in the performance metric schedule. It would also add a performance activity, with related obligations, for wild horses and burros under the Land Resource program activity in the P&F.

Accounts that include performance metrics in the FY 2005 Budget must link to obligations in the P&F schedule in one of three ways.

First, you can create a direct link between obligations and performance metrics within the account. You can do this by using a P&F performance activity, and showing one metric for this activity. When doing this, the obligations for the P&F performance activity are used to finance the performance metric, and do not finance other activities. You may only use one performance metric per P&F performance activity.

Second, you can create a less direct link between obligations and performance metrics within the account. You can do this by using a P&F program activity, and showing one or more related performance metrics. When doing this, the obligations shown for the P&F program activity finance the performance metric(s), and, potentially, other metrics that may not be shown. In this case, there is a direct link between the program activity and the metric, but it is not clear what level of obligations finance each metric.

Third, you can create an indirect link between obligations and performance metrics within the account. You can do this by selecting one or more performance metrics that relate to the account as a whole, or to two or more program activities within the account, rather than relating to either a P&F performance activity or a P&F program activity. When doing this, the total obligations shown for the account finance the performance metric(s), as well as other metrics that may not be shown. In this case, there is a direct link between the account and the metric, but it is not clear what level of obligations finance each metric.

### **85.3 How does the line numbering work for the performance metrics schedule?**

The line code consists of a 4-digit line number and 2-digit line serial number. The table below shows what line codes you should use when completing the schedule on performance metrics.

---

**SCHEDULE OF PERFORMANCE METRICS**


---

Entry	Description
XXXX.XX	<p>When one performance metric is financed from a P&amp;F performance activity, use the same line number and line serial number you used for the P&amp;F performance activity.</p> <p>You may only use one performance metric per P&amp;F performance activity.</p> <p>You must use the MAX A-11 data entry software to indicate whether the metric is an outcome or an output.</p>
XXXX.9#	<p>When a P&amp;F program activity finances one or more performance metrics, use the same line number you used for the P&amp;F program activity. In addition, use 9 for the first digit of the line serial number, and use 1-9 for the second digit of line serial number.</p> <p>You may provide up to nine performance metrics for a single P&amp;F program activity.</p> <p>You must use the MAX A-11 data entry software to indicate whether the metric is an outcome or an output.</p>
1000.XX	<p>When there is no direct link between a performance metric and either a program activity or a performance activity in the P&amp;F, use 1000 as the line number. Use 01 through 10 as the line serial number.</p> <p>You may provide up to 10 performance metrics that relate to a single P&amp;F account.</p> <p>You must use the MAX A-11 data entry software to indicate whether the metric is an outcome or an output.</p>
9999.99	<p>Use line 9999 and line serial number 99 to provide a web address where readers can find additional information about performance metrics related to this account. This web address may point readers to the agency's strategic plan or performance budget.</p>

**85.4 What would an example of this schedule look like?**

Here is an example of a program by activity section in the P&F, and a performance metrics schedule that has four metrics related to the Land resources activity. This example illustrates the second type of link between obligations and performance metrics discussed in Section 85.2. In this case, there is a link between the program activity and the metrics, but it is not clear what level of obligations finance each metric.

SECTION 85—PERFORMANCE METRICS (SCHEDULE V)

<b>Sample Program by Activity Section Program and Financing Schedule</b>				
<i>Identification code 14-####-0-1-302</i>		<i>2003 actual</i>	<i>2004 est.</i>	<i>2005 est.</i>
<b>Obligations by program activity</b>				
00.11	Land resources	###	###	###
00.12	Wildlife and fisheries	###	###	###
00.13	Threatened and endangered species	##	##	##
00.14	Recreation management	##	##	##
09.01	Reimbursable program	##	##	##
10.00	Total new obligations	#,###	#,###	#,###

<b>Sample Performance Metrics</b>				
<i>Program Activity and Metrics</i>		<i>2003 actual</i>	<i>2004 est.</i>	<i>2005 est.</i>
00.11.00	Land resources program activity			
00.11.91	Energy related land use plans completed	4	5	6
00.11.92	Grazing Permits Renewed	1,600	1,600	1,600
00.11.93	Recreation sites in good or fair condition based on facility condition index (%)	82	84	85
00.11.93	Restoration treatments to achieve desired condition (# of acres treated)	500,000	400,000	300,000
<i>Location of additional performance information</i>				
99.99.99	www.webaddress.gov			

## SECTION 86—OTHER MAX DATA

**Table of Contents**

*Special schedules requiring user input*

- 86.1 What do I need to know about the personnel summary (schedule Q)?  
 86.2 What do I need to know about balance sheets (schedule F)?  
 86.3 What do I need to know about budget plans (schedule D)?  
 86.4 What do I need to know about reporting budget year appropriations requests in thousands of dollars (schedule T)?

*Special schedules with optional user input*

- 86.5 What do I need to know about the schedule on the status of funds (schedule J)?

*Special schedules automatically generated by MAX*

- 86.6 What do I need to know about the schedule on unavailable receipts (schedule N)?  
 86.7 What do I need to know about the summary of budget authority and outlays?

Ex-86A Balance Sheet (MAX Schedule F)

Ex-86B Budget Year Appropriations Request in Thousands of Dollars (MAX Schedule T)

**Summary of Changes**

Drops the commercial versus inherently governmental distinction in the personnel summary (schedule Q) (section 86.1).

Drops the statement of operations (schedule E) and drops CY and BY from the balance sheet (schedule F) (section 86.2).

Drops the requirement for certain accounts to submit status of funds data (section 86.5).

Drops offsetting collections from the schedule on unavailable receipts (schedule N) (section 86.6).

Clarifies how MAX calculates the “appropriation, net” lines in schedule N (section 86.6).

Drops the schedule of on the status of contract authority (schedule I).

**86.1 What do I need to know about the personnel summary (schedule Q)?**

This Appendix schedule shows the total full-time equivalent (FTE) employment of straight-time compensable workyears (i.e., not overtime) financed by an account for PY through BY. FTE employment includes straight-time hours for ceiling exempt employees and excludes estimates for terminal leave, overtime and holiday hours. The method for calculating FTE employment is described in [section 32.3](#). You must provide a personnel summary when an account contains an entry for personnel compensation in the object class schedule (i.e., object class entry 11.1 or 11.3 (see [section 83.7](#))). For allocation accounts, the receiving agency must provide a personnel summary reporting the FTEs, but the parent agency will report the obligation.

When an agency hires another agency to perform work, the hiring agency reports no FTEs and shows the obligations in a non-employment object class. The performing agency hired to do the work reports both the FTEs and funding on a reimbursable basis.

The definition of object class 11.1 (see [section 83.7](#)) stipulates that compensation must be included for all workdays in the fiscal year. You must ensure that FTE levels in the personnel summary and funding for FTEs in the object class schedule are reported consistently.

You must also ensure that agency-wide FTE totals agree with the "approved" levels in the current and budget years. Prior year FTEs in the personnel summary must equal the year-end FTE usage that your agency reported on the SF 113–G to the Office of Personnel Management (OPM). See [Appendix E, exhibit E2](#) for a diagnostic report that compares agency-wide "approved" FTE levels with FTE levels in the personnel summary. See [section 32.3](#) for policies related to FTE levels.

Use the four-digit line numbering scheme described in the following table to code entries in MAX schedule Q.

#### PERSONNEL SUMMARY

Entry	Description
Xxxx	The first digit of the line number distinguishes between direct, reimbursable, and other categories, consistent with the reporting of data in the object classification schedule (see <a href="#">section 83.4</a> ). Use the following codes: 1—direct 2—reimbursable 3—allocation account 6—limitation account-direct 7—limitation account-reimbursable
xXxx	The second digit of the line number distinguishes between civilian and military personnel. Use the following codes: 0—civilian personnel 1—military personnel
xx0x	The third digit is 0.
xxx1	The fourth digit is 1.

#### 86.2 What do I need to know about balance sheets (schedule F)?

##### (a) *General instructions.*

The balance sheet provides information on program assets, liabilities, and net position and is used to assess the resources available for Federal programs for PY-1 through PY.

You must submit balance sheets for:

- All Government-sponsored enterprise funds;

- Credit liquidating and financing accounts; and
- Revolving funds, when specifically required by OMB.

For budget presentation purposes, data in program and financing schedules (MAX schedule P) fulfill the legal requirement in 31 U.S.C. 9103 for "business-type budget" information on wholly-owned Government corporations in the President's budget.

Amounts in schedule F for PY-1 should be consistent with your agency's audited financial statements.

You must submit a separate balance sheet for supplemental requests and proposed legislation items that shows the effect of the supplemental request or proposed legislation on the information presented in the regular schedule for the account.

Prepare balance sheets in the format of exhibit 86B, with audited actual amounts as of the close of PY-1 and actual amounts as of the close of PY.

(b) *Entries of balance sheet.*

Use the entries listed below to prepare the balance sheets. These entries correspond to entries used in OMB Bulletin No. 97-01 entitled, Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements, as amended, which instructs agencies to prepare financial statements at the entity level. Use the terms, definitions, and instructions provided in that bulletin to prepare the balance sheets at the account level. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

If your agency is a Government-sponsored enterprise (GSE), you will need to modify line entries to reflect the non-Federal status of GSE's. Consult your OMB representative for additional guidance.

**BALANCE SHEET**

Entry	Description
<b>ASSETS</b>	
<i>Federal assets:</i>	
These assets arise from transactions among Federal agencies. Federal agency assets are claims of a Federal agency against other Federal agencies which, when collected, can be used in the agency's operations.	
1101 Fund balances with Treasury	The unobligated and obligated balances with Treasury for which you are authorized to make expenditures and pay liabilities, including clearing account balances and the dollar equivalent of foreign currency account balances. Your agency's fund balance with Treasury also includes the unobligated balances in guaranteed loan financing accounts, the obligated balances in direct loan financing accounts, and the unobligated and obligated balances in liquidating accounts.
<i>Investments in Federal securities:</i>	Total investments in Federal securities. These consist of securities issued by Federal agencies including non-marketable par value Treasury securities, market-based Treasury securities, marketable Treasury securities, and securities issued by other Federal agencies.

**SECTION 86—OTHER MAX DATA**

<b>Entry</b>		<b>Description</b>
1102	Treasury securities, net	Net value of Treasury securities acquired (-- the par (face or nominal) value of a security minus the amount of any unamortized discounts or plus the amount of any unamortized premiums.
1104	Agency securities, net	Net value of agency securities acquired (-- the par (face or nominal) value of a security minus the amount of any unamortized discounts or plus the amount of any unamortized premiums.
1106	Receivables, net	Accounts receivable and interest receivable, net of uncollectible amounts. Interest receivable is the amount of interest income earned but not received for an accounting period. Report receivables from Federal agencies separately from receivables from non-Federal entities (on line 1206). Report interest receivable related to direct loans and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans separately below as a component of credit program receivables.
1107	Advances and prepayments	Advances are cash outlays made by a Federal agency to cover a part or all of the recipients' anticipated expenses or advance payments for the costs of goods and services the agency is to receive. Prepayments are payments made by a Federal agency to cover certain period expenses before those expenses are incurred. Advances and prepayments made to Federal agencies are intragovernmental and are accounted for and reported separately from those made to non-Federal entities.
<i>Non-Federal assets:</i>		
These assets arise from transactions of the Federal Government with non-Federal entities. These entities include domestic and foreign persons and organizations outside the U.S. Government.		
1201	Investments in non-Federal securities, net	Securities issued by State and local governments, private corporations, and government-sponsored enterprises, net of premiums, discounts and allowances for losses. Securities are normally reported at acquisition cost or amortized acquisition cost. However, you should use market value when there is: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• An intent to sell the securities prior to maturity; and</li> <li>• A reduction in the value of the securities that is more than temporary.</li> </ul>
1206	Receivables, net	Accounts and interest receivable due from non-Federal entities, net of an allowance for estimated uncollectible amounts. Do not recognize interest as revenue on accounts receivable or investments that are determined to be uncollectible unless the interest is actually collected. Report interest receivable related to direct loans and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans as a component of credit program receivables.
1207	Advances and prepayments	Advances are cash outlays made by a Federal agency to its employees, contractors, grantees or others to cover a part or all of the recipients' anticipated expenses or advance payments for the costs of goods and services the agency receives. Prepayments are payments made by a Federal agency to cover certain periodic expenses before those expenses are incurred.



Entry	Description
<i>Credit program receivables and related foreclosed property:</i>	
These items represent the net value of assets related to pre-1992 and post-1991 direct loans receivable and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans receivable.	
Net value of assets related to post-1991 direct loans receivable:	
1401	Direct loans receivable, gross The face value of all direct loans outstanding excluding amounts repaid or written off.
1402	Interest receivable Amount of interest receivable.
1403	Accounts receivable from foreclosed property Amount of accounts receivable related to foreclosed property.
1404	Foreclosed property Value of foreclosed property associated with post-1991 direct and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans at the net present value of the projected cash flows associated with the property. To practicably accomplish this requirement, you may record foreclosed property at the estimated net realizable value at the time of foreclosure. A portion of the related allowance for subsidy account will apply to the foreclosed property, but that amount need not be separately determined. Rather, subtract the allowance account from the sum of the credit program assets to determine the net present value of the assets.
1405	Allowance for subsidy cost (-) The unamortized amount of subsidy expenses for the direct loan disbursements that the direct loan financing account has made in that year and all previous years, for all direct loans outstanding. (The allowance for subsidy costs of a direct loan is the present value of estimated cash outflows over the life of the loan minus the present value of estimated cash inflows. It is due to defaults, delinquencies, lending at interest rates below the Treasury borrowing rate, etc., with an offset for fees, penalties, and recoveries.)
<b>1499</b>	<b>Net present value of assets related to direct loans</b> The sum of lines 1401 through 1405.
<i>Net value of assets related to post-1991 acquired defaulted guaranteed loans receivable:</i>	
1501	Defaulted guaranteed loans receivable, gross Amount of defaulted guaranteed loans that resulted in the acquisition of a loan receivable that is still outstanding.
1502	Interest receivable on defaulted guaranteed loans Amount of interest receivable related to defaulted guaranteed loans.
1504	Foreclosed property related to defaulted guaranteed loans The estimated net realizable value of related foreclosed property.
1505	Allowance for subsidy cost on defaulted guaranteed loans (-) The unamortized amount of subsidy for those defaulted guaranteed loans that the guaranteed loan financing account has acquired in that year and all previous years, for all such loans outstanding that are still held by the financing account. (The subsidy of a defaulted guaranteed loan is the present value of estimated cash outflows over the life of the loan minus the present value of estimated cash inflows. It is due to defaults,

SECTION 86—OTHER MAX DATA

Entry	Description
	delinquencies, interest subsidies, etc., with an offset for fees, penalties, and recoveries.)
<b>1599 Net present value of assets related to defaulted guaranteed loans</b>	The sum of lines 1501 through 1505.
<i>Net value of assets related to pre-1992 direct loans receivable and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans receivable:</i>	
1601 Direct loans, gross	For each pre-1992 direct loan program, report loans gross.
1602 Interest receivable	Amount of interest receivable.
1603 Allowance for estimated uncollectible loans and interest (-)	Estimated amount of loans and interest that will not be collected.
<b>1604 Direct loans and interest receivable, net</b>	The sum of lines 1601 through 1603.
1605 Accounts receivable from foreclosed property	Amount of accounts receivable related to foreclosed property.
1606 Foreclosed property	The estimated net realizable value of related foreclosed property.
<b>1699 Value of assets related to direct loans</b>	The sum of lines 1604 through 1606.
1701 Defaulted guaranteed loans, gross	For each pre-1992 loan guarantee program, report receivables as defaulted guaranteed loans acquired by the Government.
1702 Interest receivable	Amount of interest receivable related to defaulted guaranteed loans.
1703 Allowance for estimated uncollectible loans and interest (-)	Estimated amount of defaults on loans, interest, and accounts receivable.
<b>1704 Defaulted guaranteed loans and interest receivable, net</b>	The gross amount of defaulted guaranteed loans that resulted in the acquisition of a loan receivable, and interest receivable, net of an allowance for uncollectible amounts. The sum of lines 1701 through 1703.
1705 Accounts receivable from foreclosed property	Amount of accounts receivable related to foreclosed property.
1706 Foreclosed property	The estimated net realizable value of related foreclosed property.
<b>1799 Value of assets related to loan guarantees</b>	The sum of lines 1704 through 1706.
Other Federal assets:	
1801 Cash and other monetary assets	The total of all cash resources and all other monetary assets. Cash consists of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Coins, paper currency, and readily negotiable instruments, such as money orders, checks, and bank drafts on hand or in transit for deposit;</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amounts on demand deposit with banks or other financial institutions;</li> <li>• Cash held in imprest funds; and</li> <li>• Foreign currencies, which, for accounting purposes, should be translated into U.S. dollars at the exchange rate on the financial statement date.</li> </ul> <p>Other monetary assets include gold, special drawing rights, and U.S. Reserves in the International Monetary Fund. This category is principally for use by the Treasury.</p>
1802 Inventories and related properties	<p>Inventory is tangible personal property that is:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Held for sale;</li> <li>• In the process of production for sale; or</li> <li>• To be consumed in the production of goods for sale or in the provision of services for a fee. It includes inventory (i.e., items held for sale), operating materials and supplies, stockpile materials, seized and forfeited property, and goods held under price support and stabilization programs.</li> </ul>
1803 Property, plant and equipment, net	<p>The amount of real and personal property (i.e., land, structures and facilities, construction in progress, purchased and self-developed software, equipment and related improvements) that has been capitalized, net of accumulated depreciation if any. Also includes assets acquired by capital leases and leasehold improvements; and property owned by the agency in the hands of the agency or contractors.</p>
1901 Other assets	Other assets not included on the lines above.
<b>1999 Total assets</b>	The sum of lines 1101 through 1207, 1499, 1599, 1699, 1799, 1801 through 1901.

### LIABILITIES

Recognize liabilities when they are incurred regardless of whether they are covered by available budgetary resources. This includes liabilities related to canceled appropriations.

*Federal liabilities:*

These liabilities arise from transactions among Federal agencies. Federal liabilities are claims against the agency by other Federal agencies.

2101 Accounts payable	The amounts owed by a Federal agency for goods and services received from, progress in contract performance made by, and rents due to other Federal agencies.
2102 Interest payable	The amount of interest expense incurred but unpaid on debts to other Federal agencies.
2103 Debt	The cumulative amounts of borrowing (less repayments) from the Treasury, the Federal Financing Bank, or other Federal agencies.

SECTION 86—OTHER MAX DATA

Entry	Description
2104 Resources payable to Treasury	Amounts of collections or receivables that must be transferred to Treasury.
2105 Other	Use this item for other liabilities that are not recognized in specific categories or lines above. Include advances and prepayments received from other Federal agencies for goods to be delivered or services to be performed and deposit fund amounts held in escrow.
<i>Non-Federal liabilities:</i>	
These liabilities arise from transactions of an agency of the Federal Government with non-Federal entities. Non-Federal liabilities are claims against the agency by non-Federal entities.	
2201 Accounts payable	The amounts owed by a Federal agency for goods and services received from, progress in contract performance made by, and rents due to non-Federal entities.
2202 Interest payable	The amount of interest expense incurred but unpaid on debt owed to non-Federal entities.
2203 Debt	Debt issued to non-Federal entities under general or special financing authority (e.g., Treasury bills, notes, bonds and FHA debentures).
2204 Liabilities for loan guarantees	For guaranteed loan financing accounts, report the net present value of the estimated cash flows to be paid as a result of loan guarantees. For liquidating accounts, report the amount of known and estimated losses. (The net present value of estimated cash flows is the present value of estimated cash outflows over the life of the loan guarantee minus the present value of estimated cash inflows. It is due to defaults, interest subsidies, etc., with an offset for fees, penalties, and recoveries.)
2205 Lease liabilities, net	<p>The present value of the liability for capital leases. A capital lease is one that transfers substantially all the benefits and risks inherent in the ownership of property. This transfer occurs if, at the inception of the lease, one or more of the following criteria exist:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ownership of the property is transferred to the lessee by the end of the lease term;</li> <li>• The lease contains a bargain purchase option;</li> <li>• The lease term is substantially (i.e., 75% or more) equal to the estimated useful life of the leased property; or</li> <li>• At the beginning of the lease term, the present value of the minimum lease payments, with certain adjustments, is 90% or more of the fair value of the property.</li> </ul> <p>The lessee accounts for such a lease as the acquisition of an asset and the incurrence of a liability.</p>
2206 Pension and other actuarial liabilities	For agency-administered pension, health insurance and similar plans requiring actuarial determinations. Report the actuarial accrued liability for pension, health insurance, and similar plans requiring actuarial determination using the aggregate entry age normal method.

Entry	Description
Other	<p>Other liabilities that are not recognized in specific categories. Include in this line the total amount due non-Federal entities for other liabilities that are not included on other lines above. This includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Entitlement benefits due and payable at the end of the year;</li> <li>• Advances and prepayments received from other non-Federal agencies or the public for goods to be delivered or services to be performed;</li> <li>• Deposit fund amounts held in escrow, estimated losses for commitments, and contingencies if: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ Information available before the statements are issued indicates an asset probably has been impaired or a liability incurred as of the date of the statements; and</li> <li>▶ The amount can be reasonably estimated as a specific amount or range of amounts (e.g., the amount of employee accrued annual leave (i.e., earned but not used) that would be funded and paid from future years' appropriations).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>Examples of commitments and contingencies for which you should report the estimated losses on this line are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insurance—Insurance payments due for losses resulting from bank failures, crop failures, floods, expropriations, loss of life, and similar unplanned events.</li> <li>• Indemnity agreements—reimbursements due to licensees or contractors for losses incurred in support of Government activities.</li> <li>• Adjudicated claims—claims against the Government that are in the process of judicial proceedings.</li> <li>• Commitments to international institutions—payments due to international financial institutions.</li> </ul>
<b>2999 Total liabilities</b>	The sum of lines 2101 through 2207.
<b>NET POSITION</b>	
The components of net position are classified as follows:	
3100 Unexpended appropriations	The portion of the agency's appropriations represented by undelivered orders and unobligated balances.
3300 Cumulative results of operations	The net results of operations since inception plus the cumulative amount of prior period adjustments, including the cumulative amount of donations and transfers of assets in and out without reimbursement.
<b>3999 Total net position</b>	The sum of lines 3100 through 3300.
<b>4999 Total liabilities and net position</b>	The sum of lines 2999 and 3999.

**86.3 What do I need to know about budget plans (schedule D)?**

Only DoD-Military submits a special schedule on obligations for PY through BY.

Use the entries in the following table to prepare MAX schedule D. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

**BUDGET PLAN**

Entry	Description
Direct program: 06xx, 07xx [List individual activities for which data are reported.]	Amount of obligations incurred or estimated to be incurred from an appropriation, regardless of the timing of the obligations, for direct program activities. (In other words, for a multi-year appropriation, report total obligations to be incurred during the entire period of availability in the year in which the appropriation is enacted.)  For the third and fourth digits, use the values of 01 through 89 to identify direct program activities in the budget plan.
<b>xx91 Subtotal, direct</b>	Use the value 91 for subtotals of direct program activities, as follows:  0691—subtotal for activities coded 0601 through 0689.  0791—subtotal for activities coded 0701 through 0789.  Subtotals are required only if there are multiple entries within the subgroupings listed above.
0801 Reimbursable program	Amount of obligations incurred or estimated to be incurred from an appropriation, as defined above, for reimbursable activities. Report data on reimbursable programs as a single entry.
<b>0893 Total budget plan</b>	Total obligations reported in the budget plan.

**86.4 What do I need to know about reporting budget year appropriations requests in thousands of dollars (schedule T)?**

Use MAX schedule T to report, in thousands of dollars, the net amount of budget year budgetary resources contained in the appropriations language request for your account (see [exhibit 86B](#)). Exclude spending authority from offsetting collections. If your account has appropriations language requesting new spending authority for the budget year (e.g., accounts that report discretionary appropriations, discretionary limitations on expenses, and appropriated entitlements), you are required to complete schedule T for amounts reported in the regular budget schedule under transmittal code 0. (see [section 79.2](#)).

For the majority of budget accounts, only a single entry is required. For consolidated and merged accounts, use separate line entries to report the budget year appropriation request for each component account. Identify all line entries with the account involved using the six-digit basic account symbol assigned by the Treasury Department (see [exhibit 86B](#)). This code is required in order to enter data on the budget year request.

Exclude amounts that will be applied to repay debt, liquidate contract authority, or liquidate deficiencies from the amounts reported. For transfers specified in appropriations language, report amounts on a pre-transfer basis. Do not include advance appropriations that will become available in the budget year and advance appropriations requested in the budget year for a future fiscal year in the amounts reported. For

indefinite appropriations, enter your best estimate. Ensure that all amounts reported in MAX schedule T are consistent with the amounts reported in the program and financing schedule (MAX schedule P).

### 86.5 What do I need to know about the schedule on the status of funds (schedule J)?

This Appendix schedule presents cash flow data for certain special, trust, and other funds. The MAX database generates the data for the status of funds schedule from other data and stores it in the database as schedule J.

The accounts listed in the following table require a schedule J.

#### FUNDS REQUIRED TO SUBMIT STATUS OF FUNDS DATA

Agency	Account
HHS	Federal hospital insurance trust fund
	Federal supplementary medical insurance trust fund
Interior	Abandoned mine reclamation fund
Labor	Unemployment trust fund
	Black lung disability trust fund
State	Foreign service retirement and disability fund
Transportation	Highway trust fund
	Airport and airways trust fund
	Oil spill liability trust fund
Veterans Affairs	National service life insurance fund
	United States Government life insurance fund
DOD-Civil	Military retirement fund
	Education benefits fund
	Uniformed services retiree health care fund
EPA	Hazardous substance superfund
	Leaking underground storage tank trust fund
IAP	Overseas Private Investment Corporation (noncredit)
OPM	Civil service retirement and disability fund
	Employees health benefits fund
SSA	Federal old-age and survivors insurance trust fund
	Federal disability insurance trust fund
RRB	Rail industry pension fund
	Supplemental annuity pension fund
	Railroad social security equivalent benefit fund

MAX generates schedule J from:

- Data you enter in other MAX schedules for the receipt and expenditure accounts that make up the fund;
- Data you entered in reports for par value and unrealized discounts of Federal securities and uninvested balances to the Treasury that is used to publish the Treasury Combined Statement;
- Data on uninvested balances and unrealized discounts that you enter directly into schedule J;
- For selected accounts, data on outstanding debt to Treasury and commitments against unexpended balances that you enter directly into schedule J; and
- With OMB approval, subaccount detail for cash income and cash outgo that you enter directly into schedule J.

The budget includes only *one* schedule J for each of the specified funds. The schedule covers all the collections in the receipt accounts and all the appropriations of those receipts to the various expenditure accounts that make up the fund. It aggregates all the data reported under different transmittal codes to a single schedule presented under transmittal code 0. The CY and BY columns of schedule J include any effects of supplemental requests (transmittal code 1), rescission proposals (transmittal code 5) and proposed legislation (transmittal codes 2, 3, and 4).

When you make changes to other MAX schedules that affect the fund (for example, you change receipt estimates in schedule R), you will see the effect on MAX schedule J *the following day*, after the MAX system incorporates the changes as part of the overnight production process.

The following table identifies the source for each line in MAX schedule J. Even though much of the data is automatically generated and you cannot change amounts, you can change the line titles of the detail lines (1200–5589 and 7625–7650) through MAX A–11 data entry.

#### SCHEDULE ON THE STATUS OF FUNDS

Entry	Description and Source
<i>Unexpended balance, start of year:</i>	Start of year balances of budgetary resources and investments in Federal securities, net of amounts borrowed from the Treasury.
0100 Treasury balance	MAX derives the PY amount from the <i>Undisbursed Funds</i> at the start of the year reported in the Treasury Combined Statement (formerly known as the Treasury Annual Report), and, in exceptional cases, the uninvested unappropriated receipts recorded at Treasury. MAX copies CY and BY amounts from the end of year amounts reported on line 8700 for the previous year.
0101 Federal securities: Par value	MAX derives the PY amount from the balance of <i>Investments in Public Debt Securities</i> and <i>Investments in Agency Securities</i> at the start of the year reported in the Treasury Combined Statement, and copies CY and BY amounts from line 9201 in MAX schedule P.
0102 Unrealized discounts (–)	MAX derives the PY amount from the balance of <i>unrealized discount on investments</i> (–) and the <i>unamortized premium and discount</i> (+/–) at the start of the year reported in the Treasury



Entry	Description and Source
	Combined Statement, and copies CY and BY amounts from the end of year amounts reported on line 8702 for the previous year.
0105 Outstanding debt to Treasury (–)	MAX derives the PY amount from the end of year amount reported on line 8705 in the previous year's <i>Budget Appendix</i> , and copies CY and BY amounts from the end of year amounts reported on line 8705 for the previous year.
0199 Total balance, start of year	<p>Except for the Highway and Airport and Airway Trust Funds, MAX calculates this amount as the sum of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unobligated balances in schedule P (lines 2140);</li> <li>• Obligated balances in schedule P (lines 7240); and</li> <li>• Unavailable collections in schedule N (line 0199).</li> </ul> <p>The amount on this line should equal the sum of lines 0100 through 0105. If it does not, you will receive an error message.</p>
<b><i>Cash income during the year:</i></b>	Collections deposited in special and trust fund receipt accounts and offsetting collections (cash) credited to expenditure accounts. MAX presents current law amounts (transmittal codes 0 and 3) separately from proposed legislation amounts (transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5). You can change the titles of the detail lines to better describe the nature of the collections.
<i>Current law:</i>	
Receipts:	
1200–1219	Unless you have made other arrangements with OMB, MAX copies the detail lines from amounts reported in schedule R under transmittal codes 0 and 3. MAX lists each receipt account separately by title.
Offsetting receipts (proprietary):	
1220–1239	MAX will use a line serial number of 01 for lines that are automatically generated. Subaccount lines that are manually entered will have separate line serial numbers for each subaccount, as described in the MAX A–11 User's Guide.
Offsetting receipts (intragovernmental):	
1240–1259	
Offsetting governmental receipts:	
1260–1279	
Offsetting collections:	
1280–1289	MAX copies these amounts from amounts reported in schedule P under transmittal codes 0 and 3 on lines 8800–8845.
1299 Income under current law	Subtotal for income under present law. MAX calculates this amount as the sum of the receipts and collections reported in schedules R and P for transmittal codes 0 and 3.
<i>Proposed legislation:</i>	
Receipts:	
2200–2219	MAX copies the detail lines from amounts reported in schedule R under transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5. Each receipt account will be listed separately by title.
Offsetting receipts (proprietary)	
2220–2239	

SECTION 86—OTHER MAX DATA

Entry	Description and Source
Offsetting receipts (intragovernmental): 2240–2259	
Offsetting governmental receipts: 2260–2279	
Offsetting collections: 2280–2289	MAX copies these amounts from amounts reported in schedule P under transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5 on lines 8800–8845.
2299 Income under proposed legislation	Subtotal for income under proposed legislation. MAX calculates this amount as the sum of the receipts and collections reported in schedules R and P for transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5.
3299 Total cash income	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of the receipts and collections reported in schedules R and P for all transmittal codes.
<hr/>	
<b><i>Cash outgo during the year (-):</i></b>	These entries present the gross outlays from the fund, identified by the nature of the transaction, the activity for which the money was outlaid or, as appropriate, the recipient. MAX presents current law amounts (transmittal codes 0 and 3) separately from proposed legislation amounts (transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5). You can change the titles of the detail lines to better describe the nature of the outlays.
<i>Current law (-):</i> 4500–4589	Unless you have made other arrangements with OMB, MAX automatically generates the detail lines from amounts reported in schedule P on line 7320 for transmittal codes 0 and 3.  MAX will use a line serial number of 01 for lines that are automatically generated. Subaccount lines that are manually entered will have separate line serial numbers for each subaccount, as described in the MAX A–11 User’s Guide.
4599 Outgo under current law (-)	Subtotal for gross outlays under present law. MAX calculates this amount as the sum of the gross outlays reported in schedule P on lines 7320 for transmittal codes 0 and 3.
<i>Proposed legislation:</i> 5500–5589	MAX automatically generates the detail lines from amounts reported in schedule P on line 7320 for transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5.  MAX uses line serial numbers in the range 01–05 to identify different transmittal codes, as described in the MAX User’s Guide.
5599 Outgo under proposed legislation (-)	Subtotal for gross outlays under proposed legislation. MAX calculates this amount as the sum of the gross outlays reported in schedule P on lines 7320 for transmittal codes 1, 2, 4, and 5.
6599 Total cash outgo (-)	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of the gross outlays reported in schedule P for all transmittal codes.  The amount on this line should equal the sum of lines 4500–4589 and 5550–5589. If it does not, you will receive an error message.
<hr/>	
<b><i>Adjustments:</i></b>	
7625 Permanently canceled balances (-)	Amount that is transferred from the expenditure account to the general fund of the Treasury as a result of a specific provision of law. Notify your OMB representative if amounts should be

Entry	Description and Source
	reported on this line; OMB will enter these data centrally.
7645 Transfers, net	Net amount of transfers of budget authority and balances (obligated and unobligated). MAX generates this amount from the transfers reported in schedule P on lines 2221, 2222, 4100, 4200, 6100, 6200, 6861, 6862, 6961, 6962, 7331, 7332.
7650 Other adjustments, net	Other adjustments that affect the fund balances, such as capital transfers to the general fund of the Treasury and repayment of debt. MAX generates this amount from the amounts reported in schedule P on lines 2240, 2260, 4047, 4050, 6047, 6827, 6847, 6927, and 6947.
7699 Total adjustments	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of amounts on lines 7625–7650.
<b><i>Unexpended balance, end of year:</i></b>	
	End of year balances of budgetary resources and investments in Federal securities.
8700 Uninvested balance	MAX derives the PY amount from the <i>Undisbursed Funds</i> at the end of the year reported in the Treasury Combined Statement and the uninvested unappropriated receipts recorded at Treasury. You must input the CY and BY amounts.
8701 Federal securities: Par value	MAX derives the PY amount from the <i>Investments in Public Debt Securities</i> and <i>Investments in Agency Securities</i> at the end of the year reported in the Treasury Combined Statement; CY and BY amounts are copied from line 9202 in MAX schedule P.
8702 Unrealized discounts (–)	MAX derives the PY amount from the <i>unrealized discount on investments</i> (–) and the <i>unamortized premium and discount</i> (+/–) at the end of the year reported in the Treasury Combined Statement; you must input CY and BY amounts.
8705 Outstanding debt to Treasury	You must input these amounts. This entry only applies to selected accounts.
8799 Total balance, end of year	Except for the Highway and Airport and Airway Trust Funds, MAX calculates this amount as the sum of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unobligated balances in schedule P (lines 2440);</li> <li>• Obligated balances in schedule P (lines 7440); and</li> <li>• Unavailable receipts in schedule N (line 0799).</li> </ul> The amount on this line should equal the sum of lines 8700 through 8705. If it does not, you will receive an error message.
<b><i>Commitments against unexpended balance, end of year:</i></b>	
9801 Obligated balance (–)	You must input amounts on line 9801 and 9802. MAX calculates line 9899 as the sum of lines 9801 and 9802 and line 9900 as the sum of lines 8799 and 9899.
9802 Unobligated balance (–)	
9899 Total commitments (–)	
9900 Uncommitted balance, end of year	

**86.6 What do I need to know about the schedule on unavailable receipts (schedule N)?**

This Appendix schedule provides information on receipts and appropriations for special and non-revolving trust funds. The MAX database generates the data for the schedule on unavailable receipts from other data and stores it in the database as schedule N.

The following types of accounts require schedule N:

- Special; and
- Non-revolving trust funds.

MAX generates schedule N from:

- Data reported in the previous year's *Budget Appendix*;
- Data in schedule R; and
- Data in schedule P.

The budget includes only *one* schedule N for each fund. For special and non-revolving trust fund accounts, the schedule covers all the receipts and offsetting receipts that pertain to a particular special or trust fund account. It aggregates all the data reported under different transmittal codes to a single schedule presented under transmittal code 0. The CY and BY columns of schedule N will include the effect of supplemental requests (transmittal code 1), rescission proposals (transmittal code 5), proposed legislation (transmittal codes 2, 3, and 4).

When requesting the establishment of new special or trust fund accounts (see [section 71.3](#)), please specify whether the MAX database should include a *new* schedule on unavailable receipts or use an *existing* schedule on unavailable receipts to report the transactions related to the new account.

When you upload changes to other MAX schedules that affect the fund (for example, you change receipt estimates in schedule R), you will see the effect on MAX schedule N the next time you download the account. When accounts from other agencies feed one of your schedule N lines, you will see the effect of changes in those accounts the next time you download schedule N as long as the information has been uploaded. You can use the view feature in MAX A-11 to see which lines from which accounts feed each of the detailed lines in schedule N.

The following table identifies the source for each line in MAX schedule N. Even though the data are automatically generated and you cannot change any amounts, you can change the line titles of the detail lines (lines 02xx, 05xx) through A-11 data entry.

**SCHEDULE ON UNAVAILABLE RECEIPTS**

Entry	Description
0199 Balance, start of year	Includes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Unappropriated special and trust fund receipts and offsetting receipts. (PY amount should equal the balance on the Department of Treasury's <i>Unappropriated Receipts Trial Balance</i>, FMS Form 6655, plus invested unappropriated receipts.)</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Special and trust fund receipts and offsetting receipts that are precluded from obligation because of a provision of law, such as a benefit formula or limitation on obligations in PY, CY, or BY.</li> </ul> <p>MAX derives the PY amount from the PY amount reported on line 0799 in the previous year's <i>Budget Appendix</i>. If you believe the PY amount is incorrect, provide your OMB representative with a detailed written explanation of the difference. MAX copies CY and BY amounts from the end of year amounts reported on line 0799 for the previous year.</p>
Receipts and offsetting receipts:	MAX uses line serial numbers in the range 10-15 to identify different transmittal codes, as described in the MAX User's Guide.
0200–0219      Receipts	Amount of new collections deposited in special and trust fund receipt accounts. Each receipt account will be listed separately by title and transmittal code. MAX copies these amounts from schedule R.
0220–0239      Offsetting receipts (proprietary)	
0240–0259      Offsetting receipts (intragovernmental)	
0260–0279      Offsetting governmental receipts	
0299      Total receipts	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of lines 0200 through 0279.
0400      Total: Balances and receipts	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of lines 0199 and 0299.
0500–0589      Appropriations, net (–)	<p>MAX calculates this amount from schedule P. It consists of:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the appropriations (reported on lines 4020, 4026, 4028, 5520, 5526, 6020, 6026, and 6526); and</li> <li>the amounts that become available for obligation from balances of receipts that were previously unavailable (reported on line 6028).</li> <li>Minus: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>the amounts precluded from obligation in a fiscal year because of provisions of law such as benefit formulas or limitations on obligations (reported on lines 6045, 6845 and 6945); and</li> <li>the temporary reductions (reported on lines 4037, 4038, 5537, 6037, 6038 and 6537).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>If more than one appropriation is made from the fund, each will be listed separately by title and transmittal code. MAX uses line serial numbers in the range 10–15 to identify different transmittal codes, as described in the MAX User's Guide.</p>
0599      Total appropriations, net (–)	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of lines 0500–0589.

**SECTION 86—OTHER MAX DATA**

Entry	Description
0610 Unobligated balance returned to receipts	Unobligated balance of special and trust fund appropriations expiring that are returned to the receipt account and are available for subsequent appropriation action.  MAX calculates this amount from amounts reported in schedule P on line 2441.
0799 Balance, end of year	MAX calculates this amount as the sum of lines 0199, 0299, 0599 and 0610.

**86.7 What do I need to know about the summary of budget authority and outlays?**

If you have a regular account that has separate program and financing schedules for supplemental requests, legislative proposals, or rescission proposals, a summary will be printed in the Budget Appendix to report the totals for budget authority and outlays for PY through BY. MAX automatically generates the summary from data in schedule A. However, it is not a separate MAX schedule and cannot be viewed in the database.

The summary normally will contain the following entries, as applicable, in the sequence shown:

**SUMMARY OF BUDGET AUTHORITY AND OUTLAYS**

Entry	Description
Enacted/requested: Budget authority Outlays	Total amount of budget authority and outlays for all years shown in the regular program and financing schedule under transmittal code 0. Entries reflect, without separate identification, reductions pursuant to the BEA.
Proposed for later transmittal: Budget authority Outlays	Total amount of budget authority and outlays for all years shown in a separate program and financing schedule under transmittal codes 2, 3, or 4. (For a description of transmittal codes, see <a href="#">section 79.2.</a> )
Supplemental: Budget authority Outlays	Total budget authority and outlays for all years shown in a separate program and financing schedule under transmittal code 1.
Rescission proposal: Budget authority Outlays	Total amount of reduction of budget authority and outlays for all years shown in a separate program and financing schedule under transmittal code 5.
Total: Budget authority Outlays	Sum of all preceding entries.

**Financial Statements**  
**Balance Sheet (Schedule F)**

**Balance Sheet** (in millions of dollars)

Identification code 16-4023-0-3-754	PY-1 act	PY act.
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Federal assets:		
Investments in Federal securities:		
1102 Treasury securities, net.....	4	4
1104 Agency securities, net.....	1	2
1106 Receivables, net.....	1	1
Non-Federal assets:		
1201 Investments in non-Federal securities, net.....	1	2
1999 Total assets.....	7	9
	=====	=====
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
Federal liabilities:		
2103 Debt.....	2	2
Non-Federal liabilities:		
2203 Debt.....	3	3
2999 Total liabilities.....	5	5
	=====	=====
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
3100 Unexpended appropriations.....	3	3
3999 Total net position.....	3	3
4999 Total liabilities and net position.....	8	8

Note: Additional information is required for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts under the Federal Credit Reform Act (see section 86.2).

**Budget Year Appropriations Requests in Thousands of Dollars  
(Schedule T)**

OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY  
Salaries and Expenses

For necessary expenses, including services authorized by 5 U.S.C. [\$89,786,000] \$100,788,000.

Use schedule T to report in thousands of dollars the net budgetary resources contained in the appropriations language request.

Account: 007-55-76-0030

Appropriations Requests in Thousands of Dollars (T):				PY	CY	BY
1001	01	Budget year budgetary resources [Treasury Acct].....				100,788

Amounts in schedule T must be consistent with amounts in schedule P.

Report amounts on a pre-transfer basis.

Exclude amounts applied to repay debt, liquidate contract authority, or liquidate deficiencies.

Do not report advance appropriations or spending authority from offsetting collections.

Account: 007-55-76-0030

Program and Financing (P)				PY actual	CY	BY
New budget authority (gross), detail:						
Discretionary:						
4000	01	Appropriation.....	96	90		101
4200	01	Transferred from other accounts [75-1503].....	1	.....		5
4300	01	Appropriation (total).....	97	90		106

Account: 007-54-72-9915

Appropriations Requests in Thousands of Dollars (T)				PY	CY	BY
1000	01	Budget year budgetary resources [76-0819].....				97,843
1000	02	Budget year budgetary resources [76-0820].....				54,287
1000	03	Budget year budgetary resources [76-0824].....				21,000
1000	04	Budget year budgetary resources [76-0825].....				6,500

For consolidated or merged accounts, use separate line entries to report the budget year appropriation request. Include in each line the six-digit basic account symbol assigned by Treasury. You do not need to enter the Treasury code when only a single account is involved.



## SECTION 95—BUDGET APPENDIX AND PRINT MATERIALS

**Table of Contents**

*Appendix*

- 95.1 What is the budget Appendix?
- 95.2 How is the Appendix organized?
- 95.3 How is the "Detailed Budget Estimates" section organized?
- 95.4 What is the process for getting print materials published in the Appendix?

*Appropriations Language*

- 95.5 What do I need to know about revising appropriations language?
- 95.6 What supporting statutory references must I provide?
- 95.7 What are the special appropriations language requirements for credit programs?
- 95.8 What are the special language requirements for programs that disburse over a period longer than five fiscal years?

*Narrative Statements, Footnotes, and Tables*

- 95.9 How do I prepare narrative statements?
- 95.10 What should narrative statements say about performance goals and indicators?
- 95.11 Are there any special requirements for narrative statements?
- 95.12 What do I need to know about footnotes and tables?

- Ex-95A Revising Appropriations Language and Narrative Statements
- Ex-95B Revising General Provisions

**Summary of Changes**

Consolidates requirements previously included in three separate sections (old sections 95, 96, and 97).

Drops the analysis of programs financed by multiple budget accounts (old exhibit 97).

**95.1 What is the budget *Appendix*?**

The *Appendix—Budget of the United States* is one of several volumes that constitute the President's budget. Like the other volumes, the President transmits the *Appendix* to Congress, and it is published through the Government Printing Office (GPO). The Appropriations Committees, in particular, use the *Appendix* because it contains the appropriation language proposed by the President for each account that requires such language. The *Appendix* contains other, detailed information about each account—such as, program and financing information, expenditures by object class, narrative statements and data about the work performed, and employment data. We refer to the information to be printed in the *Appendix* as *print materials*.

**95.2 How is the *Appendix* organized?**

The *Appendix* consists of these parts:

- Detailed Budget Estimates by Agency—This part, the main part of the *Appendix*, contains general provisions of law that apply to all government activities and print materials for accounts organized by agency. Section 95.3 describes the organization of this part in more detail.
- Other Materials—This part contains:
  - ▶ A summary of proposed changes to current year estimates through supplemental appropriations and rescissions;
  - ▶ Detailed print materials for proposed supplemental appropriations and rescissions;
  - ▶ A list of amendments and revisions to previous to budget authority requested between transmittal of the previous and current budgets; and
  - ▶ A list of advance appropriations, advance funding, and forward funding proposed in the budget.
- Financing Vehicles and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve—This part contains descriptions of and data on certain entities that are excluded from the main part of the *Appendix*.
- Government-Sponsored Enterprises—This part contains descriptions of and data on government-sponsored enterprises (private corporations chartered by Federal law), such as Fannie Mae.

### 95.3 How is the "Detailed Budget Estimates" section organized?

This part of the *Appendix* presents print materials in the following general order (see the Table of Contents of the most recent *Appendix* for the exact order):

- Legislative Branch;
- Judicial Branch;
- Cabinet agencies in alphabetical order;
- Large or prominent nondepartmental agencies (for example, the Environmental Protection Agency and the Executive Office of the President) and accounts grouped under the headings, "Other Defense Civil Programs" and "International Assistance Programs;" and
- The remaining agencies, under the heading "Other Independent Agencies," in alphabetical order.

We use the term *chapter* to refer to the presentation of print materials for a separate agency or group of agencies. Within the chapter for a department or large agency, the print materials are organized by bureaus or other major subordinate organizations within the agency (for example, the Farm Service Agency in USDA) or by major program areas (for example, Community Planning and Development in HUD). When we establish a new account in the MAX data base, we assign a bureau and account sequence code, which determines the order in which bureaus and accounts appear in the *Appendix* (see section 79). For the sake of convenience in these instructions, we refer to all equivalent subdivisions of a chapter as bureaus.

The *Appendix* presents accounts in a uniform, logical order in all bureaus, unless there is a compelling reason for an exception. Accounts normally appear in the following order:

- General fund accounts, in the following order:
  - ▶ Accounts for which appropriations are requested for the BY.
  - ▶ Accounts for which appropriations were made in the CY but not requested for the BY.
  - ▶ Other unexpired accounts.
  - ▶ Expired accounts.
- Special fund accounts, in the following order:
  - ▶ Accounts for which appropriations are requested for the BY.
  - ▶ Accounts for which appropriations were made in the CY but not requested for the BY.
  - ▶ Other unexpired accounts.
  - ▶ Expired accounts.
- Public enterprise funds.
- Intragovernmental revolving funds and management funds.
- Credit reform accounts, with related accounts grouped together in the following order:
  - ▶ Program account.
  - ▶ Financing account.
  - ▶ Liquidating account.
- Trust funds.
- Trust revolving funds.

A heading and a note for allocations from other accounts is shown at the end of the bureau (see [section 82.14](#)).

Certain materials are required for each account. The following table shows the print requirements and print sequence for all materials that could be required for an account. Because not all materials apply to a given account, the second column describes the circumstances in which they apply. The fourth column tells you which materials are generated from MAX (GPO pulls some print material from the MAX database) and which ones you must submit as revised galleys.

#### BUDGET APPENDIX PRINT MATERIALS

Type of material	Applicability	See A-11 section...	MAX generated or revised galley?
Appropriations language	Required for each account with appropriations enacted for the CY or proposed for the BY. Language is usually not submitted for legislative or rescission proposals—transmittal codes 2, 4, or 5.	95.5	Revised galley
Schedule on unavailable receipts	Required for all special and non-revolving trust fund accounts and for other types of accounts when amounts are precluded from obligation.	86.6	Generated from schedule N

**SECTION 95—BUDGET APPENDIX AND PRINT MATERIALS**

<b>Type of material</b>	<b>Applicability</b>	<b>See A–11 section...</b>	<b>MAX generated or revised galley?</b>
General fund credit receipt accounts	Required whenever credit programs have negative subsidies and downward reestimates receipt accounts.	185.13	Generated from schedule R
Program and financing schedule	Required for all accounts and for annual limitations on certain revolving or trust funds.	82	Generated from schedule P, except for limitation schedules
Distribution of budget authority and outlays by account	Required for merged and consolidated accounts.	82.13	Revised galley
Budget plan	Required for selected accounts in the Department of Defense.	86.3	Generated from schedule D
Summary of budget authority and outlays	Required for each regular account that also has a supplemental request, legislative proposal, or rescission proposal.	86.7	Generated from schedule A for accounts reporting data under multiple transmittal codes
Performance metrics	Required for all accounts that report performance metrics.	85	Generated from schedule V
Status of direct loans	Required for all credit liquidating and financing accounts with direct loan activity, including Government-sponsored enterprises.	185.11	Generated from schedule G
Status of guaranteed loans	Required for all credit liquidating and financing accounts with guaranteed loan activity, including Government-sponsored enterprises.	185.11	Generated from schedule H
Summary of loan levels, subsidy budget authority, and outlays by program	Required for all credit program accounts with direct loan or loan guarantee subsidies.	185.10	Generated from schedule U
Narrative statement	Required for all accounts.	95.9	Revised galley
Schedule on the status of funds	Required for major trust funds and certain other accounts specified in section 86.6.	86.5	Generated from schedule J
Balance sheet	Required for Government-sponsored enterprises and credit liquidating accounts. For noncredit revolving funds, optional at the discretion of OMB.	86.2	Generated from schedule F
Object classification	Required for all accounts and annual limitations.	83	Generated from schedule O
Personnel summary	Required for each account that reports personnel compensation in object class 11.1 or 11.3. Also required when FTE are funded by allocations from other accounts	86.1	Generated from schedule Q

**95.4 What is the process for getting print materials published in the *Appendix*?**

Each year, usually in early December, OMB will provide you detailed instructions that reflect the requirements for that year. In general, however, the process for getting print materials published involves these steps:

1. In December, OMB gives you galley proofs reprinted from last year's *Appendix* except that year headings have been updated, generic changes to stub entries in generated schedules have been made, amounts in generated schedules and narrative tables have been removed, and enacted appropriations language for the current year as well as any new accounts have been inserted. The printed matter appears in one column. Although GPO simply labels them "galley proofs," OMB refers to this set of galley proofs as *reprinted galleys*.
2. You revise the reprinted galleys (using the instructions in this section and Exhibits 95A and 95B) and return an original to OMB by the date specified in the instructions. Your revisions should include corrections, new information, updated budget figures, and materials for legislative proposals and rescissions.
3. OMB sends the revised galleys and the additional print materials to GPO for processing.
4. GPO uses data from MAX to print the schedules that are generated and merges them with the revised galleys to produce new galley proofs.
5. OMB and you review the new galley proofs and make final changes.
6. OMB sends the revised galley proofs to GPO for printing as *page proofs*, which present the material in two-column format, as it will be published.
7. OMB reviews the page proofs on an extremely short deadline, makes essential corrections of errors, and sends corrected page proofs to GPO for final printing.

**95.5 What do I need to know about revising appropriations language?**

Appropriations language constitutes the President's request to Congress for budget authority or other legislative authority (such as general provisions) to be provided through the annual appropriations process. The *Appendix* includes appropriations language for each account for which appropriations or limitation language was enacted in the CY or is proposed for the BY.

In most cases, you will submit proposed BY appropriations language by marking up language enacted as part of a regular CY appropriations act provided by OMB on reprinted galleys. However, if regular appropriations have not been enacted, OMB will provide you special instructions. Exhibits 95A and 95B provide specific instructions for revising appropriations language.

If you propose new provisions or changes to enacted language (other than changes in amounts) for individual accounts or administrative and general provisions, include an explanation and justification. If you propose language that relates to employment of personnel without regard to civil service or classification laws, include a copy of the letter from the Office of Personnel Management approving the new provisions. Submit this information on a separate page from the language submissions; do not write any explanations on the galley. Whenever possible, try to include proposed substantive changes in appropriations language with the initial budget submission to provide adequate time for review by OMB.

**95.6 What supporting statutory references must I provide?**

Provide the supporting statutory references described below, inserting them following the appropriations language (in parentheses and underscored), in the following sequence: basic authorizing legislation (including currently effective amendments), treaties, or executive orders that continue in effect during the budget year. These references are informational only. Follow these guidelines in referring to basic authorizing legislation:

- Cite the legislation in one of the following forms, in this order of preference:
  - ▶ United States Code;
  - ▶ Public law number;
  - ▶ Popular title of the law (if there is one); or
  - ▶ Date of the Act, followed by the applicable volume and page of the Statutes at Large.
- Do not include references to Government-wide, generally applicable laws (such as Title 5 of the U.S. Code).
- Cite executive orders by number.
- Consolidate citations to the same title of the U.S. Code, and list titles (and sections thereunder) in ascending numerical order.
- Avoid multiple citations to the same statute.
- If a citation is included in statutory text, do not repeat it in parentheses.

**95.7 What are the special appropriations language requirements for credit programs?**

The Federal Credit Reform Act imposes special appropriations language requirements for credit programs. (See section 185 for general guidance on credit programs.) Each program account for a direct loan or loan guarantee program must contain:

- A request for an appropriation for the subsidy costs on a net present value basis;
- A specification of the loan level supportable by the subsidy cost appropriation; and
- A request for an appropriation for the administrative expenses for operating the credit program.

Use the following standard subsidy appropriation language, using the bracketed elements as appropriate. If you need to transfer the amount for administrative expenses to a salaries and expenses account, modify the language as described below. Where loans are disbursed beyond the five year period after obligation, you need to add the proviso discussed in section 95.8.

[For the cost of direct loans, \$\_\_\_,] [and] [for the cost of guaranteed loans, \$\_\_\_,] as authorized by [authorizing statute]: Provided, That such costs, including the cost of modifying such loans, shall be as defined in section 502 of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974: Provided further, That these funds are available to subsidize [gross obligations for the principal amount of direct loans not to exceed \$\_\_\_] [,and] [total loan principal, any part of which is to be guaranteed, not to exceed \$\_\_\_.] In addition, for administrative expenses to carry out the [direct] [and] [guaranteed] loan program[s], \$\_\_\_.

Where you propose to transfer administrative expenses to a salaries and expenses account, substitute the following for the last sentence above:

In addition, for administrative expenses to carry out the [direct] [and] loan [guarantee] program[s], \$\_\_\_, which shall be [transferred to and merged with the appropriation for [name of account]] [or, to the extent necessary,] [used to reimburse the Federal Financing Bank as authorized in section 505(c) of the Congressional Budget Act of 1974].

If you believe that the nature of a program requires a modification of the specified language, you may request an exception (see [section 25.2](#)).

### **95.8 What are the special language requirements for programs that disburse over a period longer than five fiscal years?**

Unless otherwise specified by law, budget authority is available for liquidating obligations (that is, outlays) for only five fiscal years after the authority expires. This could be problematic for programs funded by annual or multi-year budget authority where disbursements are expected to occur more than five fiscal years after the authority expires. Where loans or other costs (such as termination costs for some contracts and annual lease payments under operating leases, capital leases, or lease-purchase agreements) will be disbursed beyond the five-year period, use the following standard proviso, modified as appropriate, to ensure that the budget authority will remain available for disbursement over the full term of the contract:

:Provided, That such sums are to remain available through 20XX for the disbursement of [loans] [lease payments] [termination costs] obligated in fiscal year 20XX.

### **95.9 How do I prepare narrative statements?**

#### *(a) Active accounts.*

You must prepare a narrative statement (revising last year's statement, if there was one) for every active account, including supplemental requests, rescission proposals, and legislative proposals. An account is active if the program and financing schedule shows obligations in the CY or BY, or you estimate that the account will incur obligations in the outyears. Follow these guidelines and Exhibit 95A when writing the narrative for an active account:

- Write the narrative statements in a concise and factual manner, avoiding hyperbole.
- Orient them toward the policies and objectives for the budget year.
- Include quantitative tables that match program performance and dollar data.
- Discuss performance goals and indicators and how the budget request supports them.
- Discuss pertinent legislation enacted since the previous budget and legislative initiatives proposed in the budget.
- Do not discuss the history, authorizing statutes, and other legal references except in special cases, as explained below.

The separate activities (and any subactivities) listed in the obligations by program activity section of the program and financing schedule should present a meaningful breakdown of the total program (see section [82.2](#)). Therefore, it usually makes sense to address them separately in the narrative statements. You should identify the activities in side headings by the title used in the program and financing schedule and present them in the same order.

(b) *Inactive accounts.*

An account is inactive if it shows no obligations in the CY or BY and you estimate that no obligations will be incurred in the outyears. The narrative for inactive accounts should explain why the account is inactive. For example, it may be that the account funded a temporary study commission that is no longer authorized, received no appropriation after the PY, and simply spends out obligated balances. If an inactive account shows any budgetary resources (budget authority or unobligated balances) in the CY, BY, or outyears, the narrative should explain the expected disposition of the budgetary resources.

**95.10 What should narrative statements say about performance goals and indicators?**

The statements should be consistent with the strategic plans and your performance budget that are required for your agency in sections 51 and 210 of this Circular. The statements should refer to the metrics (e.g., outcomes and outputs) used in the performance metrics schedule (see [section 85](#)). Explain how the budget year request supports them. You should also address significant increases or decreases in performance or financing from the current to the budget year (including a proposal to terminate a program in the budget year).

**95.11 Are there any special requirements for narrative statements?**

In addition to the information required for active accounts, the narrative should include certain specific information, described in the following paragraphs, if the account involves any of the following:

(a) *Narrative statements for revolving funds.*

For revolving funds, the narrative statement should include the information required for active accounts in general (see section 95.9) using the side heading *Budget program*. In addition, the narrative statement should address the following topics, with the side headings shown:

- *Financing.* Provide significant information on the fund's means of financing, such as sources of income and authority to borrow (including limits on such authority, amounts actually borrowed and repaid during the year). For funds with a statutory limit on the amount of borrowing or on the amount of debt that can be outstanding at any one time, indicate the amount of the limit and discuss the position of the fund with respect to the limit during the budget year. Include in the statement a discussion of how close to the limit the fund will approach during the year.
- *Operating results.* Provide significant information relating to levels of revenue, expense, and net income or loss. Explain the steps being taken to dispose of any deficits and the planned disposition of net earnings. Include an analysis of retained income on a cumulative basis, disclosing any budget authority amounts used to offset deficits for non-revenue producing outlays since the inception of the fund.

For each fund covered by section 102 of the Government Corporation Control Act, include a specific recommendation on the application of the retained earnings or restoration of capital impairment at the end of the past year. The recommendation should indicate:



- The amount of retained income to be returned to the Treasury and the use to be made of the remainder, if any; and
- Whether restoration of any capital impairment is required and whether this should be done by appropriations or other means.

(b) *Narrative statements for Federal credit programs.*

Narrative statements for Federal credit programs should address these items:

- Significant factors in developing subsidy estimates, such as default rates and interest rates charged to borrowers.
- Where relevant, information about how risk categories are defined (see [section 185.3](#)).
- For loan guarantee programs, the percentage of the loan covered by the guarantee.

Use the following paragraphs, modified as necessary, to describe each account for a credit program.

*For liquidating accounts:*

As required by the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, this account records, for this program, all cash flows to and from the Government resulting from [direct loans obligated] [and][loan guarantees committed] prior to 1992. All new activity in this program (including modifications of direct loans or loan guarantees that resulted from obligations or commitments in any year) is recorded in corresponding program accounts and financing accounts.

*For program accounts:*

As required by the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, this account records, for this program, the subsidy costs associated with the [direct loans obligated] [and] [loan guarantees committed] in 1992 and beyond (including modifications of direct loans or loan guarantees that resulted from obligations or commitments in any year), as well as administrative expenses of this program. The subsidy amounts are estimated on a present value basis; the administrative expenses are estimated on a cash basis.

*For direct loan financing accounts:*

As required by the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, this non-budgetary account records all cash flows to and from the Government resulting from direct loans obligated in 1992 and beyond (including modifications of direct loans that resulted from obligations in any year). The amounts in this account are a means of financing and are not included in the budget totals.

*For guaranteed loan financing accounts:*

As required by the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, this non-budgetary account records all cash flows to and from the Government resulting from loan guarantees committed in 1992 and beyond (including modifications of loan guarantees that resulted from commitments in any year). The amounts in this account are a means of financing and are not included in the budget totals.

(c) *Narrative statements in special cases.*

The narrative statement should explain any special circumstances affecting the means of financing the program. Cover the following cases in particular:

- *Mandatory spending.* Indicate the legal basis for the budget authority (since no appropriations language is presented for such items).
- *Offsetting collections and receipts.* When offsetting collections or receipts earmarked in a special or trust fund finance a significant portion of the obligations of the account, discuss the source of the collections or receipts and the purposes of and restrictions on their use. For example, discuss user charges to the public, reimbursable work performed for other organizations, and asset sales. The narrative should also discuss receipts generated by the program but deposited into the general fund of the Treasury, when pertinent to the operations of the program.
- *Agency debt issued and investments in agency debt.* Unless the information is provided in a balance sheet for the account, the narrative statement should include the following information, as applicable, for PY-1 through BY. For accounts that issue debt instruments to other Federal accounts (excluding debt issued to Treasury or to the Federal Financing Bank) or to non-Federal entities, indicate the par value of outstanding debt securities issued by the account to other Federal accounts (in total) and non-Federal entities (in total). For accounts that own securities issued by other Federal accounts (excluding securities issued by the Treasury or the Federal Financing Bank) or by non-Federal entities, indicate the par value of the securities owned that were issued by Federal accounts (in total) and non-Federal entities (in total).
- *Limitations on borrowing or debt.* For accounts with a statutory limit on the amount of borrowing or on the amount of debt that can be outstanding at any one time, indicate the amount of the limit and discuss the position of the fund with respect to the limit during the budget year. Include in the statement a discussion of how close to the limit the fund will approach during the year.

#### **95.12 What do I need to know about footnotes and tables?**

Other sections of this Circular require footnotes and tables in certain circumstances (see below). In some cases, these footnotes and tables appear to be part of a MAX schedule or resemble a MAX schedule. However, you must treat these footnotes and tables as part of the narrative statements because they are not in the MAX A-11 database and are not automatically generated.

- *Transfer in the estimates.* For an account with a transfer in the estimates, as defined in section 20.4(k), prepare a footnote in the format described in [section 82.12](#) and insert it following the program and financing schedule.
- *Transfer of resources.* For an account with a transfer of resources as defined in section 20.4(j), prepare a footnote in the format described in [section 82.11](#) and insert it at the end of the program and financing schedule.
- *Allocation accounts.* For each bureau (or agency if the agency has no bureaus) that receives an allocation as defined in 20.4(l), prepare a footnote in the format described in [section 82.15](#) and insert it at the end of the print materials for the bureau that receives allocations.
- *Consolidated schedules and merged accounts.* For a program and financing schedule that contains data for accounts that have been consolidated or merged (see sections [71.6](#) and [71.7](#)), prepare a

table distributing budget authority and outlays by account in the format described in [section 82.13](#) and insert it following the program and financing schedule.

- *Annual limitations on trust or revolving funds.* For a trust or revolving fund with an annual limitation on administrative expenses or other annual limitation on its obligations, prepare a table following the guidance in [section 82.14](#) and insert it following the limitation language.

Revising Appropriations Language and Narrative Statements

Dept of Government Appendix Part 1G.189-685 DOG.010

"Extension" number

Return a complete set of galley proofs to OMB. Do not reduce the size of the galleys.

GALLEY PROOF

DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY Federal funds

General and special funds:

SALARIES AND EXPENSES

For expenses necessary for the Office of the Secretary, including not to exceed \$90,000 for expenses of travel; purchase (not to exceed [one] for replacement only) and hire of passenger motor vehicles; and services as authorized by 5 U.S.C. 3109; [\$3,220,000], Provided, That not to exceed \$20,000 of the amount appropriated under this head in the Department of Government Appropriation Act, 2003, shall remain available during the current fiscal year. (Department of Government Appropriations Act, 2004)

[For an additional amount for "Salaries and Expenses," \$200,000.] (Supplemental Appropriations Act, 2003)

Key points for appropriations language: 1. Enclose deletions with brackets [ ]. 2. Show new material in the right margin or include as an attachment. Use a caret (^) and line to clearly show where to insert the new material. New material follows bracketed [ ] material and must be underscored. 3. Round requested dollars to the nearest thousand (e.g., \$10,951,000; not \$10,950,768). 4. Use pencil where possible and do not obliterate any text or punctuation marks.

Program and Financing (in millions of dollars)

Table with columns: Identification code 09-2650-0-1-301, PY actual, CY est., BY est. Rows include Obligations by program activity, Budgetary resources available for obligation, New budget authority (gross), detail, Change in unpaid obligations, Outlays (gross), detail, and Net budget authority and outlays.

For generated schedules, MAX data will be printed automatically; do not enter amounts on the reprinted galleys.

"Frame" number

Revising Appropriations Language and Narrative Statements (continued)

INSERT A to extension GOV.000, frame 0002

1. *Assistance and training.* The PY amendments to the Environmental Control Act increased the Federal portion of funds provided for water pollution control projects to 75 percent of the project estimates in BY. Additional training will accompany the increased project funding to provide for a more comprehensive review of future project plans and alternatives. In BY, amounts provided for training will increase 190.4 percent.

Water Pollution Program Activities  
(in millions of dollars)

	PY	CY	BY
Total project costs.....	37	53	46
Federal share.....	25	31	34
Projects completed.....	21	33	31
Training program costs.....	1	1	2
Number of persons trained.....	7,732	8,496	10,340

Title I of the Environmental Control Act of 1968 (88 U.S.C. \_\_\_\_\_ and Water 2102 et seq.) authorized water resource control programs through the promulgation of standards, enforcement of \_\_\_\_\_ and regulations controls and assistance to States governments for pollution \_\_\_\_\_, control programs.

1. *Assistance and training.* Funds are provided for assisting States in financing up to 60% of the cost of ppllution control projects, in accordance with plans submitted and approved by the Secretary. The projects are required to meet the criteria developed by the Water Resources Control Board, including the preparation of development plans for water-related recreational facilities. Training is provided for the review of water pollution control programs and studies.

2. *Enforcement programs.* The enforcement program is directed toward achieving compliance with standards.

For supplemental and rescission proposals, include new material at the end of your galleys, even though they will print in a different part of the Appendix.

For new accounts and legislative proposals, follow the account and print material sequence described in section 95.3. Clearly mark where new material should be inserted and update the generated schedules through MAX.

← INSERT A

- KEY POINTS for narrative statements:
1. Show deletions by *strikeout*; *do not use brackets* (as you do for appropriation language).
  2. Mark short inserts in pencil directly on galley proof. Submit longer inserts on separate sheets of paper, identify the appropriate galley extension and frame number, and attach to the galley proof. For all inserts, draw an arrow to the proper insertion point. Do not underline new material (as you do for new appropriations language).
  3. Follow the capitalization rules of the Government Printing Office Style Manual except capitalize only the first word of account titles and titles of programs and activities (unless the title also contains proper nouns that would otherwise be capitalized).
  4. Use leader dots in columns of figures rather than zeros.
  5. Omit dollar signs from amounts in tables.
  6. Do not use minus signs in line stubs of tables.
  7. Do use minus signs to show negative amounts; do not use parenthesis to show an amount being subtracted in a table.
  8. Round dollars to the nearest million. In tables, show amounts of \$500,000 or less as zero (...). In narrative statements, follow the same rounding rule but include the word "million."

"Frame" number

## Revising General Provisions

**GALLEY PROOF**

### TITLE VII--GENERAL PROVISIONS

[ SEC. 701. Within the unit limit of cost fixed by law, appropriations and authorizations made for the Department of Government for the fiscal year 1996 under this Act shall be available for purchase, in addition to those specifically provided for, of not to exceed 665 passanger motor vehicles, of which 664 shall be for replacement only, and for the hire of such vehicles]

SEC. [702]<sup>701</sup>. Funds in this Act available to the Department of Government shall be available for <sup>701</sup> uniforms or allowances therefore as authorized by law (5 U.S.C. 5901-5902).

[SEC. 703. Not less than \$1,500,000 for the appropriations of the Department of Government in this Act for research and service work authorized by the Acts of August 14, 1946 and July 28, 1954 (7. U.S.C. 427, 1621-1629), and chapter 63 of title 31, United States Code, shall be available for contracting in accordance with the said Acts and chapters.]

SEC. [704]<sup>702</sup>. The cumulative total of transfers to the Working Capital Fund for the purpose of accumulating growth capital for data services and National Finance Center operations shall not exceed[\$2,000,000] ; *Provided*, That <sup>702</sup> no funds in this Act appropriated to an agency of the Department shall be transferred to the Working Capital Fund without the approval of the agency administrator.

SEC. [705]<sup>703</sup>. No part of any appropriation contained in this Act shall remain availabe for obligation beyond <sup>703</sup> the current fiscal year unless expressly so provided herein.

SEC. 704. From funds made available to the Department of Government in this Act, the Secretary may transfer amounts to "Department Administration," to be merged with such account and available for the same purpose.

**KEY POINTS** for general provisions:

1. Show deletions of entire sections by using brackets [ ] around the entire section.
2. When entire sections are proposed for deletion, renumber the remaining sections, placing the new numbers in the margin, underscoring.
3. Include any proposed new sections at the end of the current law provisions as underscoring.

# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 3**

### **SELECTED ACTIONS FOLLOWING TRANSMITTAL OF THE BUDGET**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**





## SECTION 110—SUPPLEMENTALS AND AMENDMENTS

**Table of Contents**

110.1	How does the President propose changes in the budget in between his annual transmittals of the budget?
110.2	What are supplementals and amendments?
110.3	What do I need to send to OMB?
Ex-110A	Supplemental requests—appropriations language
Ex-110B	Budget amendments—appropriations language

**Summary of Changes**

Drops the requirement to provide revised MAX schedules for supplementals and amendments.

### **110.1 How does the President propose changes in the budget in between his annual transmittals of the budget?**

After the President's budget has been transmitted to the Congress, the President proposes changes in the budget by transmitting appropriations requests to revise the original budget request for the current year (supplemental) or budget year (amendment), including proposed appropriations language for legislative initiatives (e.g., items included in the budget as legislative proposals).

All proposed revisions must conform to the policies of the President. The requests may be for additional amounts or proposed changes in appropriations language that do not affect amounts previously requested, such as technical corrections or changes in a limitation on the use of trust funds. These requests may be either supplementals or amendments, depending upon when they are transmitted (see section [110.2](#)).

If Congress has not completed action on your appropriations bill for the current year before the President transmits his request for the budget year, OMB will issue guidance on the presentation of any amendments to the President's current year request.

You should make every effort to postpone actions that require supplemental appropriations. However, submit proposals that decrease or eliminate amounts whenever such changes are warranted. When requesting supplementals and amendments that increase the amounts contained in the budget, provide proposals for reductions elsewhere in the agency (e.g., cancellations of budget authority or rescission proposals).

OMB will only consider requests for supplementals and amendments, including proposed changes in administrative expense limitations or authorizations of government corporations and trust funds, when:

- Existing law requires payments within the fiscal year (e.g., pensions and entitlements);
- An unforeseen emergency situation occurs (e.g., natural disaster requiring expenditures for the preservation of life or property);
- New legislation enacted after the submission of the annual budget requires additional funds within the fiscal year;

- Increased workload is uncontrollable except by statutory change; or
- Liability accrues under the law and it is in the Government's interest to liquidate the liability as soon as possible (e.g., claims on which interest is payable).

It generally takes a minimum of three weeks for OMB and the White House to consider agency proposals for supplementals or amendments that are not transmitted in the annual budget. Allow for this timing when making requests.

See section [82.10](#) for instruction on supplementals and amendments that will be transmitted with the budget.

## 110.2 What are supplementals and amendments?

**Supplementals** are appropriations requests that are transmitted after completion of action on an annual appropriations bill by the Appropriations Committees of both Houses. They may be transmitted prior to, with, or subsequent to transmittal of the succeeding annual budget document. Supplemental requests that are known at the time the budget is prepared are normally transmitted to Congress with the budget, rather than later as separate transmittals. However, each case will be decided separately. OMB representatives will inform you which supplementals will be transmitted with the budget so you can submit the necessary information. These supplementals may be:

- *New supplementals*, requesting additional amounts not previously anticipated; or
- *Language only supplementals*, requesting changes in appropriations language that do not affect amounts previously appropriated.

**Amendments** are proposed actions that revise the President's budget request and are transmitted prior to completion of action on the budget request by the Appropriations Committees of both Houses of Congress. This includes appropriations language for activities authorized since transmittal of the President's budget that were included in the budget as a legislative proposal.

## 110.3 What do I need to send to OMB?

You need to submit the following materials in both hard copy and electronic versions. Also, you should be prepared to revise the material, as appropriate, to reflect Presidential decisions.

(a) *Appropriations language*. (See section [95](#) for a more detailed explanation of appropriations language requirements.)

(1) *Supplementals*. Prepare language for supplemental requests, including emergency requests as defined in the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended, in the format of exhibit [110A](#).

(2) *Amendments*. Prepare language for budget amendments in the format of exhibit [110B](#). Use the language proposed for the budget year in the President's budget, not the current year appropriation as the base (i.e., make changes to the budget year proposed language).

(b) *Justification.*

Prepare a justification in accordance with applicable requirements of section [51](#). It should also include:

- The reason why additional funds are required in the fiscal year requested, identifying specifically which of the circumstances described in section [110.1](#) applies;
- An explanation of proposed language provisions, if necessary; and
- Pertinent data concerning the effect on Federal civilian employment.

For *supplemental requests* only, include the following:

- The date when requested funds are needed for obligation;
- A statement of actual and estimated obligations for the year, prepared on a quarterly basis; and
- A statement of actual obligations by month, for the previous three months.

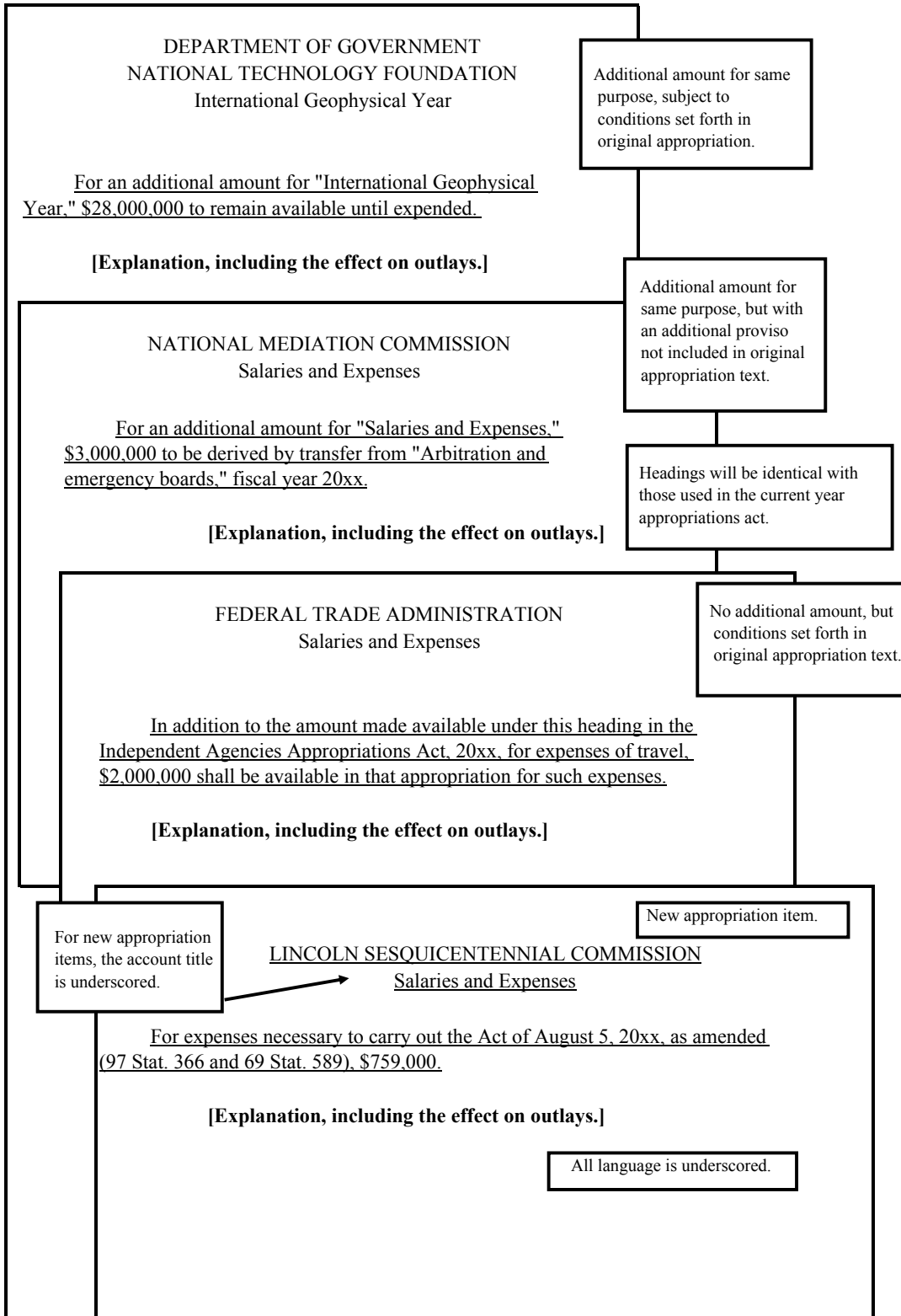
(c) *Explanation of request.*

Provide a short explanation, including the effect of the request on outlays. This explanation should be suitable for transmittal to Congress as part of the President's proposal. If appropriate, the explanation may be a synopsis of the major points that appear in the justification.

(d) *Letter from agency head.*

Provide a letter from the head of the agency that includes a statement concerning the validity of obligations, as required by 31 U.S.C. 1108 (see section [51.1 \(b\)](#)).

**Supplemental Requests  
Appropriations Language**



Supplemental Requests  
Appropriations Language -- Continued

DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
OCEANIC AND ATMOSPHERIC BUREAU  
Construction

Emergency request.

For an additional amount for "Construction" for emergency expenses resulting from flooding in the Pacific Northwest and other natural disasters, \$10,000,000 to remain available until expended: Provided that the entire amount is designated by the Congress as an emergency requirement pursuant to section 251(b)(2)(A) of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended.

[Explanation. The last paragraph of the explanation should read as follows:

The entire amount requested has been designated by the President as an emergency requirement pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended.]

DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
FEDERAL FOREST ADMINISTRATION  
Construction

Emergency request,  
including contingency.

For an additional amount for "Construction" for emergency expenses resulting from flooding in the Pacific Northwest and other natural disasters, \$60,000,000, to remain available until expended: Provided that the entire amount is designated by the Congress as an emergency requirement pursuant to section 251(b)(2)(A) of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended: Provided further, that of such amount, \$20,000,000 shall be available only to the extent an official budget request for a specific dollar amount that includes designation of the entire amount of the request as an emergency requirement as defined in such Act is transmitted by the President to Congress.

[Explanation. The last paragraph of the explanation should read as follows:

Of the request, \$40,000,000 has been designated by the President as an emergency requirement pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended.]

Headings will be identical with those used in the current year appropriations act.

All language is underscored.

**Budget Amendments  
Appropriations Language**

Agency:	DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT		
Bureau:	AGRICULTURE UTILIZATION SERVICE		
Heading:	Salaries and Expenses		
FY BY Budget Appendix Page:	23 [See Note 1]		Only total request amended.
FY BY Pending Request:	\$42,915,000	[See Note 2]	
Proposed Amendment:	\$7,057,000	[See Note 3]	
Revised Request:	\$49,972,000	[See Note 4]	
[Explanation, including the effect on outlays]			
Agency:	DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT		
Bureau:	FARM SERVICE		
Heading:	Salaries and Expenses		
FY BY Budget Appendix Page:	142 [See Note 1]		Change to total amount requested and other conditions.
FY BY Pending Request:	\$795,098,000	[See Note 2]	
Proposed Amendment:	\$91,292,000	[See Note 3]	
Revised Request:	\$886,390,000	[See Note 4]	
<p>(In the appropriations language under the above heading, delete "\$796,752,000" and substitute <u>\$888,044,000</u>; delete "\$795,098,000" and substitute <u>\$886,390,000</u>; and, delete the entire second proviso beginning with ": Provided further, That beginning the fiscal year 20xx".)</p> <p>[See Note 5]</p>			
[Explanation, including the effect on outlays]			
Agency:	DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT		
Bureau:	OFFICE OF THE SECRETARY		
Heading:	Salaries and Expenses		
FY BY Budget Appendix Page:	708 [See Note 1]		Appropriations language change only; no change to amount requested.
FY BY Pending Request:	\$25,600,000	[See Note 2]	
Proposed Amendment:	Language		
Revised Request:	\$25,600,000	[See Note 4]	
<p>(In the appropriations language under the above heading, insert <u>and Hawaii</u> immediately following "forty-eight contiguous States".)</p> <p>[See Note 5]</p>			
[Explanation, including the effect on outlays]			

**Budget Amendments  
Appropriations Language--Continued**

Agency:	DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT	
Bureau:	RURAL HOUSING ADMINISTRATION	
Heading:	<u>Community Grants</u>	
FY BY Budget Appendix Page:	211 [See Note 1]	New appropriation item. (If the account appears in the BY Budget Appendix but includes no language request, the heading will not be underscored.)
FY BY Pending Request:	---	
Proposed Amendment:	\$10,000,000	
Revised Request:	\$10,000,000 [See Note 4]	
(Insert the above heading and the appropriations language that follows immediately after the material under the heading "Rural Housing Grant":)		
<p align="center"><u>For grants for essential community facilities in rural areas pursuant to section 763 of the Federal Agriculture Improvement and Reform Act of 1996 (P.L. 104-127), \$10,000,000.</u></p> <p align="center"><b>[Explanation, including the effect on outlays]</b></p>		

Agency:	DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT	
Bureau:	NATURAL RESOURCES CONSERVATION AGENCY	
Heading:	River Basin Salinity Control Program	
FY BY Budget Appendix Page:	187 [See Note 1]	Deletion of entire appropriations request.
FY BY Pending Request:	\$2,681,000 [See Note 2]	
Proposed Amendment:	-\$2,681,000	
Revised Request:	---	
(Delete the appropriations language under the above heading.)		
<p align="center"><b>[Explanation, including the effect on outlays]</b></p>		

**Note 1:** For revisions to pending supplemental estimates or transmitted amendments, this line will be entitled "House Doc. 10x-xx Page" or "Senate Doc. 10x-xx Page" as applicable.

**Note 2:** Amounts in this line should represent the estimates now pending congressional action. Do not include amounts that were included in the President's budget as legislative proposals.

**Note 3:** Reductions in the estimates should be identified by a minus sign.

**Note 4:** Amounts in all lines will be shown in exact dollars.

**Note 5:** Language in the President's budget proposed for the budget year will be the basis for the appropriations language, not the current year appropriation.





## SECTION 111—RELEASES OF CONTINGENT EMERGENCY FUNDING

**Table of Contents**

111.1	What are releases of contingent emergency funding?
111.2	How do I request a release?
Ex-111	Releasing contingent emergency funding

**111.1 What are releases of contingent emergency funding?**

Releases of contingent emergency funding are actions by the President that make available for obligation previously appropriated emergency funds. These releases are made pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985, as amended, and may occur when an appropriations act provides funds that are contingent on the President submitting a budget request to Congress that designates the amount requested as an emergency requirement.

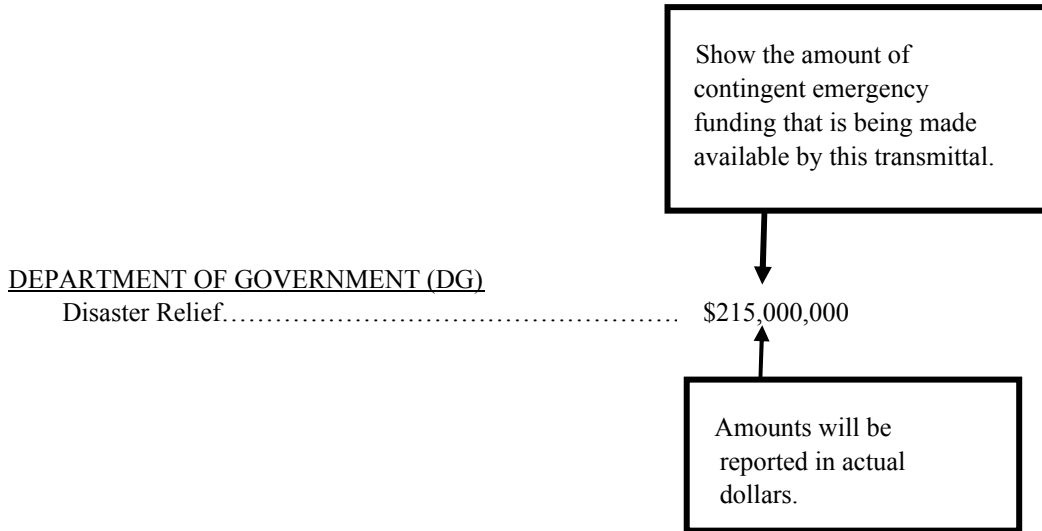
**111.2 How do I request a release?**

To request the release of contingent emergency funding, you need to submit the following materials in both hard copy and electronic versions. You should be prepared to revise the material, as appropriate, to reflect Presidential decisions.

- An explanation of the request in the format of exhibit 111 that includes:
  - ▶ A statutory reference to the source of the emergency funding;
  - ▶ Information on the total amount of emergency funding provided by Congress for the account, the amounts that have already been released, and the remaining amount that has not been released;
  - ▶ The specific circumstances that necessitate the release of the emergency funds; and
  - ▶ A description of how the funds will be used.
- A letter from the agency head.

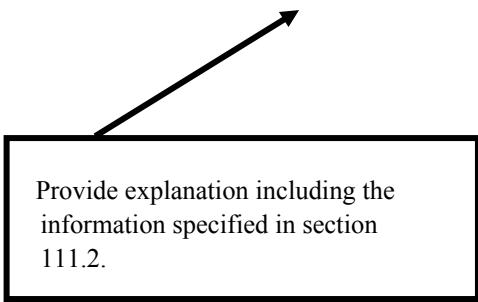
### Releasing Contingent Emergency Funding

#### EMERGENCY APPROPRIATIONS: AMOUNTS PREVIOUSLY APPROPRIATED MADE AVAILABLE BY THE PRESIDENT



Title I, Chapter 2, of the Miscellaneous Appropriations Act, 2001, as enacted by section 1000(a)(5) of the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2000, P.L. 106-000, provided up to \$215.0 million to DG from disaster relief funds previously appropriated in Title III, of P.L. 106-74, contingent upon the President submitting a budget request to the Congress and designating the entire amount requested as an emergency requirement.

At this time, the entire \$215.0 million is required for DG to fund buyouts and relocation assistance for homes damaged by Hurricane Floyd-related flooding.



## SECTION 112—RESCISSION PROPOSALS AND DEFERRALS

**Table of Contents***Before the President transmits a special message*

- 112.1 What do I need to know about rescission proposals and deferrals (impoundments)?
- 112.2 What is an impoundment?
- 112.3 When are funds deferred or proposed for rescission withheld from obligation?
- 112.4 What materials are sent to Congress?
- 112.5 When do I need to submit material to OMB?
- 112.6 What materials do I submit for inclusion in a special message for a rescission proposal?
- 112.7 What materials do I submit for inclusion in a special message for a deferral?
- 112.8 What narrative information do I need to include with rescission or deferral reports?
- 112.9 What am I required to do when a previously reported deferral or rescission proposal changes?
- 112.10 What information is required for the supplementary report?
- 112.11 What are the responsibilities of OMB in preparing special messages?

*After the President transmits a special message*

- 112.12 What should I do to help OMB prepare cumulative reports?
- 112.13 What are my responsibilities after a deferral is reported to Congress?
- 112.14 What apportionment action is required when a rescission is enacted?
- 112.15 What apportionment action is required when a rescission is not enacted?
- 112.16 What apportionment action is required when a deferral is disapproved?

*Limitations on trust and special funds*

- 112.17 How do I treat proposals to lower limitations on trust or revolving funds?

*Preparing a rescission, deferral, or a supplementary report*

- 112.18 What do I include on the different lines of the rescission, deferral, and supplementary reports?
- 112.19 How do I reflect the deferral or the proposed rescission on the SF 132?

*Exhibits*

- Ex-112A Rescission Report -- Sample Rescission Proposal
- Ex-112B Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Rescission Proposal Reported in Exhibit 112A
- Ex-112C Deferral Report
- Ex-112D Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Deferral Reported in Exhibit 112C
- Ex-112E Revised Deferral Report -- Revision of Deferral Reported in Exhibit 112C
- Ex-112F Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Revised Deferral Reported in Exhibit 112E
- Ex-112G Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Deferral Reported in Exhibits 112C-F overturned by Congress
- Ex-112H Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Congressionally-Initiated Deferral for account illustrated in Exhibit 112C

**Summary of Changes**

Clarifies description and title of SF 132 line 6B consistent with Appendix F (section 112.19).

### 112.1 What do I need to know about rescission proposals and deferrals (impoundments)?

The Impoundment Control Act of 1974 (Public Law 93–344), as amended, requires the President to transmit a *special message* to Congress whenever a permanent rescission of budgetary resources is proposed. It also requires that special messages be transmitted to Congress when funds are withheld temporarily from obligation (i.e., deferred).

The President transmits *supplementary messages* to Congress when information contained in a special message transmitted previously is revised. This section provides instructions on agency reporting procedures and required submissions to OMB. [Section 82.9](#) explains how rescission proposals that are transmitted before or at the time the budget is transmitted are presented in the budget. Section 82.9 only addresses rescission proposals that will be considered permanent once enacted.

### 112.2 What is an impoundment?

*Impoundment* means any executive action or inaction that withholds, delays, or precludes the obligation or expenditure of budget authority. There are two types of impoundments:

- *Rescission* means enacted legislation that cancels budget authority previously provided by law, prior to the time when the authority would otherwise expire. See [section 112.18](#) for detailed instructions on rescission proposals by the President. Section 112.18 only addresses rescission proposals that will be considered permanent once enacted.
- *Deferral* means any executive action or inaction that temporarily withholds, delays, or effectively precludes the obligation or expenditure of budgetary resources with the intent of using the funds before they expire. Deferrals are generally effected through the apportionment process. "Agency deferrals" are those initiated and effected by the agency itself and not reflected in the apportionments. See [section 112.4](#) for instructions on reports to Congress.

### 112.3 When are funds deferred or proposed for rescission withheld from obligation?

**Rescissions.** Generally, amounts proposed for rescission will be withheld during the time proposals are being considered by the Congress. This may be accomplished through apportionment action or through agency withholding action. When approved by OMB, funds may be proposed for rescission without being withheld.

For amounts withheld through the apportionment process, see [section 112.19](#) for instructions on completing the SF 132 and SF 133 reports for enacted and proposed rescissions. (For timing of apportionment actions, see [sections 120.29](#), [120.35](#), [112.15](#), and [112.16](#).)

**Deferrals.** OMB may approve apportionments that reflect available budgetary resources temporarily withheld from obligation through the apportionment process. OMB may take such deferral action on its own initiative or at the request of an agency. You may also defer available resources (i.e., agency deferrals), but these deferrals are not reflected in the apportionment process. Do not defer funds without prior approval of OMB.

### 112.4 What materials are sent to Congress?

The law requires the President to transmit the following materials to the Congress:

- Special messages;

- Supplementary messages, whenever any information contained in a previous special message is revised; and
- Cumulative reports listing the status, as of the first day of the month, of all deferrals and rescission proposals previously included in special messages. The cumulative reports are to be transmitted to Congress by the 10th day of each month.

Instructions on reporting procedures are provided in [section 112.18](#).

### **112.5 When do I need to submit material to OMB?**

For deferrals and proposed rescissions withheld through the apportionment process:

- Submit the required materials when the corresponding apportionment or reapportionment requests are made to OMB, or
- If OMB suggests changes in or initiates rescission proposals or deferrals, furnish requested materials expeditiously on a time schedule determined by OMB.

For agency deferrals, submit the required materials immediately after OMB approves a proposal to withhold funds.

Submit a supplementary report to OMB, including a revised rescission proposal report and proposed rescission language, or deferral report, as appropriate, whenever you submit a reapportionment request changing the amount of the rescission proposal or increasing the amount of the deferral, or making any substantial changes to information contained in a previous report.

OMB will report reductions in amounts deferred in cumulative reports based on approved apportionments. Contact OMB no later than the first day of the following month to report the release of all or portions of agency deferrals.

### **112.6 What materials do I submit for inclusion in a special message for a rescission proposal?**

Submit an original and two copies of the following materials to OMB for each rescission proposal:

- A proposed rescission report (see [exhibit 112A](#));
- Proposed rescission language (see [exhibit 112A](#)); and
- An apportionment request (SF 132) that reflects the amount withheld pending rescission on line 9 of the SF 132 (see [exhibit 112B](#)).

For proposed rescissions that are transmitted on the same day (or shortly thereafter) as the Budget, verify that amounts on the rescission report agree with the amounts printed in the budget [Appendix](#). If accounts with amounts proposed for rescission are combined (or merged) with other accounts in the [Appendix](#), the budgetary resources on the rescission report will agree with the combined (or merged) account in the [Appendix](#), even if some of the combined accounts have no proposed rescission. Express all amounts in dollars (per the latest SF 132s).

**112.7 What materials do I submit for inclusion in a special message for a deferral?**

Submit an original and two copies of the following materials to OMB for each deferral:

- A deferral report (see [exhibit 112C](#)); and
- An apportionment request (SF 132) that reflects the amount deferred on line 10 of the SF 132 (see [exhibit 112D](#)).

For deferrals that are transmitted on the same day (or shortly thereafter) as the budget, verify that amounts on the deferral report agree with the amounts printed in the Appendix. If accounts with amounts deferred are combined (or merged) with other accounts in the Appendix, the budgetary resources on the deferral report will agree with the combined (or merged) account in the Appendix, even if some of the combined accounts have no deferral. Express all amounts in dollars (per the latest SF 132s).

(For information on materials required for supplementary messages, see [section 112.10](#) and [exhibit 112E](#).)

**112.8 What narrative information do I need to include with rescission or deferral reports?**

Include information in the rescission or deferral reports specifying:

- The amount proposed for rescission or deferred;
- The affected account and specific project or governmental functions involved;
- The reasons why the amount should be rescinded or deferred;
- The estimated fiscal, economic, and budgetary effects of the rescission proposal or deferral;
- The effect of the rescission proposal or deferral on the objects, purposes, and programs for which the amount was provided, to the maximum extent practicable; and
- Any other relevant facts, circumstances, and considerations.

Also specify in the deferral report the period of time the budget authority is to be deferred (that is, for part of the fiscal year or for the full fiscal year) and any legal authority invoked to justify the deferral in addition to the Impoundment Control Act (2 U.S.C. 684).

Additional examples of deferral reports and apportionment requests are included as exhibits, as follows:

Type of Exhibit	Description	Exhibit No.
Apportionment request	For deferral overturned by Congress	112G
Apportionment request	For congressionally- initiated deferral	112H

The information you provide and that is incorporated into special messages constitutes formal notification to the Congress of rescission proposals and deferrals. As such, rescission and deferral reports that you prepare should set forth a brief description of the program, a justification that presents the reasons for the rescission proposal or deferral in a logical, clear and concise fashion, a persuasive argument in support of

each rescission proposal or deferral, and any other relevant information. Specifically address the estimated program and outlay effects.

For instructions on preparation of rescission and deferral reports, see [section 112.18](#).

### **112.9 What am I required to do when a previously reported deferral or rescission proposal changes?**

You are required to prepare a supplementary report whenever the purpose of the rescission proposal or deferral has not changed, and

- The amount of the proposed rescission changes;
- The amount of the deferral increases; or
- Other substantial changes made to the previous report.

When the purpose of a deferral changes, OMB may determine that a new deferral report is required instead of a supplementary report.

Do not prepare a supplementary report when the amount of a deferral decreases. OMB reports reductions in deferrals to the Congress in monthly cumulative reports based on approved apportionments. When all or portions of agency deferrals (deferrals not withheld through the apportionment process) are released, contact your OMB representative no later than the first day of the following month so that OMB can report these deferrals in cumulative reports.

### **112.10 What information is required for the supplementary report?**

The supplementary report should specify:

- The amount of the initial proposed rescission or deferral reported in a special message or, when revised reports have been made previously, the amount of the latest revision;
- The amount currently being deferred or proposed for rescission;
- The amount of the increase in the deferral or change in proposed rescission; and
- The reason for the change. (See [exhibit 112E](#) for the format of supplementary reports.)

Whenever you revise information on a rescission proposal or deferral previously included in a special message, submit an original and two copies of:

- A supplementary report explaining the change (see the first page of [exhibit 112E](#) for a supplementary report for a deferral);
- The corresponding revised rescission or deferral report (see the second page of [exhibit 112E](#) for a revised deferral report);
- In the case of rescissions, revised proposed rescission language; and
- In some cases, a reapportionment request (see [exhibit 112F](#)).

(NOTE: Insert an asterisk (\*) before revisions to information (e.g., amounts withheld or explanations) contained in rescission or deferral reports. Footnote the report "\* Revised from previous report.")

The supplementary report, the revised rescission or deferral report, and revised rescission language will be included in a special message from the President to the Congress.

**112.11 What are the responsibilities of OMB in preparing special messages?**

OMB will compile and transmit the special and supplementary messages to the Congress and to the Comptroller General. After the special and supplementary messages are transmitted to the Congress and GAO, they are printed as House and Senate documents and in the Federal Register.

**112.12 What should I do to help OMB prepare cumulative reports?**

Notify OMB on the first day of each month when all or portions of agency deferrals (deferrals not withheld through the apportionment process) are released. After the cumulative reports are transmitted to the Congress and GAO, they are printed as House and Senate documents and in the Federal Register.

**112.13 What are my responsibilities after a deferral is reported to Congress?**

Review all deferrals periodically so that amounts deferred for only part of the year may be released in time to be used prudently before the year ends.

Each June, you should review deferrals of funds expiring at the end of the year. If you are unsure whether funds are needed or could be prudently used, or if you are told that a determination has been made that such amounts should not be used before the funds expire, propose a rescission before the beginning of the fourth fiscal quarter. Only in exceptional cases will OMB approve proposed rescissions of annual funds during the fourth quarter. OMB must approve all proposed rescissions.

If amounts actually becoming available are less than previously anticipated for indefinite budget authority, transfers, reimbursements, or recoveries, normally you will deduct the difference from amounts apportioned. Do not deduct the difference from amounts deferred or otherwise unapportioned unless a specific provision is made for a different treatment on the approved apportionment form, or unless reappportionment action is taken. Whenever it is determined that a deferred amount will not be required to carry out the purposes of the appropriation or other authority, you must recommend a rescission as required by law (31 U.S.C. 1512 and 2 U.S.C. 683).

**112.14 What apportionment action is required when a rescission is enacted?**

If Congress completes action on a Presidential rescission proposal within the 45-day period prescribed by law and rescinds the exact amount proposed by the President (and the amount is being withheld on line 9), reappportionment action is not required to reflect the reduction in budget authority. Adjust the SF 132 to reflect the enacted rescission on line 6B (and remove it from line 9) only if reappportionment action is requested for other reasons.

In all other circumstances involving congressional rescission of amounts initially proposed for rescission by the President, submit reappportionment requests to OMB promptly upon completion of congressional action. (This includes instances when the Congress rescinds an amount different from that proposed by the President within the prescribed 45 days or rescinds all or any portion of the amount proposed by the President subsequent to the expiration of the prescribed 45 days of continuous session.) In all cases, follow congressional action on proposed rescissions affecting your programs or activities to ensure accurate and timely reappportionment action.



Congressionally-initiated rescissions may occur as the result of the reconciliation process established by the Congressional Budget Act (2 U.S.C. 641) or due to changing priorities or economic conditions during the year. Submit reapportionment requests after final congressional approval in such cases and ensure that obligations do not exceed reduced appropriations. When congressionally-initiated rescissions take place, adjust apportionments in the following ways:

- Where initial apportionment action has not been completed before rescission action is taken and sufficient time exists to revise the apportionment request (within 30 days after the date of enactment of the appropriation bill), you or OMB will make appropriate changes to the SF 132.
- When there is insufficient time to adjust the initial SF 132, submit a reapportionment request within five calendar days after the date of enactment of the rescission.

#### **112.15 What apportionment action is required when a rescission is not enacted?**

According to law, funds withheld pending rescission must be released following expiration of the prescribed 45 days of continuous session without completion of action on the proposed rescission by both Houses of Congress.

When funds must be released because of congressional inaction on proposed rescissions, submit reapportionment requests reflecting the release of the affected amounts to OMB before the end of the prescribed 45 days, as determined by OMB. If the Congress is in session, the 45-day period begins the first day after Congress receives a special message. If the Congress is not in session at the time of the transmittal of a special message, the 45-day period begins the first day the Congress convenes. If the second session of a Congress adjourns sine die before the expiration of the 45 days, the special message is considered retransmitted on the first day of the succeeding Congress and the 45-day period begins the following day. If either House recesses during a session for more than three days to a day certain, the number of days in recess is excluded from the counting period. OMB, in consultation with the General Accounting Office, will determine the day for the release of each proposed rescission and will notify agencies when funds should be released.

#### **112.16 What apportionment action is required when a deferral is disapproved?**

When Congress enacts legislation to disapprove an Executive deferral, you must take prompt action to ensure the release of the affected amounts. If funds have been deferred through the apportionment process, submit a reapportionment request to OMB, reflecting release of amounts previously deferred not later than the day following enactment of the legislation.

#### **112.17 How do I treat proposals to lower limitations on trust or revolving funds?**

Statutory limitations on the availability of trust or revolving funds are a mechanism to control funds that would otherwise be available for obligation under broad authority. The limitations are generally not the source of authority to incur obligations; rather, they place a ceiling on the use of a portion of the obligational authority by limiting the amount that can be obligated or committed for a specific purpose. Generally, amounts in trust or revolving funds do not expire.

A proposal to lower a statutory limitation on funds that do not expire, by itself, will not result in a rescission. Even when the Congress enacts the lower limitation, the funds will continue to be available for other purposes in the same account.

In the rare case when the intent is to restrict the use of such funds permanently, the proposal must be modified, usually by proposing to amend the authorizing legislation.

**SECTION 112—RESCISSION PROPOSALS AND DEFERRALS**

If the intent is to lower the limitation and withhold such funds temporarily, the funds may be deferred through the apportionment process. To withhold the funds through the apportionment process requires that the trust or revolving fund be apportioned. Include the difference between the limitation and the proposed lower amount on line 10, "Deferred," of the apportionment for the trust or revolving fund.

Only careful programmatic and legal analyses of the account, the limitation, and the basic legislation authorizing the program will permit you to determine whether appropriations language to reduce the limitation is also required.

**112.18 What do I include on the different lines of the rescission, deferral, and supplementary reports?**

Prepare rescission, deferral, and supplementary reports in accordance with the following instructions: (Examples of these reports are illustrated in exhibits 112A, C, and E.)

Entry	Description
<b>Rescission proposal no.</b> .....	<p>A number (RCY-XX) is used to identify each proposed rescission. Enter "R" to designate a proposed rescission and the last two digits of the fiscal year for which the rescission is proposed. OMB will assign a serial number to distinguish between individual reports. You may obtain the serial number from your OMB representative after the special message is transmitted to the Congress.</p> <p>If a revised rescission report is prepared, add an "A" to the OMB-assigned serial number (XX) of the initial rescission proposal to indicate the first revision, a "B" to indicate the second revision, etc.</p>
<b>Deferral no.</b> .....	<p>A number (DCY-XX) is used to identify each deferral. Enter a "D" to designate a deferral and the last two digits of the fiscal year for which the deferral action is taken. OMB will assign a serial number to distinguish between individual deferrals. You may obtain the serial number from your OMB representative after the special message is transmitted to the Congress.</p> <p>If a revised deferral report is prepared, add an "A" to the OMB-assigned serial number (XX) of the initial deferral to indicate the first revision, a "B" to indicate the second revision, etc.</p>
<b>Agency</b> .....	Enter the name of the department or agency for which the rescission is proposed or the deferral action is taken.
<b>Bureau</b> .....	Enter the name of the subordinate organization as shown in the most recent Budget.
<b>Account</b> .....	<p>Enter the title of the appropriation or fund account from which the funds are being proposed for rescission or are being deferred. Also include the Treasury account symbol(s) to indicate the coverage of the report. Enter the account symbols:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the accounts affected by the rescission proposal or deferral; or</li> <li>• For all accounts that are included under the appropriation title</li> </ul> <p>— not just those subject to the proposed rescission or deferral</p>

**SECTION 112—RESCISSION PROPOSALS AND DEFERRALS**

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
	<p align="center">— if the account affected by the proposed rescission or deferral is merged in the Budget. Footnote this line as follows:</p> <p align="center">"Includes all accounts included under this appropriation title."</p>
<b>New budget authority .....</b>	Enter the amount of new budget authority specified in appropriation or substantive acts that is available in the current year for the accounts covered by the rescission or deferral report. This amount should equal the sum of new budget authority shown on lines 1A, 1B, 1C, and 1D of the latest SF 132 in exact dollars. For deferrals and proposed rescissions that are transmitted on the same day (or shortly thereafter) as the Budget, amounts should agree with the amounts printed in the Appendix. Thus, if accounts with amounts deferred or proposed for rescission are combined (or merged) with other accounts in the Appendix, the budgetary resources on the deferral or rescission report will agree with the combined (or merged) account in the Appendix, even if some of the combined accounts have no deferral or proposed rescission. Express amounts in dollars (per the latest SF 132s).
<b>Other budgetary resources .....</b>	Enter the amount of other budgetary resources. This amount is equal to the sum of lines 2-6 on the latest SF 132.
<b>Total budgetary resources .....</b>	Enter the total amount of budgetary resources. This should equal the amount on line 7 of the latest SF 132.
<b>Amount proposed for rescission .....</b>	On rescission reports, enter the amount of budgetary resources proposed for rescission.
<b>Proposed appropriations language .....</b>	Include proposed appropriations language (double-spaced and underlined) for rescission proposals.
<b>Amount to be deferred .....</b>	On deferral reports, enter the amount of budgetary resources to be deferred, as follows:
<b>Part of year .....</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Report the amount to be deferred for part of the current year. Because you may not defer funds past the time that the funds would expire, you must report a part-year deferral when amounts to be deferred would expire at the end of the year (annual accounts and the last year of multiple-year accounts).</li> </ul>
<b>Entire year .....</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Report the amount to be deferred for the entire current year. Use only when the funds remain available beyond the end of the fiscal year.</li> </ul>
<b>Justification .....</b>	<p>Provide a justification that briefly describes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The activities funded by the account.</li> <li>• The rationale for the deferral or the proposed rescission and the consequences of not expending the funds.</li> <li>• The authority for withholding the funds in addition to the Impoundment Control Act.</li> <li>• Any legal authority in addition to sections 1012 and 1013 of the Impoundment Control Act (2 U.S.C. 683-684) for a rescission proposal or deferral.</li> </ul>

**SECTION 112—RESCISSION PROPOSALS AND DEFERRALS**

<b>Entry</b>	<b>Description</b>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether a rescission proposal or a deferral action is taken pursuant to the Antideficiency Act.</li> </ul> <p>Since these reports are transmitted by the President to the Congress, they should be written in a clear, concise, and logical manner so that those who are not familiar with the program will be able to understand the proposal.</p>
<b>Estimated programmatic effect .....</b>	<p>When there is no estimated program effect, enter "None". This will normally be the case for rescissions proposed and deferrals made pursuant to the Antideficiency Act.</p> <p>When there is an estimated program effect, include a brief, clear statement of the expected effect.</p>
<b>Effect on outlays .....</b>	<p>Show outlay savings for proposed rescissions for CY through BY+4 and the total for the five years, as appropriate.</p> <p>Do not show outlay savings for deferrals reported pursuant to the Antideficiency Act.</p>
<b>Footnotes .....</b>	<p>For the account(s) covered by a deferral or rescission report, cite any past or current year rescission proposals or deferrals affecting the same account.</p> <p>For a revised rescission or deferral report, indicate all sections containing changes from the initial report with an asterisk (*) and provide the footnote "* Revised from previous report." Subsequent revisions to a report will also indicate changes from the previous report with the specified footnotes.</p> <p>When more than one Treasury account is affected by a proposed rescission or deferral, OMB may require that detail on budgetary resources and changes thereto be supplied at the Treasury account level.</p>

**112.19 How do I reflect the deferral or the proposed rescission on the SF 132?**

The following instructions will apply with respect to rescissions and deferrals (see Appendix F for a description of all entries on the SF 132):

**EXPLANATION OF LINE ENTRIES ON STANDARD FORM 132  
FOR RESCISSIONS AND DEFERRALS**

**BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

Line Entry	Description
Line 6. Permanently not available: B. Enacted reductions (-) .....	Enter the amount of enacted rescissions, including rescissions of new appropriations, borrowing authority, contract authority, and prior year balances.  <i>This line applies to only permanent reductions for appropriations and unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources returned to the general fund of the Treasury and not available for subsequent appropriation.</i>  <i>Identify the public law containing the restriction in a footnote.</i>

**APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

Line Entry	Description
Line 9. Withheld pending rescission	Enter the amount of budgetary resources to be withheld from availability pending congressional action on a Presidential rescission proposal. Such amounts are subject to the Impoundment Control Act (2 U.S.C. 683). Include amounts proposed for rescission "to achieve savings made possible by or through changes in requirements or greater efficiency of operations," in accordance with 31 U.S.C. 1512. Also include amounts proposed for rescission for other reasons, as well as any unapportioned balances of revolving funds that are being proposed for rescission (amounts being proposed for rescission that could be effectively, efficiently, and legally obligated for the purposes appropriated).
Line 10. Deferred .....	Enter the amount of budgetary resources being set aside for possible use at a later date, before the funds expire. Such amounts are subject to the Impoundment Control Act (2 U.S.C. 684). Include amounts deferred to meet future contingencies under authority of 31 U.S.C. 1512 and 2 U.S.C. 684. These entries will also include unapportioned balances of revolving funds that are temporarily withheld restrictively and funds withheld when the agency could effectively, efficiently, and legally obligate the funds for the purposes appropriated. Include amounts in annual accounts deferred for apportionment later in the year, as well as amounts in multiple- and no-year accounts .
Line 11. Unapportioned balance of revolving fund .....	Use for public enterprise and intragovernmental revolving funds, as well as trust funds that are subject to apportionment. Enter the amount of budgetary resources that is neither apportioned nor being withheld restrictively as a proposed rescission or deferral, but is credited to the current fiscal year.

**Rescission Report—Sample Rescission Proposal**

Rescission proposal no. RCY-XX

**PROPOSED RESCISSION OF BUDGET AUTHORITY**

Report Pursuant to Section 1012 of P.L. 93-344

**Agency:** DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
**Bureau:** Bureau of Statistics  
**Account:** Salaries and expenses (80Y0200)

New budget authority: \$744,605,000  
 Other budgetary resources: 42,000,000  
 Total budgetary resources: 786,605,000

Amount proposed for rescission: 223,000

Proposed appropriations language:

Of the funds made available under this heading in Public Law XXX-XXX, \$223,000 are rescinded.

**Justification:** The proposal would rescind \$223 thousand, thereby reducing the amount generally available in the Bureau of Statistics. The Bureau conducts research to provide the means for a safer, more economical supply of office supply products for the Nation and to provide producers with technologies to supply these products competitively. The proposed rescission is possible because applications for research efforts have fallen drastically from expected levels. This action is taken pursuant to the Antideficiency Act (31 U.S.C. 1512).

**Estimated programmatic effect:** As a result of the proposed rescission, Federal outlays will decrease, as specified below. This will have a commensurate effect on the Federal budget deficit and, to that extent, will have a beneficial effect on the economy. These reductions can be absorbed within the available resources and would have a negligible impact on the program.

Effect on Outlays (in thousands of dollars)					
FY 2001	FY 2002	FY 2003	FY 2004	FY 2005	Total
-178	-45	----	----	----	-223

**Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Rescission Proposal  
Reported in Exhibit 112A**

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year  
 0200 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Bureau of Statistics		80Y0200	Salaries and expenses	
DESCRIPTION		AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<b>Budget authority :</b>				
1A	Appropriation (Public Law 106-530).....	744,605,000	744,605,000	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)</b>				
Earned:				
3A1	Collected.....		5,000,000	
3C	Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....	42,000,000	37,000,000	
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>786,605,000</b>	<b>786,605,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<i>Memorandum:</i>				
<b>Apportioned:</b>		<i>Obligations incurred</i>		
Category A:				
8A1	First quarter..... 198,601,325	200,000,000	200,000,000	
8A2	Second quarter.....	200,000,000	200,000,000	
8A3	Third quarter.....	200,000,000	200,000,000	
8A4	Fourth quarter.....	186,605,000	186,382,000	
9	<b>Withheld pending rescission.....</b>		223,000	
12	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>786,605,000</b>	<b>786,605,000</b>	

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 1/30/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.  
 Actual data as of 11/30/CY

## Deferral Report

Deferral No. DCY-XX

### DEFERRAL OF BUDGET AUTHORITY

Report Pursuant to Section 1013 of P.L. 93-344

**Agency:** DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
**Bureau:** Bureau of Statistics  
**Account:** Foreign Assistance <sup>1</sup> (80Y0300)

New budget authority:	\$2,419,600,000
Other budgetary resources:	486,647,204
Total budgetary resources:	2,906,247,204
 Amount deferred for entire year:	 \$2,330,097,776 <sup>2</sup>

**Justification:** The deferral withholds all funds for which there are no approved country-by-country plans. The President is authorized by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, to furnish assistance to countries and organizations, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, in order to promote economic or political stability. Section 531(b) of the Act makes the Secretary of Government, in cooperation with the Administrator of the Bureau of Statistics, responsible for policy decisions and justifications for economic support programs, including whether to provide an economic support program for a country and the amount of the program for each country.

These funds have been deferred pending the development of country-specific plans that assure that aid is provided in an efficient manner and are reserved for unanticipated program needs. This action is taken pursuant to the Antideficiency Act (31 U.S.C. 1512).

Estimated programmatic effect: None.

---

<sup>1</sup> This account was the subject of a similar deferral in FY 19PY (DPY-XX).

<sup>2</sup> Subsequent releases have reduced the amount deferred to \$1,249,778,456.



Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Deferral Reported in Exhibit 112C

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 0300 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Fiscal year CY

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Bureau of Statistics		80Y0300 Foreign assistance		
DESCRIPTION		AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<b>Budget authority:</b>				
1A	Appropriation (Public Law 105-456).....		2,419,600,000	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)</b>				
3C	Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....		486,647,204	
7	<b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....		2,906,247,204	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<i>Memorandum:</i>				
<b>Apportioned:</b>		<i>Obligations incurred</i>		
Category A:				
8A1	First quarter.....		150,000,000	
8A2	Second quarter.....		150,000,000	
8A3	Third quarter.....		150,000,000	
8A4	Fourth quarter.....		126,149,428	
10	<b>Deferred</b> .....		2,330,097,776	
12	<b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....		2,906,247,204	

The amount shown on line 10 will consist of all budgetary resources including balances of revolving funds withheld restrictively) being set aside or possible use at a later date, before the funds expire. Include amounts deferred in annual accounts for apportionment later in the year as well as amounts in multiple-year and no-year accounts deferred for apportionment in subsequent years. A deferral report must be submitted whenever there is an entry on this line.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 8/20/PY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

Note that since this is the initial apportionment for the account, you must submit it on *August 21st* before the fiscal year begins.

**Revised Deferral Report**  
**Revision of Deferral Reported in Exhibit 112C**

DCY-XXA

**SUPPLEMENTARY REPORT**

Report Pursuant to Section 1014(c) of Public Law 93-344

This report updates Deferral No. DCY-XX transmitted to Congress on October 1, PY.

This increases by \$10,000,000 the previous deferral of \$2,330,097,776 in the Department of Government's Foreign assistance account, resulting in a total deferral of \$2,340,097,776. The additional funds can be deferred because more unobligated funds were available at the end of 19PY than previously anticipated.

**Revised Deferral Report**  
**Revision of Deferral Reported in Exhibit 112C—Continued**

Deferral No. DCY-XXA

**DEFERRAL OF BUDGET AUTHORITY**  
 Report Pursuant to Section 1013 of P.L. 93-344

**Agency:** DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT  
**Bureau:** Bureau of Statistics  
**Account:** Foreign Assistance <sup>1</sup> (80Y0300)

New budget authority:	\$2,419,600,000
Other budgetary resources:	* 496,647,204
Total budgetary resources:	* 2,916,247,204

Amount deferred for entire year: \* \$2,340,097,776 <sup>2</sup>

**Justification:** The deferral withholds all funds for which there are no approved country-by-country plans. The President is authorized by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, to furnish assistance to countries and organizations, on such terms and conditions as he may determine, in order to promote economic or political stability. Section 531(b) of the Act makes the Secretary of Government, in cooperation with the Administrator of the Bureau of Statistics, responsible for policy decisions and justifications for economic support programs, including whether there will be an economic support program for a country and the amount of the program for each country.

These funds have been deferred pending the development of country-specific plans that assure that aid is provided in an efficient manner and are reserved for unanticipated program needs. This action is taken pursuant to the Antideficiency Act (31 U.S.C. 1512).

Estimated programmatic effect: None.

\* Revised from previous report.

---

<sup>1</sup> This account was the subject of a similar deferral in FY 19PY (DPY-XX).

<sup>2</sup> Subsequent releases have reduced the amount deferred to \$1,249,778,456.

**Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Revised Deferral  
Reported in Exhibit 112E**

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 0300 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Bureau of Statistics		80Y0300	Foreign assistance	
DESCRIPTION		AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<b>Budget authority :</b>				
1A	Appropriation (Public Law 105-456).....	2,419,600,000	2,419,600,000	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)</b>				
3C	Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....	486,647,204	496,647,204	
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>2,906,247,204</b>	<b>2,916,247,204</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<i>Memorandum:</i>				
<b>8. Apportioned: Obligations incurred</b>				
Category A:				
8A1	First quarter..... 145,687,523	150,000,000	150,000,000	
8A2	Second quarter.....	150,000,000	150,000,000	
8A3	Third quarter.....	150,000,000	150,000,000	
8A4	Fourth quarter.....	126,149,428	126,149,428	
10	<b>Deferred.....</b>	<b>2,330,097,776</b>	<b>2,340,097,776</b>	
12	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>2,906,247,204</b>	<b>2,916,247,204</b>	

Whenever, as a result of Executive action/inaction, the amount on line 10 increases above the amount shown on the most recently transmitted deferral report, a supplementary report and related materials specified in section 112.9 will accompany the reapportionment request (see exhibit 112E). If the purpose of the deferral changes, OMB will determine whether a new or a revised deferral report is required. Do not prepare a report when the amount deferred decreases.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 1/20/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

Actual data as of 12/31/CY

**Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for Deferral Reported in Exhibits 112C-F Overturned by Congress**

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 0300 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL			
BUREAU: Bureau of Statistics		80Y0300	Foreign assistance		
DESCRIPTION		AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority:</b>					
1A	Appropriation (Public Law 105-456).....	2,419,600,000	2,419,600,000	The "Amount on Latest SF 132" column must reflect the most recent approved apportionment.	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)</b>					
3C	Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....	496,647,204	496,647,204		
7	<b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....	2,916,247,204	2,916,247,204	Since apportioned amounts are available on a cumulative basis, \$300,000,000 is available through the second quarter. \$300,000,000 is greater than the \$297,567,046 obligated through the second quarter. Thus, even though the second quarter obligation amount (\$151,879,523) exceeds the second quarter apportionment amount (\$150,000,000) there is no violation of the Anti-deficiency Act in this case.	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum:</i>					
<b>Apportioned:</b>		<i>Obligations incurred</i>			
Category A:					
8A1	First quarter.....	145,687,523	150,000,000	When the Congress passes and the President signs an appropriation bill containing the disapproval of all or a portion of a deferral, footnote this information on the apportionment schedule. Reduce or delete the amount previously deferred to reflect the release.	
8A2	Second quarter.....	151,879,523	150,000,000		
8A3	Third quarter.....	149,852,654	150,000,000		
8A4	Fourth quarter.....	126,149,428	146,149,428		
10	<b>Deferred</b> .....	2,340,097,776	2,320,097,776		
12	<b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....	2,916,247,204	2,916,247,204		

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 8/20/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.  
 Actual date as of 5/31/CCY  
 This apportionment reflects congressional disapproval of a portion of Deferral No. DCY-XXA as contained in P.L. 106-171 on July 28, CY.

**Apportionment or Reapportionment Request for  
Congressionally-Initiated Deferral for Account Illustrated in Exhibit 112C**

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]  
[= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 1309 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services		80X1309 Research and Development		
DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<b>Budget authority:</b>				
1A Appropriation (Public Law 105-456).....	25,000,000	25,000,000		
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>				
2A Brought forward, October 1.....(Actual).....	1,610,000	1,610,000		
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>				
Earned:				
3A1 Collected.....	86,000	205,973		
Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):				
3B1 Advance received.....	9,000	6,123		
3C Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....	305,000	87,904		
<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>				
4A Actual.....	27,000	123,823		
4B Anticipated.....	123,000	126,177		
5 <b>Temporarily not available pursuant to P.L. 106-99 (-)</b>		-10,000,000		
<b>Permanently not available:</b>				
6B Enacted reductions (-).....	-200,000	-200,000		
7 <b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,960,000</b>	<b>16,960,000</b>		
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<i>Memorandum:</i>				
<b>AppORTioned:</b>		<b>Obligations incurred</b>		
Category A:				
8A1 First quarter.....	99,049	120,000	120,000	
8A2 Second quarter.....	101,014	120,000	120,000	
8A3 Third quarter.....	110,941	120,000	120,000	
8A4 Fourth quarter.....		120,000	90,000	
Category B:				
8B1 Research.....	10,397,461	16,880,000	11,510,000	
8B2 Dev. of products.....	2,017,601	9,600,000	5,000,000	
11 <b>Unapportioned balance of revolving fund.....</b>				
12 <b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,960,000</b>	<b>16,960,000</b>		

Line 5 may be used when:  
 -- a general provision specifies that a certain percentage of the amount appropriated for a particular object; for example, travel or consultants, will not be available for obligation;  
 -- a congressionally-initiated deferral of an amount that has been appropriated is enacted, including enactment of a deferral in excess of that amount deferred by the Executive (enter the amount not available due to congressional action on this line); or  
 -- a substantive law specifies that all or a portion of the amount appropriated is not available for obligation unless specifically authorized (enter the amount not available on this line and the total amount appropriated on line 1).

SUBMITTED Authorized officer / 8/20/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts  
 Actual amounts are as of 5/31/CY  
 This apportionment reflects congressional-initiated deferral as contained in P.L. 106-99 on July 28, CY.

## SECTION 113—INVESTMENT TRANSACTIONS

**Table of Contents**

113.1	How do I record investment in securities, disinvestment, and earnings?
113.2	How do I treat an investment in a Federal security on an SF 133?
113.3	How do I treat the redemption of a Federal security on an SF 133?
113.4	How do I treat investments in securities issued by non-Federal entities on an SF 133?
Ex-113A	Investment in Federal Securities at a Discount
Ex-113B	Investment in Federal Securities at a Premium—General Fund Appropriation or Revolving Fund Accounts
Ex-113C	Federal Security Purchased at a Discount and Sold or Redeemed at Par—General Fund Appropriation or Revolving Fund Accounts.
Ex-113D	Federal Security Purchased at a Discount and Sold or Redeemed at Par—Special or Trust Fund Accounts (excluding Trust Revolving Funds)

**Summary of Changes**

Contains information previously included in sections 20.12 and 122.

### 113.1 How do I record investment in securities, disinvestment, and earnings?

(a) *Overview.*

You may only invest funds in securities if you are authorized to do so by law. Authorizing laws usually specify investment in Federal securities; they rarely authorize investment in non-Federal securities (see the definitions below). The budget treatment of investment in non-Federal securities, described in subsection (c), differs from that of Federal securities, described in subsection (d).

The guidance in this section regarding purchase premiums and discounts doesn't apply to the Treasury Department's purchases of marketable Treasury securities from the public prior to their maturity (often referred to as "debt buybacks"). The budget records buyback premiums and discounts as means of financing a surplus or deficit, rather than as outlays or offsetting collections or receipts. The buyback premium or discount is the difference between the purchase price of a security and its book value. The book value can be expected to differ from the par value (face value) of the security. (See Chapter 24, "Budget System and Concepts and Glossary," pages 457–458, of the *Analytical Perspectives* volume of the 2001 budget for an explanation of the reason for this treatment.)

(b) *Special terms for investment defined.*

- (1) *Accrued interest purchase* means payments to the seller of a security, when a security is purchased, for interest that has accrued to the seller but that will be paid to the purchaser.
- (2) *Amortization* means to record a portion of any purchase discount or purchase premium in each reporting period over the life of a security, or it means the amount so recorded.
- (3) *Book value* means the *par value* of a security minus the amount of any unamortized discounts or plus the amount of any unamortized premiums.

- (4) *Earnings* refers collectively to some or all of these components: interest, accrued interest purchases, the amortization of purchase premiums and discounts, and sales gains and losses.
- (5) *Federal securities* consist of securities issued by Federal agencies, including nonmarketable par value Treasury securities, market-based Treasury securities, marketable Treasury securities, and securities issued by other Federal agencies. (Compare this to *non-federal securities*.)
- (6) *Interest* means the nominal interest or stated amount of interest received on a security.
- (7) *Marketable Treasury securities*, including Treasury bills, notes, and bonds, are types of securities that Treasury initially issues by sale to the marketplace and that can be bought and sold on securities exchange markets.
- (8) *Market-based Treasury securities* are special series debt securities that the U.S. Treasury issues to Federal entities without statutorily determined interest rates. These securities are not offered to the market place and cannot be bought and sold on exchange markets, but Treasury sets their terms (prices and interest rates) to mirror the terms of marketable Treasury securities. Because they mirror market terms, the purchase price may reflect a premium or discount.
- (9) *Net value*, for the purpose of budget schedules, means the par value of a security reduced by the amount of any purchase discount on a cash basis. This definition differs from the definition of "Treasury securities, net" as reported in balance sheets under section 86.2 (see *Differences between amounts recorded in budget schedules and financial statements* in subsection (d)).
- (10) *Nonmarketable par value Treasury securities* are special series debt securities that the U.S. Treasury issues to federal entities at par value. These securities are not offered to the market place and cannot be bought and sold on exchange markets. As required by the authorizing laws, Treasury sets the interest rate on such securities taking into consideration current market yields on outstanding marketable Treasury securities of specified maturity. Because these securities are sold at par value, there is no purchase premium or discount.
- (11) *Non-Federal securities* consist of securities issued by a non-Federal entity, including State and local governments, private corporations, and Government-sponsored enterprises, regardless of whether the securities are federally guaranteed.
- (12) *Par value* is the amount of principal a security pays at maturity. It is the amount printed on the face of a Treasury security, which is why it is sometimes referred to as the face value, or the equivalent book-entry amount.
- (13) *Purchase discount* means the excess of a security's par value over its purchase price.
- (14) *Purchase premium* means the excess of a security's purchase price over its par value.
- (15) *Sales gain* means the excess of the sales price over the purchase price of the security.
- (16) *Sales loss* means the excess of the purchase price over the sales price at the time of the sale.



*(c) Non-Federal securities*

The budget treats an investment in a non-Federal security (equity or debt security) as a purchase of an asset, recording an obligation and an outlay in an amount equal to the purchase price in the year of the purchase. You cannot incur such an obligation unless budget authority (or unobligated balances of budget authority) is available for the purpose. If a law clearly requires such investment without requiring further action by Congress, we will generally construe that law as providing budget authority for the purpose.

Investment in non-Federal securities consumes budgetary resources, unlike investment in Federal securities. The purchase of non-Federal securities using unobligated balances reduces the balances. The balance doesn't include the value of non-Federal securities because the funds have been spent for the purchase of the assets.

When such securities are sold or redeemed at maturity, the budget records the proceeds as offsetting collections or receipts, which adds to the balances of the account.

You record interest and other earnings on such investments as described for earnings on Federal securities in the next subsection, except that you must account for such earnings separately from earnings on investments in Federal securities. You record earnings credited to a general fund appropriation account or revolving fund account as offsetting collections on line 8840, Non-Federal sources, of the program and financing statement. You record earnings credited to a special or trust fund account as proprietary receipts in a separate receipt account for this purpose.

*(d) Federal securities.*

Because Federal securities are the equivalent of cash for budget purposes, we treat investment in them as a change in the mix of assets held, rather than as a purchase of assets. The following bullets describe the treatment in general terms, and the following table explains how to record specific transactions in the budget. The purchase, sale, or redemption of an asset, or the earnings in a year, may combine several transactions.

- **Principal.** The investment reduces the cash balances by the purchase price and increases balances of Federal securities. How you report balances of Federal securities depends on which budget schedule you are working with.
  - ▶ *Unavailable collections schedule (schedule N).* This schedule doesn't divide the unavailable balances into cash and Federal securities. It presents the balances as a single amount (unless the balances are divided for other reasons). The amount equals the uninvested cash balance, plus the *net value* (as defined in subsection (b)) of Federal securities held. MAX generates schedule N automatically. (See section [86.6](#).)
  - ▶ *Program and financing schedule (schedule P).* This schedule doesn't divide balances (unobligated or obligated balances) into cash and Federal securities. It presents the balances as a single amount (unless the balances are divided for other reasons). The amount equals the uninvested cash balance, plus the *net value* (as defined in subsection (b)) of Federal securities held. Enter the end of year unobligated and obligated balances in MAX as you would normally. In addition, you must enter memorandum entries for total investments at *par value* at the start and end of each year. (See section [82.7](#).)
  - ▶ *Status of funds schedule (schedule J).* We require this schedule for certain accounts listed by agency in section 86.5. For unexpended balances at the start of the year and at the end of the year, the schedule presents separate amounts for the cash balance, the balance of Federal

securities at *par value*, and unrealized purchase discounts. The MAX database generates schedule J automatically, except that it does not divide balances into amounts for cash, Federal securities at par value, or unrealized purchase discounts. You must enter these amounts. (See section [86.5](#).)

- **Earnings.** You record all earnings as net interest. Some components may be positive (such as interest and realized purchase discounts) and others negative (such as an accrued interest purchases and purchase premiums). Record each component as an increase or decrease in the net interest for the year in which the transaction occurs. For investments from a general fund appropriation account or revolving fund account (including a trust revolving fund account), record interest as an offsetting collection credited to the account (line 8820 Interest on Federal securities) of the P&F schedule. For investments from a special or trust fund account (non-revolving), record interest in a receipt account for interest (usually one ending with the suffix .20). The Status of Funds schedule, if one is required for the account, records earnings on lines that correspond to the entries for offsetting collections in the P&F schedule or the receipts credited to receipt accounts, as appropriate.

We may specify an alternative treatment for certain accounts where these rules may result in significant distortions of amounts presented in the budget.

The following table lists the transactions associated with investments in Federal securities in the first column and explains how to record them in the budget schedules in columns 2 through 4. Please note these features of the table:

- The second column contains instructions for recording transactions in the P&F schedule. The instructions for recording principal transactions apply to all accounts investing or disinvesting in securities. The instructions for recording earnings apply only to investments from general fund appropriation accounts or revolving fund accounts (including trust revolving funds).
- The third column contains instructions for recording earnings in special and trust fund (except trust revolving fund) receipt accounts for interest.
- The fourth column contains instructions for recording transactions—both principal transactions and earnings transactions—in the Status of Funds schedule required for certain accounts listed in section 86.6.
- Although the instructions on balances specify end of year balances, they apply equally to start of year balances, because end of year balances are carried forward and become the start of year balances for the next year. MAX automatically generates the start of year balances in the Unavailable Collections schedule (MAX schedule N), the P&F schedule (MAX schedule P), and the Status of Funds schedule (MAX schedule J), except that you must break out the amounts for cash, Federal securities at par value, and unrealized purchase discounts in the Status of Funds schedule.
- A negative sign "(–)" at the end of a stub label means that you normally report negative amounts on this line. A direction to increase the amount reported means you should report a larger negative amount, and a direction to decrease the amount means you should report a smaller negative amount. The absence of a sign means you normally report positive amounts on this line. It is possible for negative earnings (such as a sales loss) for an account for a year to produce a positive amount for offsetting collections, or a negative amount for receipts, if the amounts reported for other transactions during the year are not sufficient to offset the negative earnings. (No signs appear in the stub labels printed in the budget.)

If the transaction is...	In the P&F schedule...	Or, in the special or trust fund receipt account for interest (usually suffix .20) ...	And, in the Status of Funds schedule...
(1) Principal, upon investment.	Increase the amount reported on line 9202, "Total investments, end of year; Federal securities: Par value," by the par value in the purchase year.	Not applicable.	Decrease the amount reported on line 8700, "Uninvested balance," by the purchase price in the purchase year.  Increase the amount reported on line 8701, "Federal securities: Par value," by the par value in the purchase year.
(2) Purchase discount—the excess of a security's par value over the purchase price.	Not applicable.	Not applicable.	In the year of the purchase, increase the amount reported on line 8702, "Unrealized discounts (-)," by the discount amount.  When the security matures: (1) Decrease the amount reported on line 8702, "Unrealized discounts (-)," by the amount of the purchase discount; and (2) increase the amount reported on the line corresponding to the offsetting collection or receipt, as appropriate, by the amount of the purchase discount.
(3) Purchase premium—the excess of a security's purchase price over its par value.	Decrease the amount reported on line 8820, "Interest on Federal securities (-)," by the premium amount in the year of the purchase.	Decrease the amount reported as interest by the premium amount in the year of the purchase.	Decrease the amount reported on the line corresponding to the offsetting collection or receipt, as appropriate, by the amount of the purchase premium in the year of the purchase.
(4) Accrued interest purchase—a payment to the seller of a security, when a security is purchased, for interest that has accrued to the seller but that will be paid to the purchaser.	Decrease the amount reported on line 8820, "Interest on Federal securities (-)," by the amount of the accrued interest purchase in the year of purchase.	Decrease the amount reported as interest by the amount of the accrued interest purchase in the year of the purchase.	Decrease the amount reported on the line corresponding to the offsetting collection or receipt, as appropriate, by the amount of the accrued interest purchase in the year of purchase.
(5) Interest—the nominal or stated amount of interest received.	Increase the amount reported on line 8820 "Interest on Federal securities (-)," by the	Increase the amount reported for interest by the amount of interest received each year.	Increase the amount reported on the line corresponding to the offsetting collection or receipt, as appropriate, by

SECTION 113—INVESTMENT TRANSACTIONS

If the transaction is...	In the P&F schedule...	Or, in the special or trust fund receipt account for interest (usually suffix .20) ...	And, in the Status of Funds schedule...
	amount of interest received each year.		the amount of interest received each year.
(6) Principal, upon redemption at maturity.	Decrease the amount reported on line 9202, "Total investments, end of year; Federal securities: Par value," by the par value in the year of redemption.	Not applicable.	Increase the amount reported on line 8700, "Uninvested balance," by the par value in the year of redemption.  Decrease the amount reported on line 8701, "Federal securities: Par value" by the par value in the year of redemption.
(7) Principal, upon sale before maturity.	Decrease the amount reported on line 9202, "Total investments, end of year; Federal securities: Par value," by the par value in the year of sale.	Not applicable.	In the year of the sale:  Increase the amount reported on line 8700, "Uninvested balance" by the sales price.  Decrease the amount reported on line 8701, "Federal securities: Par value" by the par value.  Decrease the amount reported on line 8702, "Unrealized discounts (-)," if the security was purchased at a discount.
(8) Sales gain—the excess of the sales price over the purchase price.	Increase the amount reported on line 8820, "Interest on Federal securities (-)," by the amount of the gain in the year of the sale.	Increase the amount reported for interest by the amount of the gain in the year of the sale.	Increase the amount reported on the line corresponding to the offsetting collection or receipt, as appropriate, by the amount of the gain in the year of the sale.
(9) Sales loss—the excess of the purchase price over the sales price.	Decrease the amount reported on line 8820 "Interest on Federal securities (-)," by the amount of the loss in the year of the sale.	Decrease the amount reported for interest by the amount of the loss in the year of the sale.	Decrease the amount reported on the line corresponding to the offsetting collection or receipt, as appropriate, by the amount of the loss in the year of the sale.

*Differences between amounts recorded in budget schedules and financial statements.*

- Purchase discounts. Budget schedules record them when the security matures. In most cases, financial statements amortize them over the term of the security.

- Purchase premiums. Budget schedules record them at purchase. In most cases, financial statements amortize them over the term of the security.
- Net value. For budget schedules, the term means the par value of a security minus the amount of any purchase discount on a cash basis. Don't confuse it with the term Treasury securities, net used in financial statements, which means the par value of a security minus the amount of any unamortized discounts or plus the amount of any unamortized premiums.
- Signs. Earnings reported as offsetting collections in the program and financing schedule carry the opposite sign from income reported in financial statements. In the program and financing statement, increases in income are reported as negative amounts and decreases are reported as positive amounts.

*Differences between amounts recorded by Treasury and the budget.* You will encounter differences between Treasury records and the budget if a law authorizes you to invest special or trust funds in Federal securities but requires appropriations acts to determine the amount of receipts available to incur obligations. Treasury treats the authority to invest the receipts as an appropriation, recording the receipts as appropriated in the year received and subsequently as unexpended balances of appropriations (combined unobligated and obligated balances). Since such appropriations do not provide budget authority, do not record budget authority in the program and financing schedule. The MAX database will report these amounts, along with the other amounts reported as unavailable collections, in the special schedule required under section [86.7](#) (without separate identification for the invested portion of the balances).

### **113.2 How do I treat an investment in a Federal security on an SF 133?**

If you purchase a Federal security *at a discount*, the total balances on the SF 133 should not change. See exhibit 113A for all accounts. See section 130 for a discussion of the SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources.

If you purchase a Federal security *at a premium*:

- For a general fund appropriation account or a revolving fund (including a trust revolving fund), you reduce the collections on line 3.A by the premium, i.e., the amount greater than par. See exhibit 113B.
- For a special or trust fund account (excluding a trust revolving fund), there will be no change on the SF 133 because the reduction will be in the special or trust fund receipt account.

### **113.3 How do I treat the redemption of a Federal security on an SF 133?**

If the purchase was at a *discount* and if the redemption is at *par*:

- For a general fund appropriation account or a revolving fund (including a trust revolving fund), you show the discount realized on line 3A. See exhibit 113C.
- For a special or trust fund account, you will show the discount realized when the amount is appropriated out of the special or trust fund receipt account. See exhibit 113D.

**113.4 How do I treat investments in securities issued by non-Federal entities on an SF 133?**

Treat investment in non-Federal securities (equity or debt securities) as the purchase of an asset. You must record an obligation and an outlay for the purchase in an amount equal to the purchase price

**Investment in Federal Securities at a Discount  
All Accounts**

**Illustration: An account with a cash balance of \$1,500 invests  
in a \$1,000 (par value) Federal security at a 10% discount.**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION		Period ended 9/30/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X1309 Research and development	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
2. Unobligated balance		
A. Brought forward October 1.....	1,500	The beginning balance is made up of \$1,500 in cash.
7. Total budgetary resources.....	1,500	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		No obligation is recorded because the principal transaction is treated as a change in the mix of assets.
9. Unobligated balance:		
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	1,500	As a result of the investment: o Cash..... \$600 o Federal securities (at par)..... \$1,000 o Unrealized discounts.... - \$100 Net balances ..... \$1,500
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	1,500	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
15. Outlays:		No outlay is recorded because the principal transaction is treated as a change in the mix of assets.
A. Disbursements (+).....		
B. Collections (-).....		

(Authorized Officer)	(Date)	(Preparer: Name)
		(Address)
		(Phone number)

**Investment in Federal Securities at a Premium  
General Fund Appropriation or Revolving Fund Accounts**

**Illustration: An account with a \$1,500 balance in cash invests  
and pays a \$100 premium for a Federal security with par value of \$1,000.**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION		Period ended 9/30/CY	
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X1309 Research and development		
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget Authority			
A. Appropriation... P.L. 99-456.....			
			Include reference to law(s) providing budget authority.
2. Unobligated balance			
A. Brought forward October 1.....	1,500		Beginning balance consists of: ◆ Cash..... \$1,500
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)			
A. Earned:			
1. Collected.....	-100		Record the amount greater than par as a negative amount on line 3A.
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>1,400</b>		
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
9. Unobligated balance:			
A. Apportioned:			
1. Balance, currently available.....	1,400		The ending balance consists of \$1,000 for the U.S. securities at par, and \$400 in cash (the \$1,500 on line 2A minus the \$1,100 paid to purchase the security).
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>1,400</b>		
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>			

_____	_____	
(Authorized Officer)	(Date)	(Preparer: Name) _____
		(Address) _____
		(Phone number) _____



**Federal Security Purchased at a Discount and Sold or Redeemed at Par  
General Fund Appropriation or Revolving Fund Accounts**

**Illustration: This account redeems the security at par value and receives cash. This means that the discount realized is authorized to be credited and used without further appropriation action.**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION		Period ended 9/30/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X1309 Research and development	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
2. Unobligated balance		
A. Brought forward October 1.....	1,500	
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)		
A. Earned:		
1. Collected.....	100	When the cash for the discount is collected, record it on this line.
7. Total budgetary resources.....	1,600	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
9. Unobligated balance:		
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	1,600	
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	1,600	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....		
B. Collections (-).....	-100	Record the amount as an offset to outlays.
_____ (Authorized Officer)	_____ (Date)	(Preparer: Name) _____ (Address) _____ (Phone number) _____

**Federal Security Purchased at a Discount and Sold or Redeemed at Par  
Special or Trust Fund Accounts (excluding Trust Revolving Funds)**

**Illustration: This is identical to the circumstances in Exhibit 113C, except the account is a special or trust fund and the realized discount is automatically appropriated.**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION		Period ended 9/30/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X8309 Central Trust Fund	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget Authority		
A. Appropriation... P.L. 99-456.....	100	When appropriated (together with other receipts), count the discount realized as budget authority on line 1A and reflect it in the balances on line 9C below.
		Start of year balance: o Cash..... \$600 o Federal securities (at par) ..... \$1,000 o Unrealized discounts..... - \$100 Net balances..... \$1,500
2. Unobligated balance		
A. Brought forward October 1.....	1,500	
<hr/>		
7. Total budgetary resources.....	1,600	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
9. Unobligated balance:		The end of year balance is made up of \$1,600 cash.
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	1,600	
<hr/>		
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	1,600	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
_____ (Authorized Officer)	_____ (Date)	(Preparer: Name) _____ (Address) _____ (Phone number) _____

# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 4**

# **INSTRUCTIONS ON BUDGET EXECUTION**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



## SECTION 120—APPORTIONMENT/REAPPORTIONMENT PROCESS

### Table of Contents

#### *Introduction to Apportionments*

- 120.1 What is an apportionment?
- 120.2 What are the purposes of the apportionment process?
- 120.3 Are apportionments made at the Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS) level, and what is a TAFS?
- 120.4 What types of resources are apportioned by OMB?
- 120.5 Are all apportionments based on the authority to incur obligations?

#### *Apportionments by Treasury Appropriation Fund Symbol (TAFS)*

- 120.6 What TAFSs are apportioned?
- 120.7 What TAFSs are *not* apportioned?
- 120.8 What categories does OMB use to apportion funds?

#### *Apportionments by Time Period*

- 120.9 Will OMB apportion funds for periods longer than one fiscal year?
- 120.10 How do I display funds that are *not* currently needed?
- 120.11 How do I request changes in the level or time periods of an apportionment?
- 120.12 Do unobligated resources apportioned in earlier time periods of the same fiscal year remain available?
- 120.13 Must I request that funds apportioned in one fiscal year be apportioned in the next fiscal year if the funds were *not* obligated and remain available?
- 120.14 What is the status of previously approved apportionments when a new apportionment is approved, either in the same or a subsequent fiscal year?
- 120.15 What is the status of an apportionment that has been approved before the beginning of a fiscal year for a program covered by a continuing resolution?
- 120.16 What transactions will be covered by apportionments approved after a continuing resolution has been replaced by an enacted appropriation?

#### *Other Apportionment Issues*

- 120.17 Can I use an apportionment to resolve legal issues about the availability of funds?
- 120.18 How does OMB indicate its approval or disapproval of comments on the apportionment?
- 120.19 Who is responsible for preparing the apportionment request for allocation (transfer appropriation) accounts?
- 120.20 Must I include a footnote regarding the one percent apportionment requirement to cover obligations in the canceled phase?

#### *Before Preparing the Apportionment Request*

- 120.21 Why must I base my apportionment/reapportionment requests on financial plans?
- 120.22 Will I show the same level of detail in my financial plan from year-to-year?
- 120.23 Do I need to explain how I developed my financial plan?
- 120.24 What supporting data should I include with the apportionment request?
- 120.25 Will OMB request FTE plans to support the apportionment request?

*Preparing the Apportionment/Reapportionment Request*

- 120.26 What format is used for the apportionment request?
- 120.27 Can I combine TAFSS on the apportionment?
- 120.28 Will comments and attachments become part of the apportionment?
- 120.29 When are initial apportionments due at OMB?
- 121.30 Who can sign the apportionment request?
- 120.31 How many copies should I submit?
- 120.32 Should I assemble apportionment requests for multiple TAFSSs in a single package?
- 120.33 How can I expedite OMB approval of my apportionment request?
- 120.34 How will OMB indicate its approval of my apportionment request?
- 120.35 What program changes will require that I submit a reapportionment request to OMB?
- 120.36 What adjustments can I make without submitting a reapportionment request?
- 120.37 How do I treat automatic adjustments on subsequent reapportionment requests?

*Apportionments in Special Circumstances*

- 120.38 When do I submit requests anticipating the need for supplemental authority?
- 120.39 How do I apportion foreign currency fund (FT) accounts?
- 120.40 How are funds appropriated to the President distributed to agencies?

Ex-120 Sample FTE Plan

**Summary of Changes\***

The purpose of the apportionment is expanded. The apportionment process is now used to identify meaningful program reporting categories that agencies will report their obligations against when submitting budget execution reports ([sections 120.1, 120.2](#))

Apportionments are made at the Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS) level ([section 120.3](#)).

The descriptions of apportionment categories are clarified to state that one TAFS may potentially have anywhere from a single Category B apportionment to dozens of Category B apportionments ([section 120.8](#)).

To ensure consistent preparation of apportionment requests, and to allow OMB to upload requests from spreadsheets to a central database, [Section 120.26](#) states that agencies may not use formats other than those described in [section 121.5](#).

*\*Note—these changes were incorporated in the electronic version of the A-11 in May, 2003.*

**120.1 What is an apportionment?**

An apportionment is a plan, approved by OMB, to spend resources provided by law. The law providing the resources may be a permanent law (mandatory appropriations), one of the 13 annual appropriations acts, a supplemental appropriations act, or a continuing resolution. The apportionment also identifies meaningful program reporting categories that agencies will report obligations against in their SF 133 Reports on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources (see [section 130](#)) (over obligation of these program reporting categories are not a violation of the Antideficiency Act).

Reapportionments are made when you need to make changes to the previously approved apportionment. For example, you should request a reapportionment when approved apportionments are no longer

appropriate or applicable because the amounts available for obligation have changed or unforeseen events have occurred.

Pursuant to the Impoundment Control Act, apportionments may also set aside all or a portion of the amounts available for obligation. Amounts *deferred* through the apportionment process are those portions of the total amounts available for obligation that are specifically set aside as temporarily not available until released by OMB. Amounts withheld pending *rescission* are those portions that are set aside pending the enactment of legislation canceling the authority to obligate such funds. For further information on deferrals and rescissions, see [section 112](#).

## 120.2 What are the purposes of the apportionment process?

The primary purpose of the apportionment process is to centralize the Administration approval of agency spending plans to:

- Prevent agencies from obligating funds in a manner that would require deficiency or supplemental appropriations. In certain specified instances (see [section 120.38](#)), OMB may approve apportionments and reapportionments that indicate the necessity for a deficiency or supplemental appropriation. However, these instances must be reported to Congress.
- Achieve the most effective and economical use of amounts made available.

Apportionments also may reflect any legal limitations imposed by Congress.

The secondary purpose of the apportionment process is to identify meaningful program reporting categories that agencies will report their obligations against in their SF 133 Reports on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources (see [section 130](#)). For example, rather than reporting a single number for its obligations, a Department of the Interior account may separately show obligations for: maintaining land resources; protecting endangered species; and, managing recreational sites. Other kinds of accounts would use program reporting categories suited to their needs.

OMB and agencies work together to determine what program categories agencies will report upon. Program categories should be based on elements that agencies track in their financial systems. In some cases, you may choose to report upon programs that are or will be evaluated using the Program Assessment Rating Tool. In other cases, you may choose to report upon the same programs that appear in the Program and Financing Schedule of the President's Budget. Though you are encouraged to use program reporting categories, there are some cases where OMB and agencies will choose not to use any reporting categories.

The program reporting categories are not used to apportion funds, are not subject to the Antideficiency Act ([Appendix G](#)), and are not shown on the actual SF 132 apportionment or letter apportionment forms, but are included as attachments to these forms.

OMB and agencies are encouraged to identify reporting categories well in advance of the beginning of a fiscal year, and in advance of the time that the first apportionment requests are produced by the agencies. The reason is that agencies need time to place entries in their financial systems to allow them to track these program categories throughout the year. Agencies may need considerable time (many months) to add new categories to their financial systems. One reason is that large numbers of staff including timekeepers, procurement staff, administrative officers, and others need to document the new program categories, and train program office staff on how to use the new categories. In addition, agencies may need time to update their computer programs to extract the data.

[Section 121.3](#) describes how to use program reporting categories in the apportionment process.

**120.3 Are apportionments made at the Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS) level, and what is a TAFS?**

Apportionments are made at the TAFS level.

OMB makes apportionments and reapportionments at the TAFS level maintained by the Treasury Department's Financial Management Service. This level includes the Treasury agency or department, the period of availability to incur new obligations, and the Treasury account symbol.

In cases of allocation transfers (see [section 120.19](#)), the agency administering the parent appropriation will submit a consolidated SF 132 that encompasses the parent TAFS and all allocations. (Receiving agencies will not prepare an SF 132 for allocation accounts unless required by OMB.)

**120.4 What types of resources are apportioned by OMB?**

OMB apportions budgetary resources (such as budget authority), non-budgetary resources (such as foreign currency, as described in [section 120.39](#)), and non-financial resources.

**120.5 Are all apportionments based on authority to incur obligations?**

No.

OMB, at its option, may apportion TAFSs on whatever basis will provide effective controls. OMB usually apportions the budgetary resources of a TAFS based on the authority to incur new obligations. However, OMB may apportion budgetary resources on a pre-obligation basis, such as "administrative commitments," which are made before obligations are incurred. If OMB apportions on a basis other than obligations, you should continue to include obligations in the FACTS II system. In addition, include in a footnote the amount of "administrative commitments" against the amount shown on the apportionment.

**120.6 What TAFSs are apportioned?**

**All TAFSs will be apportioned**, using the SF 132 (see [section 121.1](#)), including special foreign currency program appropriation TAFSs, unless OMB determines otherwise and informs you (or has informed you) in writing, except those listed in [section 120.7](#). The following types of funds will be apportioned:

- All credit program, financing, and liquidating TAFSs;
- Trust funds;
- Intra-governmental revolving funds;
- Receipts made available by law for industrial and power operations; and
- Grants to the States under titles I, IV, X, XIV, XVI, XIX, or XX of the Social Security Act or under any other public assistance title in such Act.



**120.7 What TAFSs are not apportioned?**

The following types of TAFSs are exempt from apportionment and from using program reporting categories:

- TAFSs specifically exempted from apportionment by [31 U.S.C. 1511\(b\)](#) or other laws.
- TAFSs for which budgetary resources:
  - ▶ Are available only for transfer to other TAFSs,
  - ▶ Have expired for obligational purposes, or
  - ▶ Have been fully obligated before the beginning of the fiscal year.
- TAFSs that the Director of OMB has exempted from apportionment pursuant to [31 U.S.C. 1516](#), unless the agency is notified that particular TAFSs will be apportioned:
- Management funds (Treasury TAFSs with the symbols 3900-3999);
- Payment of claims, judgments, refunds, and drawbacks;
- Payment under private relief acts and other laws that require payment to a designated payee in the total amount provided in such acts;
- Foreign currency (FT) fund TAFSs;
- Interest on, or retirement of, the public debt; and
- Items the President has determined to be of a confidential nature for apportionment and budget execution purposes.

**120.8 What categories does OMB use to apportion funds?**

OMB usually uses one of two categories to distribute budgetary resources in a TAFS.

Category A apportionments distribute budgetary resources by fiscal quarters.

Category B apportionments typically distribute budgetary resources by activities, projects, objects or a combination of these categories. One TAFS can potentially have dozens of Category B apportionments, each pertaining to specific activities, projects, and so on. There are also cases when it makes programmatic sense for OMB to use a single, Category B apportionment for a given TAFS.

Category C apportionments may be used in multi-year and no-year TAFSs to apportion funds into future fiscal years. See [section 120.9](#) for additional information.

Apportionments may include a combination of categories.

**120.9 Will OMB apportion funds for periods longer than one fiscal year?**

Yes, OMB will sometimes apportion funds for periods longer than one fiscal year.

Multi-year and no-year funds are provided with the expectation that the funds will be obligated over more than one fiscal year. OMB will apportion no-year TAFSs and available multi-year TAFSs beyond the current fiscal year where financial requirements are known in advance, provided that an apportionment is made at the beginning of each fiscal year in accordance with [section 120.13](#).

When you plan to obligate amounts appropriated in a no-year or multi-year TAFS over more than one fiscal year, you may propose to apportion funds planned for obligation after the current fiscal year into a subsequent fiscal year. Include on line 1 of the SF 132 the full amount appropriated and available for obligation in the current fiscal year, including amounts planned for obligation in subsequent fiscal years. Include planned obligations for the current year in line 8 of the SF 132 under either Category A (by quarter) or Category B (by project). Include the amount planned for obligation after the current fiscal year on line 8C, Apportioned for future fiscal years.

OMB will *not* apportion annual TAFSs and the last year of multi-year TAFSs for periods longer than one fiscal year, as this would be an impoundment (i.e., a deferral during the year, and a de-facto rescission after the funds expire).

**120.10 How do I display funds that are not currently needed?**

Funds that are not currently needed may be displayed on the apportionment form as deferred, withheld pending rescission, or as an unapportioned balance of a revolving fund (see [section 112](#) for further information on amounts not apportioned).

If your apportionment or reapportionment request contains a proposed rescission or deferral, you must submit a rescission or deferral report that outlines the reasons for and the effects of the proposed action. (See [section 112](#) for instructions on how to prepare these reports.)

**120.11 How do I request changes in the time periods of an apportionment?**

You may request changes in the time periods covered by apportionments. OMB will consider apportioning funds for time periods other than calendar quarters whenever such periods are more representative of program activities or will facilitate their execution.

Submit your proposed changes in a letter to OMB before you submit the initial apportionment schedule for the year. Exceptions may be made if special situations arise during the year.

**120.12 Do unobligated resources apportioned in earlier time periods of the same fiscal year remain available?**

Yes. Whenever budgetary resources are apportioned for time periods of less than a fiscal year (for example, fiscal quarters), any apportioned, but unobligated balances at the end of any period will remain available for obligation through the remainder of the current fiscal year without reapportionment, unless otherwise specified on the apportionment form.

**120.13 Must I request that funds apportioned in one fiscal year be apportioned in the next fiscal year if the funds were not obligated and remain available?**

Yes. When budgetary resources remain available beyond the end of a fiscal year, you must request a new apportionment action for the upcoming fiscal year for all TAFSs subject to apportionment, unless OMB determines otherwise. Budgetary resources apportioned for the upcoming fiscal year will include only estimated or actual unobligated balances brought forward. (That is, unrealized indefinite budget authority, transfers, reimbursements, and recoveries that were anticipated on the most recently approved

apportionment form for the current year, as shown on the final SF 133 for the previous year, will not be apportioned.)

**120.14 What is the status of previously approved apportionments when a new apportionment is approved, either in the same or a subsequent fiscal year?**

New apportionment action for a fiscal year is independent of all apportionment actions of the previous year. Subsequent reapportionment action, including that necessitated by the enactment of legislation providing additional budget authority, will supersede previous apportionment action taken during the year and will cover all transactions from the beginning of the fiscal year. The last approved apportionment for a fiscal year will cover all transactions for that fiscal year.

**120.15 What is the status of an apportionment that has been approved before the beginning of a fiscal year for a program covered by a continuing resolution?**

When balances are apportioned prior to the beginning of a fiscal year but are supplemented by funds provided under a continuing resolution, the automatic apportionment approved by OMB, via an OMB Bulletin, will cover only the new amounts provided by the continuing resolution. The earlier apportionment will cover amounts not provided by the continuing resolution or available before the congressional action on the continuing resolution.

**120.16 What transactions will be covered by apportionments approved after a continuing resolution has been replaced by an enacted appropriation?**

A reapportionment approved after the enactment of a TAFS's regular source of budget authority will cover all transactions from the beginning of the year, including those obligations incurred under the continuing resolution. Similarly, when OMB exempts balances from apportionment pending enactment of a TAFS's regular source of budget authority, initial apportionment action for the new fiscal year will cover all transactions from the beginning of the year (for example, obligations incurred under any available unobligated balances as well as under authority provided by a continuing resolution).

**120.17 Can I use an apportionment to resolve legal issues about the availability of funds?**

No. The apportionment of funds should not be used as a means of resolving any question dealing with the legality of using funds for the purpose for which they are apportioned. Any question as to the legality of using funds for a particular purpose must be resolved through legal channels.

**120.18 How does OMB indicate its approval or disapproval of comments on the apportionment?**

Apportionment action by OMB implies approval of, or concurrence with, any comments inserted on the form by the agency. OMB specifically will note its disapproval of any such comments on the approved apportionment.

**120.19 Who is responsible for preparing the apportionment request for allocation (transfer appropriation) TAFSS?**

The agency administering the parent appropriation will submit a consolidated SF 132 that encompasses the parent TAFS and all allocations. (Receiving agencies will not prepare an SF 132 for allocation TAFSS unless required by OMB.) The agency administering the parent TAFS will indicate to the receiving agency what portion of the consolidated apportionment is transferred to the allocation TAFS. Obligations incurred for the program as a whole are limited by the approved apportionments. In addition, the agency administering the parent TAFS may sub-allot the amount, by time periods (akin to

category A apportionments) or by activities or projects (akin to category B apportionments) to the receiving agency. Receiving agencies will be responsible for keeping obligations within the amount so specified; for example, the amount transferred to the allocation TAFS or the sub-allotment, as appropriate.

**120.20 Must I include a footnote regarding the one percent apportionment requirement to cover obligations in the canceled phase?**

Yes. Unless otherwise informed by OMB, footnote each apportionment containing appropriations realized, as follows: "Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations."

**120.21 Why must I base my apportionment/reapportionment requests on financial plans?**

You must base your apportionment/reapportionment requests on financial plans so that the distribution on apportionments is part of your agency's overall financial plan for the year. You should insure that the apportionment and its supporting financial plan are based on a careful forecast of obligations to be incurred under the work programs or operations planned during the year. In many cases, experience in past years will be a useful guide.

**120.22 Will I show the same level of detail in my financial plan from year-to-year?**

Normally, yes. However, OMB may require that you change the nature or level of detail of your financial plans from year to year due to changing circumstances. You should consult with OMB about the level of detail required in financial plans well in advance of your submission of apportionment requests.

**120.23 Do I need to explain how I developed my financial plan?**

Yes. Submit a suitable explanation as part of your request in a footnote or on a separate sheet when funds are apportioned for calendar quarters or other time periods of less than a year. Make appropriate provision for any seasonal or similar variations in fiscal requirements when such factors make it necessary to request apportionments in varying amounts.

**120.24 What supporting data should I include with the apportionment request?**

Include sufficient supporting data with your apportionment and reapportionment requests to justify the financial requirements set forth therein. We encourage you to discuss the availability of supporting data with OMB. These data include performance goals and performance indicators such as output and outcome measures when possible. You should prepare the information before you submit initial apportionments so that you can provide specific supporting data that OMB may require.

**120.25 Will OMB request FTE plans to support the apportionment request?**

Yes. OMB may request that you provide supporting data on full time equivalent employment (FTE) as part of your apportionment requests. For example, OMB may request that you provide plans on expected and/or actual FTE usage for your agency as a whole, or for components within your agencies, e.g., bureaus or accounts. OMB may request FTE data backing up the apportionment on a monthly, quarterly, or other basis depending on the program and situation. [Exhibit 120](#) provides a sample report.

**120.26 What format is used for the apportionment request?**

Use the SF 132 to request apportionment or reapportionment of each TAFS subject to apportionment, unless otherwise required by OMB. OMB will provide guidance when alternatives to the SF 132 are required, such as when a letter apportionment is desirable. When submitting an SF 132 or letter apportionment, you must use the formats described in [Section 121.5](#).

**120.27 Can I combine TAFSs on the apportionment?**

Almost without exception, no.

However, agencies may request permission to combine TAFSs on the apportionment. Agency requests must be submitted via email to your normal OMB representative and to OMB’s Budget Concepts Branch (BCB). The email address for the BCB contact is [Chris\\_Fairhall@omb.eop.gov](mailto:Chris_Fairhall@omb.eop.gov).

In addition, OMB may require agencies to combine TAFS on the apportionment. These requirements must be sent via email to the agency and to OMB’s Budget Concepts Branch.

**120.28 Will comments and attachments become part of the apportionment?**

Yes. The SF 132 signed by a responsible OMB official and all attachments transmitted to the agency become part of the apportionment, unless otherwise specified on the SF 132. Any cover letter is *not* part of the apportionment. (Attachment on program reporting categories is not subject to the Antideficiency Act.)

The signature of OMB’s approving official on the apportionment implies approval of, or concurrence with, any comments you inserted on the form. If OMB specifically disagrees with any such comments, it will be noted on the approved apportionment form.

**120.29 When are initial apportionments due at OMB?**

If ...	Then, submit your initial apportionment request by ...
Any part of the budgetary resources for a TAFS is not determined by current action of the Congress (such as permanent appropriations, public enterprise and other revolving funds subject to apportionment, reimbursements and other income, and balances of prior year budget authority)	August 21, as required by 31 U.S.C. 1513(b)
All or any part of the budgetary resources for a TAFS are determined by current action of the Congress	August 21, or within 10 calendar days after the approval of the appropriation or substantive acts providing new budget authority, whichever is later

We encourage you to begin preparation of apportionments and related materials as soon as the House and Senate have reached agreement on funding levels. In this way, you can make a timely submission of your request to OMB, and OMB can have adequate time for its review.

**120.30 Who can sign the apportionment request?**

An officer duly authorized by the head of the agency may sign the original SF 132 for each independent agency, departmental bureau, or similar subdivision. The agency signature block will be blank when the apportionment is initiated by OMB. Signatures on other sheets and copies may be affixed by stamp, typing, or other means. The officer who signs the forms must initial any changes in amounts on *every* copy.

**120.31 How many copies should I submit?**

You will submit apportionment requests in electronic format using Excel spreadsheets (see section 121.5). You will also provide both an original and one copy of the SF 132 and any attachments, e.g., expenditure plans, directly to OMB for each TAFS subject to apportionment. Submit an original and two copies for any SF 132 that has an entry on line 9 (Withheld pending rescission) or line 10 (Deferred). Your OMB representative will forward one copy to OMB's Budget Review Division, which will prepare the special message for the President's signature (see [section 112](#)).

**120.32 Should I assemble apportionment requests for multiple TAFSs in a single package?**

Yes. To the extent practical, submit apportionment requests for each independent agency, departmental bureau, or similar subdivision together in accordance with the instructions in [section 121.5](#).

**120.33 How can I expedite OMB approval of my apportionment request?**

Your apportionment requests will always receive quicker review and approval if you have discussed your requirements and proposed changes with your OMB representative before the actual apportionment is prepared. You may also want to submit your apportionment in draft to work out any disagreements before Congress takes final action on your appropriation. You are encouraged to submit apportionment requests early for programs accruing interest liabilities pursuant to the Cash Management Improvement Act. You may submit these initial apportionment requests and supporting materials to OMB on or soon after the day Congress completes action on the appropriations bill. This action will expedite OMB approval of the apportionment request and help reduce potential interest liabilities.

Discuss alternative ways to expedite approval of apportionments with OMB. For example, apportionments may be submitted and approved by telephone or fax for emergency funding needs. As soon thereafter as it is practical, submit apportionment schedules reflecting such action.

**120.34 How will OMB indicate its approval of my apportionment request?**

OMB will enter its action upon agency apportionment and reapportionment requests on lines 1 through 12 in the third column, "Action by OMB," of the SF 132 and will validate its action with a signature on the "Apportioned" line.

OMB will notify you of the action taken on the initial requests by *September 10*, as required by law. For TAFSs that have budgetary resources solely as a result of current action by the Congress, OMB will notify you of the action taken on apportionment or reapportionment requests by *September 10* or within *30 calendar days* after the approval of the act providing new budget authority, whichever is later.

After approval, OMB will forward the original SF 132 to you. Since you are forwarding the SF 132 to OMB electronically, the original will be the copy printed out at OMB and signed by the OMB approving official.

**120.35 What program changes will require that I submit a reapportionment request to OMB?**

Submit a reapportionment request to OMB as soon as a change in an apportionment previously made becomes necessary due to changes in amounts available (e.g., actual reimbursements differ significantly from estimates), program requirements, or cost factors, except as specified in [section 120.36](#). Submit such requests well in advance of the time revised amounts are needed for obligation to allow time for action by OMB. Remember that an apportionment for a specific time period may not be changed after the end of the period.

When emergencies, such as those involving the safety of human life or the protection of property, require immediate action, you may request, and OMB may approve, a reapportionment by telephone. As soon thereafter as it is practical, submit apportionment schedules reflecting such action.

For credit program and financing TAFSS, submit a reapportionment request for subsidy re-estimates at the beginning of each fiscal year (starting with the fiscal year following the year in which a disbursement is made) as long as the loans are outstanding (see [sections 185.17](#) and [185.18](#)). Also submit a reapportionment request for subsidy modifications when the modification is approved by OMB (see [section 185.21](#)).

Submit a reapportionment request within *10 calendar days* after approval of an appropriation or substantive act providing budget authority, where such authority is enacted after the initial apportionment for the year has been made (except as specified in [section 120.36](#)). We encourage you to begin preparation of apportionments and related materials as soon as the House and Senate have reached agreement on funding levels.

In some cases, you will need to submit initial apportionment schedules before the unobligated balance brought forward has been precisely determined. If the unobligated balance brought forward, as shown on the latest approved apportionment schedule, differs from the unobligated balance at the end of the preceding year, as reported on the final SF 133 for that year, and the difference is larger than the amount specified in [section 120.36](#), OMB must approve the reapportionment request *before* you can obligate the additional funds.

Include a footnote for line 2A of the SF 132 that explains the difference if the unobligated balances on the reapportionment schedule do not agree with those:

- Reported on the final SF 133 of the preceding year;
- Reported to the Treasury for inclusion in the U.S. Government Treasury Annual Report Appendix; or
- Presented in the Budget Appendix as a past-year actual amount.

**120.36 What adjustments can I make without submitting a reapportionment request?**

Unless OMB determines otherwise, you may adjust amounts apportioned by time periods of less than a year (calendar quarters or similar time periods) without the submission of a reapportionment request (SF 132) by adding or subtracting:

- Adjustments in the amount of unobligated balances brought forward (line 2A) up to \$200,000 or one percent of the amount of total budgetary resources, whichever is lower, from the amount apportioned for the period in progress when the adjustment is made.

- Amounts of budget authority transfers (line 1D) or balances transferred (line 2B), up to \$200,000 or one percent of the amount of total budgetary resources, whichever is lower, from the amount apportioned for the time period in progress when the adjustment is made.
- Amounts of indefinite budget authority (line 1), reimbursements (line 3), or recoveries (line 4) that are realized above or below anticipated amounts, up to \$200,000 or one percent of the amount of total budgetary resources, whichever is lower, from the amount apportioned for the last time period.

You may make other specific types of adjustments to apportionments without submitting a reapportionment request if specified on the most recently approved apportionment form or otherwise approved in writing by OMB. These adjustments include amounts of supplemental appropriations or other authority enacted in the last period, adjustments of amounts apportioned on a basis other than time periods, and adjustments of time period apportionments other than those mentioned above.

In credit financing TAFSS, additional amounts for the payment of interest to Treasury are automatically apportioned.

#### **120.37 How do I treat automatic adjustments on subsequent reapportionment requests?**

Unless OMB determines otherwise, when amounts are automatically apportioned (as specified in [section 120.36](#) or [section 185.19](#)) and there is a subsequent need for reapportionment, reflect adjustments previously made as automatic apportionments in the "Amount of Latest SF 132" column. Include a footnote where changes have been previously made as automatic apportionments.

#### **120.38 When do I submit requests anticipating the need for supplemental authority?**

Submit requests anticipating the need for supplemental authority only under exceptional circumstances as authorized by law. The Antideficiency Act (31 U.S.C. 1515) permits apportionments to be made that indicate the need for supplemental budget authority only when:

- Laws have been enacted, subsequent to the transmittal to the Congress of the budget request, that require expenditures beyond administrative control.
- Emergencies arise involving (1) the safety of human life, (2) the protection of property, or (3) the immediate welfare of individuals in cases where an appropriation that would allow the United States to pay, or contribute to, amounts required to be paid to individuals in specific amounts fixed by law or under formulas prescribed by law, is insufficient.
- Supplemental appropriations are required to permit payment of such pay increases as may be granted pursuant to law to civilian officers and employees (including prevailing rate employees whose compensation is fixed and adjusted from time to time in accordance with prevailing wage rates) and to retired and active military personnel.

In addition, other laws may be enacted that authorize apportionments that anticipate the need for supplemental estimates of appropriations (for example, a continuing resolution that authorizes deficiency apportionments necessitated by civilian and military pay increases).

When you submit a requested apportionment that indicates a necessity for a supplemental or deficiency estimate of appropriations, include the following notation on the apportionment request (SF 132):



"This apportionment request indicates a necessity for a supplemental appropriation now estimated at \$ \_\_\_\_\_."

Submit the apportionment request to OMB along with three copies of your agency head's determination of the reasons for a deficiency apportionment, as required by law (31 U.S.C. 1515). The statement of necessity will read as follows:

"I hereby determine that it is necessary to request apportionment (or reapportionment) of the appropriation '(appropriation title)' on a basis that indicates the necessity for a supplemental estimate of appropriations, because .... [cite one of the allowable reasons mentioned above]."

Usually, you will reflect the need for a supplemental in quarterly apportionments by making the request for the fourth quarter less than the amount that will be required. For apportionments by activities, verify that the amount requested for each activity provides for continuing that activity until the supplemental appropriation is expected to become available. OMB approval of requests for a deficiency apportionment does *not* authorize you to exceed available resources within a TAFS.

Fully justify the amount of any anticipated supplemental appropriation. Action on the apportionment request does not commit OMB to the amount of the supplemental that will be recommended subsequently to the President or transmitted to the Congress.

#### **120.39 How do I apportion foreign currency fund (FT) TAFSs?**

OMB may request that you apportion your FT TAFS. If so, type "Authority to spend foreign currency receipts" in the stub column for line 1 on the SF 132. Include the most recent Treasury exchange rates on each SF 132 and SF 133. Include amounts transferred from Treasury and credited to the agency foreign currency TAFSs on line 1A. Include amounts anticipated to be transferred during the year on line 1E. Limit balances brought forward (on line 2A) to balances in your FT TAFSs.

Verify that foreign currency units reported in dollars agree with the "Foreign Currency Statement and Account Current" (Foreign Service Form 488) prepared by disbursing officers.

OMB may require that you prepare an SF 133 report in dollars for each currency in each FT TAFS.

#### **120.40 How are funds appropriated to the President distributed to agencies?**

Appropriations or other budget authority made to the President may be distributed to agencies that have responsibilities for the purposes to be served by such appropriations or authority. Such agencies will present requests for funds, supported by a justification, to the designated coordinating agency. The coordinating agency will notify the requesting agency of amounts to be transferred.

When action by the President is necessary to make a distribution, the coordinating agency will prepare the necessary documents for the President's signature. The coordinating agency will provide OMB a copy of the distribution request, as approved by the President.

For appropriations, the coordinating agency will prepare Standard Form 1151 and process it through the Treasury Department to effect the distribution. For authority to borrow, the receiving agency will arrange with the Treasury Department for the drawdown of money as needed.

## SAMPLE FTE PLAN

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT FTE USAGE PLAN (FY XXXX)****(Cumulative FTEs to Date)**

	Reporting period <sup>1</sup>	Actual/Plan FTE Usage <sup>2</sup>
October	(10/7–10/20)	
November	(10/21–11/17)	
December	(11/18–12/29)	
January	(12/30–1/26)	
February	(1/27–2/23)	
March	(2/24–3/23)	
April	(3/24–4/20)	
May	(4/21–5/18)	
June	(5/19–6/29)	
July	(6/30–7/27)	
August	(7/28–8/24)	
September	(8/25–9/21)	

<sup>1</sup> The reporting periods in this column are described in the Office of Personnel Management (OPM) SF 113G reporting system. Unless otherwise determined by OMB, the periods on the report will correspond to the SF 113G reporting periods published by OPM.

<sup>2</sup> Provide actual FTE data if it is available. Actual data should correspond with the SF 113G report provided to OPM

Each plan will include:

- actual cumulative FTE usage from straight-time hours by month, as reported to OPM on the SF 113G report through the most recent actual period;
- planned cumulative FTE usage levels by month for remaining periods; and
- an explanation, if applicable, of why agency plans are not consistent with FTE estimates.

Report additional detail when appropriate or when requested by OMB.

Plans will be revised if:

- FTE estimates are revised or plans change significantly;
- subsequent actual data for the agency exceeds the most recent plan; or
- requested by OMB.

SECTION 121—SF 132, APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

**Table of Contents**

- 121.1 How is the SF 132 organized?
- 121.2 How do program reporting categories fit into the apportionment process?
- 121.3 Why does OMB send the names of program reporting categories, Category B projects to Treasury for use in FACTS II?
- 121.4 Can agencies add new program reporting categories or Category B projects when reporting their FACTS II data?
- 121.5 What apportionment formats are available? And what information must I include in these formats?
- 121.6 Will all apportioned amounts be shown on these two formats?
- 121.7 How do I complete the Excel spreadsheet to prepare the SF 132?
- 121.8 How do I complete the Excel spreadsheet to prepare the letter apportionment?
- 121.9 What format do I use to show program reporting categories?
- 121.10 How do I treat extensions of the availability of unobligated balances?
- 121.11 What amounts should I allot?

*When Your Appropriations are Enacted in a Timely Manner*

- Ex-121A One-Year Appropriation—Initial Apportionment
- Ex-121B No-Year Appropriation—Initial Apportionment
- Ex-121C No-Year Appropriation—Reapportionment

*When You Operate Under a Continuing Resolution*

- Ex-121D One-Year Appropriations Under Continuing Resolution
- Ex-121E Appropriations and Unobligated Balances Under Continuing Resolution
- Ex-121F Reapportionment Following a Continuing Resolution

*When You Encounter Unusual Circumstances*

- Ex-121G Public Enterprise (Revolving) or Intragovernmental (Revolving) Fund Reapportionment
- Ex-121H Trust Fund Limitation
- Ex-121I Negative Amount Due to Reduced Unobligated Balance
- Ex-121J Multiple-year Account—Apportionment in Two Fiscal Years
- Ex-121K Trust Fund with Contract Authority, Appropriation to Liquidate Contract Authority, and Obligation Limitation
- Ex-121L Trust Fund (or Special Fund) with Collections Precluded from Obligation

*Sample Formats*

- Ex-121M SF 132 format
- Ex-121N Letter apportionment format
- Ex-121O Program reporting categories format

**Summary of Changes\***

Describes the columns used on the SF 132 and letter apportionment Excel spreadsheets. Shows a new column, line split, to be used to distinguish between two or more amounts that you would normally report on a single line (Section 121.5.).

Describes how to use program reporting categories (sections 121.2 through 121.9).

Clarifies treatment of extensions of the availability of unobligated balances (section 121.10).

*\*Note: The apportionment changes related to program reporting categories were incorporated in the May 2003 electronic version of the A-11.*

### 121.1 How is the SF 132 organized?

The SF 132 contains two general sections: **Budgetary Resources** and **Application of Budgetary Resources**. Under Budgetary Resources, you display the sources of actual and anticipated resources as well as actual and anticipated reductions to those resources. Under the Application of Budgetary Resources, you display how you intend to use those resources, whether by fiscal quarter, activity, project, object, or a combination thereof.

The SF 132 is divided into three columns titled as follows:

- Amount on Latest SF 132
  - ▶ *Initial apportionment requests.* Leave the column blank. See [exhibits 121A](#), [121B](#), and [121D](#) for examples of an annual appropriation, a no-year appropriation, and appropriations provided by a continuing resolution.
  - ▶ *Reapportionment requests.* Include the amounts in the "Action by OMB" column of the previously approved SF 132. Unless OMB determines otherwise, when amounts are automatically apportioned (as specified in [section 123.5](#) or [section 120.36](#)) and there is a subsequent need for reapportionment, reflect adjustments previously made as automatic apportionments in the "Amount on Latest SF 132" column. Footnote the changes made as automatic apportionments. See [exhibits 121C](#), [121E](#), [121F](#), [121G](#), [121H](#), and [121I](#) for examples of *reapportionments*.
- Agency Request—Include amounts in the column for each applicable line. Report the detailed information on each line of the form as explained below.
- Action by OMB—Leave the column blank.

SF 132 line numbers are shown on [exhibit 121M](#). [Appendix F](#) includes descriptions of the items that are to be included on each line (e.g., new line 8C, apportioned for future fiscal years).

Usually, lines for reporting actual amounts will apply only to reapportionment requests. Unless more recent figures are available, verify that all amounts agree with the most recent SF 133. Include a footnote (at the bottom of the SF 132) to indicate the period covered by the actual amounts reported on the form.

### 121.2 How do program reporting categories fit into the apportionment process?

Agencies and OMB use the apportionment process to identify those program reporting categories that agencies will report obligations against in their SF 133 reports. (As noted in section 120.2, not every TAFS uses program reporting categories.) The program reporting categories are included as an attachment to the apportionment. The program reporting categories are **not** used to apportion funds, are

not subject to the anti-deficiency act, and are not presented on the actual apportionment form itself. The attachment that contains the program reporting categories is described in [section 121.9](#).

Here is how program reporting categories relate to Category A and Category B apportioned lines.

You will sometimes use two or more reporting categories for a single, specific Category B project. You must always use at least two reporting categories in these cases, one for each significant program reporting category, and one as an "All Other" component where you will report other obligations related to the Category B project.

You will sometimes use two or more reporting categories for Category A apportionments. As noted earlier, you must use at least two reporting categories, one of which is "All Other".

See [Exhibit 121-O](#) for a sample format of program reporting categories. This exhibit is consistent with the apportionment information in Exhibits 121-C and 121-N.

### **121.3 Why does OMB send the names of program reporting categories and Category B projects to Treasury for use in FACTS II?**

OMB sends program reporting categories from approved apportionment attachments to the Department of the Treasury's Financial Management Service (FMS), which operates the FACTS II system that agencies use to report their SF 133 budget execution information. When reporting their obligations, FACTS II provides agencies with the list of program reporting categories to report upon; these are the same categories that OMB provides from the apportionment attachments.

For those TAFSs that use Category B projects but do not use program reporting categories, OMB sends FMS the list of Category B projects for use in FACTS II reporting.

OMB sends this information to FMS so OMB can use automated tools to align program reporting categories and Category B projects on the apportionments to the budget execution reports. Prior to this change, OMB was unable to create automated reports that show apportioned amounts (from the SF 132) and obligations (from the SF 133) by program reporting category or Category B project. The reason is that the SF 132s and SF 133s used slightly different names for the Category B projects, so it was impossible to use a computer program to line up the projects by name.

### **121.4 Can agencies add new program reporting categories or Category B projects when reporting their FACTS II data?**

Yes, but only when it makes sense to do so. Here are some examples.

First, you must report all obligations that took place during the reporting period. If FACTS II does not provide you with a comprehensive list of program reporting categories or Category B projects to report all your obligations, you must add more categories or projects to report your obligations against.

Second, if you are aware that OMB has apportioned funds using Category B projects that are not presented in FACTS II, then you must add the missing Category B projects names, and report your obligations for those projects.

Third, if you are aware that OMB has used program reporting categories that are not presented in FACTS II, then you should add the missing program reporting category names, and report our obligations for those categories.

**121.5 What apportionment formats are available, and what information must I include in these formats?**

Two formats are available as Excel spreadsheets:

- SF 132 (see section 121.7 and exhibit 121M). Most accounts will be apportioned using this format.
- Letter apportionment (see section 121.8 and exhibit 121N). This format will be used only when requested by OMB.

These spreadsheets are: [Template for SF 132 apportionment](#) and [Template for letter apportionment](#)

Both formats ask you to provide a variety of information. Some, but not all, of the information required is shown below:

The fiscal year being apportioned.

The Treasury Appropriation Fund Symbol (TAFS) being apportioned, and the titles for the TAFS, bureau, and agency.

The SF 132 line number; see [Appendix F](#).

The SF 132 line number split. You can use the line split to distinguish between two or more amounts that are reported on a single line. For example, you may use line number split to distinguish between two or more sources of collections. You may not use line number splits for apportioned amount lines.

The SF 132 line stub is used for all lines on the SF 132 apportionment. For letter apportionments, you must use the line stub on apportioned lines.

All applicable amounts, e.g., the amount on the latest SF 132, the agency request, and the action by OMB.

**For either format, all amounts must be in whole dollars; do not use cents. Do not round to thousands. Do not use dollar signs.**

**121.6 Will all apportioned amounts be shown on these two formats?**

No. At times, OMB will approve apportionments when the amounts are not known at the time the apportionment is prepared. Common examples are:

- *When OMB issues an OMB Bulletin automatically apportioning amounts made available by a continuing resolution* (see [section 123.5](#)). Because amounts apportioned under continuing resolutions are for relatively short periods and are derived by formula, the formats described in [section 121.5](#) are not used. If you or OMB determines that your program or account should be apportioned separately during a continuing resolution because you need an amount different than the automatic apportionment, you should use one of the formats described in [section 121.5](#).
- *Adjustments permitted by [section 120.36](#)*. Adjustments of specified apportioned amounts are permitted without the submission of a reapportionment request.

- *Adjustments permitted in writing by OMB.* OMB may include on an SF 132 or letter apportionment a statement that actual unobligated balances, actual recoveries, or actual earned reimbursements are available without further OMB action. This is an expansion of the type of adjustment permitted by [section 120.36](#).

Reapportionment requests submitted through the year should include the amounts automatically apportioned in the columns entitled "Amount on Latest SF 132" and "Agency Request."

### **121.7 How do I complete the Excel spreadsheet to prepare the SF 132?**

Do not change the line numbers or the format except to:

- Add Category B lines and stubs.
- Add line splits and stubs.
- Hide rows 15 through 28 for accounts other than Guaranteed loan financing accounts.
- Unhide columns as noted below.
- Add footnotes.

You may add as many Category B lines and stubs as you wish. If the spreadsheet takes more than one page to print, you may add rows to include identifying information and column titles on each page. Do not repeat the account identification in cells A1 through A7.

Cell A1     START OF ACCOUNT is a code that is used in uploading data for approved apportionments to MAX. DO NOT HIDE OR DELETE. This cell need not be in the print area.

Cell A2     Insert the two numbers of the Treasury Agency Code. If the number is unknown, please refer to Appendix C of OMB Circular No. A-11.

Cell A3     For multi-year funds only. Insert the four numbers of the first fiscal year of availability. For example, if the first year of availability is 2002, insert "2002".

Leave blank for annual and no-year accounts.

Cell A4     For annual and multi-year funds, insert the four numbers of the last fiscal year of availability. For example, if the last year of availability is 2003, insert "2003".

Insert "X" if this is a no-year account.

Cell A5     Insert the four numbers of the Treasury account code. Use a single apostrophe ( ' ) before an account number that begins with a zero so that four numbers will print. If this is a new account and no number has been assigned, please contact your OMB representative.

Cell A6     Insert four numbers to indicate the fiscal year to which this apportionment applies.

Cell A7     Use Yes or No to indicate whether program reporting categories are used.

NOTE: Identification numbers in cells A2 through A5 are used to identify data in column I. Use this same set of unique numbers whenever you reapportion an account or program whether you use the SF 132 or the letter apportionment.

**SECTION 121—SF 132, APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

---

Cell D9 This cell contains the title "SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE". This cell is used by the upload program to distinguish the SF 132 format from the letter apportionment format and should not be altered.

Please complete the boxes at the top right hand-side of the SF 132 showing the Agency, Bureau, Appropriation or Fund Title or Symbol as shown in Exhibits 121A through 121L.

NOTE: Rows 15 through 28 of the Excel format should be used only if you are requesting apportionment of a guaranteed loan financing account. See [exhibit 185P](#). Please hide these rows if you are not requesting apportionment of a guaranteed loan financing account. If you are requesting apportionment of other credit accounts, use the regular SF 132 rows. See [section 185](#) and exhibits 185M through 185T.

Column A Cells other than A1 through A7 are reserved for SF 132 line numbers.

Column B Cells with line number splits are shown in this column. This column is normally blank. This column may not be used with apportioned amount lines.

Column C Cells with SF 132 line numbers in column A are reserved for SF 132 line descriptions. Do not change these except to add stubs for line splits or category B projects. The maximum length of stubs for line splits or Category B projects is 50 characters. The stubs must not have leading spaces, must not have ellipses (.....) at the end, and should not be prefaced with a sequence number or letter, e.g., (1), 1, a., b., etc.

Column D Cells with SF 132 line numbers in column A are reserved for the amount on the latest SF 132. Amounts on lines 7 and 12 are calculated by formula. Do not override these formulas. An "OOPS" comment on line 12 indicates an error that should be corrected.

DO NOT DELETE OR CHANGE THE FORMULA.

Column E Cells may be used to footnote amounts in column D (that is, a/, or b/, or 1/, or 2/). The text of the footnote should be placed after the signature blocks at the bottom of the SF 132 or on a separate sheet. This column is now hidden. Use the Unhide command if it is needed.

Column F Cells with SF 132 line numbers in column A may be used by DoD to display the apportionment request submitted by a component. Amounts on lines 7 and 12 are calculated by formula. Do not override these formulas. An "OOPS" comment on line 12 indicates an error that should be corrected. This column is now hidden. Use the Unhide command if it is needed.

DO NOT DELETE OR CHANGE THE FORMULA.

Column G Cells may be used to footnote amounts in column F (that is, a/, or b/, or 1/, or 2/). The text of the footnote should be placed after the signature blocks at the bottom of the SF 132 or on a separate sheet. This column is now hidden. Use the Unhide command if it is needed.

Column H Cells with SF 132 line numbers in column A are used to display the agency apportionment request. Amounts on lines 7 and 12 are calculated by formula. Do not override these formulas. An "OOPS" comment on line 12 indicates an error that should be corrected.

DO NOT DELETE OR CHANGE THE FORMULA.



Column I Cells may be used to footnote amounts in column H (that is, a/, or b/, or 1/, or 2/). The text of the footnote should be placed after the signature blocks at the bottom of the SF 132 or on a separate sheet. This column is now hidden. Use the Unhide command if it is needed.

Column J Cells with SF 132 line numbers in column A are used to display the Action by OMB. OMB will fill in lines 1 through 6 and 8 through 11. Amounts on lines 7 and 12 are calculated by formula. Do not override these formulas. An "OOPS" comment on line 12 indicates an error that should be corrected.

DO NOT DELETE OR CHANGE THE FORMULA.

Column K Cells may be used to footnote amounts in column K (that is, a/, or b/, or 1/, or 2/). The text of the footnote should be placed after the signature blocks at the bottom of the SF 132 or on a separate sheet. This column may be hidden or not printed if not used.

Cell A72 END OF FILE is a code used in the upload program to indicate the end of data. DO NOT HIDE OR DELETE. This cell need not be in the print area and may be in any cell in column A after the last apportionment data.

### **121.8 How do I complete the Excel spreadsheet to prepare the letter apportionment?**

Letter apportionments are customized to fit OMB and agency requirements. You must receive approval from your OMB representative before using this format.

Cell A1 START OF ACCOUNT is a code that is used in uploading data for approved apportionments to MAX. DO NOT HIDE OR DELETE. This cell need not be in the print area.

Cell H3 This cell contains the title "Letter Apportionment." This cell is used by the upload program to distinguish the SF 132 format from the Letter Apportionment format and should not be altered.

Complete the name of the Department or Agency and the Public Law that provided the funds.

The wording of the introductory narrative apportioning the funds and describing the conditions of the apportionment may be modified as determined by OMB.

Following the narrative, list each program and line number on a separate line. See [exhibit 121N](#). Columns A–G are used to describe the amounts in column J, and must uniquely identify a TAFS, line number, and line split.

Use the first row of a TAFS to indicate whether the TAFS has program reporting categories. For the line number shown in Column E, you must use the phrase "RptCat". For the line split number shown in Column F, you must either use "Yes" to indicate program reporting categories are used, or "No" to indicate that this TAFS does not have program reporting categories.

Use this same set of unique numbers whenever you reapportion an account or program whether you use the SF 132 or the letter apportionment.

Column A The first cell in this column with a numeric value will be the four numbers identifying the fiscal year to which this apportionment applies.

**SECTION 121—SF 132, APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

---

Each row with an amount in column J must have the two digit Treasury Agency Code in column A. If this code is unknown, please refer to [Appendix C](#) of OMB Circular No. A-11.

**Column B** For multi-year funds only. Each row with an amount in column J associated with funds available for multiple years must have four numbers to indicate the first fiscal year of availability. For example, if the first year of availability is 2002, insert "2002." Leave blank if this is an annual or no-year TAFS.

**Column C** For annual and multi-year funds, each row with an amount in column J must have four numbers to indicate the last fiscal year of availability. For example, if the last year of availability is 2003, insert "2003" OR insert "X" if this is a no-year TAFS.

**Column D** Each row with an amount in column J must have four numbers to indicate the Treasury account code. Use an apostrophe ( ' ) before an account code that begins with a zero so that four numbers will print. If this is a new account and no number has been assigned, please contact your OMB representative.

**Column E** Each row with an amount in column J must have an SF 132 line number. Use the same line numbers as are found in [Appendix F](#) or [exhibit 121M](#). Use both the appropriate Budgetary Resources line numbers from lines 1A through 6F and the appropriate Application of Budgetary Resources line numbers from lines 8B1 through 11. Your compliance will assure that data uploaded will be the same whether uploaded from the SF 132 format or the letter apportionment format.

For each TAFS that uses program reporting categories, the first row for the TAFS will include RptCat in Column E. See [exhibit 121M](#).

**Column F** This column is typically not used, and should be left blank. If OMB instructs you to do so, enter a line split so that two amounts on column J can have the same line number. For example, OMB may direct you to show collected spending authority, Line 3A1, on two separate lines when you need to distinguish two or more sources of the collections.

You may not use the line split column with lines that show apportioned amounts.

For each TAFS that uses program reporting categories, the first row for the TAFS will include Yes in Column F. See [exhibit 121M](#).

**Column G** Use for the name of the Bureau, account, and Category B stubs. The names of the bureau and the account should appear on rows above those rows that have the detailed TAFS, financial, and other information. See Exhibit 121N for an example.

Rows with apportioned amounts, where the line number starts with 8B, e.g., 8B1 or 8B2, must include the name of the project. The maximum length of the descriptions is 50 characters. The descriptions must not have leading spaces, must not have ellipses (.....) at the end, and should not be prefaced with a sequence number or letter, e.g., (1), 1, a., b., etc.

**Column H** Use for other information that OMB and the agency may require, such as the previously approved apportionment. This column is now hidden. Use the Unhide command if it is needed.

Column I Use for other information that OMB and the agency may require, such as the agency request. This column is now hidden. Use the Unhide command if it is needed.

Column J Reserved for the Action by OMB. Each amount in this column must have a unique identification code in columns A through G.

Column K Used for footnote references (such as 1/, 2/, etc.). The text of the footnotes will be placed after the signature blocks or on a separate sheet. If not needed, the column may be hidden.

END OF FILE is a code used in the upload program to indicate the end of data. DO NOT HIDE OR DELETE.

### 121.9 What format do I use to show program reporting categories?

The program reporting categories worksheet should include all apportioned amounts, both those that have reporting categories and those that do not. There are two reasons for this requirement. First, the worksheet should provide a complete picture of all apportioned amounts for the TAFS. Having the apportioned amounts that do not use reporting categories on one worksheet, and then showing those apportioned amounts that use reporting categories on a second worksheet, would make it difficult to see the complete picture of what the TAFS would submit on its budget execution reports. Second, having a complete set of Category B stubs and program reporting stubs in one place helps ensure that OMB can send the correct Category B and program reporting stubs to the Financial Management Service (FMS) for use in FACTS II reporting.

The program reporting categories worksheet includes a column named reporting category number. Those rows that have a reporting category number from 1 – 100 will be sent to FMS for use in FACTS II reporting. You may also include rows that do not have a reporting category number. For example, you may find it helpful to keep a row that has a Category B project and apportioned amount as a control total that corresponds to two or more program reporting categories.

When completing the program reporting categories worksheet for Category A apportionments, you should include one row for each reporting category, rather than one row for each quarter. For example, if you have two reporting categories for Category A obligations, one for salaries, the second for all other, then the program reporting categories worksheet would only include two rows; the worksheet should not include separate rows that correspond to each quarter.

If the agency and OMB decide to use program reporting categories, you must include a second worksheet, named Pgm\_Cat, to show the program reporting categories. **The name of the worksheet must be Pgm\_Cat, and cannot be changed.** You can use the Pgm\_Cat worksheet with either the SF 132 or the letter apportionment. You do not need to include a Pgm\_Cat worksheet if you are not using program reporting categories.

The SF 132 and letter apportionment templates available from OMB's web page include the Pgm\_Cat worksheet. This worksheet also includes a macro that allows you to copy all rows with Category A or Category B apportioned amounts for all TAFSs that use program reporting categories from either the SF 132 or letter apportionment to the Pgm\_Cat worksheet. You may find this feature helpful when you start filling out the program reporting category information. Please note, however, that this macro will only work when the name of the SF 132 worksheet is "SF 132" or when the name of the letter apportionment worksheet is "Letter Apportionment". These are the names that are included on the templates available from the OMB web page.

**SECTION 121—SF 132, APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

---

- Cell A1 This cell contains the title "Program Reporting Categories". This cell is used by the upload program, and must not be altered.
- Column B Each row with a program reporting category must have the two digit Treasury agency code in column B.
- Column C For multi-year funds only. Each row with funds available for multiple years must have four numbers to indicate the first fiscal year of availability. For example, if the first year of availability is 2002, insert "2002." Leave blank if this is an annual or no-year TAFS.
- Column D For annual and multi-year funds, each row must have four numbers to indicate the last fiscal year of availability. For example, if the last year of availability is 2003, insert "2003" OR insert "X" if this is a no-year TAFS.
- Column E Each row must have four numbers to indicate the Treasury account code. Use an apostrophe ( ' ) before an account code that begins with a zero so that four numbers will print.
- Column F Each row must have an SF 132 line number that starts with 8. When OMB uses program reporting categories for Category A apportionments, use 8A as the line number (even though you use 8A1, 8A2, 8A3, and 8A4 on the actual apportionment). When OMB uses Category B apportionments, use the same line number as used on the apportionment, e.g., 8B1, 8B2.
- Column G This column must be left blank.
- Column H Each row must have a reporting category number, which is between one and 100. Agencies are responsible for selecting these numbers, as they need to make sure they can cross walk from these numbers to various data elements in their financial systems.
- The same reporting category number must not be used more than once for a single TAFS. The reporting category number and program reporting category description from this attachment are sent to the Financial Management Service, which operates the FACTS II system, and are used in FACTS II reporting. When agencies enter their FACTS II data, they are provided with a list of program reporting numbers and descriptions to submit their obligations data against.
- Column I Each row must have a program reporting category description. The maximum length of the description is 50 characters. The description must not have leading spaces, must not have ellipses (.....) at the end, and should not be prefaced with a sequence number or letter, e.g., (1), 1, a., b., etc.
- Column J This column must be left blank.
- Column K This column shows projected, annual obligations. In cases where the program reporting category is a Category B project, the projected annual obligations must equal the apportioned amount. In cases where there are two or more program reporting categories related to a single Category B project, you should project the annual obligations if you can readily do so, and/or if OMB requests you to do so. In cases where there are two or more program reporting categories related to a Category A apportionment, you should project the annual obligations if you can readily do so, and/or if OMB requests you to do so. In cases where you cannot estimate the annual obligations, use NA.

### 121.10 How do I treat extensions of the availability of unobligated balances?

Extensions of the availability of unobligated balances of budget authority are treated as new budget authority (reappropriations) or balance transfers depending on:

- The underlying authority to extend the availability; and
- Whether availability is extended before or after the balances have expired.

Not all extensions of the availability of unobligated balances are considered to be reappropriations. The term "reappropriation" applies only to those extensions of availability resulting from laws enacted after the law that provided the budget authority. Reappropriations can be enacted before or after the balances have expired. The definition *excludes* extensions resulting from provisions included in the same law that appropriated the funds or from standing provisions of law enacted before the budget authority was provided.

#### (a) *Extensions that are treated as new budget authority.*

Reappropriations of amounts that have expired are recorded as new budget authority in the year in which the reappropriated amounts become newly available for obligation. In addition, reappropriations of amounts that would expire before the legislation takes effect (e.g., a reappropriation of funds that would expire at the end of FY 2003 included in an FY 2004 appropriations act enacted in August, 2003) would be treated as new budget authority (reappropriations).

An example of this type of extension is found in section 137 (Division F) of the Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2003, which states:

"...the funds provided in Labor, Health and Human Services, Education and Related Agencies Appropriations Act of 2002, Public Law 107-116, for the National Museum of African American History and Culture Plan for Action Presidential Commission shall remain available until expended."

In this example the FY 2002 appropriated funds were annual and therefore expired at the end of September 30, 2002. The language in the FY 2003 appropriation reappropriated the expired funds to unexpired no-year funds.

#### (b) *Extensions that are treated as balance transfers.*

Reappropriations of amounts that would not otherwise expire until a future fiscal year (e.g., a FY 2004 reappropriation of amounts that would otherwise expire at the end of FY 2005) are treated as **balance transfers**. In addition, extensions of the availability of unobligated balances that result from standing provisions of law or provisions included in the same law that appropriated the funds are treated as balance transfers. An example of an extension included in the same law that appropriated the funds is section 511 of the Treasury and General Government Appropriations Act, 2003, which allows agencies to extend the period of availability (expired to unexpired) of unobligated balances of appropriations (annual or multi-year) provided in the same act. The Act states:

"... not to exceed 50 percent of unobligated balances remaining available at the end of fiscal year 2002 from appropriations made available for salaries and expenses for fiscal year 2002 in this Act, shall remain available through September 30, 2003, ..."

**SECTION 121—SF 132, APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

---

(c) *Apportionment.* Reappropriations described in paragraph (a) are reflected on line 1A: "Budget authority: Appropriation." Initial apportionments for FY 2004 should reflect an estimate of the amount to be reappropriated from the estimated expiring FY 2003 balances. A reapportionment may be required after the actual amount of the expiring balances is known. You may wish to reflect these amounts on line 5 "Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law xxx-xxx" until an appropriate time after the required reprogramming notice has been transmitted to Congress.

Balance transfer amounts from expired to unexpired funds, described in paragraph (b) are reflected on line 2B: Unobligated Balance: Net transfers, actual (+)

(d) *SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources.* For the SF 133 for September 30, all expiring balances, including amounts subject to reappropriation or balance transfer in the following fiscal year, should be reflected on either line 9A1 "Unobligated balance apportioned: Balance currently available" or line 10D "Unobligated balance not available: Other," as appropriate.

SF 133s prepared for later years should treat reappropriations and balance transfers in the same manner as the apportionment in the available columns. The amounts moved from the expired columns to the available columns should show as negative amounts on line 6B (see [exhibit 130G](#)).

(e) *FY 2005 Budget.* When the MAX A-11 database opens, all amounts expiring on September 30, 2003 should be reflected on schedule P line 2398 "Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn" in the 2003 actual column.

Amounts reappropriated (such as the example in paragraph (a)) should be reflected on line 5000 "Reappropriation" in the 2004 column. If there is no approved use for the funds, you may reflect them on line 2398 of the 2003 column as "Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn."

Amounts treated as balance transfers between expired to unexpired funds (such as the example in paragraph (b)) should be reflected on line 2230 "Expired unobligated balance transfer to unexpired account (+)" in the 2004 column.

### **121.11 What amounts should I allot?**

The agency system of administrative control should be designed to keep obligations and expenditures from exceeding apportionments and allotments or from exceeding budgetary resources available for obligation, whichever is smaller. Apportioned, anticipated amounts should not be allotted unless there is a reasonable assurance that such items will be collected and deposited to the credit of the appropriation or fund account that incurred the obligation. No obligations should be incurred against any anticipated budgetary resources, even if the funds are apportioned and allotted.

See [section 150](#) for further information about agency fund control systems, [Appendix H](#) for a checklist for fund control regulations, and [section 145](#) for further information about reportable Antideficiency Act violations.

One-Year Appropriation -- Initial Apportionment

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 0137 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

To save space, several exhibits in this section do not display lines that do not contain amounts. Exhibit 121M contains all lines.

The account title must be the same as the enacted appropriation.

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

Line No	Line Split	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
		AGENCY: Department of Government			
		BUREAU: Office of the Secretary			
		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL 80Y0137 Salaries and expenses			
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
1A		<b>Budget authority:</b> Appropriation (Public Law 108-300).....		7,400,000	On initial apportionment forms, this line entry represents the amount of appropriations becoming available on or after October 1 of the fiscal year for which the schedule is submitted.
		Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority.	The TAFS must be assigned by the Treasury Department.		
1D		Net transfers (+ or -) .....			
2A		<b>Unobligated balance:</b> Brought forward, October 1.....			This inclusion of estimates in determining the amounts available for apportionment does <u>not</u> authorize you to obligate amounts anticipated for the rest of the year.
3C		<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b> Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....		403,000	
5		<b>Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law 108-300 (-).....</b>		-1,000	This entry includes any funds <u>not</u> available for obligation pursuant to a specific provision in law. Identify the public law containing the restriction in the stub column. 31 U.S.C 1512 and the Impoundment Control Act are not valid authorizing citations.
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		7,802,000	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
		<i>Memorandum: Obligations incurred</i>			
		AppORTIONED: Category A:			
8A1		First quarter.....		1,952,000	The total amount on line 7 must equal the total amount on line 12.
8A2		Second quarter.....		1,950,000	
8A3		Third quarter.....		1,950,000	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....		1,950,000	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		7,802,000	

Include an estimate of all amounts you anticipate will become available, under existing law in the fiscal year for which the schedule is submitted. Do not include anticipated, unenacted supplemental appropriations and rescission proposals.

Entries on these lines reflect the net amount of actual transfers to (+) or from (-) the account.  
 NOTE: -- Line 2A should be blank unless the account is a no-year or a multiple-year account.

The "Memorandum: Obligations incurred" is blank because the apportionment request predates the beginning of the fiscal year.

Leave this column "Amount on Latest SF 132" blank on initial apportionments.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer / 8/21/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

NOTE: Exhibit 130A illustrates the SF 133 for this account.

Apportionment requests are required by August 21 or within 10 days after the approval of the act providing budget authority, whichever is later, except where authority is provided without current action by the Congress. In such cases, submit initial apportionment requests by August 21.

No-Year Appropriation -- Initial Apportionment

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 1309 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
		BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services		80X1309	Research and development
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
		<b>Budget authority :</b>			
1A		Appropriation (Public Law 108-456).....		25,000,000	
		<b>Unobligated balance:</b>			
2A		Brought forward, October 1..... (est.).....		1,180,000	
		<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)</b>			
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....			
		1 Department of Government		300,000	
		2 All Other Sources		100,000	
		<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>			
4B		Anticipated.....		150,000	
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		<b>26,730,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum:</i>					
		<b>Apportioned:</b>			
<i>Obligations incurred</i>					
Category A: Administrative Expenses					
8A1		First quarter.....		120,000	
8A2		Second quarter.....		120,000	
8A3		Third quarter.....		120,000	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....		120,000	
Category B:					
8B1		Research		12,800,000	
8B2		Dev. of products		9,450,000	
Category C: Apportioned for future fiscal years					
8C		FY(s): 2004		4,000,000	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		<b>26,730,000</b>	

Use this line to report expected cancellations or downward adjustments of obligations reported in prior years for unexpired accounts.

No-year and multi-year accounts can have apportioned amounts in future fiscal years.  
When using Line 8C, provide the future fiscal years.

Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority.

Include only amounts expected to be received and to become available without further congressional action.

If the account must be apportioned before the actual unobligated balance is known, enter an estimated amount on this line. Type "est." in the stub. If adjustments are subsequently required, submit a reapportionment form, except as provided in section 120.36.

Leave this column blank on initial apportionments.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 8/21/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
(Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

Normally, initial apportionment requests are required by August 21 when all or part of funds are available without current action by the Congress.



No-Year Appropriation -- Reapportionment

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 1309 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
		BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services		80X1309 Research and development	
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority:</b>					
1A		Appropriation (Public Law 108-456).....	25,000,000	25,000,000	On reapportionment forms, this entry will include enacted appropriations, amounts certified by Treasury warrant of indefinite appropriations, any enacted supplemental appropriation, and any appropriated receipts in special and trust funds.
2A		<b>Unobligated balance:</b> Brought forward, October 1.....(Actual).....	1,298,000	1,610,000	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>					
Earned:					
3A1		Collected.....		86,000	Use the most recent data available. Indicate the period covered by such amounts in a footnote.
3B1		Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -): Advance received.....		9,000	
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....			
	1	Department of Government	300,000	205,000	
	2	All Other Sources	100,000	100,000	
<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>					
4A		Actual.....		27,000	
4B		Anticipated.....	150,000	123,000	
<b>Permanently not available:</b>					
6B		Enacted rescissions (-) (Public Law 108-9).....		-200,000	
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,848,000</b>	<b>26,960,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum:</i>					
<b>AppORTioned:</b> <i>Obligations incurred</i>					
Category A: Administrative expenses					
8A1		First quarter.....	36,000	120,000	Use the most recent data available. Show the period covered by such amounts in a footnote.
8A2		Second quarter.....		120,000	
8A3		Third quarter.....		120,000	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....		120,000	
Category B:					
8B1		Research.....	2,354,700	16,800,000	
8B2		Dev. of products.....	1,348,250	9,568,000	
Category C: Apportioned for future fiscal years					
8C		FY(s): 2004.....		4,000,000	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,848,000</b>	<b>26,960,000</b>	

Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority.

You must request a reapportionment whenever the actual balance brought forward differs from the estimate on the latest SF 132 by \$200,000 or one percent of total budgetary resources, whichever is lower. Change the stub entry from "estimate" to "actual" whenever you reapportion after the final determination of unobligated balance.

Use the most recent data available. Show the period covered by such amounts in a footnote.

NOTE: Exhibit 130C illustrates the SF 133 for this account.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 12/29/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

NOTES: Actual amounts are as of 11/30/CY.  
 Line 2A includes \$118,000 in unobligated balances that were automatically apportioned.

Unless OMB determines otherwise, when amounts are automatically apportioned (see section 121.16), and there is a subsequent need for reapportionment, reflect adjustments previously made as automatic apportionments in the "Amount on Latest SF 132" column. In such cases, footnote what changes were automatically apportioned.

One -Year Appropriations Under Continuing Resolution

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 1200 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Normally, OMB will issue a bulletin to automatically apportion funds made available by a continuing resolution without requiring you to submit an SF 132 (see section 123.2). However, you may submit, or OMB may require you to submit an SF132.

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
		BUREAU: Program Administration	80Y1200	Salaries and expenses	
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority:</b>					
1A		Appropriation (Public Law XXX-XX).....		24,000,000	Show the actual amount or the annual rate of operations included in the continuing resolution (CR) on line 1. Even if the CR is for part of a fiscal year, you still show the annual amount of the CR on line 1 A (not the proportional share provided during the time period of the CR).
		<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>			
		<b>Earned:</b>			If the continuing resolution is for a part of the year, show the amount of BA that is currently not provided under the given time period of the CR as a negative on line 5 and cite the CR public law number. (See section 123.2 for guidance.)
3A1		Collected.....		1,500	
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....		1,348,260	
5		<b>Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law XXX-XX(-).....</b>		-22,030,000	
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		3,319,760	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum:</i>					
<b>AppORTioned:</b> Obligations incurred					
Category A:					
8A1		First quarter.....	2,065,718	3,019,760	Note that funds made available by the continuing resolution (\$24,000,000 - \$22,030,000) are all apportioned in the first quarter because in this example the continuing resolution expires during the first quarter at the end of 30 days. You may request apportionment of funds made available by other laws (for example, collections from the public or from trust funds) for time periods during which they are available, including the period after the expiration of the continuing resolution.
8A2		Second quarter.....		0	
8A3		Third quarter.....		0	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....		0	
Category B:					
8B1		State grants	40,014	300,000	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		3,319,760	

Reflect the amount shown on the latest SF133 on lines 3A, 3B, and 4A if more recent figures are not available. Indicate the period covered by such amounts in a footnote.

Reflect the amount shown on the latest SF133 on the memorandum entry of obligations if more recent figures are not available. Indicate the period covered by such amounts in a footnote.

Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority. If a continuing resolution (CR) is amended multiple times, always reference the first CR (not the subsequent amendments). However, if another CR is passed, cite the new CR as well as the first CR.

Show the actual amount or the annual rate of operations included in the continuing resolution (CR) on line 1. Even if the CR is for part of a fiscal year, you still show the annual amount of the CR on line 1 A (not the proportional share provided during the time period of the CR).

If the continuing resolution is for a part of the year, show the amount of BA that is currently not provided under the given time period of the CR as a negative on line 5 and cite the CR public law number. (See section 123.2 for guidance.)

Note that funds made available by the continuing resolution (\$24,000,000 - \$22,030,000) are all apportioned in the first quarter because in this example the continuing resolution expires during the first quarter at the end of 30 days. You may request apportionment of funds made available by other laws (for example, collections from the public or from trust funds) for time periods during which they are available, including the period after the expiration of the continuing resolution.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 8/21/CY  
 (Authorized officer) (Date)

APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_

Actual amounts are as of 10/31/CY.

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

### Appropriations and Unobligated Balances Under Continuing Resolution

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 1200 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Amounts in first column are from the initial apportionment.

Normally, OMB will issue a bulletin to automatically apportion funds made available by a continuing resolution without requiring you to submit an SF 132 (see section 123.2). However, you may submit, or OMB may require you to submit an SF132. Note also that the OMB bulletin will provide guidance on whether or not you must reappportion your unobligated balances (if they are different from the initial apportionment estimates).

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government      APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL  
 BUREAU: Program Administration      80X1200 Salaries and expenses

Line No	Line Split	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
---------	------------	-------------	-------------------------	----------------	---------------

**BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

**Budget authority:**

1A		Appropriation (Public Law XXX-XX).....		24,000,000	
----	--	--	--	------------	--

See Exhibit 121D for guidance on providing the appropriate public law number.

**Unobligated balance:**

2A		Brought forward, October 1..... (Actual).....	50,689,324	47,604,238	
----	--	---	------------	------------	--

**Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)**

**Earned:**

3A1		Collected.....		1,500	
-----	--	----------------	--	-------	--

3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....			
----	--	---	--	--	--

	1	Source 1 .....	1,000,760	1,000,260	
--	---	----------------	-----------	-----------	--

	2	Source 2 .....	349,000	348,000	
--	---	----------------	---------	---------	--

**Temporarily not available pursuant to Public**

5		Law XXX-XX(-).....		-22,030,000	
---	--	--------------------	--	-------------	--

		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>52,039,084</b>	<b>50,923,998</b>	
--	--	---------------------------------------	-------------------	-------------------	--

**APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

*Memorandum:  
Obligations incurred*

**Apportioned:**

		Category A:			
--	--	-------------	--	--	--

8A1		First quarter.....	2,250,419	2,425,021	1,970,000
-----	--	--------------------	-----------	-----------	-----------

8A2		Second quarter.....		33,513,794	14,558,447
-----	--	---------------------	--	------------	------------

8A3		Third quarter.....		8,390,574	14,558,447
-----	--	--------------------	--	-----------	------------

8A4		Fourth quarter.....		4,171,037	14,558,446
-----	--	---------------------	--	-----------	------------

		Category B:			
--	--	-------------	--	--	--

8B1		State grants .....	40,014	1,665,251	3,405,251
-----	--	--------------------	--------	-----------	-----------

8B2		Academy construction .....	0	1,873,407	1,873,407
-----	--	----------------------------	---	-----------	-----------

		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>52,039,084</b>	<b>50,923,998</b>	
--	--	---------------------------------------	-------------------	-------------------	--

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 11/29/CY      APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer)      (Date)      (Date)

Actual amounts are as of 11/30/CY.

You must submit a reappportionment request showing the final determination of unobligated balances to OMB as soon as it becomes known unless the amount is automatically apportioned by section 120.36.

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

Change the stub entry from "estimate" to "actual" when the final determination of unobligated balances is reported. If the amount on this line does not agree with the amounts: (a) reported on the final SF 133 of the preceding year; (b) reported to the Treasury for inclusion in the Treasury Combined Statement Appendix; or (c) presented in the Budget Appendix as a past year actual amount, footnote line 2A to explain the difference.

Lines 3A, 3B, and 4A as well as the memorandum entry on obligations should reflect the amount shown on the latest SF133 if more recent figures are not available. The period covered by such amounts should be indicated in a footnote.

Justify category A apportionments in varying amounts and changes from the previous apportionment on an attachment.

Show the actual amount or the annual rate of operations included in the continuing resolution (CR) on line 1. Even if the CR is for part of a fiscal year, you still show the annual amount of the CR on line 1 A (not the proportional share as provided during the time period of the CR).  
  
If the continuing resolution is for a part of the year, show the amount of BA that is currently not provided under the given time period of the CR as a negative on line 5 and cite the CR public law number.

If the continuing resolution is for a part of the year, show the amount of BA that is currently not provided under the given time period of the CR as a negative on line 5 and cite the CR public law number. (See section 123.2 for guidance.)

Reapportionment Following a Continuing Resolution

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 1200 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority. You can choose to either footnote the continuing resolution public law number or provide both the appropriation and CR laws on line 1A.

Note the use of line split to distinguish the sources of collections

Reflect the amount shown on the latest SF 133 on lines 3A, 3B, and 3C as well as the memorandum entry on obligations, if more recent figures are not available. Indicate the period covered by such amounts by a footnote.

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
		BUREAU: Program Administration		80X1200 Salaries and expenses	
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority:</b>					
1A		Appropriation (Public Law XXX-XXX).....	24,000,000	25,000,000	
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>					
2A		Brought forward, October 1.....(Actual).....	47,604,238	47,604,238	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>					
Earned:					
3A1		Collected.....	1,500	2,000	
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....			
	1	Source 1	1,000,260	1,000,260	
	2	Source 2	348,000	178,000	
<b>Temporarily not available pursuant to Public</b>					
5		Law XXX-XXX(-).....	-22,030,000		
<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>			<b>50,923,998</b>	<b>73,784,498</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum: Obligations incurred</i>					
<b>Apportioned:</b>					
Category A:					
8A1		First quarter..... 4,671,870	45,590,340	5,261,342	
8A2		Second quarter.....	0	19,594,832	
8A3		Third quarter..... 55,000	55,000	19,594,832	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....	0	19,594,832	
Category B:					
8B1		State grants 60,014	3,405,251	7,865,253	
8B2		Academy construction 0	1,873,407	1,873,407	
<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>			<b>50,923,998</b>	<b>73,784,498</b>	

Since the appropriation act provided funds for the full year all of these funds are now available.

In this example, the CR covered a period of 30 days. The amounts provided (e.g., BA of \$1.97 million) during the period of the CR (first quarter) should not be adjusted downward post enactment of the appropriation. (This is to ensure that if there are any upward adjustments of the obligations that were validly incurred during the time period of the CR that a reapportionment of a lesser amount does not result in the appearance of a violation of the Antideficiency Act.) However, the other budgetary resources (e.g., carryover, collections) may be redistributed so as not to result in an Antideficiency Act violation. Consult your OMB representative accordingly.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 1/5/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

Actual amounts as of 11/30/CY.

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

**Public Enterprise (Revolving) or Intragovernmental (Revolving)  
Fund -- Reapportionment**

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 4321 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
		BUREAU: Government Enterprise Corporation	80X4321 Government Enterprise Corp. Fund		
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority:</b>					
1A		Appropriation (Public Law 108-400).....	4,100,000	4,100,000	These entries represent new budget authority becoming available during the year.
1B		Borrowing authority.....			
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>					
		A. Brought forward, October 1..... (Actual).....	83,584,884	83,583,738	If you don't know the amount of the unobligated balance brought forward at the time you must submit an apportionment request for an account, show an estimated amount on this line, and submit a reapportionment form if adjustments are required, except as specified in section 120.36.
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>					
Earned:					
3A1		Collected.....			
3A2	1	User charges		8,000,000	
3A3	2	Insurance premiums		8,189,500	
3C		<b>Anticipated for rest of year, without advance</b> .....	69,806,300	54,616,800	
<b>Permanently not available:</b>					
6C		Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....	-20,756,800	-20,756,800	
7		<b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....	136,734,384	137,733,238	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
Memorandum:					
<b>Apportioned: Obligations incurred</b>					
Category A:					
8A1		First quarter..... 543,280	550,000	550,000	Justify category A apportionments in varying amounts and changes from the previous apportionment on an attachment.
8A2		Second quarter.....	650,000	650,000	
8A3		Third quarter.....	625,000	625,000	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....	609,600	609,600	
Category B:					
8B1		Management services 6,190,625	23,202,000	23,202,000	
8B2		Sales program 2,012,790	11,834,000	11,834,000	
8B3		Power program 5,125,630	20,980,600	20,980,600	
11		<b>Unapportioned balance of revolving fund</b> .....	78,283,184	79282038	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....	136,734,384	137,733,238	

Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority.

For revolving funds with indefinite borrowing authority :  
 --Line 1B includes only the amount of new borrowing authority anticipated to be used during the year, that is, the total amount of indefinite authority anticipated to be used to cover obligations during the year.

--Line 3C includes any credits or payments anticipated to be received.

--Line 6C includes estimates for the year of repayments of principal.

These entries represent new budget authority becoming available during the year.

If you don't know the amount of the unobligated balance brought forward at the time you must submit an apportionment request for an account, show an estimated amount on this line, and submit a reapportionment form if adjustments are required, except as specified in section 120.36.

Justify category A apportionments in varying amounts and changes from the previous apportionment on an attachment.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 1/5/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)  
 Actual amounts are through 12/31/CY.

Note: Exhibit 130E illustrates the SF 133 for this account.

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

Trust Fund Limitation

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 8004 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
		BUREAU: Administrative Division		80Y8004 Limitation on administrative expenses	
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority :</b>					
1A		Appropriation (Public Law 108-400).....	9,000,000	9,000,000	
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>9,000,000</b>	<b>9,000,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum:</i>					
<b>Apportioned: Obligations incurred</b>					
Category B:					
8B1		Management services 500,000	1,500,000	1,500,000	
8B2		Other administrative expenses 2,003,456	7,500,000	7,500,000	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>9,000,000</b>	<b>9,000,000</b>	

Include reference to law(s) that establish the limitation authority.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 1/31/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

Actual amounts are through 12/31/CY.

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

Negative Amount Due to Reduced Unobligated Balance

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 1309 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
		BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X1309 Research and Development		
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<b>Budget authority :</b>					
1A		Appropriation (P.L. 108-456).....	25,000,000	25,000,000	
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>					
2A		Brought forward, October 1.....(Actual).....	1,180,000	610,000	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>					
Earned:					
3A1		Collected.....		86,000	
Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):					
3B2		Without advance from Federal sources.....		9,000	
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance .....	400,000	145,000	
<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>					
4A		Actual.....		27,000	
4B		Anticipated.....	150,000	123,000	
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,730,000</b>	<b>26,000,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>					
<i>Memorandum:</i>					
		<i>Obligations incurred</i>			
<b>Apportioned:</b>					
Category A:					
8A1		First quarter..... 80,000	120,000	120,000	
8A2		Second quarter.....	120,000	-10,000	
8A3		Third quarter.....	120,000	54,000	
8A4		Fourth quarter.....	120,000	54,000	
Category B:					
8B1		Research 2,354,700	16,800,000	16,062,000	
8B2		Dev. of Products 1,348,250	9,450,000	9,720,000	
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,730,000</b>	<b>26,000,000</b>	

Apportionments previously established are not subject to change after the close of the period for which the apportionment is made.

When you need to reduce the cumulative amount apportioned through the current period, revise the amount apportioned for the current period to a negative amount.

Assuming that 1st quarter obligations were \$80,000 in this example, then the 2nd quarter apportioned amount would be \$30,000 (120,000 apportioned less 80,000 obligated plus -10,000 apportioned).

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 1/30/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Authorized officer) (Date) (Date)

Actual amounts are as of 11/30/CY.

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

Multiple-Year Account -- Apportionment in Two Fiscal Years

- 89 [= Treasury agency code]
- 2003 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- 2004 [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 0010 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

Note that this Exhibit displays SF 132 for two different years on the same page to facilitate the presentation. See section 120.9.

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

YEAR 1		YEAR 2		
Line No	AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPR	AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND
	BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	893/40010	BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	893/40010
Line Split	DESCRIPTION	2003	DESCRIPTION	2004
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<b>Budget authority:</b>				
1A	Appropriation (Public Law 108-456).....	100,000		
	Include reference to law(s) that provide budget authority.	Includes the full amount appropriated.		
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>				
2A	Brought forward, October 1.....(est.).....		Brought forward, October 1...(est.).....	52,000
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>100,000</b>	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>52,000</b>
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
<i>Memorandum:</i>				
<i>Obligations incurred</i>				
<b>Apportioned:</b>				
Category A				
8A1	First quarter.....	12,500	First quarter.....	13,000
8A2	Second quarter.....	12,500	Second quarter.....	13,000
8A3	Third quarter.....	12,500	Third quarter.....	13,000
8A4	Fourth quarter.....	12,500	Fourth quarter.....	13,000
Category C				
8C	Future FY(s) 2003	50,000		
12	<b>12. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>100,000</b>	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>52,000</b>

The planned use of appropriations in year 2.



**Trust Fund with Contract Authority, Appropriation to Liquidate Contract Authority, and Obligation Limitation**

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 8200 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL			
		BUREAU: Program administration	80X8200	Program administration trust fund		
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>						
<b>Budget authority:</b>						
1A		Appropriation (Public Law 108-456).....		90,000	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">                     This example assumes that the authorizing legislation provides \$100 thousand in contract authority that was apportioned in the initial apportionment for the year.                 </div>	
1B		Borrowing authority.....				
1C		Contract authority (Public Law 108-123).....	100,000	100,000		
1D		Net transfers (+ or -).....				
1E		Other.....				
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>						
2A		Brought forward October 1.....			<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">                     Subsequently, the appropriation act provided \$90 thousand in an appropriation to liquidate contract authority and limited obligations from the contract authority to \$90 thousand.                 </div>	
2B		Net transfers, actual (+ or -).....				
2C		Anticipated transfers (+ or -).....				
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>						
Earned:						
3A1		Collected.....			<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">                     This example assumes that the contract authority that cannot be obligated is available to be obligated in the succeeding fiscal year. This is an obligation limitation.                 </div>	
3A2		Receivable from Federal sources.....				
Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):						
3B1		Advance received.....				
3B2		Without advance from Federal sources.....				
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....				
Transfers from trust funds:						
3D1		Collected.....				
3D2		Anticipated.....				
<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>						
4A		Actual.....				
4B		Anticipated.....				
5		<b>Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law 108-456 (-).....</b>		-10,000		
<b>Permanently not available:</b>						
6A		Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....				
6B		Enacted rescissions (-).....				
6C		Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....				
6D		Other authority withdrawn (-).....				
6E		Pursuant to Public Law 108-456 (-).....		-90,000		
6F		Anticipated rest of year (+ or -).....				
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	100,000	90,000		
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>						
<i>Memorandum:</i>						
<b>Appropriated:</b> <span style="float: right;"><i>Obligations incurred</i></span>						
Category A:						
8A1		First quarter.....	25,000	25,000	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content;">                     If the contract authority that is being limited is only available for a single year, the amount not being used would be included on line 6D.                 </div>	
8A2		Second quarter.....	25,000	20,000		
8A3		Third quarter.....	25,000	25,000		
8A4		Fourth quarter.....	25,000	20,000		
Category B:						
9		<b>Withheld pending rescission.....</b>				
10		<b>Deferred.....</b>				
11		<b>Unapportioned balance of revolving fund.....</b>				
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	100,000	90,000		

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 11/29/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Date) (Date)

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations.

Trust Fund (or Special Fund) with Collections Precluded from Obligation

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 8000 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

Line No	Line Split	AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
		BUREAU: Program benefits		80X8000	Payment of benefits	
		DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>						
<b>Budget authority:</b>						
1A		Appropriation (Public Law 108-789).....		30,000	In this example, the amount on line 1A equals one-quarter of the estimated annual obligations. This amount is derived from prior year collections and is used to fund obligations and outlays until current year collections are received.	
1B		Borrowing authority.....				
1C		Contract authority.....				
1D		Net transfers (+ or -).....				
1e		Other.....		160,000		
<b>Unobligated balance:</b>						
2A		Brought forward October 1..... (Actual).....			The amount on line 5 equals the excess of current year receipts over the anticipated obligations (\$40 thousand) plus the amount on line 1A (\$30 thousand).	
2B		Net transfers, actual (+ or -).....				
2C		Anticipated transfers (+ or -).....				
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>						
Earned:						
3A1		Collected.....			This example assumes that the authorizing legislation makes all receipts available until expended. However, the same law permits obligations only for benefits. The estimate of benefits to be paid is less than the current receipts.	
3A2		Receivable from Federal sources.....				
Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):						
3B1		Advance received.....				
3B2		Without advance from Federal sources.....				
3C		Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....				
Transfers from trust funds:						
3D1		Collected.....				
3D2		Anticipated.....				
<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>						
4A		Actual.....				
4B		Anticipated.....				
5		<b>Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law 108-789 (-).....</b>		-70,000		
<b>Permanently not available:</b>						
6A		Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....				
6B		Enacted rescissions (-).....				
6C		Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....				
6D		Other authority withdrawn (-).....				
6E		Pursuant to Public Law _____ (-).....				
6F		Anticipated rest of year (+ or -).....				
7		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		120,000		
<i>Memorandum: Obligations incurred</i>						
<b>Apportioned:</b>						
Category A:						
8A1		First quarter.....				
8A2		Second quarter.....				
8A3		Third quarter.....				
8A4		Fourth quarter.....				
Category B:						
8B1		Payment of benefits.....		120,000		
9		<b>Withheld pending rescission.....</b>				
10		<b>Deferred.....</b>				
11		<b>Unapportioned balance of revolving fund.....</b>				
12		<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		120,000		

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 8/21/CY APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Date) (Date)

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriations for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

SF 132 FORMAT

- [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- [= Treasury account code]
- 2003 [= fiscal year]
- No [= program report categories (Yes or No) included]

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

	AGENCY: BUREAU	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
Line No Line Split	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
	<b>PROGRAM LEVEL</b>			
	Guaranteed loan levels:			
	Current year.....			
	Unused from prior years.....			
	<b>APPLICATION</b>			
	Apportioned:			
	Category A:			
	First quarter.....			
	Second quarter.....			
	Third quarter.....			
	Fourth quarter.....			
	Category B:			
	Guaranteed loan program.....			
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
	<b>Budget authority:</b>			
1A	Appropriation.....			
1B	Borrowing authority.....			
1C	Contract authority.....			
1D	Net transfers (+ or -).....			
1E	Other.....			
	<b>Unobligated balance:</b>			
2A	Brought forward October 1.....			
2B	Net transfers, actual (+ or -).....			
2C	Anticipated transfers (+ or -).....			
	<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>			
	Earned:			
3A1	Collected (Source 1).....			
3A1	Collected (Source 2).....			
3A2	Receivable from Federal sources.....			
	Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):			
3B1	Advance received.....			
3B2	Without advance from Federal sources.....			
3C	Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....			
	Transfers from trust funds:			
3D1	Collected.....			
3D2	Anticipated.....			
	<b>Recoveries of prior year obligations:</b>			
4A	Actual.....			
4B	Anticipated.....			
5	<b>Temporarily not available pursuant to P.L. (-).....</b>			
	<b>Permanently not available:</b>			
6A	Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....			
6B	Enacted rescissions (-).....			
6C	Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....			
6D	Other authority withdrawn (-).....			
6E	Pursuant to Public Law _____ (-).....			
6F	Anticipated rest of year (+ or -).....			
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>			
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
	<b>Apportioned:</b>			
	Category A: Memorandum Obligations:			
8A1	First quarter.....			
8A2	Second quarter.....			
8A3	Third quarter.....			
8A4	Fourth quarter.....			
	Category B:			
8B1	Program 1			
8B2	Recipient Type 4			
8B3	Recipient Type 5			
	Category C:			
8C	FY 20## ←			
9	Withheld pending rescission.....			
10	Deferred.....			
11	<b>Unapportioned balance of revolving fund.....</b>			
12	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>			

When using Line 8C, provide the future fiscal year(s)

SUBMITTED Authorized officer 8/21/CY (Date) APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_ (Date)

NOTE: Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts

**DEPARTMENT OF GOVERNMENT**  
 Letter Apportionment  
 Funds Provided by Public Law 108-XXX  
 Fiscal Year 2003

**LEGEND**

- [= Treasury agency code shown in the first column]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year shown in the second column]
- [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year shown in the third column]
- [= Treasury account code shown in the fourth column]
- [= SF 132 line number shown in the fifth column]
- [= SF 132 line number split shown in the sixth column]
- [= fiscal year shown in first column]

The following appropriations provided by Public Law 108-XXX for fiscal year 2003 are hereby apportioned in the amounts indicated below. To the extent authorized by law after submission of revised estimates to OMB, these amounts may be increased or decreased for indefinite appropriations, actual unobligated balances, actual recoveries of prior year obligations, actual reimbursements earned, including reimbursements and offsetting collections from non-Federal sources, contributions from non-Federal sources, and release of contingent funds. Transfer of funds authorized by law to or from any of the accounts listed may be made without further action by OMB. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total amount appropriated is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled appropriations. Any of these funds that are not needed for this purpose may be used for current year obligations without further action.

	<u>Bureau / Account Title / Reporting Category</u>	<u>Amount</u>
<b>Office of the Secretary</b>		
Salaries and expenses		
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 RptCat No	
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 1A	7,400,000
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 3C	403,000
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 5	-1,000
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 8A1	1,952,000
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 8A2	1,950,000
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 8A3	1,950,000
80	YYYY YYYY 0137 8A4	1,950,000
<b>Bureau of Central Services</b>		
Research and development		
80	X 1309 RptCat Yes	
80	X 1309 1A	25,000,000
80	X 1309 2A	1,610,000
80	X 1309 3A1	86,000
80	X 1309 3B1	9,000
80	X 1309 3C 1 Department of Government	205,000
80	X 1309 3C 2 All Other Sources	100,000
80	X 1309 4A	27,000
80	X 1309 4B	123,000
80	X 1309 6B	-200,000
80	X 1309 8A1	120,000
80	X 1309 8A2	120,000
80	X 1309 8A3	120,000
80	X 1309 8A4	120,000
80	X 1309 8B1	12,880,000
80	X 1309 8B2	9,600,000
80	X 1309 8C 2004	4,000,000

Compare with Exhibit 121A. Note that all information is presented.

Compare with Exhibit 121C. Note that all information is presented.

Submitted \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

Approved \_\_\_\_\_ Date \_\_\_\_\_

**NOTES**

**PROGRAM REPORTING CATEGORIES FORMAT**

Program Reporting Categories							
Treasury Agency	FY 1	FY 2	Treasury Account	SF 132 Line	Report Cat No	Projected, Annual Obligations	
80	X		1309	8A	1	Salaries	400,000
80	X		1309	8A	2	All Other	80,000
80	X		1309	8A		Cat A, Sub-total	480,000
80	X		1309	8B1	3	Research -- Air	8,880,000
80	X		1309	8B1	4	Research -- Water	4,000,000
80	X		1309	8B1	5	Research -- All Other	N/A
80	X		1309	8B1		Research, Sub-total	12,880,000
80	X		1309	8B2	6	Development -- Air	5,600,000
80	X		1309	8B2	7	Development -- Water	4,000,000
80	X		1309	8B2	8	Development -- All Other	N/A
80	X		1309	8B2		Development, Sub-total	9,600,000

Note: Program reporting categories are not used to apportion funds, and are not subject to 31 USC 1517.

When the Report Cat No has a number between 1 - 100, the stub will be sent to the FACTS II system for use in budget execution reporting.

You may also include additional rows where the Report Cat No is blank. In this example, these rows serve as sub-totals.

Note how the program reporting categories relate to apportioned amounts in Exhibit 121N's Bureau of Central Services.



## SECTION 123—APPORTIONMENTS UNDER CONTINUING RESOLUTIONS

<p><b>Table of Contents</b></p> <p>123.1 What is a continuing resolution?</p> <p>123.2 How do I determine the amount available for obligation under a continuing resolution?</p> <p>123.3 Do the amounts made available for obligation remain available after a continuing resolution expires?</p> <p>123.4 Does the continuing resolution limit the purposes for which funds may be obligated?</p> <p>123.5 Am I required to submit an apportionment request while I am funded by a continuing resolution?</p> <p>123.6 Are my credit programs funded under a continuing resolution?</p> <p>123.7 Do I need to request a reapportionment after my regular appropriation is enacted?</p> <p>123.8 Will my regular appropriations cover obligations made during the continuing resolution?</p>
---

**123.1 What is a continuing resolution?**

Continuing resolutions (also known as "CRs") are joint resolutions that provide continuing appropriations for a fiscal year. CRs are enacted when Congress has not yet passed new appropriations bills and a program's appropriations are about to or have expired, or when the President has vetoed congressionally passed appropriations bills. Because of the nature of CRs, you should operate at a minimal level until after your regular appropriation is enacted.

**123.2 How do I determine the amount available for obligation under a continuing resolution?**

Usually, CRs don't appropriate specific sums of money. Rather, they provide "formulas" for calculating the amounts available for continuing programs at minimal levels. In addition, CRs provide funds for projects and activities. The phrase *projects and activities* has two meanings:

- The phrase *usually* refers to the total appropriation (the amount calculated by the formula) rather than to specific activities (when determining which government programs are covered by the CR and the rate for operations limit).
- The phrase *sometimes* refers to the specific activity (when determining whether an activity was authorized or carried out in the preceding year).

You should carefully review each CR to determine the formula provided. Keep in mind that the amount available under a CR is the product of negotiations among the various factions in the Congress and the Administration. As a result, the formula provided in each CR will likely differ from the formula in previous CRs. For example, the formulas provided by the CRs for the past six years have been different. Click here for the formula provided by the

- [FY 2003 CR](#) (OMB Bulletin 02–06)
- [FY 2002 CR](#) (OMB Bulletin 01–10)
- [FY 2001 CR](#) (OMB Bulletin 01–01)
- [FY 2000 CR](#) (OMB Bulletin 99–07)
- [FY 1999 CR](#) (OMB Bulletin 98–10)
- [FY 1998 CR](#) (OMB Bulletin 98–01)

**123.3 Do the amounts made available for obligation remain available after a continuing resolution expires?**

No. CRs make amounts available for obligation only until a time specified by the CR or until the enactment of regular fiscal year appropriations, whichever is sooner. A CR normally provides temporary funding. A CR can last any period of time, as specified by the CR (one day, a few days, a few weeks, or a month). It is generally understood that the normal appropriations process will eventually produce appropriation acts to replace or terminate the CR. In exceptional cases, CRs have been in effect through the end of the fiscal year. In such cases, regular appropriations language replaces the formula in the CR. In FY 2003, for example, 11 of the 13 regular annual appropriations bills were not enacted. Instead, all the appropriations normally provided in those bills were provided in one joint resolution making consolidated appropriations. Consolidated appropriations are also referred to as omnibus appropriations act.

**123.4 Does the continuing resolution limit the purposes for which funds may be obligated?**

Normally, yes. A CR makes amounts available subject to the same terms and conditions specified in the enacted appropriations acts from the prior fiscal year. The CR may also establish additional terms and conditions. Normally, you are not permitted to start new projects or activities.

**123.5 Am I required to submit an apportionment request while I am funded by a continuing resolution?**

Normally, no. OMB will issue a bulletin to automatically apportion amounts made available by CRs that expire before the end of the fiscal year. The OMB bulletins that apportioned the CRs during the last six fiscal years are linked to section 123.2. Usually the bulletin requires you to request a written apportionment when the rate of obligation is affected by seasonality and the normal pattern of obligation exceeds the pro rated level calculated under the automatic apportion. Also, you may request written apportionments if you believe that amounts automatically apportioned are insufficient or if either you or OMB believes that a written apportionment is necessary.

**123.6 Are my credit programs funded under a continuing resolution?**

Yes. CRs generally make budgetary resources available to support the costs (appropriations for subsidy cost amounts) associated with direct and guaranteed loan activities that were conducted in the prior fiscal year. Normally, the CR allows you to make new direct loans and new commitments to guarantee loans within the limitations on credit activity levels and subject to the terms and conditions specified in the prior fiscal year appropriations act(s).

**123.7 Do I need to request a reapportionment after my regular appropriation is enacted?**

Yes. You must request a reapportionment within ten days of the enactment of your regular appropriations act, even if the period covered by the CR has not expired. The total amount subject to reapportionment will equal the total amount made available for the fiscal year in the regular appropriation. Click here for further information on the following:

- Instructions on the apportionment process (see [section 120](#))
- Instructions on the format of the apportionment schedule (SF 132) (see [section 121](#))
- Detailed instructions on each line on the SF 132 (see [Appendix F](#))



**123.8 Will my regular appropriations cover obligations made during the continuing resolution?**

Yes. Normally your regular appropriations cover all obligations made during the CR. However, there could be exceptions depending on the provisions of the CR. For example, consider the situation under a CR when:

- (1) The total regular annual appropriation enacted was subsequently less than the obligations incurred under the CR;
- (2) The amount obligated was available under the CR;
- (3) There was no indication that the Congress would enact a regular annual appropriation less than the amount available under the CR;
- (4) And, the agency reduced obligations to the maximum extent possible – returning purchases received for a refund, canceling purchases of goods and services ordered but not yet received, and canceling grants.

Since the agency complied with the legislative intent of the lower appropriation under the CR, but the reduced obligations were still greater than the regular annual appropriation, it was determined that the portion needed to cover the difference was covered by the CR.



## SECTION 124—AGENCY OPERATIONS IN THE ABSENCE OF APPROPRIATIONS

<b>Table of Contents</b>  124.1 What types of actions may my agency conduct during a funding hiatus? 124.2 What plans should my agency make in anticipation of a funding hiatus? 124.3 When should my agency's shutdown plans be implemented?
---

**124.1 What types of actions may my agency conduct during a funding hiatus?***(a) Background.*

The Attorney General issued two opinions in the early 1980s that the language and legislative history of the Antideficiency Act unambiguously prohibit agency officials from incurring obligations in the absence of appropriations ("Applicability of the Antideficiency Act Upon a Lapse in an Agency's Appropriations" (1980) and "Authority for the Continuance of Government Functions During a Temporary Lapse in Appropriations" (1981)). The Office of Legal Counsel of the Department of Justice issued an opinion dated August 16, 1995, that reaffirms and updates the 1981 opinion.

*(b) Policies.*

This section provides policy guidance and instructions for actions to be taken by Executive Branch agencies when Congress fails to enact either regular appropriations, a continuing resolution, or needed supplementals, resulting in an interruption of fund availability.

This section does not apply to specific appropriations action by the Congress to deny program funding.

When the Congress fails to act on program supplementals and the result is partial funding interruptions, special procedures beyond those outlined in this section may be warranted. In such cases, you should consult your OMB representative.

In the absence of appropriations:

- Federal officers may not incur any obligations that cannot lawfully be funded from prior appropriations unless such obligations are otherwise authorized by law.
- Federal officers may incur obligations as necessary for orderly termination of an agency's functions, but funds may not be disbursed.

**124.2 What plans should my agency make in anticipation of a funding hiatus?**

Agency heads must develop and maintain plans for an orderly shutdown in the event of the absence of appropriations. Submit your plans to OMB when they are either first prepared or revised. Include the following information in the plan:

- Estimate the time (to the nearest half-day) to complete the shutdown.
- Number of employees expected to be on-board before implementation of the plan.
- Total number of employees to be retained under the plan because:
  - ▶ They are engaged in military, law enforcement, or direct provision of health care activities, or

- ▶ Their compensation is financed by a resource other than annual appropriations.
- Number of employees, not otherwise exempt, to be retained to protect life and property.

As you monitor the progress of your appropriations through the Congress, you will need to be sensitive to the possibility of delays, and, in particular, delays caused by issues that have little to do with your agency's programs. You should avoid initiating new activities included in the proposed budget by using available money in the prior year.

Within the guidance established by the opinions issued by the Department of Justice and this Circular, agency heads must decide what activities are essential to operate their agencies during an appropriations hiatus. Address questions that you cannot answer to OMB. Address questions about the interpretation of the Antideficiency Act jointly to OMB and the Office of Legal Counsel of the Department of Justice.

Submit policy statements and legal opinions supporting those estimates to OMB if you estimate:

- That more than one-half day would be needed to complete a shutdown, or
- That the number of employees to be retained to protect life and property would exceed five percent of the number of employees on-board at the beginning of a hiatus less those exempt.

### **124.3 When should my agency's shutdown plans be implemented?**

OMB will monitor the status of congressional actions on appropriations bills and will notify agencies if shutdown plans are to be implemented. Whenever it appears that a hiatus in appropriations might occur, you should review your shutdown plans, and, if revisions are required, promptly submit the revised plan to OMB.

After OMB has identified a hiatus in appropriations and all available funds (including reallocated/reallocated funds), are exhausted, you must begin orderly shutdown activities. Each agency head must determine the specific actions that will be taken; however, all your actions must contribute to an orderly shutdown of the agency and give primary consideration to protecting life and safeguarding Government property and records. Agency heads will notify OMB immediately when shutdown activities are being initiated.

During an absence of appropriations, agency heads must limit obligations to those needed to maintain the minimum level of essential activities necessary to protect life and property.

Take necessary personnel actions to release employees in accordance with applicable law and regulations of the Office of Personnel Management. You must prepare employee notices of furlough and process personnel and pay records in connection with shutdown furlough actions. You should plan for these functions to be performed by employees who are retained for orderly termination of agency activities as long as those employees are available.

OMB will notify you when the hiatus of appropriations has ended.

## SECTION 130—SF 133, REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES

## Table of Contents

*Overview*

- 130.1 What is the purpose of the SF 133 and how is it organized?  
 130.2 What are the general requirements for submitting SF 133s?

*Detailed Guidance*

- 130.3 How do I report budgetary resources?  
 130.4 How do I report the status of budgetary resources?  
 130.5 How do I report obligations, and how are obligations shown on SF 133 reports?  
 130.6 How do I report the relation of obligations to outlays?  
 130.7 What should I report during the expired phase?  
 130.8 How do I report adjustments to expired TAFSs?  
 130.9 What must I do when I have extended disbursement authority?  
 130.10 How do I report expired TAFSs that are being closed?  
 130.11 What disbursements can I make during the canceled phase?

*Special Requirements*

- 130.12 How do I submit non-standard reports?  
 130.13 How do I report lower levels of detail?  
 130.14 How do I submit an SF 133 for allocation accounts?  
 130.15 How do I submit an SF 133 for credit TAFSs?  
 130.16 How do I ensure that my actuals are consistent?
- Ex-130A Annual Account—September 30 Report  
 Ex-130B Annual Account with Reimbursements—September 30 Report  
 Ex-130C No-Year Account—Quarterly Report  
 Ex-130D Multi-year Account Apportioned for Two Fiscal Years  
 Ex-130E Public Enterprise (Revolving) or Intragovernmental (Revolving) Fund—Quarterly Report  
 Ex-130F Annual Account—Advance Appropriation  
 Ex-130G Annual Account—Reappropriation  
 Ex-130H Chart of SF 133 General Requirements  
 Ex-130I SF 133 Outlay Formula  
 Ex-130J Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Treasury Combined Statement  
 Ex-130K Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Program and Financing Schedule  
 Ex-130L Trust Fund (or Special Fund) with Collections Precluded from Obligation  
 Ex-130M Relationship between Selected SF 133 and Program and Financing Schedule Lines (in millions of dollars)

**130.1 What is the purpose of the SF 133 and how is it organized?**

The SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources:

- Fulfills the requirement in [31 U.S.C. 1511–1514](#) that the President review Federal expenditures at least four times a year.

- Allows the monitoring of the status of funds that were apportioned on the SF 132 Apportionment and Reapportionment Schedule and funds that were not apportioned.
- Provides a consistent presentation of information across programs within each agency, and across agencies, which helps program, budget, and accounting staffs to communicate.
- Provides historical reference that can be used to help prepare the President's Budget, program operating plans, and spend-out rate estimates.
- Provides a basis to determine obligation patterns when programs are required to operate under a continuing resolution.
- Ties an agency's financial statements to their budget execution. The compilation of an agency's SF 133s should generally agree with an agency's Statement of Budgetary Resources. The few differences are explained in [section 130.16\(e\)](#).

The SF 133 consists of the following sections:

Section...	shows whether....	and is described in:
Budgetary Resources	budgetary resources are available for obligation or not	<a href="#">Appendix F, Budgetary Resources</a>
Status of Budgetary Resources	budgetary resources have been obligated or not	<a href="#">Appendix F, Status of Budgetary Resources</a>
Relation of Obligations to Outlays	obligated amounts have been outlayed or not	<a href="#">Appendix F, Relation of Obligations to Outlays</a>

### 130.2 What are the general requirements for submitting SF 133s?

(a) *What accounts should I report?*

Unless otherwise specified by OMB, all Executive Branch agencies must electronically submit SF 133 information each quarter for each open Treasury appropriation fund symbol (TAFS).

*Do* submit SF 133 reports for:

- Unexpired (i.e. current) TAFSs;
- Expired TAFSs (including TAFSs about to be closed and annual TAFSs that are older than five years that have legally authorized extended disbursing authority);
- Both apportioned TAFSs and those that have not been apportioned; and
- Credit program, financing, and liquidating TAFSs (see [section 185](#) for detailed information).

*Do not* submit SF 133 reports for:

- Deposit fund accounts;
- Receipt accounts (including clearing accounts and suspense accounts); and
- Closed TAFSs (i.e. TAFSs with canceled balances) unless required by OMB.

(b) *What level of detail should I report?*

Submit SF 133s for each expired and unexpired TAFS. Report amounts as cumulative from the beginning of the fiscal year to the end of the period.

Because one of the main purposes of the SF 133 is to monitor the use of the funds planned on the SF 132 Apportionment, in general, your SF 133 should contain the same level of detail as your SF 132 Apportionment.

A consolidated SF 132 Apportionment does not exempt you from the requirement to separately report each TAFS. When a single apportionment is provided for more than one TAFS, you must identify the TAFSs that were apportioned together in the footnotes of the SF 133 for each of those TAFSs. For example, if fund 12–X–9901 is apportioned and is an aggregation of 12–X–0100, 12–X–0101, and 12–X–0102, then the three SF 133s should each have a footnote indicating that all of the funds were apportioned under 12–X–9901. (See [section 120.27](#).) Include all footnotes at the end of the SF 133.

(c) *How do I submit an SF 133?*

You must submit SF 133 budget execution information electronically through the Treasury's Federal Agencies' Centralized Trial-balance System II (FACTS II). This facilitates analysis and ensures consistent presentation of budget execution information so that Government-wide totals are meaningful. Electronic submission of the information also allows the SF 133 to be presented on the internet at [www.whitehouse.gov/omb/reports](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/reports) to facilitate communication among accounting, budget, and audit staff.

You can find out more about FACTS II at [www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl/FACTSII](http://www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl/FACTSII) or by calling the GOALS Marketing Team at (202) 874–8270. FACTS II does not replace the SF 133, but rather replaces previous systems used to collect SF 133 information.

(d) *Who can approve an SF 133 submission?*

SF 133 information submitted for each independent agency, departmental bureau, or similar subdivision will be certified by an officer duly authorized by the head of the agency to be responsible for the integrity of the submission.

Typically, one group within your agency (for example, the accounting office) reports amounts to Treasury while another group (for example, the budget office) prepares budget schedules (see [section 82.15](#)). Before the accounting office submits its actuals to Treasury in FACTS II, you must ensure that the amounts you are going to report are conceptually and numerically consistent with the amounts that your budget office is going to report in MAX A-11. In addition, GAO requires your auditors to determine whether controls exist to ensure that the amounts in your systems and the amounts submitted via FACTS II agree. See GAO-02-126G “Guide for Auditing the Statement of Budgetary Resources” (see [section 82.15](#)).

(e) *When do I submit an SF 133?*

You must submit SF 133 budget execution information at the end of each quarter. You can find out the reporting deadlines at [www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl/FACTSII](http://www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl/FACTSII) or by calling the GOALS Marketing Team at (202) 874–8270. The deadlines are approximately three weeks after the close of each quarter. You must revise any material errors in previously reported information through FACTS II at this time as well. You also must be able to produce a monthly SF 133 when required by OMB.

(f) *What other budget execution reporting requirements must I meet?*

You must submit a paper copy of the SF 133 for each quarter directly to the Committee on Appropriations, House of Representatives. To the extent practicable, you should submit all the reports for each independent agency, departmental bureau, or similar subdivision together and numbered consecutively. You may use printouts of SF 133s from FACTS II.

You should periodically compare the estimates of anticipated amounts (contained on SF 132 lines 1E, 2C, 3C, 3D, 4B, 6F, and SF 133 line 9A2) to actual results to improve future estimates.

### **130.3 How do I report budgetary resources?**

To use the entries in this section of the SF 133, see [Appendix F, budgetary resources](#). The Appendix F includes specific instructions for unexpired TAFSS, expired TAFSS, and expired TAFSS being closed. "Expired TAFSS being closed" refers to the final September 30 SF 133 that is submitted for a TAFS (e.g. the September 30 report for an annual TAFS that has been expired for five years).

### **130.4 How do I report the status of budgetary resources?**

To use the entries in this section of the SF 133, see [Appendix F, status of budgetary resources](#).

### **130.5 How do I report obligations, and how are obligations shown on SF 133 reports?**

Agencies will provide descriptive stubs for both Category A and Category B obligations. For Category B obligations that do not use program reporting categories, agencies will continue to provide a stub that describes the Category B project. For both Category A and Category B obligations that use program reporting categories, agencies will provide a stub that describes the reporting category.

OMB sends a list of program reporting category stubs, as well as Category B project stubs, from approved apportionments to the Department of the Treasury's Financial Management Service (FMS) for use in FACTS II budget execution reporting. See [sections 121.2](#), [121.3](#), and [121.4](#) for additional information. When reporting your obligations, FACTS II will present you with a list of program reporting categories and Category B projects to report upon; these Category B projects and reporting categories are taken from OMB's automated apportionment system.

OMB sends this information to FMS so OMB can use automated tools to align program report categories and Category B projects on the approved apportionments to the SF 133 reports. Prior to this change, OMB was unable to create automated reports that compare apportioned amounts (from the SF 132) and obligations (from the SF 133) by Category B project. The reason is that the SF 132s and SF 133s used different names for the Category B projects, so it was impossible to use a computer program to line up the projects by name.

When reporting your obligations to FACTS II, you may add new Category B and/or program report category stubs. Here are some reasons why you may need to add new Category B projects and/or reporting categories:

First, you must report all obligations that took place during the reporting period. You must add Category B projects and/or program reporting categories if FACTS II does not provide you with a comprehensive list of reporting categories and/or Category B projects to report all your obligations.



Second, if you are aware that OMB has apportioned funds using Category B projects that are not presented in FACTS II, then you should add the missing Category B projects names, and report your obligations for those projects.

Third, if you are aware that OMB has used program reporting categories that are not presented in FACTS II, then you should add the missing program reporting category names, and report our obligations for those categories.

The obligations submitted to FACTS II are presented in two ways on the SF 133 reports produced by FACTS II and OMB.

First, obligations are summarized into the following categories: (1) Direct, Category A; (2) Direct, All Category B projects; (3) Direct, exempt from apportionment; (4) Reimbursable, Category A; (5) Reimbursable, All Category B projects; and, (6) Reimbursable, exempt from apportionment.

Second, the SF 133s show obligations by Apportionment Category (A or B), and then by Category B project (for Category B, only) or program reporting category (Category A and Category B).

[Exhibit 130C](#) shows how the obligations are reported for one TAFS.

### **130.6 How do I report the relation of obligations to outlays?**

To use the entries in this section of the SF 133, see [Appendix F, relation of obligations to outlays](#). Lines 12 through 15 are required for all quarters.

### **130.7 What should I report during the expired phase?**

*Budget execution reporting procedures.* Obligated and unobligated balances must be reported on the SF 133 for each expired TAFS that has not been canceled.

September 30 SF 133 reports for annual TAFSs and the last year of multi-year TAFSs that expire at midnight on September 30 should report these TAFSs as unexpired.

#### *Expired unobligated balances.*

At the beginning of the first expired year, place the expired unobligated balance on line 2A, "Unobligated balance: Brought forward October 1." This amount should equal the sum of the lines in the unobligated balances available section of the final report of budget execution for the unexpired phase, i.e., the sum of lines 9A, 9B and 9C, "Unobligated balance available." These unobligated balances are now expired budgetary resources. They are available for obligation only for valid upward adjustments of obligations that were properly incurred against the TAFS during the unexpired phase.

Since the expired resources are no longer available for new obligations, place the amounts not used for valid adjustments on line 10D, "Unobligated balance not available, other." In each succeeding expired year, the amount on line 2A, "Unobligated balance brought forward October 1," should be the same as the amount on line 10D, "Unobligated balance not available, other," of the final report of budget execution for the prior year.

**130.8 How do I report adjustments to expired TAFSs?**

*Downward adjustments.* Place downward adjustments of unpaid obligations previously incurred on line 4A, "Recoveries of prior year obligations, actual." The amount should be included as a positive number because it increases the expired resources available only for future adjustments. Downward adjustments do not include previously paid obligations which require a refund. These refunds will be recorded on line 3A, "Spending authority from offsetting collections, earned," when received.

*Upward adjustments.* Place upward adjustments of obligations previously incurred on line 8, "Obligations incurred." Upward adjustments of obligations reduce unobligated balances. Subtract upward adjustments from the expired unobligated balances on line 10D, "Unobligated balance not available, other."

The amount should represent the upward adjustments made during the fiscal year for which the report is submitted. Upward adjustments made during previous fiscal years should not be included because the amounts on line 10D, "Unobligated balance not available, other," have already been adjusted downward.

Upward adjustments are limited in at least two ways:

- Upward adjustments are limited by the amount available for adjustments on line 10D, "Unobligated balance not available, other," of the expired TAFS.
- No new obligations may be shown in the expired TAFS columns. Only upward adjustments of obligations that were incurred in the year in which the amount was available for obligation are valid, i.e., recording obligations that were incurred previously but reported in a different amount or erroneously not reported.

*Obligation adjustments for contract changes.* Upward adjustments to obligations in expired TAFSs, caused by "contract changes" that exceed certain cumulative thresholds, are subject to additional reporting and approval requirements as shown in the following table. A "contract change" means an order relating to an existing contract under which a contractor is required to perform additional work. A contract change does not include adjustments related to an escalation clause.

For the Department of Defense, obligational increases for contract changes are cumulative at the program, project, and activity level. For civilian agencies, such increases are cumulative at the appropriation level.

<b>If the contract change will cause cumulative obligational increases to an appropriation to exceed...</b>	<b>Then the agency head...</b>
\$4 million during a fiscal year	(or a designated officer in his immediate office) must approve the contract change.
\$25 million during a fiscal year	must report the contract change in writing to the appropriate authorizing committees in Congress and to the House and Senate Committees on Appropriations <i>before</i> the obligation is made. Include a description of the legal basis and policy reasons for the proposed obligation. Do <i>not</i> make or record the obligation in your accounting records until 30 days after submitting the report.

**130.9 What must I do when I have extended disbursement authority?**

The length of the expired phase of TAFSs may only be changed by law. You must prepare budget execution reports in accordance with Appendix F. Also, you must report such authority to Treasury's Financial Management Service to prevent premature, automatic cancellation of the TAFS. For further guidance, you should consult the Treasury Financial Manual.

Normally, payment of canceled balances will not be eligible for funding from Treasury's general claims fund.

**130.10 How do I report expired TAFSs that are being closed?**

Expired obligated and unobligated balances must be reported as canceled on the final, September 30 SF 133 before you close the TAFS. Once an amount is reported as canceled, it should not be reported again. Note: Technically, TAFSs are "closed," while appropriations and balances are "canceled."

*Cancellations of unobligated balances.*

On the final, September 30 SF 133 before a TAFS will be closed, you must present all unobligated balances as canceled, i.e. as a negative (-) on line 6A, "Permanently not available, cancellations of expired and no-year TAFSs."

On all SF 133s, other than the final September 30 SF 133 before a TAFS will be closed, you should show recoveries of prior year obligations on line 4A, "Recoveries of prior year obligations, actual," as an expired resource. You should add any part of a recovery that is not used to adjust obligations to the expired unobligated balance shown on line 10D, "Unobligated balance not available, other."

*Cancellations of obligated balances.*

When a TAFS is required to be canceled, you must present any remaining obligated balance as canceled by doing the following:

- Include it as a cancellation (a positive number) on line 4A, "Recoveries of prior year obligations, actual."
- Include it as a writeoff (a negative number) on line 6A, "Permanently not available, cancellations of expired and no-year accounts."
- Reduce the obligated balance, line 14A, "Obligated balance, net, end of year period, accounts receivable," to zero.

**130.11 What disbursements can I make during the canceled phase?**

Legitimately incurred obligations that have not been disbursed (i.e. paid) at the time a TAFS is canceled cannot be disbursed from the canceled obligated or unobligated balances of the canceled TAFS.

After a TAFS is canceled, any obligations or adjustments to obligations that would have been properly chargeable to that TAFS may be disbursed from an unexpired TAFS that is available for obligation for the same purpose as the closed TAFS, provided that:

- The obligation or adjustment is not already chargeable to another unexpired TAFS.
- Payment of obligations against canceled TAFSs from unexpired TAFSs are limited to one percent of the appropriation in the unexpired TAFS. No more than one percent of an unexpired TAFS may be used to pay any combination of canceled obligations. This is a single, cumulative limit. It applies to one percent of the annual appropriation (not total budgetary resources) for annual TAFSs and to unexpired appropriations for multi-year TAFSs.

For example, assume there is a multi-year TAFS with an appropriation of \$10 million that covers fiscal year 1997 through 1999 that was enacted in fiscal year 1997. In fiscal year 1997, the one percent limitation is equal to \$100,000. At the end of fiscal year 1997, \$90,000 was used. In fiscal year 1998, the unused, unexpired portion (\$10,000) of the limitation is available for upward adjustment and disbursement of an obligation from a canceled predecessor TAFS. See [section 120.20](#).

- Antideficiency Act provisions continue to apply to canceled TAFSs. The authority to pay obligations against closed TAFSs from one percent of unexpired TAFSs cannot be used to exceed the original appropriation.
- When you cancel obligations under the provisions of Public Law 101–510 (31 U.S.C. 1551–1557), a tracking process should be maintained. You must maintain proper standard general ledger controls for obligations pertaining to canceled appropriations to prevent overpayment. The Treasury's Financial Management Service provides standard general ledger (SGL) accounting instructions. See <http://www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl> for further information.

### 130.12 How do I submit non-standard reports?

You must submit additional *monthly* budget execution reports when required by OMB. Submit these directly to your OMB representative. Use the SF 133 format and lines described in [Appendix F](#). Provide a separate column of information for each unexpired and expired TAFS. The columns should be formatted in the following order: unexpired, expired, and total. Report amounts in whole dollars. The submission of a monthly report does not relieve you of providing an electronic submission through FACTS II each quarter.

OMB's policy is to use existing agency internal reports to the greatest extent feasible to support required reports. When existing agency internal reports do not include the information necessary to provide complete information on the progress and status of programs, projects, or activities, supporting information may be required by OMB.

See [section 20](#) on definitions, concepts, and terminology for additional guidance related to preparation of the SF 133.

### 130.13 How do I report lower levels of detail?

You can submit lower levels of detail on the SF 133 in a variety of ways as follows:

Method	Description
Category B	If your SF 132 apports funds on line 8B "Category B" at a certain level, then you must provide the same level of detail on the SF 133.

Method	Description
Treasury Sub-account	You may need to report certain SF 133s by Treasury sub-account. OMB and you may decide that a Treasury sub-account be established to identify a certain level of detail not only on the SF 133 but also on other reports submitted to the Treasury.  The establishment of a Treasury sub-account for an account may affect Treasury reporting requirements (such as the SF 224 Statement of Transactions).
Footnotes	For information that is integral to understanding the content of the SF 133, but cannot be reported in one of the more standardized methods described above, you may footnote any amount reported on the SF 133. If your OMB representative requires a footnote, then it must be provided.

Consult with your OMB representative to determine the best method for your situation.

#### **130.14 How do I submit an SF 133 for allocation accounts?**

The parent agency must ensure that a separate SF 133 is submitted for each allocation transfer account through FACTS II. When allocation transfers are made from a parent account to allocation accounts, then an SF 133 will be submitted for each allocation account to report its activities. The parent agency will determine who will submit the information through FACTS II and how. Regardless of who submits the information through FACTS II, the activity of both the parent account and the allocation accounts will be reported on the parent agency's Statement of Budgetary Resources.

The parent agency may choose to: (a) gather information from all of the agencies that have allocation accounts and enter the information into FACTS II, or (b) require each agency with an allocation account to enter information into FACTS II and provide a copy to the parent agency.

Agencies reporting these allocation accounts will furnish information to the other agency or agencies involved in the allocation in a timely manner. Receiving agencies will submit the information required to the parent agency no later than 15 calendar days following the end of the reporting period.

#### **130.15 How do I submit an SF 133 for credit TAFSS?**

You should submit SF 133s for credit TAFSS at the TAFS level during quarters one through three, but at the cohort level in the fourth quarter. To determine the SF 133 aggregation of credit TAFS reporting that is required for your agency, consult your OMB representative. For additional instructions for preparing the SF 133 for credit programs, see [section 185](#).

#### **130.16 How do I ensure that my actuals are consistent?**

Amounts reported on the fourth quarter SF 133 must be consistent with information reported to Treasury as part of year-end closing procedures and must be based on actual accounting information pursuant to [31 U.S.C. 3512](#). Actuals submitted to OMB for inclusion in the President's annual budget, which is submitted to the Congress, should agree with those submitted to Treasury and those submitted on the fourth quarter SF 133. If one group within your agency (for example, accounting) reports amounts to Treasury while another group (for example, the budget office) prepares budget schedules, then you must take action to ensure that the amounts reported are conceptually and numerically consistent. It may be advisable to allow the budget office to review your SF 133 information before it is submitted.

(a) *What reports of actuals should generally be the same?*

- September 30 SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources.
- Statement of Budgetary Resources (SBR) (if required).
- Budget Program and Financing Schedule (actuals column).
- Treasury Combined Statement.
- FMS 2108 Year-end Closing Statement (used to generate Treasury Combined Statement).
- SF 224 Statement of Transactions (used to generate Treasury Combined Statement).
- Your agency's accounting system.

(b) *What guidance is available to help me ensure that my actuals are reported consistently?*

- [Exhibit 130K](#) Crosswalk from SF 133 to the Budget Program and Financing schedule.
- [Exhibit 130M](#) Relationship between Selected SF 133 and Budget Program and Financing Schedule lines.
- [section 82.15](#)
- Treasury Financial Manual U.S. Government Standard General Ledger Supplement, which contains crosswalks from the U.S. Standard General Ledger to the SF 133/SBR, FMS 2108, and Program and Financing Schedule. It is available at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl>.

(c) *What differences should I expect between the September 30 SF 133 and the Budget Appendix?*

- The SF 133 is displayed at the TAFS level, while the *Appendix* presents consolidated information covering all TAFSs (annual, multiple-year, and no-year) with the same account title. Also, an account in the *Appendix* may contain multiple TAFSs with different titles.
- OMB Circular No. A–11 requires that allocation transfer accounts be consolidated and reported by the parent account for budget formulation purposes. OMB Circular No. A–11 requires that allocation accounts be reported separately for budget execution purposes (see [section 130.14](#)). The sum of the information on all the SF 133s with the same account title should be the same as the information required for the *Appendix*.
- As the crosswalk from SF 133 to the Budget Program and Financing schedule ([Exhibit 130K](#)) shows, not all of the expired budgetary resources shown on the SF 133 are shown in the Budget Program and Financing schedule.
- The SF 133 is reported in dollars, while the Budget Program and Financing schedule is in millions of dollars.

(d) *What differences should I expect among the September 30 SF 133, the Budget Appendix, and Treasury Combined Statement?*

- For trust or special funds where budget authority is limited by law, unobligated balances at the end of the fiscal year reported in the Treasury Combined Statement (column 6) may not agree with the unobligated balances reported on the SF 133 (lines 9/10) and the actual column of the Budget Program and Financing Schedule. The difference in the two amounts will represent the total end of year balance on the *Appendix's* schedule on unavailable collections (Schedule N).

(e) *What differences should I expect between the September 30 SF 133 and the Statement of Budgetary Resources?*

- The SF 133 is displayed at the TAFS level, while the Statement of Budgetary Resources is displayed at the agency level. The Statement of Budgetary Resources is displayed as a principal statement for the agency as a whole, and must be displayed as required supplementary information for major TAFSs.
- The SF 133 displays lines with zero dollars associated with them, while the Statement of Budgetary Resources does not display lines with zero dollars associated with them.
- The Statement of Budgetary Resources includes a separate column for credit financing TAFSs because they are non-budgetary.
- The Statement of Budgetary Resources includes separate lines for offsetting receipts and net outlays in order to derive the net outlays for the agency.

**SF 133, REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION  
AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

**Exhibit 130A**

**Annual Account--September 30 Report**

To save space, several exhibits in this section do not display lines that do not contain amounts. Exhibit 130H contains all lines.

**SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

Period ended 9/30/CY

AGENCY: Department of Government BUREAU: Office of the Secretary	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL						
	80Y0137 Salaries and expenses						
	FY 2000 Unexpired Account	FY 1999 Expired Account	FY 1998 Expired Account	FY 1997 Expired Account	FY 1996 Expired Account	FY 1995 Expired Account	Total
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>							
1. Budget authority							
A. Appropriation.....	7,400,000						7,400,000
2. Unobligated balance							
A. Brought forward, October 1.....		110,000	205,000	75,000	87,000	10,000	487,000
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):							
A. Earned:							
1. Collected.....	403,000						403,000
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):							
1. Advance received.....							
4. Recoveries of prior year obligations:							
A. Actual.....						3,500	3,500
5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Pubic Law 106-300 (-):	-1,000						
6. Permanently not available:							
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....						-11,000	-11,000
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>7,802,000</b>	<b>110,000</b>	<b>205,000</b>	<b>75,000</b>	<b>87,000</b>	<b>2,500</b>	<b>8,281,500</b>
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>							
8. Obligations incurred:							
A. Direct:							
1. Category A.....	7,601,315	50,000	85,000	45,000	27,000	2,500	7,810,815
2. Total, Category B.....							
3. Exempt from apportionment.....							
9. Unobligated balance:							
A. Apportioned:							
1. Balance, currently available.....	200,685						200,685
10. Unobligated balance not available:							
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....							
B. Deferred.....							
C. Withheld pending recession.....							
D. Other.....		60,000	120,000	30,000	60,000		270,000
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>7,802,000</b>	<b>110,000</b>	<b>205,000</b>	<b>75,000</b>	<b>87,000</b>	<b>2,500</b>	<b>8,281,500</b>
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>							
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....		100,000	365,000	40,000	7,000	5,000	517,000
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:							
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	43,720						43,720
D. Accounts payable (+).....	80,745	50,000	280,000	20,000	2,000		432,745
15. Outlays:							
A. Disbursements (+).....	7,476,850	100,000	170,000	65,000	32,000	4,000	7,847,850
B. Collections (-).....	-403,000						-403,000

The final September 30 SF 133 before an account will be closed will include these lines to indicate the amount to be canceled.

Amounts for lines 10A-D should be consistent with amounts on the latest SF 132.

NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 106-300.  
NOTE: Line 9A, Withdrawn pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1552.

(Authorized Officer) (Date)

Identify in a footnote, the law(s) providing budget authority.

(Preparer: Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
(Address) \_\_\_\_\_  
(Phone number) \_\_\_\_\_

Note: Exhibit 121A illustrates the apportionment of this account.



**SF 133, REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION  
AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

**Exhibit 130B**

**Annual Account with Reimbursements--September 30 Report**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES			
		Period ended 9/30/CY	
AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Government Bureau		80Y0123 Salaries and expenses	
	Year 1 Unexpired Account	Year 2 Expired Account	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget authority			
A. Appropriation.....	10,000,000		Identify in a footnote, the law(s) providing budget authority.
2. Unobligated balance			
A. Brought forward, October 1.....		200,000	Collections of receivables from the prior year from Federal sources are entered as a positive amount on line 3A1 and as a negative adjustment on line 3A2.
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)			
A. Earned:			Normally, amounts should reflect <i>obligated amounts only</i> on the September 30 report except for amounts in expired accounts that are offset by a reimbursable receivable or collection of an outstanding reimbursable receivable from the prior year.
1. Collected.....	980,000	130,000	
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....	100,000	-100,000	
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):			
1. Advance received.....	20,000		
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....	30,000	-30,000	Available only for upward adjustment of valid obligations incurred during the unexpired period.
7. Total budgetary resources.....	11,130,000	200,000	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
8. Obligations incurred:			To save space, several exhibits in this section do not display lines that do not contain amounts. Exhibit 130H contains all lines.
A. Direct:			
1. Category A.....	9,800,000	50,000	
2. Total, Category B.....			
3. Exempt from apportionment.....			
B. Reimbursable:			
1. Category A.....	1,130,000		
2. Total, Category B.....			
a. Research.....			
b. Development of products.....			
3. Exempt from apportionment.....			
9. Unobligated balance:			
A. Apportioned:			
1. Balance, currently available.....	200,000		
10. Unobligated balance:			
D. Other.....		150,000	
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	11,130,000	200,000	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>			
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....		220,000	
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:			
A. Accounts Receivable (-).....	-100,000		
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (-).....	-30,000		
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	100,000	95,000	
D. Accounts payable (+).....	250,000	150,000	
15. Outlays:			
A. Disbursements (+).....	10,580,000	55,000	
B. Collections (-).....	-1,000,000	-130,000	
NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 106-300.			
(Authorized Officer) _____		(Date) _____	
		(Preparer: Name) _____	
		(Address) _____	
		(Phone number) _____	

No-Year Account--Quarterly Report

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES		Period ended 6/30/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X1309 Research and development	
	X Unexpired Account	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget authority		
A. Appropriation.....	25,000,000	Identify in a footnote, the law(s) providing budget authority.
2. Unobligated balance		
A. Brought forward, October 1.....	1,610,000	
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)		
A. Earned:		
1. Collected.....	197,000	
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):		
1. Advance received.....	12,000	For unexpired accounts, these entries reflect estimated and anticipated downward adjustments of obligations reported in prior years.
C. Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....	191,000	
4. Recoveries of prior year obligations:		
A. Actual.....	76,000	
B. Anticipated.....	74,000	
6. Permanently not available:		
B. Enacted reductions (-).....	-200,000	
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,960,000</b>	Line 7 should equal line 11.
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		
A. Direct:		
1. Category A.....	354,000	
2. Total, Category B.....	13,487,400	This entry is the difference between apportionments through the end of the current quarter and the obligations incurred under those apportionments through the end of the reporting period.
3. Exempt from apportionment.....		
B. Reimbursable:		
1. Category A.....	5,000	
2. Total, Category B.....	195,000	
3. Exempt from apportionment.....		
9. Unobligated balance:		
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	8,918,600	
10. Unobligated balance not available:		
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....	4,000,000	Amounts for lines 10A through 10D should be consistent with amounts on the latest SF 132.
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>26,960,000</b>	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....	407,500	This amount must agree with the amount reported on line 14 of the final SF 133 for the preceding year.
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:		
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	183,400	
D. Accounts payable (+).....	199,000	
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....	19,605,100	
B. Collections (-).....	-209,000	
NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 105-123.		


\_\_\_\_\_  
(Authorized Officer)

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Date)

Note: Exhibit 121C illustrates the apportionment of this account.

(Preparer: Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Address) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Phone number) \_\_\_\_\_

**No-Year Account--Quarterly Report**

<b>SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		Period ended 6/30/CY																																												
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL																																													
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80X1309 Research and development																																													
<p>Category A detailed information</p> <p>Breakout of Category A - Direct Obligations by program report category</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 10%;">X:</td> <td style="width: 10%;">1</td> <td style="width: 80%;">Salaries</td> <td style="width: 10%; text-align: right;">294,320</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>2</td> <td>All Other</td> <td style="text-align: right;">59,680</td> </tr> </table> <p>Breakout of Category A - Reimbursable Obligations by program report category</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>1</td> <td>Salaries</td> <td style="text-align: right;">5,000</td> </tr> </table> <p>Category B detailed information</p> <p>Breakout of Category B - Direct Obligations by project and/or program report category</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>3</td> <td>Research -- Air</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2,734,500</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>4</td> <td>Research -- Water</td> <td style="text-align: right;">2,980,150</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>5</td> <td>Research -- All Other</td> <td style="text-align: right;">788,750</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>6</td> <td>Development of products -- Air</td> <td style="text-align: right;">3,890,250</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>7</td> <td>Development of products - - Water</td> <td style="text-align: right;">3,093,750</td> </tr> </table> <p>Breakout of Category B - Reimbursable Obligations by project and/or program report category</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>6</td> <td>Development of products -- Air</td> <td style="text-align: right;">98,000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>7</td> <td>Development of products - - Water</td> <td style="text-align: right;">95,750</td> </tr> <tr> <td>X:</td> <td>8</td> <td>Development of products -- All other</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1,250</td> </tr> </table>			X:	1	Salaries	294,320	X:	2	All Other	59,680	X:	1	Salaries	5,000	X:	3	Research -- Air	2,734,500	X:	4	Research -- Water	2,980,150	X:	5	Research -- All Other	788,750	X:	6	Development of products -- Air	3,890,250	X:	7	Development of products - - Water	3,093,750	X:	6	Development of products -- Air	98,000	X:	7	Development of products - - Water	95,750	X:	8	Development of products -- All other	1,250
X:	1	Salaries	294,320																																											
X:	2	All Other	59,680																																											
X:	1	Salaries	5,000																																											
X:	3	Research -- Air	2,734,500																																											
X:	4	Research -- Water	2,980,150																																											
X:	5	Research -- All Other	788,750																																											
X:	6	Development of products -- Air	3,890,250																																											
X:	7	Development of products - - Water	3,093,750																																											
X:	6	Development of products -- Air	98,000																																											
X:	7	Development of products - - Water	95,750																																											
X:	8	Development of products -- All other	1,250																																											
 <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;"> <p>Note that the program reporting categories used in Exhibit 1210 are re-printed on this portion of the SF 133.</p> </div>																																														

Multi-Year Account Apportioned for Two Fiscal Years

<b>SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		Period ended 6/30/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	89-1/2-0100 Salaries and Expenses	
	89-1/2-0100 Unexpired Account	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget authority		
A. Appropriation.....	100,000	
B. Borrowing authority.....		
C. Contract authority.....		
D. Net transfers (+ or -).....		
E. Other.....		
2. Unobligated balance		
A. Brought forward, October 1.....		
B. Net transfers, balances, actual (+ or -).....		
C. Anticipated transfers, balances (+ or -).....		
5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law ____ (-)...		
6. Permanently not available:		
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....		
7. Total budgetary resources.....	100,000	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		
A. Direct:		
1. Category A.....	48,000	
2. Total, Category B.....		
3. Exempt from apportionment.....		
9. Unobligated balance:		
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	2,000	
B. Exempt from apportionment.....		
C. Other available.....		
10. Unobligated balance not available:		
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....	50,000	
B. Deferred.....		
C. Withheld pending rescission.....		
D. Other.....		
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	100,000	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....		
13. Obligated balance transferred, net (+ or -).....		
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:		
A. Accounts receivable (-).....		
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (-).....		
C. Undelivered orders (+).....		
D. Accounts payable (+).....	28,000	
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....	20,000	
B. Collections (-).....		
NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 106-456.		
(Authorized Officer) _____	(Date) _____	(Preparer: Name) _____
		(Address) _____
		(Phone number) _____

Note: Exhibit 121J illustrates the apportionment of this account.

To save space, several exhibits in this section do not display lines that do not contain amounts. Exhibit 130H contains all lines.

**Public Enterprise (Revolving) or Intragovernmental (Revolving)  
Fund--Quarterly Report**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES		Period ended 3/31/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Government Enterprise Corp.	80X4321 Government Enterprise Corp. fund.	
	X Unexpired Account	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget authority:		
A. Appropriation.....	4,100,000	Identify in a footnote, the law(s) providing budget authority.
2. Unobligated balance:		
A. Brought forward, October 1.....	83,583,738	
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):		
A. Earned:		
1. Collected.....	33,250,500	
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....	700,000	
C. Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....	36,855,800	
6. Permanently not available:		
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt (-).....	-20,756,800	
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>137,733,238</b>	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		
B. Reimbursable:		
1. Category A.....	1,200,000	All revolving fund obligations, financed from any resource, are reimbursable. See section 83.5.
2. Total, Category B.....	27,000,000	
3. Exempt from apportionment.....		
9. Unobligated balance:		
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	29,016,600	
B. Exempt from apportionment.....		
10. Unobligated balance not available:		
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....	1,234,600	For revolving funds, this amount will agree with the amount reported on lines 9, 10, and 11 of the latest approved SF 132 plus upward adjustments in income until a reapportionment request is approved.
D. Other.....	79,282,038	
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>137,733,238</b>	
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....	5,621,800	
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:		
A. Accounts receivable (-).....	-700,000	
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	2,030,000	
D. Accounts payable (+).....	4,407,204	
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....	27,384,596	
B. Collections (-).....	-33,250,500	
NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 105-123.		
Line 8B2 Apportionment Category B detail:		
001 Management services.....	12,000,000	Lines 8A2 and 8B2 must be consistent with the Apportionment Category B detail amounts included in the footnote.
002 Sales program.....	5,000,000	
003 Power program.....	10,000,000	
_____ (Authorized Officer)	_____ (Date)	
Note: Exhibit 121G illustrates the apportionment of this account.		(Preparer: Name) _____ (Address) _____ (Phone number) _____

**SF 133, REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION  
AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

**Exhibit 130F**

**Annual Account--Advance Appropriation**

<b>SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>	
Period ended 6/30/01	
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80-1-1309 Research and development
	FY 2001 Unexpired Account
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>	
1. Budget Authority	
A. Appropriation.....	7,400,000
B. Borrowing authority.....	
C. Contract authority.....	
D. Net transfers (+ or -).....	
E. Other .....	
5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law ___ (-)....	
6. Permanently not available:	
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....	
B. Enacted reductions (-).....	
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....	
D. Other authority withdrawn (-).....	
E. Pursuant to Public Law (-).....	
F. Anticipated rest of year (+ or -).....	
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>7,400,000</b>
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>	
8. Obligations incurred:	
A. Direct:	
1. Category A.....	7,000,000
2. Total, Category B.....	
3. Exempt from apportionment.....	
9. Unobligated balance:	
A. Apportioned:	
1. Balance, currently available.....	400,000
2. Anticipated (+ or -).....	
B. Exempt from apportionment.....	
C. Other available.....	
10. Unobligated balance not available:	
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....	
B. Deferred.....	
C. Withheld pending rescission.....	
D. Other.....	
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>7,400,000</b>
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>	
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....	
13. Obligated balance transferred, net (+ or -).....	
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:	
A. Accounts receivable (-).....	
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (-).....	
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	1,500,000
D. Accounts payable (+).....	500,000
15. Outlays:	
A. Disbursements (+).....	5,000,000
B. Collections (-).....	
NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 106-123.	
_____ (Authorized Officer)	_____ (Date)
	(Preparer: Name) _____ (Address) _____ (Phone number) _____

Report advance appropriations in the period in which the funds become available for obligation and not before. For example, an advance appropriation of 7,400,000 in fiscal year 2000 appropriations act that will become available for obligations in fiscal year 2001 should be included on line 1A in the fiscal year 2001 SF 133.

To save space, several exhibits in this section do not display lines that do not contain amounts. Exhibit 130H contains all lines.

**SF 133, REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

**Exhibit 130G**

**Annual Account--Reappropriation**

When a law extends the period of availability of an amount, that in the absence of the law would have expired, the amount is reappropriated.

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES		Period ended 9/30/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80-9-1309 Research and development	
	99 Unexpired	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget authority		
A. Appropriation.....	200	
2. Unobligated balance		
A. Brought forward, October 1.....		
6. Permanently not available:		
B. Enacted reductions (-).....		
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>200</b>	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		
A. Direct:		
1. Category A.....		
9. Unobligated balance:		
A. Apportioned:		
1. Balance, currently available.....	200	
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>200</b>	

NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 106-123.

(Authorized Officer) \_\_\_\_\_ (Date) \_\_\_\_\_ (Preparer: Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Address) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Phone number) \_\_\_\_\_

The amount that had been part of an unobligated balance (line 9) in a previous period . . .

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES			Period ended 12/31/CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Bureau of Central Services	80Y1309 Research and development		
	00 Unexpired	99 Expired	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget authority			
A. Appropriation.....	100		
2. Unobligated balance			
A. Brought forward, October 1.....		100	
6. Permanently not available:			
B. Enacted reductions (-).....		-100	
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>-</b>	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
8. Obligations incurred:			
A. Direct:			
1. Category A.....	100		
9. Unobligated balance:			
A. Apportioned:			
1. Balance, currently available.....			
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>100</b>	<b>-</b>	

NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 105-123.

(Authorized Officer) \_\_\_\_\_ (Date) \_\_\_\_\_ (Preparer: Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Address) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Phone number) \_\_\_\_\_

. . . should be reported as a new appropriation (line 1A) in the period in which it becomes available.

Report the reduction on line 6B.

Chart of SF 133 General Requirements

This line...	is generally used only with...						
	An Unexpired Account	An Expired Account	No entry in 4th Qtr.	A Negative Amount	A Positive Amount	OMB Approval	A Footnote
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>							
1. Budget authority:							
A. Appropriation.....							
B. Borrowing authority.....							
C. Contract authority.....							
D. Net transfers (+ or -).....							
E. Other .....							
2. Unobligated balance:							
A. Brought forward, October 1.....							
B. Net transfers, balances, actual (+ or -).....							
C. Anticipated transfers, balances (+ or -).....							
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):							
A. Earned:							
1. Collected.....							
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....							
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):							
1. Advance received.....							
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....							
C. Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....							
D. Transfers from trust funds:							
1. Collected.....							
2. Anticipated.....							
4. Recoveries of prior year obligations:							
A. Actual.....							
B. Anticipated.....							
5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law ___ (-).....							
6. Permanently not available:							
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....							
B. Enacted reductions (-).....							
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....							
D. Other authority withdrawn (-).....							
E. Pursuant to Public Law ___ (-).....							
F. Anticipated rest of year (-).....							
7. Total budgetary resources.....							
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>							
8. Obligations incurred:							
A. Direct:							
1. Category A.....							
2. Total, Category B.....							
3. Exempt from apportionment.....							
B. Reimbursable:							
1. Category A.....							
2. Total, Category B.....							
3. Exempt from apportionment.....							
9. Unobligated balance:							
A. Apportioned:							
1. Balance, currently available.....							
2. Anticipated (+ or -).....							
B. Exempt from apportionment.....							
C. Other available.....							
10. Unobligated balance not available:							
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....							
B. Deferred.....							
C. Withheld pending rescission.....							
D. Other.....							
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....							
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>							
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....							
13. Obligated balance transferred, net (+ or -).....							
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:							
A. Accounts receivable (-).....							
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (-).....							
C. Undelivered orders (+).....							
D. Accounts payable (+).....							
15. Outlays:							
A. Disbursements (+).....							
B. Collections (-).....							



**SF 133 Outlay Formula**

The following is the outlay formula to be used to check the internal consistency of the SF 133.

$$\text{Outlays} = \text{Lines 8} - (3A+3B+3D+4A) + 12 \pm 13 - (-14A-14B+14C+14D)$$

Step 1: Take the total amount on line 8--Obligations Incurred..... 19,656,000

Step 2: Subtract the sum of the following lines:

Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)

Line 3A1--Collected.....	197,000	
Line 3A2--Receivable from Federal sources.....	0	
Line 3B1--Advance Received.....	12,000	
Line 3B2--Without advance from Federal sources.....	0	
Line 3D1--Collected.....	0	
Line 3D2--Anticipated.....	0	

Recoveries of prior year obligations

Line 4A--Actual.....	76,000	
Sum.....	285,000	-285,000

Step 3: Add the amount on line 12--Obligated balance, net as of October 1..... 407,500 407,500

Step 4: Add (if positive) or subtract (if negative)

the amount on line 13--Obligated balance, transferred, net (+ or -)..... 0 0

Step 5: Subtract the sum of the following lines:

Obligated balance, net, end of period

Line 14A--Accounts receivable(-).....	0	
Line 14B--Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources(-).....	0	
Line 14C--Undelivered Orders (+).....	183,400	
Line 14D--Accounts payable (+).....	199,000	
Sum.....	382,400	-382,400

Outlays:

Line 15A--Disbursements (+).....	19,605,100	
Line 15B--Collections (-).....	-209,000	
	19,396,100	

Result: This should be the sum of lines 15A + 15B..... 19,396,100

Note: These amounts come from Exhibit 130C

### Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Treasury Combined Statement

SF 133 Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources	Treasury Combined Statement
Line 2A - Unobligated balance: Brought forward, October 1	Column 1 <sup>a/</sup> : Balances beginning of fiscal year, unobligated balance (unexpired) and unobligated balance (expired)
Line 12 - Obligated balance, net as of October 1	Column 1: Balances beginning of fiscal year, obligated balance: The sum of accounts payable and undelivered orders minus the sum of accounts receivable and unfilled customer orders
Line 1- Budget authority	Column 2: Appropriations and other obligational authority: Total
Line 1D - Budget authority: Net transfers (+ or -)	Net effect shown, with a footnote in column 2 for transfers between annual accounts in the same fund group. All other transfers shown in Column 3
Line 6B - Enacted rescissions (-)	Column 2: Appropriations and other obligational authority: Total Column 5: Balances withdrawn and other transactions: The sum of the entries for undisbursed funds, unfunded contract authority, authority to borrow from Treasury, and authority to borrow from the public (plus increases in unobligated balances footnoted in columns 1 and 6 as unavailable for obligation)
Not applicable	Column 3: Transfers, borrowings, and investments (net)
Line 2B - Unobligated balance: Net transfers, actual (+ or -)	Not applicable
Line 13 - Obligated balance transferred, net (+ or -)	Not applicable
Line 15 - Outlays includes line 15A - Disbursements and line 15B - Collections.	Column 4: Outlays (net): Total
Line 3 - Spending auth. from offsetting collections (gross)	Not applicable
Line 4 - Recoveries of prior year obligations	Not applicable
Line 5 - Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law	Not applicable
Not applicable	Column 5: Balances withdrawn and other transactions: The sum of the entries for undisbursed funds, unfunded contract authority, authority to borrow from Treasury, and authority to borrow from the public (plus increases in unobligated balances footnoted in columns 1 and 6 as unavailable for obligation)
Line 9 - Unobligated balance Line 10 - Unobligated balance not available	Column 6: Balances end of fiscal year, unobligated balance
Line 14 - Obligated balance, net, end of period	Column 6: Balances end of fiscal year, obligated balance: The sum of accounts payable and undelivered orders minus the sum of accounts receivable and unfilled customer orders

<sup>a/</sup> Column 1 of the Treasury Combined Statement (previously known as the Treasury Annual Report) means the first column after the Account Symbol columns.

### Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Program and Financing Schedule

This crosswalk only applies to the September 30 SF 133 and the "actual" column of the President's Budget and does not include memorandum lines. You can find the definitions of Program and Financing Schedule lines in section 82. See section 130.15 for additional guidance on ensuring consistent actuals.

SF 133	Unexpired Accounts	Expired Accounts	PROGRAM AND FINANCING SCHEDULE
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget Authority			
A. Appropriation.....			<i>Discretionary authority:</i> 4000 Appropriation 4020 Appropriation (special fund) 4026 Appropriation (trust fund) 4028 Appropriation available from subsequent year 4029 Appropriation available in prior year (-) 5000 Reappropriation 5500 Advance appropriation 5520 Advance appropriation (special fund) 5526 Advance appropriation (trust fund) 6826 Spend. Auth. From offsetting collections (unavail. balances) <i>Mandatory authority:</i> 6000 Appropriation 6020 Appropriation (special fund) 6026 Appropriation (trust fund) 6028 Appropriation (unavailable balances) 6300 Reappropriation 6500 Advance appropriation 6526 Advance appropriation (trust fund) 6926 Spend. Auth. From offsetting collections (unavail. balances)
B. Borrowing authority.....			<i>Discretionary authority:</i> 4700 Authority to borrow <i>Mandatory authority:</i> 6710 Authority to borrow 6716 Authority to borrow (12 U.S.C. 2281-96) These P&F lines also include the amount withdrawn (SF 133 line 6D) from the indefinite borrowing authority (SF 133 line 1B) that is not needed to incur obligations.
C. Contract authority.....			<i>Discretionary authority:</i> 4900 Contract authority <i>Mandatory authority:</i> 6610 Contract authority These P&F lines also include the amount withdrawn (SF 133 line 6D) from the indefinite contract authority (SF 133 line 1C) that is not needed to incur obligations.
D. Net transfers (+ or -) .....			<i>Discretionary authority:</i> 4100 Transferred to other accounts (appropriations) (-) 4200 Transferred from other accounts (appropriations) (+) 6861 Transferred to other accounts (spending auth. from offset. coll.) (-) 6862 Transferred from other accounts (spending auth. from offset. coll.)(+) <i>Mandatory authority:</i> 6100 Transferred to other accounts (appropriations) (-) 6200 Transferred from other accounts (appropriations) (+) 6661 Transferred to other accounts (contract authority) (-) 6662 Transferred from other accounts (contract authority) (+) 6961 Transferred to other accounts (spending auth. from offset. coll.) (-) 6962 Transferred from other accounts (spending auth. from offset. coll.)(+)
E. Other .....	Null Set		
7. Total budgetary resources.....			2390 Total budgetary resources available for obligation

Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Program and Financing Schedule--Continued

SF 133	Unexpired Accounts	Expired Accounts	PROGRAM AND FINANCING SCHEDULE
2. Unobligated balance			
A. Brought forward, October 1 (+ or -).....			2140 Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year
			SF 133 line 2A is a positive unless you have a deficiency that has not been liquidated in a prior year. When SF 133 line 2A is negative and a resource is realized to liquidate a deficiency, then the P&F will show the appropriation to liquidate the deficiency on the following lines: <i>Discretionary authority: Appropriations</i> 4048 Portion applied to liquidate deficiencies (-) <i>Mandatory authority: Appropriations</i> 6048 Portion applied to liquidate deficiencies (-) <i>Discretionary authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i> 6833 Portion applied to liquidate deficiencies (-) <i>Mandatory authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i> 6933 Portion applied to liquidate deficiencies (-)
B. Net transfers, balances, actual (+ or -).....			2221 Unobligated balance transferred to other accounts (-)
C. Anticipated transfers, balances (+ or -).....	Null Set		2222 Unobligated balance transferred from other accounts (+) 2230 Expired unobligated balance transfer to unexpired accounts (+)
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)			<i>Discretionary authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i>
A. Earned:			6800 Offsetting collections (cash)
1. Collected.....			<i>Mandatory authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i>
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....			6900 Offsetting collections (cash)
B. Change in unfiled customer orders (+ or -):			
1. Advance received.....			7410 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (expired)
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....			These SF 133 and P&F lines will be equal with opposite signs.
C. Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....	Null Set		<i>Discretionary authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i>
D. Transfers from trust funds:			
1. Collected.....			6810 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired)
2. Anticipated.....	Null Set		<i>Mandatory authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i> 6910 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired)
			7400 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) Equals the amounts on lines 6810 and 6910, but with the opposite sign.
			8895 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) Equals the amounts on lines 6810 and 6910.
4. Recoveries of prior year obligations:			
A. Actual.....			2210 Resources available from recoveries of prior year obligations
B. Anticipated.....	Null Set		7345 Recoveries of prior year obligations (-) Equals the amount on line 2210, but with the opposite sign.
			7340 Adjustments in expired accounts (net) (-) These are recoveries of prior year obligations. Also see SF 133 line 8. These SF 133 and P&F lines will be equal with opposite signs.
5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law (-).....			2398 Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (-) <i>Discretionary authority:</i> 4037 Appropriation temporarily reduced (-) 4038 Unobligated balance temporarily reduced (appropriations) (-) 4945 Portion precluded from obligation (limitation on obligations)(contract authority)(-) 5537 Advance appropriation temporarily reduced (-) 6837 Portion temporarily reduced (spend. auth. from offset. coll.)(-) <i>Mandatory authority:</i> 6037 Appropriation temporarily reduced (-) 6038 Unobligated balance temporarily reduced (appropriations) (-) 6045 Portion precluded from obligation (appropriations) (-) 6537 Advance appropriation temporarily reduced (-) 6845 Portion precluded from obligation (limitation on obligations) (spend. auth. from offset. coll.)(-) 6937 Portion temporarily reduced (spend. auth. from offset. coll.)(-) 6945 Portion precluded from obligation (limitation on obligations)(spend. auth. from offset. coll) (-)

Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Program and Financing Schedule--Continued

SF 133	Unexpired Accounts	Expired Accounts	PROGRAM AND FINANCING SCHEDULE
6. Permanently not available:			
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....			2398 Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (-)
B. Enacted reductions (-).....			These apply only to accounts in the national defense function 050: 2380 Reduction pursuant to PL 99-177 in unoblig balances (disc.) (-) 2385 Reduction pursuant to PL 99-177 in unoblig balances (mand.) (-) <i>Discretionary authority:</i> 4035 Appropriation permanently reduced (-) 4036 Unobligated balance permanently reduced (appropriations) (-) 4735 Authority to borrow permanently reduced (-) 4935 Contract authority permanently reduced (-) 4936 Unobligated balance permanently reduced (contract authority) (-) 5035 Reappropriation permanently reduced (-) 5535 Advance appropriation permanently reduced (-) <i>Mandatory authority:</i> 6035 Appropriation permanently reduced (-) 6036 Unobligated balance permanently reduced (appropriations) (-) 6335 Reappropriation permanently reduced (-) 6535 Advance appropriation permanently reduced (-) 6635 Contract authority permanently reduced (-) 6735 Authority to borrow permanently reduced (-)
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt (-).....			2240 Capital transfer to general fund (unobligated balances) (-) 2260 Portion applied to repay debt (unobligated balances) (-) 4047 Portion applied to repay debt (appropriations) (-) 6047 Portion applied to repay debt (appropriations) (-) 6827 Capital transfer to general fund (spending authority from offsetting collection: 6847 Portion applied to repay debt (spending authority from offsetting collections) 6927 Capital transfer to general fund (spending authority from offsetting collection: 6947 Portion applied to repay debt (spending authority from offsetting collections)
D. Other authority withdrawn (-).....			2270 Balance of authority to borrow withdrawn (-) 2275 Balance of contract authority withdrawn (-) <i>Discretionary authority: Appropriations</i> 4050 Portion of approps. to liquidate contract authority withdrawn (-) 4053 Portion substituted for borrowing authority (-) <i>Mandatory authority: Appropriations</i> 6053 Portion substituted for borrowing authority (-) <i>Discretionary authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i> 6849 Portion applied to liquidate contract authority (-) 6853 Portion substituted for borrowing authority (-) <i>Mandatory authority: Spending authority from offsetting collections</i> 6949 Portion applied to liquidate contract authority (-) 6953 Portion substituted for borrowing authority (-) These P&F lines exclude the amounts withdrawn (SF 133 line 6D) from the indefinite borrowing authority (SF 133 line 1B) and contract authority (SF 133 line 1C) that are not needed to incur obligations.
E. Pursuant to Public Law ____ (-).....			<i>Discretionary authority: Appropriations</i> 4049 Portion applied to liquidate contract authority (-) 6049 Portion applied to liquidate contract authority (-)
F. Anticipated rest of year (-).....	Null Set		

**Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the Program and Financing Schedule--Continued**

SF 133	Unexpired Accounts	Expired Accounts	PROGRAM AND FINANCING SCHEDULE
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
8. Obligations incurred:			
A. Direct:			1000 Total new obligations
1. Category A.....			2395 Total new obligations (-). Equals the amount on line 1000, but with the opposite sign.
2. Total, Category B.....			7310 Total new obligations. Equals the amount on line 1000.
3. Exempt from apportionment.....			7340 Adjustments in expired accounts (net) (+) These are upward adjustments of obligations. Also see SF 133 line 4.
B. Reimbursable:			
1. Category A.....			
2. Total, Category B.....			
3. Exempt from apportionment.....			
9. Unobligated balance:			2397 Deficiency (-) (SF 133 and P&F will be equal with opposite signs)
A. Apportioned:			2398 Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (-) (SF 133/P&F equal with opposite signs)
1. Balance, currently available.....			2440 Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year
2. Anticipated (+ or -).....	Null Set		
B. Exempt from apportionment.....			
C. Other available.....			
10. Unobligated balance not available:			
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....			
B. Deferred.....			
C. Withheld pending rescission.....			
D. Other.....			
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....			2390 Total budgetary resources available for obligation
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>			
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....			7240 Obligated balance, start of year
13. Obligated balance transferred, net (+ or -).....			7331 Obligated balance transferred to other accounts (-) 7332 Obligated balance transferred from other accounts (+)
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:			7440 Obligated balance, end of year
A. Accounts receivable (-).....			
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (-).....			
C. Undelivered orders (+).....			
D. Accounts payable (+).....			
15. Outlays:			8690 Outlays from new discretionary authority
A. Disbursements (+).....			8693 Outlays from discretionary balances
			8697 Outlays from new mandatory authority
			8698 Outlays from mandatory balances
			Also equals the amount on line 7320 Total outlays (gross)
B. Collections (-).....			<i>Offsetting collections (cash) from:</i>
			8800 Federal sources
			8820 Interest on Federal securities
			8825 Interest on uninvested funds
			8840 Non-Federal sources
			8845 Offsetting governmental collections (from non-Federal sources)
			These SF 133 and P&F lines will be equal with opposite signs.
			8896 Portion of offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts

**Trust Fund (or Special Fund) with Collections Precluded from Obligation**

<b>SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Program benefits trust fund	80X8000 Payment of benefits		
DESCRIPTION	Dec. 31 SF 133	Jun. 30 SF 133	Sept. 30 SF 133
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget authority:			
A. Appropriation (Public Law 106-789).....	70,000	150,000	160,000
B. Borrowing authority.....			
C. Contract authority.....			
D. Net transfers (+ or -).....			
E. Other.....			
2. Unobligated balance:			
A. Brought forward, October 1.....(Actual).....			
B. Net transfers, balances, actual (+ or -).....			
C. Anticipated transfers, balances (+ or -).....			
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):			
A. Earned:			
1. Collected.....			
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....			
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):			
1. Advance received.....			
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....			
C. Anticipated for rest of year, without advance.....			
D. Transfers from trust funds:			
1. Collected.....			
2. Anticipated.....			
4. Recoveries of prior year obligations:			
A. Actual.....			
B. Anticipated.....			
5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law 104-789 (-).....			
6. Permanently not available:			
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (-).....			
B. Enacted reductions (-).....			
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....			
D. Other authority withdrawn (-).....			
E. Pursuant to Public Law _____ (-).....			
F. Anticipated rest of year (+ or -).....			
7. Total budgetary resources.....	190,000	190,000	120,000

Includes \$30 thousand apportioned (see exhibit 121L) of prior year collections plus \$40 thousand collected in December).

Includes \$40 thousand to be collected in March, June, and September.

Include amounts of budgetary resources in excess of apportioned amounts on line 10D. If the account is exempt from apportionment, include amounts in excess of obligation on line 9C.

Includes only new collections. Prior year collections are not needed to incur obligations and therefore are not shown as an appropriation.  
  
No anticipated amounts are shown on line 1E.

-40,000  
Excess of new collections over obligations.

Total budgetary resources equal obligations on line 8 on the September 30 SF 133.

To save space, this exhibit does not display lines below line 7

**General Principles:**

Under scoring rules established under the Budget Enforcement Act (BEA), new collections are appropriations (line 1A of the SF 132 and the SF 133). Amounts not needed to cover obligations are subtracted on line 5.

For the September 30 SF 133, prior year collections are not shown unless current year collections are less than amounts needed to incur obligations. This will assure that the actual column in the Budget, derived from the same data as the SF 133, will reflect the scoring required by the BEA.

**Assumptions for this example:**

Total annual benefit payments are \$120 thousand (\$10 thousand each month).

Total annual revenue is \$160 thousand. \$40 thousand is received in December, March, June, and September.

Pursuant to law, obligations may be made only for payment of benefits.

Accumulated, unused collections from prior years equal \$750 thousand on October 1st of the fiscal year.

Relationship between Selected SF 133 and Program and Financing Schedule Lines (in millions of dollars)

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES			
		Period ended 9/30/CY	
AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Government Bureau		80Y0123 Salaries and expenses	
	FY 2001 Unexpired Account	FY 2000 Expired Account	Total
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget authority			
A. Appropriation.....	717		717
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross)			
A. Earned:			
1. Collected.....	92	6	98
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....	3	-3	
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):			
1. Advance received.....	5	2	7
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....	7	-4	3
7. Total budgetary resources.....	824	1	825
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
8. Obligations incurred:			
A. Direct:			
1. Category A.....	21		21
2. Total, Category B.....	686		686
3. Exempt from apportionment.....			
B. Reimbursable:			
1. Category A.....	107		107
2. Total, Category B.....			
a. Research.....			
b. Development of products.....			
3. Exempt from apportionment.....			
9. Unobligated balance:			
A. Apportioned:			
1. Balance, currently available.....	10		10
10. Unobligated balance:			
D. Other.....		1	1
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	824	1	825
<b>RELATIONSHIP OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>			
12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1.....		45	45
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:			
A. Accounts Receivable (-).....	-6	-1	-7
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (-).....	-4	-6	-10
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	54	22	76
D. Accounts payable (+).....	20	4	24
15. Outlays:			
A. Disbursements (+).....	740	33	773
B. Collections (-).....	-97	-8	-105
NOTE: Line 1A, P.L. 105-123.			

To calculate P&F schedule line 6800 Spending authority from offsetting collections (cash), take SF 133 line add SF 133 line 3A1 plus SF 133 line 3B1. [92 + 5 = 97]

To calculate P&F schedule line 6810 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired), add SF 133 line 3A2 plus SF 133 line 3B2. [3 + 7 = 10]

To calculate P&F schedule line 7400 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired), take line P6810 and change the sign. [-10]

To calculate P&F schedule line 8895 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) as it appears in the Budget Appendix, take line P6810 and change the sign. [-10]

To calculate P&F schedule line 7410 Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (expired), take SF 133 line 3A2 plus SF 133 line 3B2 and change the sign. [-3 + -4 = -7 with the opposite sign: 7]

To calculate P&F schedule lines 8800 through P8845 Offsetting collections (cash) as it appears in the Budget Appendix, take SF 133 line 15B (unexpired and expired). [-97 + -8 = -105]

To calculate P&F schedule line 8896 Offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts as it appears in the Budget Appendix, take SF 133 line 15B (expired only) and change the sign. [8]

(Authorized Officer) \_\_\_\_\_ (Date) \_\_\_\_\_

(Preparer: Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Address) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Phone number) \_\_\_\_\_



Relationship between Selected SF 133 and  
Program and Financing Schedule Lines -- Continued  
(in millions of dollars)

		Budget Program and Financing Schedule	
		Budget Appendix PY actual	MAX Schedule P PY actual
Identification code: 80-0123-0-1-350			
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>			
Direct program:			
0001	Research.....	100	
0002	Development of products.....	607	
0901	Reimbursable program.....	107	
1000	Total new obligations.....	814	
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>			
2200	New budget authority (gross).....	824	
2390	Total budgetary resources available for obligation.....	824	
2395	Total new obligations.....	-814	
2398	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (-).....	-10	
<b>New budget authority (gross), detail:</b>			
Appropriation			
Discretionary:			
4000	Appropriation.....	717	
Spending authority from offsetting collections:			
6800	Offsetting collections (cash).....	97	
6810	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources [ <i>unexpired</i> ].....	10	
6890	Spending authority from offsetting collections (total).....	107	
7000	Total new budget authority (gross).....	824	
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>			
7240	Obligated balance, start of year [ <i>unexpired and expired</i> ].....	45	
7310	Total new obligations (unexpired).....	814	
7320	Total outlays (gross) (-) (unexpired and expired).....	-773	
7400	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	-10	
7410	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (expired).....	7	
7440	Obligated balance, end of year [ <i>unexpired and expired</i> ].....	83	
<b>Outlays (gross), detail (unexpired and expired):</b>			
8690	Outlays from new discretionary authority.....	740	
8693	Outlays from discretionary balances.....	33	
8700	Total outlays (gross).....	773	
<b>Offsets:</b>			
Against gross authority and outlays:			
Offsetting collections (cash) from:			
8800	Federal sources [ <i>unexpired and expired</i> ].....	-105	105
Against gross budget authority only:			
8895	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	-10	10
8896	Portion of offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts.....	8	-8
<b>Net budget authority and outlays:</b>			
8900	Budget authority (net).....	717	
9000	Outlays (net).....	668	

Relationship between Selected SF 133 and Program and Financing Schedule Lines -- Continued  
(in millions of dollars)

		Budget Program and Financing Schedule	
		Budget Appendix PY actual	MAX Schedule P PY actual
Identification code: 80-0123-0-1-350			
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>			
Direct program:			
	0001	Research.....	100
	0002	Development of products.....	607
	0901	Reimbursable program.....	107
	1000	Total new obligations.....	814
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>			
	2200	New budget authority (gross).....	824
	2390	Total budgetary resources available for obligation.....	824
	2395	Total new obligations.....	-814
	2398	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (-).....	-10
<b>New budget authority (gross), detail:</b>			
Appropriation			
Discretionary:			
	4000	Appropriation.....	717
Spending authority from offsetting collections:			
	6800	Offsetting collections (cash).....	97
	6810	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources [unexpired].....	10
	6890	Spending authority from offsetting collections (total).....	107
	7000	Total new budget authority (gross).....	824
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>			
	7240	Obligated balance, start of year [unexpired and expired].....	45
	7310	Total new obligations (unexpired).....	814
	7320	Total outlays (gross) (-) (unexpired and expired).....	-773
	7400	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	-10
	7410	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (expired).....	7
	7440	Obligated balance, end of year [unexpired and expired].....	83
<b>Outlays (gross), detail (unexpired and expired):</b>			
	8690	Outlays from new discretionary authority.....	740
	8693	Outlays from discretionary balances.....	33
	8700	Total outlays (gross).....	773
<b>Offsets:</b>			
Against gross authority and outlays:			
Offsetting collections (cash) from:			
	8800	Federal sources [unexpired and expired].....	-105
Against gross budget authority only:			
	8895	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired).....	-10
	8896	Portion of offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts.....	8
<b>Net budget authority and outlays:</b>			
	8900	Budget authority (net).....	717
	9000	Outlays (net).....	668

Separately identify new obligations by significant activity, as appropriate. Report obligations funded by reimbursements separately on lines coded 09XX. Report all obligations in noncredit revolving funds as reimbursable on lines 09XX.

Direct and reimbursable obligations in unexpired account. This line equals P&F schedule lines 0001 through 0999.

Equals SF 133 line 15B for the unexpired only and change the sign.

Equals SF 133 lines 3A2 plus 3B2 unexpired only.

Spending authority from offsetting collections (total) in unexpired account. This line is calculated by adding P&F schedule lines 6800 through 6885.

Equals to the sum of the amounts on Lines 6810 and 6910, but with the opposite sign.  
OR  
Equals SF 133 lines 3A2 plus 3B2 unexpired only, but with the opposite sign.

Expired and unexpired obligations balance, net.

This is the amount of accounts payable plus undelivered orders minus the amount of accounts receivable from Federal sources and unpaid, unfilled orders from Federal sources.

Equals SF 133 lines 3A2 plus 3B2 expired only, but with the opposite sign.

Separately identify cash collections and the change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources.

Same as P&F schedule lines 6810 and 6910 with the opposite sign.

Net BA is the amount available for new obligation net of the offsetting collections attributable to unexpired offsets. This is equal to Gross BA minus collections from Federal sources plus change in uncollected customer payments (unexpired).

Same as P&F schedule lines 6810 and 6910.

To calculate, take SF 133 line 15B for the expired only.

Net Outlays is equal to Gross Outlays minus collections from Federal sources.

To calculate, take SF 133 line 15B for the expired only with the opposite sign.

## SECTION 135—PROCEDURES FOR MONITORING FEDERAL OUTLAYS

<b>Table of Contents</b>	
135.1	What is the purpose for these procedures?
135.2	Who is required to submit a plan?
135.3	What are the general reporting requirements?
135.4	What are the reporting requirements for large transactions?
135.5	What are the requirements for investment account reporting?
135.6	What are the requirements for financing account reporting?
135.7	What are the requirements for asset sale reporting?
135.8	What are the responsibilities of OMB and the Treasury Department?
135.9	When do I submit reports?
Ex-135A	Reports on Outlays—Agency and Program Coverage
Ex-135B	Reports on Outlays—Initial Report
Ex-135C	Investment Account Reporting Format
Ex-135D	Financing Account Reporting Format
Ex-135E	Asset Sales Reporting Format

**135.1 What is the purpose for these procedures?**

Cabinet departments and certain agencies submit reports on Federal outlays to assist in the monitoring of spending and to improve Treasury Department forecasts of the Government's daily cash operating balances, borrowing requirements, and debt subject to legal limits, including trust and special fund investment activity. Realistic estimates, particularly for the immediate six-month period, enable Treasury to borrow only amounts needed to finance Government activities, thus reducing interest costs and overall cash balances maintained in the Treasury.

OMB needs reports on Federal outlays to monitor the deficit/surplus and to assess the reliability of each agency's financial management system. Reports are also used by Treasury for its monthly review of "Statement of Transactions" (SF 224 and SF 1220) reporting, prior to publication of the *Monthly Treasury Statement of Receipts and Outlays of the U.S. Government*, and for periodic evaluations of the accuracy of the reports. These plans must be as accurate as possible—an inability to forecast spending with reasonable accuracy can be a weakness in program and financial management. Problems of this nature need the attention of OMB and the agencies alike.

**135.2 Who is required to submit a plan?**

If your department or agency is listed in exhibit 135A, prepare a monthly outlay plan for each new fiscal year and submit periodic reports on and revisions to that plan. Coverage of the reports should be identical to the coverage in the annual budget documents and should include outlay information for all appropriations and funds administered by your department or agency. OMB and/or Treasury may require a forecast of deposit fund activity for specific agencies and will notify you of this requirement.

### 135.3 What are the general reporting requirements?

Base estimates on your best current judgment of the amount to be spent by month in the period(s) covered by the report. Use the President's most recent annual budget or Mid-Session Review estimates as a base, but update those estimates to reflect subsequent actions of the Congress, including both completed actions and those that are almost certain to be completed. Also reflect recent trends and expected events on a realistic basis.

Budget and Mid-Session Review estimates serve as reference points only, not as targeted fiscal year totals. Do not force estimated monthly totals to conform to the Budget or Mid-Session totals, but reflect your best information at the time the forecast is prepared. The format for agency reports (Exhibits 135B, 135C, 135D, and 135E) includes columns for "OMB estimates" and "Differences" that will highlight changes from the most recent official estimates.

Between submission dates, you should provide updated plans to OMB and Treasury whenever there are significant changes in outlay totals, large transactions, or patterns (such as those that may be associated with an unanticipated increase in claims for an entitlement program or a change in the timing or amount of upward or downward re-estimates between on-budget subsidy and non-budgetary financing accounts). You should also cooperate with OMB and Treasury by providing additional details as requested.

You must submit a brief summary with each outlay report explaining the assumptions used in developing the outlay plan and any unusual or special circumstances affecting the plan. The summary will, for example, enumerate expected Congressional actions that will raise or lower estimates, discuss any other events that have caused or are expected to cause significant fluctuations in the normal outlay pattern, and specify whether they have been included or excluded from the plan.

### 135.4 What are the reporting requirements for large transactions?

You must identify large (\$50 million or more) *cash* and *non-cash* payment and deposit transactions. "Large transaction" refers to a single payment or deposit or a *group* of payments or deposits of a similar nature that occur, *typically*, on one day. Large transactions may be recurring, i.e., monthly, quarterly, semi-annual, or annual. Cash transactions result in a decrease or increase in Treasury's operating cash balance. Non-cash transactions are typically transfers between general fund and trust fund, deposit fund, or financing accounts.

List large transactions under the memorandum section of the agency report or footnote the transaction in the investment account or financing account report. Exhibit 135B provides examples of how the following information should be presented:

- Description of payment or deposit;
- Appropriation account symbol;
- MTS line code;
- Dollar amount(s);
- Assumed date of transaction;
- Agency contact;
- Telephone number; and
- E-mail address.

The point of contact for a large transaction should be the individual who is responsible for ensuring that Treasury is informed *between submission dates* of revisions to dollar amount, transaction date, or any

special circumstances related to the transaction. This individual is typically in your program and/or finance office.

All agency financial officers are required by Volume I of the *Treasury Financial Manual (TFM)*, Part 6, Chapter 8500 to provide short-run advance notification to Treasury for large cash deposits and payments. Deadlines currently vary from two to five business days prior to the transaction date, depending on the amount of the transaction. Agency budget and program offices should be cognizant of these requirements and provide whatever advance information is needed by finance offices in a timely manner. For further information regarding *TFM* Chapter 8500, contact the Funds Control Division, Financial Management Service, Department of the Treasury, (202) 874-9790.

Selected examples of large transactions:

- Agency for International Development:
  - ▶ Economic support fund payments
  - ▶ Economic assistance loans, repayments
- Agriculture:
  - ▶ Federal Crop Insurance Corporation Fund—Premium collections
  - ▶ Forest Service—Payments to States
- Defense Security Cooperation Agency:
  - ▶ Foreign military financing program
- Interior:
  - ▶ Bureau of Land Management—
    - Oregon and California Grant Lands payments
    - Payments in lieu of taxes
- Treasury:
  - ▶ Presidential Election Campaign Fund disbursements
  - ▶ Comptroller of the Currency—Assessment collections
  - ▶ Office of Thrift Supervision—Assessment collections

### **135.5 What are the requirements for investment account reporting?**

Departments that administer major investment accounts are required to submit reports of investment account income and outgo in the format of Exhibit 135C. Reports are required for the following investment accounts:

- Health and Human Services:
  - ▶ Federal hospital insurance trust fund
  - ▶ Federal supplementary medical insurance trust fund
- Housing and Urban Development:
  - ▶ Mutual mortgage and cooperative housing insurance fund liquidating account
- Labor:
  - ▶ Unemployment trust fund
  - ▶ Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation fund

- State:
  - ▶ Foreign Service retirement and disability fund
- Transportation:
  - ▶ Highway trust fund
  - ▶ Airport and airway trust fund
- Environmental Protection Agency:
  - ▶ Hazardous substance superfund
- Other Defense Civil Programs:
  - ▶ Military retirement fund
  - ▶ Uniformed services retiree health care fund
- Office of Personnel Management:
  - ▶ Civil Service retirement and disability fund
  - ▶ Federal employees health insurance fund
  - ▶ Federal employees life insurance fund
- Social Security Administration:
  - ▶ Federal old-age and survivors insurance trust fund
  - ▶ Federal disability insurance trust fund
- Railroad Retirement Board:
  - ▶ Railroad retirement accounts—
    - Rail industry pension fund
    - National railroad retirement investment trust
    - Supplemental annuity pension fund
    - Railroad Social Security equivalent benefit account

### **135.6 What are the requirements for financing account reporting?**

All departments and agencies that administer financing accounts are required to report estimated and actual monthly net disbursements for all accounts as addendum items in the format of exhibit 135B.

The following agencies also are required to submit detailed financing account reports in the format of exhibit 135D for the specified accounts:

- Education:
  - ▶ Direct student loans
  - ▶ Federal family education loans
- Export-Import Bank:
  - ▶ Direct loan financing account
  - ▶ Guaranteed loan financing account
- Federal Communications Commission:
  - ▶ Spectrum auction direct loan financing account
- Housing and Urban Development:
  - ▶ FHA – General and special risk guaranteed loan financing account

- ▶ FHA – Mutual mortgage insurance guaranteed loan financing account
- Small Business Administration:
  - ▶ Business guaranteed loan financing account
  - ▶ Business direct loan financing account
  - ▶ Disaster direct loan financing account
- Veterans Affairs:
  - ▶ Direct loan financing account
  - ▶ Guaranteed loan financing account

Include significant activities as shown in the Budget *Appendix* Program and financing schedules in your detailed financing account reports.

Estimate monthly totals for non-Federal transactions such as:

- Cash loan disbursements
- Cash collections for loan repayments
- Net cash proceeds of asset sales

Forecast all non-cash transactions between:

- Financing accounts
- Liquidating, subsidy, governmental receipt, and Treasury interest accounts

Specify whether the timing for such transactions is monthly, quarterly, semiannual, or annual. Include the best available estimate of the dollar amount in the month or months during which you expect the transaction to be processed.

*Actual data for financing accounts.*—As discussed in section 135.9 below, the *Monthly Treasury Statement (MTS)* is the source of actual data for outlay plans. However, the *MTS* and the SF 224 reports may not provide the activity detail necessary for detailed financing account forecasting. Agency budget and accounting areas are expected to develop internal agency procedures that will produce the detail required for the plans.

*Sales of loans.*—In general, cash proceeds from sales of loans are now being credited to non-budgetary financing accounts instead of to on-budget liquidating accounts. Exhibit 135D reflects the financing account presentation for loan sale proceeds. Detailed reporting for individual asset sales is required by Treasury offices under asset sale reporting (section 135.7) below.

*Reporting format.*—Show both financing accounts and corresponding liquidating and/or subsidy (program) accounts on the report.

You must show activities as shown in the Budget *Appendix* (see section 185.10 for a description of the requirements for program accounts and section 185.11 for a description of the requirements for financing accounts) in order to:

- Improve Treasury's cash forecasting by identifying non-cash transactions and ensuring consistent treatment on "both sides" of the transaction, i.e., the same amount and timing for both budgetary and non-budgetary credit account entries.

- Ensure the integrity of the *MTS*, the Federal Government's monthly budget report. Treasury will use financing account reports to review and monitor the agency Statement of Transactions (SF 224) reports, prior to publication of the *MTS*.

*Forecasting methodology.*—If you prepare financing account reports:

- Non-cash transactions between financing and (1) liquidating or subsidy accounts, or (2) Treasury interest accounts must reflect the best available dollar amount estimate, and timing must be based on actual due dates or past experience with the timing of the payments.
- If actual experience supports the method, you may estimate monthly amounts for some categories, such as loan disbursements and repayments, by pro-rating the estimated fiscal year total, based on recent monthly patterns.

### **135.7 What are the requirements for asset sale reporting?**

Departments and agencies that conduct sales of assets are required to submit forecast reports in the format of exhibit 135E. A report must be submitted for each sale included in the agency report on outlays (exhibit 135B) or financing account report (exhibit 135D). Asset sale reporting is also required by Volume I of the Treasury Financial Manual (TFM), Part 6, Chapter 8500. Asset sales are typically large dollar transactions (\$50 million or more), for which advance notification must be provided to Treasury. The same reporting form, exhibit 135E, is to be used for both outlay plans and large dollar reporting to Treasury.

**Between submissions, the original report for each individual sale is to be updated by the agency and provided to Treasury offices as soon as new estimated and/or actual information is available, until the sale has been completed.** Agency and OMB estimates provided for Treasury's budget, cash, and debt forecasting purposes are considered highly confidential and for internal Treasury use only. If unusual circumstances call for disclosure of additional detail, the estimates are characterized as Treasury Department estimates and not attributed to OMB or the agency.

Departments and agencies that currently must submit detailed asset sale reports are listed below:

- Federal Communications Commission
- Federal Housing Administration (HUD)
- Minerals Management Service (Interior)
- Small Business Administration
- Veterans Affairs

Other departments or agencies should be prepared to provide asset sale reports and timely, on-going updates if asset sale transactions are assumed in their official OMB estimates.

### **135.8 What are the responsibilities of OMB and the Treasury Department?**

Both OMB and Treasury will review the agency outlay plans for reasonableness in the light of experience, consistency with the President's policies and objectives, enacted appropriations and other legislation, and other factors. When circumstances warrant, OMB and/or Treasury may require you to make revisions in the outlay plans.



**135.9 When do I submit reports?**

Submit the initial report for the budget year to OMB and simultaneously to the Treasury (Office of the Fiscal Assistant Secretary) as specified by OMB, based on the timing of the transmittal of the Budget in the format of exhibits 135B, 135C, and 135D, as applicable. The report provides monthly outlay estimates for the budget year. Updated reports are due throughout the current year, with coverage expanded to include estimates for the subsequent budget year as shown below.

Use the Monthly Treasury Statement of Receipts and Outlays of the United States Government (*MTS*) (available at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/>), as the source of actual data reported. However, be aware that the published *MTS* is subject to prior-month revisions due to back-dated transactions. Such revisions will affect both a prior month (or months) and the published "Current Fiscal Year to Date" amounts shown in *MTS* Table 5. Agency budget and SF 224 and SF 1220 reporting offices should work with Treasury's Budget Reports Division to develop procedures for ensuring that actual monthly data submitted in outlay reports includes any revisions that may have occurred after the publication of the *MTS*. It is imperative that actual data reflect amounts reported by the agency and recorded in the *MTS*. The actual data should be followed by updated monthly outlay estimates for the balance of the period(s). Reports are due to OMB and to Treasury (as an Excel e-mail attachment) as follows:

<b>Reports due by</b>	<b>Monthly outlay actual required for the period</b>	<b>Monthly outlays estimates required for the period</b>
October 1st (current year). (Explain differences from latest public estimate.) *	—	October through September (current year).
One week following transmittal of the budget. (Explain differences from the current year amounts contained in the budget.)	October through December (current year).	January through September (current year). October through September (budget year).
Early May, to be specified by OMB. (Explain differences from the current year amounts contained in the budget.)	October through March (current year).	April through September (current year). October through September (budget year).
As specified by OMB, based on the timing of the Mid-Session Review of the budget update (current year). (Explain differences from current year amounts contained in the Mid-Session Review.)	October through May (current year).	June through September (current year). October through September (budget year).

\* Normally, the latest public estimate will be that in the most recent Mid-Session Review of the President's budget. Reconcile significant differences between previously reported estimated outlays and revised estimates or actual outlays and explain these changes in the accompanying statements. Additional updated reports may be requested at other times.

## Reports on Outlays—Agency and Program Coverage

### Department of Agriculture: <sup>1</sup>

Farm Service Agency:  
 Commodity credit accounts  
 Agriculture credit insurance accounts  
 Conservation reserve program  
 All other  
 Food and Nutrition Service:  
 Food stamp program  
 Other domestic feeding programs  
 Forest Service  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
 Total, Department of Agriculture

### Department of Commerce

#### Department of Defense, Military:

Military personnel  
 Operation and maintenance  
 Procurement  
 Research, development, test, and evaluation  
 Military construction  
 Family housing  
 Revolving and management funds  
 All other  
 Total, Department of Defense

#### Department of Education:

Elementary and secondary education  
 Postsecondary education  
 Student financial assistance  
 All other  
 Total, Department of Education

#### Department of Energy:

National Nuclear Security Administration  
 Environmental and other defense activities  
 Energy programs  
 All other  
 Total, Department of Energy

#### Department of Health and Human Services:

Public Health Service  
 Grants to States for Medicaid  
 Payment to health care trust funds  
 Federal hospital insurance trust fund  
 Children's health insurance program  
 Federal supplementary medical insurance trust fund  
 Health care fraud and abuse control  
 Temporary Assistance for Needy Families and child support enforcement  
 Low income home energy assistance  
 Social services block grant  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
 Total, Department of Health and Human Services

#### Department of Housing and Urban Development: <sup>1</sup>

Housing certificate fund  
 Other public and Indian housing programs  
 Community development block grants  
 Federal Housing Administration credit accounts  
 Government National Mortgage Association  
 Offsetting receipts, FHE credit accounts (-)  
 All other  
 Total, Department of Housing and Urban Development

#### Department of the Interior: <sup>3</sup>

Bureau of Land Management

Minerals Management Service  
 Bureau of Reclamation  
 Bureau of Indian Affairs  
 Office of Insular Affairs  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
 Total, Department of the Interior

#### Department of Justice:

Federal Bureau of Investigation  
 Federal Prison System  
 Office of Justice Programs:  
 State and local law enforcement assistance  
 Community oriented policing services  
 All other  
 Total, Department of Justice

#### Department of Labor:

Pension benefit guaranty corporation  
 Training and employment services  
 Advances to the unemployment trust fund and other funds  
 Unemployment trust fund  
 Special benefits  
 Black lung disability trust fund  
 All other  
 Deductions for interfund transactions (-)  
 Total, Department of Labor

#### Department of State

#### Department of Transportation:

Transportation Security Administration  
 Coast Guard  
 Federal Aviation Administration  
 Federal Highway Administration  
 Federal Railroad Administration  
 Federal Transit Administration  
 All other  
 Total, Department of Transportation

#### Department of the Treasury:

Earned income tax credit (outlay portion)  
 Interest on the Public Debt  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
 Total, Department of the Treasury

#### Department of Veterans Affairs: <sup>1</sup>

Compensation, pension, readjustment, and burial benefits  
 Medical care  
 Insurance trust funds (both revolving and nonrevolving)  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
 Total, Department of Veterans Affairs

#### Corps of Engineers

#### Other Defense Civil Programs:

Military Retirement  
 Uniformed services retiree health

#### Environmental Protection Agency

#### Federal Emergency Management Agency:

Disaster relief  
 All other  
 Total, Federal Emergency Management Agency

## Reports on Outlays—Agency and Program Coverage—Continued

**General Services Administration:**

Real property activities  
 Personal property activities  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
     Total, General Services Administration

**International Assistance Programs:**

International security assistance:  
     Foreign military loan program  
     Foreign military financing program  
     Economic support fund  
 Multilateral assistance:  
     International financial institutions  
     International organizations and programs  
 Agency for International Development:  
     Economic assistance loans  
     All other  
 Military sales programs:  
     Foreign military sales trust fund—outlays  
     Foreign military sales trust fund—proprietary receipts

**National Aeronautics and Space Administration**
**National Science Foundation**
**Office of Personnel Management:**

Civil Service retirement and disability fund  
 Other trust funds  
 All other  
     Total, Office of Personnel Management

**Small Business Administration <sup>1</sup>**
**Social Security Administration:**

Payment to social security trust funds  
 Special benefits for disabled coal miners  
 Supplemental security income  
 Federal old-age and survivors insurance trust fund  
 Federal disability insurance trust fund  
 All other  
 Deductions for offsetting receipts (-)  
     Total, Social Security Administration

**District of Columbia**
**Export-Import Bank <sup>1</sup>**
**Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation:**

Bank Insurance Fund  
 Savings Association Insurance Fund  
 FSLIC Resolution Fund (including RTC)  
 Other  
     Total, FDIC

**Legislative Branch**

Library of Congress  
     Collections of fees, and Payments to copyright owners

**Postal Service**
**Railroad Retirement Board**
**Securities and Exchange Commission**
**Tennessee Valley Authority**
**Rents and royalties on Outer Continental Shelf  
 (Interior)**
**Spectrum auction receipts (Federal Communications  
 Commission)**

<sup>1</sup> Provide as a separate entry monthly outlay amounts for sales of loans to the open market. Net cash proceeds of the sale should be reported.

<sup>2</sup> Military retirement also reports receipts collected by them for employer share, employee retirement.

<sup>3</sup> Interior also reports the outlays for rents and royalties on Outer Continental Shelf.

Reports on Outlays--Initial Report

Categories shown are illustrative only. Use categories currently displayed on your outlay report unless OMB or Treasury requests revisions or new programs are enacted.

Footnote the OMB ESTIMATES column to indicate Budget or Mid-Session Review estimates and month of release.

REPORT CODE: XXXXXXXXXX  
 TO: OCDMA34@ocdm.Treas.gov  
 DATE PREPARED: 10/01/20CY  
 CONTACT: Salmon P. Chase  
 TELEPHONE: 202-622-1875  
 E-MAIL: Salmon.P.Chase@DO.Treas.gov

DEPARTMENT OF XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX  
 Fiscal Year 2002  
 (In millions of dollars)

NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE  
 OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-11  
 PART 3, SECTION 135  
 EXHIBIT 135B

REPORT LINE CODE	MTS CODE	APPROP ACCOUNT SYMBOL	ACCOUNT	FISCAL YEAR												OMB		
				2001 OCT EST	2001 NOV EST	2001 DEC EST	2002 JAN EST	2002 FEB EST	2002 MAR EST	2002 APR EST	2002 MAY EST	2002 JUN EST	2002 JUL EST	2002 AUG EST	2002 SEP EST	YEAR TOTAL (1)	ESTI-MATES <sup>1</sup> (2)	DIFFER-ENCES <sup>2</sup> (1-2)
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Program payments <sup>3</sup>	550	525	650	675	550	900	750	625	850	1000	575	450	8,100	7500	600
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Administrative expenses	50	75	50	50	75	50	50	75	50	50	75	50	700	850	-150
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Interest payments to Treas	125	0	0	0	0	0	150	0	0	0	0	0	275	175	100
	XX	XXXX	Program (subsidy) account	0	100	0	0	100	0	0	100	0	0	100	0	400	400	0
			Other:															
	XX	XXXX	Construction <sup>4</sup>	65	50	60	135	45	60	55	65	45	65	45	60	750	750	0
	XX	XXXX	Claims payments <sup>5</sup>	0	100	0	0	75	0	0	0	250	0	0	0	425	425	0
			<b>Total Other</b>	65	150	60	135	120	60	55	65	295	65	45	60	1,175	1,175	0
XXXX			Offsetting receipts	-5	-1	-1	-4	-9	-5	-6	-6	-5	-5	-7	-6	-60	-60	0
10000	XXXX		<b>TOTAL, DEPT. OF XXXXXXXX</b>	<b>785</b>	<b>849</b>	<b>759</b>	<b>856</b>	<b>836</b>	<b>1,005</b>	<b>999</b>	<b>859</b>	<b>1,190</b>	<b>1,110</b>	<b>788</b>	<b>554</b>	<b>10,590</b>	<b>10,040</b>	<b>550</b>
			<b>ADDENDUM:</b>															
			<b>NON-BUDGETARY ACCOUNTS:</b>															
			<b>Financing Accounts (Net Disbursements):</b>															
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Account (title)	50	-50	25	125	-50	50	75	-50	25	50	-125	75	200	200	0
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Account (title)	25	35	60	45	15	40	95	75	40	25	50	145	650	650	0
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Account (title)	65	65	160	65	65	200	65	65	175	65	65	250	1,305	1,305	0
20000			<b>TOTAL FINANCING ACCOUNTS</b>	<b>140</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>235</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>290</b>	<b>235</b>	<b>90</b>	<b>240</b>	<b>140</b>	<b>-10</b>	<b>470</b>	<b>2,155</b>	<b>2,155</b>	<b>0</b>
			<b>Deposit Funds:</b>															
			<b>Account (title):</b>															
			Payments (+)	0	0	0	0	50	150	185	225	175	50	20	15	870	0	870
			Deposits (-)	0	0	0	-50	-150	-185	-225	-175	-50	-20	-15	0	-870	0	-870
XXXX	XX	XXXX	<b>Net</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>-50</b>	<b>-100</b>	<b>-35</b>	<b>-40</b>	<b>50</b>	<b>125</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>15</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>	<b>0</b>

MEMORANDUM: (Non-add, Included above)

Proposed legislation<sup>3</sup>

0	0	0	50	65	85	100	125	160	190	200	225	1,200	1,200	0
---	---	---	----	----	----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-------	-------	---

Large Transactions:

One-time payment<sup>4</sup>

			80											
			011502											
XXXX	XX	XXXX	Claims payments <sup>5</sup>	113001		022002		060702						

ACT=Actual; EST= Estimate

<sup>1</sup> Footnote should state "Budget" or "Mid-Session Review" and month released.

<sup>2</sup> Footnote differences and provide brief explanation.

<sup>3</sup> Contact name and telephone number.

<sup>4</sup> Contact name and telephone number.

<sup>5</sup> Contact name and telephone number.

NOTE: The appropriation account symbol should be the primary one associated with the outlay category or MTS line.

NOTE: You must show individual fiscal years or portions thereof, on separate reports.

NOTE: Round estimates to the nearest whole million. Where an amount falls exactly halfway between, round it to the nearest even number (e.g., \$11,500,000 and \$12,500,000 both will be rounded to \$12 million). Adjust components to add to the correctly rounded totals. All totals will be net of offsetting collections unless otherwise stated.

Investment Account Reporting Format

Categories shown here are illustrative only. Categories on your report should mirror the Budget Appendix Status of Funds schedule.

Footnote the OMB ESTIMATES column to indicate Budget or Mid-Session Review estimates and month of release.

REPORT CODE: XXXXXXXXX  
 TO: OCDMA34@ocdm.Treas.gov  
 DATE PREPARED: 10/01/20CY  
 CONTACT: Salmon P. Chase  
 TELEPHONE: 202-622-1875  
 E-MAIL: Salmon.P.Chase@DO.Treas.gov

DEPARTMENT OF XXXXXXXXXXXX  
 (Investment Account title)  
 INCOME AND OUTGO REPORT  
 Fiscal Year CY  
 (In millions of dollars)

NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE  
 OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-11  
 PART 3, SECTION 135.5  
 EXHIBIT 135C

TIMING OF TRANS	MTS LINE CODE	APPROP ACCOUNT SYMBOL	CATEGORY	FISCAL YEAR												OMB EST. <sup>1</sup>	DIFFERENCE <sup>2</sup>	
				2001 OCT EST	2001 NOV EST	2001 DEC EST	2002 JAN EST	2002 FEB EST	2002 MAR EST	2002 APR EST	2002 MAY EST	2002 JUN EST	2002 JUL EST	2002 AUG EST	2002 SEP EST			TOTAL (1)
<b>INCOME:</b>																		
<b>Governmental:</b>																		
FIRST DAY	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Taxes.....													5225		
<b>Intergovernmental:</b>																		
BIWEEKLY <sup>3</sup>	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Employer contributions	375	375	375	375	375	375	376	375	400	400	410	4586	5000	-414	
1215	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Transfer from XXXX <sup>4</sup>	0	0	650	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	650	650	0	
1231; 0630	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Interest on investments	10	15	575	20	15	30	10	15	625	75	100	50	1540	1540	0
<b>Proprietary:</b>																		
DAILY	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Receipts from XXXXXXXX	25	30	65	25	30	65	25	30	65	25	30	65	480	480	0
<b>TOTAL INCOME...</b>																12895		
<b>OUTGO:</b>																		
DAILY	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Benefit payments <sup>5</sup> .....	675	675	675	650	675	675	650	625	625	625	625	7800	7800	0	
15TH OF MO	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Administrative expenses	35	30	35	35	25	35	35	35	35	35	35	400	400	0	
LAST DAY	XXXX	XX XXXX.XX	Transfers to XXXX <sup>6</sup>	125	0	0	150	0	0	175	0	0	200	0	650	650	0	
<b>TOTAL OUTGO.....</b>				835	705	710	835	700	710	860	660	660	860	660	655	8850	8850	0
<b>NET INC (+) OR OUTGO</b>												4045						
<b>MEMORANDUM: (Non-add; included above)</b>																		
<b>Proposed legislation <sup>5</sup></b>				0	0	0	0	0	0	-25	-50	-50	-50	-50	-275	-275	0	

ACT=Actual; EST= Estimate  
<sup>1</sup> Footnote should state "Budget" or "Mid-Session Review" and month/year of release.  
<sup>2</sup> Footnote differences and provide brief explanation.  
<sup>3</sup> Footnote descriptions that are larger than column. Provide specific timing and amount information.  
<sup>4</sup> Date contingent on passage of annual authorizing legislation. Footnote (contact name and telephone number).  
<sup>5</sup> Footnote (contact name and telephone number).  
<sup>6</sup> Footnote (contact name and telephone number).

Timing of Transactions column shows illustrative examples of frequency of timing and transaction dates.

NOTE: You are **not** required to provide **MONTHLY** estimates for **Governmental receipts** Monthly estimates are prepared by the Office of Tax Analysis, Department of the Treasury.

Financing Account Reporting Format

Categories will reflect activities shown in the Financing and Program Schedules of the Budget Appendix. Include both Financing and related Liquidating and Subsidy accounts in order to ensure consistency of estimated transactions between budgetary and non-budgetary accounts.

Footnote the OMB ESTIMATES column to indicate Budget or Mid-Session Review estimates and month of release.

REPORT CODE: XXXXXXXXX  
 TO: OCDMA34@ocdm.Treas.gov  
 DATE PREPARED: 10/01/20CY  
 CONTACT: Salmon P. Chase  
 TELEPHONE: 202-622-1875  
 E-MAIL: Salmon.P.Chase@DO.Treas.gov

DEPARTMENT OF XXXXXXXXXXXXX  
 (Financing Account title)  
 Fiscal Year 2002  
 (In millions of dollars)

NOT FOR PUBLIC RELEASE  
 OMB CIRCULAR NO. A-11  
 PART 3, SECTION 135.6  
 EXHIBIT 135D

TIMING OF TRANS	MTS LINE CODE	APPROP SYMBOL	OBJECT CLASS	ACCOUNT	FISCAL YEAR												OMB		
					2001 OCT EST	2001 NOV EST	2001 DEC EST	2002 JAN EST	2002 FEB EST	2002 MAR EST	2002 APR EST	2002 MAY EST	2002 JUN EST	2002 JUL EST	2002 AUG EST	2002 SEP EST	2002 YEAR TOTAL (1)	ESTI-MATES <sup>1</sup> (2)	DIFFER-ENCE <sup>2</sup> (1-2)
<b>FINANCING ACCOUNT:</b>																			
DAILY		?? ??		Loan disbursements	250	365	450	1000	1265	750	370	300	450	600	950	1275	8025	8575	-550
0930		00.02		Interest paid to Treasury	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	150	150	150	0
ANNUAL		08.02		Downward reestimate of subsidy	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	531	531	531	0
ANNUAL		08.04		Interest on downward reestimate	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	147	147	147	0
<b>Collections:</b>																			
DAILY		?? ??		Loan repayments (P+I)	-100	-125	-225	-100	-100	-100	-100	-125	-225	-100	-100	-100	-1500	-1500	0
3RD THURS		?? ??		Sales of loans (net) <sup>3</sup>	0	0	0	0	-400	0	0	0	-350	0	0	0	-750	-750	0
ANNUAL		88.00		Upward reest from program account	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-1,085	-1085	-1,085	0
ANNUAL		88.00		Interest on upward reestimate	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-74	-74	-74	0
FIRST DAY		?? ??		Collected from liquidating acct.	0	0	-25	0	0	-25	0	0	-50	0	0	-25	-125	-125	0
FIRST DAY		?? ??		Collected from subsidy account	0	0	-260	0	0	-545	0	-300	0	0	-830	0	-1935	-1,935	0
0930		88.25		Interest on uninvested funds	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-495	-495	-495	0
DAILY				All other	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	XXXX	XX XXXX	87.00	FINANCING DISB (NET)	150	240	-60	900	765	80	270	-125	-175	500	20	324	2889	3439	-550
<b>BUDGET ACCOUNTS:</b>																			
<b>SUBSIDY (Program) ACCOUNT:</b>																			
ANNUAL		?? ??		Prior Subsidy	0	0	0	10	50	560	0	200	0	0	0	0	820	820	0
ANNUAL		?? ??		Current Subsidy	0	0	260	0	0	545	0	300	0	0	830	0	1935	1935	0
ANNUAL		00.05		Upward reestimate of subsidy	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1085	1085	1,085	0
ANNUAL		00.06		Interest on upward reestimate	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	74	74	74	0
LAST DAY		00.09		Administrative expenses	15	20	10	25	10	15	20	5	25	10	15	10	180	180	0
<b>Collections:</b>																			
ANNUAL		69.00		Downward reestimate of subsidy	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-531	-531	-531	0
ANNUAL		69.00		Interest on downward reestimate	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-147	-147	-147	0
	XXXX	XX XXXX	90.00	TOTAL OUTLAYS (Net)	15	20	270	35	60	1,120	20	505	25	10	845	491	4094	4,094	0
<b>LIQUIDATING ACCOUNT:</b>																			
		?? ??		Payments to financing account	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	225	225	125	100
		?? ??		Other	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	60	60	0
	XXXX	XX XXXX		TOTAL LIQUIDATING	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	230	285	185	100
<b>OFFSETTING RECEIPT ACCOUNTS:</b>																			
	XXXX	XX XXXX		Disaster loans, downward reest	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-678	-678	-722	44
	XXXX	XX XXXX		Disaster loans, downward reest	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
				TOTAL OFFSETTING. RECEIPTS	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-678	-678	-722	44
<b>MEMORANDUM:</b>																			
0930	4188	XX 1499		INTEREST TO TREASURY	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	-150	-150	-150	0
				TOTAL IMPACT, ALL ACCOUNTS	170	265	215	940	830	1,205	295	385	-145	515	870	217	5,762	7,568	-1,806

FOOTNOTES:

ACT=Actual; EST= Estimate

<sup>1</sup>Footnote should state "Budget" or "Mid-Session Review" and month released.

<sup>2</sup>Footnote differences and provide brief explanation.

<sup>3</sup>Deposit date

022102

062002

091902







## SECTION 140—REPORTS ON UNVOUCHERED EXPENDITURES

Table of Contents	
140.1	What are unvouchered expenditures?
140.2	Are there any exemptions?
140.3	What is the basis for coverage?
140.4	What are the requirements for submission?
140.5	What are OMB's responsibilities?
Ex-140	List of Accounts Containing Unvouchered Expenditures

**140.1 What are unvouchered expenditures?**

An *unvouchered expenditure* means any expenditure accounted for solely on the approval, authorization, or certificate of the President or an official of an executive agency.

Executive Branch agencies are required to submit information to OMB on unvouchered expenditures annually. OMB uses the information to prepare the annual report required by law ([31 U.S.C. 3524](#)) on accounts containing unvouchered expenditures that are potentially subject to audit by the Comptroller General.

**140.2 Are there any exemptions?**

The law provides for exemptions for individual financial transactions or for a class or category of financial transactions if they relate to:

- Sensitive foreign intelligence or counterintelligence activities, or
- Sensitive law enforcement investigations in which an audit proceeding would expose the identifying details of an active investigation or endanger the safety of investigative or domestic intelligence sources involved in such law enforcement investigations.

The law gives the President the authority to exempt these financial transactions from audit. You should make any requests for exemptions through the White House Counsel's office.

**140.3 What is the basis for coverage?**

Subject to [31 U.S.C. 3524\(c\) and \(d\)](#), these instructions apply to the accounts of all executive agencies authorized to contain unvouchered expenditure. Funds used under Section 8(b) of the CIA Act of 1949 are exempt from this GAO audit and are not covered in the annual report to Congress on unvouchered expenditures.

**140.4 What are the requirements for submission?**

The head of each executive department and agency will submit to OMB a list of all of the agency's accounts that contain unvouchered expenditures. An explanation of any additions to or deletions from the accounts listed in the previous year's report will also be provided.

## SECTION 140—REPORTS ON UNVOUCHERED EXPENDITURES

---

Submit the list (including explanations, as appropriate) to OMB no later than November 1 of each year in the format of Exhibit 140. Transmit to OMB in a sealed envelope marked: **"TO BE OPENED ONLY BY THE SECURITY OFFICER, EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT, NEW EXECUTIVE OFFICE BUILDING."** Place the envelope inside another envelope that is sealed and addressed to the Director of OMB.

Each agency head must ensure the timeliness, accuracy, and completeness of the required information on unvouchered expenditures. In addition, if you are required to submit information on unvouchered expenditures, you must maintain records of these transactions in a manner similar to those maintained for regular financial transactions and accounts in order to insure proper accountability.

### **140.5 What are OMB's responsibilities?**

The Director of OMB will prepare and submit the report to certain congressional committees and to the GAO before December 1 of each year, as required by law.

**List of Accounts Containing Unvouchered Expenditures**

**List of CY Accounts Containing Unvouchered Expenditures  
that are Potentially Subject to Audit by GAO**

Enter the date of submission, the name of the department or agency, and the name and phone number of a contact

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Agency: Department of Government

Information Contact: John Brown

Telephone: 958-4237

Enter the titles of accounts in which unvouchered expenditures are permitted in the current fiscal year.  
  
When the current year regular appropriations have not been enacted, provide information based on the enacted past year appropriations.

Account Titles:  
Operation and Maintenance  
Salaries and Expenses  
Contingencies

Explanation of changes: The Salaries and expenses account is authorized to contain unvouchered expenditures for the first time in CY pursuant to P.L. XXX-XX. Also as a result of this law, the Research and related activities account is no longer authorized to contain unvouchered expenditures and therefore is not included in this year's report.

Provide an explanation of any additions or deletions to the previous year's report .



SECTION 145—REQUIREMENTS FOR REPORTING ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT VIOLATIONS

**Table of Contents**

- 145.1 What is the Antideficiency Act?
- 145.2 What violations must I report?
- 145.3 How do the requirements for reporting violations differ for credit programs?
- 145.4 Do the requirements for reporting violations differ for revolving funds?
- 145.5 Do the requirements for reporting violations differ for closed and expired accounts?
- 145.6 How do I treat anticipated budgetary resources?
- 145.7 How do I report a violation?
- 145.8 What if the GAO reports a violation?
- 145.9 What if OMB suspects a violation?

- Ex-145A Antideficiency Act Violation Sample Letter to the Director
- Ex-145B Antideficiency Act Violation Sample Letter to the President

**Summary of Changes**

Adds information on anticipated budgetary resources (section 145.6).

**145.1 What is the Antideficiency Act?**

The Antideficiency Act consists of provisions of law that were passed by Congress (beginning in the nineteenth century and later incorporated into Title 31 of the United States Code) to prevent departments and agencies from spending their entire appropriations during the first few months of the year. The Act *prohibits* you and any other Federal employee from:

- Entering into contracts that *exceed* the enacted appropriations for the year.
- Purchasing services and merchandise *before* appropriations are enacted.

The Act:

- Requires that OMB *apportion* the appropriations, that is, approve a plan that spreads out spending over the fiscal period for which the funds were made available.
- Restricts *deficiency apportionments* to amounts approved by the agency heads only for "extraordinary emergency or unusual circumstances."
- Establishes *penalties* for Antideficiency Act violations. Violations are obligations or expenditures in excess of the lower of the amount in the affected account, the amount apportioned, or the amount allotted.
- Requires the agency head to report any Antideficiency Act violations to the President, through the OMB Director, and Congress.

**SECTION 145—REQUIREMENTS FOR REPORTING  
ANTIDEFIENCY ACT VIOLATIONS**

Under the Act, if you obligate or expend more than the amount in the TAFS or the amount apportioned or any other subdivision of funds, you will be subject to appropriate administrative discipline, including—when circumstances warrant—a written reprimand, suspension from duty without pay, or removal from office.

In addition, if you are convicted of willfully and knowingly overobligating or overexpending the amount, then you shall be fined not more than \$5,000, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both.

In 1982, Congress reworded and reorganized the language of the Antideficiency Act along with the rest of Title 31 of the United States Code. The intent of Congress was to modernize the language of the Act, without changing its meaning. You will find a crosswalk between the provisions of law that made up the Antideficiency Act before it was modernized and the current language in Appendix A.

**145.2 What violations must I report?**

<b>If you . . .</b>	<b>The amount . . .</b>	<b>Then, you must report a violation of . . .</b>
Authorize or make an obligation exceeding	In an appropriation or fund. This may include obligations for purchases of goods or items that are prohibited by statute.	31 U.S.C. 1341(a)
	In an apportionment or reapportionment (a type of administrative subdivision of funds), such as a category B apportionment.	31 U.S.C. 1517(a)(1)
	In an allotment or a suballotment (a type of administrative subdivision of funds).	31 U.S.C. 1517(a)(2)
	In any other administrative subdivision of funds, if the overobligation results in the overobligation of one of the previous amounts.	31 U.S.C. 1517(a)
Authorize or make a disbursement exceeding	In an appropriation or fund.	31 U.S.C. 1341(a)
	In an apportionment or reapportionment (a type of administrative subdivision of funds). Includes the overobligation of a category B apportionment.	31 U.S.C. 1517(a)(1)
	An allotment or a suballotment (a type of administrative subdivision of funds).	31 U.S.C. 1517(a)(2)
	In any other administrative subdivision of funds if the overexpenditure results in the overexpenditure of one of the previous amounts.	31 U.S.C. 1517(a)
Obligate or expend	Funds required to be sequestered.	31 U.S.C. 1341(a)
Involve the Government in a contract or obligation	Before you receive the appropriation, unless such contract or obligation is authorized by law.	31 U.S.C. 1341(a)
Accept voluntary service	In excess of that authorized by law.	31 U.S.C. 1342

**145.3 How do the requirements for reporting violations differ for credit programs?**

In addition to the violations specified in section 145.2, report overobligation or overexpenditure of:

- The subsidy—where an officer or employee of the United States has made or authorized a direct loan obligation or loan guarantee commitment that requires a subsidy cost obligation or expenditure in excess of amounts appropriated and/or apportioned for such purposes. Modifications of direct loans or loan guarantees (or of direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments), as defined in section 185, that result in obligations or expenditure in excess of apportioned unobligated balances of subsidy amounts are violations. (31 U.S.C. 1341(a), 31 U.S.C. 1517(a))
- The credit level supportable by the enacted subsidy—where an officer or employee of the United States has made or authorized a direct loan obligation or loan guarantee commitment, that is in excess of the level specified by law. This includes, for example, obligations or expenditures that exceed a limitation on direct loan obligations or guaranteed loan commitments. (31 U.S.C. 1341(a))
- The amount appropriated for administrative expenses—where an officer or employee of the United States has made or authorized an expenditure or created or authorized an obligation that is in excess of the amount appropriated for administrative expenses. (31 U.S.C. 1341(a))
- The expired unobligated balance of the subsidy—where an officer or employee of the United States has made or authorized an expenditure or created or authorized an obligation, including a commitment, against unobligated subsidy balances after the period of obligational authority has expired. Correction of mathematical or data input errors up to the amount of the expired unobligated balance of the subsidy are not violations. Corrections of these errors in excess of the amount of the expired unobligated balance of the subsidy are violations. (31 U.S.C. 1341(a))
- The apportioned borrowing authority in a financing account. Section 505(C) of the Federal Credit Reform Act subjects financing accounts to apportionment: “All of the transactions provided in this subsection shall be subject to the provisions of subchapter II of chapter 15 of title 31, United States Code.”

**145.4 Do the requirements for reporting violations differ for revolving funds?**

No. The incurring of obligations in excess of apportioned budgetary resources in a revolving fund is a violation of the Antideficiency Act, whether or not a fund has unapportioned budgetary resources or non-budgetary assets greater than the amount apportioned.

**145.5 Do the requirements for reporting violations differ for closed and expired accounts?**

No. You are required to report violations when:

- Obligations and expenditures or adjustments to obligations and expenditures exceed the original appropriations.
- There are obligations or expenditures in closed accounts.

- Obligations and expenditures or adjustments to obligations and expenditures exceed the amount apportioned or allotted.

#### **145.6 How do I treat anticipated budgetary resources?**

You may not obligate against anticipated budgetary resources before they are realized even though the anticipated budgetary resources have been apportioned. If you incur an obligation against an anticipated budgetary resource, such as anticipated spending authority from offsetting collections, then you will have a violation of the Antideficiency Act. Report the violation of the TAFS (31 U.S.C. 1341 (a)). If you incur obligations against unobligated balances that are not available for the purpose or amount so obligated in the account, then you will have a violation.

#### **145.7 How do I report a violation?**

*Transmittal letter to the Director of OMB.* You will transmit the letter from your agency head to the President through the Director of OMB. A sample transmittal letter is provided in [Exhibit145A](#).

*Letter to the President.* You will report a violation of the Antideficiency Act in the form of a letter (original and three copies) from your agency head to the President. A sample letter is provided in [Exhibit145B](#).

The letter will set forth the following:

- The title and Treasury symbol (including the fiscal year) of the appropriation or fund account, the amount involved for each violation, and the date on which the violation occurred.
- The name and position of the officer(s) or employee(s) responsible for the violation.
- All facts pertaining to the violation, including the type of violation (for example, overobligation of an appropriation, overobligation of an apportionment, overobligation of an allotment or suballotment), the primary reason or cause, any statement from the responsible officer(s) or employee(s) with respect to any circumstances believed to be extenuating, and any germane report by the agency's Inspector General and/or the agency's counsel.
- A statement of the administrative discipline imposed and any further action(s) taken with respect to the officer(s) or employee(s) involved in the violation.
- In the case where an officer or employee is suspected of willfully and knowingly violating the Antideficiency Act, confirm that all information has been submitted to the Department of Justice for determination of whether further action is needed.
- A statement regarding the adequacy of the system of administrative control prescribed by the head of the agency and approved by OMB, if such approval has been given. If the head of the agency determines a need for changes in the regulations, such proposals will be submitted as provided in [section 150.7](#).
- A statement of any additional action taken by, or at the direction of, the head of the agency, including any new safeguards provided to prevent recurrence of the same type of violation.



- If another agency is involved, a statement concerning the steps taken to coordinate the report with the other agency.

*Letters to Congress.* You will report identical letters to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President of the Senate.

If the letters to Congress are identical to the letter to the President, include a statement to this effect in the letter to the President. If the letters to Congress are not identical to the letter to the President, you will submit a copy of the letter to Congress with your letter to the President. Additionally, agencies are required to ensure that the violation package maintains consistency with regard to the type of Antideficiency Act violation that has occurred. If there is an inconsistency in the package, agencies are required to submit an explanation for the record (emails are acceptable).

#### **145.8 What if the GAO reports a violation?**

You should report to the President and Congress on violations reported by the General Accounting Office in connection with audits and investigations.

In these cases, the report to the President will indicate whether the agency agrees that a violation has occurred, and if so, it will contain an explanation as to why the violation was not discovered and previously reported by the agency. If the agency does not agree that a violation has occurred, the report to the President and the Congress will explain the agency's position.

#### **145.9 What if OMB suspects a violation?**

Whenever OMB determines that a violation of the Antideficiency Act may have occurred, OMB may request that an investigation or audit be undertaken or conducted by the agency. In such cases, a report describing the results of the investigation or audit will be submitted to OMB through the head of the agency. If the report indicates that no violation of the Antideficiency Act has occurred, the agency head will so inform OMB and forward a copy of the report to OMB. If the report indicates that a violation of the Antideficiency Act has occurred, the agency head will report to the President and the Congress in accordance with [section 145.7](#) as soon as possible. If the agency head does not agree that a violation has occurred, the report to the President and to the Congress will explain the agency's position.

**Antideficiency Act Violation  
Sample Letter to the Director**

Honorable Director  
Office of Management and Budget  
Washington, D.C. 20503

Dear Mr. Director:

Enclosed is a letter transmitting a violation report of section [1341 or 1517] of Title 31, United States Code to the President.

The Antideficiency Act violation totaled \$XXXX.XX. This violation report is required by section [1351 or 1517] of Title 31, United States Code, to be submitted to the President; it is being submitted through the Director of the Office of Management and Budget.

To comply with the aforementioned provisions, copies of the report are also being submitted to the President of the Senate and the Speaker of the House of Representatives.

Sincerely,  
Agency Head

Enclosure

## Antideficiency Act Violation Sample Letter to the President

The President  
The White House  
Washington, D.C. 20500

Dear Mr. President:

This letter is to report a violation of the Antideficiency Act, as required by section [1351 or 1517] of Title 31, United States Code.

A violation occurred in account [Treasury symbol and title]. The violation occurred on [date] in connection with [identify the affected program or activity] for FY XXXX. Mr./Ms. \_\_\_\_\_ (rank/grade/title) was [were] the officer(s) responsible for the violation(s).

[Describe the nature of the violation (see section 145.2). Then state the primary reason or cause. Include any statement from the responsible officer(s) or employee(s) as to any circumstances believed to be extenuating. Include any germane report by the agency's Inspector General.]

[State which administrative discipline was imposed as well as any further action(s) taken with respect to the officer(s) or employee(s) involved. (see section 145.1)]

[In the case where an officer or employee is suspected of willfully and knowingly violating the Antideficiency Act, confirm that all information has been submitted to the Department of Justice.]

[State whether the adequacy of the system of administrative control has been approved by OMB. (see section 150.7)]

[State whether any additional action need be taken to prevent recurrence of the same type of violation.]

[If another agency is involved, state what steps are being taken to coordinate the report with the other agency.]

[Identical reports will be submitted to the presiding officer of each House of Congress. If identical to the report to the President, so state. (see section 145.6)]

Respectfully,  
Agency Head



## SECTION 150—ADMINISTRATIVE CONTROL OF FUNDS

Table of Contents	
150.1	Why must my agency have a fund control system?
150.2	What is the purpose of my agency's fund control system?
150.3	What is the relationship among my agency's management controls, its internal controls, and its fund controls?
150.4	What is the relationship between my agency's financial management system and its fund control system?
150.5	What is the U.S. Standard General Ledger (USSGL) and how does it relate to my agency's financial management system?
150.6	What are Federal Financial Management Systems requirements and how are they related to my agency's fund control systems?
150.7	When and how should I get OMB approval of my agency's fund control regulations?

**150.1 Why must my agency have a fund control system?**

The Antideficiency Act requires that your agency head prescribe, by regulation, a system of *administrative control of funds*. The system is also called *the fund control system* and the regulations are called *fund control regulations*.

**150.2 What is the purpose of my agency's fund control system?**

The purpose of your agency's fund control system is to:

- Restrict *both* obligations and expenditures (for example, outlays or disbursements) from each appropriation or fund account to *the lower of* the amount apportioned by OMB or the amount available for obligation and/or expenditure in the appropriation or fund account.
- Enable the head of your agency to identify the person responsible for any obligation or expenditure exceeding the amount available in the appropriation or fund account, the OMB apportionment or reapportionment, the allotment or sub-allotments made by your agency, any statutory limitations, and any other administrative subdivision of funds made by your agency.

**150.3 What is the relationship among my agency's management controls, its internal controls, and its fund controls?**

Your agency's *management controls* are the organization, policies, and procedures that your agency uses to reasonably ensure that:

- Programs achieve their intended results.
- Resources used are consistent with agency mission.
- Programs and resources are protected from waste, fraud, and mismanagement.
- Laws and regulations are followed.
- Reliable and timely information is obtained, maintained, reported and used for decision making.

Your agency's *internal controls* are a part of your agency's management controls that are used to assure that there is prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of your agency's assets. Your agency's appropriation and fund accounts are part of your agency's assets.

For further guidance on your agency's management and internal controls, see OMB Circular No. A-123, *Management Accountability and Control*.

Internal control requirements are one of the overarching requirements. This means that they apply to all financial management systems, including your agency's *fund control* system.

#### **150.4 What is the relationship between my agency's financial management system and its fund control system?**

Your agency's *financial management system* must support the preparation and execution of your agency's budget, among other things. Your agency's fund control system is part of your agency's budget execution process. Therefore, your agency's financial management system must support your agency's fund control system.

The policies and standards your agency must follow in developing, operating, evaluating, and reporting on financial management systems are in OMB Circular No. A-127, *Policies and Standards for Financial Management Systems*. For policies related to information technology that pertain to financial management systems, see OMB Circular No. A-130, *Management of Federal Information Resources*.

#### **150.5 What is the U.S. Standard General Ledger (USSGL) and how does it relate to my agency's financial management system?**

The USSGL includes a chart of accounts and technical guidance established to support the consistent recording of financial events as well as the preparation of standard external reports that are required by the central agencies, such as OMB and Treasury. The Treasury Financial Manual (TFM) USSGL Supplement provides:

- A list of the accounts (i.e., the chart of accounts).
- Descriptions of each account.
- A listing of transactions processed by Federal agencies.
- The posting models, including debit and credit pairs, for each type of transaction.
- The USSGL attributes that are an integral part of the USSGL.
- Crosswalks from the USSGL to various external reports, such as the SF 133 and the actual year column of the Program and Financing Schedule in the President's budget.

An electronic version of the TFM USSGL Supplement is available at <http://www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl/index.html>.

The OMB policies regarding the USSGL are in OMB Circular No. A-127, *Policies and Standards for Financial Management Systems*. Specifically, paragraph 7.c of A-127 requires that agencies record financial events throughout the financial management system using the USSGL at the transaction level. This is a legal requirement.

**150.6 What are Federal Financial Management Systems requirements and how are they related to my agency's fund control system?**

The *Federal Financial Management Systems Requirements* (FFMSR) are issued by the Joint Financial Management Improvement Program (JFMIP) to define the minimum functionality required for your agency's fund control system. The FFMSR are in JFMIP–SR–03–01, issued in January, 2003. An electronic version can be found at [http://www.jfmip.gov/jfmip/download/Systemreqs/revenue\\_system\\_requirements.pdf](http://www.jfmip.gov/jfmip/download/Systemreqs/revenue_system_requirements.pdf).

**150.7 When and how should I get OMB approval of my agency's fund control regulations?**

Use the checklist in [Appendix H](#) to prepare draft fund control regulations. Send your proposed update to OMB for approval.

For newly established agencies, submit an original and three copies of the proposed fund control regulations to the Director of OMB within 90 days after the agency is established. The Director of OMB will respond within 90 days after receiving the draft regulations. Agency fund control regulations are in effect only to the extent approved by OMB.

To revise regulations previously approved by OMB, submit an original and three copies of the draft revised regulations to the Director of OMB.

You should review your fund control regulations periodically to determine whether improvements should be made. At a minimum, review the system whenever:

- OMB issues revised guidance on budget execution.
- Your agency is reorganized.
- Staff from your agency has violated the Antideficiency Act.





# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 5**

### **FEDERAL CREDIT PROGRAMS**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT**

**OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



## SECTION 185—FEDERAL CREDIT (CLICK HERE TO GET UPDATED FILE)

### Table of Contents

#### *General Information*

- 185.1 Does this section apply to me?
- 185.2 What background information must I know?
- 185.3 What special terms must I know?
- 185.4 Are there special requirements for reporting Antideficiency Act violations?
- 185.5 How do I calculate the subsidy estimate?
- 185.6 How do I calculate reestimates?
- 185.7 How do I calculate and record modifications?
- 185.8 What must I know about the sale of loan assets?

#### *Budget Formulation Reporting Requirements*

- 185.9 What are the budget formulation reporting requirements for credit accounts?
- 185.10 What do I report for program accounts?
- 185.11 What do I report for financing accounts?
- 185.12 What do I report for liquidating accounts?
- 185.13 What do I report for receipt accounts?

#### *Apportionment*

- 185.14 Must credit accounts be apportioned?
- 185.15 When do I submit an apportionment request (SF 132)?
- 185.16 How do I fill out the SF 132?
- 185.17 Do amounts for an upward reestimate (and the interest on the reestimate) need to be apportioned?
- 185.18 Do amounts for a downward reestimate (and the interest on the reestimate) need to be apportioned?
- 185.19 Do amounts for interest payments to Treasury need to be apportioned?
- 185.20 Do amounts for debt repayments to Treasury need to be apportioned?
- 185.21 How do I handle modifications?

#### *Budget Execution Reporting Requirements*

- 185.22 Am I required to submit budget execution reports (SF 133)?
- 185.23 How do I fill out the SF 133?
- 185.24 How do I calculate the initial subsidy cost estimate for execution?
- 185.25 What transactions do I report when the Government incurs direct loan obligations or makes loan guarantee commitments?
- 185.26 What transactions do I report when the Government disburses a direct loan or a private lender disburses a guaranteed loan?
- 185.27 How do I handle non-subsidy cost collections?
- 185.28 What transactions do I report when a guaranteed loan defaults?
- 185.29 What should I do with unobligated balances in the liquidating account?
- 185.30 How do I report modifications of post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees?
- 185.31 How do I report modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees?

**Table of Contents—Continued***Interest Expense and Income*

- 185.32 Why do financing accounts borrow from Treasury?  
 185.33 Why do financing accounts earn interest?  
 185.34 Who calculates interest expense and income?  
 185.35 When do I calculate interest expense and income?  
 185.36 What interest rate do I use to calculate interest expense and income?

*MAX Schedules*

- Ex-185A Program account, program and financing schedule (schedule P)  
 Ex-185B Program account, summary of loan levels and subsidy data (schedule U)  
 Ex-185C Direct loan financing account, program and financing schedule (schedule P)  
 Ex-185D Direct loan financing account, status of direct loans (schedule G)  
 Ex-185E Direct loan financing account, balance sheet (schedule F)  
 Ex-185F Guaranteed loan financing account, program and financing schedule (schedule P)  
 Ex-185G Guaranteed loan financing account, status of guaranteed loans (schedule H)  
 Ex-185H Guaranteed loan financing account, balance sheet (schedule F)  
 Ex-185I Liquidating account, program and financing schedule (schedule P)  
 Ex-185J Liquidating account, status of direct loans (schedule G)  
 Ex-185K Liquidating account, status of guaranteed loans (schedule H)  
 Ex-185L Liquidating account, balance sheet (schedule F)

*Apportionment and Reapportionment*

- Ex-185M Standard Appropriations Language  
 Ex-185N Program Account  
 Ex-185O Direct Loan Financing Account  
 Ex-185P Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
 Ex-185Q Side-by-Side Account Comparison  
 Ex-185R Reapportionment for Modification  
 Ex-185S Reapportionment for Upward Reestimate  
 Ex-185T Reapportionment for Downward Reestimate

*Budget Execution Reporting*

- End of First Quarter  
 Ex-185U Program Account  
 Ex-185V Direct Loan Financing Account  
 Ex-185W Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
 Ex-185X Side-by-Side Account Comparison  
 End of Fiscal Year  
 Ex-185Y Program Account  
 Ex-185Z Direct Loan Financing Account  
 Ex-185AA Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
 Ex-185BB Side-by-Side Account Comparison

**Summary of Changes**

Outlay lines for reestimates in schedule U are no longer required (section 185.10).

Provides guidance on sales of performing loan assets (section 185.8).

### 185.1 Does this section apply to me?

These instructions apply to all programs that provide direct loans or loan guarantees (see sections 185.3(d) and (m) for definitions of these terms) to non-Federal entities and are subject to the Federal Credit Reform Act of 1990, as amended (FCRA). Even though Section 506 of the FCRA exempts certain programs from credit reform budgeting, these programs are still required to report data in MAX schedules G and H (see section 185.11) and follow other instructions contained in this Circular.

This section answers frequently asked questions, defines credit terms and concepts, and illustrates how budget formulation, apportionment, and budget execution forms should be prepared. This section supplements the instructions provided in other parts of this Circular and should be used in conjunction with other credit program guidance in Circular A-129, Policies for Federal Credit Programs and Non-Tax Receivables ([www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/circulars)).

Section 504(b) of the FCRA provides that new direct loan obligations and new loan guarantee commitments may be made only to the extent that:

- New budget authority to cover their costs is provided in advance in an appropriations act;
- A limitation on the use of funds otherwise available for the cost of a direct loan or loan guarantee program is provided in advance in an appropriations act; or
- Authority is otherwise provided in an appropriations act.

These requirements also apply to modifications of direct loans (or direct loan obligations) or loan guarantees (or loan guarantee commitments) that increase their cost, including modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees. OMB will specify exemptions from these requirements for mandatory programs pursuant to section 504(c) of the FCRA.

Unless otherwise specified by law, budget authority is available for liquidating obligations (i.e., outlays) for only five fiscal years after the authority expires. For credit subsidies financed by annual or multi-year budget authority, you must ensure that the budget authority for the subsidy cost will remain available for disbursement over the full period in which loans will be disbursed. If you expect the disbursement period will be longer than five fiscal years after the budget authority expires, you must include a special provision in the appropriations language (see section 95).

### 185.2 What background information must I know?

The FCRA changed the budgetary measurement of cost for direct loans and loan guarantees from the amount of cash flowing into or out of the Treasury to the estimated long-term cost to the Government. Only the unreimbursed costs of making or guaranteeing new loans (the subsidy cost, on a present value basis, and administrative expenses, on a cash basis) are included in the budget. Agencies must receive appropriations for the subsidy cost before they can enter into direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments. The actual cash flows are recorded as a means of financing (see section 20.7) and are not included in the budget totals.

The subsidy cost is the estimated present value of the cash flows from the Government (excluding administrative expenses) less the estimated present value of the cash flows to the Government resulting from a direct loan or loan guarantee, discounted to the time when the loan is disbursed. The cash flows are the contractual cash flows adjusted for expected deviations from the contract terms (delinquencies, defaults, prepayments, and other factors). Present values must be calculated using the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator. The OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator discounts the cash flow that is estimated for

each year (or other time period) using the interest rate on a marketable zero-coupon Treasury security with the same maturity from the date of disbursement as that cash flow. A positive net present value means that the Government is extending a subsidy to borrowers; a negative present value means that the credit program generates a "profit" (excluding administrative costs) to the Government.

Appropriations for the subsidy cost are made to the program account established for the credit program and are recorded as budget authority. Obligations for the subsidy cost are recorded when the Government enters into a loan obligation or guarantee commitment. Outlays are recorded when the direct loan or guaranteed loan is disbursed to the public and simultaneously the subsidy is paid from the program account to the financing account. The program account also receives appropriations for the direct costs of administering the credit program.

The actual cash flows (e.g., loan disbursements, collections of principal and interest payments, and payment of guarantee claims) are recorded in separate financing accounts. There is at least one financing account associated with each program account. Separate financing accounts are required for direct loan cash flows and for loan guarantee cash flows if the program account provides subsidy costs for both forms of credit. The transactions of the financing accounts are displayed in the budget *Appendix* for informational and analytical purposes, together with the related program accounts, but are excluded from the budget totals because the net cash flows do not represent a cost to the Government. The direct loan financing account combines the subsidy payment from the program account with borrowing from Treasury to finance the direct loans. It repays Treasury over time using principal and interest collected from the borrower. The loan guarantee financing account holds the subsidy payment from the program account as a reserve against default claims. The reserve, together with interest earnings on this reserve from Treasury, is used to pay default claims over the life of the loans.

All cash flows resulting from direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments made prior to the effective date of the FCRA (in FY 1991 or previous years) are recorded in liquidating accounts. These accounts are recorded on a cash basis and are included in the budget totals. Liquidating account collections are available to pay obligations of the account, but they are not available to finance new direct loans or loan guarantees. If the collections are insufficient, the FCRA provides liquidating accounts with permanent indefinite authority to pay for losses and to repay any debt owed to Treasury or to other sources.

By focusing on the long-term costs of the program, credit budgeting meets the most fundamental goal of budgetary cost measurement: it provides decision makers with the information and the incentive to allocate resources efficiently. Unlike most budgetary transactions, the cash disbursements for a credit program are a poor measure of cost. Counting outlays for loan disbursements without taking into account probable repayments overstates the cost of a direct loan. Loan guarantees appear costless initially because payments of guarantee claims generally occur several years after the decision to extend credit has been made. Credit budgeting places the cost of credit programs on a budgetary basis equivalent to other federal spending, allowing for better comparison of cost between direct loan and loan guarantee programs and between credit and other programs. This improves the incentive to make good budgetary decisions.

Agencies are required to reestimate the subsidy cost throughout the life of each cohort of direct loans or loan guarantees to account for differences between the original assumptions of cash flow and actual cash flow or revised assumptions about future cash flow. These reestimates represent additional costs or savings to the Government and are recorded in the budget. Reestimates that indicate an increase in the subsidy cost are financed by permanent indefinite authority. There are two types of reestimates. Interest rate reestimates adjust for the effect on the subsidy of differences between actual interest rates and the interest rates assumed when estimates were made for budget formulation and obligation (the same interest rate assumptions must be used at formulation and obligation). These reestimates must be made

when the cohort is at least 90 percent disbursed. Technical reestimates adjust for revised assumptions about loan performance, such as differences between assumed and actual default rates or new projections of prepayments. These reestimates must be made after the close of each fiscal year, unless an alternative plan has been approved by OMB.

Modifications of a direct loan or loan guarantee can also change the subsidy cost. A modification is any Government action different from the baseline assumptions that affects the subsidy cost, such as a change in the terms of the loan contract or legislation that provides new collection tools. The cost of a modification is the difference between the present value of the cash flows before and after the modification. Agencies must have been provided budget authority to cover the cost of a modification that increases the subsidy before the loans can be modified.

### 185.3 What special terms must I know?

The following are key terms used in credit budgeting. In these definitions, the term "post-1991" means direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments made on or after October 1, 1991, and the resulting direct loans or loan guarantees. The term "pre-1992" means direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments made prior to October 1, 1991, and the resulting direct loans or loan guarantees.

(a) *Administrative expenses* mean all costs that are directly related to credit program operations. The FCRA generally requires that administrative expenses for both pre-1992 and post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees be included in program accounts. Administrative expenses are included in the liquidating accounts only if the amounts would have been available for administrative expenses under a provision of law in effect prior to October 1, 1991, and if no direct loan obligation or loan guarantee commitment has been made, or any modification of a direct loan or loan guarantee has been made, since September 30, 1991.

Administrative expenses that are tangentially related to the credit program should not be included in the program account. As an illustration, the cost of auditing credit programs that is financed in the accounts for Inspectors General should not be included. Administrative expenses include:

- The appropriate proportion of administrative expenses that are shared with non-credit programs;
- The cost of operating separate offices or units that make policy decisions for credit programs;
- The cost of loan systems development and maintenance, including computer costs (under no circumstances should computer costs be paid out of financing accounts);
- The cost of monitoring credit programs and private lenders for compliance with laws and regulations;
- The cost of all activities related to credit extension, loan servicing, write-off, and close out; and
- The cost of collecting delinquent loans, except for the costs of foreclosing, managing, and selling collateral that are capitalized or routinely deducted from the proceeds of sales.

The capitalized costs of foreclosing, managing, and selling collateral are those that add or maintain value to property prior to sale and are routinely deducted from the proceeds of sales of collateral. Capitalized costs are part of the cash flows that must be taken into account in calculating the subsidy cost. They are financed by the subsidy cost payment from the program account to the financing account and paid out of the financing account.

Administrative expenses may be expended directly from the program account or, if authorized by appropriation language (see section 95), used to reimburse a salaries and expenses account or the Federal Financing Bank (FFB). If they are transferred to a salaries and expenses account or the FFB, record the transfer as an expenditure transfer. Record an obligation and outlay in the program account and an offsetting collection in the salaries and expenses account. In the salaries and expenses account, obligations for administrative expenses may be recorded without necessarily identifying them as credit program expenses.

Administrative expenses are almost always provided by annual appropriations acts and, therefore, are discretionary spending. If such expenses are included in a program account that subsidizes a mandatory program, the account will be split between mandatory and discretionary spending.

(b) **Claim payment** means a payment made to private lenders when a guaranteed loan defaults. Report default claim obligations and disbursements in the program and financing schedule (schedule P) in liquidating and guaranteed loan financing accounts. As described below, report the claim payments in the status of guaranteed loans schedule (schedule H) and, for liquidating accounts only, the object class schedule (schedule O). If a loan asset is acquired in exchange for the claim payment, report the claim payment as a termination for default that results in a loan receivable on line 2261 of schedule H, and, for liquidating accounts, as investment and loan obligations on object class line 33 in schedule O. Use the schedule H addendum lines 2310-2390 to track the status of the loans receivable. If a physical asset is acquired in exchange for the claim payment, report the claim payment as a termination for default that results in acquisition of property on line 2262 of schedule H, and, for liquidating accounts, the object class that best represents the asset in schedule O. For example, if the asset is a building, then classify the obligations on line 32, land and structures. (See section 83.7 for object classification). If nothing of value is received in exchange for the claim payment, report the claim payment as termination for defaults that result in claim payments on line 2263 in schedule H, and, for liquidating accounts, as insurance claims and indemnities on object class line 42 in schedule O.

(c) **Cohort** means all direct loans or loan guarantees of a program for which a subsidy appropriation is provided for a given fiscal year (except as provided below for pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees that are modified). For direct loans and loan guarantees for which a subsidy appropriation is provided for one fiscal year, the cohort will be defined by that fiscal year. For direct loans and loan guarantees for which multi-year or no-year appropriations are provided, the cohort is defined by the year of obligation. Direct loans and loan guarantees that are made from supplemental appropriations will be recorded in the same cohort as those that are funded in annual appropriations acts. These rules apply even if the direct loans or guaranteed loans are disbursed in subsequent years.

Cohort accounting applies to post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees and pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees that have been modified. Post-1991 direct loans or loan guarantees remain with their original cohort throughout the life of the loans, even if they are modified. Pre-1992 direct and guaranteed loans are assigned to a single cohort by program and credit instrument regardless of the fiscal year of the subsidy appropriation. For purposes of budget presentation, cohorts will be aggregated. However, accounting and other records must be maintained separately for each cohort.

(d) **Direct loan** means a disbursement of funds by the Government to a non-Federal borrower under a contract that requires repayment of such funds with or without interest. The term includes:

- The purchase of, or participation in, a loan made by another lender;
- Financing arrangements that defer payment for more than 90 days, including the sale of a Government asset on credit terms; and



- Loans financed by the Federal Financing Bank (FFB) pursuant to agency loan guarantee authority (see also section 33.14).

The term does not include the acquisition of federally guaranteed loans in satisfaction of default or other guarantee claims or the price support loans of the Commodity Credit Corporation.

Pre-1992 loans made by the FFB on behalf of any agency continue to be recorded as direct loans of the agency. Agency guarantees of post-1991 loans that are financed by the FFB are treated as direct loans in the budget, but the intrabudgetary cash flows reflect elements of direct loans and loan guarantees. The direct loan financing account for these loans will collect and hold the subsidy payment from the program account. This balance, together with interest earnings, will be available to pay the FFB in the event of default by the non-Federal borrower. Agencies with programs financed by the FFB should consult with the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the program to ensure correct treatment of these loans.

(e) **Direct loan obligation** means a binding agreement by a Federal agency to make a direct loan when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower.

(f) **Direct loan subsidy cost** means the estimated long-term cost to the Government of a direct loan, calculated on a net present value basis, excluding administrative costs. Specifically, the cost of a direct loan is the net present value, at the time when the direct loan is disbursed from the financing account, of the following estimated cash flows:

- Loan disbursements;
- Repayments of principal;
- Payments of interest;
- Recoveries or proceeds of asset sales; and
- Other payments by or to the Government over the life of the loan.

These estimated cash flows include the effects of estimated defaults, prepayments, fees, penalties, and expected actions by the Government and the borrower within the terms of the loan contract, such as the exercise by the borrower of an option included in the loan contract.

Obligations for the subsidy cost will be recorded against budget authority in the program account when the direct loan obligation is incurred. Accounts payable (to the direct loan financing account) will be recorded in the amount of the estimated obligation. The subsidy will be paid to the financing account when the loan is disbursed. (See section 185.5 and the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator and accompanying documentation for information about estimating the subsidy.)

(g) **Discount rates** mean the collection of interest rates that are used to calculate the present value of the cash flows that are estimated over a period of years. The discount rates are based on the Treasury rates in the economic assumptions for the budget year. For loans made, guaranteed, or modified in FY 2001 and thereafter, the cash flow estimated for each year (or other time period) is discounted using the interest rate on a marketable zero-coupon Treasury security with the same maturity from the date of disbursement as that cash flow. The discount rate assumptions for the budget will be provided by OMB in a file for use with the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator. The rate at which interest will be paid on the amounts borrowed or held as an uninvested balance by a financing account for a particular cohort is a weighted average discount rate derived from this collection of interest rates. Electronic spreadsheets are available from OMB to calculate interest income or expense for financing accounts.

(h) **Economic assumptions** include the interest rates used for discounting cash flows, the rate of inflation, and may include other assumptions as applicable to a particular program. They also include the interest

rate charged to the borrower on the loan, if the rate is tied to a variable benchmark, such as the rate on specified Treasury securities.

(i) **Financing account** means a non-budgetary account (i.e., its transactions are excluded from the budget totals) that records all of the cash flows resulting from post-1991 direct loans or loan guarantees. It disburses loans, collects repayments and fees, makes claim payments, holds balances, borrows from Treasury, earns or pays interest, and receives the subsidy cost payment from the credit program account. There is at least one financing account associated with each program account. Separate financing accounts are required for direct loan cash flows and for loan guarantee cash flows if the program account receives an appropriation for the subsidy costs of both forms of credit. Financing account schedules are printed in the budget *Appendix* together with the program account.

(j) **Forecast assumptions** are factors that affect the expected cash flows of the loan or guarantee. They are factors which are estimated, but not actually observable, at the time of loan origination or modification. They include: default rates, timing of defaults, delinquency rates, late fees, proceeds from the sale of collateral or acquired defaulted loans, income from (and costs of managing) foreclosed collateral and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans, reschedulings, prepayments, loan asset sales proceeds and costs, and disbursement rates.

(k) **Liquidating account** means a budget account that records all cash flows to and from the Government resulting from pre-1992 direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments (unless they have been modified and transferred to a financing account). Liquidating account collections in any year are available only for obligations incurred during that year or to repay debt. In general, all liquidating account transactions are classified as mandatory. Collections credited to a liquidating account include:

- Interest;
- Loan repayments and prepayments;
- Payments from financing accounts when required for modifications;
- Proceeds from the sales of loans; and
- Fees.

These collections are available only for:

- Interest payments and repayment of debt;
- Disbursements of loans;
- Default and other guarantee claim payments;
- Interest supplement payments;
- Cost of foreclosing, managing, and selling collateral that is capitalized or routinely deducted from the proceeds of sales;
- Payments to financing accounts when required for modifications;
- Administrative expenses, but only if (1) amounts credited to the liquidating accounts would have been available for administrative expenses under a provision of law in effect prior to October 1, 1991, and (2) no direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments have been made, or any modification of a direct loan or loan guarantee has been made, since September 30, 1991; and

- Other payments that are necessary for the liquidation of pre-1992 direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments.

Amounts credited to liquidating accounts in any year are only available for obligations that are incurred in that year (the outlay may occur in a subsequent year) and for repayment of debt. Any remaining unobligated balances at the end of the fiscal year are unavailable for obligation in subsequent fiscal years and must be transferred to the general fund at the end of the fiscal year unless an extension has been approved by OMB (see section [51.12](#)).

The FCRA provides permanent indefinite authority to cover obligations and commitments in the event that funds in liquidating accounts are otherwise insufficient. If the liquidating account's obligations will exceed its collections during the year, the agency must request an apportionment and warrant of permanent indefinite authority estimated to be needed for the fiscal year, before the beginning of the fiscal year.

The liquidating account status of direct and/or guaranteed loans schedule reflects disbursements and repayments of pre-1992 loans. Therefore, in the liquidating account status of direct and/or guaranteed loans:

- There will be no post-1991 direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments;
- Direct and guaranteed loan disbursements will be shown only for pre-1992 direct loans or loan guarantees; and
- Repayments and prepayments will reflect only pre-1992 direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments.

(l) ***Loan asset sale*** means a sale of one or more loans to a non-Federal buyer, individually, pooled, packaged, securitized, or as a joint venture, at a single point in time, subject to parties fulfilling the terms and conditions of the Government's offer. Loan assets consist of direct loans and loan receivables resulting from defaulted guaranteed loans.

(m) ***Loan guarantee*** means any guarantee, insurance, or other pledge with respect to the payment of all or a part of the principal or interest on any debt obligation of a non-Federal borrower to a non-Federal lender, except for the insurance of deposits, shares, or other withdrawable accounts in financial institutions. Loans that are financed by the FFB pursuant to agency loan guarantee authority are treated as direct loans rather than loan guarantees.

(n) ***Loan guarantee commitment*** means a binding agreement by a Federal agency to make a loan guarantee when specified conditions are fulfilled by the borrower, the lender, or any other party to the guarantee agreement.

(o) ***Loan guarantee subsidy cost*** means the estimated long-term cost to the Government of a loan guarantee, calculated on a net present value basis, excluding administrative costs. Specifically, the cost of a loan guarantee is the net present value, at the time when the guaranteed loan is disbursed by the lender, of the following estimated cash flows:

- Payments by the Government to cover defaults and delinquencies, interest subsidies, and other requirements; and
- Payments to the Government, including origination and other fees, penalties, and recoveries.

These estimated cash flows include the effects of expected Government actions and the exercise by the guaranteed lender or the borrower of an option included in the loan guarantee contract.

Obligations for the subsidy cost are recorded against budget authority in the program account when the loan guarantee commitment is made. The subsidy is paid to the guaranteed loan financing account when the loan is disbursed by the private lender. (See section 185.5 and the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator and accompanying documentation for information about estimating the subsidy.)

(p) **Loan terms** are those terms made explicit in the contract between the U.S. Government and the borrower or in the Federally guaranteed contract between a private lender and the borrower. These assumptions are forecast in the formulation subsidy cost estimate but are known at the time of loan origination. They may include: the interest rate charged on loans, the extent of a guarantee, fees, repayment terms, collateral held, and other factors such as grace periods.

(q) **Methodological assumptions** are the technical practices used to develop subsidy cost estimates and loan modification cost estimates. These assumptions include methods and models or cash flow estimation, discounting methodology, and mathematical equations used in subsidy cost estimation. Agencies are required to use the same version of the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator within risk categories and cohorts.

(r) **Modification** means a Government action that (1) differs from actions assumed in the baseline estimate of cash flows and (2) changes the estimated cost of an outstanding direct loan (or direct loan obligation) or an outstanding loan guarantee (or loan guarantee commitment). The modification may be for a single loan or loan guarantee as well as a group; it may be any size; and it may affect pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees or post-1991 direct loans or loan guarantees. New legislation that alters the baseline cash flow estimate for a loan or group of loans always results in a modification.

A Government action may change the cost directly by altering the terms of existing contracts, selling loan assets (with or without recourse) or converting guaranteed loans to direct loans by purchasing them from a private lender. It also may change the cost indirectly by legislatively changing the way in which a portfolio of direct loans or guaranteed loans is administered. Examples of changes in the terms of existing loan contracts are forgiveness, forbearance, interest rate reductions, extensions of maturity, and prepayments without penalty. Examples of changes in loan administration are new methods of debt collection, such as using tax refunds to repay loans and restrictions on debt collections. If the baseline cost estimate does not assume an action, and the cost would be increased or decreased as a result of that action, the action is a modification.

Modifications do not include a Government action that is assumed in the baseline cost estimate, as long as the assumption is documented and has been approved by OMB. For example, modifications would not include routine administrative workouts (see section 185.3(aa)) of troubled loans or loans in imminent default. They also would not include a borrower's or the Government's exercise of an option that is permitted within the terms of an existing contract, such as a borrower prepaying the loan. The baseline subsidy estimate must include all anticipated actions by the Government, lenders, and borrowers that are permissible under current law and that affect the cash flow. Subsequently, if the cost estimate of an action by the borrower, lender, or the Government differs from what is anticipated in the documented baseline subsidy estimate, then the difference in cost is included in a reestimate. Assumptions underlying the subsidy estimates must be documented to assist in determining whether an action is a modification or a reestimate.

Modifications do not include additional disbursements to borrowers that increase the amount of an outstanding direct loan or an outstanding loan guarantee. These are treated as new direct loans or loan guarantees in the amount of the additional disbursement.

There are situations where it is not clear whether a Government action constitutes a modification or a reestimate. These situations should be judged on a case-by-case basis by OMB in consultation with the agency. They could include actions by the Government that are not addressed in existing contracts, management changes that are within an agency's existing specific authority for the loan program, and broad changes in agency policy (e.g., loan sale policy). In general, if the possibility of the action was explicitly included in the cash flows for the baseline subsidy estimate, and this can be documented, it would most likely be a reestimate. If not, it would most likely be a modification.

Modifications produce a one-time change in the subsidy cost of *outstanding* direct loans and loan guarantees. The effect of the Government action on the subsidy cost of direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments made after the date of the modification, if there is any effect, is not a modification. Instead, the effects are incorporated in the initial cost estimates for subsequent direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments.

(s) **Modification cost** means the difference between the estimate of the net present value of the remaining cash flows assumed for the direct loan or loan guarantee contract before and after the modification. The estimate of the remaining cash flows before the modification must be the same as assumed in the baseline for the most recent President's budget. The estimate of the remaining cash flows after the modification must be the pre-modification cash flows adjusted solely to reflect the effects of the modification.

An outstanding direct loan (or direct loan obligation) or loan guarantee (or loan guarantee commitment) can not be modified in a manner that increases its cost, unless budget authority for the additional cost has been provided in advance in an appropriations act. If the modification is mandated in legislation, the legislation itself provides the budget authority to incur a subsidy cost obligation (whether explicitly stated or not).

Budget authority, an obligation, and an outlay will be recorded in the year in which the legislation is enacted or the administrative discretion is exercised, or in the case of appropriations acts enacted before the fiscal year to which they apply, the year for which appropriations are provided.

When post-1991 direct loans or loan guarantees are modified, a modification adjustment transfer between the financing account and the general fund must also be calculated. When pre-1992 direct loans or loan guarantees are modified, a transfer must be made between the liquidating account and financing account. These calculations and the budgetary treatment are explained in section 185.7.

(t) **Negative subsidies** mean subsidy costs that are less than zero. They occur if the present value of cash inflows to the Government exceeds the present value of cash outflows. In such cases, appropriations bills must still provide specific authority before direct loans or loan guarantees can be made, generally in the form of a loan limitation.

When a direct loan obligation or a loan guarantee commitment is made that has a negative subsidy, an amount equal to the negative subsidy will be obligated in the financing account. When the loan is disbursed, the financing account will pay the negative subsidy to the negative subsidy receipt account if the program is discretionary or to the program account if the program is mandatory. The collections are recorded as offsetting receipts or offsetting collections, and they offset the agency's budget authority and outlays. The accounting for negative subsidies is discussed in (u) below.

(u) **Negative subsidy receipt accounts** mean budget accounts for the receipt of amounts paid from the financing account when there is a negative subsidy for the original estimate (see section 185.3(t)). In most cases, the receipt account is a general fund receipt account and amounts are not earmarked for the credit program. They are available for appropriation only in the sense that all general fund receipts are

available for appropriation. Separate downward reestimate receipt accounts are used to record amounts paid from the financing account for downward reestimates (see section 185.3(x)).

At the discretion of the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the program, a special fund receipt account may instead be established for the purpose of earmarking the receipts for appropriation to the program (in which case a special fund expenditure account also will be established and merged with the program account). If the program is a discretionary program, these receipts are available for obligation only to the extent provided in annual appropriations acts. For mandatory programs, the receipts are permanently appropriated for subsidy costs but usually are available for administrative expenses only to the extent provided in annual appropriations acts. For mandatory programs, negative subsidies and downward reestimates may be credited directly to the program account as offsetting collections from non-Federal sources.

Obligations may not be incurred against appropriations of the receipts until they have been credited to the receipt account. Because negative subsidy receipts are not credited to the receipt account until the underlying direct loan or guaranteed loan is disbursed, they might not become available in time to fund expenditures in a timely manner. Such situations might require an appropriation from the general fund to permit obligations to be made until receipts are available for obligation.

(v) **Net proceeds**, when used in the context of loan asset sales, mean the amounts paid by the purchasers less all seller transaction costs (such as underwriting, rating agency, legal, financial advisory, and due diligence fees) that are paid out of the gross sales proceeds rather than paid as direct obligations by the agency. The net proceeds from the sale of an equity partnership are the same as defined above plus an estimate of the net present value of future cash inflows to the Government from the sale.

(w) **Program account** means a budget account that receives and obligates appropriations to cover the subsidy cost of a direct loan or loan guarantee and disburses the subsidy cost to the financing account. Program accounts usually receive a separate appropriation for administrative expenses.

(x) **Reestimates** mean revisions of the subsidy cost estimate of a cohort (or risk category) based on information about the actual performance and/or estimated changes in future cash flows of the cohort. Reestimates must be made immediately after the end of each fiscal year, as long as any loans in the cohort are outstanding, unless a different plan is approved by OMB (see section 185.6). An upward reestimate indicates that insufficient funds had been paid to the financing account, so the increase (plus interest on reestimates) is paid from the program account to the financing account to make it whole. Permanent indefinite budget authority is available for this purpose pursuant to section 504(f) of the FCRA. A downward reestimate indicates that too much subsidy had been paid to the financing account. For discretionary programs, the excess (plus interest) is disbursed to a downward reestimate receipt account (see section 185.3(u)). For mandatory programs, the excess (plus interest) may be credited directly to the program account as offsetting collections or to a downward reestimate receipt account.

(y) **Risk categories** mean subdivisions of a cohort of direct loans or loan guarantees into groups that are relatively homogeneous in cost, given the facts known at the time of obligation or commitment. They are developed by agencies in consultation with the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account. The number will depend on the size of the difference in subsidy cost between categories and the ability to predict it statistically based on facts known at origination.

Risk categories will group all direct loans or loan guarantees within a cohort that share characteristics predictive of defaults and other costs. They may be defined by characteristics or combinations of characteristics of the loan, the project financed, and/or the borrower. Examples of characteristics or indicators that may predict cost include:

- The loan-to-value ratio;
- The relationship between the loan interest rate and relevant market rates;
- Type of school attended for education loans;
- Country risk categories for international loans; and
- Various asset or income ratios.

Statistical evidence must be presented, based on historical analysis of program data or comparable credit data, concerning the likely costs of defaults, other deviations from contract, or other costs that are expected to be associated with the loans in that category.

(z) **Subsidy estimates** mean estimates of budget authority and outlays for direct loan and loan guarantee subsidy costs for a cohort or risk category of direct loans or loan guarantees. Like budget estimates for non-credit programs, the budget includes both Presidential policy subsidy estimates and baseline subsidy estimates. Baseline subsidy estimates project the current year (CY) levels of subsidy costs into the outyears based on laws already enacted. Presidential policy subsidy estimates reflect the effect on subsidy costs of policies included in the budget, including any proposed legislation that would affect subsidy costs. See section 185.5 for guidance on calculating subsidy estimates.

(aa) **Work-outs** mean plans that offer options short of default or foreclosure for resolving troubled loans or loans in imminent default, such as deferring or forgiving principal or interest, reducing the borrower's interest rate, extending the loan maturity, or postponing collection action. Work-outs are expected to minimize the cost to the Government of resolving troubled loans or loans in imminent default. They should only be utilized if it is likely that the borrower will be able to repay under the terms of the work-out and if the cost of the work-out is less than the cost of default or foreclosure. For post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees, the expected effects of work-outs on cash flow are included in the original estimate of the subsidy cost. Therefore, to the extent that the effects of work-outs on cash flow are the same as originally estimated, they do not alter the subsidy cost. If the effects on cash flow are more or less than the original estimate, the differences are included in reestimates of the subsidy and are not a modification.

#### **185.4 Are there special requirements for reporting Antideficiency Act violations?**

Yes. The special requirements for credit programs are provided in section 145.3.

#### **185.5 How do I calculate the subsidy estimate?**

(a) *General.*

You must provide subsidy estimates for both Presidential policy and the baseline for all budget accounts that have post-1991 direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments or that have modifications of pre-1992 direct loan or loan guarantee contracts. You must make subsidy estimates for each risk category. Under section 503(a) of the FCRA, OMB has the final responsibility for determining subsidy estimates, in consultation with the agencies.

Use the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator to discount all agency-generated estimates of cash flows to and from the Government. The OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator and documentation provide an explanation and example of the discounting method and how the subsidy rate is calculated. All agencies must use the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator and discount rates to ensure government-wide comparability and uniformity of discounting. These can be obtained from the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account.

Direct loan and loan guarantee subsidy costs are defined in sections 185.3(f) and (o). The subsidy cost is the estimated long-term cost to the Government of direct loans or loan guarantees calculated on a net present value basis, excluding administrative costs. For budget formulation (and execution), subsidy estimates are to be based on the economic and technical assumptions underlying the President's budget that is submitted for the fiscal year in which the funds will be obligated. For CY, this means using the economic and technical assumptions underlying the BY subsidy estimates contained in the President's budget for the previous year (adjusted for changes in terms of the contract or legislation enacted since the budget was transmitted; see section 185.24). For BY through BY+4, this means using the economic and technical assumptions in the President's budget that will be submitted for BY.

For loans made, guaranteed, or modified in FY 2001 and thereafter, the cash flow that is estimated for each year (or other time period) is discounted using the interest rate on a marketable zero-coupon Treasury security with the same maturity from the date of disbursement as that cash flow; for example, a cash flow expected to occur one year after the date of disbursement will be discounted at the one-year zero-coupon Treasury rate. The discount rate assumptions for the budget will be provided by OMB in a file for use with the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator.

For purposes of calculating loan guarantee subsidy estimates, the loan guarantee commitment is the full principal amount of the loan that is guaranteed, not just the portion guaranteed by the Government.

(b) *Presidential policy subsidy estimates.*

Make separate subsidy estimates for all programs (discretionary and mandatory) for CY and BY. The steps for calculating the presidential policy estimates of subsidy budget authority and outlays (including negative subsidies) for a cohort (or risk category) of direct loans and loan guarantees are as follows:

- *Step 1.* Estimate the cash flows to and from the Government for the cohort of direct loans or loan guarantees obligated or committed in that year, for that year and each subsequent year for the life of the direct or guaranteed loan. If you have not finalized the requested amount of obligations or commitments, you may use any amount to calculate the subsidy estimate as long as the cash flows you have developed are based on that same amount. Discount these cash flows to the point of loan disbursement using the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator. The difference between the present value of the cash outflows and inflows is the total subsidy (i.e., the subsidy cost) for the obligations or commitments made in that year.
- *Step 2.* (Performed automatically by the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator.) Calculate the subsidy rate for the cohort by dividing the subsidy cost by the direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments made in that year.
- *Step 3.* When the requested amount of direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments has been finalized, multiply the subsidy rate by the direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments to calculate budget authority (or offsetting receipts, in the case of negative subsidies) for the subsidy cost.
- *Step 4.* Subsidy outlays for each fiscal year are equal to the subsidy cost for all loans disbursed in that year, whether the loans or guarantees were obligated or committed in that year or in prior years.

(c) *Baseline subsidy estimates.*

The steps for calculating the baseline estimates of subsidy budget authority and outlays (including negative subsidies) for a cohort (or risk category) of direct loans and loan guarantees are as follows:



- *Step 1.* For discretionary programs, inflate the subsidy budget authority enacted for CY (the base year) to calculate the subsidy budget authority for BY through BY+4. The inflator is the annual adjustment factor for non-pay costs (the gross domestic product chain-type price index) provided in the economic assumptions for the President's budget that will be submitted for BY.
- *Step 2.* For mandatory programs, first calculate the subsidy rate as described above under "presidential policy estimates," excluding the effects of any legislative proposals. Then multiply the subsidy rate by the baseline estimate of demand for loans to calculate the subsidy BA.
- *Step 3.* For any programs with negative subsidies, first calculate the subsidy rate as described above under "presidential policy estimates," excluding the effects of any legislative proposals. Then multiply the subsidy rate by the baseline estimate of demand for loans, constrained by the estimated limitation, to calculate the amount of offsetting receipts. The limitation should be estimated by inflating the CY enacted limitation using the annual adjustment factor for non-pay costs (the gross domestic product chain-type price index) provided in the economic assumptions for the President's budget that will be submitted for BY.
- *Step 4.* Subsidy outlays for each fiscal year are equal to the subsidy cost for all loans disbursed in that year, whether the loans or guarantees were obligated or committed in that year or in prior years. For CY only, the total also includes outlays for reestimates and interest on reestimates. First calculate outlays expected from disbursements of loans obligated or committed in prior fiscal years; for example, the subsidy cost of a direct loan obligated in CY that disburses equally over 2 years will outlay 50 percent in the first year (CY) and 50 percent in the second year (BY). Then add outlays from disbursements of loans obligated or committed in that year. For CY only, you should also add outlays for reestimates and (although it is not part of the subsidy as such) add outlays for interest on reestimates.

### 185.6 How do I calculate reestimates?

#### (a) *General.*

Subsidy reestimates are made on direct loans and loan guarantees that have been disbursed. They are recorded in the current year column of the budget. (For example, the subsidy for direct or guaranteed loans disbursed during 1999 would be reestimated during 2000 and would be recorded in the 2000 column of the FY 2001 Budget.) A closing reestimate should be made once all the loans in the cohort have been repaid or written off.

Two different types of reestimates are made:

- Interest rate reestimates, for differences between interest rate assumptions at the time of formulation (the same assumption is used at the time of obligation or commitment) and the actual interest rate(s) for the year(s) of disbursement; and
- Technical reestimates, for changes in technical assumptions.

*Interest rate reestimates of the subsidy cost* of a cohort of direct loans or loan guarantees must be made when a cohort has substantially disbursed (i.e., when at least 90 percent of the direct loans or guaranteed loans have been disbursed). The computation should be made after the close of the fiscal year in which this criterion is met, unless a later time within the same fiscal year is approved by the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account. You may calculate interest rate reestimates more frequently than under this requirement, including a final interest rate reestimate when the cohort has

fully disbursed. If you decide to do so, consult with the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the account.

An interest rate reestimate will be made to adjust the subsidy estimate for the difference between the interest rates estimated at the time of formulation (the same assumptions are used at the time of obligation or commitment) and the actual interest rate(s) prevailing during the year(s) of disbursement. To calculate the size of this effect, all other assumptions (disbursement rates, default rates, etc.) must be identical to those used to calculate the original subsidy estimate. For those programs with variable interest rate supplements to the lender or with variable interest rates charged to the borrower, the original cash flow projections are adjusted to incorporate the actual interest rate(s) prevailing during the year(s) of disbursement and are subsequently adjusted after the end of each year so long as the loans are outstanding.

*Technical reestimates of the subsidy cost* of a cohort of direct loans or loan guarantees must be made after the close of each fiscal year as long as the loans are outstanding, unless a different plan is approved by the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account. The different plan might be with regard to the time when reestimates are made within the year or the frequency of reestimates. If the plan allows reestimates to be made less frequently than every year, it should require reestimates to be made for any year when any one of the following four conditions is met:

- (1) When required based on periodic schedules established in coordination with OMB, consistent with the unique attributes of each program (e.g., initially every two years after the cohort has been substantially disbursed, then every five years);
- (2) When a major change in actual versus projected activity is detected (e.g., a loan that is large relative to the size of the portfolio goes into default or prepays substantially earlier than expected);
- (3) When a material difference is detected through monitoring triggers developed in coordination with OMB. The triggers would focus on major data elements (e.g., total projected versus total actual cohort collections) rather than in-depth individual cohort analysis. Agencies should focus on a few major loan elements recognizing there are different key elements applicable to each program and different reporting problems; and
- (4) When a cohort is being closed out.

Technical reestimates are made for all changes in assumptions other than interest rates. This type of reestimate compares the subsidy estimate that already includes any reestimate for actual interest rates with a reestimated subsidy using updated technical information (for defaults, fees, recoveries, etc.) as well as actual interest rates.

The purpose of technical reestimates is to adjust the subsidy estimate for differences between the original projection of cash flows (as estimated at obligation) and the amount and timing of cash flows that are expected based on actual experience, new forecasts about future economic conditions, and other events and improvements in the methods used to estimate future cash flows. Because actual cash flows are experienced every year and the ability to forecast future years also changes, this reestimate must be done after the end of every fiscal year as long as any loans are outstanding (except as provided above).

Reestimates must be made separately for each cohort. If a cohort is divided into risk categories, each risk category within a cohort must be reestimated separately. The reestimate will then be compared with the previous estimate. For this purpose, all details of the previous subsidy estimates by risk category should be retained in program records.

*The requirements for recording reestimates in the budget and the financial statements are not identical.* For both interest rate and technical reestimates, you should record reestimates in the budget whenever they have been made for the financial statements even if they are not otherwise required for the budget under the criteria of this chapter (e.g., if interest rate reestimates are made before the cohort is substantially disbursed, or if technical reestimates are made more often than under a plan OMB has approved). You should also be sure to record reestimates in the budget whenever they are required for the budget under the criteria of this section, even if they are not required for the financial statements (e.g., if reestimates are not material for the financial statements). Whenever reestimates are made less frequently than every year, the reestimate should cover cumulatively the entire period since the last reestimate.

(b) *Calculating interest rate reestimates.*

Use the following procedures to calculate interest rate reestimates, unless an alternative method has been approved by OMB. An electronic reestimate worksheet is available from OMB to assist with these calculations. For further details, see the instructions accompanying the OMB reestimate worksheet. The reestimate worksheet is available from the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account.

- *Step 1.* Start with the original cash flows used to estimate the subsidy at obligation (on a risk category basis).
- *Step 2.* Reestimate the subsidy rate using the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator. The Calculator will use the actual average annual interest rate for the year in which the loans were disbursed. For programs that disburse over more than one year, the calculator will determine a disbursement-weighted average discount rate based on actual annual interest rates for each year in which loans have disbursed and the original disbursement assumptions. The Calculator will use this discount rate to calculate a revised subsidy rate for the entire cohort.
- *Step 3.* (Performed automatically by the OMB reestimate worksheet.) Calculate the percentage point difference between this revised subsidy rate and the subsidy rate estimated at the time of obligation. For example, if the subsidy rate estimated at the time of obligation is 7 percent and the revised subsidy rate is 9 percent, then this difference is 2 percentage points.
- *Step 4.* (Performed automatically by the OMB reestimate worksheet.) Multiply the dollar value of actual loan disbursements to date by the percentage point difference in the subsidy rates. For example, using the case in step 3, if \$100 million in loans have been disbursed, then this amount would be \$2 million (\$100 million multiplied by 2 percentage points). The product is the cumulative interest rate reestimate.
- *Step 5.* To derive the additional interest rate subsidy reestimate for the current year, deduct previous interest rate reestimates (if any) (see (d) below).

(c) *Calculating technical reestimates.*

There are two methods for calculating technical reestimates: the traditional approach and the balances approach. Under the traditional approach, reestimates are performed by revising the original subsidy estimate cash flows to incorporate any available actual data and to update future year projected data for any changes in assumptions. Under the balances approach, reestimates are performed by comparing the net present value of projected future cash flows to the balance in the financing account. Agencies must receive approval from OMB before implementing the balances approach.

(1) *Traditional approach.*

An electronic reestimate worksheet is available from OMB to assist with these calculations. For further details, see the instructions accompanying the OMB reestimate worksheet. The reestimate worksheet is available from the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account.

- *Step 1.* Reestimate the subsidy percentage for each risk category based on actual cash flows to the date of reestimate and updated expectations of delinquencies, defaults, fees, recoveries, and other technical conditions (using the same interest rates used for the latest interest rate reestimate, if applicable). Use the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator to generate the revised subsidy rate.
- *Step 2.* (Performed automatically by the OMB reestimate worksheet.) Calculate the percentage point difference between this revised subsidy rate and the subsidy rate used at the time of obligation, or, if applicable, the revised subsidy rate calculated in the most recent interest rate reestimate. For example, if the subsidy rate used at the time of obligation is 7 percent and the revised subsidy rate is 5 percent, then the difference is –2 percentage points.
- *Step 3.* (Performed automatically by the OMB reestimate worksheet.) Multiply the dollar value of actual loan disbursements to date by the percentage point difference in subsidy rates that was calculated in step 2. For example, using the case in step 2, if \$100 million in loans have been disbursed, then this amount would be –\$2 million (\$100 million multiplied by –2 percentage points). The product is the technical reestimate.

The amount calculated in step 3 is the cumulative technical reestimate. Deduct previous technical reestimates to derive the additional technical subsidy reestimate for the current year (see (d) below). (This calculation is performed automatically by the OMB reestimate worksheet.)

(2) *Balances approach.* For details on calculating technical reestimates under the balances approach, contact the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the program. An electronic balances approach reestimate worksheet is available from the OMB representative with primary budget responsibility for the credit account.

(d) *Calculating the total reestimate.*

The total reestimate is the sum of the interest rate reestimate, if any, and the technical reestimate for the current year. To calculate the total reestimate (these steps are performed automatically by the OMB reestimate worksheet):

- *Step 1.* Add the cumulative interest rate reestimate (not including interest on reestimates) and the cumulative technical reestimate calculated in (b) and (c) above.
- *Step 2.* Subtract all reestimates (not including interest on reestimates) that have been recorded in previous budgets and outlays which have been apportioned for credit modifications, as defined by Section 185.3(r). This remainder is the total reestimate for the current year.

(e) *Calculating interest on reestimates.*

Interest on reestimates is the amount of interest that would have been earned or paid by each cohort on the total reestimate, if that reestimate had been included as part of the original subsidy estimate. It is paid on the amount of the reestimate by the program account (for upward reestimates) or the financing account (for downward reestimates). The purpose is to put the financing account in the same position as if the subsidy cost had been estimated in the first place using the information that is incorporated in the

reestimate. The interest rate to calculate the interest on reestimates is the same rate that is used to discount cash flows for the cohort.

Interest on reestimates is calculated automatically by the OMB subsidy reestimate worksheet. To calculate the interest on the reestimate:

- *Step 1.* Calculate the percentage point difference between the reestimated subsidy rate and the original subsidy rate used at the time of obligation.
- *Step 2.* For each year in which loans were disbursed, multiply the dollar value of actual loan disbursements by the percentage point difference calculated in step 1. These amounts are the total subsidy reestimates for each year.
- *Step 3.* Calculate the weighted average disbursement interest rate for the cohort. For each year in which loans were disbursed, multiply the dollar value of actual loan disbursements by the annual interest rate for that year. Add the results. Divide this amount by total loan disbursements to date. The resulting rate is used to calculate the interest on reestimates for the cohort.
- *Step 4.* Calculate interest on reestimates for each of the annual amounts calculated in step 2, using the weighted average disbursement interest rate calculated in step 3. The interest is compounded from the year of disbursement to the year for which the reestimate is made. In general, assume that the subsidy reestimates would have been disbursed in equal amounts throughout the year, so calculate interest on only half the reestimate in the year it would have been disbursed. This calculation produces the interest on reestimates for each year of disbursements.
- *Step 5.* Add the interest on reestimates for each year of disbursement. This is the interest on reestimates. These amounts will be recorded in the same way as the total subsidy reestimates except that they will be recorded as "interest on reestimates of direct loan subsidy" or as "interest on reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy."

(f) *Reestimate increases/decreases.*

All increases or decreases in subsidy cost for different risk categories within the same cohort will be netted against each other; that is, risk categories which require increased subsidies may first draw on the excess from any risk categories within the cohort where the reestimate shows a subsidy decrease. No such netting may occur between cohorts.

*If the reestimate indicates a net increase in the subsidy cost of the cohort as a whole* since the last estimate or reestimate, an obligation in the amount of the net increase (plus interest) must be recorded against permanent indefinite budget authority available to the program account for this purpose. The obligation must be recorded separately in the program and financing schedule as "reestimates of direct loan subsidy" or as "reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy" (and as "interest on reestimates of direct loan subsidy" or as "interest on reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy"), so that it can be distinguished from obligations for the subsidy cost of new loans and loan guarantees. An equal amount of outlays from the program account to the financing account will be recorded when the reestimate is made. The interest rate to calculate the interest on upward reestimates is the same rate that is used to discount cash flows for the cohort.

When outlays for reestimates are recorded in the credit program account, an equal amount of offsetting collections will be recorded in the appropriate risk categories in the financing account. In the case of direct loans, the offsetting collections from the program account, together with repayments from borrowers, will be used to pay interest and repay principal on borrowing from Treasury and for other

expenses. In the case of loan guarantees, the offsetting collections will be retained as unobligated balances, together with the unobligated balances of the original subsidy payment, fees, and interest, until needed to pay default claims and other expenses. Any unused balances of collections due to the reestimate will earn interest at the same rate as is paid on other funds held by the financing account for the same cohort.

*If the reestimate indicates a net decrease in the subsidy cost of the cohort as a whole since the last estimate or reestimate, there is a downward reestimate. To keep the correct amount of balances in the financing account, an obligation and a financing disbursement in the amount of the net decrease (plus interest on the reestimate) must be recorded in the financing account. In the case of direct loans, the obligation will be financed with authority to borrow from the Treasury. In the case of loan guarantees, the obligation will be financed with unobligated balances. The obligation will be recorded in the program and financing schedule as "payment of downward reestimates" (and as "interest on downward reestimates"). The interest rate to calculate the interest on downward reestimates is the same rate that is used to discount cash flows for the cohort.*

As a general rule, the financing disbursement for a downward reestimate (plus interest on the reestimate) will be made from the financing account to a general fund downward reestimate receipt account established for each credit program. The receipts will be recorded as offsetting receipts, which will offset the total budget authority and outlays of the agency and the budget subfunction of the program. However, at the discretion of the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the program, a special fund receipt account may instead be established. For mandatory programs, downward reestimates (and interest on reestimates) may be credited directly to the program account as offsetting collections rather than to a receipt account.

If a special fund receipt account is used for the credit program and already exists, the downward reestimates and interest on reestimates will be recorded in a subaccount rather than a new special fund receipt account. Schedule N is required for these special funds (see section 86.6). When a special fund receipt account is used, the receipts from downward reestimates and interest on reestimates, like those from negative subsidies, are only available for obligation to the extent provided in advance in appropriations acts (except for mandatory programs, where they are immediately available for obligation). The normal provisions still apply: discretionary appropriations are required for discretionary subsidy costs, modifications, and administrative costs; mandatory appropriations are available for upward reestimates and mandatory programs.

If the disbursement of reestimates and interest on reestimates is made directly from the financing account to the program account in a mandatory program, it is immediately available for obligation.

*(g) Closing reestimates.*

Agencies will make a closing technical reestimate once all of the loans in a cohort have been either repaid or written off. This reestimate will be based on actual accounting systems data and will be used in closing the accounting books for the cohort. All the procedures are applied that are described above for the technical reestimate and interest on reestimates. Closing entries will be made in the accounting records.

The increases or decreases in subsidy cost for different risk categories within the same cohort will be netted against each other; that is, risk categories which require increased subsidies may first draw on the excess from any risk categories within the cohort where the reestimate shows a subsidy decrease. No such netting may occur between cohorts.

### 185.7 How do I calculate and record modifications?

When a direct loan or loan guarantee is modified, directly or indirectly, the subsidy cost of the modification must be calculated. The subsidy cost calculation will indicate whether the Government action changes the subsidy cost. If there is no change in cost, there will be no budgetary effect, and nothing needs to be recorded in the budget. If the modification will increase or decrease the cost, the budgetary effect must be recorded as described under modification cost increases/decreases below. Additional transfers to or from the financing account will be required, with the type of transfer depending on whether the modification affects pre-1992 or post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees. These additional transfers are described in separate subsections below. These requirements apply to all modifications, both to pre-1992 and to post-1991 direct loans (or direct loan obligations) and loan guarantees (or loan guarantee commitments). The calculations are explained below.

The subsidy cost of the modification is the difference between the estimate of the net present value of the remaining cash flows assumed for the direct loan or loan guarantee contract before and after the modification. The estimate of remaining cash flows before modification must be the same as assumed in the baseline for the most recent President's budget. The estimate of remaining cash flows after modification must be the pre-modification cash flows adjusted solely to reflect the effects of the modification.

(a) *Estimating the modification subsidy cost.*

The subsidy cost is calculated as follows (where cash flows to the Government have negative signs and cash flows from the Government have positive signs):

- *Step 1.* Estimate the remaining cash flows expected just before the modification under the loan contract terms assumed in the baseline of the most recent budget submitted to Congress. These estimates must assume the same deviations (defaults, delinquencies, etc.) from contract terms as assumed for the risk category in which the loan is classified.
- *Step 2.* Discount the cash flows estimated in step 1 to the time of the modification using the discount rates assumed in the economic assumptions for the most recent President's budget when the loan is modified. The remaining cash flow for each year (or other time period) of the loan that is being modified should be discounted using the interest rate on a marketable zero-coupon Treasury security with the same maturity from the date of modification (not from the date of the original maturity) as that cash flow.
- *Step 3.* Estimate the cash flows expected under the modified contract terms. For cash flows unaffected by the modified contract terms, these estimates must assume the same deviations (defaults, delinquencies, etc.) from contract terms as assumed for the risk category in which the loan is classified.
- *Step 4.* Discount the cash flows estimated in step 3 to the time of the modification using the same discount rates that are used in step 2. If a loan asset is sold, the amount in this step (minus appropriate administrative costs) equals the net proceeds from the sale.
- *Step 5.* Subtract the amount calculated in step 2 from the amount calculated in step 4 to produce the estimated subsidy cost resulting from the modification.

The results of this calculation will be positive, negative, or zero. A positive estimate indicates that the Government will incur an additional subsidy cost because of the modification. A negative estimate

indicates that the Government is achieving some savings. A zero estimate indicates no change in subsidy cost.

(1) *Cost increases.* Modifications may be made only to the extent that budget authority for the additional cost has been provided in advance in an appropriations act and is available in the program account. At the time that a modification is made, record an obligation in the amount of the estimated increase in subsidy cost against budget authority in the program account. At the same time, record an outlay in the amount of the increase in the subsidy cost from the program account to the appropriate direct loan or guaranteed loan financing account. Simultaneously, record an equal amount of offsetting collections in the financing account.

In the case of *direct loans*, the offsetting collections in the financing account will be credited to the cohort and risk category of the modified loan and will be used to pay interest and to repay debt owed to Treasury and for other expenses. In the case of *loan guarantees*, the offsetting collections will be credited to the cohort and risk category of the modified loan guarantee and will be retained as unobligated balances until needed to pay default claims and other expenses. The additional balances due to the modification will earn interest at the same rate as is paid on other funds held by the financing account for the same cohort.

(2) *Cost decreases.* At the time that a modification is made, record an obligation in the amount of the estimated decrease in subsidy cost in the financing account. In the case of a direct loan modification, record the obligation against authority to borrow from the Treasury. In the case of a loan guarantee, record the obligation against unobligated balances for the cohort, or if unobligated balances are insufficient, against authority to borrow. At the same time, record in the financing account an equal disbursement to the negative subsidy receipt account established for each credit program.

See sections 185.10, 185.11, and 185.30 for additional information on recording these transactions for budget formulation and execution.

(b) *Additional financing account transfers for modifications of post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees.*

When a post-1991 direct loan or loan guarantee is modified, a modification adjustment transfer must be made between the financing account and the general fund. The modification adjustment transfer adjusts for the disconnect between the interest rate used to calculate the cost of the modification and the interest rate at which the cohort pays or earns interest. The discount rates used to calculate the cost of the modification are the interest rates in the economic assumptions for the most recent President's budget when the direct loan or loan guarantee is modified. In contrast, the cohort borrows or earns interest at the rate applicable when the direct loan or guaranteed loan was disbursed. Therefore, if the only transfer made between the financing account and the general fund was for the change in the subsidy cost, the resources of the financing account would be out of balance. Either it would have too much or too little resources to pay its claims to the public or repay its debt to the Treasury.

This imbalance is eliminated by a modification adjustment transfer between the financing account and the general fund. The transfer is not an outlay or an offsetting collection because it does not represent a cost to the Government of the loan or the guarantee. Instead, it is a facilitating adjustment that makes the present value of the assets and liabilities held by the financing account come out even.

The modification adjustment transfer is the difference between the present value of the estimated change in cash flows due to the modification, calculated using the discount rates applicable when the direct loan or loan guarantee is modified, and the present value of the estimated change in cash flows due to the



modification, calculated using the interest rate at which the cohort pays or earns interest. This transfer is in addition to the transactions described above. Specifically, it is calculated in the following further steps:

- *Step 6.* Take the difference in cash flows due to the modification. This is the amount calculated in step 1 above minus the amount calculated in step 3 above.
- *Step 7.* Calculate the present value of this difference using the interest rate at which the cohort pays or earns interest.
- *Step 8.* Subtract the step 5 amount from the step 7 amount. This difference is the modification adjustment transfer.

The effects of the modification adjustment transfer on the program and financing schedule of a financing account are summarized below. They distinguish between a loan guarantee and a direct loan and between which present value of the modified cash flow is higher: the estimate using the current discount rates (i.e., the discount rates in the economic assumptions for the most recent President's budget when the direct loan or loan guarantee is modified) or using the original discount rates (i.e., the discount rate when the direct or guaranteed loan was disbursed). Depending on which present value is higher, the transfer is made from the general fund to the financing account or from the financing account to the general fund.

If the cost of the modification is more when calculated at the current discount rates than at the original discount rates, the financing account would be over compensated by the subsidy payment for the modification. Therefore, the financing account makes a modification adjustment transfer to the general fund. For budget formulation reporting, this transfer is recorded on line 6927, "Capital transfer to general fund." The transfer produces the accompanying transactions with Treasury:

- If a loan guarantee is modified, the financing account's offsetting collection for the modification cost increases the unobligated balance (line 2440). The capital transfer to the general fund reduces the amount by which the unobligated balance is increased. (The amount of the increase shown on line 2440 is net of the capital transfer). Subsequent interest earnings on the addition to the balance are lower than they would have been without the capital transfer.
- If a direct loan is modified, the financing account's offsetting collection for the modification cost is used to reduce debt owed to Treasury (line 6947, "Portion applied to debt reduction"). The capital transfer reduces the amount by which the debt is reduced. (The amount of the increase shown on line 6947 is net of the capital transfer.) Subsequent interest paid to Treasury is higher than it would have been without the capital transfer.
- The general fund will collect the modification adjustment transfer in a non-budgetary capital transfer receipt account. There will be one receipt account to collect the modification adjustment transfers from all financing accounts.

If the cost of the modification is less when calculated at the current discount rates than at the original discount rates, the financing account would be under compensated by the subsidy payment for the modification. Therefore, the financing account receives a modification adjustment transfer from the general fund, which is recorded in the financing account as a permanent appropriation (line 6000, "Appropriation"). This transfer produces the accompanying transactions with Treasury:

- If a loan guarantee is modified, the financing account's offsetting collection for the modification cost increases the unobligated balance (line 2440). The modification adjustment transfer also increases the unobligated balance (line 2440). Subsequent interest on uninvested funds is higher than it would have been without the modification adjustment transfer.

- If a direct loan is modified, the offsetting collection for the modification cost is used to reduce debt owed to Treasury (line 6947, "Portion applied to repay debt"). The modification adjustment transfer is also used to reduce debt owed to Treasury (line 6047, "Portion applied to repay debt"). Subsequent interest paid to Treasury is lower than it would have been without the modification adjustment transfer.

(c) *Additional financing account transfers for modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees.*

Pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees are held in liquidating accounts unless they are modified. When they are modified, the cost of the modification is estimated and accounted for in the same way as modifications of post-1991 loans. In addition, there are transactions between the liquidating account and the financing account that must be recorded. The transactions differ depending on whether the direct loan asset or the loan guarantee liability is transferred from the liquidating account to the financing account or continues to be held by the liquidating account.

(1) *Transfer of asset or liability to financing account.* This approach should be used, unless the OMB representative for the credit program approves using the alternative approach (described in (2) below).

At the time of the modification, the direct loan asset or loan guarantee liability will be transferred from the liquidating account to the financing account, and a one-time adjusting payment will be made between the two accounts. The adjusting payment will equal the estimated net present value of the Government's remaining cash flows expected just before the modification under the terms assumed in the baseline of the most recent budget submitted to Congress. The remaining cash flow for each year (or other time period) should be discounted using the interest rate on a marketable zero-coupon Treasury security with the same maturity from the date of modification as that cash flow, regardless of the maturity of the loan. This amount is the result of the first two steps in estimating the subsidy cost of the modification.

In the case of a direct loan modification, the adjusting payment will be made from the financing account to the liquidating account. The financing account, in effect, buys the loan from the liquidating account. An obligation and a disbursement will be recorded in the financing account in the amount of the payment when it is made. The obligation will be recorded on line 0802 in the financing account program and financing schedule. The financing account will use its collection of the subsidy payment from the program account plus borrowing from Treasury to make the adjusting payment. The interest rate on the amount borrowed from Treasury will be the same as the rate used to calculate the present value of cash flows under the modified contract. Collections from the direct loan assets over their remaining life will be credited to the financing account and used to pay interest and repay debt owed to Treasury. The liquidating account will record offsetting collections equal to the adjusting payment, which it will use to repay debt owed to Treasury or transfer to the general fund as a capital transfer.

In the case of a loan guarantee modification, the adjusting payment will be made from the liquidating account to the financing account. The liquidating account, in effect, pays the financing account to assume the loan guarantee liability. Unobligated balances and permanent indefinite appropriations to the liquidating account will be used to make the payment. Outlays will be recorded in the liquidating account in the amount of the payment when it is made. The financing account will record an equal amount of offsetting collections. These collections will be combined with the collection of the subsidy payment from the program account and retained in the financing account as a reserve to pay default claims and other expenses.

(2) *Asset retained by liquidating account.* Subject to the approval of the OMB representative for the credit program, this method can be used if a modification affects a large number of direct loans or loan guarantees and it would be less complicated for the liquidating account to retain the assets or liabilities.

In the case of a modification that increases subsidy cost, the liquidating account will collect less from the public over time if a direct loan has been modified and will pay more to the public if a loan guarantee has been modified. The financing account will collect a subsidy payment from the program account equal to the present value of the change in cash flows to the Government. The financing account will obligate and disburse the same amount to the liquidating account to compensate it for the reduced asset or increased liability. The liquidating account will record offsetting collections, which it will use to pay current obligations or to repay debt. Any excess at the end of the year will be transferred to the general fund. Since the program account's outlays for the subsidy payment will exactly equal the liquidating account's collections from the financing account, there will be no net change in the surplus or deficit for that year.

In the case of modifications that decrease subsidy cost, the liquidating account will collect more from the public over time if a direct loan has been modified or pay less to the public if a loan guarantee has been modified. The liquidating account will use permanent indefinite authority to make a payment to the financing account equal to the present value of the change in cash flows in the liquidating account. The financing account will record offsetting collections, which it will pay to the negative subsidy receipt account for the credit program. Since the payment by the liquidating account and the negative subsidy receipts will be equal, there will be no net change in the surplus or deficit for that year.

See section 185.31 for specific guidance on reporting these transactions for budget execution.

(d) *Single cohort for modifications of pre-1992 direct loans or loan guarantees.*

All modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees for a given program will be accounted for in a single direct loan cohort or a single loan guarantee cohort.

### **185.8 What must I know about the sale of loan assets?**

(a) *General.*

Under the Debt Collection Improvement Act of 1996, credit agencies with over \$100 million in loan assets are expected to sell delinquent loan assets that meet the criteria described in (b). This applies to loan assets held by both liquidating and financing accounts. The cash flows used to calculate the baseline subsidy rates for existing cohorts should be adjusted to reflect this policy, as should the cash flows used to estimate the subsidy rates for future cohorts. Modifications of this policy that increase the cost will have to be covered by appropriations of subsidy budget authority. Differences between the estimated and actual sale proceeds due to market conditions will be treated as reestimates.

Agencies are also encouraged to explore selling performing loan assets to the extent such sales would benefit the Government. In such cases, the procedures, analysis, and methods for selling performing assets are the same for selling delinquent loan assets.

(b) *Loan asset sale criteria.*

Loan assets that are more than one year delinquent should be sold, except for the following categories of loans:

- Loans to foreign countries or entities.
- Loans in structured forbearance, when conversion to repayment status is expected within 12 months or after statutory requirements are met.
- Loans that are written off as unenforceable due to death, disability, or bankruptcy.
- Loans that have been submitted to Treasury for offset and are expected to be extinguished within three years.
- Loans in adjudication or foreclosure.

Performing loan assets may be sold as well, either alone or in conjunction with delinquent loan assets, to the extent that such sales provide benefits to either the program or the Government as a whole.

Agencies should consult the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the account to determine which loan assets meet these criteria.

(c) *Justification for non-compliance.*

If an agency can demonstrate that the present value of cash flows associated with continued Government ownership of the loan assets would exceed the expected sale proceeds, the agency may not be required to sell the loan assets. Also, if there is a serious conflict between selling loan assets and Administration policy for the program, and the agency can justify to the satisfaction of their OMB representative that the sale policy cannot be reconciled with the program policy, the agency may not be required to sell the loan assets. Agencies should consult with the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the program if they believe either of these tests would be met.

(d) *Cost of loan asset sales.*

If the cash flows for existing loans do not incorporate an explicit assumption about the sale of loan assets, the sale is a modification, whether the loan assets are held by financing accounts or liquidating accounts. Otherwise, the sale is part of the subsidy estimates for Presidential policy and the baseline, and differences between the estimated and actual sale proceeds are a reestimate.

If the sale is a modification, the cost would equal the difference between the net sale proceeds and the estimated value to the Government, on a present value basis, of continuing to own the loan asset (the "hold value"). The method for calculating the hold value is the same as for calculating the net present value of cash flows before modification, as outlined in section 185.7(a).

The modification cost of multiple sales with closing dates in the same fiscal year is the sum of the cost or saving calculated for each sale of loans within the same cohort or risk category. The closing date of a sale is the date on which the seller and the buyer(s) close the transaction and title of the assets legally transfer to the buyer(s). Therefore, for loans within the same cohort or risk category, a modification cost for one sale can be offset by a modification saving for a different sale within the same fiscal year. For sales that include loans from more than one cohort or risk category, a single modification cost or savings is first calculated for all of the loans sold, and the cost or savings is subdivided among each of the cohorts or risk categories.

Loan assets that are sold with recourse are treated as a combination of a sale without recourse and a new loan guarantee. The cost of the provision for recourse is estimated separately from the cost of the loan asset sale, and the subsidy for its cost, as well as the cost of the implicit loan sale without recourse, must

be appropriated in advance of the sale. Sales with recourse are not permitted except where they are specifically authorized by statute.

If the Government takes an equity stake (or participation) in the cash flow of the sold assets, such as a joint venture or equity-held sale, the net sale proceeds equal the actual cash proceeds plus an estimate of the present value of the proceeds from the Government's equity position, net of any transaction costs.

You may pay certain direct costs of loan asset sales from the gross proceeds of those sales. In general, the guidelines for whether an expense should be paid from the administrative expense appropriation or from asset sale proceeds are similar to those for determining whether an expense should be paid from the administrative expense appropriation to the program account or from the financing account (see section 185.3(a)). Generally, costs that may be paid from proceeds include:

- Underwriting;
- Rating agency;
- Due diligence;
- Legal; and
- Transaction financial advisory fees.

These costs are part of the cash flows used to calculate net sale proceeds to determine the modification cost of the sale (if the sale constitutes a modification) or to reestimate the subsidy cost on a cohort in which loan assets have been sold (if the sale is not a modification).

The costs of Government personnel, travel, computer systems, etc., associated with the development and execution of a loan asset sales program, as well as the cost of any contracts for asset sale program financial advisory services, should be paid from the agency's administrative expense appropriation. Questions about whether a specific cost should be paid from the administrative expense appropriation or sale proceeds should be directed to OMB.

*(e) OMB review of sales.*

No sale may occur without the approval of the OMB examiner. After identifying loans that meet the criteria described in (b), agencies must develop a plan for selling these loans in consultation with their OMB examiner. In addition, at least 30 calendar days prior to the scheduled final bid day (the date on which a buyer may submit a bid to the seller), the agency must submit for approval to the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the program the following information:

- The expected date of sale;
- A description of the loans to be sold (including balances, business program under which the loans were originated, and current payment status);
- The estimated hold value, with relevant supporting documents and analysis;
- The estimated net sale proceeds, with relevant supporting documents and analysis;
- The estimated modification cost, whether positive, negative, or zero; and
- An evaluation of relevant previous asset sales, including the hold values, net sale proceeds, and positive/negative subsidy generated from each, if applicable.

Three weeks after the sale, an agency must advise the OMB examiner of the actual amount of the proceeds realized from the sale and the actual amount of the transaction costs that were paid from the proceeds.

### 185.9 What are the budget formulation reporting requirements for credit accounts?

Each program making or having outstanding post-1991 direct loans or loan guarantees will have at least two and as many as six types of accounts, even if the Administration is proposing to terminate the program or the program has been previously terminated:

- A program account.
- A financing account for direct loan obligations, if any.
- A financing account for loan guarantee commitments, if any.
- A negative subsidy receipt account for negative subsidies, if any.
- A downward reestimate receipt account for downward reestimates, if any.
- A liquidating account for pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees, if any.

Generally, the print materials and MAX schedules required for credit program, financing, liquidating, and negative subsidy receipt accounts are listed below. References to applicable A-11 sections are also provided.

#### SUMMARY OF REQUIREMENTS

Requirement	Program	Financing	Liquidating	Receipt
Appropriations language (section 95)	✓			
Narrative statement (section 95)	✓	✓	✓	
Schedule P (PY-BY) (section 82)	✓	✓	✓	
Schedule O (PY-BY) (section 83)	✓		✓	
Schedule N (PY-BY) (section 86)	✓			
Schedule U (PY-BY) (section 185)	✓			
Schedule A (PY-BY+9) (section 81)	✓		✓	
Schedule S (CY-BY+9) (section 81)	✓		✓	
Schedule C (PY-BY) (section 84)	✓		✓	
Schedule H (PY-BY+9) (section 185)		✓	✓	
Schedule G (PY-BY+9) (section 185)		✓	✓	
Schedule R (PY-BY+9) (section 81)				✓
Schedule K (PY-BY+9) (section 81)				✓
Schedule W (PY-BY) (section 185)				✓
Schedule Y (CY-BY+9) (section 185)		✓	✓	
Schedule F (PY-1-PY) (section 86)		✓	✓	

Separate schedules are required for supplemental requests and proposed legislation items. These schedules show the effect of the supplemental request or proposed legislation on the information presented in the regular schedules for the program.

A written justification is required for all new credit programs or credit programs requiring reauthorization. The justification must address the Federal credit policies and guidelines contained in [OMB Circular No. A-129](#).

### 185.10 What do I report for program accounts?

Program accounts are required for post-1991 direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments and for modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees. They record budget authority, obligations, and outlays for subsidy costs and the administrative expenses of a credit program (including administrative expenses for pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees). In most cases, current, definite budget authority is provided in appropriation acts for subsidy payments (except for entitlements, which have permanent indefinite budget authority) and administrative expenses. Permanent indefinite authority is available for reestimates and interest on reestimates.

#### (a) *Program and financing schedule (schedule P).*

Use the following line number scheme in the "obligations by program activity" section of the program and financing schedule (see exhibit 185A):

Line number	Description
	OBLIGATIONS BY PROGRAM ACTIVITY:
0001	Direct loan subsidy
0002	Loan guarantee subsidy
0003	Subsidy for modifications of direct loans
0004	Subsidy for modifications of loan guarantees
0005	Reestimates of direct loan subsidy
0006	Interest on reestimates of direct loan subsidy
0007	Reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy
0008	Interest on reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy
0009	Administrative expenses

#### (b) *Object classification (schedule O).*

Record all direct expenses in the appropriate object class (Use object class 41, "Grants, subsidies, and contributions," to record subsidy obligations.). For administrative expenses transferred to a salaries and expenses account, use object class 25.3, "Other purchases of goods and services from Government accounts." In the salaries and expenses account receiving the transfer, record reimbursable obligations for administrative expenses using a "2" as the first digit of the line number. (See section 83 for more information about the classification of reimbursable programs in the object class schedule.)

#### (c) *Loan levels and subsidy (schedule U).*

Prepare a schedule of loan levels (see exhibit 185B), subsidy budget authority, subsidy rate, subsidy outlays, and reestimates for each program account. These data are displayed by program or by program and risk category. The titles of the stub entries should be tailored to identify the program to which each entry belongs. Note that some entries are reported by cohort while others (reestimates) are reported for

combined cohorts. Although no outyear data are collected in schedule U, you may be required to provide outyear data by your OMB representative. Schedule U data is identified by a four-digit line number and a two-digit suffix. The four-digit number identifies data by category (e.g., direct loan subsidy budget authority). The two-digit suffix differentiates between the various risk categories reported in the schedule unless the line is a total line. **MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in boldface.**

#### DATA REQUIREMENTS FOR SCHEDULE U

Entry	Description
Direct loan levels supportable by subsidy budget authority:	Report lines 1150–1339 by cohort.
1150xx Direct loan levels	Equals the amount of direct loans that can be obligated with the new subsidy budget authority requested or provided in that year. Include loan volume reestimates, if any, in PY. For PY only, enter the actual level of loans made, which may include limitation from carryforward or may be less than the full limitation appropriated. For CY and BY, do not include proceeds from asset sales. Do not report the unused portion of multi-year loan limitations that are carried forward. In the CY and PY, loan levels do not have to equal enacted loan limitations, as Congress may enact limitations that are not achievable with the subsidy budget authority provided. However, in the BY, loan levels supportable by the subsidy requested must equal the direct loan limitation. For discretionary programs, direct loan limitations are also reported in schedule G on line 1111. For mandatory programs, only line 1131 in schedule G in the financing account is required. These data are required even if the subsidy rate is zero or negative.
<b>115901 Total direct loan levels</b>	The sum of all lines 1150.
Direct loan subsidy (in percent):	
1320xx Subsidy rate	The 1320 data line series presents data in percentages on the subsidy costs inherent in making a cohort of direct loans. In the PY column, the rate should be the reestimated subsidy. In the CY column use the budget execution rate. Note that the subsidy rate (in percent) must be rounded to the nearest hundredth of one percent and entered into MAX without decimal points. For example, enter 50.503 as 5050, 5.05 percent as 505 and 0.5 percent as 50. Amounts should be shown, even if zero or negative.
<b>132901 Weighted average subsidy rate</b>	The disbursement weighted average sum of all lines 1320 above is automatically calculated by dividing total subsidy budget authority (line 1339) by total direct loan level (line 1159). A weighted average subsidy rate should not be zero when a positive subsidy program is included in the calculation. For non-zero transmittal codes, this is the change to the subsidy rates reported under transmittal code zero, not the new rates.
Direct loan subsidy budget authority:	
1330xx Subsidy budget authority	The 1330 data line series presents data in dollars on the subsidy costs inherent in making direct loans. It does not include unobligated balances eligible to be carried forward. In the CY column, the amount will equal the amount appropriated for subsidies. The BY column will show the requested subsidy amount



Entry	Description
	and must agree with amounts in appropriations language. Report even if the subsidy is negative.
<b>133901 Total subsidy budget authority</b>	The sum of all lines 1330 above.
Direct loan subsidy outlays:	Report line 1340 for all cohorts.
1340xx Subsidy outlays	The 1340 data line series presents data on the amount of subsidy disbursed in a given year. An outlay is recorded in the program account at the time of disbursement of the loan to the borrower. Both outlays from new budget authority and outlays from balances are reported on this line. Because outlays in all years include carry forward, outlays may not correspond with budget authority in BY and CY.
<b>134901 Total subsidy outlays</b>	The sum of all lines 1340 above.
Direct loan upward reestimate:	Report lines 1350–1379 for all cohorts.
1350xx Upward reestimate	The 1350 data line series presents data on the amount of upward reestimate paid to the financing account in any given year. Report upward reestimates for all outstanding fiscal year cohorts for which upward reestimates are paid to the financing account. Report amounts in PY and CY only. Where possible, report amounts by risk category to correspond to the risk categories reported on lines 1150, 1320, 1330, and/or 1340.
<b>135901 Total upward reestimate</b>	The sum of all lines 1350 above.
Direct loan downward reestimate:	
1370xx Downward reestimate	The 1370 data line series presents data on the amount of downward reestimate paid out of the financing account in any given year. Report downward reestimates for all outstanding fiscal year cohorts for which downward reestimates will be paid out of the financing account. Report amounts in PY and CY only. Where possible, report amounts by risk category to correspond to the risk categories reported on lines 1150, 1320, 1330, and/or 1340.
<b>137901 Total downward reestimate</b>	The sum of all lines 1370 above.
Guaranteed loan levels supportable by subsidy budget authority:	Report lines 2150–2339 by cohort.
2150xx Loan guarantee levels	Equals the full principal amount, not just the portion guaranteed by the Government, of guaranteed loans that can be supported by the amount of new subsidy budget authority requested or provided in that year. Include loan volume reestimates, if any, in PY. For PY only, enter the actual level of loans made, which may include limitation from carryforward or may be less than the full limitation appropriated. For CY and BY, do not include proceeds from asset sales. Do not report the unused portion of multi-year loan guarantee limitations that are carried forward. In the PY and CY, loan levels do not have to equal enacted loan guarantee limitations, as Congress may enact limitations that are not achievable with the subsidy budget authority provided. However, in the BY, loan levels supportable by the subsidy must equal the guaranteed loan limitation. For discretionary programs, guaranteed loan limitations are also reported in schedule H on line 2111. For mandatory

Entry	Description
	programs, only line 2131 in schedule H in the financing account is required. These data are required even if the subsidy rate is zero or negative.
<b>215901 Total loan guarantee levels</b>	The sum of all lines 2150.
Guaranteed loan subsidy (in percent):	
2320xx Subsidy rate	The 2320 data line series presents data on the subsidy costs inherent in making a cohort of loan guarantees. In the PY, the rate should be the reestimated subsidy. In the CY column use the budget execution rate. Note that the subsidy rate (in percent) must be rounded to the nearest hundredth of one percent and entered into MAX without decimal points. For example, 50.503 percent will be entered as 5050, 5.05 percent as 505, and 0.5 percent as 50. Amounts should be shown, even if zero or negative.
<b>232901 Weighted average subsidy rate</b>	The disbursement weighted average of all lines 2320 above is automatically calculated by dividing total subsidy budget authority (line 2339) by total guaranteed loan level (line 2159). For non-zero transmittal codes, this is the change to the subsidy rates reported under transmittal code zero, not the new rates.
Guaranteed loan subsidy budget authority:	
2330xx Subsidy budget authority	The 2330 data line series presents data in dollars on the subsidy costs inherent in making a cohort of guaranteed loans. It does not include unobligated balances eligible to be carried forward for BY and CY. For PY only, budget authority should reflect both new and carry forward used. In the CY column, the amount will equal the amount appropriated for subsidies. The BY column will show the requested subsidy amount and must agree with amounts in appropriations language. Report even if the subsidy is zero or negative.
<b>233901 Total subsidy budget authority</b>	The sum of all lines 2330 above.
Guaranteed loan subsidy outlays:	
2340xx Subsidy outlays	The 2340 data line series presents data on the amount of subsidy disbursed in a given year. An outlay is recorded in the program account at the time the lender disburses the loan to the borrower. Both outlays from new budget authority and outlays from balances are reported on this line. Report even if the subsidy is negative. Because outlays in all years include carry forward, outlays may not correspond with budget authority in BY and CY.
<b>234901 Total subsidy outlays</b>	The sum of all lines 2340 above.
Guaranteed loan upward reestimate:	
2350xx Upward reestimate	The 2350 data line series presents data on the amount of upward reestimate paid to the financing account in any given year. Report upward reestimates for all outstanding fiscal year cohorts for which upward reestimates are paid to the financing account. Report amounts in PY and CY only. Where possible, report amounts by risk category to correspond to the risk categories reported on lines 2150, 2320, 2330, and/or 2340.

Entry	Description
<b>235901 Total upward reestimate</b>	The sum of all lines 2350 above.
Guaranteed loan downward reestimate:	
2370xx Downward reestimate	The 2370 data line series presents data on the amount of downward reestimate paid out of the financing account in any given year. Report downward reestimates for all outstanding fiscal year cohorts for which downward reestimates will be paid out of the financing account. Report amounts in PY and CY only. Where possible, report amounts by risk category to correspond to the risk categories reported on lines 2150, 2320, 2330, and/or 2340.
<b>237901 Total downward reestimate</b>	The sum of all lines 2370 above.
Administrative expense data:	Report lines 3510–3590 for all program accounts.
351001 Budget authority	Budget authority provided or requested for administrative expenses for both direct and guaranteed loan programs.
358001 Outlays from balances	Outlays for administrative expenses from prior year obligated balances.
359001 Outlays from new authority	Outlays for administrative expenses from new budget authority.

### 185.11 What do I report for financing accounts?

Financing accounts record the cash flows associated with post-1991 direct loan obligations or loan guarantee commitments and for modifications of all direct loans and loan guarantees. These cash flows include loan disbursements, payments for guarantee claims, principal repayments, interest received from borrowers, interest paid on borrowing, interest earned on uninvested funds, interest supplements, fees and premiums received, and recoveries on defaults. Separate financing accounts are used for direct loan obligations and loan guarantee commitments.

#### (a) Program and financing schedules (schedule P)

The following lines are typically used in schedule P for financing accounts (see exhibits 185C and 185F):

#### SELECTED P&F ENTRIES IN FINANCING ACCOUNTS

Entry	Description
Obligations by program activity: Stub entries should describe the transactions reported below. 0001–0009	Obligations for post-1991 direct loan disbursements (equal to face value), default claims on post-1991 loan guarantees, interest supplements to lenders, interest on debt owed to Treasury (calculated at the same rate as the discount rate for the cohort). A spreadsheet is available from OMB to calculate interest income and interest expense.
0801	Obligations for negative subsidies to be paid to the negative subsidy receipt account for the credit program.
0802	Obligations for downward reestimates of the subsidy to be paid to the negative subsidy receipt account for the credit program.

**SECTION 185—FEDERAL CREDIT**

Entry	Description
0803	Obligations for payments to purchase liquidating account loan assets or to reimburse the liquidating account for modification cost increases for pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees.
0804	Obligations for interest on the downward reestimate to be paid to the negative subsidy receipt account for the credit program.
New financing authority (gross), detail:	
6000 Appropriation	Amount of authority becoming available as a result of a modification adjustment transfer from the general fund in the event that the modification cost estimate under compensated the financing account.
6710 Authority to borrow	Financing authority (authority to borrow from Treasury) for the part of direct loans not financed by subsidy and fees, and for any default claims that cannot be paid by unobligated balances.
6900 Offsetting collections (cash)	Amount of offsetting collections (cash) credited to the account and refunds that pertain to obligations recorded in prior years.
6910 Change in uncollected customer payments from program account	Change in unpaid, unfilled orders from program account for direct loan subsidy. Report increases as positive entries; report decreases as negative entries.
6927 Capital transfer to general fund	Used for modification adjustment transfer to the general fund in the event that the modification cost estimate over compensated the financing account.
6947 Portion applied to repay debt (-)	Amount of offsetting collections used for repayments of outstanding borrowing.
Change in obligated balance:	
7240 Obligated balance, start of year	Includes unpaid obligations that represent undisbursed direct loan obligations.
7440 Obligated balance, end of year	Includes unpaid obligations that represent undisbursed direct loan obligations.
Offsets:	
8800 Federal sources	Collections of subsidy payments and upward reestimates from program accounts, certain modification adjustment transfers from the general fund, and adjusting payments from liquidating accounts for pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees.
8825 Interest on uninvested funds	Collections of interest on uninvested funds. A spreadsheet is available from OMB to calculate interest earned.
8840 Non-Federal sources	Collections of principal repayments and interest payments on direct loans by borrowers, collections on defaulted direct loans or guaranteed loans, fees or premiums paid by non-Federal lenders or borrowers, prepayments of direct loans, and proceeds from the sale of direct loans or collateral.

Note: MAX automatically modifies financing account line stubs from budget authority and outlays to financing authority and financing disbursements, respectively. Financing accounts do not use lines 8690 through 8698.

(b) *Direct loan data (schedule G).*

Prepare a Status of direct loans schedule (Schedule G) (PY-BY+4, except line 6300) for all liquidating accounts and all direct loan financing accounts (see exhibits 185D and 185J). Each line entry is described in the table below. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

**DATA REQUIREMENTS FOR SCHEDULE G**

Entry	Description
Position with respect to appropriations act limitation on obligations:	Provide lines 1111–1150 for direct loan financing accounts only.
1111 Limitation on direct loans	Amount of limitation enacted or proposed to be enacted in appropriations acts. For discretionary programs, this amount should be consistent with line 1159 in schedule U. So long as any entry appears on lines 1111 through 1131, this line should remain in MAX and will be listed in the stub column even if no amounts are shown.
1121 Limitation available from carry-forward	Amount of limitation available from a multi-year limitation enacted in a previous year that was not obligated and is available for use. This amount should correspond to the previous year's amount of unobligated limitation carried forward (line 1143). For programs that do not have a fixed loan limitation, this amount should be equal to the direct loan level supportable with the budget authority that is carried forward.
1131 Direct loan obligations exempt from limitation	Amount of obligations for direct loans to the public not subject to a specific limitation in appropriations acts. Use this line for mandatory programs.
1142 Unobligated direct loan limitation (–)	Amount of limitation enacted in appropriations acts that is not obligated in the year it is enacted. Include only amounts that lapse. Do not include multi-year limitation amounts that can be carried forward in a future fiscal year (see line 1143). Report amounts in PY and CY only unless specifically approved by OMB.
1143 Unobligated limitation carried forward (P.L. xx) (–)	Amount of multi-year limitation enacted in an appropriations act that was not obligated and is carried forward for use in a subsequent year.
<b>1150 Total direct loan obligations</b>	The sum of lines 1111 through 1143. This is the direct loan portion of the credit budget. This amount should be consistent with direct loan obligations recorded in the program and financing schedule of the financing account.
Cumulative balance of direct loans outstanding:	Provide lines 1210–1290 for liquidating and direct loan financing accounts.
1210 Outstanding, start of year	Amount of direct loan principal outstanding at the beginning of the year. Amounts for PY are automatically generated from data reported in the previous year's <i>Budget Appendix</i> . If the number needs to be revised, use line 1264 “other adjustment” with explanatory footnote.
Disbursements:	
1231 Direct loan disbursements	Amounts of disbursements of principal for direct loans and 100 percent guarantees financed by the Federal Financing Bank. This does not include amounts shown separately on line 1232.

SECTION 185—FEDERAL CREDIT

Entry	Description
1232 Purchase of loan assets from the public	Amount of loans purchased or repurchased by the account from non-Federal lenders.
1233 Purchase of loan assets from a liquidating account	Amount of direct loan assets transferred from liquidating account to a financing account as a result of a loan modification.
Repayments:	These entries must agree with amounts included for these transactions on line 8840 (offsetting collections from non-Federal sources) of the program and financing schedule for the account. The proceeds from discounted prepayment programs that were part of a loan asset sales program should be recorded together with the proceeds from loan asset sales to the public (line 1253). The discount (i.e., the difference between the face value of the loan and the proceeds received from discounted prepayments) should be recorded together with the discount on loan asset sales to the public (line 1262).
1251 Repayments and prepayments (–)	Amount of principal repayments or prepayments. In the liquidating account, this entry will include repayments on loans disbursed by the FFB.
1252 Proceeds from loan asset sales to the public or discounted prepayments without recourse (–)	Amount of gross proceeds received from the non-recourse sale of loans to non-Federal buyers or the discounted loan prepayments that were part of a loan asset sales program.
1253 Proceeds from loan asset sales to the public with recourse (–)	Amount of gross proceeds received from the sale of loans to non-Federal buyers when loans are sold with recourse to the Federal Government. The full principal of the loans is scored as a new guaranteed loan commitment (line 2132). The amount of new budget authority resulting from the sale should equal the amount on line 6400 of the program and financing schedule.
Adjustments:	
1261 Capitalized interest (+)	Amount of interest due at the end of the year that is capitalized as part of the existing loan principal.
1262 Discount on loan asset sales to the public or discounted prepayments (–)	Difference between the face value of the loan and the proceeds received by the account from the sales of loans to non-Federal buyers or discounted loan prepayments that were part of a loan asset sales program.
Write-offs for default:	
1263 Direct loans (–)	Amount of direct loan principal reduced by write-offs for defaults. This line should only be used to indicate write-offs of loans that were initiated as direct loans. (Refer to the definitions for write-offs in OMB Circular No. A–129.)
1264 Other adjustments, net (+ or –)	Proceeds from the sale of collateral acquired from the foreclosure of direct loans; amount of principal repayments waived as provided by statute, in the event of certain specified contingencies; outstanding balances of loans transferred to or received from other accounts amount of principal reduced or increased for other reasons. When this line is used, the nature of the adjustment must be explained in a footnote.
<b>1290 Outstanding, end of year</b>	Amount of direct loan principal outstanding at the end of the year. The sum of lines 1210 through 1264.

Entry	Description
Net financing disbursements	Provide line 6300 for direct loan financing accounts only. See section 185.11(d).
6300 Net financing disbursements	Equals net financing disbursements reported on line 9000 of the program and financing schedule. Report PY-BY+9. Line 6300 does not print in the Appendix but is used by OMB for analytical and reporting purposes.

(c) *Guaranteed loan data (schedule H).*

Prepare a Status of Guaranteed Loans (schedule H) (PY-BY+4, except line 6300) for all liquidating and guaranteed loan financing accounts (see exhibits 185G and 185K). Report the full principal amounts of loans guaranteed, whether guaranteed in full or in part. Report principal only, even if the guarantee covers both the principal and interest. Do not count agency guarantees of loans disbursed by the FFB as guaranteed loans; treat such loans as direct loans of your agency financed by the FFB.

Each line entry is described in the table below. MAX will automatically generate the line entries indicated in **boldface**.

**DATA REQUIREMENTS FOR SCHEDULE H**

Entry	Description
Position with respect to appropriations act limitation on commitments:	Provide lines 2111–2199 for guaranteed loan financing accounts only.
2111 Limitation on guaranteed loans made by private lenders	Amount of limitation enacted or proposed to be enacted in appropriations acts on full principal of commitments to guarantee loans by private lenders. For discretionary programs, this line is equal to line 2159 in schedule U. So long as any entry appears on lines 2111 through 2132, this line should remain in MAX and will be listed in the stub column even if no amounts are shown.
2121 Limitation available from carry-forward	Amount of limitation on full principal of commitments to guarantee loans by private lenders that is available from a multi-year limitation enacted in a previous year that was not obligated and is available for use. This amount should correspond to the previous year's amount of unobligated limitation carried forward (line 2143). For programs that do not have a fixed loan limitation, this amount should be equal to the guaranteed loan level supportable with the budget authority that is carried forward.
2131 Guaranteed loan commitments exempt from limitation	Amount of full principal of commitments to guarantee loans by private lenders that is not subject to limitation. Use this line for mandatory programs and discretionary programs that do not have a loan limitation.
2132 Guaranteed loan commitments for loan asset sales to the public with recourse	Amount of full principal of guaranteed loan commitments made as a result of selling direct loans to non-Federal buyers with recourse to the Federal Government.
2142 Uncommitted loan guarantee limitation (-)	Amount of limitation enacted in appropriations acts on full principal of commitments to guarantee loans by private lenders that is not committed in the year it is enacted. Includes only amounts that expire.

SECTION 185—FEDERAL CREDIT

Entry	Description
	Do not include multi-year limitation amounts that can be carried forward in a future fiscal year (see line 2143). Report amounts for PY and CY only.
2143 Uncommitted limitation carried forward (P.L. xx) (-)	Amount of multi-year limitation enacted in an appropriations act that was not committed and is carried forward for use in a subsequent year.
<b>2150 Total guaranteed loan commitments</b>	The sum of lines 2111 through 2143. This is the guaranteed loan portion of the credit budget.
Memorandum: 2199 Guaranteed amount of guaranteed loan commitments	Amount of maximum potential Federal liability for the guaranteed loan principal associated with line 2150. To the extent the guarantee covers both principal and interest, this amount must exclude interest. This entry is required even though the amount may be the same as in line 2150.
Cumulative balance of guaranteed loans outstanding:	Provide lines 2210–2390 for liquidating and guaranteed loan financing accounts.
2210 Outstanding, start of year	Amount of guaranteed loan principal outstanding at the beginning of the year. Amounts for PY are automatically generated from data reported in the previous year's <i>Budget Appendix</i> . If the PY amount needs to be revised, use line 2264 and include an explanatory footnote.
Disbursements:	
2231 Disbursements of new guaranteed loans	Amount of guaranteed loan principal disbursed.
2232 Guarantees of loans sold to the public with recourse	Face value amount of guaranteed loan principal of loans sold to non-Federal buyers with recourse to the Federal Government.
2251 Repayments and prepayments (-)	Amount of principal repayments and prepayments.
Adjustments:	
2261 Terminations for default that result in loans receivable (-)	Amount of loan principal reduced by terminations for default that subsequently become a loans receivable in which the formerly guaranteed borrower owes the agency for the amount of claims paid as a result of the borrower's default. (See lines 2310-2390.)
2262 Terminations for default that result in acquisition of property (-)	Amount of loan principal reduced by terminations for default that lead to the acquisition of property by the agency.
2263 Terminations for default that result in claim payments (-)	Amount of loan principal reduced by terminations for default that lead to claim payments by the agency that result in neither a loan receivable nor the acquisition of property.
2264 Other adjustments, net (+ or -)	Amount of loan principal reduced or increased for reasons other than those covered by the lines listed above; outstanding principal balances of guaranteed loans transferred to or received from other accounts. When this line is used, the nature of the adjustment must be explained in a footnote.
<b>2290 Outstanding, end of year</b>	Amount of guaranteed loan principal outstanding at the end of the year. The sum of lines 2210 through 2264.



Entry	Description
Memorandum: 2299 Guaranteed amount of guaranteed loans outstanding, end of year	Amount of maximum potential Federal liability for the guaranteed loan principal associated with line 2290. To the extent the guarantee covers both principal and interest, this amount must exclude interest.  This entry is required even though the amount may be the same as in line 2290.
Addendum: Cumulative balance of defaulted guaranteed loans that results in loans receivable:	
2310 Outstanding, start of year	Amount of defaulted guaranteed loans that resulted in the acquisition of a loan receivable outstanding at the beginning of the year.
2331 Disbursements for guaranteed loan claims	Amount of disbursements for acquisition of defaulted loans that were previously guaranteed and result in loans receivable, where the borrower owes the account for the disbursement. These disbursements include past due interest amounts that were paid under the terms of the loan guarantee, if such amounts were capitalized as part of the loan principal.
2351 Repayments of loans receivable (–)	Proceeds received by the account from the settlement of claims on defaulted guaranteed loans that resulted in loans receivable to be applied to the reduction of the loans receivable outstanding. Exclude any premium realized.
2361 Write-offs of loans receivable (–)	Amount of loans receivable written-off for default that were initiated as guaranteed loans but were subsequently acquired as loans receivable. (Refer to the definitions for write-offs provided in OMB Circular No. A–129.)
2364 Other adjustments, net (+ or –)	Amount of loans receivable reduced or increased for reasons other than those covered by the lines listed above. When this line is used, the nature of the adjustment must be explained in a footnote.
<b>2390 Outstanding, end of year</b>	Amount of defaulted guaranteed loans that resulted in loans receivable outstanding at the end of the year. The sum of lines 2310 through 2364.
Net financing disbursements:	Provide line 6300 for guaranteed loan financing accounts only. See section 185.11(d).
6300 Net financing disbursements	Equals net financing disbursements reported on schedule P line 9000. Report PY-BY+7. Line 6300 does not print in the Appendix but is used by OMB for reporting and analytical purposes.

(d) *Agency debt held by the FFB and net financing disbursements (schedules Y, G, and H).*

Baseline data on **debt owed to the FFB** must be reported by all financing and liquidating accounts and by programs that are not covered by the FCRA, such as the Tennessee Valley Authority and Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (which assumed the responsibilities of the Resolution Trust Corporation). Prior to enactment of the Gramm-Rudman-Hollings Act, when the FFB was off-budget, it had three types of transactions. With the enactment of the Gramm-Rudman-Hollings law, the distinctions disappeared for budgetary purposes. Now, all FFB transactions are treated as means of financing to the agencies. In order to track old and new transactions, the lines should be coded with a two-digit suffix as follows, to identify the transactions:

- .01 FFB loan originations.
- .02 Sale of loan assets to the FFB.
- .03 Sale of debt securities to the FFB.

Report this data on the 3300 data line series in schedule Y (PY through BY+4). No policy estimates are required.

Baseline and policy data on *net financing disbursements* must be reported for all financing accounts. "Net financing disbursements" correspond to "net outlays" reported on line 9000 in schedule P of the program account and consist of total financing disbursements (gross) less total offsetting collections in the financing account. Net financing disbursements are calculated by subtracting total cash inflows to the financing account from total cash outflows from the financing account. Cash inflows include subsidy and reestimate collections from the program account, borrower principal and interest payments, recoveries, fees, interest received from Treasury, and other inflows. Cash outflows include loan disbursements, default claim payments, negative subsidy and downward reestimate payments to the receipt account, interest paid to Treasury, and other outflows. In PY through BY, these amounts should equal the amount reported on line 9000 in schedule P of the financing account. These data are needed to estimate Federal borrowing and interest on the public debt.

Report this data on line 6300 of schedule G or H (PY through BY+9) for policy estimates and schedule Y for baseline estimates. Schedule Y only collects baseline net financing disbursement data for financing accounts.

#### DATA REQUIREMENTS FOR SCHEDULE Y

Entry	Description
Agency debt held by the FFB	Provide lines 3310–3390 for liquidating and direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts.
3310 Outstanding agency debt, start of year	Amount of agency debt issues held by FFB at the beginning of the year.
3330 New agency borrowing	Amount of new borrowing from FFB.
3350 Repayments and prepayments (–)	Amount of repayments made to FFB.
<b>3390 Outstanding agency debt, end of year</b>	Amount of agency debt issued held by FFB at the end of the year. The sum of lines 3310 through 3350.
Net financing disbursements:	Provide line 6300 for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts only. Report CY-BY+9.
6300 Net financing disbursements	Analogous to net outlays in budgetary accounts reported on schedule P line 9000. Should equal line 6300 in schedules G and H unless there is a policy proposal that would affect the numbers in Y.

Note: Lines 3310–6300 do not print in the Appendix but are used by OMB for reporting and analytical purposes.

#### 185.12 What do I report for liquidating accounts?

Reporting requirements for liquidating accounts are discussed in sections 185.9, 185.11(b), 185.11(c), and 185.11(d). Illustrations of typical liquidating account status of direct and guaranteed loans schedules can be found at exhibits 185J and 185K. An illustration of a typical liquidating account program and financing schedule can be found at exhibit 185I.

**185.13 What do I report for receipt accounts?**

Negative subsidy and downward reestimate receipt accounts record receipts of amounts paid from the financing account when there is a negative subsidy or downward reestimate. Usually, they are general fund receipt accounts, but with the permission of the OMB representative for the account, they can be special fund receipt accounts. If the program is discretionary, report negative subsidies as "discretionary." If the program is mandatory, report negative subsidies as "mandatory." Report downward reestimates for all credit programs as "mandatory, authorizing committee" in schedules R and K (see section 81.3). Schedule W is automatically generated from data entered in schedule R.

**185.14 Must credit accounts be apportioned?**

Yes. The Antideficiency Act requires that all appropriation and fund accounts, including credit program accounts, financing accounts, and liquidating accounts, be apportioned unless exempted by OMB or a specific statute. OMB may grant exemptions from apportionment in the form of a letter to the head of the department or establishment.

**185.15 When do I submit an apportionment request (SF 132)?**

<b>If budgetary resources...</b>	<b>For example ...</b>	<b>Then ...</b>
Result from <u>current action</u> by Congress	The annual appropriation in the <u>program</u> account for the: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• direct loan subsidy cost,</li> <li>• loan guarantee subsidy cost,</li> <li>• administrative expenses, or</li> <li>• modifications.</li> </ul>	Submit the initial apportionment request by August 21 or within 10 calendar days after the approval of the act providing the new budgetary resource, whichever is later.  Submit reapportionment requests whenever circumstances change. For example, if the subsidy cost appropriation was apportioned solely to make new loans, then you must submit a reapportionment request for both the program and financing accounts before you make a modification that will increase the cost.
<u>Do not result from</u> current action by Congress	The unobligated balances in the <u>financing</u> accounts.  Permanent indefinite appropriation in the <u>program</u> account to cover an upward reestimate.	Submit the initial apportionment request by <u>August 21</u> before the beginning of the fiscal year.  Submit the request for anticipated reestimates with the initial apportionment. When the exact amount is calculated, submit a reapportionment to cover any increase over your initial approved amount.
	Permanent indefinite appropriation in the <u>liquidating</u> account.	Submit the initial apportionment request by <u>August 21</u> before the beginning of the fiscal year. Submit reapportionments as needed.

**185.16 How do I fill out the SF 132?**

Sections 120 and 121 of this circular provide general apportionment guidance, including terminology, line descriptions, timing, and apportionment categories. As with other programs, you will need to locate and review the enacted appropriations language for your credit program. In some cases, you may also need to locate and review other authority in authorizing or substantive acts. An example of standard appropriations language for credit programs is illustrated in Exhibit 185M, and it consists of the following parts:

- Appropriation for the subsidy cost of the direct loan or guarantee program;
- Limitation on the loan program; and
- Appropriation for administrative expenses.

You need the appropriations language to verify that:

- Subsidy cost amounts and administrative expenses are shown correctly on your program account SF 132 (Exhibit 185N);
- Amounts apportioned to reimburse your salaries and expenses account, if any, are correct; and
- Program level portion for the guaranteed loan financing account SF 132 (Exhibit 185P) agrees with the limitation set in the appropriations language.

Exhibit 185Q provides side-by-side, line-by-line instructions for completing the SF 132 for the program account, direct loan financing account, and guaranteed loan financing account. Exhibits 185M through 185BB are a simplified presentation highlighting the budget execution dynamics for interrelated credit accounts. The scenario begins with the program account receiving an appropriation for both direct loans and loan guarantees and concludes with preparing the last quarterly budget execution report for each account. Exhibits for modifications and reestimates are also provided. For this example, assume that this is a new credit program; 25 percent of the amounts appropriated for subsidy cost are obligated each quarter but only 80 percent is disbursed each quarter (with the remainder in the next quarter); 25 percent of the amount appropriated for administrative expenses is obligated and outlaid each quarter; no borrower fees are charged; and simplified interest and repayments calculations are used.

**185.17 Do amounts for an upward reestimate (and the interest on the reestimate) need to be apportioned?**

Yes. An upward reestimate indicates that insufficient funds were paid to the financing account. The reestimate amount (plus interest on the reestimates) must be obligated and outlaid from the program account to the financing account to make sure it has sufficient assets to cover its liabilities. Before recording this obligation, ensure you have adequate resources apportioned. Section 504(f) of the FCRA provides permanent indefinite budget authority for this purpose. If you were unable to include the reestimate in your program account's initial apportionment or you requested too little, submit a reapportionment request for the additional permanent indefinite appropriation the program account needs to pay to the financing account. See Exhibit 185S for a sample reapportionment for an upward reestimate of a program account.

You must make a reestimate immediately after the end of each fiscal year as long as any loans are outstanding, unless a different plan is approved by OMB. After you complete your reestimate, prepare and submit an SF 132 as needed.

**185.18 Do amounts for a downward reestimate (and the interest on the reestimate) need to be apportioned?**

Yes. A downward reestimate indicates that the subsidy cost payment to the financing account by the program account was too large so that its assets exceed its liabilities. The reestimate amount (plus interest on the reestimate) must be obligated and disbursed from the financing account. Before recording the obligation, ensure you have adequate resources apportioned. For direct loans only, if the downward reestimate is due to increased actual collections, use these amounts to cover the obligation. To the extent the reestimate is due to projected increased collections, request borrowing authority to cover the obligation. For loan guarantees only, to the extent the reestimate is due to lower default payments than initially estimated, either actual or projected, use your uninvested balance with Treasury to cover the obligation.

For discretionary programs, disburse the excess (plus interest on reestimates) to a downward reestimate receipt account. For mandatory programs, you may either directly credit the excess (plus interest on reestimates) to the program account as offsetting collections or to a downward reestimate receipt account (Exhibit 185T), as required by your OMB representative.

**185.19 Do amounts for interest payments to Treasury need to be apportioned?**

Yes. For financing accounts, additional amounts (i.e., amounts exceeding your estimate on the most recent approved apportionment) are automatically apportioned. For liquidating accounts, you will need to submit a reapportionment for any additional amounts.

**185.20 Do amounts for debt repayments to Treasury need to be apportioned?**

No. Capital transfers and redemption of debt are not obligations and therefore do not need to be apportioned on line 8. However, you do need to plan for repayments and show your estimated debt repayments as a negative amount on line 6C or 6F (if anticipated) when you submit your SF 132.

**185.21 How do I handle modifications?**

Before you modify a direct loan or loan guarantee, you should take the following steps:

- Step 1. Estimate the cost of the modification (see section 185.7);
- Step 2. Request an apportionment, if necessary;
- Step 3. Receive an approved apportionment from OMB, if necessary;
- Step 4. Modify the direct loan or loan guarantee; and
- Step 5. Record the obligation (see sections 185.30 and 185.31).

To determine whether you need a reapportionment:

If ...	Then ...
The current apportionment allows the apportioned resources to be used for modifications <u>and</u> the cost of the modification is <u>equal to or lower</u> than the amount apportioned less any amounts already obligated.	No reapportionment is required.

If ...	Then ...
The current apportionment does <u>not</u> allow the apportioned resources to be used for modifications.	Yes. See Exhibit 185R for a sample reapportionment for a modification.
If the cost of the modification is <u>higher</u> than the amount apportioned less amounts already obligated.	Yes. See Exhibit 185R for a sample reapportionment for a modification.

### 185.22 Am I required to submit budget execution reports (SF 133)?

Yes. Submit SF 133s on a quarterly basis for all accounts, including those that OMB has exempted from apportionment. The OMB program examiner with primary budget responsibility for the credit account may require budget execution reports more frequently, such as monthly. For credit financing accounts, submit the final SF 133 on a cohort basis unless OMB has approved reporting on a combined basis.

### 185.23 How do I fill out the SF 133?

Section 130 and Appendix A of this circular provide general budget execution reporting guidance, including terminology, line descriptions, and timing. You prepare the SF 133 to show the extent that resources controlled by the SF 132 and other resources have been consumed. The relationship between program and financing accounts is dynamic, affecting different entries of the SF 132 and SF 133 at different stages of the process as transactions occur throughout the year. These complex relationships are illustrated in Exhibit 185X which provides side-by-side, line-by-line instructions for completing the first quarter SF 133 for the hypothetical credit program. Exhibits 185U through 185W illustrate the individual SF 133s for the program, direct loan financing, and guaranteed loan financing accounts, respectively, for the first quarter. Exhibit 185BB continues the presentation of Exhibit 185X by describing the entries for the SF 133 for the fourth quarter. Exhibits 185Y through 185AA illustrate the individual SF 133s for the program, direct loan financing, and guaranteed loan financing accounts, respectively, for the fourth quarter.

Because program accounts typically receive one-year budget authority, the SF 133 will have an unexpired account column as well as five expired account columns. Financing and liquidating accounts, however, have no-year authority so their SF 133s will have only an unexpired column (see section 20.4(c) for a discussion of period of availability).

### 185.24 How do I calculate the initial subsidy cost estimate for execution?

You are required to use the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator to calculate subsidy cost estimates. The Credit Subsidy Calculator and accompanying documentation are available from the OMB representative with primary responsibility for the credit account.

In most cases, you will use the same subsidy rate for execution as you calculated earlier for the Presidential policy rate. However, if the loan contract terms have changed for any reason, then you must update the subsidy rate to reflect the actual terms at the time the loan contract is signed. The risk rating is a forecast assumption and should match the President's Budget.

Do not change the forecast technical assumptions or the methodological assumptions.

For mandatory programs only, also update the economic assumptions to reflect those in the Mid-Session Review if it has been released by the time you are making the calculations.

**185.25 What transactions do I report when the Government incurs direct loan obligations or makes loan guarantee commitments?**

For the program account (Exhibit 185U):

- Include the estimated subsidy cost obligations on line 8A, Obligations incurred, Direct. If resources for the subsidy cost were apportioned in Category A, include the amount on line 8A1. If the resources were apportioned in Category B, include the amount on line 8A2 in the appropriate category; and
- Include the amount on line 14C, Obligated balance, Undelivered orders, since the amount is not yet outlaid to the financing account.

For the direct loan financing account (Exhibit 185V):

- Include the subsidy cost payment obligated in the program account but not yet paid on line 3B2, Spending authority from offsetting collections, Change in unfilled customer orders, Without advance from Federal sources; and
- Include the amount on line 14B, Obligated balance, Unfilled customer orders, Federal sources without advance, since the amounts have not been received from the program account.
- To show the borrowing component:
- Before signing the contract, verify that OMB has apportioned enough borrowing authority on line 1B to cover the part of the direct loan obligation not covered by the subsidy cost payment and upfront fees;
- After you sign the contract, include the obligation on line 8, Obligations incurred. If the direct loan was apportioned in Category A, include the amount on line 8A1. If the direct loan was apportioned in Category B, include it on line 8A2 in the appropriate category; and
- Include the amount on line 14C, Obligated balance, Undelivered orders.

For the loan guarantee financing account (Exhibit 185W):

- Include the subsidy payment obligated in the program account but not yet paid on line 3B2, Spending authority from offsetting collections, Change in unfilled customer orders, Without advance from Federal sources; and
- Include the amount on line 10D, Unobligated balance not available, Other, when the amounts are not apportioned and held as a reserve for future defaults. When the amounts are apportioned, include the amounts on line 9A, Unobligated balance.

**185.26 What transactions do I report when the Government disburses a direct loan or a private lender disburses a guaranteed loan?**

For the program account (Exhibit 185U), just before a loan is disbursed from the financing account:

- Pay the financing account and include the subsidy cost payment on line 15A, Disbursements; and

- Reduce line 14C, Obligated balance, Undelivered orders by the same amount.

For the financing account:

- When the subsidy cost payment is received from the program account, reduce line 3B2, Without advance from Federal sources, and increase line 3A1, Collected;
- For direct loan programs (Exhibit 185V), once the loan is actually disbursed, include the loan disbursement on line 15A, Disbursements and reduce the amount of loans payable from line 14C, Obligated balance, Undelivered orders;
- For loan guarantee programs (Exhibit 185W), do not report any loan disbursement because the private lender disbursed the loan, not the Federal Government. The subsidy cost payment collected by the financing account is held as an uninvested balance that earns interest from Treasury until it is used, for example, to pay default claims; interest supplements; the capitalized costs of foreclosing, managing, and selling collateral assets acquired as a result of defaults; and the costs routinely deducted from the proceeds of sales. Until these resources are needed for such obligations and they are apportioned, include them on line 10D, Unobligated balance not available, Other.

#### **185.27 How do I handle non-subsidy cost collections?**

Report all collections of direct loan principal, interest on direct loans, fees, proceeds from the liquidation of collateral assets, as well as any other collections, to the appropriate cohort and risk category in the financing or liquidating account, as appropriate. Place the amount you anticipate collecting on line 3C, Spending authority from offsetting collections, Anticipated for rest of year, without advance. As collections are actually received throughout the year, report them on line 3A1, Earned, Collected, with a corresponding reduction on line 3C and a negative amount on line 15B, Collections. Because these amounts in financing accounts earn interest, include them in the interest income calculations (see section 185.34).

In financing accounts, non-subsidy cost collections may be used only for the cohort that generated the collection. Except for fees collected, these amounts are not available to make new loans. These amounts are available to:

- Fund a portion of the direct loan, if the collection is a fee paid by the borrower;
- Pay the capitalized costs of foreclosing, managing, and selling collateral assets acquired as the result of defaults on direct or guaranteed loans and costs that are routinely deducted from the proceeds of sales (see section 185.8 for items that qualify);
- Make annual payments of interest to Treasury; and
- Make repayments of principal on amounts borrowed from Treasury using any remaining amounts.

Non-subsidy cost collections in guaranteed loan financing accounts are available to:

- Pay the capitalized costs of foreclosing, managing, and selling collateral assets acquired as the result of defaults on direct or guaranteed loans and costs that are routinely deducted from the proceeds of sales;



- Maintain an unobligated balance to pay such capitalized costs or routinely deducted costs, if any;
- Pay default claims and interest supplements on guaranteed loans;
- Make annual payments of interest to Treasury;
- Make repayments of principal on amounts borrowed from Treasury; and
- Add to the unobligated balance.

To the extent that there are insufficient collections to make timely payment of interest or principal on Treasury borrowings, the financing account must borrow to make such payments. If the cohort's expected future cash flows will not be sufficient to fully repay this additional borrowing plus the cohort's other expected obligations, you must calculate a reestimate and use the subsidy cost collections from this reestimate to repay the additional borrowing, with interest.

In liquidating accounts, these amounts may be used for similar expenses (see section 185.3(k)) without regard to cohort.

#### **185.28 What transactions do I report when a guaranteed loan defaults?**

Loan guarantee default claims are recorded in financing and liquidating accounts. When you receive a loan guarantee default claim:

- Verify that the amount of the default claim is apportioned;
- Include the obligation to pay the claim on line 8, Obligations incurred. If defaults were apportioned in Category A, place the amount on line 8A1. If defaults were apportioned in Category B, place it on line 8A2 in the appropriate category; and
- Include the amount as payable to the private lender on line 14D, Obligated balance, Accounts payable.

When you disburse a payment for a loan guarantee default claim:

- Include the payment on line 15A, Outlays, Disbursements; and
- Reduce the amounts payable on line 14D by the amount reported on line 15A.

#### **185.29 What should I do with unobligated balances in the liquidating account?**

You must transfer any unobligated balance remaining at the end of the fiscal year to the general fund unless OMB has approved an extension. Include this transfer on line 6C, Permanently not available, Capital transfers and redemption of debt. Amounts credited to liquidating accounts in any year are available only for obligations that are incurred in that year and repaying debt owed to the Treasury (including the FFB).

**185.30 How do I report modifications of post-1991 direct loans and loan guarantees?**

A modification results in a subsidy cost increase or decrease which must be recorded on the SF 133 as follows:

If Modification...	Then...
Increases cost	<p>In the program account, include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The increase on line 8, <i>Obligations incurred</i>. If the resources for subsidy cost were apportioned in category A, include the amount on line 8A1. If the resources were apportioned in category B, include the amount on line 8A2 in the appropriate category; and:</li> <li>• The payment to the financing account on line 15A, <i>Outlays, Disbursements</i>.</li> </ul> <p>Note: You cannot incur subsidy cost obligations for modifications unless budgetary resources are available in the program account and have been apportioned for modifications.</p> <p>In the financing account, include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The collection from the program account on line 3A1, <i>Spending authority from offsetting collections, Earned, Collected</i>. Credit this amount to the cohort and risk category of the modified loan. Decrease the estimated collection on line 3C, if appropriate;</li> <li>• For a direct loan modification, use these amounts to pay interest and other expenses and to repay debt owed to Treasury; and</li> <li>• For a loan guarantee modification, use these amounts as needed to pay default claims and other expenses. Remaining balances will be held as uninvested balances with Treasury and will earn interest at the same rate as is paid on other funds held by the financing account for the same cohort.</li> </ul>
Decreases cost	<p>In the financing account include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The estimated decrease on line 8, <i>Obligations incurred</i>. If the resources for the subsidy cost were apportioned in category A, include the amount on line 8A1. If the resources were apportioned in category B, include the amount on line 8A2 in the appropriate category); and</li> <li>• The payment of the amount transferred to the appropriate account on line 15A, <i>Outlays, Disbursements</i>: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ For discretionary programs, include the collection in a negative subsidy receipt account.</li> <li>▶ For mandatory programs, you may (subject to the approval of the OMB representative with budget responsibility for the credit program) credit the amount directly to the program account as offsetting collections.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

For additional transactions, see section 185.7(b).

**185.31 How do I report modifications of pre-1992 direct loans and loan guarantees?**

You estimate and account for the increase or decrease in cost in the same way as modifications of post-1991 loans. In addition to the steps enumerated in section 185.30, normally you must transfer the modified direct loan assets or loan guarantee liabilities from the liquidating account to the financing

account. As part of the transfer, you must make a payment from the financing account to the liquidating account, in the case of direct loans, or from the liquidating account to the financing account, in the case of loan guarantees. In exceptional cases, subject to the approval of the OMB representative with responsibility for the credit program, the modified loans may be retained in the liquidating account. In each case, fill out the budget execution report as follows:

If Asset or Liability will be	Then...
Transferred to the financing account	<p>For direct loans, report an obligation in the financing account that is equal to the payment amount on line 8B, <i>Obligations incurred, Category B, Modifications</i> and a disbursement in the same amount on line 15A, <i>Outlays, Disbursements</i>. Include the receipt of the payment in the liquidating account on line 3A1, <i>Spending authority from offsetting collections, Earned, Collected</i>.</p> <p>For loan guarantees, include the obligation and outlay in the liquidating account and the offsetting collection in the financing account.</p>
Retained by the liquidating account	<p>Where the modification increases the cost:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the program account, report an obligation for the appropriate subsidy cost amount on line 8B, <i>Obligations incurred, Category B, Modifications</i> and an outlay in the same amount on line 15A, <i>Outlays, Disbursements</i>.</li> <li>• For the financing account, include the corresponding transaction on line 3A1, <i>Spending authority from offsetting collections, Earned, Collected</i>, an obligation on line 8, and a disbursement on line 15A.</li> <li>• For the liquidating account, include the payment on line 3A1, <i>Spending authority from offsetting collections, Earned, Collected</i>. This payment compensates this account for the reduction in its assets (direct loan) or its increased liability (loan guarantee).</li> </ul> <p>Where the modification decreases the cost:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For the liquidating account, include permanent indefinite authority to make the payment to the financing account on line 1A, <i>Budget authority, Appropriation</i>.</li> <li>• For the financing account, include this receipt on line 3A1, <i>Spending authority from offsetting collections, Earned, Collected</i> and include the subsequent payment to the negative subsidy receipt account on line 15A, <i>Outlays, Disbursements</i>.</li> </ul>

See section 185.7 for additional discussion about modification transactions.

### 185.32 Why do financing accounts borrow from Treasury?

The FCRA provides indefinite borrowing authority to financing accounts to fund the unsubsidized portion of direct loans and to satisfy obligations in the event the financing account's resources are insufficient.

For direct loan financing accounts, each loan disbursement is financed by the subsidy cost payment from the program account, fees where applicable, and borrowing from Treasury. The financing account makes a single borrowing from Treasury at the beginning of each fiscal year for each cohort based on the estimated net loan disbursements for the cohort in that fiscal year.

For loan guarantees, the financing account may borrow from Treasury when balances in the financing account are insufficient to pay claims. These borrowings generally occur on an as-needed basis.

If a direct loan or loan guarantee program or risk category generates negative subsidy cost, the financing account must borrow from Treasury to cover the payment to the negative subsidy receipt account.

All borrowing is dated October 1 regardless of whether it is the original amount borrowed at the beginning of the year or a supplementary amount borrowed later in the year. As a result of treating the entire amount as a single borrowing, interest expense is not affected by whether all borrowed funds were disbursed or whether the original borrowing had to be supplemented later in the year.

### **185.33 Why do financing accounts earn interest?**

The basic purpose of a guaranteed loan financing account is to accumulate funds to finance future default costs. Subsidy cost payments to the account, fees collected, and other collections are retained in the financing account as an uninvested balance and earn interest at the same rate as the discount rate used to calculate the subsidy cost. The subsidy cost payments, fees, other collections, and interest earnings will be sufficient to finance the net default costs if the initial estimate of subsidy cost is correct.

In direct loan financing accounts, undisbursed Treasury borrowings earn interest at the same rate as the financing account pays on its debt owed to Treasury so that borrowing from Treasury for subsequent disbursements during the year does not have any effect on the results of operations or net financial position of the financing account.

### **185.34 Who calculates interest expense and income?**

You do, using the guidance and interest calculator provided by OMB. Staff at the Department of Treasury's Bureau of Public Debt or Financial Management Service may also perform the calculations to ensure agreement between Treasury and your agency.

### **185.35 When do I calculate interest expense and income?**

You must make the calculations to provide an estimate for the initial SF 132. You also will make these calculations again at the end of the year based on year-end actuals to determine the payment amount. For loan guarantee programs, when the lender does not provide timely information for year-end calculations, you also need to recalculate the actual expense as lender data is made available.

### **185.36 What interest rate do I use to calculate interest expense and income?**

The FCRA requires that the rates for discounting cashflows, financing account borrowing, and financing account interest earnings be identical and based on the Treasury rate in effect during the period of loan disbursement. If your loans disburse in segments over several years, several interest rates will be applicable to an individual loan or group of loans. The correct interest rates are provided for you in the OMB Credit Subsidy Calculator available from your OMB representative

For loan guarantee financing accounts, the interest rate for cash accumulations related to each loan guarantee is determined by the date that the commercial lender disburses the loan being guaranteed. Because commercial lenders may not report to you in a timely manner, you can use an estimated fourth quarter amount for disbursements and collections when you report to Treasury at the end of the fiscal year, adjusting this estimate as actual lender data is accumulated.

**Program Account  
Program and Financing Schedule (Schedule P)**

**Program and Financing (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 73-1154-0-1-376		PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>				
00.01	Direct loan subsidy .....	2	2	2
00.02	Guaranteed loan subsidy .....	191	179	
00.05	Reestimate of direct loan subsidy .....		1	
00.07	Reestimate of loan guarantee subsidy .....	3	31	
00.08	Interest on reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy .....	2	3	
00.09	Administrative expenses .....	129	130	129
10.00	<b>Total new obligations .....</b>	<b>327</b>	<b>346</b>	<b>131</b>
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>				
21.40	Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year .....	76	56	38
22.00	New budget authority (gross) .....	264	328	131
22.10	Resources available from recoveries of prior year obligations...	41		
22.22	Unobligated balance transferred from other accounts .....	2		
23.90	<b>Total budgetary resources available for obligation .....</b>	<b>383</b>	<b>384</b>	<b>169</b>
23.95	<b>Total new obligations .....</b>	<b>-327</b>	<b>-346</b>	<b>-131</b>
24.40	Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year .....	56	38	39
<b>New budget authority (gross), detail:</b>				
Discretionary:				
40.00	Appropriation .....	267	294	131
40.35	Appropriation rescinded .....	-13	-1	
42.00	Transferred from other accounts .....	5		
43.00	Appropriation (total discretionary) .....	259	293	131
Mandatory:				
60.00	Appropriation .....	5	35	
70.00	<b>Total new budget authority (gross) .....</b>	<b>264</b>	<b>328</b>	<b>131</b>
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>				
72.40	Obligated balance, start of year .....	109	88	124
73.10	<b>Total new obligations .....</b>	<b>327</b>	<b>346</b>	<b>131</b>
73.20	Total outlays (gross) .....	-283	-310	-192
73.40	Adjustments in expired accounts (net) .....	-24		
73.45	Recoveries of prior year obligations .....	-41		
74.40	Obligated balance, end of year .....	88	124	63
<b>Outlays (gross), detail:</b>				
86.90	Outlays from new discretionary authority .....	190	185	83
86.93	Outlays from discretionary balances .....	88	125	109
86.97	Outlays from new mandatory authority .....	5		
87.00	<b>Total outlays (gross) .....</b>	<b>283</b>	<b>310</b>	<b>192</b>
<b>Net budget authority and outlays:</b>				
89.00	Budget authority .....	264	328	131
90.00	Outlays .....	283	310	192

You must use special line coding for lines 0001 - 0009. See section 185.10 (a) for a complete list.

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

The FCRA provides permanent authority to finance re-estimates (line 6000). Show re-estimates in PY and CY only.

**Program Account  
Summary of Loan Levels and Subsidy Data (Schedule U)**

**Summary of Loan Levels and Subsidy Data (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 73-1154-0-1-376	PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
<b>Direct loan levels supportable by subsidy budget authority:</b>			
115001 Risk category A .....	27	34	21
<b>115900 Total direct loan levels .....</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>34</b>	<b>21</b>
<b>Direct loan subsidy (in percent):</b>			
132001 Risk category A .....	8.54	8.95	6.78
132900 Weighted average subsidy rate .....	8.54	8.95	6.78
<b>Direct loan subsidy budget authority:</b>			
133001 Risk category A .....	2	2	2
<b>133900 Total subsidy budget authority .....</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>Direct loan subsidy outlays:</b>			
134001 Risk category A .....	2	2	1
<b>134900 Total subsidy outlays .....</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>Direct loan upward reestimate:</b>			
135001 Risk category A .....	-----	1	-----
<b>135900 Total upward reestimate .....</b>		<b>1</b>	
<b>Guaranteed loan levels supportable by subsidy budget authority:</b>			
215001 Risk category B .....	9,697	9,826	10,722
215002 Risk category C .....	2,194	4,252	4,353
215003 Risk category D .....	1,261	2,109	2,500
<b>215900 Total loan guarantee levels .....</b>	<b>13,152</b>	<b>16,187</b>	<b>17,575</b>
<b>Guaranteed loan subsidy (in percent):</b>			
232001 Risk category B .....	1.16	1.17	-1.07
232002 Risk category C .....	0.00	0.00	0.00
232003 Risk category D .....	1.80	2.26	-1.87
232900 Weighted average subsidy rate .....	1.03	1.00	-0.92
<b>Guaranteed loan subsidy budget authority:</b>			
233001 Risk category B .....	113	115	-115
233002 Risk category C .....	-----	-----	-----
233003 Risk category D .....	23	48	-47
<b>233900 Total subsidy budget authority .....</b>	<b>135</b>	<b>163</b>	<b>-161</b>
<b>Guaranteed loan subsidy outlays:</b>			
234001 Risk category B .....	116	110	-100
234002 Risk category C .....	-----	-----	-----
234003 Risk category D .....	31	34	-30
<b>234900 Total subsidy outlays .....</b>	<b>147</b>	<b>144</b>	<b>-130</b>
<b>Guaranteed loan upward reestimate:</b>			
235002 Risk category C .....	5	34	-----
<b>235900 Total upward reestimate .....</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>34</b>	
<b>Guaranteed loan downward reestimate:</b>			
237001 Risk category B .....	-284	-117	-----
237002 Risk category C .....	-----	-271	-----
237003 Risk category D .....	-----	-334	-----
<b>237900 Total downward reestimate .....</b>	<b>-284</b>	<b>-722</b>	
<b>Administrative expense data:</b>			
351000 Budget authority .....	129	129	129
359000 Outlays from new authority .....	129	129	129

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

To insert reestimate budget authority lines (1350xx and 1370xx for direct loans, 2350xx and 2370xx for loan guarantees), select the line number from the edit/insert menu that corresponds to the risk category listed on lines 1150xx and 2150xx. For example, to insert line 2350xx for risk category E, select line number 235004.

For negative subsidy risk categories, report lines 2320xx through 2340xx as negative amounts.

**Direct Loan Financing Account  
Program and Financing Schedule (Schedule P)**

**Program and Financing** (in millions of dollars)

Identification code 73-4148-0-3-376	PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>			
00.01 Direct loans .....	29	60	21
00.02 Interest on Treasury borrowing .....	24	29	28
Other expenses:			
00.03 Other expenses .....	17		5
10.00 Total new obligations .....	70	89	54
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>			
21.40 Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year .....	47	110	17
22.00 New financing authority (gross) .....	151	86	96
22.60 Portion applied to repay debt .....	-18	-90	-45
23.90 Total budgetary resources available for obligation .....	180	106	68
23.95 Total new obligations .....	-70	-89	-54
24.40 Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year .....	110	17	14
<b>New financing authority (gross), detail:</b>			
Mandatory:			
67.10 Authority to borrow .....	27	24	19
Spending authority from offsetting collections:			
69.00 Offsetting collections (cash) .....	102	61	77
69.10 Change in uncollected customer payments from program account (unexpired) .....	22	1	
69.90 Spending authority from offsetting collections (total mandatory) .....	124	62	77
70.00 Total new financing authority (gross) .....	151	86	96
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>			
72.40 Obligated balance, start of year .....	25	88	96
73.10 Total new obligations .....	70	89	54
73.20 Total financing disbursements (gross) .....	15	-80	-60
74.00 Change in uncollected customer payments from program account (unexpired) .....	-22	-1	
Unpaid obligations, end of year:			
74.40 Obligated balance, end of year .....	88	96	90
87.00 Total financing disbursements (gross) .....	-15	80	60
<b>Offsets:</b>			
Against gross financing authority and financing disbursements:			
Offsetting collections (cash) from:			
88.00 Federal sources: Payments from program account .....	2	3	1
Non-Federal sources:			
88.40 Repayments of principal, net .....	36	19	23
88.40 Interest received on loans .....	22	22	28
88.40 Other income .....	42	17	25
88.90 Total, offsetting collections (cash) .....	102	61	77
Against gross financing authority only:			
88.95 Change in uncollected customer payments from program account .....	22	1	
<b>Net financing authority and financing disbursements:</b>			
89.00 Financing authority .....	27	24	19
90.00 Financing disbursements .....	-117	19	-17

You must use special line coding for lines 0001 - 0804. See section 185.11(a) for a complete list.

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

Line 7400 is automatically copied from line 6910 but with the opposite sign. Update the line stub to be consistent with 6910.

Enter lines 8800-8845 as positive amounts. These amounts will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign.

Line 8895 is automatically copied from line 6910 but will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign.

**Direct Loan Financing Account  
Status of Direct Loans (Schedule G)**

Status of Direct Loans (in millions of dollars)

Identification code 73-4148-0-3-376		PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
<b>Position with respect to appropriations act limitation on obligation:</b>				
1111	Limitation on direct loans	30	60	25
1150	Total direct loan obligations .....	30	60	25
<b>Cumulative balance of direct loans outstanding:</b>				
1210	Outstanding, start of year .....	93	60	93
Disbursements:				
1231	Direct loan disbursements .....	15	48	18
1232	Purchase of loan assets from the public .....	-30		
1251	Repayments: Repayments and prepayments .....	-16	-8	-10
1263	Write-offs for default: Direct loans .....	-2	-7	-5
1290	Outstanding, end of year .....	60	93	96

Include line 1111 even if the value is zero.

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.



**Direct Loan Financing Account  
Balance Sheet (Schedule F)**

Balance Sheet (in millions of dollars)			
Identification code 73-4148-0-3-376		PY-1 actual	PY actual
<b>ASSETS:</b>			
Federal assets:			
1101	Fund balances with Treasury .....	72	198
1106	Receivables, net .....	0	0
1206	Non-Federal assets: Receivables, net .....		29
Net value of assets related to post-1991 direct loans receivable:			
1401	Direct loans receivables, gross .....	83	60
1402	Interest receivable .....	3	2
1405	Allowance for subsidy cost (-) .....	-7	-5
1499	Net present value of assets related to direct loans .....	79	57
1404	Net value of assets related to post-1991 acquired defaulted guaranteed loans receivable:		
	Foreclosed property .....	9	
1999	<b>Total assets .....</b>	<b>160</b>	<b>284</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>			
Federal liabilities:			
2103	Debt payable to Treasury .....	160	284
2999	<b>Total liabilities .....</b>	<b>160</b>	<b>284</b>
<b>NET POSITION</b>			
3300	Cumulative results of operations .....		
3999	<b>Total net position .....</b>		
4999	<b>Total liabilities and net position .....</b>	<b>160</b>	<b>284</b>

Line 1101 equals obligated and unobligated balances.

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

Line 1106 includes only undisbursed upward reestimates and interest on such reestimates. Do not report amounts for CY or BY. Do not include undisbursed subsidy from the program account even if it has been obligated.

See section 86.2 for detailed information about balance sheets.

Include undisbursed downward reestimates and interest on such reestimates on line 2101.

**Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
Program and Financing Schedule (Schedule P)**

**Program and Financing (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 73-4149-0-3-376		PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>				
00.01	Default claims .....	681	720	762
00.05	Other expenses .....	293	283	159
08.01	Negative subsidy .....	3	27	130
08.02	Payment of downward reestimate to receipt account .....	238	558	
08.03	Payment to liquidating account to purchase loan assets.....	39	24	24
08.04	Payment of interest on downward reestimate to receipt account...	46	164	
10.00	<b>Total new obligations</b> .....	<b>1,300</b>	<b>1,776</b>	<b>1,075</b>
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>				
21.40	Unobligated balance carried forward, start of year .....	1,027	846	88
22.00	New financing authority (gross) .....	1,119	1,018	1,126
23.90	Total budgetary resources available for obligation .....	2,146	1,864	1,214
23.95	<b>Total new obligations</b> .....	<b>-1,300</b>	<b>-1,176</b>	<b>-1,075</b>
24.40	Unobligated balance carried forward, end of year .....	846	88	139
<b>New financing authority (gross), detail:</b>				
Spending authority from offsetting collections:				
Mandatory:				
69.00	Offsetting collections (cash) .....	1,121	1,079	1,126
69.10	Change in uncollected customer payments from program account (unexpired)	-2	-61	
69.90	<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (total mandatory)</b> .....	<b>1,119</b>	<b>1,018</b>	<b>1,126</b>
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>				
72.40	Obligated balance, start of year .....	75	340	1,002
73.10	<b>Total new obligations</b> .....	<b>1,300</b>	<b>1,776</b>	<b>1,075</b>
73.20	Total financing disbursements (gross) .....	-1,037	-1,175	-1,472
74.00	Change in uncollected customer payments from program account (unexpired)	2	61	
74.40	Obligated balance, end of year .....	340	1,002	605
87.00	<b>Total financing disbursements (gross)</b> .....	<b>1,037</b>	<b>1,175</b>	<b>1,472</b>
<b>Offsets:</b>				
Against gross financing authority and financing disbursements:				
Offsetting collections (cash) from:				
Federal sources:				
88.00	Payments from program account .....	151	178	
88.00	Upward reestimate .....	3	31	
88.00	Interest on reestimate .....	2	3	
88.25	Interest on uninvested funds .....	22	45	46
Non-Federal sources:				
88.40	Fees .....	435	588	800
88.40	Proceeds from loan asset sales .....	60	80	124
88.40	Other .....	448	154	156
88.90	<b>Total, offsetting collections (cash)</b> .....	<b>1,121</b>	<b>1,079</b>	<b>1,126</b>
Against gross financing authority only:				
88.95	Change in uncollected customer payments from program account .....	-2	-61	
<b>Net financing authority and financing disbursements:</b>				
89.00	Financing authority .....			
90.00	Financing disbursements .....	-84	96	346

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

Line 7400 is automatically copied from line 6910 but with the opposite sign. Update the line stub to be consistent with 6910.

Enter lines 8800-8845 as positive amounts. The amounts will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign.

Line 8895 is automatically copied from line 6910 but will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign.

**Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
Status of Guaranteed Loans (Schedule H)**

Status of Guaranteed Loans (in millions of dollars)					
Identification code 73-4149-0-3-376		PY actual	CY est.	BY est.	
<b>Position with respect to appropriations act limitation on commitments:</b>					
2111	Limitation on guaranteed loans made by private lenders .....	14,874	16,187	17,575	Include line 2111 even if the value is zero.
2131	Guaranteed loan commitments exempt from limitation .....	1,284			
2142	Uncommitted loan guarantee limitation .....	-3,006			
2150	<b>Total guaranteed loan commitments .....</b>	<b>13,152</b>	<b>16,187</b>	<b>17,575</b>	
<b>Memorandum:</b>					
2199	Guaranteed amount of guaranteed loan commitments	10,522	12,950	14,060	
<b>Cumulative balance of guaranteed loans outstanding:</b>					
2210	Outstanding, start of year .....	36,767	31,739	27,572	Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.
2231	Disbursements of new guaranteed loans .....	12,149	10,488	9,111	
2251	Repayments and prepayments .....	-16,463	-13,965	-5,338	
Adjustments:					
2261	Terminations for default that result in loans receivable .....	-681	-656	-670	
2264	Other adjustments, net .....	-33	-34	-35	
2290	<b>Outstanding, end of year .....</b>	<b>31,739</b>	<b>27,572</b>	<b>30,640</b>	
<b>Memorandum:</b>					
2299	Guaranteed amount of guaranteed loans outstanding, end of year..	23,280	20,679	22,459	
<b>Addendum:</b>					
Cumulative balance of defaulted guaranteed loans that result in loans receivable:					
2310	Outstanding, start of year .....	753	817	1,011	
2331	Disbursements for guaranteed loan claims .....	681	656	670	
2351	Repayments of loans receivable .....	-204	-210	-214	
2361	Write-offs of loans receivable .....	-236	-118	-61	
2364	Other adjustments, net .....	-177	-134	-137	
2390	<b>Outstanding, end of year .....</b>	<b>817</b>	<b>1,011</b>	<b>1,269</b>	

Line 2199 is required even if the value is the same as line 2150.

**Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
Balance Sheet (Schedule F)**

Balance Sheet (in millions of dollars)		
Identification code 73-4149-0-3-376	PY-1 actual	PY actual
<b>ASSETS:</b>		
Federal assets:		
1101	Fund balances with Treasury .....	1,102 1,186
1106	Receivables, net .....	5 34
1207	Non-Federal assets: Advances and pre-payments..	449
	Net value of assets related to post-1991 acquired defaulted guaranteed loans receivable:	
1501	Defaulted guaranteed loans receivables, gross..	834 817
1502	Interest receivable .....	38 37
1505	Allowance for subsidy cost (-) .....	-215 -78
1599	Net present value of assets related to defaulted guaranteed loans .....	657 776
1901	Other Federal assets: Other assets .....	128 197
1999	<b>Total assets .....</b>	<b>1,892 2,642</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
2101	Accounts payable.....	284 722
2204	Non-Federal liabilities: Liabilities for loan guarantees .....	1,608 1,920
2999	<b>Total liabilities .....</b>	<b>1,892 2,642</b>
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
3300	Cumulative results of operations .....	
3999	<b>Total net position .....</b>	
4999	<b>Total liabilities and net position .....</b>	<b>1,892 2,642</b>

Line 1101 equals obligated and unobligated balances.

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

Include undisbursed downward reestimates and interest on such estimates on line 2101.

Line 1106 includes only undisbursed upward reestimates and interest on such reestimates. Do not report amounts for CY or BY. Do not include undisbursed subsidy from the program account even if it has been obligated.

See section 86.2 for detailed information about balance sheets.

The financing account is designed to break even and thus have a zero results of operation.

**Liquidating Account  
Program and Financing Schedule (Schedule P)**

**Program and Financing (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 73-4154-0-3-376	2003 actual	2004 est.	2005 est.
<b>Obligations by program activity:</b>			
00.01	31	25	20
00.03	130	120	150
00.05	26	100	65
<b>10.00</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>Budgetary resources available for obligation:</b>			
21.40	32		
<b>22.00</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>235</b>
22.40	-2		
22.60	-30		
<b>23.90</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>23.95</b>	<b>-187</b>	<b>-245</b>	<b>-235</b>
24.40			
<b>New budget authority (gross), detail:</b>			
Mandatory:			
69.00	270	617	327
69.27	-3	-22	
69.47	-80	-350	-92
<b>69.90</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>235</b>
<b>Change in obligated balances:</b>			
72.40	27	55	20
<b>73.10</b>	<b>187</b>	<b>245</b>	<b>235</b>
73.20	-159	-280	-231
74.40	55	20	24
<b>Outlays (gross) detail:</b>			
86.97	150	265	222
86.98	9	15	9
<b>87.00</b>	<b>159</b>	<b>280</b>	<b>231</b>
<b>Offsets:</b>			
Against gross budget authority and outlays:			
Offsetting collections (cash) from:			
Loan repayments:			
Non-Federal sources:			
88.40	99	100	80
88.40	20	27	21
88.40	1	7	2
88.40	150	433	199
<b>88.90</b>	<b>270</b>	<b>617</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>Net budget authority and outlays:</b>			
<b>89.00</b>	<b>-83</b>	<b>-372</b>	<b>-92</b>
<b>90.00</b>	<b>-111</b>	<b>-337</b>	<b>-96</b>

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

There should be no unobligated balance at the end of any fiscal year (line 2440) unless an extension has been approved by OMB. Excess amounts should be used to repay debt or transferred to the general fund.

Enter lines 8800-8845 as positive amounts. These amounts will appear in the Budget Appendix with the opposite sign.

**Liquidating Account  
Status of Direct Loans (Schedule G)**

**Status of Direct Loans (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 73-4154-0-3-376		PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
Loan fund A, Direct Loans				
<b>Cumulative balance of direct loans outstanding:</b>				
1210	Outstanding, start of year .....	555	326	149
1232	Disbursements: Purchase of loans assets from the Public .....	20	22	18
Repayments:				
1251	Repayments and prepayments .....	-126	-119	-39
1252	Proceeds from loan asset sales to the public or discounted prepayments without recourse .....	-39	-24	-24
1262	Adjustments: Discount on loan asset sales to the public or discounted prepayments .....	-36	-15	.....
1263	Write-offs for default: Direct loans .....	-48	-41	-13
1290	Outstanding, end of year .....	326	149	91
Loan fund B and C, Direct Loans				
<b>Cumulative balance of direct loans outstanding:</b>				
1210	Outstanding, start of year .....	193	159	137
Repayments:				
1251	Repayments and prepayments .....	-20	-13	-15
1252	Proceeds from loan asset sales to the public or discounted .....	-14	-9	-5
1290	Outstanding, end of year .....	159	137	117

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

For liquidating accounts, do not use lines 1111-1150 or 6300. Most liquidating accounts should not use line 1231.

**Liquidating Account  
Status of Guaranteed Loans (Schedule H)**

**Status of Guaranteed Loans (in millions of dollars)**

Identification code 73-4154-0-3-376	PY actual	CY est.	BY est.
Loan Fund D, Loan Guarantees			
<b>Cumulative balance of guaranteed loans outstanding:</b>			
2210 Outstanding, start of year .....	2,652	2,010	1,578
2251 Repayments and prepayments .....	-613	-398	-313
Adjustments:			
2261 Terminations for default that result in loans receivable ...	-26	-28	-22
2264 Other adjustments, net .....	-3	-6	-5
<b>2290 Outstanding, end of year .....</b>	<b>2,010</b>	<b>1,578</b>	<b>1,238</b>
<b>Memorandum:</b>			
2299 Guaranteed amount of guaranteed loans outstanding, end of year .....	1,766	1,442	1,127
<b>Addendum:</b>			
Cumulative balance of defaulted guaranteed loans that result in loans receivable:			
2310 Outstanding, start of year .....	1,378	1,320	1,242
2331 Disbursements for guaranteed loan claims .....	26	28	22
2361 Write-offs of loans receivable .....	-9	-6	.....
2364 Other adjustments, net .....	-75	-100	.....
<b>2390 Outstanding, end of year .....</b>	<b>1,320</b>	<b>1,242</b>	<b>1,264</b>

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

For liquidating accounts, do not use lines 2111-2150 or 6300. Most liquidating accounts should not use line 2231.

**Liquidating Account  
Balance Sheet (Schedule F)**

**Balance Sheet (in millions of dollars)**

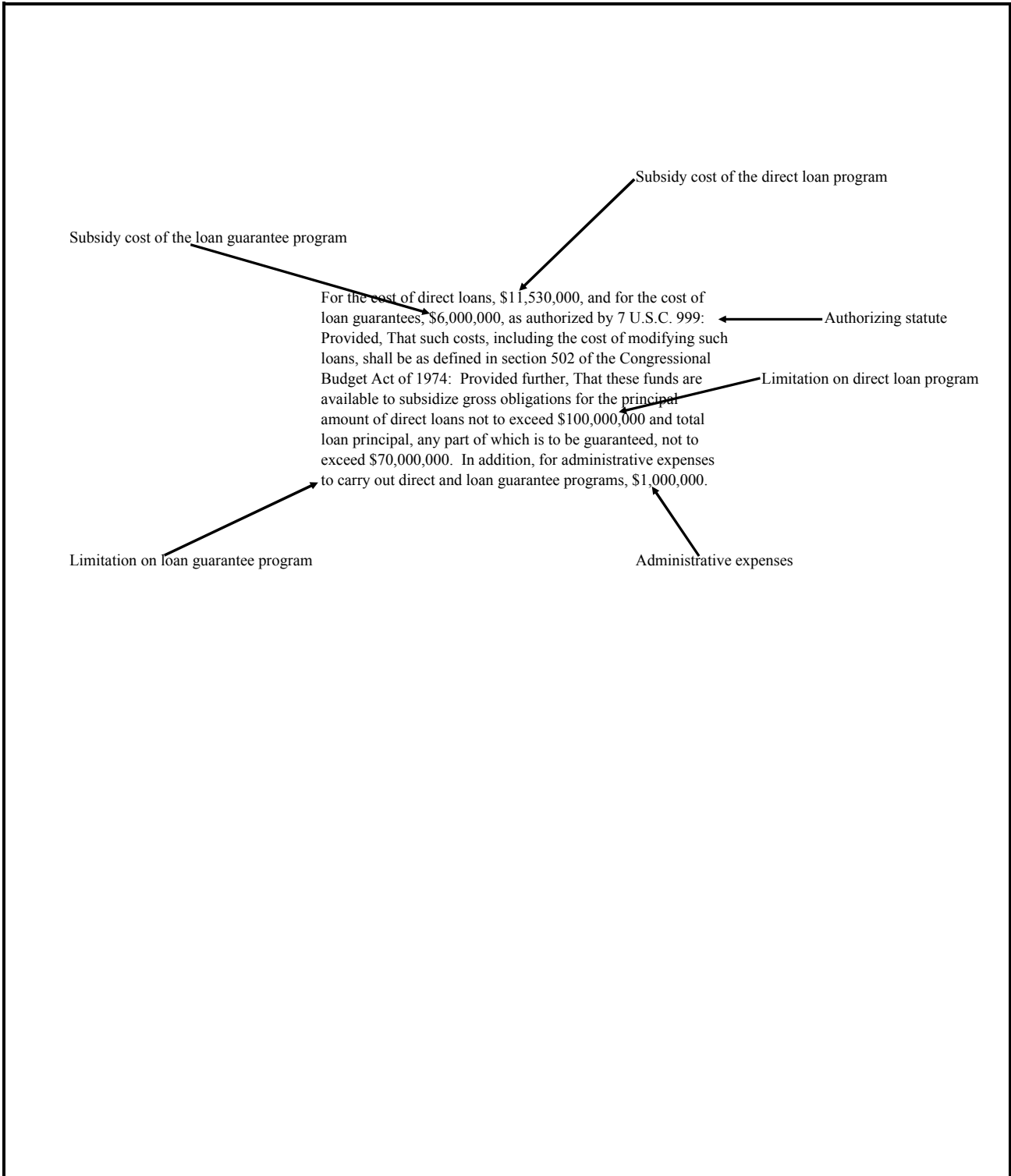
Identification code 73-4154-0-3-376	PY-1 actual	PY actual
<b>ASSETS:</b>		
Federal assets:		
1101 Fund balances with Treasury .....	779	920
Investments in US securities:		
1102 Treasury securities, net .....	244	218
1107 Advances and prepayments .....	6	3
Non-Federal assets:		
1206 Receivables, net .....	214	280
1207 Advances and prepayments .....	8	8
Net value of assets related to pre-1992 direct loans receivable and acquired defaulted guaranteed loans receivable:		
1601 Direct loans, gross .....	748	484
1603 Allowance for estimated uncollectible loans and interest (-) .....	-303	-73
1699 Value of assets related to direct loans .....	445	411
1901 Other Federal assets: Other assets .....	21	115
1999 Total assets .....	1,717	1,955
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
Federal liabilities:		
2101 Accounts payable .....	1,123	48
2102 Interest payable .....	57	96
2103 Debt to the FFB .....	193	159
2105 Other Liabilities .....		1,046
Non-Federal liabilities		
2201 Accounts payable .....	13	108
2204 Liabilities for loan guarantees .....	18	13
2207 Other Liabilities .....	313	485
2999 Total liabilities .....	1,717	1,955
<b>NET POSITION</b>		
3300 Cumulative results of operations .....		
3999 Total net position .....		
4999 Total liabilities and net position .....	1,717	1,955

Shaded entries are automatically calculated by MAX.

See Section 86.2 for detailed information about balance sheets.



Standard Appropriations Language



### Initial Apportionment Program Account

**80** [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
**YYYY** [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
**0138** [= Treasury account code]  
**YYYY** [= fiscal year]  
**01** [= program number. Use the default value of "01" unless OMB tells you to use other numbers]

Fiscal year CY

#### SF132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Credit Program Account 80Y0138	
	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<b>Budget authority:</b>			
1A	Appropriation..... P.L. 106-XXX.....		18,530,000
			Subsidy (\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000) + administrative expenses (\$1,000,000).
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		<b>18,530,000</b>
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCE</b>			
<i>Memorandum:</i>			
<b>Apportioned: Obligations incurred</b>			
Category B:			
8B1	Direct loan subsidy.....		11,530,000
8B2	Guaranteed loan subsidy.....		6,000,000
8B3	Administrative expenses.....		1,000,000
12	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>		<b>18,530,000</b>

SUBMITTED Authorized officer \_\_\_\_\_ APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_

(Date)

(Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

**Initial Apportionment  
Direct Loan Financing Account**

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 4147 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- 01 [= program number. Use the default value of "01" unless OMB tells you to use other numbers]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Direct Loan Financing Account 80X4147	
DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<b>Budget authority:</b>			
1B Borrowing authority.....	Direct loan limitation (\$100,000,000) minus subsidy (\$11,530,000).	88,470,000	
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>			
3C Anticipated for rest of year without advance.....		21,773,000	Subsidy from the program account (\$11,530,000)+ repayments from borrower (\$10,243,000). 100% of the subsidy is recorded because the spending plan assumes that all loans will be obligated in the first year.
<b>Permanently not available:</b>			
6F Anticipated rest of year .....	Anticipated principal repayments to Treasury.	-8,562,750	
<b>7 Total budgetary resources.....</b>		<b>101,680,250</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<i>Memorandum:</i>			
<b>Apportioned: Obligations incurred</b>			
Category A:			
8A1 First quarter.....		25,000,000	These two entries should be equal.
8A2 Second quarter.....		25,000,000	
8A3 Third quarter.....		25,000,000	
8A4 Fourth quarter.....		25,000,000	
Category B:			
8B1 Interest paid to Treasury		1,680,250	
<b>12 Total budgetary resources.....</b>		<b>101,680,250</b>	

SUBMITTED Authorized officer \_\_\_\_\_ APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

**Initial Apportionment  
Guaranteed Loan Financing Account**

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]
- [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 4148 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- 01 [= program number. Use the default value of "01" unless OMB tells you to use other numbers]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary	Guaranteed Loan Financing Account 80X4148		
DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>PROGRAM LEVEL</b>			
Guaranteed loan levels:			
Current year .....		70,000,000	Limitation on loan guarantees.
Unused from prior years .....			
<b>APPLICATION</b>			
Apportioned:			
Category A:			
First quarter	These top lines are only used on the SF 132 for guaranteed loan financing accounts.		
Second quarter			
Third quarter			
Fourth quarter			
Category B:			
Guaranteed loan program		70,000,000	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):			
3C Anticipated for rest of year without advance .....		6,360,000	Subsidy from the program account (\$6,000,000) + interest from Treasury (\$360,000).
7 <b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....		<b>6,360,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
11 <b>Unapportioned balance of revolving fund</b> .....		6,360,000	These two entries should be equal.
12 <b>Total budgetary resources</b> .....		<b>6,360,000</b>	

SUBMITTED Authorized officer \_\_\_\_\_ APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

INITIAL APPORTIONMENT SIDE-BY-SIDE-ACCOUNT COMPARISON

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
<b>Program Level</b>			
1. Guaranteed loan levels			Record the loan guarantee limitation, in this case \$70,000,000.
A. Current year			
<b>Application</b>			
2. Apportioned:			Should equal the amount on line 1 immediately above.
Category B			
(1) Guaranteed loan program			
<b>Budgetary Resources</b>			
1. Budget authority			
A. Appropriations	The total amount specified in the appropriations language and becoming available on or after October 1 of the fiscal year. It is composed of amounts to cover direct and guaranteed loan subsidy costs and administrative expenses (\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000 + \$1,000,000).		
B. Borrowing authority		The amount of borrowing authority anticipated to be used to cover obligations during the year that are not covered by subsidy cost payments or fees. Usually, assume direct loan obligations equal to the direct loan limitation and subtract corresponding estimates of subsidy cost payments and any fees paid by the borrower (\$100,000,000 - \$11,530,000). (This example assumes borrowers are not charged any fees.)	
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)		The expected collections of credit subsidy cost payments from the	The expected collections of credit subsidy cost payments from the

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
C. Anticipated for rest of year without advance		program account, plus expected repayments from borrowers (\$11,530,000 + \$10,243,000).	program account plus interest earned from Treasury (\$6,000,000 + \$360,000).
6. Permanently not available		Repayments of Treasury debt are shown as a reduction in resources rather than as obligations and disbursements. Does not include interest payments made on debt owed to Treasury, which are treated as an obligation and an outlay. To calculate principal repayments to Treasury, contact your OMB representative.	
F. Anticipated rest of year			
7. Total Budgetary Resources	The sum of lines 1-6 and always equal to line 12.	The sum of lines 1-6 and always equal to line 12.	The sum of lines 1-6 and always equal to line 12.

#### Status of Budgetary Resources

8. Apportioned		The amount for each quarter to incur direct loan obligations and to disburse loans. Assuming that 100% of the direct loans will be obligated evenly throughout the first year, entries for each quarter are calculated by dividing the direct loan limitation level equally into four quarters (\$100,000,000 * .25).
Category A:		
(1) First quarter		
(2) Second quarter		
(3) Third quarter		
(4) Fourth quarter		
Category B:	Includes separate amounts for direct loan and loan guarantee subsidy cost and administrative expenses. Because this program expects to obligate the full amounts in the first fiscal year, the total amount of subsidy cost and administrative expenses appropriated to the account should be apportioned.	In this example, \$1,680,250 is requested for interest payments to Treasury.
(1) Direct loan subsidy cost		
(2) Guaranteed loan subsidy cost		
(3) Administrative expenses		
(4) Interest paid to Treasury		

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
11. Unapportioned balance of revolving fund			Records the amount of subsidy cost payments and interest which will be held to finance future defaults (\$6,000,000 + \$360,000).
12. Total Budgetary Resources	The sum of lines 8-11 and always equal to line 7.	The sum of lines 8-11 and always equal to line 7.	The sum of lines 8-11 and always equal to line 7.

### Reapportionment for Modification Program Account

- 80 [= Treasury agency code]  
[= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]
- YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]
- 0138 [= Treasury account code]
- YYYY [= fiscal year]
- 01 [= program number. Use the default value of "01" unless OMB tells you to use other numbers]

Fiscal year CY

#### SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Credit Program Account 80Y0138	
DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST	ACTION BY OMB
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<b>Budget authority:</b>			
1A Appropriation..... P.L. 106-XXX.....	18,530,000	19,530,000	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                     If your current apportionment does not provide budgetary resources to cover the modification cost, you must submit a reapportionment.                 </div>		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                     Subsidy (\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000) + modification (\$1,000,000) + administrative expenses (\$1,000,000).                 </div>	
7 <b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>18,530,000</b>	<b>19,530,000</b>	
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<i>Memorandum:</i>			
<b>Apportioned: Obligations incurred</b>			
Category B:			
8B1 Direct loan subsidy.....	11,530,000	11,530,000	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                         These two entries should be equal.                     </div>
8B2 Guaranteed loan subsidy.....	6,000,000	6,000,000	
8B3 Administrative expenses.....	1,000,000	1,000,000	
8B4 Direct loan modification.....	1,000,000	1,000,000	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                     Budgetary resources for modifications must be apportioned in advance.                 </div>			
12 <b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>18,530,000</b>	<b>19,530,000</b>	

SUBMITTED Authorized officer \_\_\_\_\_ APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.



**Reapportionment for Upward Reestimate  
Program Account**

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 YYYY [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 0138 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 01 [= program number. Use the default value of "01" unless OMB tells you to use other numbers]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Credit Program Account 80Y0138	
	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<b>Budget authority:</b>			
1A	Appropriation..... P.L. 106-XXX.....	18,530,000	18,530,000
1E	Other..... FCRA.....		1,000,000
			↑
			↑
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>18,530,000</b>	<b>19,530,000</b>
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<i>Memorandum:</i>			
<b>Apportioned:</b> <i>Obligations incurred</i>			
Category B:			
8B1	Direct loan subsidy.....	11,530,000	11,530,000
8B2	Guaranteed loan subsidy.....	6,000,000	6,000,000
8B3	Administrative expenses.....	1,000,000	1,000,000
8B4	Reestimate.....		1,000,000
		↑	
12	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>18,530,000</b>	<b>19,530,000</b>

If your current apportionment does not provide budgetary resources to cover the upward reestimate, you must submit a reapportionment requesting permanent indefinite authority to cover upward reestimate of \$1,000,000.

Until indefinite appropriations are warranted, include them on line 1E. On subsequent apportionments, include the warranted amounts on line 1A (see line description of indefinite appropriation).

Budgetary resources for upward reestimate.

These two entries should be equal.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer \_\_\_\_\_ APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Date) (Date)

NOTE. Pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1553(b), not to exceed one percent of the total appropriation for this account is apportioned for the purpose of paying legitimate obligations related to canceled accounts.

**Reapportionment for Downward Reestimate  
Direct Loan Financing Account**

80 [= Treasury agency code]  
 [= first year of availability, or blank for annual and no-year]  
 X [= last year of availability, or "X" for no-year]  
 4148 [= Treasury account code]  
 YYYY [= fiscal year]  
 01 [= program number. Use the default value of "01" unless OMB tells you to use other numbers]

Fiscal year CY

**SF 132 APPORTIONMENT AND REAPPORTIONMENT SCHEDULE**

AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Direct Loan Financing Account 80X4148	
	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT ON LATEST SF 132	AGENCY REQUEST
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<b>Budget authority:</b>			
1B	Borrowing authority.....	88,470,000	88,470,000
<b>Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</b>			
Earned:			
3A1	Collected.....	21,773,000	22,773,000
<b>Permanently not available:</b>			
6C	Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....	-8,562,750	-8,562,750
7	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>101,680,250</b>	<b>102,680,250</b>
<b>APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
<i>Memorandum: Obligations incurred</i>			
<b>AppORTIONED:</b>			
Category A:			
8A1	First quarter.....	25,000,000	25,000,000
8A2	Second quarter.....	25,000,000	25,000,000
8A3	Third quarter.....	25,000,000	25,000,000
8A4	Fourth quarter.....	25,000,000	25,000,000
Category B:			
8B1	Interest paid to Treasury.....	1,680,250	1,680,250
8B2	To receipt account.....		1,000,000
	(3)		
	(4)		
12	<b>Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>101,680,250</b>	<b>102,680,250</b>

If your current apportionment does not address the downward reestimate, you must submit a reapportionment.

Direct loan limitation (\$100,000,000) minus subsidy (\$11,530,000).

\$1,000,000 more was collected from borrowers than estimated.

Use 6C (actual) and 6F (anticipated) to show principal repayments to Treasury.

Because this is a downward reestimate the amount will be obligated and disbursed to the receipt account.

These entries should be equal.

SUBMITTED Authorized officer APPORTIONED \_\_\_\_\_

(Date)

(Date)

End of First Quarter-Program Account Report on Budget Execution

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES			
		Period ended 12/31/CY	
AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Credit Program Account	
		Unexpired	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
1. Budget Authority			
A. Appropriations.....P.L. 106-XXX.....		18,530,000	The appropriations becoming available on or after October 1 of the fiscal year. In this case, it is composed of direct loan subsidy (\$11,530,000) + guaranteed loan subsidy (\$6,000,000) + administrative expenses (\$1,000,000).
7. Total budgetary resources.....		18,530,000	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
8. Obligations incurred:			
A. Direct			
2. Category B:			
1. Direct loan subsidy.....		2,882,500	25% of the total direct and guaranteed loan subsidy has been obligated.
2. Guaranteed loan subsidy.....		1,500,000	
3. Administrative expenses.....		250,000	25% of the total administrative expenses has been obligated.
9. Unobligated balance:			
A. Apportioned:			
1. Balance, currently available.....		13,897,500	Amount apportioned under Category B of the latest SF 132 (\$18,530,000) minus the total obligations incurred on line 8.B. above (\$4,632,500).
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....		18,530,000	
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>			
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:			
C. Undelivered orders (+).....		876,500	Loan subsidy obligated but not yet disbursed.
15. Outlays:			
A. Disbursements (+).....		3,756,000	Loan subsidy and administrative cost obligated and disbursed.
SUBMITTED _____ (Authorized Officer) _____ (Date)			
(Preparer: Name) _____ (Address) _____ (Phone number) _____			

**End of First Quarter- Direct Loan Financing Account  
Report on Budget Execution**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES		Fiscal Year <u>CY</u>
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary	Direct Loan Financing Account	
		Unexpired
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget Authority	Amount apportioned on latest SF 132.	
B. Borrowing Authority.....	88,470,000	
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)		
A. Earned:		
1. Collected.....	2,306,000	
B. Change in unfilled customer orders:		
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....	576,500	
C. Anticipated for rest of year without advance.....	18,890,500	
6. Permanently not available:		
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....	-8,562,750	
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>101,680,250</b>	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		
A. Direct.....		
1. Category A.....	25,000,000	
2. Category B Interest payment to Treasury.....	1,680,250	
10. Unobligated balance not available:		
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods.....	75,000,000	
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>101,680,250</b>	
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:		
B. Unfilled customer orders, Federal sources without advance(-).....	-576,500	
C. Undelivered orders (+).....	6,680,250	
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....	20,000,000	
B. Collections (-).....	-2,306,000	
SUBMITTED _____		(Preparer: Name) _____ (Address) _____ (Phone number) _____
(Authorized Officer)	(Date)	

Direct loan subsidy collected from program account.

**End of First Quarter Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
Report on Budget Execution**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES		Fiscal Year <u>CY</u>
AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Guaranteed Loan Financing Account
		Unexpired
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">                     When loan guarantees have been committed and the loans disbursed, the subsidy is received from the program account.                 </div>		
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)		
A. Earned:		
1. Collected.....	1,200,000	
B. Change in unfilled customer orders:		
2. Receivable from Federal sources.....	300,000	
C. Anticipated for rest of year without advance.....	4,860,000	
		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">                     Subsidy obligated but not yet received from program account.                 </div>
		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">                     The remainder of loan guarantee subsidy expected from the program account.                 </div>
7. Total budgetary resources.....	6,360,000	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
10. Unobligated balance not available:		
D. Other.....	6,360,000	
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	6,360,000	
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">                     Guaranteed loan financing accounts hold a reserve for future defaults.                 </div>		
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....		
B. Collections (-).....	-1,200,000	
		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: 0 auto;">                     Subsidy collected from program account.                 </div>
SUBMITTED _____		(Preparer: Name) _____
(Authorized Officer)		(Address) _____
(Date)		(Phone number) _____

**BUDGET EXECUTION REPORTING—END OF FIRST QUARTER  
SIDE-BY-SIDE ACCOUNT COMPARISON**

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account- Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
<b>Budgetary Resources</b>			
1. Budget Authority	The total amount becoming available on or after October 1 of the fiscal year. It is composed of amounts for direct loan and loan guarantee subsidy costs and administrative expenses (\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000 + \$1,000,000). The entry for this line should equal the entry on line 1A of the latest SF 132 for this account.		
A. Appropriations			
B. Borrowing authority	The amount of borrowing authority anticipated to be used to cover obligations during the year that are not covered by subsidy cost payments or fees. Usually, assume direct loan obligations equal to the direct loan limitation and subtract corresponding estimates of subsidy cost payments and any fees paid by the borrower (\$100,000,000 - \$11,530,000). The entry for this line should equal the entry on line 1B of the latest SF 132 for this account.		
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)	When a direct loan is disbursed, the financing account collects the subsidy cost payment from the program account. So far, only 80% of the loans obligated this quarter have been disbursed so only 80% of the subsidy cost should be collected (\$2,882,500 * .8). Later,		
A. Earned	When a guaranteed loan is disbursed by a private lender, the financing account collects the subsidy cost payment from the program account. These collections are held to finance future defaults. So far, private lenders have disbursed only 80% of the loans guaranteed this quarter (\$1,500,000 *		
1. Collected			

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
		as borrowers make repayments, such amounts will also be recorded on this line.	.8).
B. Change in unfilled customer orders: 2. Without advance from Federal sources		The portion of the subsidy cost for loans obligated but not yet disbursed in the first quarter (\$2,882,500 * .2). When the remaining 20% of the loans is disbursed, the program account will pay the remaining subsidy cost to the financing account, and the amount on this line will be moved to line 3A1.	The portion of the subsidy cost for guarantees committed but not yet disbursed in the first quarter (\$1,500,000 * .2). When the remaining 20% of the loans is disbursed, the program account will pay the remaining subsidy cost to the financing account, and the amount on this line will be moved to line 3A1.
C. Anticipated for rest of year without advance		The anticipated subsidy cost payments from the program account for loans planned to be obligated in the remaining quarters of this year and expected borrower repayments of principal and interest for this year [(\$2,882,500 * 3) + \$10,243,000]. As direct loans are obligated and disbursed, reflect these actions by moving the corresponding amounts to lines 3A2 and 3A1, as appropriate.	The anticipated subsidy cost payments from the program account for guarantees planned to be committed in the remaining quarters of this year and interest earned from Treasury [(\$1,500,000 * 3) + \$360,000]. As guarantees are committed and guaranteed loans are disbursed, reflect these actions by moving the corresponding amounts to lines 3A2 and 3A1, as appropriate.
6. Permanently not available F. Anticipated rest of year		Repayments of Treasury debt are shown as a reduction in resources rather than as an obligation of resources. This entry does not include interest payments made on borrowing from Treasury, which are treated as an obligation and an outlay.	
7. Total Budgetary Resources	Represents all the budgetary resources available for new obligations. This line should always equal line	The sum of lines 1-6 and should equal line 11.	The sum of lines 1-6 and should equal line 11.

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
11. However, because this is an example of a new program, the entry should also equal line 1A.			
<b>Status of Budgetary Resources</b>			
8. Obligations incurred A. Direct 1. Category A		A quarter of the borrowing authority and subsidy cost has been obligated (\$100,000,000 * .25).	
2. Category B: (a) Direct loan subsidy cost (b) Guaranteed loan subsidy cost (c) Admin. expenses (d) Interest payment to Treasury	A quarter of the direct loan and loan guarantee subsidy cost and administrative expenses has been obligated, so a quarter of each [.25 * (\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000 + \$1,000,000)] is recorded.	The interest payment to Treasury (\$1,680,250) is recorded.	
9. Unobligated balance: A. Apportioned: 1. Balance currently available	Based on the latest SF 132, a total of \$18,530,000 is apportioned for this account, but only \$4,632,500 (\$2,882,500 + \$1,500,000 + \$250,000) has been obligated. Therefore, the remaining \$13,897,500 is recorded.		
10. Unobligated balance not available: A. Apportioned for subsequent periods		Because this account is apportioned by time periods, the amount apportioned on the latest SF 132 (line 8, <i>Category A</i> ) that will not become available until after this reporting period is recorded here. This is calculated by taking the total Category A apportionment on the latest SF 132 minus the obligations incurred on line 8A of this SF 133 (\$100,000,000 - \$25,000,000).	



Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
D. Other			Guaranteed loan financing accounts hold an interest-earning reserve for future defaults. Record the amount of subsidy cost payments and interest received and anticipated (\$4,860,000 + \$1,200,000 + \$300,000) for the year.
11. Total Status of Budgetary Resources	The sum of lines 8-10 and should equal line 7.	The sum of lines 8-10 and should equal line 7.	The sum of lines 8-10 and should equal line 7.

**Relation of Obligations to Outlays**

14. Obligated balance, net, end of period: B. Unfilled customer orders, Federal sources without advance		The amount of direct loan subsidy cost payment receivable from the program account for the portion of the direct loan subsidy cost that was obligated but remains undisbursed (\$2,882,500 * .2).	
C. Undelivered orders	The amount of obligated but not disbursed budgetary resources. In this example, 20% of the subsidy cost obligated in the first quarter will not be disbursed until a later quarter [(\$2,882,500 + \$1,500,000) * .2].	The amount payable to Treasury for interest expense and the amount of direct loans obligated but not yet disbursed by the financing account [\$1,680,250 + (\$25,000,000 * .2)].	
15. Outlays A. Disbursements	The amount of obligations that are liquidated by disbursements. In this example, only 80% of the subsidy cost obligated this quarter [(\$2,882,500 + \$1,500,000) * .8] (see line 3A1 of the financing account) and 25% of the administrative expenses have been disbursed. The sum of these two disbursements (\$3,506,000 + \$250,000) is recorded.	The loan amount outlaid. Only 80% of the \$25,000,000 obligated is disbursed as of this reporting period (\$25,000,000 * .8).	

---

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account- Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
B. Collections		Repayments from the borrowers are not expected until the end of the year, so this entry should reflect only the amount of the direct loan subsidy cost payments that have been disbursed from the program account (see line 3A1), recorded as a negative amount.	Records the amount of the loan guarantee subsidy cost payments that have been disbursed from the program account (see line 3A1), recorded as a negative amount.

---

**End of Fiscal Year Program Account  
Report on Budget Execution**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES				
				Period ending 9/30 CY
AGENCY: Department of Government		APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary		Credit Program Account		
		Unexpired		
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
1. Budget Authority				
A. Appropriations..... P.L. 106-XXX.....		18,530,000		
7. Total budgetary resources.....		18,530,000		
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>				
8. Obligations incurred:				
A. Direct				
2. Category B:				
1. Direct loan subsidy.....		11,530,000	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                     100% of direct and guaranteed loan subsidy and administrative expenses have been obligated.                 </div>	
2. Guaranteed loan subsidy.....		6,000,000		
3. Administrative expenses.....		1,000,000		
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....		18,530,000		
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>				
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:				
C. Undelivered orders (+).....		3,506,000	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                     Loan subsidy obligated but not disbursed.                 </div>	
15. Outlays:				
A. Disbursements (+).....		15,024,000	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">                     Loan subsidy disbursed + administrative expenses disbursed.                 </div>	
B. Collections (-).....				

SUBMITTED \_\_\_\_\_ (Authorized Officer) \_\_\_\_\_ (Date)

(Preparer: Name) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Address) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (Phone number) \_\_\_\_\_

**End of Fiscal Year-Direct Loan Financing Account  
Report on Budget Execution**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES		Fiscal Year <u>CY</u>
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL	
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary	Direct Loan Financing Account	
	Unexpired	
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
1. Budget Authority		
B. Borrowing authority.....	88,470,000	← Amount apportioned on latest SF 132.
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)		
A. Earned:		
1. Collected.....	19,467,000	← Direct loan subsidy collected from the program account (\$11,530,000 * 80%) + repayments from borrower (\$10,243,000).
B. Change in unfilled customer orders:		
2. Without advance.....	2,306,000	← Portion of the direct loan subsidy obligated but not yet disbursed from the program account (\$11,530,000 * 20%).
6. Permanently not available:		
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt.....	-8,562,750	← Actual principal repayments to Treasury.
<b>7. Total budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>101,680,250</b>	
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>		
8. Obligations incurred:		
A. Direct		
1. Category A.....	100,000,000	
2. Category B:		
1. Interest payment to Treasury.....	1,680,250	
<b>11. Total status of budgetary resources.....</b>	<b>101,680,250</b>	
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>		
14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:		
B. Unfilled customer orders, Fed sources w/o advance (-).	-2,306,000	← Direct loan subsidy still receivable from program account.
D. Accounts payable (+).....	20,000,000	← Amount of direct loans obligated but not yet disbursed (\$100,000,000 * 20%).
15. Outlays:		
A. Disbursements (+).....	81,680,250	← Portion of the loan that has been disbursed (\$100,000,000 * 80%) + interest paid to Treasury (\$1,680,250).
B. Collections (-).....	-19,467,000	← Direct loan subsidy collected from the program account (\$11,530,000 * 80%) + repayments from borrower (\$10,243,000).
SUBMITTED _____ (Date)		
(Authorized Officer)		(Preparer: Name) _____
		(Address) _____
		(Phone number) _____

**End of Fiscal Year Guaranteed Loan Financing Account  
Report on Budget Execution**

SF 133 REPORT ON BUDGET EXECUTION AND BUDGETARY RESOURCES			
			Fiscal Year CY
AGENCY: Department of Government	APPROPRIATION OR FUND TITLE AND SYMBOL		
BUREAU: Office of the Secretary	Guaranteed Loan Financing Account		
	Unexpired		
<b>BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)			
A. Earned:			
1. Collected.....	5,160,000		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">Subsidy collected from the program account plus interest.</div>
B. Change in unfilled customer orders:			
2. Without advance from Federal sources.....	1,200,000		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">The portion of subsidy obligated but not received from the program account.</div>
7. Total budgetary resources.....	6,360,000		
<b>STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES</b>			
10. Unobligated balance not available:			
D. Other.....	6,360,000		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">Guaranteed loan financing accounts hold a reserve for future defaults.</div>
11. Total status of budgetary resources.....	6,360,000		
<b>RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS</b>			
15. Outlays:			
A. Disbursements (+).....			
B. Collections (-).....	-5,160,000		<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; width: fit-content; margin: auto;">Amount of subsidy and interest collected.</div>
SUBMITTED _____ (Date) <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <span>(Authorized Officer)</span> <span>(Preparer: Name) _____</span> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <span></span> <span>(Address) _____</span> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <span></span> <span>(Phone number) _____</span> </div>			

**BUDGET EXECUTION REPORTING—END OF FISCAL YEAR  
SIDE-BY-SIDE ACCOUNT COMPARISON**

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account- Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
<b>Budgetary Resources</b>			
1. Budget Authority:	In this example, this entry should be the same as the End of First Quarter.		
A. Appropriations			
B. Borrowing authority	In this example, this entry should be the same as the End of First Quarter.		
3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (Gross)		This entry should be updated to reflect that payments totaling 80% of the subsidy cost (\$11,530,000 * .8) have been collected from the program account and \$10,243,000 was collected from borrower repayments.	This entry should be updated to reflect that payments totaling 80% of the subsidy cost (\$6,000,000 * .8) have been collected from the program account and \$360,000 was received from Treasury for interest.
A. Earned			
1. Collected			
B. Change in unfilled customer orders:		The remaining 20% of the subsidy cost payments receivable from the program account is recorded (\$11,530,000 * .2).	The remaining 20% of the subsidy cost payments receivable from the program account is recorded (\$6,000,000 * .2).
2. Without advance from Federal sources			
6. Permanently not available		After debt is actually repaid, use this line.	
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt			
7. Total Budgetary Resources	The sum of lines 1-6 and should always equal line 11.	The sum of lines 1-6 and should always equal line 11.	The sum of lines 1-6 and should always equal line 11.
<b>Status of Budgetary Resources</b>			
8. Obligations incurred		Update this line to reflect that the full \$100,000,000 has been obligated.	
A. Direct			
1. Category A			
2. Category B:	The full amount of direct and guaranteed loan subsidy cost (\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000) and administrative expenses	Record the interest payment to Treasury.	
(a) Direct loan subsidy cost			
(b) Guaranteed loan subsidy cost			

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account-Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
(c) Admin. Expenses (d) Interest payment to Treasury	(\$1,000,000) has been obligated.		
10. Unobligated balance not available: D. Other			The amount of subsidy cost payments and interest received and anticipated (\$5,160,000 + \$1,200,000) for the year.
11. Total Status of Budgetary Resources	The sum of lines 8-10 and should equal line 7.	The sum of lines 8-10 and should equal line 7.	The sum of lines 8-10 and should equal line 7.

**Relation of Obligations to Outlays**

14. Obligated balance, net, end of period:  B. Unfilled customer orders, Federal sources without advance  C. Undelivered orders	Records the amount of direct loan and loan guarantee subsidy cost and administrative expenses obligated but undisbursed. Reflects the amount of budgetary resources for subsidy cost that remains in the program account [(\$11,530,000 + \$6,000,000) * .2]. All of the administrative expenses have been disbursed.	Records the remaining 20% of the loan subsidy cost obligated but not yet disbursed (\$11,530,000 * .2).  This is the amount of loans obligated but not yet disbursed (\$100,000,000 * .2).	
15. Outlays A. Disbursements	When a direct loan is disbursed from the financing account, the subsidy cost payment moves from line 14D to line 15A. In this example, because 80% of the loans and 100% of the administrative expenses have been disbursed, the entry is 80% of the subsidy cost plus the full amount of administrative expenses [(\$17,530,000 *	Record the loans disbursed plus the amount of interest paid to Treasury [(\$100,000,000 * .8) + \$1,680,250].	

Line Entry	Program Account	Financing Account- Direct	Financing Account-Guaranteed
B. Collections	.8) + \$1,000,000].	The amount of loan subsidy cost payments collected from the program account and the amount of repayments collected from borrowers is recorded as a negative value [(\$11,530,000 * .8) + \$10,243,000].	Update this entry to reflect the subsidy cost payments and interest received.



# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 6**

### **PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF STRATEGIC PLANS, ANNUAL PERFORMANCE PLANS, AND ANNUAL PROGRAM PERFORMANCE REPORTS**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



**SECTION 200—OVERVIEW OF STRATEGIC PLANS, PERFORMANCE BUDGETS, AND ANNUAL PROGRAM PERFORMANCE REPORTS (INCLUDING PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORTS)**

**Summary Schedule**

Initial FY 2005 performance budget to OMB.....	September 2003
Updated and revised strategic plan sent to Congress and OMB.....	by September 2003 (within three years of the date of transmittal of the previous updated and revised strategic plan to Congress)
Revised final FY 2004 performance plan completed.....	October-December 2003 (after final appropriations action)
FY 2005 Congressional justification (incorporating performance budget) sent to Congress.....	February-March 2004
Interim adjustments to strategic plans sent to Congress.....	February-March 2004 (with performance budget for FY 2005)
FY 2003 performance and accountability reports* to President and Congress.....	by January 30, 2004
FY 2003 program performance report to President and Congress.....	by February 27, 2004
Initial FY 2006 performance budget to OMB.....	September 2004
FY 2004 performance and accountability reports* to President and Congress.....	by November 15, 2004
FY 2004 program performance report to President and Congress.....	by February 27, 2005

Agencies should note that OMB Circular A-19 on Legislative Coordination and clearance applies to plans and reports sent to Congress.

\* Performance and accountability reports are prepared by the Cabinet departments and nine major agencies covered by the Chief Financial Officers Act. Program performance reports are prepared by agencies not preparing performance and accountability reports.

## 200.1 Overview

Strategic plans, annual performance plans, and annual program performance reports comprise the main elements of the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA, or the Results Act). Together, these elements create a recurring cycle of planning, program execution, and reporting.

Beginning with the budget for FY 2005, agencies will prepare a performance budget in lieu of the annual performance plan. The performance budget should satisfy all statutory requirements for the annual performance plan. Please see sections [51](#) and [220](#) for further information on performance budgets. Section 210 contains information on the preparation and submission of strategic plans, and section 230 covers the preparation and submission of annual performance reports, including the performance report portion of the combined performance and accountability report prepared by 24 departments and agencies.

## 200.2 Definitions

**General goal:** These goals are included in a strategic plan. A general goal defines how an agency will carry out its mission over a period of time. The goal is expressed in a manner which allows a future assessment to be made of whether the goal was or is being achieved. The goal may be of a programmatic, policy, or managerial nature. General goals are typically outcome-type goals.

**Long-range performance measure:** A term used in the PART evaluations. A general goal or outcome goal.

**Outcome goal:** A description of the intended result, effect, or consequence that will occur from carrying out a program or activity.

**Output goal:** A description of the level of activity or effort that will be produced or provided over a period of time or by a specified date, including a description of the characteristics and attributes (e.g., timeliness) established as standards in the course of conducting the activity or effort.

**Performance goal:** Also called an annual performance measure by the PART. These goals are included in the performance budget. A performance goal sets a target level of performance which is expressed as a tangible, measurable objective, against which actual achievement can be compared, including a goal expressed as a quantitative standard, value, or rate. Performance goals can be either outcome or output goals.

**Performance indicator:** Can be included in a performance budget and is directly associated with a performance goal. A particular value or characteristic used to measure output or outcome.

**Performance measure:** A performance goal or performance indicator.

**Program evaluation:** An assessment, through objective measurement and systematic analysis, of the manner and extent to which Federal programs achieve intended objectives.

**Strategic goal:** Also called a strategic objective. A statement of aim or purpose that agencies include in a strategic plan. Typically, a strategic goal typically will not be directly measurable. Strategic goals can be used to group outcome goals in a performance budget.

For additional information on developing performance measures and definitions, please see the "Performance Measurement Challenges and Strategies" at [www.whitehouse.gov/omb/part/](http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/part/).

### **200.3 Applicability**

For the purposes of sections 210, 220, and 230 of this Circular, "agency" means cabinet departments and other establishments of the Federal government, including independent agencies and Government corporations. A government corporation is a corporation owned or controlled by the Federal government. The Legislative Branch and the Judiciary are not subject to GPRA requirements.

Except as noted below, agencies are required to submit strategic plans, annual performance budgets, and annual program performance reports to the President, Congress, and OMB in accordance with these instructions. The Central Intelligence Agency and the Postal Rate Commission are not subject under this statute to the requirements for strategic plans, annual performance plans, or program performance reports. These instructions also do not apply to the Postal Service; preparation and submission of the Postal Service's strategic plan and performance plan are covered by section 7 of GPRA.

OMB may exempt independent agencies with \$20 million or less in annual outlays from the requirements for a strategic plan, annual performance plan (performance budget), and annual program performance report. GPRA does not authorize any exemption of a component of a department or independent agency, such as a bureau or office that annually spends \$20 million or less.



## SECTION 210—PREPARING AND SUBMITTING A STRATEGIC PLAN

**Highlights for 2003–2004 and Section Index****Highlights**

Strategic plans will provide the overarching framework for agency performance-based management.

**Main Section Index**

- 210.1 Preparing a strategic plan: The main elements.
- 210.2 Preparing a strategic plan: Format and other features.
- 210.3 Submission of strategic plans.
- 210.4 Interim adjustments to strategic plans.

**210.1 Preparing a strategic plan: The main elements**

- (a) *Summary of strategic plan elements.*

The basic requirements for strategic plans are set forth in Section 3 of the Government Performance and Results Act (GPRA). A strategic plan contains the following elements:

The agency mission statement;

- One or more general goals (general goals are typically outcome goals, and are also called long-term performance measures);
- A description of the means and strategies that will be used to achieve the goals;
- A description of the relationship between annual performance goals in the performance budget and the long-term (general) goals in the strategic plan;
- Identification of key factors that could affect achievement of the long-term goals; and

A description of program evaluations used in preparing the strategic plan, and a schedule for future evaluations.

Your agency's strategic plan keys on those programs and activities that carry out your agency's mission. Revisions of your strategic plan should take into account the Administration's development of the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART) and the focus on developing a performance budget.

Strategic plans should guide the formulation and execution of the budget. Your strategic plan is a tool to be used in setting priorities and allocating resources consistent with these priorities. A strategic plan is not a budget request, and the projected levels of goal achievement must be commensurate with anticipated resource levels.

(b) *What does a strategic plan include?*

- An agency strategic plan includes a comprehensive mission statement. A mission statement is brief, defining the basic purpose of your agency, and corresponds directly with your core programs and activities. Your agency's program goals should flow from the mission statement.
- An agency strategic plan must include one or more general goals. The goal(s) must be defined in a manner that allows a future assessment to be made on whether the goal was or is being achieved. Most general goals will be outcomes, and are long-term in nature.

<b>Illustrative Examples of General Goal Definitions</b>	
<i>Quantitative:</i>	Seventy percent of American households will own their own home in 2010.
<i>Directly measurable:</i>	Complete the sequencing of the horse genome by June 2005.
<i>Assessment-based:</i>	Educational attainment at grade nine of children who participated in the Sure Learn program will be at least equal to the attainment level of all similarly aged children.

- The agency strategic plan must describe the processes, skills, technologies, and various resources that will be used to achieve the general goals. (These are often called 'means and strategies'.) These may include:
  - ▶ Operational processes, such as changes in work methods or sequencing, workforce adjustments, and shifts in responsibility for particular tasks;
  - ▶ Staff skills, and the development, introduction, and use of technologies; and
  - ▶ Human capital information, and other resources.

Descriptions should be brief. More detailed data should be provided if a significant change in a particular means or strategy will be essential for goal achievement.

- A description of the relationship between annual performance goals included in the performance budget and the general goals in the strategic plan;

An updated and revised strategic plan should briefly outline:

- ▶ The type, nature, and scope of the performance goals being included in annual performance budgets, and
- ▶ How these annual performance goals relate to the long-term, general goals, and their use in helping determine the achievement of the general goals.
- Key factors, external to the agency that could significantly affect the achievement of general goals. If key factors cannot be identified, a statement of such should be included in the plan.



- Achievement of general goals can be affected by certain previously prospective conditions or circumstances actually occurring during the time period covered by the plan. These conditions or circumstances are identified in the plan as key factors, and provide insight on the presumptions an agency used when defining its goals. Key factors may enhance or nullify these assumptions and the likelihood of goal achievement.
- These factors are often called external factors, as they are introduced by external forces or parties, and are not of the agency's own making. The factors may be economic, demographic, social, or environmental, and they may remain stable, change within predicted rates, or vary to an unexpected degree. Goal achievement may also be predicated on certain conditions (events) not happening. Achievement of goals can also depend on the action of Congress, other Federal agencies, States, local governments, or other non-Federal entities.
- A description of completed program evaluations that were used in developing the strategic plan, and a schedule for future program evaluations. For additional information on program evaluations, see Question 2.6 in the PART guidance for the FY 2005 Budget, OMB Budget and Procedures Memorandum No. 861, at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/part/>.
- One or more strategic goals, which are descriptions of aim or purpose. Strategic goals are not inherently measurable, and are intended to be used to group several or more related outcome goals in the performance budget. As such, strategic goals are a basic building block for the performance budget.

## **210.2 Preparing a strategic plan: Format and other features**

No specific format is prescribed for your strategic plan. An updated strategic plan is a complete plan, containing all required plan elements.

Your plan should outline the process for communicating goals and strategies throughout the agency, and for assigning accountability to managers and staff for goal achievement. The nature and dimension of your management-related initiatives and reforms may merit your including a management section in your strategic plan. An agency may describe significant risks that threaten achievement of the general goals. These risks are associated with internal agency operations and functions, and are separate and distinct from external factors.

If appropriate, include a classified appendix. A classified appendix covers any material specifically authorized under criteria established by an Executive order, to be kept secret in the interest of national defense or foreign policy.

A strategic plan must cover the major functions and operations of your agency. You have discretion to omit support-type activities and operations. Strategic plans prepared primarily for your agency's internal use (such as those prepared at a program or component-unique level) may cover a greater range of functions and operations.

You should submit a single agency-wide plan. By 2003, the strategic planning process should be sufficiently mature in all agencies to support preparation of a single agency-wide plan. However, GPRA does allow an agency with widely disparate functions to prepare several strategic plans for its major components or programs. In these instances, an overview that brings together the component plans is prepared. Please consult with the appropriate OMB office and secure its approval if your agency will be unable to prepare a single agency-wide plan.

A strategic plan spans a minimum six-year period: the fiscal year it is submitted and at least five years forward of that fiscal year. (For example, a plan submitted in FY 2003 would cover FY 2003 through FY 2008.) A plan may be for a period longer than six years; for example, containing a project completion goal ten years in the future. A strategic plan, while covering a minimum six year period, is only current for three years.

### **210.3 Submission of strategic plans**

(a) *Timing of strategic plan submissions.*

An agency submits an updated and revised strategic plan to Congress and OMB within three years of submitting its previous strategic plan. An updated plan will often retain, unchanged, the elements of a previous strategic plan, such as the mission statement.

GPRA does not set a specific calendar date for submissions of updated and revised strategic plans. Agencies submitting plans in September 2000 would subsequently submit their second updated plan no later than September 30, 2003. Agencies transmitting an updated plan other than in September 2000 would have three years from their submittal date.

For newly established agencies, the three-year cycle begins with the submittal of the initial strategic plan to Congress. For example, a new agency that had submitted its initial strategic plan in June 15, 2002 would submit an updated plan no later than June 15, 2005.

Consistent with current policy and practice regarding interagency clearance of certain material being sent to Congress, you provide OMB with an advance copy of an updated strategic plan at least 45 days prior to the date for transmitting the plan to Congress and making it available to the public.

(b) *Consultation and outreach*

When preparing a strategic plan, agencies must consult with Congress and solicit and consider the views of interested and potentially affected parties. This consultation and outreach may result in contrary views being expressed.

(c) *Transmittal of plans to Congress and OMB.*

The plan is transmitted to Congress and OMB by the agency head. Transmittal letters are addressed to the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the President and the President pro tempore of the Senate, and the Director of OMB. Distribution is also made to relevant committees of the Congress. The letter transmitting the agency strategic plan to Congress includes a summary of the consultation and outreach processes, and any contrary views. Strategic plans are made available to the public.

GPRA states that the preparation of a strategic plan is an inherently governmental function, and the plan is to be drafted only by Federal employees. However, when preparing a plan, agencies may be assisted by non-Federal parties, such as consultants or contractors. The transmittal should include an acknowledgment and brief description of the contribution by a non-Federal entity in preparing the plan.

Strategic plans are a matter of public record; the public should be afforded the opportunity to access the completed plan. Your agency should place the strategic plan on its website, or make it available through other electronic media. On request, a paper copy should be provided. Generally, a strategic plan should become publicly available when the plan is transmitted to Congress.

#### **210.4 Interim adjustments to strategic plans**

(a) *Scope of interim adjustments.*

You may make minor adjustments to a strategic plan in advance of the three-year revision cycle. Adjustments can include changes to the general goals, the means and strategies used to achieve the goals, the key external factors, or the program evaluation schedule. Modifications may reflect altered circumstances or evaluations of program performance. Interim adjustments are selective and do not produce widespread changes in a plan.

You need not consult with Congress, or conduct outreach to potentially interested or affected parties when preparing interim adjustments.

Significant changes to your strategic plan are made using the more extensive update process, even if this accelerates the three-year revision cycle. Consultation requirements apply in these instances. Interim adjustments do not alter the three-year revision cycle for strategic plans.

(b) *Transmittal of interim adjustments.*

Append an interim adjustment to your budget submission as a separate, easily found section. Present only the adjustments, not the entire strategic plan. The interim adjustments should be included both in the performance budget sent to OMB in September, and in the performance budget sent to Congress in February.

Adjustments do not require a formal transmittal. You should distribute, or otherwise make publicly available, the interim adjustments so readers can reference or review the most current strategic plan content.

As most agencies will be transmitting an updated and revised strategic plan to Congress and OMB in September, 2003, the need for interim adjustments should be confined to those agencies who transmitted an updated and revised strategic plan in either 2001 or 2002.



## SECTION 220—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF PERFORMANCE BUDGETS

**Highlights for the Preparation and Submission of Performance Budgets**

Beginning with the budget for FY 2005, agencies will prepare a performance budget in lieu of the annual performance plan for their budget submission to OMB and the Congress. The performance budget should satisfy all statutory requirements for the annual performance plan which are summarized in this section.

(a) *In general.*

Beginning with the FY 2005 budget, an agency performance budget will substitute for the annual performance plan required by the Government Performance and Results Act. The performance budget will be integrated with other elements of the agency budget request to OMB in September and the agency Congressional justification in February. Your agency should consult with your congressional committees beforehand to ensure their awareness of your plans to modify the format of agency budget documents.

(b) *What is in a performance budget?*

A performance budget consists of a performance-oriented framework, in which strategic goals are paired with related long-term performance goals (outcomes) and annual performance goals (mainly outputs). The strategic goals span a number of agency programs and operations and may span different agency component organizations. The long-term and annual performance goals are usually program-specific and can be grouped and displayed by program. Target levels of performance are set for the performance goals. At a minimum, resources are aligned at the program level within this framework, and agencies are encouraged to align resources at the performance goal level. Resources should be fully costed, with centrally funded administrative services and support allocated to the programs.

The performance budget also includes other information needed to justify the agency budget request. Requirements for this additional information are either set out elsewhere in Circular No. A-11 (for the performance budget sent to OMB) or by your agency's congressional committees (for the performance budget submitted to Congress).

The performance budget is organized as a hierarchy of goals. At the top of the pyramid are strategic goals, which are statements of aim or purpose and may cover several or more agency programs. If strategic goals cover programs in other agencies, the performance budget should describe how a portfolio of inter-agency programs will help attain the broadly stated aims of a strategic goal. For each strategic goal, there are usually several outcome goals, and for each outcome goal, there typically are several output goals.

The resources requested for each program should be the amount needed to achieve the target levels for the performance goals for the program.

The performance budget includes information from the PART assessments, where available, including all performance goals used in the assessment of program performance done under the PART process. Until all programs have been assessed by the PART, the performance budget will also for a time include performance goals for agency programs that have not yet been assessed using the PART. The PART assessments are initially prepared by OMB and the agencies prior to agency submission of its performance budget. Subsequently, OMB will use these assessments to help make budget decisions as

the budget is formulated. The performance measure data included in the PARTs and Congressional justification will need to be updated to reflect the budgetary resources and associated performance targets included in the President's budget.

The performance budget displays up to six years of performance data for every performance goal, including for the budget year, current year, past year, and three additional past years of data. Only three years of resource data are required. Agencies need not include historical performance data for newly established goals.

The means and strategies the agency intends to use to help achieve the performance goals should be included (see [section 51](#)).

(c) *How does the performance budget relate to the strategic plan and the annual performance report, including the performance and accountability report?*

The strategic goals and the long-term performance goals should be set out in the agency strategic plan. These goals serve as the organizing framework for the performance budget. The annual performance report presents information on how well the agency achieved the target levels in the past year. (See sections [26](#) and [230](#).) The Congressional justification may include additional and updated past year performance data.

In the design of your Congressional justification, you should take special care to identify those performance goals in the Congressional justification against which actual performance will be compared in your annual performance report.

(d) *Ensuring that the performance budget is publicly available.*

The performance component of the agency Congressional justification should be readily available to the public. Publication of the performance component on the WorldWideWeb is strongly encouraged. Having an overview document that also presents the performance component may prove useful.

**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM  
PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION OF A  
PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

**Highlights for the FY 2003 Program Performance Report  
and Section Index**

**Highlights**

- The Cabinet Departments and nine major independent agencies must combine their performance report with their accountability report, and transmit the combined report for FY 2003 by January 30, 2004. The performance and accountability report for FY 2004 is to be transmitted by November 15, 2004.
- Most independent agencies must transmit their program performance report for FY 2003 by February 27, 2004.

**Main Section Index**

- 230.1 Preparing the performance and accountability report or the annual program performance report.
- 230.2 What does the annual program performance report contain?
- 230.3 Sending the annual program performance report to the President and Congress.

**230.1 Preparing the performance and accountability report or the annual program performance report.**

(a) *In general.*

The annual performance report provides information on your actual performance and your progress in achieving the goals in your strategic plan and performance budget.

You prepare one annual report for a fiscal year. Missing or incomplete program performance data for the fiscal year is included, as it becomes available, in a subsequent year's annual report. Performance information for past years is also included in your annual performance budget.

(b) *Combining the annual performance report and the annual accountability report.*

OMB Bulletin 01-09 (September 25, 2001) on the "Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements" requires the Cabinet Departments and nine independent agencies to combine the program performance report with the accountability report. See [OMB BULLETIN NO. 01-09—Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements](#) for further information on the accountability report.

**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION OF A PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

---

The combined FY 2003 Performance and Accountability Report is to be transmitted to the President, Congress, and OMB not later than January 30, 2004. All other independent agencies prepare an annual performance report. The annual performance report for FY 2003 is transmitted to the President, Congress, and OMB by February 27, 2004.

Agencies preparing a performance and accountability report should note that the transmittal date for the FY 2004 report is November 15, 2004.

Program performance information derived from the annual performance report is not subject to new or additional audit requirements as a consequence of its being included in the accountability report or the financial statement

(c) *Combining the annual performance report with the performance budget.*

Agencies not required to prepare a performance and accountability report may combine their annual performance report with their performance budget. The performance budget (with the annual report) should be incorporated in the agency Congressional justification.

(d) *Including actual performance information in the performance budget.*

A performance budget includes actual performance data for the fiscal year covered by the report, and three prior fiscal years. The data should be taken from the annual performance report. However, the timetable for preparing an annual performance report may result in some performance data not having been collected or analyzed when the report is completed. The performance budget should include all available actual performance data, including data omitted from the annual performance report because it was not available earlier.

The November 15 transmittal date for future year performance and accountability reports precedes the transmittal of the President's budget. Potentially, this may require the agency to omit certain information from the performance and accountability report, as it would be considered to be privileged and cannot be publicly released prior to transmittal of the President's budget. This omitted information is included in the agency performance budget.

(e) *Coverage of programs assessed using the Program Assessment Rating Tool (PART)*

OMB is assessing the effectiveness of Federal programs using the PART. The performance and accountability report or the annual performance report includes information on every PART program assessed as part of budget formulation for the fiscal year covered by the report. For example, the Performance and Accountability Report for FY 2004 would include information on all PART assessments done during the summer and fall of 2002 as the FY 2004 budget was prepared.

The PART information should be updated to reflect actual performance for the fiscal year. The PART information may also cover actions taken affecting the program and its performance in the succeeding fiscal year. Please note that the succeeding fiscal year is the current year column in the budget, not the budget year.

**230.2 What does the annual program performance report contain?**

(a) *Required elements.*



**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM  
PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION  
OF A PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

---

Your annual report must include the following elements:

- A comparison of your actual performance with the projected (target) levels of performance as set out in the performance goals in your annual performance budget (or your annual performance plan for fiscal years prior to FY 2005);
- An explanation, where a performance goal was not achieved, for why the goal was not met;
- A description of the plans and schedules to meet an unmet goal in the future, or alternatively, your recommended action regarding an unmet goal where you have concluded it is impractical or infeasible to achieve that goal;
- An evaluation of your performance budget (although use the FY 2004 performance plan for the FY 2003 report) for the current fiscal year, taking into account the actual performance achieved in the fiscal year covered by your report;
- An assessment of the reliability and completeness of the performance data included in the report; and
- Actual performance information for at least four fiscal years.

(b) *Comparing actual performance to performance goal target levels.*

Your agency's annual report must state the actual performance for every performance goal in your annual performance budget (or, as applicable, your performance plans for FY 2003 and 2004).. Actual performance is reported as it occurred during the fiscal year covered by the report. For some programs, this performance may have resulted from spending prior year monies during the fiscal year. The annual report also includes actual performance for any goals that were discontinued after the fiscal year covered by the report.

If the alternative form (i.e., a non-quantified measure) was used to define a performance goal, the annual report matches actual performance to the corresponding performance criteria set out in the form. The description of actual performance must allow an accurate, independent determination to be made of whether such performance met the criteria specified in the form, or how it otherwise compared to the goal as stated.

At the time a performance report (or a combined performance and accountability report) is sent to the President and Congress, actual performance information may not be available, or the available information may be incomplete or preliminary. The annual report should identify those performance goals where actual performance information is missing, incomplete, or preliminary. For such goals, the annual report should indicate the approximate date when actual performance information, sufficient to make an accurate comparison with performance goal target levels, will be available. Once available, the actual performance information and the comparison between actual and target performance is included in a subsequent annual report. (This information may be included in the agency Congressional justification.)

(c) *Providing an explanation for non-achievement of a performance goal.*

If a performance goal was not achieved, your annual report must explain why it was not met. There are two types of explanation: specific and generic.

**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION OF A PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

---

A specific explanation is included if goal non-achievement is significant and material. A specific explanation should show an understanding of why a performance shortfall occurred, and the consequences. The specific explanation should also support actions you are taking to eliminate or reduce future shortfalls for this goal.

Agencies may apply the following criteria when determining if a specific explanation is required. A specific explanation should always be provided if:

- The manager(s) of the program, activity, or component experiencing a performance shortfall alerts or informs senior agency officials about actual performance levels, and the implications of these levels on overall program accomplishment; or
- The manager(s) took or is taking substantive action to address the shortfall in performance; or
- Performance levels for future years are being adjusted downward to reflect actual performance levels; or
- Outside parties will likely conclude that the non-achievement was significant and material.

A generic explanation is provided if the difference between the goal target level and actual performance is slight. An agency may use the following language for its generic explanation: the performance goal was set at an approximate target level, and the deviation from that level is slight. There was no effect on overall program or activity performance.

If actual performance data shows that a goal was not met, but the explanation for why the goal was not met or a description of steps being taken to meet the unmet goal in the future cannot be completed by the time of transmittal, the data are included in the report and marked as preliminary. The following year's annual report will include the data and the deferred explanation and next steps.

(d) *Agency plans and schedules for achieving an unmet goal in the future*

For every performance goal whose target level was not achieved and a specific explanation was provided, a description of the actions the agency is taking to achieve the goal in the future is included. A schedule for these actions is also included. The actions and schedule may cover only the current fiscal year, if included in a performance and accountability report, and future fiscal years, if included in an annual program performance report. Information on future fiscal years should be included in the performance budget for agencies filing performance and accountability reports.

A description of the actions being taken, and the accompanying schedule, may be omitted for an unachieved goal where external factors (such as a natural disaster) or entities (such as another country) were the sole cause for non-achievement, and the agency lacks the capacity or authority to affect these factors or entities.

An agency may conclude, based on actual performance, that a performance goal cannot be achieved in the future. For such goals, the annual report explains why a particular goal is no longer practical or feasible, and recommends a course of action for the goal. These actions may include discontinuing or adjusting the goal.

(e) *Evaluating performance goal levels in the current year performance budget relative to actual performance during the past fiscal year.*

**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM  
PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION  
OF A PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

---

As you prepare your annual report, the performance information you collect may be used to make further adjustments to your annual budget for the current fiscal year. You may do so if actual performance information is available near the end of the fiscal year covered by the annual report. These adjustments are made at the time a Congressional justification incorporating the performance budget is prepared. The annual report should identify every change to performance goals in the performance budget for the current fiscal year that primarily stem from this assessment of effects.

(f) *Assessing the completeness and reliability of performance data.*

The Reports Consolidation Act of 2000 specifies that your annual report contain an assessment of the completeness and reliability of the performance data included in it. The assessment describes any material inadequacies in the completeness and reliability of the data, and any actions the agency can take and is taking to resolve the inadequacies.

Performance data that is not acceptably reliable is characterized as being materially inadequate. The annual report should identify any performance goals for which the available performance data are materially inadequate, along with a brief reason for why the data are inadequate. The annual report should briefly cite any actions being taken by the agency to remedy a material inadequacy.

(g) *Fiscal year coverage.*

Your annual reports for fiscal year 2003 and future years should include actual performance information for the fiscal year covered by the report, and at least three prior fiscal years.

You may cease reporting actual performance information for prior years for any goal that is discontinued.

Comparisons between actual performance and performance goal target levels are not included for prior fiscal years, unless the comparison was deferred because of the unavailability of the performance data in a prior year's annual report, or the analysis of actual performance was not completed.

Agencies having actual performance information for more than three prior fiscal years may include this information if it will be useful in reviewing performance trends.

(h) *Other elements and features of an annual report.*

These elements and features may selectively apply to your agency. Any that do not apply are omitted from your annual report.

*Program evaluations.* Your report includes a summary of the findings and recommendations of the program evaluations completed during the fiscal year. If no evaluations were completed, the report should note such. For more information on program evaluations, see question 2.6 of the PART guidance for the FY 2005 Budget at <http://www.whitehouse.gov/omb/part/>.

*Information on use of non-Federal parties.* GPRA states that preparation of an annual report is an inherently government function. Your report should include an acknowledgment of the role and a brief description of any significant contribution made by a non-Federal entity in preparing the report.

**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION OF A PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

---

Classified appendices not available to the public. An agency with a classified appendix for its annual performance budget may also prepare a similar classified appendix for its annual report. Agencies should not need to prepare a non-public appendix for certain law enforcement or revenue collection activities in their annual report. Retrospective reporting of actual performance for these activities should not interfere with achieving current or future goals for the same activities. However, if an agency believes that reporting of actual performance will impede current or future goal achievement, a non-public appendix may be prepared. The agency should contact its OMB representative for approval prior to preparing such an appendix.

*Budget information.* In your annual report, you should include relevant budget information, consistent with the obligation amounts shown in the Budget Appendix for the fiscal year covered by the report. The annual report does not present comparisons between the amounts originally requested for a fiscal year and the amounts actually obligated.

(i) *Format.*

There is no prescribed format for the annual report. Your agency is encouraged to include, from your strategic plan, a summary of your mission statement and your general goals and objectives.

The report's design should provide for easy and quick access through the World Wide Web.

**230.3 Sending the annual program performance report to the President and Congress.**

There are two dates for submitting your annual report:

For the 24 departments and agencies preparing a combined FY 2003 Performance and Accountability Report, the combined report must be transmitted no later than January 30, 2004

For all other independent agencies, your annual report must be transmitted no later than 150 days following the end of the fiscal year covered by the report. The FY 2003 and subsequent year reports will be due by February 27 of the year following the end of the fiscal year.

Your annual report is sent to the President and Congress and the Director of OMB. The report must be transmitted by the head of your agency.

Your transmittal letters to Congress are addressed to the Speaker of the House of Representatives and the President and President pro tempore of the Senate. Copies of the Congressional transmittal are sent to the chairmen and ranking minority members of the budget committees, relevant authorization and oversight committees, appropriation subcommittees, and the chairman and ranking minority member of the Senate Committee on Governmental Affairs and the House Government Reform Committee.

Following its transmittal to the President and Congress, your agency's annual report should be made available to the public. You should use electronic means to make the report quickly and readily accessible, such as by posting it on your agency's website.

The Reports Consolidation Act of 2000 requires that an agency merging the annual performance report with its accountability report send the combined document to the President, Congress, and the Director of OMB. The combined document is titled the Performance and Accountability Report. A performance and accountability report is sent by the agency head. An agency may add other signatories, such as the Chief

**SECTION 230—PREPARATION AND SUBMISSION OF THE ANNUAL PROGRAM  
PERFORMANCE REPORT, INCLUDING THE PERFORMANCE REPORT PORTION  
OF A PERFORMANCE AND ACCOUNTABILITY REPORT**

---

Financial Officer, to the transmittal of a performance and accountability report, thus recognizing a shared responsibility within the agency for the performance reported and any future performance commitments.

If you choose to combine your annual report with your annual performance budget, changes to your customary distribution for the Congressional justification may be needed.



# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 7**

# **PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND MANAGEMENT OF CAPITAL ASSETS**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT  
OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**





**SECTION 300—PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND MANAGEMENT OF  
CAPITAL ASSETS**

**Table of Contents**

- 300.1 What is the purpose of this section?
- 300.2 Does this section apply to me?
- 300.3 What background information must I know?
- 300.4 What special terms must I know?
- 300.5 How will agencies manage capital assets?
- 300.6 How are capital asset acquisitions funded?
- 300.7 What is exhibit 300 and how is it organized?
- 300.8 What other requirements does exhibit 300 fulfill?
- 300.9 What must I report on exhibit 300 and when?
- 300.10 How will OMB evaluate the business cases in the exhibit 300s?
- 300.11 What additional information should I know?

Ex-300 Capital Asset Plan and Business Case

**Summary of Changes**

Adds PART Review questions (exhibit 300).

All terminology for IT management is changed to Investments (e.g., Major IT Investments and Non-Major IT Investments). The term IT investments includes projects, systems, IT workforce, and initiatives.

Adds information on the Federal Enterprise Architecture, its use during the agency budget formulation process, and the overall FY 2005 budget process.

Describes the requirements for multi-agency business cases (section 300.9).

Requires one business case for office automation, infrastructure, and telecommunications (section 300.9).

Requires that all 300s must be in XML in order to be part of the budget submission (section 300.9).

Adds government FTE to the summary of spending (exhibit 300).

Renames Appendices 300A and 300B as Appendix J and Appendix K.

**300.1 What is the purpose of this section?**

Part 7 (section 300) of this Circular establishes policy for planning, budgeting, acquisition and management of Federal capital assets, and instructs you on budget justification and reporting requirements for major IT investments. OMB provides procedural and analytic guidelines for implementing specific aspects of these policies as appendices and supplements to this Circular and in other OMB circulars. For information technology, this is a companion section to section [53](#).

### 300.2 Does this section apply to me?

The policy and budget justification and reporting requirements in this section apply to all agencies of the Executive Branch of the government that are subject to Executive Branch review (see section [25](#)). All major investments must submit an exhibit 300 in accordance with this section. Major Information Technology investments must be reported on your agency's exhibit 53 (see section [53](#)).

### 300.3 What background information must I know?

The Federal Government must effectively manage its portfolio of capital assets to ensure that scarce public resources are wisely invested. Capital programming integrates the planning, acquisition and management of capital assets into the budget-decision-making process, and is intended to assist agencies in improving asset management and in complying with the results-oriented requirements of:

- The Government Performance and Results Act of 1993, which establishes the foundation for budget decision-making to achieve strategic goals in order to meet agency mission objectives. Instructions for preparing strategic plans, annual performance plans, and annual program performance reports are provided in part 6 of this Circular (see section [220](#)).
- The Federal Managers Financial Integrity Act of 1982, Chief Financial Officers Act of 1990 and Federal Financial Management Improvement Act of 1996, which require accountability of financial and program managers for financial results of actions taken, control over the Federal government's financial resources, and protection of Federal assets. OMB policies and standards for developing, operating, evaluating, and reporting on financial management systems are contained in Circular A-127, *Financial Management Systems* and section [52](#) of this Circular.
- The Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, which requires that agencies perform their information resource management activities in an efficient, effective and economical manner.
- The Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996, which requires agencies to use a disciplined capital planning and investment control process to acquire, use, maintain and dispose of information technology. OMB policy for management of Federal information resources is contained in Circular A-130, *Management of Federal Information Resources*, and section [53](#) of this Circular.
- The Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, Title V (FASA V), which requires agencies to establish cost, schedule and measurable performance goals for all major acquisition programs, and achieve on average 90 percent of those goals. OMB policy for performance-based management is also provided in this section.
- The Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA), which requires agencies to integrate IT security into their capital planning and enterprise architecture processes at the agency, conduct annual IT security reviews of all programs and systems, and report the results of those reviews to OMB.
- Agencies, which may want to consider an enterprise-wide centralized approach to electronic records management (ERM). Often records of continuing value must be kept well beyond the life of the system that created the record. Doing so requires having the technology to read these records. Having a central ERM system with the capability to read these records into the future alleviates the need to maintain generally outdated software on many agency systems.

- The National Archives and Records Administration (NARA), which issues guidance for evaluating individual ERM CPIC proposals. This guidance can be found under the Records Management section of the NARA website ([www.archives.gov](http://www.archives.gov)) at: [www.archives.gov/records\\_management/policy\\_and\\_guidance/cpic\\_guidance.html](http://www.archives.gov/records_management/policy_and_guidance/cpic_guidance.html).
- The E-government Act of 2002 (P.L. 107-347), which requires agencies to develop performance measures for implementing e-government. The Act also requires agencies to support government-wide e-government initiatives and to leverage cross-agency opportunities to further e-government. In addition, the Act requires agencies to conduct, and submit to OMB, privacy impact assessments for all new IT investments administering information in identifiable form collected from or about members of the public.

#### 300.4 What special terms must I know?

**Capital assets** are land, structures, equipment, intellectual property (e.g., software), and information technology (including IT service contracts) that are used by the Federal government and have an estimated useful life of two years or more. See Appendix One of the Capital Programming Guide for a more complete definition of capital assets. Capital assets do not include items acquired for resale in the ordinary course of operations or items that are acquired for physical consumption, such as operating materials and supplies. Capital assets may be acquired in different ways: through purchase, construction, or manufacturing; through a lease-purchase or other capital lease (regardless of whether title has passed to the Federal Government); through an operating lease for an asset with an estimated useful life of two years or more; or through exchange. Policy on leases is contained in part I, section [33.1](#). Capital assets may or may not be capitalized (i.e., recorded in an entity's balance sheet) under Federal accounting standards. Capital assets do not include grants to State and local governments or other entities for acquiring capital assets (such as National Science Foundation grants to universities or Department of Transportation grants to AMTRAK) or intangible assets, such as the knowledge resulting from research and development or the human capital resulting from education and training. For more discussion on capital assets, you should consult the *Capital Programming Guide* (June 1997), a Supplement to this Circular.

**Capital planning and investment control (CPIC)** is the same as capital programming and is a decision-making process for ensuring that information technology (IT) investments integrate strategic planning, budgeting, procurement, and the management of IT in support of agency missions and business needs. The term comes from the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996 and generally is used in relationship to IT management issues.

**Capital programming** means an integrated process within an agency for planning, budgeting, procurement and management of the agency's portfolio of capital assets to achieve agency strategic goals and objectives with the lowest life-cycle cost and least risk.

**Capital project (investment)** means the acquisition of a capital asset and the management of that asset through its life-cycle after the initial acquisition. Capital projects (investments) may consist of several useful segments.

**Earned value management (EVM)** is a project (investment) management tool that effectively integrates the investment scope of work with schedule and cost elements for optimum investment planning and control. The qualities and operating characteristics of earned value management systems are described in American National Standards Institute (ANSI)/Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) Standard –748–1998, *Earned Value Management Systems*, approved May 19, 1998. It was reaffirmed on August 28, 2002. A

copy of Standard 748 is available from Global Engineering Documents (1-800-854-7179). Information on earned value management systems is available at <http://www.acq.osd.mil/pm>.

**E-business (Electronic Business)** means doing business online. E-business is often used as an umbrella term for having an interactive presence on the Web. A government e-business initiative or investment includes web-services type technologies, component based architectures, and open systems architectures designed around the needs of the customer (citizens, business, governments, and internal Federal operations).

**E-government** is the use by the government of web-based Internet applications and other information technologies, combined with processes that implement these technologies.

**Full acquisition** means the procurement and implementation of a capital project (investment) or useful segment/module of a capital project (investment). Full acquisition occurs after all planning activities are complete and the agency's Executive Review Committee or Investment Review Board selects and approves the proposed technical approach and project (investment) plan, and establishes the baseline cost, schedule and performance goals for this phase of the investment.

**Full funding** means that appropriations—regular annual appropriations or advance appropriations—are enacted that are sufficient in total to complete a useful segment of a capital project (investment) before any obligations may be incurred for that segment. When capital projects (investments) or useful segments are incrementally funded, without certainty if or when future funding will be available, it can result in poor planning, acquisition of assets not fully justified, higher acquisition costs, project (investment) delays, cancellation of major projects (investments), the loss of sunk costs, or inadequate funding to maintain and operate the assets. Budget requests for full acquisition of capital assets must propose full funding (see section [31.4](#)).

**Information technology**, as defined by the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996, sections 5002, 5141, and 5142, means any equipment or interconnected system or subsystem of equipment that is used in the automatic acquisition, storage, manipulation, management, movement, control, display, switching, interchange, transmission, or reception of data or information. For purposes of this definition, equipment is "used" by an agency whether the agency uses the equipment directly or it is used by a contractor under a contract with the agency that (1) requires the use of such equipment or (2) requires the use, to a significant extent, of such equipment in the performance of a service or the furnishing of a product. Information technology includes computers, ancillary equipment, software, firmware and similar procedures, services (including support services), and related resources. It does not include any equipment that is acquired by a Federal contractor incidental to a Federal contract.

**Integrated Project Team (IPT)** means a multi-disciplinary team lead by a program manager responsible and accountable for planning, budgeting, procurement and life-cycle management of the investment to achieve its cost, schedule and performance goals. Team skills include: budgetary, financial, capital planning, procurement, user, program, value management, earned value management, and other staff as appropriate.

**Life-cycle costs** means the overall estimated cost, both government and contractor, for a particular program alternative over the time period corresponding to the life of the program, including direct and indirect initial costs plus any periodic or continuing costs of operation and maintenance.

**Major acquisition** means a capital project (investment) that requires special management attention because of its: (1) importance to an agency's mission; (2) high development, operating, or maintenance costs; (3) high risk; (4) high return; or (5) significant role in the administration of an agency's programs,

finances, property, or other resources. The agency's documented capital programming process should include the criteria for determining when an investment is classified as major.

**Major IT Investment** means a system or investment that requires special management attention because of its importance to an agency's mission; investment was a major investment in the FY 2004 submission and is continuing; investment is for financial management and spends more than \$500,000; investment is directly tied to the top two layers of the Federal Enterprise Architecture (Services to Citizens and Mode of Delivery); investment is an integral part of the agency's modernization blueprint (EA); investment has significant program or policy implications; investment has high executive visibility; investment is defined as major by the agency's capital planning and investment control process. OMB may work with the agency to declare other investments as major investments. All major investments must be reported on exhibit 53. All major investments must submit a "Capital Asset Plan and Business Case," exhibit 300. Investments that are e-government in nature or use e-business technologies must be identified as major investments regardless of the costs. If you are unsure about what investments to consider as "major," consult your agency budget officer or OMB representative. Systems not considered "major" are "non-major."

**Mixed life-cycle investment** means an investment that has both development/modernization/enhancement (DME) and steady state aspects. For example, a mixed life-cycle investment could include a prototype or module of a system that is operational with the remainder of the system in DME stages; or, a service contract for steady state on the current system with a DME requirement for system upgrade or replacement.

**Non-major IT Investment** means any initiative or investment not meeting the definition of major defined above but that is part of the agency's IT investments. All non-major investments must be reported individually on the exhibit 53.

**On-Going IT Investment** means an investment that has been through a complete budget cycle with OMB and represents budget decisions consistent with the President's budget for the current year (BY-1).

**Operational (steady state)** means an asset or part of an asset that has been delivered and is performing the mission.

**Performance-based acquisition management** means a documented, systematic process for program management, which includes integration of program scope, schedule and cost objectives, establishment of a baseline plan for accomplishment of program objectives, and use of earned value techniques for performance measurement during execution of the program. EVMS is required for those parts of the investment where developmental effort is required. This includes prototypes and tests to select the most cost effective alternative during the Planning Phase, the work during the Acquisition Phase, and any developmental, modification or upgrade work done during the Operational/Steady State Phase. EVMS is to be applied to both government and contractor efforts. For operational/steady state systems, an operational analysis system as discussed in Phase IV of the Capital Programming Guide is required. A performance-based service contract/agreement with a defined quality assurance plan should be the basis for monitoring contractor or in-house performance of this phase.

**Planning** means preparing, developing or acquiring the information you will use to: design the investment; assess the benefits, risks, and risk-adjusted life-cycle costs of alternative solutions; and establish realistic cost, schedule, and performance goals, for the selected alternative, before either proceeding to full acquisition of the capital project (investment) or useful segment or terminating the investment. Planning must progress to the point where you are ready to commit to achieving specific goals for the completion of the acquisition before preceding to the acquisition phase. Information gathering activities may include market research of available solutions, architectural drawings, geological

studies, engineering and design studies, and prototypes. Planning is a useful segment of a capital project (investment). Depending on the nature of the investment, one or more planning segments may be necessary.

**Privacy Impact Assessment** means a process for examining the risks and ramifications of collecting, maintaining and disseminating information in identifiable form in an electronic information system, and for identifying and evaluating protections and alternative processes to mitigate the impact to privacy of collecting information in identifiable form. Consistent with forthcoming OMB guidance implementing the privacy provisions of the E-government Act, agencies must conduct privacy impact assessments for all new or significantly altered information technology investments administering information in identifiable form collected from or about members of the public. Agencies may choose whether to conduct privacy impact assessments for information technology investments administering information in identifiable form collected from or about agency employees.

**Risk adjusted life-cycle costs** means the overall estimated cost for a particular investment alternative over the time period corresponding to the life of the investment, including direct and indirect initial costs plus any periodic or continuing costs of operation and maintenance that has been adjusted to accommodate any risk identified in the risk management plans.

**Section 508** refers to Section 508 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 ([29 U.S.C. 794d](#)), which requires Federal agencies to develop, procure, maintain, or use electronic and information technology (EIT) that is accessible to Federal employees and members of the public with disabilities.

**The Federal Information Security Management Act (FISMA)** requires agencies to integrate IT security into their capital planning and enterprise architecture processes, to conduct annual IT security reviews of all programs and systems, and to report the results of those reviews to OMB.

**Useful segment/module** means an economically and programmatically separate component of a capital investment that provides a measurable performance outcome for which the benefits exceed the costs, even if no further funding is appropriated.

**Federal Enterprise Architecture (FEA)** is a framework that describes the relationship between business functions and the technologies and information that support them. Major IT investments will be aligned against each reference model within the FEA framework. The reference models required to be used during the FY 2005 budget formulation process are briefly described below. (The FEA will also ultimately include a Data Reference Model.)

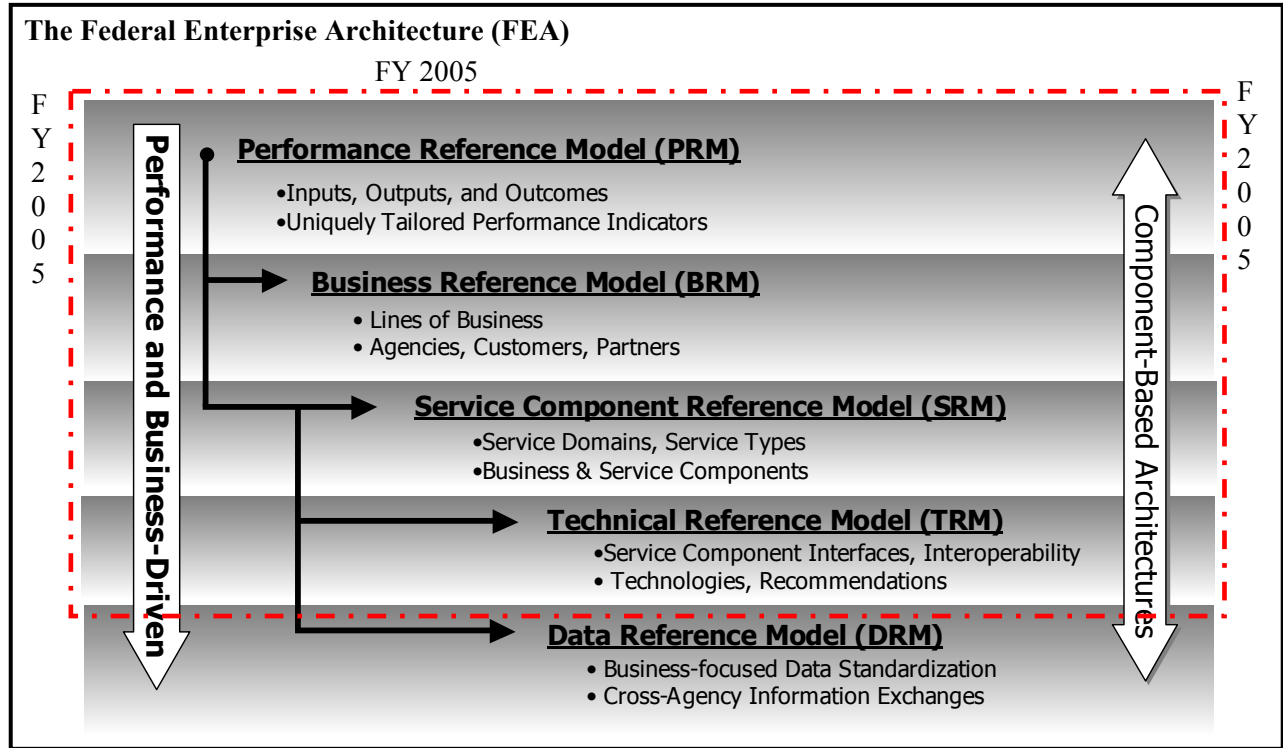
**Business Reference Model (BRM)** is a function-driven framework that describes the Lines of Business and Internal Functions performed by the Federal government independent of the agencies that perform them. Major IT investments are mapped to the BRM to identify collaboration opportunities.

**Performance Reference Model (PRM)** is a standardized performance measurement framework designed to characterize performance in a common manner where necessary. The PRM will help agencies produce enhanced performance information; improve the alignment and better articulate the contribution of inputs, such as technology, to outputs and outcomes; and identify improvement opportunities that span traditional organizational boundaries.

**Service Component Reference Model (SRM)** provides a common framework and vocabulary for characterizing the IT and business components that collectively comprise an IT investment. The SRM will help agencies rapidly assemble IT solutions through the sharing and re-use of business and IT

components. A component is a self-contained process, service, or IT capability with pre-determined functionality that may be exposed through a business or technology interface.

**Technical Reference Model (TRM)** provides a framework to describe the standards, specifications, and technologies supporting the delivery, exchange, and construction of business (or Service) components and e-Gov solutions. The TRM unifies existing agency TRMs and electronic Government (e-Gov) guidance by providing a foundation to advance the re-use of technology and component services from a government-wide perspective.



Additional budget terms and definitions are included in the Glossary in [Appendix J](#), "Principles of Budgeting for Capital Asset Acquisitions."

### 300.5 How will agencies manage capital assets?

Agencies must establish and maintain a capital programming process that links mission needs and capital assets in an effective and efficient manner. Effective capital programming requires long-range planning and a disciplined budget decision-making process as the basis for managing a portfolio of assets to achieve performance goals and objectives with minimal risk, lowest life-cycle costs, and greatest benefits to the agency's business. The process will integrate the agency's capital investments; strategic and performance plans prepared pursuant to the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993; financial management plans prepared pursuant to the Chief Financial Officer Act of 1990 ([31 U.S.C. 902a5](#)); information resource management plans prepared pursuant to the Clinger-Cohen Act (Pub. L. 104-106, Division E); method for performance-based acquisition management under the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994, Title V; and budget formulation and execution processes.

The documented capital programming process defines how an agency will select capital investment included in the agency's capital asset portfolio for funding each year; how capital investments, once initiated, will be controlled to achieve intended cost, schedule, and performance outcomes; and how once the asset is operational the agency will continue to evaluate asset performance to maintain a positive

**SECTION 300—PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND  
MANAGEMENT OF CAPITAL ASSETS**

---

return on investment. A cross-functional executive review committee acting for or with the Agency Head must be responsible for managing the agency's entire capital asset portfolio, making decisions on the best allocation of assets to achieve strategic goals and objectives within budget limits. This process must also leverage opportunities for collaboration across agencies on capital assets that support common lines of business to serve the citizens, businesses, governments, and internal Federal operations.

*The Capital Programming Guide*, which supplements this part, provides guidance on the principles and techniques for effective capital programming. [Appendix J](#) of this part explains the principles of financing capital asset acquisitions. Section 8b of OMB Circular A-130 establishes additional requirements for enterprise architectures, planning and control of information systems and technology investments and performance management. Agencies must develop, implement and use a capital programming process to develop their capital asset portfolio, and must:

- Evaluate and select capital asset investments that will support core mission functions that must be performed by the Federal government and demonstrate projected returns on investment that are clearly equal to or better than alternative uses of available public resources;
- Initiate improvements to existing assets or acquisitions of new assets only when no alternative private sector or governmental source can more efficiently meet the need;
- Simplify or otherwise redesign work processes to reduce costs, improve effectiveness, and make maximum use of commercial services and off-the-shelf technology;
- Reduce project risk by avoiding or isolating custom designed components, using components that can be fully tested or prototyped prior to full implementation or production, ensuring involvement and support of users in the design and testing of the asset;
- Structure major acquisitions into useful segments with a narrow scope and brief duration, make adequate use of competition and appropriately allocate risk between government and contractor. The Agency Head must approve or define the cost, schedule and performance goals for major acquisitions, and the agency's Chief Financial Officer must evaluate the proposed cost goals;
- Institute performance measures and management processes that monitor and compare actual performance to planned results. Agencies must use a performance-based acquisition management system, based on the ANSI/EIA Standard 748, to obtain timely information regarding the progress of capital investments. The system must also measure progress towards milestones in an independently verifiable basis, in terms of cost, capability of the investment to meet specified requirements, timeliness, and quality. Agencies are expected to achieve, on average, 90 percent of the cost, schedule and performance goals for major acquisitions. Agency heads must review major acquisitions that are not achieving 90 percent of the goals to determine whether there is a continuing need and what corrective action, including termination, should be taken;
- Ensure that information technology systems conform to the requirements of OMB Circular No. A-130, "Management of Federal Information Resources";
- Ensure that financial management systems conform to the requirements of OMB Circular No. A-127, "Financial Management Systems";
- Conduct post-implementation reviews of capital programming and acquisition processes, and projects to validate estimated benefits and costs, and document effective management practices, i.e., lessons learned, for broader use; and



- Establish oversight mechanisms that require periodic review of operational capital assets to determine how mission requirements might have changed, and whether the asset continues to fulfill ongoing and anticipated mission requirements, deliver intended benefits to the agency and customers, and meet user requirements.

### **300.6 How are capital asset acquisitions funded?**

#### *(a) Background.*

Good budgeting requires that appropriations for the full costs of asset acquisition be enacted in advance to help ensure that all costs and benefits are fully taken into account when decisions are made about providing resources. For most spending on acquisitions, this rule is followed throughout the Government. When capital assets are funded in increments, without certainty if or when future funding will be available, it can and occasionally does result in poor planning, acquisition of assets not fully justified, higher acquisition costs, project (investment) delays, cancellation of major investments, the loss of sunk costs, or inadequate funding to maintain and operate the assets.

#### *(b) Full funding policy.*

The full funding policy (see section [31.4](#)) requires that each useful segment (or module) of a capital investment be fully funded with either regular annual appropriations or advance appropriations. For definitions of these terms, see section [300.4](#) or the Glossary of Appendix J. Appendix J elaborates on the full funding concept (see [Appendix J](#) section C, Principles of Financing).

For the initial budget submissions, you are required to request full budget resources for all ongoing and new proposals for capital assets or at least for each useful segment of a capital project (investment).

Identify in the initial budget submission any additional budget authority required to implement full funding for existing investments. Adjustments to your planning guidance levels will be considered based on your budget submissions.

### **300.7 What is exhibit 300 and how is it organized?**

The exhibit 300 is a format for the IPT to demonstrate to agency management and OMB that it has employed the disciplines of good project management, represented a strong business case for the investment, and met other Administration priorities to define the proposed cost, schedule, and performance goals for the investment if funding approval is obtained. The information you report on exhibit 300 helps management:

- Determine adherence to the agency's capital programming and investment decision-making process;
- Ensure that spending on capital assets directly supports your agency's mission and will provide a return on investment equal to or better than alternate uses of funding;
- Identify poorly performing investments, i.e. investments that are behind schedule, over budget, or lacking in capability;
- Identify capital assets that no longer fulfill ongoing or anticipated mission requirements or do not deliver intended benefits to the agency or its customers; and

- For IT, ensure that strong business cases are provided for IT investments. These business cases should include security, privacy, enterprise architecture, and provide the effectiveness and efficiency gains planned by the business lines and functional operations.

Exhibit 300 consists of two parts, each of which is designed to collect information that will assist agency management and OMB during budget review. Agencies must review their portfolio of capital assets each year to determine whether it continues to meet agency's mission needs, reconciled with existing capabilities, priorities and resources. Capital asset investments should be compared against one another, rated and ranked using decision criteria (such as investment size, complexity, technical risk, expected performance benefits or improvement) to create a prioritized portfolio. You should request funding only for priority capital asset investments that demonstrate compliance with the requirements for managing capital assets described in this section and the agency's capital programming process. As a general presumption, OMB will only consider recommending for funding in the President's budget, priority capital asset investments that comply with the policies for good capital programming described in section [300.5](#), and the Capital Programming Guide.

New investments must be justified based on the need to fill a gap in the agency's ability to meet strategic goals and objectives (including those identified in section [53](#)) with the least life-cycle costs of all the various possible solutions and provide risk-adjusted cost and schedule goals and measurable performance benefits. Investments that are still in the planning or full acquisition stages must demonstrate satisfactory progress toward achieving baseline cost, schedule and performance goals. Assets that are in operation (steady state) must demonstrate how close actual annual operating and maintenance costs are to the original life-cycle cost estimates, and whether the level or quality of performance/capability meets the original performance goals and continues to meet agency and user needs.

OMB will present investments for the President's E-Government initiatives, as well as new E-Government investments identified through the Federal Enterprise Architecture, using an integrated budget process that complements each agency's investment portfolio. OMB will work with agencies to build from the IT and E-Government strategy outlined in section [53](#) of OMB Circular A-11 in identifying these cross-agency investments. Accordingly, where one agency's activities should be aligned with those of another agency in order to serve citizens, businesses, governments, and internal Federal operations, OMB will give priority to agencies that have worked collectively to present and support activities in an integrated fashion. The FY 2005 Budget will appropriately reflect such interagency collaboration, and agencies will be expected to use the exhibit 300 to demonstrate these efforts.

### **300.8 What other requirements does exhibit 300 fulfill?**

Exhibit 300 is designed to coordinate OMB's collection of agency information for its reports to Congress required by the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994 (FASA) (Title V) and the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996; to ensure that the business case for investments are made and tied to the mission statements, long-term goals and objectives, and annual performance plans that you developed pursuant to the Government Performance and Results Act of 1993 (GPRA); and for IT, exhibit 300s are used as one-stop documents for a myriad of IT management issues such as business cases for investments, IT security reporting, Clinger Cohen Act implementation, E-Gov Act implementation, Government Paperwork Elimination Act implementation, agency's modernization efforts, and overall project (investment) management.

### **300.9 What must I report on exhibit 300 and when?**

Capital asset plans and business cases (exhibit 300s) are products of your capital programming and/or capital planning and investment control process and should be developed for all capital assets. Capital

asset plans for major acquisitions, investments, or systems are reported to OMB. You must submit a capital asset plan for each major new and on-going major investment, system, or acquisition, and operational (steady state) asset included in your agency's capital asset portfolio. A major investment requires special management attention because of its: (1) importance to an agency's mission; (2) high development, operating, or maintenance costs; (3) high risk; (4) high return; or (5) significant role in the administration of an agency's programs, finances, property, or other resources.

Major IT investments are also defined as projects, systems, or initiatives that employ e-business or E-Government technologies thereby supporting the expanding E-Gov initiative of the President's Management Agenda. Major IT investments must have the concurrence of the Chief Information Officer (see section [53.3](#) for more information about major information technology investments). Your documented capital planning and investment control process must also define a major IT investment.

Exhibit 300 requires information that demonstrates compliance with the capital programming and capital planning and investment control policies of this section and, for IT, compliance with OMB Circular A-130. Agency must justify new or continued funding for major acquisitions by demonstrating: a direct connection to the agency's strategic plan; a positive return on investment for the selected alternative; sound acquisition (program and procurement) planning; comprehensive risk mitigation and management planning; realistic cost and schedule goals, and measurable performance benefits. Detailed information to substantiate the portfolio of major investments included in your justification will be documented in accordance with your agency's capital programming process. An electronic version of exhibit 300 is available at [www.cio.gov](http://www.cio.gov).

For information technology, the funding stages for "Planning" plus "Full acquisition" are the same as the "Development/modernization/enhancement" entry described in section [53](#), and "Maintenance" is the same as "Steady state" in section 53. For further details on IT and IT reporting please see section [53](#). Detail on information technology reported in exhibit 300 should be aggregated and used to prepare section 53.

The information you must report will depend on whether you are reporting a new investment or an ongoing investment (see the heading in part I).

#### *New Investments*

If you are reporting a new investment, i.e., proposed for BY or later, you must complete part I, except for sections I.H.3 and I.H.4. For IT, you must also complete part II. Investments in initial concept or planning phase will have less detail and defined specificity than investments moving into the acquisition or operational phase. However, these investments should identify in life-cycle documentation the dates these issues will be addressed as the investment matures. Where prototypes are acquired as part of the planning process, the prototypes must be reported as full acquisitions. All of the areas on the exhibit 300 must be part of an agency's planning and the business case (exhibit 300) updated as soon as the information is known. While exhibit 300s are officially submitted to OMB twice yearly, they should be management tools used within an agency and updated as the information is available.

#### *Office Automation, Infrastructure, and Telecommunications Investments*

Agencies are required to create and manage department-wide IT programs for office automation, infrastructure, and telecommunications. IT investments (major and non-major) in these areas should be coordinated through an agency-wide process and reported in September as a single business case for the department. If you are unsure what investments should be included in this area, contact your OMB representative for clarification.

*Ongoing Investments*

If you are reporting an ongoing investment that is other than IT, you only need to update all sections as appropriate in part I for the phase of the investment. IT investments, both ongoing and pre-existing investments that have never been reported through the budget process, must complete parts I and II. If any of the cost, schedule or performance variances are a negative 10 percent or more, you must provide a complete analysis of the reasons for the variances, the corrective actions that will be taken, and the most likely estimate at completion (EAC). Use the EVMS system to identify the specific work packages where problems are occurring. Discuss why the problems occurred and corrective actions necessary to return the program as close as feasible to the current baseline goals. Based on the above analysis, provide and discuss the rationale for the IPT's latest EAC as the most likely EAC. In addition, provide the contractor's EAC and EAC's derived from at least two common prediction formulas (see paragraph I.H.4 in exhibit 300) from the EVMS system and discuss the differences among the values. EAC's are subjective in nature and the contractor and government EAC's are often quite optimistic in an attempt to favor investment continuation. Using the prediction formulas will give the IPT some proven parameters to structure the discussion. The objective is to provide a realistic EAC for management decisions to continue, restructure or terminate the investment.

*Ongoing IT Investment and the Agency's Modernization Blueprint*

If you are reporting an Ongoing IT Investment that is in operational mode (Steady State), you must demonstrate that the investment has undergone an E-Government Strategy Review as part of the agency's modernization blueprint. An E-Government review is a comprehensive review and analysis performed on legacy systems and IT investments with a strategy for identifying smarter and more cost effective methods for delivering the performance. The exhibit 300 must demonstrate that either the existing investment is meeting the needs of the agency and delivering the expected performance or that the investment is being modernized and replaced consistent with the modernization blueprint. All of the sections of the business case should be used for completing an E-Gov review including:

- The business case for these type investments are not designed to recreate answers and analysis for investments that should have been performed at the inception of the investment, but rather to answer the questions and criteria with a focus toward using web services, XML, J2EE, .NET technologies and other e-business type tools;
- When addressing the justification questions, you must indicate whether the current way of doing business and performing the function is the most advantageous and cost-effective to the government;
- The section on performance goals must identify the performance goals for the investment as it stands today; project management must address the four questions identified in exhibit 300;
- Alternatives analysis must be performed with a future-focus included in your E-Gov strategy rather than an alternatives analysis that was performed several years ago and no longer valid;
- The section on actual performance and variances from the OMB-approved baseline provide information from the operational analysis system to show whether the asset is meeting program objectives and the needs of the owners and users. As well, the section shows if the asset is performing within baseline cost, schedule and performance goals; and
- The sections in part II, must be answered in their entirety with a focus on the E-Gov strategy review. All of your answers must demonstrate that you have reviewed alternative ways to perform

the business with a specific focus on E-Government or e-business technologies and supporting the President's Management Agenda.

Exhibit 300 must be submitted with your initial budget submission, which is due by September 8, 2003. The exhibit 300 should be fully integrated with your agency's overall budget submission. In alignment with the President's Management Agenda Item, "Expanding E-Gov", during the FY 2004 Budget process, OMB began migrating all IT reporting (section 53 and exhibit 300s) to Extensible Markup Language (XML). For the FY 2005 Budget, all reporting on IT must be submitted via XML. For capital projects (investments) other than IT, agencies are encouraged to submit the exhibit 300 electronically, following the same instructions provided above.

#### *Multi-Agency Business Cases and Capital Asset Plans*

The managing partner (lead agency) will take the lead for the business case and capital asset plan to include managing it through the agency capital planning and budget process and submitting the exhibit 300 to OMB. The partnering agencies information on funding and milestones is reflected in investment and funding plan section of the exhibit 300. The investment and funding plan will identify all participating agencies, the milestones they are responsible for, and the appropriation/funding source information for the partner agencies.

Partnering agencies will reflect a line item on their exhibit 53 (see section [53](#)) indicating that the funds are part of a multi-agency business case. The description provided on their exhibit 53 will describe where to find the business case in the managing partner's budget submission. Partnering agencies should ensure that their collaboration is indicated in the appropriate sections of the business case before it is submitted to OMB. The requirement for Investment Review Board for these investments is met by the managing partner agency's IRB review of the entire investment and participating agencies report their participation via their exhibit 53 through individual agencies' capital planning process.

In those cases where individual agency investments should be part of a multi-agency business case but have not yet begun the migration process, the project (investment) and funding plan of the business case should reflect the migration strategy to solution identified in the multi-agency business case. If an agency has agreed to partner on a business case and solution, only one business case is required for the initiative or investment. However, partnering agency must ensure their participation is demonstrated in the multi-agency business case.

#### **300.10 How will OMB evaluate the business cases in the exhibit 300s?**

There are two distinct elements to evaluating business cases and capital asset plans; 1) program and budget review, and 2) assessment of business cases. Budget decisions are made based upon both of these criteria. All business cases are scored against a core set of criteria and the results are provided to the agency via the budget pass-back process. While one size scoring does not fit all categories, this scoring is meant to ensure that agency planning and management of assets is consistent with OMB policy and guidance. For projects (investments) other than IT, the IT specific categories are awarded full points as they are not applicable. The scoring of a business case is two-fold. The business case is scored based upon the criteria listed below and then a programmatic review is done for the investment. A business case may score very high based on the criteria listed below but if the program it supports is deemed ineffective there may be no business case that can be made for the investment. Business case scoring is as follows:

**SECTION 300—PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND  
MANAGEMENT OF CAPITAL ASSETS**

---

Business Case (BC) (composite of all categories) Total Score for Business Case

Investments scoring 5 and meeting program requirements are automatically recommended for funding. Investments scoring an overall 4, meeting performance goals, and scoring a 4 on the performance based management criteria and security, will be recommended for funding, but will be instructed to continue improvements in the areas identified as needing work. Investments scoring 3 or below have the opportunity to improve to a 4 or degrade to a 2 rather easily. Investments scoring a 2 or below are not recommended for funding.

Score	Definition
5	41-50 Strong documented business cases (including all sections as appropriate).
4	31-40 Very few weak points within the BC but still needs strengthening.
3	21-30 Much work remains to solidify and quantify BC. BC has the opportunity to either improve or degrade very quickly.
2	11-20 Significant gaps in the required categories of the BC.
1	1-10 Inadequate in every category of the required BC.

Acquisition Strategy (AS) (Part I, Section I.G)

5	Strong Acquisition Strategy that mitigates risk to the Federal government, accommodates Section 508 as needed, and uses contracts and statements of work (SOWs) that are performance based. Implementation of the Acquisition Strategy is clearly defined.
4	Strong Acquisition Strategy that mitigates risk to the Federal government, accommodates Section 508 as needed, uses contracts and SOWs that are performance based. Acquisition strategy has very few weak points which agency is working to strengthen, and the implementation of AS is clearly defined.
3	Acquisition strategy does not appear to successfully mitigate risk to the Federal government, accommodates Section 508 as needed, much work remains to solidify and quantify the AS, and contracts and SOWs do not appear to be performance based.
2	Acquisition strategy does not appear to successfully mitigate risk to the Federal government, does not accommodate Section 508, does not appear to use performance based contracts and SOWs, and there is no clear implementation of the acquisition strategy.
1	There is no evidence of an AS.

Project (Investment) Management (PM) (Part I, Sections I.D and I.H, and overall business case)

5	Project is very strong and has resources in place to manage it.
4	Project has few weak points in the area of PM and agency is working to strengthen PM.
3	Much work remains in order for PM to manage the risks of this project.
2	There is some understanding of PM for this project but understanding is rudimentary.

1 There is no evidence of PM.

Enterprise Architecture (EA) (Part II, Section II.A) *for IT Only*

5 This project (investment) is included in the Agency EA and CPIC process. Project is mapped to and supports the Federal Enterprise Architecture and is clearly linked to the FEA Reference Models (BRM, PRM, SRM, and TRM). BC demonstrates the relationship of the investment to the business, data, application, and technology layers of the EA.

4 This investment is included in the agency's EA and CPIC process. Investment is mapped to and supports the Federal Enterprise Architecture. Investment is clearly linked to the BRM but work is continuing to map the investment to the PRM, SRM, and TRM. BC is weak in demonstrating the relationship of the investment to the business, data, and application, and technology layers of the EA.

3 This investment is not included in the agency's EA and CPIC process, was not approved by the agency EA committee, or does not link to the FEA. BC demonstrates a lack of understanding on the layers of the EA (business, data, application, and technology).

2 While the agency has an EA framework, it is not implemented in the agency and does not include this investment.

1 There is no evidence of a comprehensive EA in the agency.

Alternatives Analysis (AA) (Part I, Section I.E)

5 AA includes three viable alternatives, alternatives were compared consistently, and reasons and benefits were provided for the alternative chosen.

4 AA includes three viable alternatives, however work needs to continue to show alternatives comparison, and support must be provided for the chosen alternative.

3 AA includes fewer than three alternatives and overall analysis needs strengthening.

2 AA includes weak AA information and significant weaknesses exist.

1 There is no evidence that an AA was performed.

Risk Management (RM) (Part I, Section I.F)

5 Risk assessment was performed for all mandatory elements and risk is managed throughout the investment.

4 Risk assessment addresses some of the risk, but not all that should be addressed for this investment.

3 Risk management is very weak and does not seem to address or manage most of the risk associated with the investment.

2 Risk assessment was performed at the outset of the investment but does not seem to be part of the program management.

**SECTION 300—PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND  
MANAGEMENT OF CAPITAL ASSETS**

---

1 There is no evidence of a risk assessment plan or strategy.

Performance Goals (PG) (Part I, Section I.C)

5 Performance goals are provided for the agency and are linked to the annual performance plan. The investment discusses the agency's mission and strategic goals, and performance measures are provided.

4 Performance goals are provided for the agency and are linked to the annual performance plan. The investment discusses the agency's mission and strategic goals, and performance measures are provided. Some work remains to strengthen the PG.

3 Performance goals exist but the linkage to the agency's mission and strategic goals is weak.

2 Performance goals are in their initial stages and are not appropriate for the type of investment. Much work remains to strengthen the PG.

1 There is no evidence of PG for this investment.

Security and Privacy (SE) (Part II, Section II.B)

5 Security and privacy issues for the investment are addressed, all questions are answered, and a privacy impact assessment is provided in appropriate circumstances. Security/privacy detail is provided about the individual investment throughout the life-cycle to include budgeting for SE.

4 Security and privacy information for the investment is provided but there are weaknesses in the information that need to be addressed.

3 Security and privacy information for the investment is provided but fails to address the minimum requirements.

2 Security and privacy information points to an overall Agency Security Process with little or no detail at this investment level.

1 There is no security or privacy information provided for the investment.

Performance Based Management System (PB) (Part I, Section I.H)

5 Agency will use, or uses an Earned Value Management System (EVMS) that meets ANSI/EIA Standard 748 and investment is earning the value as planned for costs, schedule, and performance goals.

4 Agency uses the required EVMS and is within the variance levels for two of the three criteria. Work is needed on the third issue.

3 Agency uses the required EVMS but the process within the agency is either very new, not fully implemented, or there are weaknesses in this investment's EVMS information.

2 Agency seems to re-baseline rather than report variances.

1 There is no evidence of PB.



Life-Cycle Costs Formulation (LC) (Multiple Sections)

- 5 Life-cycle costs seem to reflect formulation that includes all of the required resources and is risk-adjusted to accommodate items addressed in the RM. It appears that the investment is planned well enough to come in on budget.
- 4 Life-cycle costs seem to reflect formulation of some of the resources and some of the issues as included in the risk adjustment strategy. Work remains to ensure that LC costs are accurately portrayed.
- 3 Life-cycle costs seem to reflect formulation of the resources but are not risk adjusted based on the risk management plan.
- 2 Life-cycle costs seem to include some of the resource criteria and are not risk adjusted.
- 1 Life-cycle costs do not reflect a planned formulation process.

Supports the President's Management Agenda Items (AI) (Multiple Sections)

- 5 This is a collaborative investment that includes industry, multiple agencies, State, local, or tribal governments, uses e-business technologies, and is governed by citizen needs. If the investment is a steady state investment, then an E-Gov strategy review is underway and includes all of the necessary elements. If appropriate, this investment is fully aligned with one or more of the President's E-Gov initiatives.
- 4 This is a collaborative investment that includes industry, multiple agencies, State, local, or tribal governments, uses e-business technologies though work remains to solidify these relationships. If investment is in steady state, then an E-Gov strategy review is underway but needs work in order to strengthen the analysis. If appropriate, investment supports one or more of the President's E-Gov initiatives but is not yet fully aligned.
- 3 This is not a collaborative investment though it could be and much work remains to strengthen the ties to the President's Management Agenda. If this is a steady state investment and no E-Gov strategy is evident, this investment will have a difficult time securing continued or new funding from OMB. If appropriate, this investment supports one or more of the President's E-Gov initiatives but alignment is not demonstrated.
- 2 This is not a collaborative investment and it is difficult to ascertain support for the AI. If this is a steady state investment, then no E-Gov strategy was performed or is planned.
- 1 There seems to be no link to the AI and e-Gov strategy.

Scoring Element	Score	Scoring Element	Score
Business Case (BC) Total		Performance Goals (PG)	
Acquisition Strategy (AS)		Security (SE)	
Program Management (PM)		Performance Based Management System (PB)	
Enterprise Architecture (EA)		Life Cycle Costs Formulation (LC)	

**SECTION 300—PLANNING, BUDGETING, ACQUISITION, AND  
MANAGEMENT OF CAPITAL ASSETS**

---

Scoring Element	Score	Scoring Element	Score
Alternatives Analysis (AA)		Supports the President's Management Agenda Items (AI)	
Risk Management (RM)			

**300.11 What additional information should I know?**

You are encouraged, but not required, to provide additional information on the following or other topics related to improving planning, budgeting, and acquisition of capital assets. These topics may be included in the OMB budget review process on capital assets, which may affect policy decisions on asset acquisition. You are encouraged to raise any issues you consider relevant.

(a) *Lumpiness or spikes.*

Lumpiness or spikes (i.e., large, one-time increases in year-to-year appropriations) may create bias against acquiring assets. Give special attention to these spikes for justified, cost-beneficial acquisitions, keeping in mind that the budget authority and outlay limits under the government-wide discretionary caps will continue to constrain resources. This issue is addressed in [Appendix J](#) - section C "Principles of Financing."

(b) *Account structure.*

Certain types of accounts may be preferred to ensure there is no bias against the acquisition of capital assets. You are encouraged to review the account structure to ensure that the most appropriate accounts are being used for the acquisition of capital assets. This issue also is addressed in [Appendix J](#) - section C "Principles of Financing".

(1) *Mixed accounts.* Mixed accounts have spending for both operating and capital asset acquisition in the same account, allowing for competition between the two. Demands for one may "crowd out" the other.

(2) *Asset acquisition accounts.* These accounts are devoted exclusively to the acquisition of capital assets. This type of account may be one way of avoiding lumpiness, if there is a roughly similar level of fully-funded budget authority for asset acquisition each year.

(3) *Revolving funds.* These accounts can also avoid lumpiness, depending on how they are structured. They purchase assets that are "rented" to other accounts, so that the accounts and programs using the assets have a roughly steady year-to-year payment.

(c) *Multi-year availability of appropriations.*

You should ensure that the availability of the requested appropriation allows enough time to complete the acquisition process. If the acquisition process requires more than one year, the appropriations should be made available for the number of years necessary (see part I, section [31.7](#)).

(d) *Other observations.*

You are invited to suggest other methods to improve planning, budgeting, and acquisition of capital assets.

**Exhibit 300: Part I: Capital Asset Plan and Business Case (All Assets)**

Date of this Submission:

Agency:

Bureau:

Location in the Budget:

Account Title:

Account Identification Code:

Program Activity:

Name of Investment:

Unique Project (Investment) Identifier:  
 (For IT investment only, see section 53. For all other, use agency ID system.)  
 UPI should be created the same for all investments.

Investment Initiation Date:

Investment Planned Completion Date:

This Investment is:

Initial Concept \_\_\_ Planning \_\_\_ Full Acquisition \_\_\_ Steady State \_\_\_ Mixed Life Cycle \_\_\_

Investment/useful segment is funded: Incrementally \_\_\_ Fully \_\_\_

Was this investment approved by OMB for previous Year Budget Cycle? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Did the Executive/Investment Review Committee approve funding for this investment this year? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Did the CFO review the cost goal? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Did the Procurement Executive review the acquisition strategy? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Did the Project (Investment) Manager identified in section 1.D review this? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Is this investment included in your agency's annual performance plan or multiple-agency annual performance plans? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Does this investment support homeland security? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If this investment supports homeland security, indicate by corresponding number which homeland security mission area(s) this investment supports?

- 1 – Intelligence and Warning;
- 2 – Border and Transportation Security;
- 3 – Defending Against Catastrophic Threats;
- 4 – Protecting Critical Infrastructure and Key Assets;
- 5 – Emergency Preparedness and Response; or
- 6 – Other.

\_\_\_

Is this investment information technology?  
(see section 53 for definition)

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

For information technology investments only:

a. Is this project (investment) a financial management system?  
(see section 53.2 for definition)

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If so, does this project (investment) address a FFMIA compliance area?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If yes, which compliance area?

b. Does this investment implement electronic transaction or record keeping that is covered by the Government Paperwork Elimination Act (GPEA)?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

If so, is it included in your GPEA plan (and does not yet provide an electronic option)?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

Does the investment already provide an electronic option?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

c. If the investment administers information in identifiable form about members of the public, was a privacy impact assessment submitted via PIA@omb.eop.gov with a unique project (investment) identifier?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

d. Was this investment reviewed as part of the FY 2003 Federal Information Security Management Act review process?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

d.1 If yes, were any weaknesses found?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

d.2 Have the weaknesses been incorporated into the agency's corrective action plans?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

e. Has this investment been identified as a national critical operation or asset by a Project Matrix review or other agency determination?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

e.1 If no, is this an agency mission critical or essential service, system, operation, or asset (such as those documented in the agency's COOP Plan), other than those identified as above as national critical infrastructures?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

f. Was this investment included in a Performance Assessment Rating Tool (PART) Review?

Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

f.1. Does this investment address a weakness found during the PART Review? Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

**SUMMARY OF SPENDING FOR PROJECT (INVESTMENT) STAGES**  
(In Millions)  
(Estimates for BY+1 and beyond are for planning purposes only and do not represent budget decisions)

	<b>PY-1 and Earlier</b>	<b>PY 2003</b>	<b>CY 2004</b>	<b>BY 2005</b>	<b>BY+1 2006</b>	<b>BY+2 2007</b>	<b>BY+3 2008</b>	<b>BY+4 and Beyond</b>	<b>Total</b>
--	---------------------------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------	----------------------	----------------------	----------------------	--------------------------------	--------------

Planning:

Budgetary Resources

Outlays

Acquisition :

Budgetary Resources

Outlays

Total, sum of stages:

Budgetary Resources

Outlays

Maintenance:

Budgetary Resources

Outlays

Total, All Stages:

Budgetary Resources

Outlays

Government FTE Costs:

*Note:* Government FTE costs shall include government personnel considered direct and indirect labor in support of this investment. This includes the investment management IPT and any other government effort (e.g., programming effort for part of the overall investment, development effort) that contributes to the success of the investment. The costs include the salaries plus the fringe benefit rate of 32.8%. Agencies should reflect estimates of the costs of internal FTE supporting an IT investment, and should at a minimum include in FTE estimates of anyone spending more than 50% of their time supporting this investment. Persons working on more than one investment, whose contributions over all investments would exceed 50% of their overall time, should have their specific time allocated to each investment.

**I. A. Investment Description**

1. Provide a brief description of this investment and its status through your capital planning and investment control (CPIC) or capital programming "control" review for the current cycle.
2. What assumptions are made about this investment and why?

3. Provide any other supporting information derived from research, interviews, and other documentation.

**I.B. Justification (All Assets)**

In order for IT investments to successfully address support of the President's Management Agenda and justification of the investment, the investment should be collaborative and include industry, multiple agencies, State, local, or tribal governments, use e-business technologies and be governed by citizen needs. If the investment is a steady state investment, then an E-Gov strategy review is underway and includes all the necessary elements. If appropriate, this investment is fully aligned with one or more of the President's E-Gov initiatives.

1. How does this investment support your agency's mission and strategic goals and objectives?
2. How does it support the strategic goals from the President's Management Agenda?
3. Are there any alternative sources in the public or private sectors that could perform this function?
4. If so, explain why your agency did not select one of these alternatives.
5. Who are the customers for this investment?
6. Who are the stakeholders of this investment?
7. If this is a multi-agency initiative, identify the agencies and organizations affected by this initiative.
- 7a. If this is a multi-agency initiative, discuss the partnering strategies you are implementing with the participating agencies and organizations.
8. How will this investment reduce costs or improve efficiencies?
9. List all other assets that interface with this asset. Have these assets been reengineered as part of this investment? Yes/No

**I.C. Performance Goals and Measures (All Assets)**

In order to successfully address this area of the business case, performance goals must be provided for the agency and be linked to the annual performance plan. The investment must discuss the agency's mission and strategic goals, and performance measures must be provided. These goals need to map to the gap in the agency's strategic goals and objectives that this investment is designed to fill. They are the internal and external performance benefits this investment is expected to deliver to the agency (e.g., improve efficiency by 60%, increase citizen participation by 300% a year to achieve an overall citizen participation rate of 75% by FY 2xxx, etc.). The goals must be clearly measurable investment outcomes, and if applicable, investment outputs. They do not include the completion date of the module or investment, or general goals, such as, significant, better, improved that do not have a quantitative or qualitative measure.

Agencies must use Table 1 below for reporting performance goals and measures for existing investments that were initiated prior to FY 2005. The table can be extended to include measures for years beyond FY 2004.

Table 1						
Fiscal Year	Strategic Goal(s) Supported	Existing Baseline	Planned Performance Improvement Goal	Actual Performance Improvement Results	Planned Performance Metric	Actual Performance Metric Results
2003						
2003						
2004						
2004						

All new IT investments that are development, modernization, or enhancement (DME) for 2005 and beyond must use Table 2 and are required to use the FEA Performance Reference Model. The PRM Version 1.0, available at [www.feapmo.gov](http://www.feapmo.gov), includes detailed guidance about how to incorporate PRM Indicators into the performance goals and measures table below. Please use the Table 2 and the PRM to identify the performance information that pertains to the major IT Investment. Ensure there is a complete tie-in to the strategic goals and objectives described in section I.B.1.

Table 2						
Fiscal Year	Measurement Area	Measurement Category	Measurement Indicator	Baseline	Planned Improvements to the Baseline	Actual Results
2005						
2005						
2006						
2006						

**I.D. Project Management (Investment Management) [All Assets]**

The OMB Circular A-11, Part 7, Capital Programming Guide, and the OPM Project Management Guidance "Interpretive Guidance for Project Manager Positions, discuss project management structures, responsibilities, and qualifications that contribute to successful achievement of cost, schedule, and performance goals.

- 1. Is there a project (investment) manager assigned to the investment? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_  
 If so, what is his/her name?
- 1.A. Identify the members, roles, qualifications, ad contact information of the in-house and contract project (investment) managers for this project (investment).
- 2. Is there a contracting officer assigned to the project (investment)? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_  
 If so, what is his/her name?
- 3. Is there an Integrated Project Team? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_
- 3.A. If so, list the skill set represented.
- 4. Is there a sponsor/owner for this investment? Yes \_\_\_\_\_ No \_\_\_\_\_
- 4.A. If so, identify the sponsor/process owner by name and title and provide contact information.

**I.E. Alternatives Analysis [All Assets]**

In order to successfully address this area of the business case, you must include three viable alternatives that were compared consistently, identify the alternative chosen, and provide benefits and reasons for your choice. Agency must identify all viable alternatives and then select and report details on the top three viable alternatives. Use OMB Circular A-94 for all investments and the Clinger Cohen Act for IT investments for the criteria to be used for Benefit/Cost Analysis. Agency must include the minimum criteria to be applied in considering whether to undertake a particular investment, including criteria related to the quantitatively expressed projected net, risk-adjusted return on investment, and specific quantitative and qualitative criteria for comparing and prioritizing alternative investments. For IT investments, agencies should use the Federal Enterprise Architecture (FEA) to identify potential alternatives for partnering or joint solutions that may be used to close the identified performance gap.

1. Describe the alternative solutions you considered for accomplishing the agency strategic goals or for closing the performance gap that this investment was expected to address. Describe the results of the feasibility/performance/benefits analysis. Provide comparisons of the returns (financial and other) for each alternative.

1.A. Discuss the market research that was conducted to identify innovative solutions for this investment (e.g., used an RFI to obtain four different solutions to evaluate, held open meetings with contractors to discuss investment scope, etc.). Also describe what data was used to make estimates such as, past or current contract prices for similar work, contractor provided estimates from RFIs or meetings, general market publications, etc.

Alternative	Description
Alternative 1	
Alternative 2	
Alternative 3	

2. Summarize the results of your life-cycle cost analysis performed for each investment and the underlying assumptions.

Cost Elements	Alternative 1	Alternative 2	Alternative 3
Element 1			
Element 2			
Element 3			
Element 4			
Element 5			
Total			

3. Which alternative was chosen and why?

3. A. Are there any quantitative benefits that will be achieved through this investment (e.g., systems savings, cost avoidance, stakeholder benefits, etc)? Define the Return on Investment (ROI).

3. B. For the alternative selected, provide a financial summary, including Net Present Value by Year and Payback Period Calculations:



YEAR =	FY	FY	FY	FY	FY	FY	FY	FY	FY

4. What is the date of your cost benefit analysis?

**I. F. Risk Inventory and Assessment (All Assets)**

In order to successfully address this issue on the business case and capital asset plan, you must have performed a risk assessment at the initial concept, included mandatory risk elements defined below and demonstrate active management of the risk throughout the life-cycle of the investment.

For all investments, both IT and non-IT, you must discuss each of the following risks and present your plans to eliminate, mitigate, or manage risk, with milestones and completion dates. If there is no risk to the investment achieving its goals from a risk category, indicate so. If there are other risks identified, include them. Risk assessments should include risk information from all stakeholders and should be performed at the initial concept stage and then monitored and controlled throughout the life-cycle of the investment. Risk assessments for all investments must include: 1) schedule; 2) initial costs; 3) life-cycle costs); 4) technical obsolescence; 5) feasibility; 6) reliability of systems; 7) dependencies and interoperability between this investment and others; 8) surety (asset protection) considerations; 9) risk of creating a monopoly for future procurements; 10) capability of agency to manage the investment; and 11) overall risk of investment failure.

In addition, for IT investments, risk must be discussed in the following categories 12) organizational and change management; 13) business; 14) data/info; 15) technology; 16) strategic; 17) security; 18) privacy; and 19) project resources. For security risks, identify under the Description column the level of risk as high, medium, or basic. What aspect of security determines the level of risk, i.e., the need for confidentiality of information, availability of information or the system, reliability of the information or system? Under the Current Status column, list the milestones remaining to mitigate the risk.

Date Identified	Area of Risk	Description	Probability of Occurrence	Strategy for Mitigation	Current Status

1. What is the date of your risk management plan?

**I.G. Acquisition Strategy**

In order to adequately address this area of the business case and capital asset plan you must employ a strong acquisition strategy that mitigates risk to the Federal government, accommodate Section 508 as needed, and use performance based contracts and (SOWs). If you are not using performance based fixed price contracts, your acquisition strategy should clearly define the risks that prompted the use of other than performance based contracts and SOWs. Finally, your implementation of the Acquisition Strategy must be clearly defined.

1. Will you use a single contract or several contracts to accomplish this investment?

1.A. What is the type of contract/task order if a single contract is used?

- 1B. If multiple contract/task orders will be used, discuss the type, how they relate to each other to reach the investment outcomes, and how much each contributes to the achievement of the investment cost, schedule and performance goals. Also discuss the contract/task order solicitation or contract provisions that allow the contractor to provide innovative and transformational solutions.
2. For other than firm-fixed price, performance-based contracts, define the risk not sufficiently mitigated in the risk mitigation plan, for that contract/task order, that requires the Government to assume the risk of contract achievement of cost, schedule and performance goals. Explain the amount of risk the government will assume.
3. Will you use financial incentives to motivate contractor performance (e.g. incentive fee, award fee)?
4. Discuss the competition process used for each contract/task order, including the use of RFP's, schedules or other multiple agency contracts, etc?
5. Will you use commercially available or COTS products for this investment?
- 5.A To what extent will these items be modified to meet the unique requirements of this investment?
- 5.B What prevented the use of COTS without modification?
6. What is the date of your acquisition plan?
7. How will you ensure Section 508 compliance?
8. Acquisition Costs:
- 8.A. For budget year, what percentage of the total investment is for hardware acquisition?
- 8.B. For budget year, what percentage of the total investment is for software acquisition?
- 8.C. For budget year, what percentage of the total investment is for services acquisition?

#### **I.H. Project (Investment) and Funding Plan**

In order to successfully address this section of the business case, you must demonstrate use of an Earned Value Management System (EVMS) that meets ANSI/EIA Standard 748, for both government and contractor costs, for those parts of the total investment that require development efforts (e.g., prototypes and testing in the planning phase and development efforts in the acquisition phase) and show how close the investment is to meeting the approved cost, schedule and performance goals. Information on EVMS is available at <http://www.acq.osd.mil/pm>. For those investments in the operations/steady state phase, you must perform an operational analysis as defined in the Capital Programming Guide to demonstrate how close the investment is to achieving the expected cost, schedule and performance goals for this phase. Program status information in this section must include both the contractor's part of the investments overall costs and milestone requirements as well as the government's costs and milestone requirements to successfully complete the investment phase, segment or module being reported.

##### **I.H.1. Description of performance-based management system (PBMS)**

Explain the methodology used by the agency to analyze and use the earned value performance data to manage performance. Describe the process you will use or used to verify that the contractor's project management system follows the ANSI/EIA Standard 748-A. If the investment is operational (steady state), define the operational analysis system that will be used. If this is a mixed life-cycle investment with both operational and

development/modernization/enhancement (DME) system improvement aspects, EVMS must be used on the system improvement aspects of the investment and operational analysis on the operations aspects. Using information consistent with the work breakdown structure (WBS), provide the information requested in all parts of this section.

I.H.2. Original baseline (OMB-approved at investment outset)

What are the cost and schedule goals for this phase or segment/module of the investment (e.g., what are the major investment milestones or events; when will each occur; and what is the estimated cost to accomplish each one)? Also identify the funding agency for each milestone or event if this is a multi-agency investment. For operational or steady state projects, complete one line on the chart for each year of this phase. If the project is mixed life-cycle there will be two parts to the chart; one for the O&M portion and one for the developmental portion using EVMS. If this is a multi-agency investment or one of the President's E-Gov initiatives, use the detailed investment plan with milestones on the critical path, to identify agency funding for each module or milestone. (This baseline must be included in all subsequent reports, even when there are OMB-approved baseline changes shown in I.H.3).

<b>Cost and Schedule Goals: Original Baseline for a Phase/Segment/Module of Project (Investment)</b>					
Description of Milestone	Schedule			Planned Cost	Funding Agency
	Start Date	End Date	Duration (in days)		
1.					
2.					
3.					
Completion date:				Total cost estimate at completion:	

I.H.3. Proposed baseline/current baseline (applicable *only* if OMB-approved the changes)

Identify in this section a proposed change to the original or current baseline or an OMB-approved baseline change. What are the new cost and schedule goals for the phase or segment/module (e.g., what are the major investment milestones or events; when will each occur; and what is the estimated cost to accomplish each one)? Also identify the funding agency for each milestone or event if this is a multi-agency investment. If this is a new investment in the FY 2005 budget year, this section will be blank for your initial submission.

<b>Cost and Schedule Goals:</b>					
<b>Proposed _____ or Current (OMB-Approved) _____ Baseline for a Phase/Segment/Module of Project (Investment)</b>					
Description of Milestone	Schedule			Planned Cost	Funding Agency
	Start Date	End Date	Duration (in days)		
1.					
2.					
3.					
Completion date:				Total cost estimate at completion:	

I.H.4 Actual performance and variance from OMB-approved baseline (original or current)

A. This section is always filled in to reflect current status of the investment. It compares the OMB approved baseline and actual results for this phase, segment, or module of the investment. Show for each major investment milestones or events you planned (scheduled) to accomplish and the cost and what work was actually done and the cost. If the project is in the operational or steady state phase complete one line on the chart for each year. For these projects complete paragraphs C, D, F and G as appropriate. If this is a new investment in the FY 2005 budget year, this will be blank for your initial submission. OMB may ask for latest information during the budget review process.

Comparison of OMB-Approved Baseline and Actual Outcome for Phase/Segment/Module of a Project (Investment)									
Description of Milestone	OMB-Approved Baseline					Actual Outcome			
	Schedule			Planned Cost	Funding Agency	Schedule		Percent Complete	Actual Cost
	Start Date	End Date	Duration (in days)			Start Date	End Date		
1.									
2.									
3.									
Completion date: OMB-approved baseline:						Estimated completion date:			
Total cost: OMB-approved baseline:						Estimate at completion:			

B. Provide the following investment summary information from your EVMS data (as of date):

B.1. Show the budgeted (planned) cost of work scheduled (BCWS): \$ \_\_\_\_\_

B.2. Show budgeted (planned) cost of work actually performed (BCWP): \$ \_\_\_\_\_

B.3. Show the actual cost of work performed (ACWP): \$ \_\_\_\_\_

B.4. Provide a performance curve graph plotting BCWS, BCWP and ACWP on a monthly basis from inception of this phase or segment/module through the latest report. In addition, plot the ACWP curve to the estimated cost at completion (EAC) value, and provide the following EVMS variance analysis.

Project (Investment) Summary (Cumulative)	Value
Cost Variance = (BCWP-ACWP) =	
Cost Variance % = (CV/BCWP) x 100% =	
Cost Performance Index (CPI) = (BCWP/ACWP) =	
Schedule Variance = (BCWP-BCWS) =	
Schedule Variance % = (SV/BCWS) x 100% =	
Schedule Performance Index (SPI) = (BCWP/BCWS) =	
Two independent Estimates at Completion (EAC) = ACWPcum + (Performance Factor (PF) X	

Project (Investment) Summary (Cumulative)	Value
(BAC minus BCWPcum)), where $PF_1 = 1/CPI$ , and $PF_2 = 1/(CPI \times SPI)$ . =	
Variance at Completion (VAC) = (BAC minus EAC) for both EACs above =	
Variance at Completion % = $(VAC/BAC) \times 100\%$ for both EACs above =	
Estimated Cost to Complete (ETC)=	
Expected Completion Date =	

Definitions for Earned Value Management System:

- ACWP – Actual Cost of Work Performed – What you paid.
- BAC – Budget At Completion – The baseline (planned) budget for the investment.
- BCWP – Budgeted Cost for Work Performed – The earned value.
- BCWS – Budgeted Cost for Work Scheduled – The planned costs.
- CPI – Cost Performance Index – The ratio of the budgeted to actual cost of work performed.
- CV – Cost Variance – The difference between planned and actual cost of work performed.
- EAC – Estimate At Completion – The latest estimated cost at completion.
- ETC – Estimate to Completion – Funds needed to complete the investment.
- PF – Performance Factor – The cost to earn a dollar of value, or  $ACWP/BCWP$ , or  $1/CPI$ .
- SPI – Schedule Performance Index – The percent of the investment that has been completed.
- SV – Schedule Variance – The variance between the actual and planned schedules.
- VAC – Variance at Completion – The variance between the baseline and actual budget at completion.

- C. If cost and/or schedule variance are a negative 10 percent or more at the time of this report or EAC is projected to be 10 percent or more, explain the reason(s) for the variance(s).
- D. Provide performance variance. Explain based on work accomplished to date, whether or not you still expect to achieve your performance goals. If not, explain the reasons for the variance. For steady state projects, in addition to a discussion on whether or not the system is meeting the program objectives, discuss whether the needs of the owners and users are still being met.
- E. For investments using EVMS, discuss the contractor, government, and at least the two EAC index formulas in I.H.4.B, current estimates at completion. Explain the differences and the IPT’s selected EAC for budgeting purposes. This paragraph is not applicable to operations/steady state investments.
- F. Discuss the corrective actions that will be taken to correct the variances, the risk associated with the actions, and how close the planned actions will bring the investment to the original baseline. Define proposed baseline changes, if necessary.
- G. If the investment cost, schedule or performance variances are 10% or greater, has the Agency Head concurred in the need to continue the program at the new baseline?  
 Yes \_\_\_ No \_\_\_

**Exhibit 300: Part II: Additional Business Case Criteria for Information Technology**

**II. A. Enterprise Architecture**

In order to successfully address this area of the business case and capital asset plan you must ensure that the investment is included in the agency’s EA and CPIC process, and is mapped to and supports the Federal Enterprise Architecture. You must also ensure that the business case demonstrates the relationship between the investment and the business, data, application, and technology layers of the EA.

II.A.1 Business

- A. Is this investment identified in your agency's enterprise architecture? If not, why?
- A.1 Will this investment be consistent with your agency’s "to be" modernization blueprint?
- B. Was this investment approved through the EA Review committee at your agency?
- C. What are the major process simplification/reengineering/design projects that are required as part of this IT investment?
- D. What are the major organization restructuring, training, and change management projects that are required?
- E. Please list all the Lines of Business and Sub-Functions from the FEA Business Reference Model that this IT investment supports. The *primary* BRM mapping for this initiative should have been identified with the last six digits of the unique project (investment) identifier in section 53.8. For a list of the BRM Lines of Business and Sub-Functions, as well as guidance on mapping to the BRM, please see [www.omb.gov](http://www.omb.gov). (*Note:* The Services for Citizens area and the Mode of Delivery area should be thought of collectively. If you identified your *primary* line of business/sub-function in section 53.8 as a Service for Citizen or a Mode of Delivery, at a minimum you should identify the corresponding Mode of Delivery/Service for Citizen that applies in this section).

Line of Business	Sub-function

II.A.2 Data

- A. What types of data will be used in this investment? Examples of data types are health data, geospatial data, natural resource data, etc.
- B. Does the data needed for this investment already exist at the Federal, State, or Local level? If so, what are your plans to gain access to that data?
- C. Are there legal reasons why this data cannot be transferred? If so, what are they and did you address them in the barriers and risk sections above?
- D. If this initiative processes spatial data, identify planned investments for spatial data and demonstrate how the agency ensures compliance with the Federal Geographic Data Committee standards required by OMB Circular A-16.

E. If this activity involves the acquisition, handling or storage of information that will be disseminated to the public or used to support information that will be disseminated to the public, explain how it will comply with your agency's Information Quality guidelines (section [51.5](#) requirements)?

F. Managing business information means maintaining its authenticity, reliability, integrity, and usability and providing for its appropriate disposition. Address how the system will manage the business information (records) that it will contain throughout the information life cycle.

### II.A.3 Applications, Components, and Technology

A. Discuss this major investment in relationship to the Service Component Reference Model Section of the FEA. Include a discussion of the components included in this major IT investment (e.g., knowledge management, content management, customer relationship management, etc). For detailed guidance regarding components, please refer to <http://www.feapmo.gov> and the SRM Release Document.

B. Are all of the hardware, applications, components, and web technology requirements for this investment included in the Agency EA Technical Reference Model? If not, please explain.

C. Discuss this major IT investment in relationship to the Technical Reference Model section of the FEA. Identify each Service Area, Service Category, Service Standard, and Service Specification that collectively describes the technology supporting the major IT investment. For detailed guidance regarding the FEA TRM, please refer to <http://www.feapmo.gov>.

D. Will the application leverage existing components and/or applications across the Government (i.e., FirstGov, Pay.Gov, etc). If so, please describe.

E. Financial Management Systems and Projects, as indicated in Part One, must be mapped to the agency's financial management system inventory provided annually to OMB. Please identify the system name(s) and system acronym(s) as reported in the most recent systems inventory update required by Circular A-11 section [52.4](#).

## II. B. Security and Privacy

In order to successfully address this area of the business case, each question below must be answered at the investment (system/application) level, not at a program or agency level. Simply referring to security plans or other documents is not an acceptable response. For IT investments under development, security planning must proceed in parallel with the development of the system to ensure that IT security requirements and costs for the lifecycle of the investment are identified and validated. All IT investments must have up-to-date security plans and be fully certified and accredited prior to becoming operational. Anything short of a full certification and accreditation indicates that identified IT security weaknesses remain and need to be remedied and is therefore not adequate to ensure funding for the investment. Additionally, to ensure that requests for increased IT security funding are appropriately addressed and prioritized, the agency must identify: 1) current costs; 2) current IT security performance gaps; and 3) how the funding request will close the performance gaps. This information must be provided to OMB through the agencies' plan of action and milestone developed for the system and tied to the IT business case through the unique project (investment) identifier.

In addition, agencies must demonstrate that they have fully considered privacy in the context of this investment. Agencies must comply with Section 208 of the E-government Act and forthcoming OMB implementing guidance and, in appropriate circumstances, conduct a privacy impact assessment that evaluates the privacy risks, alternatives and protective measures implemented at each stage of the information life cycle. Agencies should utilize the guidance provided in OMB Memoranda in conducting the PIA and submit a copy, using the unique project (investment) identifier, to OMB at [PIA@omb.eop.gov](mailto:PIA@omb.eop.gov).

II.B.1. How is security provided and funded for this investment (e.g., by program office or by the CIO through the general support system/network)?

A. What is the total dollar amount allocated to IT security for this investment in FY 2005? Please indicate whether an increase in IT security funding is requested to remediate IT security weaknesses, specifying the amount and a general description of the weakness.

II.B.2 Please describe how the investment (system/application) meets the following security requirements of the Federal Information Security Management Act, OMB policy, and NIST guidelines:

A. Does the investment (system/application) have an up-to-date security plan that meets the requirements of OMB policy and NIST guidelines? What is the date of the plan?

B. Has the investment been certified and accredited (C&A)?

*Note:* Certification and accreditation refers to a full C&A and does not mean interim authority to operate. Additionally, specify the C&A methodology used (e.g., NIST guidelines) and the date of the last review.

C. Have the management, operational, and technical security controls been tested for effectiveness? When were most recent tests performed?

D. Have all system users been appropriately trained in the past year, including rules of behavior and consequences for violating the rules?

E. How has incident handling capability been incorporated into the system or investment, including intrusion detection monitoring and audit log reviews? Are incidents reported to DHS' FedCIRC?

F. Is the system operated by contractors either on-site or at a contractor facility? If yes, does any such contract include specific security requirements required by law and policy? How are contractor security procedures monitored, verified, and validated by the agency?

II.B.3 How does the agency ensure the effective use of security controls and authentication tools to protect privacy for those systems that promote or permit public access?

II.B.4 How does the agency ensure that the handling of personal information is consistent with relevant government-wide and agency policies?

II.B.5 If this is a new or significantly altered investment involving information in identifiable form collected from or about members of the public, has a Privacy Impact Assessment (PIA) for this investment been provided to OMB at [PIA@omb.eop.gov](mailto:PIA@omb.eop.gov) with the investment's unique project (investment) identifier?

## II. C. Government Paperwork Elimination Act (GPEA)

**II.C.1 If this investment supports electronic transactions or record-keeping that is covered by GPEA, briefly describe the transaction or record-keeping functions and how this investment relates to your agency's GPEA plan.**

II.C.2 What is the date of electronic conversion from your GPEA plan?

II.C.3 Identify any OMB Paperwork Reduction Act (PRA) control numbers from information collections that are tied to this investment.



# **CIRCULAR NO. A-11**

## **PART 8**

### **APPENDICES**



**EXECUTIVE OFFICE OF THE PRESIDENT**

**OFFICE OF MANAGEMENT AND BUDGET**

**JULY 2003**



## APPENDIX A—SCOREKEEPING GUIDELINES

These budget scorekeeping guidelines are used by the House and Senate Budget Committees, the Congressional Budget Office, and the Office of Management and Budget (the "scorekeepers") in measuring compliance with the Congressional Budget Act of 1974 (CBA), as amended, and GRH, as amended. The purpose of the guidelines is to ensure that the scorekeepers measure the effects of legislation on the deficit consistent with established scorekeeping conventions and with the specific requirements in those Acts regarding discretionary spending, direct spending, and receipts. These rules are reviewed annually by the scorekeepers and revised as necessary to adhere to the purpose. They cannot be changed unless all of the scorekeepers agree. New accounts or activities are classified only after consultation among the scorekeepers. Accounts and activities cannot be reclassified unless all of the scorekeepers agree.

### 1. Classification of appropriations

A list of appropriations that are normally enacted in appropriations acts is included in the conference report of the Balanced Budget Act of 1997, House Report 105–217, pp. 1014–1053. The list identifies appropriated entitlements and other mandatory spending in appropriations acts, and it identifies discretionary appropriations by category.

### 2. Outlays prior

Outlays from prior-year appropriations will be classified consistent with the discretionary/mandatory classification of the account from which the outlays occur.

### 3. Direct spending programs

Entitlements and other mandatory programs (including offsetting receipts) will be scored at current law levels, as defined in section 257 of GRH, unless congressional action modifies the authorizing legislation. Substantive changes to or restrictions on entitlement law or other mandatory spending law in appropriations laws will be scored against the Appropriations Committee's section 302(b) allocations in the House and the Senate. For the purpose of CBA scoring, direct spending savings that are included in both an appropriations bill and a reconciliation bill will be scored to the reconciliation bill and not to the appropriations bill. For scoring under sections 251 or 252 of GRH, such provisions will be scored to the first bill enacted.

### 4. Transfer of budget authority from a mandatory account to a discretionary account

The transfer of budget authority to a discretionary account will be scored as an increase in discretionary budget authority and outlays in the gaining account. The losing account will not show an offsetting reduction if the account is an entitlement or mandatory program.

### 5. Permissive transfer authority

Permissive transfers will be assumed to occur (in full or in part) unless sufficient evidence exists to the contrary. Outlays from such transfers will be estimated based on the best information available, primarily historical experience and, where applicable, indications of Executive or congressional intent.

This guideline will apply both to specific transfers (transfers where the gaining and losing accounts and the amounts subject to transfer can be ascertained) and general transfer authority.

## **6. Reappropriations**

Reappropriations of expiring balances of budget authority will be scored as new budget authority in the fiscal year in which the balances become newly available.

## **7. Advance appropriations**

Advance appropriations of budget authority will be scored as new budget authority in the fiscal year in which the funds become newly available for obligation, not when the appropriations are enacted.

## **8. Rescissions and transfers of unobligated balances**

Rescissions of unobligated balances will be scored as reductions in current budget authority and outlays in the year the money is rescinded.

Transfers of unobligated balances will be scored as reductions in current budget authority and outlays in the account from which the funds are being transferred, and as increases in budget authority and outlays in the account to which these funds are being transferred.

In certain instances, these transactions will result in a net negative budget authority amount in the source accounts. For purposes of section 257 of GRH, such amounts of budget authority will be projected at zero. Outlay estimates for both the transferring and receiving accounts will be based on the spending patterns appropriate to the respective accounts.

## **9. Delay of obligations**

Appropriations acts specify a date when funds will become available for obligation. It is this date that determines the year for which new budget authority is scored. In the absence of such a date, the act is assumed to be effective upon enactment.

If a new appropriation provides that a portion of the budget authority shall not be available for obligation until a future fiscal year, that portion shall be treated as an advance appropriation of budget authority. If a law defers existing budget authority (or unobligated balances) from a year in which it was available for obligation to a year in which it was not available for obligation, that law shall be scored as a rescission in the current year and a reappropriation in the year in which obligational authority is extended.

## **10. Contingent legislation**

If the authority to obligate is contingent upon the enactment of a subsequent appropriation, new budget authority and outlays will be scored with the subsequent appropriation. If a discretionary appropriation is contingent on the enactment of a subsequent authorization, new budget authority and outlays will be scored with the appropriation. If a discretionary appropriation is contingent on the fulfillment of some action by the Executive branch or some other event normally estimated, new budget authority will be scored with the appropriation, and outlays will be estimated based on the best information about when (or if) the contingency will be met. If direct spending legislation is contingent on the fulfillment of some action by the Executive branch or some other event normally estimated, new budget authority and outlays will be scored based on the best information about when (or if) the contingency will be met. Non-lawmaking contingencies within the control of the Congress are not scoreable events.

## 11. Scoring purchases, lease-purchases, capital leases, and operating leases.

When a law provides the authority for an agency to enter into a contract for the purchase, lease-purchase, capital lease, or operating lease of an asset, budget authority and outlays will be scored as follows:

For lease-purchases and capital leases, budget authority will be scored against the legislation in the year in which the budget authority is first made available in the amount of the estimated net present value of the Government's total estimated legal obligations over the life of the contract, except for imputed interest costs calculated at Treasury rates for marketable debt instruments of similar maturity to the lease period and identifiable annual operating expenses that would be paid by the Government as owner (such as utilities, maintenance, and insurance). Property taxes will not be considered to be an operating cost. Imputed interest costs will be classified as mandatory and will not be scored against the legislation or for current level but will count for other purposes.

For operating leases, budget authority will be scored against the legislation in the year in which the budget authority is first made available in the amount necessary to cover the Government's legal obligations. The amount scored will include the estimated total payments expected to arise under the full term of a lease contract or, if the contract will include a cancellation clause, an amount sufficient to cover the lease payments for the first fiscal year during which the contract is in effect, plus an amount sufficient to cover the costs associated with cancellation of the contract. For funds that are self-insuring under existing authority, only budget authority to cover the annual lease payment is required to be scored.

Outlays for a lease-purchase in which the Federal government assumes substantial risk (for example, through an explicit Government guarantee of third party financing) will be spread across the period during which the contractor constructs, manufactures, or purchases the asset. Outlays for an operating lease, a capital lease, or a lease-purchase in which the private sector retains substantial risk will be spread across the lease period. In all cases, the total amount of outlays scored over time against legislation will equal the amount of budget authority scored against that legislation.

No special rules apply to scoring purchases of assets (whether the asset is existing or is to be manufactured or constructed). Budget authority is scored in the year in which the authority to purchase is first made available in the amount of the Government's estimated legal obligations. Outlays scored will equal the estimated disbursements by the Government based on the particular purchase arrangement, and over time will equal the amount of budget authority scored against that legislation.

Existing contracts will not be rescored.

To distinguish lease purchases and capital leases from operating leases, the following criteria will be used for defining an operating lease:

- Ownership of the asset remains with the lessor during the term of the lease and is not transferred to the Government at or shortly after the end of the lease period.
- The lease does not contain a bargain-price purchase option.
- The lease term does not exceed 75 percent of the estimated economic lifetime of the asset.
- The present value of the minimum lease payments over the life of the lease does not exceed 90 percent of the fair market value of the asset at the inception of the lease.

- The asset is a general purpose asset rather than being for a special purpose of the Government and is not built to unique specification for the Government as lessee.
- There is a private-sector market for the asset.

Risks of ownership of the asset should remain with the lessor.

Risk is defined in terms of how governmental in nature the project is. If a project is less governmental in nature, the private-sector risk is considered to be higher. To evaluate the level of private-sector risk associated with a lease-purchase, legislation and lease-purchase contracts will be considered against the following type of illustrative criteria, which indicate ways in which the project is less governmental:

- There should be no provision of Government financing and no explicit Government guarantee of third party financing.
- Risks of ownership of the asset should remain with the lessor unless the Government was at fault for such losses.
- The asset should be a general purpose asset rather than for a special purpose of the Government and should not be built to unique specification for the Government as lessee.
- There should be a private-sector market for the asset.
- The project should not be constructed on Government land.

Language that attempts to waive the Anti-Deficiency Act, or to limit the amount or timing of obligations recorded, does not change the Government's obligations or obligational authority, and so will not affect the scoring of budget authority or outlays.

Unless language that authorizes a project clearly states that no obligations are allowed unless budget authority is provided specifically for that project in an appropriations bill in advance of the obligation, the legislation will be interpreted as providing obligation authority, in an amount to be estimated by the scorekeepers.

## **12. Write-offs of uncashed checks, unredeemed food stamps, and similar instruments**

Exceptional write-offs of uncashed checks, unredeemed food stamps, and similar instruments (i.e., write-offs of cumulative balances that have built up over several years or have been on the books for several years) shall be scored as an adjustment to the means of financing the deficit rather than as an offset. An estimate of write-offs or similar adjustments that are part of a continuing routine process shall be netted against outlays in the year in which the write-off will occur. Such write-offs shall be recorded in the account in which the outlay was originally recorded.

## **13. Reclassification after an agreement**

Except to the extent assumed in a budget agreement, a law that has the effect of altering the classification or scoring of spending and revenues (e.g., from discretionary to mandatory, special fund to revolving fund, on-budget to off-budget, revenue to offsetting receipt), will not be scored as reclassified for the purpose of enforcing a budget agreement.

**14. Scoring of receipt increases or direct spending reductions for additional administrative or program management expenses**

No increase in receipts or decrease in direct spending will be scored as a result of provisions of a law that provides direct spending for administrative or program management activities.

**15. Asset sales**

If the net financial cost to the Government of an asset sale is zero or negative (a savings), the amount scored shall be the estimated change in receipts and mandatory outlays in each fiscal year on a cash basis. If the cost to the Government is positive (a loss), the proceeds from the sale shall not be scored for purposes of the CBA or GRH.

The net financial cost to the Federal government of an asset sale shall be the net present value of the cash flows from:

- (1) Estimated proceeds from the asset sale;
- (2) The net effect on Federal revenues, if any, based on special tax treatments specified in the legislation;
- (3) The loss of future offsetting receipts that would otherwise be collected under continued Government ownership (using baseline levels for the projection period and estimated levels thereafter); and
- (4) Changes in future spending, both discretionary and mandatory, from levels that would otherwise occur under continued Government ownership (using baseline levels for the projection period and at levels estimated to be necessary to operate and maintain the asset thereafter).

The discount rate used to estimate the net present value shall be the average interest rate on marketable Treasury securities of similar maturity to the expected remaining useful life of the asset for which the estimate is being made, plus 2 percentage points to reflect the economic effects of continued ownership by the Government.

**16. Indefinite borrowing authority and limits on outstanding debt**

If legislation imposes or changes a limit on outstanding debt for an account financed by indefinite budget authority in the form of borrowing authority, the legislation will be scored as changing budget authority only if and to the extent the imposition of a limit or the change in the existing limit alters the estimated amount of obligations that will be incurred.





APPENDIX B—SCORING LEASE-PURCHASES AND LEASES OF CAPITAL ASSETS

**Summary of Changes**

Clarifies that the impact of changes to existing operating lease contracts needs to be evaluated against the criteria for operating leases.

Fair market value will not include the value of features or enhancements that were built or added for the Government's unique needs or special purposes. Such features should be financed up-front, separate from the lease.

Lease-backs from public/private partnerships with substantial private sector participation will be presumed to be capital leases; public/private partnerships without substantial private sector participation will be considered governmental for purposes of the budget.

When determining whether a lease contains a bargain-price purchase option, the purchase price includes the value of any rebates or income to the Government resulting from its purchase of the asset.

The assumptions used to perform lease analyses are subject to OMB approval.

This Appendix provides instructions on scoring lease-purchases and leases of capital assets consistent with the scorekeeping rule developed by the executive and legislative branches in connection with the Budget Enforcement Act of 1990 (BEA), as revised pursuant to the Balanced Budget Act of 1997 (see Appendix A). The scorekeeping rule focuses on leases and lease-purchases specifically authorized by law. However, the scorekeeping requirements apply to all lease-purchase arrangements and capital leases, including those arrangements that agencies may enter into under existing general legal authorities and arrangements that are financed through the Federal Financing Bank. The only exception is that leases between Federal agencies generally will not be scored on this basis if the lessor recorded the full cost of the asset when it was acquired.

**1. Scorekeeping rule**

(a) *General.*

When an agency is authorized to enter into a *lease-purchase* or *capital lease* contract, budget authority will be scored in the year in which the authority is first made available in the amount of the net present value of the Government's total estimated legal obligations over the life of the contract, as described in section 2 (b) below. Outlays for lease-purchases in which the Federal Government assumes substantial risk will be spread across the period during which the contractor constructs, manufactures, or purchases the asset. Outlays for a capital lease or a lease-purchase in which the private sector retains substantial risk will be spread across the lease term. The scorekeeping requirements are summarized below.

For *operating leases*, budget authority is required for the first year of the contract in the amount necessary to cover the Government's legal obligations, consistent with the requirements of the Antideficiency Act. This will include the estimated total payments expected to arise under the full term of the contract or, if the contract includes a cancellation clause, an amount sufficient to cover the lease payments for the first year plus an amount sufficient to cover the costs associated with cancellation of the contract. (For each subsequent year, sufficient budget authority is required to cover the annual lease payment plus any additional cancellation costs.) In a limited number of instances, where funds are self-insuring under

**APPENDIX B—SCORING LEASE-PURCHASES  
AND LEASES OF CAPITAL ASSETS**

---

existing authority, only the amount of budget authority needed to cover the annual lease payment is required to be scored. OMB will advise agencies if funds may be considered self-insuring for this purpose.

(b) *Making annual lease payments after the BA expires.*

Unless otherwise specified by law, budget authority is available for liquidating obligations (i.e., outlays) for only five fiscal years after the authority expires. For leases financed by annual or multi-year budget authority, agencies should ensure that the appropriations language allows the budget authority to remain available for lease payments over the full term of the lease. If this period is expected to be longer than five fiscal years after the authority expires, the appropriations language should include the provision described in section [95.8](#).

(c) *Changes to existing contracts.*

When an agency modifies or amends an existing capital lease or lease-purchase contract, any remaining budgetary resources prior to modification should be used to offset the cost of the new contract. The amount scored will be the difference in the net present value of the Government's total estimated legal obligations between the new contract and the remaining term of the original contract. (Both net present values should be calculated using the Treasury borrowing rates published in the annual update to Appendix C of [OMB Circular No. A-94](#) at the time the contract is amended (see section 4)). There would be no remaining budgetary resources if funds equal to the lease payments or the present value of the lease payments were not scored up front at the time the lease was signed. In this case, the full cost of the new contract should be scored, consistent with the rules for scoring lease-purchases and capital leases. Similarly, when an agency modifies or amends an existing operating lease contract, the impact of the changes needs to be evaluated. If the lease no longer meets the criteria for an operating lease, the modified lease should be rescored.

(d) *Options to renew or purchase.*

When the lease agreement contains an option to renew that can be exercised without additional legislation, it will be presumed that the option will be exercised for purposes of calculating the term of the lease and scoring budget authority. When the lease agreement contains an option to purchase at less than fair market value (at the time the option is to be exercised), and the option can be exercised without additional legislation, it will be presumed that the option will be exercised for purposes of classifying the type of lease and scoring budget authority.

**SUMMARY OF SCOREKEEPING REQUIREMENTS**

<b>Transaction</b>	<b>Budget Authority</b>	<b>Outlays</b>
Lease-purchase without substantial private risk	Amount equal to asset cost recorded up front; amount equal to imputed interest costs recorded on an annual basis over lease period.	Amount equal to asset cost scored over the construction period in proportion to the distribution of the contractor's costs; amount equal to imputed interest costs recorded on an annual basis over lease term.
Lease-purchase with substantial private risk	Amount equal to asset cost recorded up front; amount equal to imputed interest costs recorded on an annual basis over lease term.	Scored over lease term in an amount equal to the annual lease payments.

Transaction	Budget Authority	Outlays
Capital lease	Amount equal to asset cost recorded up front; amount equal to imputed interest costs recorded on an annual basis over lease term.	Scored over lease term in an amount equal to the annual lease payments.
Operating lease	Amount equal to total payments under the full term of the lease or amount sufficient to cover first year lease payments plus cancellation costs recorded up front	Scored over lease term in an amount equal to the annual lease payments.

## 2. Budget presentation

### (a) *General.*

For the purposes of scorekeeping transactions that involve lease-purchases and capital leases, the costs are separated into the following components:

- Asset cost (which equals the present value of the lease payments).
- Imputed interest cost (which equals the financing cost Treasury would have incurred if it had financed the project by borrowing).

These concepts are defined more fully in section 3. The amounts can be determined from the amortization tables developed in accordance with the instructions in section 4. Budget authority and outlays attributable to asset costs will be classified as investment-type activities (physical assets), and budget authority and outlays attributable to imputed interest costs will be classified as non-investment activities (see section [84.4](#)).

### (b) *Budget authority.*

- *Amounts.* The up-front budget authority required for both lease-purchases and capital leases is called the asset cost. This equals the present value of the minimum lease payments excluding payments for identifiable annual operating expenses that would be paid by the Government as owner, such as utilities, maintenance, and insurance. Property taxes will not be considered to be an operating expense and will be included in the calculation of the up-front budget authority. (See section 3 for the treatment of property taxes for purposes of distinguishing operating leases from capital leases.) The present value of the lease payments is discounted as of the date of the first payment (or the beginning of the lease term, whichever is earlier) using the appropriate interest rate (see section 4 for a more detailed explanation and the treatment of multiple deliveries).

Additional budget authority equal to Treasury's cost of financing (i.e., the imputed interest cost) plus any annual operating expenses will be recorded on an annual basis over the lease term.

- *Type of authority.* When an agency enters into a capital lease or lease-purchase under general authorities available to the agency, it must do so within the limits of the budgetary resources available to it and the constraints of the scorekeeping requirements.

If Congress enacts legislation that enables an agency to enter into a lease-purchase or capital lease for a specific project without further congressional action (e.g., appropriations action), it will be assumed that Congress has provided the budget authority required for the transaction. If Congress does not provide the budget authority in the form of an appropriation, then authority to borrow or contract authority will be recorded as follows:

- ▶ *Authority to borrow* will be recorded if the transaction is a lease-purchase without substantial private risk, in which case outlays need to be scored up-front – in advance of appropriations for the annual lease payment (or offsetting collections). A portion of the amount subsequently appropriated (or collected, if the agency receives offsetting collections) will be applied to retire outstanding agency debt attributable to the lease-purchase. (See sections 2(c) and 2(d) for more information on how that portion is determined and presented in the Budget.)
- ▶ *Contract authority* will be recorded if the transaction is a lease-purchase with substantial private risk or a capital lease, in which case outlays will be scored over the lease term and financed by appropriations for the annual lease payment (or offsetting collections). A portion of the amount appropriated (or collected, if the agency receives offsetting collections) will be applied to liquidate contract authority. (See sections 2(c) and 2(d) for more information on how that portion is determined and presented in the Budget.)
- *Timing.* When Congress enacts legislation that specifically enables an agency to enter into a lease-purchase or capital lease, the budget authority required for the transaction will be recorded when the authority first becomes available for obligation. Obligations will be recorded when the lease agreement is signed. When the authority stems from general authority available to the agency, obligations are recorded, and sufficient budgetary resources must be available, when the lease agreement is signed.

(c) *Outlays.*

- *Lease-purchases without substantial private risk.* Outlays are not equal to the annual lease payments.
  - ▶ Outlays are scored over the period during which the contractor constructs, manufactures, or purchases the asset, in an amount equal to the asset cost. This amount will equal the up-front budget authority. Amounts of the asset cost in excess of the contractor's actual construction or manufacturing costs should be distributed in proportion to the distribution of the construction or manufacturing costs. If the asset already exists, the outlays will be recorded in the year in which the lease-purchase contract is signed.
  - ▶ Outlays equal to the imputed interest costs are reported on an annual basis over the lease term.
- *Lease-purchases with substantial private risk and capital leases.* Outlays are scored annually equal to the annual lease payments.
  - ▶ Over the life of the lease agreement, a portion of the outlays (equivalent to the asset cost) will come from the balances obligated when the lease agreement was signed, and a portion (equivalent to the imputed interest cost) will come from new budget authority. The appropriate amounts can be determined from amortization tables developed in accordance with the instructions in section 4.

(d) *Annual appropriations for lease financed by contract authority or borrowing authority.*

Lease-purchases and capital leases that are financed by contract authority or borrowing authority will generally require annual appropriations in an amount equal to the annual lease payment. Since budget authority equal to the asset cost is scored up front, the portion of the annual appropriation that corresponds to the amortization of the asset cost is not scored as new budget authority. If it were, total budget authority would be overstated over the life of the lease. The budget authority that is recorded on an annual basis will equal the imputed interest cost. The required adjustments are explained below.

- *For lease-purchases without substantial private risk that are financed by borrowing authority.* An amount equal to the amortization of the asset cost component of the annual lease payment will be treated as redemption of debt and deducted from the new budget authority totals. On the program and financing schedule, this amount will be reported as a negative entry on line 4047 or 6047 (see [section 82.3](#)). If offsetting collections are used to make the annual lease payment in lieu of an appropriation, the amount will be reported as a negative entry on line 6847 or 6947.
- *For capital leases and lease-purchases with substantial private risk that are financed by contract authority.* An amount equal to the amortization of the asset cost component of the annual lease payment will be treated as liquidating cash and deducted from the new budget authority totals. On the program and financing schedule, this amount will be reported as a negative entry on line 4049 or 6049 (see [section 82.3](#)). (If offsetting collections are used to make the annual lease payment in lieu of an appropriation, the amount will be reported as a negative entry on line 6849 or 6949.)

(e) *Agency debt.*

For lease-purchases without substantial private risk, agency borrowing must be recorded to finance the outlays scored for the construction, manufacture, or purchase of the asset. The agency debt that accumulates over this period is equal to the asset cost; this debt is subsequently redeemed over the lease payment period in an amount equal to a portion of the annual lease payment. The appropriate amounts of debt and debt redemption can be determined from the amortization tables developed in accordance with the instructions in section 4, Step 5. Interest on agency debt can be determined in accordance with Steps 3, 4, and 5.

If the account has a balance sheet, the amount of such agency debt should be included as a separate item (and separate from other agency debt) under liabilities and identified as having been incurred to finance lease-purchases. All other accounts should include the amount of agency debt in the narrative statement for the account that is published in the *Budget Appendix*.

### **3. Definitions and concepts**

For the purposes of scoring lease-purchases and capital leases, the following definitions and concepts apply. Agencies should consult with OMB in cases where enhanced use leases and public-private partnerships are involved. Public-private partnerships should not be used solely or primarily as a vehicle for obtaining private financing of Federal construction or renovation projects. Such transactions should be used only when they are the least expensive method, in present value terms, to finance construction or repair.

***Lease-purchase*** means a type of lease in which ownership of the asset is transferred to the Government at or shortly after the end of the lease term. Such a lease may or may not contain a bargain-price purchase option.

***Capital lease*** means any lease other than a lease-purchase that does not meet the criteria of an operating lease.

**Operating lease** means a lease that meets all the criteria listed below. If the criteria are not met, the lease will be considered to be a capital lease or a lease-purchase, as appropriate. Multi-year service contracts (e.g., grounds maintenance) and multi-year purchase contracts for expendable commodities (e.g., aspirin) will be considered to be operating leases. Agencies should consult with OMB in cases where a service contract requires a private contractor to construct or acquire a capital asset solely or primarily to provide the service to the government.

- Ownership of the asset remains with the lessor during the term of the lease and is not transferred to the Government at or shortly after the end of the lease term.
- The lease does not contain a bargain-price purchase option.
- The lease term does not exceed 75 percent of the estimated economic life of the asset.
- The present value of the minimum lease payments over the life of the lease does not exceed 90 percent of the fair market value of the asset at the beginning of the lease term.
- The asset is a general purpose asset rather than being for a special purpose of the Government and is not built to the unique specification of the Government as lessee.
- There is a private sector market for the asset.

The following guidelines will be used in distinguishing between operating leases, capital leases, and lease purchases. They should be used in calculating the *term of the lease* and the value of the *minimum lease payments*:

- *Estimate of fair market value.* In the case of real property, the fair market value should be based on current market appraisals. If no asset exists, the fair market value of the proposed asset should be calculated based on the Government's estimate of the cost to construct a facility equal in size and other characteristics to the amount of space to be leased. The estimate should include consideration of the Government's total direct and indirect costs of the facility, including land, design, site improvements, and management costs. Fair market value should not include the value of features or enhancements that were built or added for the Government's unique needs or special purposes.
- *Special features or enhancements.* Assets that have special features or enhancements that were built or added for the Government's unique needs or special purposes need to be evaluated on a case-by-case basis to ascertain whether they can be considered to be general purpose assets. If the asset is considered to be a general purpose asset, then, as a general rule, such special features or enhancements should be financed up-front, separate from the lease.
- *Projects on Government land.* If the project is constructed or located on Government land, it will be presumed to be for a special purpose of the Government.
- *Renewal and purchase options.* If the lease agreement contains an option to renew that can be exercised without additional legislation, it will be presumed that the option will be exercised. If the lease agreement contains an option to purchase at less than fair market value (at the time the option is to be exercised), and the option can be exercised without additional legislation, it will be presumed that the option will be exercised.

- *Cancellation clauses.* It will be presumed that the lease will run for the full term of the contract, and the minimum lease payments will be calculated on the basis of the lease payments that will be made over the full term of the lease (including options to renew).
- *Lease-backs from public/private partnerships.* If an agency leases from a public/private partnership that has substantial private participation, the lease will be treated as a capital lease. The term “public/private partnership” includes special purpose entities for which the Government is a beneficiary. Substantial private participation means (1) the non-Federal partner has a majority ownership share of the partnership and its revenues; (2) the non-Federal partner has contributed at least 20 percent of the total value of the assets owned by the partnership; and (3) the Government has not provided indirect guarantees of the project, such as a rental guarantee or a requirement to pay higher rent if it reduces its use of space. Total value includes the value of assets contributed by the Government (but not the value of land) and all improvements made to the asset. Contributions by the non-Federal partner of cash, real assets, and loans for which the non-Federal partner is responsible for repayment will count towards meeting the 20 percent threshold. Direct loans from the Government or guarantees by the Government of loans made to the non-Federal partner or to the partnership will not count towards the 20 percent threshold.

If a public/private partnership fails to meet the test of substantial private participation, the partnership will be considered governmental for purposes of the budget, and its transactions will be scored against the agency that enters into the partnership.

If the Government ground-leases property to a non-Federal party and subsequently leases back the improvements, the lease will not be considered a lease-back from a public/private partnership, as long as the lessor is a totally non-Federal entity. Such lease-backs may be treated as operating leases if they meet the criteria for an operating lease.

- *Bargain-price purchase option.* A bargain-price purchase option is a provision allowing the Government to purchase the leased property for a price that is lower than the expected fair market value of the property at the date the option can be exercised. The purchase price includes the value of any rebates or income to the agency or Government resulting from its purchase of the asset.
- *Property taxes.* Property taxes, along with other operating expenses, will be excluded from the lease payments for purposes of comparing the present value of the minimum lease payments with the fair market value of the asset. (Note: Property taxes will be included in the calculation of the net present value of the lease payments for purposes of scoring budget authority under the BEA. See section 2 (b) above.)
- *Interest rates.* The present value of the minimum lease payments will be calculated on the basis of Treasury rates for marketable debt instruments of similar maturity to the lease term (see section 4).

**Risk** means the level of private-sector risk. Lease-purchase agreements are scored as with or without substantial private risk depending on the level of private-sector risk. Substantial private risk means the absence of substantial government risk. Risk is defined in terms of how governmental in nature the project is. That is, if the project is less governmental in nature, the private sector risk is considered to be higher.

The following types of illustrative criteria indicate ways in which the project is *less governmental*:

- There is no provision of Government financing and no explicit Government guarantee of third-party financing.
- Risks incident to ownership of the asset (e.g., financial responsibility for destruction or loss of the asset) remain with the lessor unless the Government was at fault for such losses.
- The asset is a general purpose asset rather than being for a special purpose of the Government and is not built to the unique specification of the Government as lessee.
- There is a private-sector market for the asset.
- The project is not constructed on Government land.

**Imputed interest cost** means the financing costs that Treasury would have incurred if it had sold debt to the public equal to the total project cost. The difference between the total estimated legal obligations (excluding obligations for annual operating expenses as described in section 2(b)) and their estimated net present value represents imputed interest costs. Imputed interest costs will be calculated at Treasury rates for marketable debt instruments of similar maturity to the lease term on the date the contract is signed. These costs will be considered mandatory under the BEA and will be shown in the same function as interest on agency debt, that is, in the function that provided the obligational authority to enter into the contract.

**Differential cost of financing** means the total annual interest payments on any debt sold to the public less the interest payments that would have been made on the same amount of debt at the Treasury rate (i.e., less the imputed interest costs). Simply stated, this corresponds to any interest above Treasury's interest rate.

**Asset cost** means the present value of the agency's minimum lease payments discounted from the date of the first payment (or the beginning of the lease term, whichever is earlier) using the Treasury interest rate for marketable debt instruments of similar maturity to the lease term on the date the contract is signed and excluding obligations for identifiable annual operating expenses as described in section 2(b). Asset cost corresponds to the total construction or acquisition costs, plus property taxes and any interest above Treasury's cost of financing (i.e., the differential cost of financing). See section 4 for more detailed explanation and the treatment of multiple deliveries.

#### **4. Guidance on calculations**

A schedule of lease payments or an amortization schedule is required to calculate budget authority, outlays, and debt. The correct Treasury rate to use for discounting to present value and for calculating imputed interest costs will be based on the economic assumptions in the most recent budget, which, for the current year, are published in the annual update to Appendix C of OMB Circular No. [A-94](#). Revised forecasts of these Treasury interest rates are released whenever economic assumptions for the budget are updated. Use Treasury rates for marketable debt instruments of similar maturity to the lease term on the date the contract is signed. Discount from the date of the first payment (or the beginning of the lease term, whichever is earlier). The term selected for the Treasury rate should be comparable to the term of the capital lease or lease-purchase.

All assumptions required to perform the lease analysis are subject to OMB approval.



***Step 1—Calculate up-front BA.***

*For lease-purchase without substantial private risk; lease-purchase with substantial private risk; and capital lease (including lease-back from public/private partnership with substantial private sector participation):* To determine up-front BA (i.e., asset cost), calculate the present value of the lease payments, discounting from the date of the first payment or the beginning of the lease term, whichever is earlier, using the appropriate Treasury interest rate as the discount factor and excluding obligations for identifiable annual operating expenses as described in section 2(b). This BA is scored when the authority to enter into a contract for the lease-purchase or capital lease first becomes available for obligation.

However, if the lease contract provides for multiple deliveries of assets, the up-front BA is sum of the present values of the lease payments for each asset discounted back to the date that the asset is delivered. For example, if the lease contract provides for the delivery of one machine in each of the next five years, the lease payments for the machine acquired in the first year would be discounted back to the first year, while the lease payments for the machine acquired in the fifth year would be discounted back to the fifth year, and the total BA recorded up front would be the sum of the present values calculated for each of the five deliveries.

***Step 2—Calculate outlays over the period during which the contractor constructs, manufactures, or purchases the asset.***

*For lease-purchase without substantial private risk:* Score outlays in proportion to the distribution of the contractor's costs. For example, assume a contractor's costs on a \$50 million project are estimated to be \$7.5 million the first year, \$27.5 million the second year, and \$15 million the third year. The analyst should apply spendout rates of 15 percent, 55 percent, and 30 percent to the BA calculated in Step 1 for the first, second, and third years, respectively. Total outlays at the end of the construction, manufacture, or purchase period should equal the BA calculated in Step 1. (Note that total outlays will ordinarily exceed the contractor's costs.)

*For lease-purchase with substantial private risk and capital lease (including lease-back from public/private partnership with substantial private sector participation):* Outlays are not scored during this period. Refer to Step 4 for outlay scoring.

***Step 3—Calculate annual BA for the lease payment period.***

*For lease-purchase without substantial private risk; lease-purchase with substantial private risk; and capital lease:* Annual BA will equal the imputed interest costs calculated using the same Treasury interest rate used to discount the lease payments in Step 1. The interest portion of each periodic payments is the imputed interest cost. In the case of a lease-purchase without substantial private risk, the interest rate should be applied to debt that is initially equal to the up-front BA calculated in Step 1 and that is then amortized over the lease term in accordance with Step 5.

***Step 4—Calculate outlays over the lease payment period.***

*For lease-purchase without substantial private risk:* Annual outlays are equal to the annual BA (i.e., the imputed interest costs).

*For lease-purchase with substantial private risk and capital lease (including lease-back from public/private partnership with substantial private sector participation):* Annual outlays are equal to the lease payments.

*Step 5—Calculate agency debt (applies only to lease-purchases without substantial private risk).*

Agency debt accumulates during the period of construction, manufacture, or purchase of the asset. The increase in debt each year equals the amount of outlays calculated in Step 2. Agency debt is subsequently redeemed over the lease payment period according to an amortization schedule. The amount of debt redemption each year is equal to the lease payment less the imputed interest cost as defined in Step 3. (Debt redemption is not scored as BA or outlays.) Imputed interest costs are scored as BA and outlays and are also scored as interest on agency debt.

**5. Reporting to OMB and Treasury**

Budget execution reports and apportionment requests will reflect budget amounts in accordance with these requirements. Amounts (e.g., budget authority and outlays) will be reported to Treasury on the same basis.

**APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES**

Under the MAX system, OMB assigns agency and bureau codes that are used to identify and access data in the budget database. The following table lists these codes in budget order. It also provides the corresponding agency codes assigned by Treasury. In certain instances, a different Treasury agency code may be used for some accounts in an agency; a complete listing can be found in the Budget Accounts Title (BAT) file. (See section [79.2](#) for additional information on account identification codes.)

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
<b>Legislative Branch</b>			
Senate .....	001	05	00
House of Representatives .....	001	10	00
Joint Items .....	001	11	00
Capitol Police .....	001	13	00
Office of Compliance .....	001	12	09
Congressional Budget Office .....	001	14	08
Architect of the Capitol .....	001	15	01
Botanic Garden .....	001	18	09
Library of Congress .....	001	25	03
Government Printing Office .....	001	30	04
General Accounting Office .....	001	35	05
United States Tax Court .....	001	40	23
Legislative Branch Boards and Commissions .....	001	45	09
<b>Judicial Branch</b>			
Supreme Court of the United States .....	002	05	10
United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit .....	002	07	10
United States Court of International Trade .....	002	15	10
Courts of Appeals, District Courts, and other Judicial Services .....	002	25	10
Administrative Office of the United States Courts .....	002	26	10
Federal Judicial Center .....	002	30	10
Judicial Retirement Funds .....	002	35	10
United States Sentencing Commission .....	002	39	10
<b>Department of Agriculture</b>			
Office of the Secretary .....	005	03	12
Executive Operations .....	005	04	12
Departmental Administration .....	005	05	12
Office of Communications .....	005	06	12
Office of the Inspector General .....	005	08	12
Office of the General Counsel .....	005	10	12
Economic Research Service .....	005	13	12
National Agricultural Statistics Service .....	005	15	12
Agricultural Research Service .....	005	18	12

APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
Cooperative State Research, Education, and Extension Service .....	005	20	12
Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service .....	005	32	12
Food Safety and Inspection Service .....	005	35	12
Grain Inspection, Packers and Stockyards Administration .....	005	37	12
Agricultural Marketing Service .....	005	45	12
Risk Management Agency .....	005	47	12
Farm Service Agency .....	005	49	12
Natural Resources Conservation Service .....	005	53	12
Rural Development .....	005	55	12
Rural Housing Service.....	005	63	12
Rural Business—Cooperative Service .....	005	65	12
Rural Utilities Service .....	005	60	12
Foreign Agricultural Service .....	005	68	12
Food and Nutrition Service .....	005	84	12
Forest Service.....	005	96	12
<b>Department of Commerce</b>			
Departmental Management .....	006	05	13
Economic Development Administration .....	006	06	13
Bureau of the Census.....	006	07	13
Economic and Statistical Analysis .....	006	08	13
International Trade Administration .....	006	25	13
Bureau of Industry and Security.....	006	30	13
Minority Business Development Agency.....	006	40	13
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration.....	006	48	13
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office .....	006	51	13
Technology Administration.....	006	53	13
National Technical Information Service.....	006	54	13
National Institute of Standards and Technology .....	006	55	13
National Telecommunications and Information Administration.....	006	60	13
<b>Department of Defense--Military</b>			
Military Personnel.....	007	05	*
Operation and Maintenance.....	007	10	*
Procurement .....	007	15	*
Research, Development, Test, and Evaluation .....	007	20	*
Military Construction .....	007	25	*
Family Housing .....	007	30	*
Revolving and Management Funds .....	007	40	*
Trust Funds.....	007	55	*
<b>Department of Education</b>			
Office of Elementary and Secondary Education .....	018	10	91

**APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES**

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
Office of Innovation and Improvement .....	018	12	91
Office of Safe and Drug-Free Schools .....	018	14	91
Office of English Language Acquisition .....	018	15	91
Office of Special Education and Rehabilitative Services .....	018	20	91
Office of Vocational and Adult Education .....	018	30	91
Office of Postsecondary Education .....	018	40	91
Federal Student Aid .....	018	45	91
Institute of Education Sciences .....	018	50	91
Departmental Management .....	018	80	91
<b>Department of Energy</b>			
National Nuclear Security Administration .....	019	05	89
Environmental and Other Defense Activities .....	019	10	89
Energy Programs .....	019	20	89
Power Marketing Administration .....	019	50	89
Departmental Administration .....	019	60	89
<b>Department of Health and Human Services</b>			
Food and Drug Administration .....	009	10	75
Health Resources and Services Administration .....	009	15	75
Indian Health Services .....	009	17	75
Centers for Disease Control and Prevention .....	009	20	75
National Institutes of Health .....	009	25	75
Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration .....	009	30	75
Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality .....	009	33	75
Centers for Medicare and Medicaid Services .....	009	38	75
Administration for Children and Families .....	009	70	75
Administration on Aging .....	009	75	75
Departmental Management .....	009	90	75
Program Support Center .....	009	91	75
Office of the Inspector General .....	009	92	75
<b>Department of Homeland Security</b>			
Departmental Management .....	024	10	70
Office of the Inspector General .....	024	20	70
Citizenship and Immigration Services .....	024	30	70
United States Secret Service .....	024	40	70
Border and Transportation Security .....	024	50	70
United States Coast Guard .....	024	60	70
Emergency Preparedness and Response .....	024	70	70
Science and Technology .....	024	80	70
Information Analysis and Infrastructure Protection .....	024	90	70

APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
<b>Department of Housing and Urban Development</b>			
Public and Indian Housing Programs .....	025	03	86
Community Planning and Development .....	025	06	86
Housing Programs .....	025	09	86
Government National Mortgage Association .....	025	12	86
Policy Development and Research .....	025	28	86
Fair Housing and Equal Opportunity .....	025	29	86
Office of Lead Hazard Control and Healthy Homes .....	025	32	86
Management and Administration .....	025	35	86
<b>Department of the Interior</b>			
Bureau of Land Management .....	010	04	14
Minerals Management Service .....	010	06	14
Office of Surface Mining Reclamation and Enforcement .....	010	08	14
Bureau of Reclamation .....	010	10	14
Central Utah Project .....	010	11	14
United States Geological Survey .....	010	12	14
Bureau of Mines .....	010	14	14
United States Fish and Wildlife Service .....	010	18	14
National Park Service .....	010	24	14
Bureau of Indian Affairs .....	010	76	14
Departmental Management .....	010	84	14
Insular Affairs .....	010	85	14
Office of the Solicitor .....	010	86	14
Office of Inspector General .....	010	88	14
Natural Resources Damage Assessment and Restoration .....	010	91	14
Office of Special Trustee for American Indians .....	010	90	14
National Indian Gaming Commission .....	010	92	14
<b>Department of Justice</b>			
General Administration .....	011	03	15
United States Parole Commission .....	011	04	15
Legal Activities and U.S. Marshals .....	011	05	15
Radiation Exposure Compensation .....	011	06	15
Interagency Law Enforcement .....	011	07	15
Federal Bureau of Investigation .....	011	10	15
Drug Enforcement Administration .....	011	12	15
Bureau of Alcohol, Tobacco, Firearms, and Explosives .....	011	14	15
Federal Prison System .....	011	20	15
Office of Justice Programs .....	011	21	15
Violent Crime Reduction Trust Fund .....	011	30	15

**APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES**

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
<b>Department of Labor</b>			
Employment and Training Administration.....	012	05	16
Employee benefits security administration.....	012	11	16
Pension Benefit Guaranty Corporation .....	012	12	16
Employment Standards Administration .....	012	15	16
Occupational Safety and Health Administration .....	012	18	16
Mine Safety and Health Administration.....	012	19	16
Bureau of Labor Statistics .....	012	20	16
Departmental Management .....	012	25	16
<b>Department of State</b>			
Administration of Foreign Affairs.....	014	05	19
Administration of Foreign Affairs.....	014	05	94
International Organizations and Conferences.....	014	10	19
International Commissions.....	014	15	19
<b>Department of Transportation</b>			
Office of the Secretary	021	04	69
Federal Aviation Administration.....	021	12	69
Federal Highway Administration .....	021	15	69
Federal Motor Carrier Safety Administration .....	021	17	69
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration .....	021	18	69
Federal Railroad Administration .....	021	27	69
Federal Transit Administration.....	021	36	69
Saint Lawrence Seaway Development Corporation .....	021	40	69
Research and Special Programs Administration .....	021	50	69
Office of Inspector General.....	021	56	69
Surface Transportation Board.....	021	61	69
Bureau of Transportation Statistics .....	021	64	69
Maritime Administration.....	021	70	69
<b>Department of the Treasury</b>			
Departmental Offices .....	015	05	20
Financial Crimes Enforcement Network .....	015	04	20
Interagency Law Enforcement .....	015	09	20
Financial Management Service .....	015	10	20
Federal Financing Bank.....	015	11	20
Alcohol and Tobacco Tax and Trade Bureau.....	015	13	20
Bureau of Engraving and Printing.....	015	20	20
United States Mint.....	015	25	20
Bureau of the Public Debt .....	015	35	20
Internal Revenue Service.....	015	45	20
Comptroller of the Currency .....	015	57	20

APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
Office of Thrift Supervision .....	015	58	20
Interest on the Public Debt .....	015	60	20
<b>Department of Veterans Affairs</b>			
Medical Programs .....	029	15	36
Benefits Programs .....	029	25	36
Departmental Administration .....	029	40	36
<b>Major Independent Agencies</b>			
Corps of Engineers-Civil Works .....	202	00	96
Environmental Protection Agency .....	020	00	68
Executive Office of the President.....	100	00	11
General Services Administration.....			
Real Property Activities .....	023	05	47
Supply and Technology Activities .....	023	10	47
General Activities.....	023	30	47
National Aeronautics and Space Administration.....	026	00	80
National Science Foundation.....	422	00	49
Office of Personnel Management.....	027	00	24
Small Business Administration .....	028	00	73
Social Security Administration.....	016	00	28
<b>Other Defense Civil Programs</b>			
Military Retirement .....	200	05	97
Retiree Health Care .....	200	07	97
Educational Benefits .....	200	10	97
American Battle Monuments commission .....	200	15	74
White House Commission on the National Moment of Remembrance....	200	18	95
Armed Forces Retirement Home.....	200	20	84
Cemeterial Expenses .....	200	25	21
Forest and Wildlife Conservation, Military Reservations .....	200	30	97
Selective Service System.....	200	45	90
<b>International Assistance Programs</b>			
Millennium Challenge Corporation.....	184	03	95
International Security Assistance .....	184	05	11
International Security Assistance .....	184	05	72
Multilateral Assistance .....	184	10	11
Multilateral Assistance .....	184	10	72
Agency for International Development .....	184	15	72
Overseas Private Investment Corporation .....	184	20	71
Trade and Development Agency .....	184	25	11
Peace Corps .....	184	35	11
Inter-American Foundation .....	184	40	11



**APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES**

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
African Development Foundation .....	184	50	11
International Monetary Programs.....	184	60	11
Military Sales Program.....	184	70	11
Special Assistance for Central America.....	184	75	72
<b>Other Independent Agencies</b>			
Advisory Council on Historic Preservation.....	306	00	95
Appalachian Regional Commission .....	309	00	46
Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board.....	310	00	95
Barry Goldwater Scholarship and Excellence in Education Foundation..	313	00	95
Broadcasting Board of Governors.....	514	00	95
Central Intelligence Agency.....	316	00	56
Chemical Safety and Hazard Investigation Board.....	510	00	95
Christopher Columbus Fellowship Foundation .....	465	00	76
Commission of Fine Arts .....	323	00	95
Commission on Civil Rights .....	326	00	95
Commission on Ocean Policy .....	515	00	48
Committee for Purchase from People who are Blind or Severely Disabled activities.....	338	00	95
Commodity Futures Trading Commission .....	339	00	95
Consumer Product Safety Commission.....	343	00	61
Corporation for National and Community Service.....	485	00	95
Corporation for Public Broadcasting.....	344	00	20
Court of Appeals for Veterans Claims .....	345	00	95
Court Services and Offender Supervision Agency for the District of Columbia.....	511	00	95
Defense Nuclear Facilities Safety Board.....	347	00	95
Delta Regional Authority .....	517	00	95
Denali Commission.....	513	00	95
District of Columbia.....			
District of Columbia Courts .....	349	10	95
District of Columbia Corrections .....	349	20	95
District of Columbia General and Special Payments .....	349	30	20
Election Assistance Commission .....	525	00	95
Equal Employment Opportunity Commission .....	350	00	45
Export-Import Bank of the United States.....	351	00	71
Export-Import Bank of the United States.....	351	00	83
Farm Credit Administration .....	352	00	78
Farm Credit System Financial Assistance Corporation.....	354	00	78
Farm Credit System Insurance Corporation .....	355	00	78
Federal Communications Commission.....	356	00	27
Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation.....			

**APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES**

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
Bank Insurance .....	357	10	51
Savings Association Insurance .....	357	20	51
FSLIC Resolution .....	357	30	51
FDIC-Office of Inspector General.....	357	40	51
Federal Drug Control Programs .....	154	00	11
Federal Election Commission .....	360	00	95
Federal Financial Institutions Examination Council Appraisal Subcommittee.....	362	00	95
Federal Housing Finance Board .....	364	00	95
Federal Labor Relations Authority .....	365	00	54
Federal Maritime Commission .....	366	00	65
Federal Mediation and Conciliation Service .....	367	00	93
Federal Mine Safety and Health Review Commission .....	368	00	95
Federal Retirement Thrift Investment Board.....	369	00	26
Federal Trade Commission .....	370	00	29
Harry S. Truman Scholarship Foundation.....	372	00	95
Institute of American Indian and Alaska Native Culture and Arts Development .....	373	00	95
Intelligence Community Management Account.....	467	00	95
International Trade Commission .....	378	00	34
James Madison Memorial Fellowship Foundation.....	381	00	95
Japan-United States Friendship Commission .....	382	00	95
Legal Services Corporation .....	385	00	20
Marine Mammal Commission .....	387	00	95
Merit Systems Protection Board.....	389	00	41
Morris K. Udall Scholarship and Excellence in National Environmental Policy Foundation .....	487	00	95
National Archives and Records Administration .....	393	00	88
National Capital Planning Commission .....	394	00	95
National Commission on Libraries and Information Science.....	400	00	95
National Council on Disability .....	413	00	95
National Credit Union Administration .....	415	00	25
National Education Goals Panel.....	492	00	95
National Endowment for the Arts.....	417	00	59
National Endowment for the Humanities .....	418	00	59
Institute of Museum and Library Services .....	474	00	59
National Labor Relations Board .....	420	00	63
National Mediation Board .....	421	00	95
National Transportation Safety Board.....	424	00	95
National Veterans Business Development Corporation .....	518	00	95
Neighborhood Reinvestment Corporation.....	428	00	82
Nuclear Regulatory Commission .....	429	00	31

**APPENDIX C—LISTING OF OMB AGENCY/BUREAU AND TREASURY CODES**

Agency	OMB Codes		Treasury Agency Code
	Agency	Bureau	
Nuclear Waste Technical Review Board.....	431	00	48
Occupational Safety and Health Review Commission.....	432	00	95
Office of Government Ethics.....	434	00	95
Office of Navajo and Hopi Indian Relocation.....	435	00	48
Office of Special Counsel.....	436	00	62
Oklahoma City National Memorial Trust.....	516	00	95
Other Commissions and Boards.....	505	00	95
Panama Canal Commission.....	438	00	95
Postal Service.....	440	00	18
Presidio Trust.....	512	00	95
Railroad Retirement Board.....	446	00	60
Resolution Trust Corporation.....	448	00	22
Securities and Exchange Commission.....	449	00	50
Public Company Accounting Oversight Board.....	526	00	95
Standard Setting Body.....	527	00	95
Smithsonian Institution.....	452	00	33
State Justice Institute.....	453	00	48
Tennessee Valley Authority.....	455	00	64
United Mine Workers of America Benefit Funds.....	476	00	95
United States Enrichment Corporation Fund.....	486	00	95
United States Holocaust Memorial Museum.....	456	00	95
United States Institute of Peace.....	458	00	95
United States-Canada Alaska Rail Commission.....	521	00	48
Vietnam Education Foundation.....	519	00	95
<b>Government Sponsored Enterprises</b>			
Student Loan Marketing Association.....	918	00	99
Federal National Mortgage Association.....	915	00	99
Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation.....	914	00	99
Farm Credit System.....	912	00	99
Federal Home Loan Bank System.....	913	00	99
<b>Financing Vehicles and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve</b>			
Financing Vehicles and the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve.....	920	00	99

\* Under Department of Defense-Military, Treasury agency codes are assigned as follows:

<u>Agency</u>	<u>Code</u>
Navy	17
Army	21
Air Force	57
Defense-wide	97



**APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS (CLICK HERE TO GET UPDATED TEXT)**

Development of the MAX edit checks is an ongoing process. The help messages included in the on-line MAX screens will reflect the latest edit checks and descriptions of these checks. In addition to the MAX edit checks, OMB has developed diagnostic reports to help you eliminate errors. Some of these diagnostic reports are described in [Appendix E](#).

<b>MAX data section</b>	<b>Error code range</b>	<b>Description of edit check</b>	<b>Circ. No. A-11 reference</b>
A	3490	Past year amounts cannot be coded as emergency funding.	81.4
A	3500	Subfunction does not match BAT file subfunction for this account.	81.4
A	3510	If BA is reported (lines 4300–6990), then outlays (lines 91xx–98xx) must also be reported (even if amounts are zero).	81.4
A	3520	Outlays from new authority (except from offsetting collections) reported on line 9111 cannot exceed the total amount of BA reported on lines 4300–6790.	81.4
A	3550	Outlays from spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 9311, 9321) should be reported if offsetting collections (lines 6890, 6990) are reported and vice versa.	81.4
A	3580	If offsetting collections (line 8800–8845) are reported in the inyears in schedule A, then they must be reported in the outyears.	81.4
A	3590	If spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890, 6990) is reported in the inyears in schedule A, then it must be reported in the outyears.	81.4
A	3595	Spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890–6990) should equal the offsetting collections reported on lines 8800 through 8896. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	81.4
A	3610	According to the BAT file, limitation data are required for this account. For changes to limitation requirements, consult OMB.	81.4
A	3630	Outlays from discretionary spending authority from offsetting collections (line 6890) must be reported on discretionary lines 9311–9321.	81.4
A	3635	Outlays from mandatory spending authority from offsetting collections (line 6990) must be reported on mandatory lines 9311–9321.	81.4
A	3640, 3645	Outlays from new spending authority from offsetting collections (line 9311) cannot exceed total new spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890, 6990).	81.4
A	3650	For supplementals, budget authority data (lines 4300–6990) are not generally reported beyond the current year.	81.4
A	3660	For rescission proposals, current year BA must be negative or zero.	81.4

**APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS**

<b>MAX data section</b>	<b>Error code range</b>	<b>Description of edit check</b>	<b>Circ. No. A-11 reference</b>
A	3670	For rescission proposals, budget year BA must be negative or zero.	81.4
A	3680	For rescission proposals, there should be no budget year estimates for outlays from new authority (line 9111).	81.4
A	3690	For rescission proposals, outlays must be negative or zero in the current and budget years.	81.4
A	3800, 3810	As a general rule, when offsetting collections are reported (lines 8800–8845), spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890 or 6990) should also be reported and vice versa	81.4
A, P	3720	Schedule P is required when data are reported for PY-BY in schedule A.	81.4, 82
A, P	3840	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) (line 8895) and collections credited to expired accounts (line 8896) reported in schedule A must equal the corresponding entries in schedule P.	81.4, 82.6
A, S	3700	For liquidating accounts, all budget authority, limitations and outlays must be coded as mandatory, authorizing committee.	81.4
A, S	3710	Budget authority, outlays and limitation data (schedules A & S) are not required for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts.	81.4
A, S	3860	Budget authority is required in schedule S (lines 4300–6990) if current year budget authority is reported in schedule A.	81.4
A, S	3870, 3910	Outlays are required in schedule S (lines 9111–98xx) if current year outlays are reported in schedule A.	81.4
A, S	3880	If a line entry in schedule A is coded mandatory, then the same entry must be reported in schedule S, with the same category code and amount.	81.4
A, S	3890	The budget year Presidential policy discretionary spendout rate for new BA (i.e., the percent of outlays from new budgetary resources) should be the same as the baseline spendout rate for that year (within 1%).	81.4
A, S	3900	The budget year Presidential policy discretionary spendout rate for new offsetting collections (i.e., the percent of outlays from new offsetting collections) should be the same as the baseline spendout rate for that year (within 1%).	81.4
A, S	3930	Current year outlays reported in schedule A (lines 91xx–98xx) must equal the corresponding entries in schedule S.	81.4
A, S	3947	Credit program account transactions should not be classified as mandatory, appropriations committee.	185.10
A, S,	3951	As a general rule, limitation lines (700x) are classified as discretionary; exceptions require OMB approval.	81.3

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
A, S	3953	Transactions in government-sponsored enterprise accounts should be classified as mandatory, authorizing committee.	81.3
A, K, S, R	3957	No transactions should be classified as emergency.	81.3
C	4410	Schedule C is not required for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts.	84
C	4430	Subfunction does not match BAT file subfunction for this account.	84
C, A	4440	The sum of outlays in schedule C must equal the outlays minus offsetting collections (lines 8800–8845) reported in schedule A. (Rounding tolerance of \$5M)	81.4, 84
C, A	4450	The sum of budget authority in schedule C must equal the budget authority minus offsetting collections and change in uncollected customer payments (lines 8800–8896) reported in schedule A. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	81.4, 84
C, A	4460	Budget authority (lines 4300–6990) is required in schedule A if budget authority (lines xxxx–01) is reported in schedule C and vice versa.	81.4, 84
C, A	4470	Outlays (lines 9111–98xx) are required in schedule A if outlays (lines xxxx–02) are reported in schedule C and vice versa.	81.4, 84
D	2230	Schedule D is not valid for this account.	86.3
D	2240	In budget plan schedules, a subtotal (line 0791) is required if multiple detail lines (0701–0789) are used and a reimbursable line exists (line 0801) and must equal the sum of detail lines (0701–0789). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.3
D	2250	A total line (line 0893) is required if multiple lines (0601–0801) are present and must equal the sum of detail lines (lines 0601–0801) reported in schedule D. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.3
D	2260	In budget plan schedules, a subtotal (line 0691) is required if multiple detail lines (0601–0689) are used and a reimbursable line exists (line 0801) and must equal the sum of detail lines (0601–0689). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.3
F	3180	The net present value of assets related to direct loans (line 1499) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3190	The net present value of assets related to defaulted guaranteed loans (line 1599) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3200	Direct loans and interest receivable, net (line 1604) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
F	3210	The value of assets related to direct loans (line 1699) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3220	Defaulted guaranteed loans and interest receivable, net (line 1704) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3230	The value of assets related to loan guarantees (line 1799) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3240	Total assets (line 1999) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3250	Total liabilities (line 2999) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3260	Total net position (line 3999) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3270	Total net position (line 3999) must equal total assets (line 1999) minus total liabilities (line 2999). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3275	Total net position (line 3999) should be zero.	86.2
F	3280	Total liabilities and net position (line 4999) must equal the sum of the corresponding detail. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.2
F	3284	Total assets (line 1999) must equal total liabilities and net position (line 4999).	86.2
F, G	3290	Direct loans, gross reported on line 1601 of schedule F must equal the outstanding balances of direct loans reported on line 1290 in schedule G. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	85.10, 86.2
F, H	3300	Defaulted guaranteed loans receivable, gross reported on line 1501 of schedule F must equal defaulted guaranteed loans receivable reported on line 2390 in schedule H. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11, 86.2
G	2570	For direct loans, if total direct loan obligations (line 1150) are reported, then a line for appropriations act limitation on direct loans (line 1111) is required, even if no amounts are shown.	185.11
G	2580	The end of year balance of direct loans outstanding (line 1290) must equal the sum of the direct loan outstanding entries (lines 1210–1264). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11
G	2590	For direct loans, unobligated direct loan limitation line (1142) should only be reported in the past and current years.	185.11
G	2600	For direct loans, the start of year outstanding balance, (line 1210) must equal the preceding year's end of year balance (line 1290).	185.11



MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
G	2620	Total direct loan obligations (line 1150) must equal the sum of the appropriations act limitation on direct loan obligations plus adjustments (lines 1111-1143). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11
G	2643	Direct loan disbursements (line 1231) must be entered as positive numbers.	185.11
G	2650	Data on direct loan limitations (lines 1111-1150) are not required for liquidating accounts.	185.11
G	2660	Data on direct loan limitations and obligations (lines 1111-1150) are required for direct loan financing accounts.	185.11
G	2700	Direct loan repayments and prepayments (lines 1251-1253) in regular budget schedules (transmittal code 0) must be entered as negative numbers.	185.11
G	2702	Direct loan write-offs for default (line 1263) must be entered as negative numbers.	185.11
G	2710	For direct loans, data on the unobligated limitation carried forward (line 1121) should not exceed the unobligated loan limitation in the previous year (line 1143) but with the opposite sign.	185.11
G, F	2770	The outstanding balances of direct loans (line 1290) in schedule G cannot be less than the balance of loans disbursed (line 1401) in schedule F.	185.11, 86.2
G, H	2550	Credit financing accounts must have either schedule G or H but not both.	185.9
G, H	2565	Credit liquidating accounts must have schedule G and/or H.	185.9
G, H	2610	If there are proceeds from loan asset sales to the public with recourse (line 1253 in schedule G), then the absolute value of that amount must be greater than or equal to the guarantees of loans sold to the public with recourse (line 2232 in schedule H).	185.11
G, H, Y	2558	Credit program accounts cannot have schedules G, H, or Y.	185.9
G, P	2630	Direct loan repayments or prepayments (line 1251) plus proceeds from loan asset sales (line 1252) in schedule G must be equal to or less than offsetting collections from non-Federal sources (line 8840) in schedule P.	185.11
G, P	2640	Direct loan disbursements (line 1231) plus purchase of loan assets (line 1232) must be equal to or less than gross outlays (line 8700) in schedule P.	185.11
G, P	2750	Data on net financing disbursements (line 6300) are required and must be equal to financing disbursements (line 9000) in schedule P for financing accounts.	185.11
G, Y	2780	Federal credit data, baseline estimates (schedule Y) are required if schedule G is present.	185.11

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
H	2790	For guaranteed loans, the start of year outstanding balance, (line 2210) must equal the preceding year's end of year balance (line 2290).	185.11
H	2800	For guaranteed loans, if total guaranteed loan commitments (line 2150) are reported, then a line for appropriations act limitation on guaranteed loans made by private lenders (line 2111) is required, even if the amounts are zero.	185.11
H	2810	The end of year outstanding balance of defaulted guaranteed loans that result in loans receivable (line 2390) must equal the sum of the detail entries (lines 2310–2364). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11
H	2820	The end of year balance of guaranteed loans outstanding (line 2290) must equal the sum of the guaranteed loan outstanding entries (lines 2210–2264). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11
H	2830	For defaulted guaranteed loans that result in loans receivable, the outstanding balance start of year (line 2310) must equal the outstanding balance from the end of the preceding year (line 2390).	185.11
H	2840	If an outstanding balance of guaranteed loans, end of year is reported (line 2290), then an entry for the guaranteed amount of guaranteed loans outstanding, end of year (line 2299) is required.	185.11
H	2850	For guaranteed loans, the guaranteed amount of the outstanding loans (line 2299) cannot exceed the amount of the outstanding guaranteed loans, end of year (line 2290).	185.11
H	2860	Disbursements for guaranteed loan claims (line 2331) must be equal to or greater than the absolute value of the amount reported as terminations for default that result in loans receivable (line 2261).	185.11
H	2870	Total guaranteed loan commitments (line 2150) must equal the sum of appropriations act limitations on guaranteed loans plus adjustments (lines 2111–2143). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11
H	2880	For guaranteed loans, the guaranteed amount of the guaranteed loan commitments (line 2199) cannot exceed the amount of the total guaranteed loan commitment (line 2150).	185.11
H	2900	For guaranteed loans, the uncommitted guaranteed loan limitation data (line 2142) should only be reported in the past and current years.	185.11
H	2910	Data on guaranteed loan limitations (lines 2111–2150) are not required for liquidating accounts.	185.11
H	2915	Disbursements of guaranteed loans (line 2231) must be entered as positive numbers.	185.11

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
H	2920	Repayments and prepayments of guaranteed loans and terminations for default (lines 2251–2263) must be entered as negative numbers.	185.11
H	2940	For liquidating accounts, if terminations for default that result in loans receivable (line 2261) are reported, disbursement for guaranteed loan claims must be reported (line 2331).	185.11
H	2964	Disbursements for guaranteed loan claims that become receivable to the Government (line 2331) must be entered as positive numbers	185.11
H	2966	Repayments of loans receivable (line 2351) must be entered as negative numbers.	185.11
H	2968	Write-off of loans receivable (line 2361) must be entered as negative numbers.	185.11
H	2980	Data on guaranteed loan limitations and commitments (lines 2111–2150) are required for guaranteed loan financing accounts.	185.11
H	2990	For guaranteed loans, data on the uncommitted limitation carried forward (line 2121) should not exceed the uncommitted loan limitation in the previous year (line 2143) but with the opposite sign.	185.11
H	3010	Data on net financing disbursements are required (line 6300) and must be equal to financing disbursements (line 9000) in schedule P for financing accounts.	185.11
H, F	3020	The outstanding balances of defaulted guaranteed loans (line 2390) in schedule H cannot be less than the balance of defaulted guaranteed loans (line 1501) in schedule F.	185.11, 86.2
H, O	2930	For liquidating accounts, terminations for default that result in loans receivable (line 2261) must be equal to or less than the sum of object class entries for loans and investments (lines x330) in schedule O.	83, 185.11
H, O	2950	For liquidating accounts, terminations for default that result in acquisition of property (line 2262) must be equal to or less than the sum of object class entries for land and structures (lines x320) in schedule O.	83, 185.11
H, O	2960	For liquidating accounts, terminations for default that result in claim payments (line 2263) must be equal to or less than the sum of object class entries for insurance claims and indemnities (lines x420) in schedule O.	83, 185.11
H, P	2890	Disbursements for defaulted guaranteed loan claims (line 2331) must be equal to or less than gross outlays (line 8700) in schedule P.	82, 185.11
H, Y	3030	Federal credit data, baseline estimates (schedule Y) is required if schedule H is present.	85, 185.11

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
J	4660	Unexpended balances, end of year (lines 8700–8705) must equal the start of year balances plus cash income, less cash outgo, plus or minus any adjustments. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	86.6
J	4670	The 12-digit OMB account ID code of the applicable receipt account must be entered for receipts (lines 1200–1279 and 2200–2279) reported as income in schedule J.	86.6
J	4680	The 12-digit OMB account ID code of the applicable expenditure account must be entered for cash outgo (lines 4500–5589) in schedule J.	86.6
J	4690	The 12-digit OMB account ID code of the applicable expenditure account must be entered for offsetting collections (lines 1280–1289 and 2280–2289) reported as income in schedule J.	86.6
K	4770	Subfunction must match BAT file subfunction for this account.	81.4
K	4780	Character class must match BAT file character class for this account.	81.4
K	4790	Baseline data are not required for legislative proposals, later transmittals, or rescission proposals (transmittal codes 2, 3, 4, or 5) or for discretionary supplementals.	81.4
O	3305	Detail lines that contain zeroes in all years are not required.	83
O	3310	Total obligations (line 9999) is required when more than one object class is reported and must equal the sum of the corresponding detail reported on lines 1111–3930 plus the residual line (9995). (Rounding tolerance of \$1M)	83.7
O	3330	The total limitation expenses on lines (x930) of schedule O for the account as a whole and limitation account must sum to zero. This avoids a double count because these obligations are also reported by individual object class. (+/- 4M)	83.17
O	3350	Amounts reported in object class 9995 must be positive; use of this object class to report amounts of more than \$4 million requires OMB approval.	83.7
O	3360	Total personnel compensation (x119) is required when multiple personnel compensation detail lines are used and must equal the sum of the detail lines (x111–x118) for all categories. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	83.7
O	3370–3375	The obligations subtotal line (x990) must equal the sum of personnel compensation lines (x111–x118) plus other detail lines (x121–x930) for each object class category (e.g., direct, reimbursable). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	83.7
O	3380	For non-revolving fund accounts, a subtotal for reimbursable obligations (2990) is required whenever reimbursable detail is reported.	83.18

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
O	3390–3440	A subtotal (line x990) is required for a category when (1) obligations are reported for more than one of the following categories: direct, reimbursable, or allocation; and (2) two or more detail lines are reported within that category.	83.18
O, P	3480	Total obligations in schedule O must equal total obligations in schedule P (line 1000).	82.2, 83.5
O, P	3485	If reimbursable obligations are reported in schedule O (lines 2xxx), then reimbursable obligations must be reported in schedule P on lines (09xx) and vice versa and the amounts must be equal. (Rounding tolerance of \$4M)	82.2, 83.5
O, P	3488	All of the obligations in revolving funds are generally reimbursable. The reimbursable obligations reported in schedule O on lines coded 2xxx do not equal the obligations reported in schedule P on line 1000.	82.2, 83.5
O, P	3492	Reimbursable obligations in schedule P (on lines coded 09xx) do not equal the reimbursable obligations reported in schedule O (on lines coded 2xxx). (Rounding tolerance of \$4M)	82.2, 83.5
P	0010	Detail lines that contain zeroes in all years are not required except for lines 8900 and 9000, which are required for all accounts.	82.7
P	0020	GRH reductions to unobligated balances (lines 2380 and 2385) can only occur in accounts in the national defense function.	82.4
P	0030	Only one net outlays entry (line 9000) can be reported.	82.7
P	0040	Net outlays entry (line 9000) is required for all accounts.	82.7
P	0050	Net budget authority entry (line 8900) is required for all accounts.	82.7
P	0090	New budget authority (gross) (line 2200) is required only when there is new gross budget authority. If required, line 2200 must equal the sum of the detail budget authority entries (lines 4000–4200, 4700–4785, 4900–4985, etc.). (Rounding tolerance of \$1M)	82.4
P	0100	Total new budget authority gross (line 7000) is required only when there is more than one type of budget authority. If required, line 7000 must equal the detail entries for BA (lines 40xx–69xx) and the corresponding entry on line 2200. (Rounding tolerance of \$1M)	82.4
P	0110	Past year amounts must equal zero for every transmittal code except zero (i.e., do not report past year amounts for proposed supplementals, rescissions, and legislative proposals).	82.8
P	0120	Net outlays (line 9000) must equal the sum of total outlays, gross (lines 8690–8698 or 8700) minus offsetting collections (lines 8800–8845). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.6, 82.7

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P	0130	Net BA (line 8900) must equal the total new BA (gross) (line 2200) minus offsetting collections (lines 8800–8845); the change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) (line 8895); and offsetting collections credited to expired accounts (line 8896). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.7
P	0150	A gross outlay entry (line 8700) is required only when multiple detail lines are reported (lines 8690–8698). If required, line 8700 must equal the sum of the detail outlay entries. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.6
P	0160	A new obligations entry (line 7310) is required only when total obligations are reported on line 1000. If required, the amounts on lines 1000 and 7310 must be equal.	82.3, 82.5
P	0180	Total obligations (line 1000) must be positive.	82.3
P	0190	Total outlays, gross (line 7320) must equal the sum of the detail outlay entries (lines 8690–8698 or 8700), but with the opposite sign.	82.5, 82.6
P	0200	Recoveries of prior year obligations reported on line 7345 must equal recoveries of prior year obligations reported on line 2210, but with the opposite sign.	82.4, 82.5
P	0210	A total new obligations entry (e.g., line 2395) is required only when total obligations are reported on line 1000. If required, the amount on line 2395 must equal the amount on line 1000, but with the opposite sign.	82.3, 82.4
P	0220	A total budgetary resources available for obligation entry (line 2390) is required only when multiple detail lines are reported (lines 2140–2385). If required, line 2390 must equal the sum of the detail entries. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.4
P	0240	The unobligated balance, end of year (line 2440) must equal the start of year balance (lines 2140) plus new BA, adjustments, new obligations (a minus entry), and expiring balances (a minus entry). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.4
P	0245	For liquidating accounts, there should be no end of year unobligated balances; all balances should be repaid to Treasury (lines 6827, 6847, 6927, or 6947), as appropriate.	82.4
P	0260	The obligated balance, end of year (line 7440) must equal the start of year balance (line 7240) plus new obligations (line 7310), adjustments (lines 7331–7345), the change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (lines 7400 and 7410), and gross outlays (normally a minus entry) (line 7320). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.5
P	0270–0340	If transfers are reported for an account (lines 2221, 2222, 4100, 4200, 6100, 6200, 6661, 6662, 6861, 6862, 6961, 6962, 7331, or 7332), then the associated gaining or losing account(s) must be identified using the appropriate 6-digit Treasury account symbol.	82.4, 82.5

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P	0350	Unobligated balance, start of year (line 2140) must equal the corresponding unobligated balance, end of year (line 2440) for the preceding year.	82.4
P	0440	If spending authority from offsetting collections (cash) is reported on line 6800 or 6900, then there must be an entry for offsetting collections (cash) (lines 8800–8845).	82.4, 82.7
P	0443	Spending authority from offsetting collections reported on lines 6800 and 6900 must equal the sum of the amounts reported on lines 8800–8845 plus 8896 (normally a minus entry).	82.4, 82.7
P	0445	If the sum of lines 8800–8845 plus 8896 is greater than zero, then there must be an entry for spending authority from offsetting collections on lines 6800 or 6900 and the total amounts must be equal.	82.4, 82.7
P	0450	Obligated balance, start of year (lines 7240) must equal the corresponding obligated balance entry, end of year (line 7440) for the preceding year.	82.5
P	0530	Change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) (lines 6810, 6910) is required if change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources is reported on line 7400 and vice versa.	82.4, 82.5
P	0577	The amount reported as a change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources on line 7400 must equal the sum of the corresponding amounts reported on lines 6810 and 6910, but with the opposite sign.	82.4
P	0610	The change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources reported on line 8895 must equal the sum of the corresponding amounts reported on lines 6810 and 6910.	82.4, 82.7
P	0630	If a G-R-H reduction is reported (lines 9180, 9185), then outlays prior to the reduction (line 9110) must be reported.	82.8
P	0640	Outlays prior to G-R-H reductions (line 9110) must equal the sum of net outlays (line 9000) plus G-R-H reductions (absolute value of amounts on lines 9180, 9185).	82.8
P	0650	Line 0091 (single activity or subactivity group subtotal) must equal the sum of the activity or subactivity lines 0001–0089. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0660	Line 0100 (running subtotal) must equal the sum of lines 0001–0089. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0670	Line 0191 (single activity or subactivity subtotal) must equal the sum of lines 0101–0189. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0680	Line 0192 (subtotal of two activity or subactivity groups) must equal the sum of the activity or subactivity lines: 0001–0089 plus 0101–0189. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P	0690	Line 0200 (running subtotal) must equal the sum of the activity or subactivity lines: 0001–0089 plus 0101–0189. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0700	Line 0291 (subtotal) must equal the sum of lines 0201–0289. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0710	Line 0292 (subtotal of two activity or subactivity groups) must equal the sum of the activity or subactivity lines: 0101–0189 plus 0201–0289. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0720	Line 0293 (subtotal of three activity or subactivity groups) must equal the sum of lines: 0001–0089 plus 0101–0189 plus 0201–0289. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0730	Line 0300 (running subtotal) must equal the sum of the lines: 0001–0089 plus 0101–0189 plus 0201–0289. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0740	Line 0391 must equal the sum of lines 0301–0389. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0750	Line 0392 must equal the sum of lines 0201–0389. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0760	Line 0393 must equal the sum of lines 0101–0389. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0770	Line 0394 must equal the sum of lines 0001–0389. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0780	Line 0400 (running subtotal) must equal the sum of detail lines 0001–0389. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0790	Line 0491 must equal the sum of lines 0401–0489. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0800	Line 0492 must equal the sum of lines 0301–0489. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0810	Line 0493 must equal the sum of lines 0201–0489. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0820	Line 0494 must equal the sum of lines 0101–0489. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0830	Line 0500 (running subtotal) must equal the sum of detail lines 0001–0489. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0840	Line 0591 must equal the sum of lines 0501–0589. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0850	Line 0592 must equal the sum of lines 0401–0589. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0860	Line 0593 must equal the sum of lines 0301–0589. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0870	Line 0594 must equal the sum of lines 0201–0589. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3



<b>MAX data section</b>	<b>Error code range</b>	<b>Description of edit check</b>	<b>Circ. No. A-11 reference</b>
P	0880	Line 0600 (running total) must equal the sum of detail lines 0001-0589. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0890	Line 0691 must equal the sum of lines 0601-0689. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0900	Line 0692 must equal the sum of lines 0501-0689. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0910	Line 0693 must equal the sum of lines 0401-0689. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0920	Line 0694 must equal the sum of lines 0301-0689. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0930	Line 0700 (running subtotal) must equal the sum of detail lines 0001-0689. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0940	Line 0791 must equal the sum of lines 0701-0789. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0950	Line 0792 must equal the sum of lines 0601-0789. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0960	Line 0793 must equal the sum of lines 0501-0789. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0970	Line 0794 must equal the sum of lines 0401-0789. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0980	Line 0800 (running total) must equal the sum of detail lines 0001-0789. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	0990	Line 0891 must equal the sum of lines 0801-0889. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1000	Line 0892 must equal the sum of lines 0701-0889. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1010	Line 0893 must equal the sum of lines 0601-0889. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1020	Line 0894 must equal the sum of lines 0501-0889. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1030	Line 0999 must equal the sum of detail lines 0901-0988. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1040	Line 0909 must equal the sum of detail lines 0900-0908. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1045	Line 0919 must equal the sum of detail lines 0910-0918. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1050	Line 0929 must equal the sum of detail lines 0920-0928. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1055	Line 0939 must equal the sum of detail lines 0930-0938. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P	1060	Line 0949 must equal the sum of detail lines 0940–0948. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1065	Line 0959 must equal the sum of detail lines 0950–0958. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1070	Line 0969 must equal the sum of detail lines 0960–0968. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1072	Line 0979 must equal the sum of detail lines 0970–0978. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1076	Line 0989 must equal the sum of detail lines 0980–0988. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1080	Total new obligations (line 1000) must equal the sum of all the detail activity lines (0001–0988). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.3
P	1082	Total new obligations (line 1000) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.20
P	1083	The unobligated balance, start of year (line 2140) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.20
P	1085	The unobligated balance, carried forward, end of year (line 2440) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.20
P	1087	The obligated balance, start of year (line 7240) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.20
P	1089	The obligated balance, end of year (line 7440) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.20
P	1090	Trust fund budget authority (e.g., line 4026) should not be reported in the same account with general or special fund budget authority (e.g., lines 4000 or 4020).	82
P	1092	Appropriations (line 4000) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2 M)	82.20
P	1094	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (line 2398) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency’s accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2 M)	82.20

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P	1096	Resources available from recoveries of prior year obligations (line 2210) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency's accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2 M)	82.20
P	1098	Adjustments in expired accounts net (line 7340) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency's accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2 M)	82.20
P	1100, 1130	Transfers of balances from other accounts (lines 2222 and 7332) must be positive.	82.4, 82.5
P	1102	Offsetting collections (cash) from Federal sources (line 8800) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency's accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2 M)	82.20
P	1104	Offsetting collections (cash) reported in the Budget for the PY must equal the actuals reported to Treasury and certified by your agency's accounting office. (Rounding tolerance of \$2 M)	82.20
P	1110, 1120	Transfers of balances to other accounts (lines 2221 and 7331) must be negative.	82.4, 82.5
P	1140, 1150, 1155	Transfers of BA to other accounts (lines 4100, 6100, 6661) must be negative.	82.4
P	1160, 1164, 1166	Transfers of BA from other accounts (lines 4200, 6200, 6662) must be positive.	82.4
P	1174	Transfers of offsetting collections to other accounts (lines 6861 and 6961) must be negative.	82.4
P	1175	Transfers of offsetting collections from other accounts (lines 6862 and 6962) must be positive.	82.4
P	1177, 1178	Transfers are not being reported consistently by the gaining and losing accounts. Check the pulldown menu under "views/transfers" for the information being reported by the corresponding accounts.	82.3
P	1180-1270	A total BA entry (e.g., line 4300) is required only when multiple detail entries (e.g., lines 4000-4200) are reported. If required, lines 4300 must equal the sum of the detail entries. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.4
P	1280	A total entry (e.g., line 8890) is required only when multiple detail entries (e.g., lines 8800-8845) are reported. If required, line 8890 must equal the sum of the detail entries. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	82.6
P	1500	Special fund budget authority (lines 4020 and 6020) should not be reported in trust fund accounts.	82.3
P	1505	Trust fund BA (lines 4026 and 6026) should only be reported in trust fund accounts.	82.3

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P	1510–1795	A BA line (e.g., 4000) and a total line (e.g., 4300) are both required when certain types of adjustments are reported (e.g., line 4035).	82.4
P	2067	Outlays (gross) detail (lines 8690–8698) is not required for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts; gross outlays should be reported on line 8700.	82.6
P	2135	Unobligated balance expiring or withdrawn (line 2398) must be negative.	82.4
P	3050	Memorandum entries for unobligated balances of contract authority at the start and end of year (lines 9301 and 9302) cannot exceed total unobligated balances (lines 2140 and 2440) reported for the same period.	82.7
P	3060	Memorandum entries for obligated balances of contract authority at the start and end of year (lines 9303 and 9304) cannot exceed total obligated balances (lines 7240 and 7440) reported for the same time period.	82.7
P, A	2050–2062	Offsetting collections reported in schedule A (lines 8800–8845) must equal the corresponding amounts in schedule P.	81.4, 82.3
P, A	2070	Outlays from new discretionary authority in schedule P (line 8690) must equal outlays from new discretionary authority in schedule A (line 9111, 9311, 970x).	81.4, 82.6
P, A	2080	Outlays from discretionary balances (line 8693) in schedule P must equal discretionary outlays from balances in schedule A (lines 9121, 9321, and 980x).	81.4, 82.6
P, A	2090	Outlays from new mandatory authority line (line 8697) in schedule P must equal outlays from new mandatory authority in schedule A (line 9111, 9311).	81.4, 82.6
P, A	2100	Outlays from mandatory balances (line 8698) in schedule P must equal outlays from mandatory balances in schedule A (lines 9121 and 9321).	81.4, 82.6
P, A	2140	Outlay data (lines 9111–9809) are required in schedule A if gross outlay data (line 7320) are present in schedule P.	81.4, 82.5
P, A	2170	Outlays from new discretionary spending authority from offsetting collections (line 9311 of schedule A) should not exceed discretionary spending authority from offsetting collections (line 6890 in schedule P).	81.4, 82.4
P, A	2175	Outlays from new mandatory spending authority from offsetting collections (line 9311 of schedule A) should not exceed mandatory spending authority from offsetting collections (line 6990 in schedule P).	81.4, 82.4
P, A	2180	Discretionary change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources entry (line 8895) is required in schedule A if discretionary change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources is reported in schedule P (line 6810) and the amounts should be equal.	81.4, 82.7

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
P, A	2185	Mandatory change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources entry (line 8895) is required in schedule A if mandatory change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources is reported in schedule P (line 6910) and the amounts should be equal.	81.4, 82.7
P, A	2190	Offsetting collections credited to expired accounts entry (line 8896) is required in A if it is reported in P (line 8896), and the amounts should be equal.	81.4, 82.7
P, A, C, E, F, O, S	2562	Credit liquidating accounts must have schedules A, C, E, F, O, P, and S.	185.9
P, A, O, U	2555	Credit program accounts must have schedules A, O, P, and U.	185.9
P, F	2553	Credit financing accounts must have a schedule P and schedule F.	185.11, 86.2
P, G	2195	Net financing disbursements (line 9000) reported in schedule P must equal the net financing disbursements (line 6300) reported in schedule G.	82.7, 185.11
P, H	2196	Net financing disbursements (line 9000) reported in schedule P must equal the net financing disbursements (line 6300) reported in schedule H.	82.7, 185.11
P, U	2200	In credit program accounts, net outlays (line 9000) in schedule P must be greater than or equal to the sum of schedule U administrative expenses outlays (line 3580 plus 3590), direct loan subsidy outlays (line 1349), direct loan upward reestimate subsidy outlays (line 1369), guaranteed loan subsidy outlays (line 2349), and guaranteed loan upward reestimate subsidy outlays (line 2369).	185.10
Q, O	3454	Average salaries (which are calculated by dividing the personnel compensation reported in schedule O by the FTE reported in schedule Q) should not be less than \$15,000.	86.1
Q, O	3456	Average salaries (which are calculated by dividing the personnel compensation reported in schedule O by the FTE reported in schedule Q) should not exceed \$110,000.	86.1
Q, O	4510-4520	If full-time equivalent employment for military personnel is reported in the personnel summary (schedule Q), then obligations (other than allocations) for military personnel compensation (line x117) must be reported in schedule O.	36.1, 83.7
Q, O	4530-4565	If obligations (other than allocations) for FTE employment (lines x111 or x113) are reported in schedule O, then full-time equivalent employment must be reported in schedule Q and vice versa.	36.1, 83.7
R	4730	Subfunction must match BAT file subfunction for this account.	81.4
R	4740	Character class must match BAT file character class for this account.	81.4

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
R, K	4735	The BY+9 amount field is blank; receipt data needs to be updated.	81.4
R, K	4745	Receipt accounts do not generally contain negative amounts.	81.4
R, K	4747	Downward subsidy reestimates should be classified as mandatory authorizing committee.	81.3
R, K	4749	Negative subsidies should be classified as discretionary, appropriations committee.	81.3
R, K	4750	Current year receipts in baseline (schedule K) must equal the corresponding entries in policy (schedule R).	81.4
R, K	4760	If a line entry in policy (schedule R) is coded mandatory, then the same entry must be reported in baseline (schedule K), with the same category code and amount.	81.4
S	3970	Baseline budget authority, outlays and limitations are not required for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts.	81.4
S	3990	Number of beneficiaries (line 9993) can only be used if approved by OMB.	81.4
S	4000-4085	If budget authority is reported for BY, then it should also be reported for the outyears.	81.4
S	4090-4095	If spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890 and 6990) is reported for BY, then it should also be reported for the outyears.	81.4
S	4100	If offsetting collections (lines 8800-8845) are reported for the inyears, then they should also be reported for the outyears.	81.4
S	4110	Outlays from spending authority from offsetting collections (9311, 9321) should be reported if offsetting collections (lines 689, 6990) are reported.	81.4
S	4120	Limitation data have been reported under an incorrect line code. For changes to limitation requirements, consult OMB.	81.4
S	4160	Subfunction does not match BAT file subfunction for this account.	81.3
S	4220, 4230	As a general rule, when offsetting collections are reported (lines 8800-8845), spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890 or 6990) should also be reported and vice versa	81.4
S	4390	Spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890-6990) should equal the offsetting collections reported on lines 8800-8845 plus the amounts on lines 8895 and 8896. (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	81.4
S, A	4250-4340	Current year baseline BA entries reported in schedule S (lines 4300-6990) must equal the corresponding entries in schedule A.	81.4

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
S, A	4350-4358	Current year baseline offsetting collections (lines 8800-8845) reported in schedule S must equal the corresponding entries in schedule A.	81.4
S, A	4365	Current year change in uncollected customer payments from Federal sources (unexpired) (line 8895) reported in schedule S must equal the corresponding entry in schedule A.	81.4
S, A	4370	Current year offsetting collections (cash) credited to expired accounts (line 8896) reported in schedule S must equal the corresponding entry in schedule A.	81.4
S, A	4380	Current year baseline outlays reported in schedule S (lines 91xx-98xx) must equal the corresponding entries in schedule A.	81.4
S, C	3975	Schedule S and schedule C are not required for government-sponsored enterprises.	81.4, 84.4
S, P	2192	Outlays from end of PY balances reported in schedule S (on lines coded 9x22) cannot exceed the end of PY balances reported in schedule P (on lines 2440 and 7440)	81.4
S, P	4385	Spending authority from offsetting collections (lines 6890 and 6990) should equal total offsetting collections credited to unexpired accounts (lines 8800-8845 plus 8896), unless adjustments have been reported in schedule P on detail lines 6810-6985.	81.4, 82.3
T	4900	For consolidated and merged accounts, separate line entries are used to report the budget year request for each component account, and each line entry must include the 6 digit Treasury account symbol for the account involved.	82, 86.4
T, P, A	4905	Amounts in schedule T should be consistent with the BY appropriations language request and amounts reported in schedules P and A under transmit code 0. Transfers will be reported on a pre-transfer basis except for transfers from the violent crime reduction trust fund. Exclude spending authority from offsetting collections.	82, 86.4
U	2270	For direct loan levels supported by subsidy BA, the sum of the direct loan level entries (lines 1150) must equal the total direct loan levels (line 1159). Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10
U	2275	The weighted average subsidy rate (line 1329) must equal the total subsidy budget authority (line 1339) divided by the total loan level (line 1159). (Rounding tolerance of 100 or 1 percent)	185.10
U	2280	For direct loan subsidies, the sum of multiple subsidy outlay entries (lines 1340) must equal the total subsidy outlay (line 1349). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10
U	2285	For direct loan subsidies, the sum of the subsidy outlay entries (lines 1340) must equal the total subsidy outlay (line 1349). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
U	2290	The total upward reestimate budget authority (line 1359) must equal the sum of the upward reestimate budget authority detail entries (lines 1350). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10
U	2305	The total downward reestimate budget authority (line 1379) must equal the sum of the downward reestimate budget authority detail entries (line 1370). (Rounding tolerance \$2M)	185.10
U	2330	For guaranteed loan levels supported by subsidy BA, the sum of multiple guaranteed loan level entries (line 2150) must equal total loan guarantee levels (line 2159)	185.10
U	2335	The weighted average subsidy rate (line 2329) must equal the total subsidy budget authority (line 2339) divided by the total level (line 2159). (Rounding tolerance of 100 or 1 percent)	185.10
U	2340	For guaranteed loan subsidies, the sum of multiple subsidy BA entries (lines 2330) must equal the total subsidy BA (line 2339). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10
U	2345	For guaranteed loan subsidies, the sum of multiple subsidy outlay entries (lines 2340) must equal the total subsidy outlays (line 2349). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10
U	2350	For guaranteed loan levels supported by subsidy BA, the sum of multiple guaranteed loan level entries (lines 2150) must equal total loan guarantee levels (line 2159). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.10
U	2365	The total downward reestimate budget authority (line 2379) must equal the sum of the downward reestimate budget authority detail entries (line 2370). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M).	185.10
U, A	2400	Total subsidy outlays for guaranteed loans (line 2349) cannot exceed policy outlays (lines 9111-9808) in schedule A.	81.4, 185.10
U, A	2410	The sum of total subsidy outlays for direct loans (line 1349) plus guaranteed loans (line 2349) plus outlays for administrative expenses (line 3590) in schedule U cannot exceed policy outlays in schedule A (lines 9xxx).	81.4, 185.10
Y	2559	Liquidating accounts cannot have schedule Y line 6300.	185.11
Y	2670-2690	Outstanding agency debt, end of year (line 3390) must equal the sum of outstanding agency debt, start of year plus adjustments (lines 3310-3350). (Rounding tolerance of \$2M)	185.11
Y	2740	Start of year outstanding balances for agency debt held by the FFB (line 3310) must equal the outstanding balances for the end of the preceding year (line 3390).	185.11
Y	3080	Data on net financing disbursements are required (line 6300) for direct and guaranteed loan financing accounts.	185.11
Y, G, H	3040	Schedule Y is only required if schedule G or H is reported.	185.11



MAX data section	Error code range	Description of edit check	Circ. No. A-11 reference
<i>Informational Edit Checks</i>			
A, S	3945	This account is reporting mandatory authority controlled by the appropriations committees. Is this correct?	81.3
A, K, S, R	3959	This account is reporting asset sales that cannot be counted for BEA scoring. Is this correct?	81.3
P	0247	For direct loan financing accounts, there should be no end of year unobligated balances; all balances should be repaid to Treasury (lines 6827 or 6847), as appropriate.	185.2
P	0360	When an account has unobligated balances (lines 21xx) these balances should be used for capital transfers to the general fund (line 2240) before new offsetting collections (line 6827 or 6927).	82.4
P	0370	When an account has unobligated balances, these balances should be used for redemption of debt (line 2260) before new offsetting collections (line 6847 or 6947).	82.4
P	1275	Separate repayment lines (lines 8840) should be provided for principal repayments and for interest payments.	82,7, 185.11
P	1400	Direct loan subsidy expense (line 0001) should be reported for direct loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1402	Loan guarantee subsidy expense (line 0002) should be reported for guaranteed loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1405	Subsidy for modifications of direct loan terms (line 0003) should be reported for direct loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1407	Subsidy for modifications of loan guarantees (line 0004) should be reported for guaranteed loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1409	Reestimates of direct loan subsidy (line 0005) should be reported for direct loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1411	Interest on reestimates of direct loan subsidy (line 0006) should be reported for direct loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1413	Reestimates of the loan guarantees (line 0007) should be reported for guaranteed loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1415	Interest on reestimates of loan guarantee subsidy (line 0008) should be reported for guaranteed loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
P	1417	Administrative expenses (line 0009) should be reported for guaranteed loan program accounts.	82.3, 185.10
S	4210	Outlays from end of PY balances (line 9122) is missing.	81.4

APPENDIX D—EXPLANATION OF MAX EDIT CHECKS

---

<b>MAX data section</b>	<b>Error code range</b>	<b>Description of edit check</b>	<b>Circ. No. A-11 reference</b>
S, O	4381	When an account uses discretionary budget authority to finance civilian personnel compensation and benefits (as reported in schedule O), there should be an entry in schedule S to indicate the amount used for that purpose.	81.3, 83.7
S, O	4383	When an account uses discretionary budget authority to finance personnel compensation and benefits for military personnel (as reported in schedule O), there should be an entry in schedule S to indicate the amount used for that purpose.	81.3, 83.7
U	2210	For credit program accounts, administrative expense budget authority (line 3510) and administrative expense outlays (line 3580 and/or line 3590) should be reported.	185.10

---

## APPENDIX E—DIAGNOSTIC REPORTS

**Summary of Changes**

Removes three of the six diagnostic reports shown in last year's A-11. The average salaries (CKFTEOBS) and reconciliation of transfers (TRANSFER) reports have been converted to MAX edit checks. The suspected receipt estimating report (CKRCPTS) has been eliminated.

In addition to the MAX edit checks listed in Appendix D, OMB produces several reports to ensure that data reported in the data base are consistent both within and between schedules, and that they comply with standard budget concepts.

This Appendix includes exhibits of the major diagnostic reports listed below to provide information that can be used to understand and resolve any errors in the data base highlighted by these reports. Agencies can print the reports themselves, using MAX.

The Treasury Financial Manual (TFM) provides a crosswalk between data in the agency financial systems, the program and financing schedule, FMS 2108, and SF 133. This crosswalk is available on the Internet (<http://www.fms.treas.gov/ussgl/>).

**DIAGNOSTIC REPORTS**

Title	Description	Exhibit No.
BEA Questions and Problems Report (BEACK01)	Identifies possible errors in BEA classification in schedules A and R (policy) and S and K (baseline).	E1
Total FTE Employment: Approved Estimates vs. Schedule Q (CKFTE)	Compares FTE estimates approved by OMB with personnel levels in schedule Q.	E2
Policy and Baseline Agency/Category Account Detail Report—Mandatory Estimates (BEACAT)	Compares mandatory baseline estimates in schedule S with mandatory policy estimates in schedule A.	E3

**BEA Questions and Problems Report (BEACK01)**

This report displays policy and baseline data from schedules A and R (policy) and S and K (baseline).

This report shows accounts that have historically used one BEA classification, but that are now using a new classification.

In previous years, this report showed other questions and problems, such as when advanced appropriations are coded as Mandatory. The report no longer does this because these other question and problem checks have been converted into edits in the MAX A-11 software.

Indicates the apparent problem with the data (e.g., an account historically classified as mandatory has reported all resources as discretionary).

Agency: Department of Government  
Bureau: Revolving and Management Funds

Classification 3: Accounts that Historically Use a Single BEA Category  
Action Required: Validate Coding for BEA Cat not Previously Used for Account

Line # (1)	BEA Cat. (2)	BEA Sub. (3)	Com (4)	Policy				Baseline		
				PY	CY	BY	BY2	CY	BY	BY2

Account Management Fund  
007-40-17-3980-0-4-051

HISTORICAL CATEGORY: MAND

**6890-01	DISC		DE	475	578	599		1	1	**
**8890-01	DISC		DE	-476	-531	-599		578	599	599**
**8895-01	DISC		DE	2	-47			-531	-599	-599**
**9121-01	DISC		DE	-8				-47		**
**9311-01	DISC		DE	476	531	599		531	599	**

Account: Working capital fund  
007-40-21-4528 -0-4-051

HISTORICAL CATEGORY: MAND

**6890-01	DISC		DE	946	919	725		919	725	725
**8890-01	DISC		DE	-1,303	-919	-725		-919	-725	-725
**8895-01	DISC		DE	357						**
**9121-01	DISC		DE	36						**
**9311-01	DISC		DE	1,303	919	725		919	725	**

"BEA Cat" and "BEA Sub" (columns 2 and 3) indicate the BEA classification of data on the specified lines of the data base.

"Com" (column 4) designates committee jurisdiction. The code refers to the applicable appropriations subcommittee (e.g., "DE" is for defense). For resources under authorizing committee jurisdiction, the code "AU" is used.

**Total FTE Employment: Approved Estimates vs. Schedule Q (CKFTE)**

This report is used to compare agency FTE estimates approved by OMB during the fall budget process with data reflected in MAX. Account level detail reported in schedule Q follows summary data in this report.

Actuals reported to OPM on SF 113G.

This amount must be fixed in MAX to match what was reported to OPM on SF 113G.

FTE estimates approved by OMB during the budget review process.

Actuals and approved estimates and MAX totals should equal. Where differences occur, MAX schedule Q data should be adjusted to agree with approved estimates.

	PY			CY			BY		
	Actual	MAX	Diff	Aprvd	MAX	Diff	Aprvd	MAX	Diff
Department of Agriculture 005	103,848	103,848		105,452	105,452		104,568	104,568	
Department of Commerce 006	35,347	35,347		35,211	35,211		35,500	35,500	
Department of Defense -- Military 007	821,739	821,739		800,008	800,008		767,417	767,417	
Department of Education 018	4,816	4,819	3	4,750	4,750		4,613	4,613	
Department of Energy 019	19,657	19,657		19,749	19,749		18,492	18,492	
Department of Health and Human Services 009	59,011	59,011		58,511	58,511		58,924	58,924	
Department of Housing and Urban Development 025	12,110	12,110		11,870	11,870		11,369	11,369	
Department of the Interior 010	72,012	72,012		70,491	70,491		72,155	72,155	
Department of Justice 011	97,869	97,869		106,317	106,317		112,520	112,520	
Department of Labor 012	16,815	16,815		16,633	16,633		17,074	17,074	
Department of State 014	23,863	23,863		23,651	23,651		23,476	23,476	
Department of Transportation 021	63,171	63,171		63,935	63,935		63,859	63,859	
Department of the Treasury 015	157,481	157,481		153,309	153,309		156,765	156,765	
Department of Veterans Affairs 029	223,112	223,112		218,242	218,242		217,327	217,327	

The sum of account-level detail (line xxx1) in schedule Q for a year for an agency.

**Policy and Baseline Agency/Category Account Detail Report  
Mandatory Estimates (BEACAT)**

Agency Category	Other Independent Agencies Total Mandatory	Indicates BEA category of data reported.											
		PY	CY	BY	BY+1	BY+2	BY+3	BY+4	BY+5	BY+6	BY+7	BY+8	BY+9
440-00-1004-372-4		Payment to the Postal Service fund for nonfunded liabilities											
Baseline													
BA		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OL		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Policy													
BA		0	0	-36	-34	-32	-31	-29	-28	-26	-24	-22	-20
OL		0	0	-36	-34	-32	-31	-29	-28	-26	-24	-22	-20
Difference													
BA		0	-36	-34	-32	-31	-29	-28	-26	-24	-22	-20	
OL		0	-36	-34	-32	-31	-29	-28	-26	-24	-22	-20	
440-00-4020-372-0		Postal Service fund											
Baseline													
BA		0	4,917	3,151	3,049	1,924	267	2,266	1,391	1,696	1,569	91	238
OL		0	-348	2,596	26	-1,454	-534	-1,808	1,823	-1,703	-1,758	-1,602	-1,482
Policy													
BA		2,554	4,917	3,151	3,049	1,924	267	2,266	1,391	1,696	1,569	91	238
OL		-1,969	-348	2,596	26	-1,454	-534	-1,808	1,823	-1,703	-1,758	-1,602	-1,482
Difference													
BA		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OL		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
440-00-4020-372-2		Postal Service fund											
Baseline													
BA		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OL		0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Policy													
BA		0	37	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OL		0	37	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Difference													
BA		37	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
OL		37	36	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

This report compares, by BEA category and transmittal code, baseline estimates in schedule S with policy estimates in schedule A.

This section of the report presents data on mandatory estimates in MAX. As a general rule, there should be no differences between baseline and policy estimates for mandatory programs unless proposed policy changes have been approved by OMB. Errors must be fixed in schedules A and S before the data base locks.

Agency Category

Indicates BEA category of data reported.

Policy changes are reported as PAYGO (transmittal code 4) when changes proposed are classified as mandatory and are scorable under the Budget Enforcement Act.

Current law baseline estimates for mandatory programs are reported under transmittal code 0. Baseline and policy estimates for mandatory programs in transmittal code 0 should equal, except where third scorecard changes are proposed.

Policy changes for mandatory programs are reported as non-PAYGO (transmittal code 2) when the proposal affects off-budget transactions (e.g., social security, postal service) or are otherwise not subject to PAYGO rules (intergovernmental transactions).

Indicates the transmittal code of the MAX schedules for which data are reported. For mandatory programs, policy changes are usually reported as PAYGO (transmittal code 4), or non-PAYGO (transmittal code 2). No data should be reported for PY in transmittal codes 2 or 4.

No baseline data should be reported for legislative proposals (transmittal codes 2 or 4).

Proposed changes that are not scored as PAYGO or non-PAYGO (i.e., level of effort and other indirect effects of appropriations language) are classified as third scorecard, appropriations committee or third scorecard, authorizing committee and are reported in transmittal code 0 in schedule A.

<sup>1</sup> Discretionary estimates are reported in another section of this report.

## APPENDIX F—FORMAT OF SF 132 AND SF 133

Use the entries in the following table to prepare the "Budgetary Resources" section of the *SF 132*, Apportionment and Reapportionment Schedule (for unexpired accounts only), and the *SF 133*, Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources (for unexpired accounts and expired accounts, including accounts about to be closed and annual fund symbols that are older than five years that have legally authorized extended disbursing authority).

## BUDGETARY RESOURCES

Entry	Description
Line 1. Budget authority:	Use budget authority lines (1A through 1E) for unexpired accounts.
A. Appropriation	<p>Amount of appropriations specified in appropriations acts or in substantive laws that become available for obligation on or after October 1 of the fiscal year.</p> <p>The following paragraphs describe the application of the above principles to specific circumstances:</p> <p><i>Regular appropriations.</i>—Amounts made available in any of the 13 regular appropriations acts.</p> <p><i>Supplemental appropriations.</i>—Amounts made available in supplemental appropriations acts.</p> <p><i>Reappropriations.</i> — Amount of new budget authority resulting from legislation enacted after the law that provided the budget authority and that extends the period of availability of funds that have expired or would otherwise expire. Such extensions of availability are counted as new budget authority in the first year of the extended availability (see <a href="#">sections 20.4(h) and 121.10</a>). Amounts in the gaining account in the year in which they become newly available for obligation. The losing account has expired; therefore, no reapportionment action is needed for the losing account. For the SF 133, the losing account will include a negative amount on line 6B of the previous year.</p> <p><i>Appropriation provided under a continuing resolution.</i>—The annualized level of the appropriation. If the continuing resolution is for less than the full year, subtract the portion not available on line 5. See <a href="#">exhibits 121D and 121E</a>.</p> <p>When the regular appropriations act is passed, replace the amount on this line with the amount specified in the regular appropriations act. See <a href="#">exhibit 121F</a>.</p> <p><i>Advance appropriation.</i>—Include in the first fiscal year in which the amounts become available for obligation. For example, if you received advance appropriations for fiscal year 2002 in the regular annual appropriations act for fiscal year 2001, then include the advance appropriation on this line for the fiscal year 2002.</p> <p><i>Forward funding.</i>—Include the amount appropriated on this line even though the funds may not become available until July 1<sup>st</sup>.</p> <p><i>Advance funding.</i>—Include the portion that will be obligated in the current year on this line. Exclude the amount obligated last year.</p>

Entry	Description
	<p><i>Appropriated receipts.</i>—Collections deposited in special and trust fund receipt accounts that are earmarked for special and trust fund expenditure accounts. Of these amounts:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Some receipts are <i>appropriated</i> and are available for obligation. Include the amounts <i>collected in the current fiscal year</i> on this line.</li> <li>• Some receipts are <i>appropriated, but a portion is precluded from obligation</i> by a provision of law, such as a benefit formula or limitation. Include the amounts <i>collected in the current fiscal year</i> on this line. Subtract the amounts that are that are not expected to be available as a negative amount on line 5 and show this amount on the September 30 report. See <a href="#">exhibits 121L</a> and <a href="#">130L</a>.</li> <li>• Some receipts were collected and appropriated in a previous year but precluded from obligation in a previous fiscal year. Include the amounts on this line in the fiscal year in which the amount is needed.</li> <li>• Some receipts are <i>not appropriated</i>. Exclude these amounts from this line.</li> </ul> <p>NOTE: In exceptional cases, there is authority in law to invest collections. In such cases, the current year collections shown on line 5 and prior year collections that were precluded from obligation (not shown on the SF 132) will not be available for obligation (and will not be included on the SF 132 and SF 133 until needed to incur obligations) but will be available for investment. Unlike OMB, Treasury classifies these funds as "available."</p> <p>Some laws that make appropriated receipts available for obligation specify the amount appropriated. These are <i>definite appropriations</i>. Other laws that make appropriated receipts available for obligation do not specify the amount appropriated. These appropriated receipts are <i>indefinite appropriations</i>. For indefinite appropriations of appropriated receipts, follow the instructions for appropriated receipts.</p> <p><i>Indefinite appropriations other than from appropriated receipts.</i>—Amount certified by appropriation warrants for the year, after being reduced by negative warrants issued by the Treasury or end-of-year statements.</p> <p><i>Appropriations contingent upon authorizing legislation or upon designation as a emergency.</i>—When an appropriations act specifies that all or a portion of the amount appropriated is not available for obligation until specifically authorized by another law, or when amounts designated as emergency appropriations by the Congress pursuant to the Budget Enforcement Act are not available for obligation until the President submits a budget request to the Congress designating the amount as an emergency requirement:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Include the <i>full amount</i> of the appropriation on line 1, and</li> <li>• Subtract the amount <i>not</i> authorized by law or <i>not designated</i> as emergency requirements by the President on line 5 except on the September 30 SF 133.</li> </ul>



Entry	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>At the beginning of the next fiscal year, any unobligated balance that is still contingent and would still be available for new obligations if the contingency is met will be included on line 2A and subtracted on line 5 as unavailable until either the authorizing legislation is enacted or the amount is designated by the President. This paragraph does not apply to contingent emergency appropriations enacted in FY 1999 or earlier.</li> </ul> <p><i>Contingent emergency appropriations from FY 1999 and prior years.</i>—If the President designates a contingent emergency appropriation from FY 1999 or a prior year as emergency requirements, include the amount on this line in the year of the Presidential designation.</p> <p><i>Appropriations to liquidate debt</i>—Appropriations that are available to repay amounts borrowed from the Treasury but are not available to incur obligations. Include the appropriation to liquidate debt on this line and the repayment to Treasury on line 6C, as a negative. Include any excess on line 6D, as a negative.</p> <p><i>Appropriations to liquidate deficiencies.</i>—Appropriations that are available to liquidate obligations in excess of budgetary resources but are not available to incur obligations. Include the appropriation to liquidate deficiencies on this line. This should cover the deficiency (reflected as a negative unobligated balance carried forward on line 2A). <u>This applies to unexpired and expired accounts.</u> Normally, there are no excess amounts because these appropriations are requested after the deficiency is known, whereas, the agencies normally budget for appropriations to liquidate debt and appropriations to liquidate contract authority.</p> <p><i>Appropriations to liquidate contract authority.</i>—Typically, these are separate appropriations of liquidating cash in appropriations acts and an amount equal to the appropriation to liquidate is shown as a negative on line 6E. Thus, the total budgetary resources on line 7 equal zero. See <a href="#">exhibit 121K</a>.</p> <p>Occasionally, these appropriations include the authority to liquidate obligations where anticipated offsetting collections have not been realized. The amounts are available to liquidate contract authority but are not available for obligation. Include such appropriations to liquidate contract authority on this line. Include any excess amounts on line 6D as a negative.</p> <p><i>Appropriations substituted for borrowing authority.</i>—Occasionally, portions of appropriations are available to liquidate obligations initially incurred against authority to borrow when the borrowing is not exercised. The amounts are available to liquidate obligations but are not available for obligation. Include such portion substituted for borrowing authority on this line. Include an amount equal to the portion of appropriation substituted for borrowing authority on line 6D as a negative. Thus, the budgetary resources on line 7 equal zero.</p> <p><i>Appropriations of Specific Amounts of which "Not to Exceed" a Portion Remains Available Beyond the Remainder of the Appropriation.</i> See details following the description of line 7.</p> <p><i>Spending authority from offsetting collections</i> - Some offsetting collections are collected in the previous year but precluded from</p>

Entry	Description
	<p>obligation in a previous fiscal year. Include the amounts on this line in the fiscal year in which the amount is needed.</p> <p><i>Interest on the public debt.</i> See details following the description of line 7.</p>
B. Borrowing authority	<p>Amount of new authority to borrow, primarily from the Treasury, to finance obligations and outlays. Include the amount becoming available for obligation on or after October 1 of the fiscal year.</p> <p><i>Definite borrowing authority</i>—Include the amount specified in law.</p> <p><i>Indefinite borrowing authority</i>—Include an estimate of the amount to be obligated during the fiscal year. On the September 30 report, include the portion that is not needed on line 6D, as a negative.</p> <p><i>Repayment of principal and interest.</i>—Include the repayment of principal, as a negative, on line 6C after including estimated interest obligations on line 8.</p> <p><i>Appropriation to liquidate debt.</i>—Do not include these appropriations on this line. Include this authority on line 1A. It is provided when proceeds to the account are insufficient to repay borrowing. If a portion of the appropriation to liquidate debt is not needed, include the amount (as a negative) on line 6D.</p> <p><i>Direct loan financing accounts.</i>—Include the amount of new authority to borrow needed to finance the part of direct loan obligations not financed by subsidy payments from the program account and fees from borrowers.</p> <p><i>Guaranteed loan financing accounts.</i>—Include the amount of new authority to borrow needed to cover any default claims and other cash outflows that cannot be financed by unobligated balances.</p>
C. Contract authority	<p>Amount of new contract authority to incur obligations that typically will require a separate appropriation of liquidating cash before payments can be made.</p> <p>Occasionally, contract authority is provided in anticipation of receiving offsetting collections. Include the amount becoming available on or after October 1 of the fiscal year.</p> <p><i>Definite contract authority.</i>—Include the amount specified in law.</p> <p><i>Indefinite contract authority.</i>—Include an estimate of the amount to be obligated during the year. On the September 30 report, include the portion that is not needed on line 6D, as a negative.</p> <p><i>Appropriation to liquidate contract authority.</i>—Do not include on this line. Include on line 1A. If a portion of the appropriation to liquidate contract authority is not needed, then include the amount (as a negative) on line 6D.</p>
D. Net transfers (+) or (–)	<p>Net amount of budget authority enacted for the fiscal year that is <i>actually</i> transferred to (+) or from (–) the account under existing legislation.</p> <p>Normally, the entries on this line are transfers of <i>new budget authority</i>. There is an exception. The transfers of <i>unobligated balances</i> that result from legislation that changes the <i>purpose</i> for which the balances are</p>

Entry	Description
	<p>available are included on this line. Transfers of all other <i>balances</i> are included on line 2B.</p> <p>The entries on this line are non-expenditure transfers between two Federal Government accounts. (The treatment of non-expenditure transfers is explained in <a href="#">section 20.4(j) (4)</a>.)</p> <p>NOTE: All transfers between Federal funds (accounts that are not trust funds; i.e., general, special, management, and revolving funds) and trust funds are treated as expenditure transfers. See <a href="#">section 20.4(h) (4)</a> for additional information.</p> <p>In the footnotes, list the individual accounts from which and to which the <i>transfers have been made</i>. Specify the amount actually transferred to (+) and from (–) each account.</p>
E. Other	<p>Include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Amount of <i>indefinite appropriations anticipated</i> to become available under <i>existing</i> law for the remainder of the fiscal year. On the SF 133, this amount may differ from the amount on the latest SF 132 to the extent it is a more current estimate.</li> <li>• Anticipated collection of available receipts.</li> <li>• The current estimate of any new budget authority <i>anticipated to be transferred</i> to (+) or from (–) the account under <i>existing</i> legislation. In the footnotes, list the individual accounts from which and to which the transfers will be made. Specify the amount to be transferred to (+) and from (–) each account. Include the following note: "Amounts to be transferred under existing legislation."</li> </ul> <p>Do not include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Indefinite appropriations included on line 1A.</li> <li>• Anticipated, un-enacted supplemental appropriations.</li> <li>• Transfers that have been made and included on line 1D.</li> <li>• Anticipated transfers that require legislation.</li> </ul> <p><i>Use this line for other amounts only with prior OMB approval.</i></p> <p><i>Identify the law(s) providing the appropriations included on lines 1A through 1E in a footnote.</i></p>
Line 2. Unobligated balance:	
A. Brought forward, October 1 (+ or –)	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of unobligated balance brought forward from prior fiscal years as of October 1 of the current fiscal year that is <i>available for obligation</i> as defined in <a href="#">section 20.4(f)</a>. Applies only to no-year and unexpired multiple-year accounts, therefore do <i>not</i> include amounts not available for obligation.</p> <p>Include rescissions of these prior year balances enacted in the current year on line 6B.</p> <p>If balances brought forward from prior years must be apportioned before the actual balance is known, include an estimated amount on this</p>

Entry	Description
	<p>line and indicate with "est." added to the stub description. Include the actual balance in the next reapportionment request.</p> <p>The amount on this line should be the same as the <i>end of year amounts</i> of the previous fiscal year:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• On lines 9 and 10 of the September 30 SF 133;</li> <li>• In the Treasury Combined Statement Appendix; and</li> <li>• In the past year column of the Program and Financing Schedule of the Budget Appendix.</li> </ul> <p>If the amount on this line is not correct, make the correction. If the amount on this line is correct but not the same as the end-of-year amounts described above, include a footnote for line 2A explaining the difference.</p> <p>If the account is apportioned by time periods and the difference between the estimate and the actual is within the range of adjustment permitted by <a href="#">section 120.36</a>, adjust the apportionments accordingly. If the difference is greater, OMB must approve a request for reapportionment before the funds that are greater than the automatic apportionment can be obligated.</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of expired unobligated balances available for upward adjustments of obligations.</p> <p>Normally, this is a positive amount. A negative amount indicates a deficiency in the prior fiscal year.</p> <p>In the first expired year, the amount should be the same as the amount of unobligated balances on line 9 and 10D of the previous fiscal year's September 30 SF 133. In the second expired year and thereafter, the amount should be the same as the amount on line 10D of the previous fiscal year's September 30 SF 133.</p> <p>These balances are available only for valid upward adjustments of obligations that were properly incurred against the account during the unexpired phase.</p> <p><i>Appropriated receipts.</i>—Do not include the balances of unavailable collections that are precluded from obligation due to a provision of law, such as a benefit formula or limitation. See lines 1A and 5.</p>
<p>B. Net transfers, balances, actual (+ or -)</p>	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Net amount of any unobligated balance <i>actually transferred</i> to (+) or from (-) the account.</p> <p>Include allocation transfers for expired accounts.</p> <p>Do not include transfers required or permitted by law from trust funds to Federal funds. (These transfers will be reported on line 3D.)</p> <p>The transactions included on this line are transfers of balances other than balances of new budget authority. Do not include transfers of balances that result from legislation that changes the <i>purpose</i> for which the balances are available. Transfers of such balances should be included on line 1D.</p>

Entry	Description
<p>C. Anticipated transfers, balances (+ or -)</p>	<p>The transactions included on this line are non-expenditure transfers.</p> <p>NOTE: The treatment of expenditure transfers is explained in <a href="#">section 20.4(h) (4)</a>.</p> <p><i>For expired to unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of any expired unobligated balance <i>actually transferred</i> from (-) an expired account to (+) an unexpired account resulting from legislation other than newly enacted authority that extends the period of availability of general funds. Also, amount of any expired expenditure transfers receivable <i>transferred</i> from (-) an expired account to (+) an unexpired account.</p> <p>In the footnotes, list the individual accounts from which and to which the <i>transfers have been made</i>. Specify the amount actually transferred to (+) and from (-) each account.</p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of the current estimate of any balances, other than balances of new budget authority, <i>to be transferred</i> to (+) or from (-) the account under <i>existing</i> legislation.</p> <p>In the footnotes, list the individual accounts from which and to which the transfers will be made. Specify the amount to be transferred to (+) and from (-) each account. Include the following note: "Amounts to be transferred under existing legislation."</p> <p>Do not include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Anticipated transfers to fund activities of a Federal agency that are require legislation.</li> <li>• Transfers required or permitted by law from trust funds to Federal funds; these are reported on line 3D.</li> </ul>
<p>Line 3. Spending authority from offsetting collections (gross):</p> <p>A. Earned:</p> <p>1. Collected</p>	<p>For initial apportionments, include anticipated collections on lines 3C or 3D2, as appropriate. If the account is reapportioned during the year, include actual amounts on lines 3A, 3B, and 3D1 and anticipated amounts on lines 3C or 3D2.</p> <p><i>Special and trust fund accounts.</i>—Include offsetting collections for reimbursable work and payments from Federal funds when specifically authorized by law.</p> <p>Exclude <i>appropriated receipts</i> which should be included on line 1A.</p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of <i>reimbursements or other income earned and collected</i> to date during the current fiscal year, including those for revolving funds.</p> <p>Include <i>collections of receivables</i> in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances brought forward, if any.</p> <p>Include <i>refunds collected</i> from prior year obligations that have been outlayed to the appropriation of fund account charged with the original obligation.</p>

Entry	Description
	<p>Include spending authority from offsetting collections <i>earned and collected</i> to liquidate the contract authority. Include the collections to liquidate the contract authority on line 6D, as a negative.</p> <p>Include portion of spending authority from offsetting collections <i>earned and collected</i> that is substituted for borrowing authority to liquidate obligations initially incurred against authority to borrow when the borrowing is not exercised. Include the collections to liquidate the borrowing authority on line 6D, as a negative.</p> <p>Exclude cash refunds of amounts obligated and outlayed during the current year. For SF 133, these should be netted against the appropriate line 8 and line 15A.</p> <p>For credit financing accounts, include the subsidy collected from the program account when loans are disbursed.</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of collections of receivables included in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances brought forward, if any.</p>
2. Receivable from Federal sources	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of reimbursements from another Federal Government account that is <i>earned, but not collected</i>, to date during the current fiscal year, including those for revolving funds. If during the fiscal year, the amount is collected, move the amount to line 3A1, above.</p> <p>For <i>collections of receivables</i> included in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances brought forward, include, as a negative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The decrease in reimbursable receivables, and</li> <li>• Receivables written off.</li> </ul> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>For <i>collections of receivables</i> included in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances brought forward, include, as a negative, the decrease in reimbursable receivables. Also, include, as a negative, receivables written off.</p>
B. Change in unfilled customer orders (+ or -):	
1. Advance received	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of increase (+) or decrease (-) from October 1 in <i>unfilled orders on hand accompanied by an advance</i>. During the fiscal year, as orders are filled, move the amounts earned to line 3A1, above.</p> <p>For annual accounts and the last year of multi-year accounts, amounts on this line should reflect <i>obligated amounts</i> only on the September 30 report.</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of decrease (-) from October 1 in <i>unfilled customer orders on hand accompanied by an advance</i>. During the fiscal year, as orders are filled, move the amounts earned to line 3A1, above.</p>

Entry	Description
2. Without advance from Federal sources	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of increase (+) or decrease (–) from October 1, in unfilled orders on hand from other Federal Government accounts, that are valid obligations of the ordering account and are <i>not</i> accompanied by an advance. During the fiscal year, as orders are filled, move the amounts earned to line 3A2, above.</p> <p>For annual accounts and the last year of multi-year accounts, amounts on this line should reflect <i>obligated amounts</i> only on the September 30 report.</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of decrease (–) from October 1, in unfilled customer orders on hand from other Federal Government accounts, that are valid obligations of the ordering account and are <i>not</i> accompanied by an advance. During the fiscal year, as orders are filled, move the amounts earned to line 3A2, above.</p>
C. Anticipated for rest of year, without advance	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of the current estimate of anticipated collections (for example, anticipated orders from Federal sources or anticipated refunds) expected for the remainder of the year.</p> <p>No amount should be on this line on the September 30 report.</p> <p>For direct loan financing accounts, include a current estimate for the rest of the year of the loan subsidy anticipated from the program account.</p> <p>Deposit advances (as defined in <a href="#">section 20.12(b)</a>) without orders from Federal customers in budget clearing account F3885 "Undistributed intergovernmental payments" until an order is received.</p> <p>Deposit advances without orders from non-Federal customers in deposit fund X6500 "Advances without orders from non-Federal sources".</p> <p>OMB must approve all exceptions.</p>
D. Transfers from trust funds:	
1. Collected	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of expenditure transfers from a trust fund account to a Federal fund account, pursuant to appropriations or other laws, to fund the activities of an agency that are (or would be) normally funded in a Federal fund account.</p> <p>Include collections of receivables or anticipated transfers included in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances brought forward, if any.</p> <p>Exclude collections from trust fund accounts for reimbursable work. Include such reimbursable amounts on lines 3A, 3B, or 3C, as appropriate.</p>
2. Anticipated	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of expenditure transfers anticipated for the remainder of the year.</p>

Entry	Description
	<p>No amount should be on this line on the September 30 report. The exception is where there is an accounts receivable or anticipated transfer from a trust fund accompanied by valid accounts payable from that trust fund account. These receivables should be included in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances at the end of the fiscal year.</p> <p>For collections of receivables included in either the net unpaid obligations or the unobligated balances brought forward, include, as a negative:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The decrease in reimbursable receivables, and</li> <li>• Receivables written off.</li> </ul>
Line 4. Recoveries of prior year obligations:	<i>For unexpired and expired accounts:</i>
A. Actual	<p>Amount of any cancellations or downward adjustments of obligations incurred in <i>prior fiscal years</i> that were <i>not outlayed</i>. Include the adjustments since October 1 of the current year. Show the actual recoveries, as shown on the SF 133, on reapportionment requests.</p> <p>Include recovered amounts obligated against indefinite authority to borrow that was borrowed. Then subtract the same amount on line 6C.</p> <p>Include recovered amounts obligated against <i>indefinite</i> authority to borrow that was <i>not</i> borrowed or <i>unfunded</i> contract authority. Then subtract the same amount on line 6D.</p> <p>Exclude recovered amounts obligated against indefinite contract authority that was funded. Do not subtract the same amount on line 6D.</p> <p>Exclude any cancellations or downward adjustments of obligations incurred and outlayed in prior fiscal years since they must be accompanied by cash refunds. Cash refunds collected are to be included on line 3A1. For upward adjustments, see line 8.</p> <p>Exclude recoveries of current year obligations, which will be netted against obligations on line 8.</p> <p>If a recovery is significant, you may want to explain in a footnote.</p> <p>For the final September 30 report before an account will be closed, all remaining unobligated and obligated balances must be canceled. To present these obligated balances as canceled, include the amount to be canceled, as a positive. Then, subtract the same amount on line 6A, <i>Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts</i>.</p>
B. Anticipated	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of the current estimate of additional recoveries of prior fiscal year obligations anticipated in unexpired accounts for the remainder of the fiscal year.</p> <p>For no-year and multi-year accounts, there may be amounts on this line after the first fiscal year.</p> <p>No amount should be on this line on the September 30 report.</p> <p>For unexpired annual accounts, leave lines 4A and 4B blank.</p>



Entry	Description
Line 5. Temporarily not available pursuant to Public Law ____ (-)	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of budgetary resources temporarily not available for obligation pursuant to a specific provision in law. This is a negative amount.</p> <p>The following paragraphs describe the application of the above principles to specific circumstances:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Appropriations provided by a part-year continuing resolution.</i>—When an account is operating under a part-year continuing resolution, include, as a negative amount, the portion of the annualized level included on line 1A that is not available for obligation under the terms of the continuing resolution.</li> <li>• <i>Enacted account-specific rescissions.</i>—Temporary rescissions of new appropriations, borrowing authority, contract authority, and prior year balances. <i>This applies to only temporary reductions for appropriations and unobligated balances of prior year budgetary resources returned to the general fund of the Treasury and not available for subsequent appropriation.</i></li> <li>• <i>Across-the-board reductions.</i>—Amount in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be reduced from more than one account and authorizes the agency head or other Executive Branch official to distribute the reduction to affected accounts. <i>This applies to only temporary reductions for appropriations returned to the general fund of the Treasury and not available for subsequent appropriation.</i></li> <li>• <i>Deferral.</i>—When a congressionally-initiated deferral of an amount that has been appropriated is enacted, include the amount not available for obligation, as a negative amount, on this line.</li> <li>• <i>Appropriations contingent upon authorizing legislation.</i>—Include amount not available for obligation until specifically authorized by another law, as a negative amount. Cite the appropriations act in the stub. The full amount of the appropriation is on line 1.</li> <li>• <i>Emergency, contingent appropriations.</i>—Include amount representing the funds the President has <i>not yet</i> designated as emergency requirements, as a negative amount. The full amount of the appropriation is on line 1A. Do not include this amount on the September 30 SF 133.</li> </ul> <p>In addition, other amounts appropriated for emergencies may also be included if an emergency must exist to make the funds available for obligation, even if a Presidential declaration is not required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Appropriated receipts.</i>—For the September 30 SF 133, include the portion of receipts collected in the current fiscal year in special or trust funds that is precluded from obligation due to a provision of law. The total amount of new receipts is included on line 1A.</li> <li>• <i>Limitation on revolving fund.</i>—Include amount not available for obligation because of a provision of law, such as a limitation on administrative expenses or construction.</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Obligation limitations.</i>—Include the amount by which an obligation limitation reduces the budget resources temporarily (the budget resources remains available after the expiration of the obligation limitation).</li> </ul> <p>In addition, include recoveries of prior year obligations and cash refunds of previously appropriated receipts that are available for a subsequent appropriation and are returned to unappropriated receipts.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Sequester.</i>—When the President has ordered a sequester pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H law, P.L. 99-177) and amounts are not permanently canceled, include the amount of budgetary resources temporarily withheld from obligation in special and trust fund accounts. Include amounts that are permanently canceled on line 6B. (If there are questions as to whether amounts are temporarily withheld, consult your OMB representative. Most amounts are permanently canceled and are shown on line 6B.)</li> </ul> <p>Identify the public law containing the restriction in a footnote. The Impoundment Control Act (2 U.S.C. 683–684) and the Antideficiency Act (31 U.S.C. 1512) are not valid authorizing citations for this line.</p>
Line 6. Permanently not available:	<i>For unexpired accounts:</i>
A. Cancellations of expired and no-year accounts (–)	<p>Amount of any budgetary resources canceled in no-year accounts pursuant to 31 U.S.C. 1555 or withdrawn.</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>For the final September 30 report before an account will be closed, all remaining unobligated and obligated balances must be canceled.</p> <p>To present these unobligated balances as canceled, remove the amounts from lines 9 or 10 and include them here, as a negative. To report obligated balances as canceled, include the amount on line 4A, as a positive, and on this line as a negative.</p>
B. Enacted reductions (–)	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of enacted account-specific rescissions including rescissions of new appropriations, borrowing authority, contract authority, and prior year balances.</p> <p>Amount of across-the-board reductions in budget authority (percentage or other) mandated in appropriations law to be reduced from more than one account and authorizes the agency head or other Executive Branch official to distribute the reduction to affected accounts.</p> <p>Amount of budgetary resources permanently canceled by sequester ordered by the President pursuant to the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985 (G-R-H law, P.L. 99-177).</p> <p><i>This line applies to only permanent reductions for budgetary resources returned to the general fund of the Treasury and not available for subsequent appropriation.</i></p>

Entry	Description
C. Capital transfers and redemption of debt (–)	<p><i>Identify the public law containing the restriction in a footnote.</i></p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p><i>Capital transfers and Redemption of debt (also known as "liquidation of debt").</i> Amount transferred to the general fund of the Treasury; that is, deposited to Treasury receipt accounts for "Earnings of Government-owned enterprises" or "Repayments of capital investment, Government-owned enterprises." These are non-expenditure transfers. Include interest obligations on line 8.</p> <p>For principal repayments to Treasury for debt outstanding, use collections on line 3 and other budgetary resources first to cover interest obligations on line 8. Include the balance to repay principal as a negative on this line.</p> <p>If the recovered amount on line 4 above was obligated against indefinite authority to borrow that was borrowed, then include the repayment to Treasury of the principal amount borrowed, as a negative, on this line. Enter the obligation and payment of interest to Treasury on lines 8 and 15A respectively.</p>
D. Other authority withdrawn (–)	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p><i>Excess appropriations to liquidate debt and contract authority.</i> — Include amounts withdrawn.</p> <p><i>Spending authority from offsetting collections to liquidate contract authority.</i>—Include amounts that are not available for new obligations.</p> <p><i>Indefinite authority.</i>—On the September 30 report, include on this line the amounts of indefinite borrowing authority and contract authority included on lines 1B and 1C that are <i>not</i> needed to cover obligations. In exceptional cases, include amounts of indefinite appropriations that are <i>not</i> needed to cover obligations and could not be reflected on line 1A.</p> <p><i>Authority to borrow.</i>—Do not include repayments of amounts borrowed from Treasury or other entities. Include repayments of principal on line 6C. Include obligations to pay interest on line 8.</p> <p><i>Portion substituted for borrowing authority.</i>—Include the portion of appropriations or spending authority from offsetting collections used to liquidate obligations initially incurred against authority to borrow when the borrowing is not exercised.</p> <p>If the recovered amount on line 4A above was obligated against indefinite authority to borrow that was <i>not</i> borrowed or <i>unfunded</i> contract authority, then include the actual amount recovered, as a negative, on this line.</p>
E. Pursuant to Public Law ____ (–)	<p>Identify the public law containing the restriction in a footnote.</p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Include amounts appropriated that are not available for new obligations pursuant to the appropriations act. For example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appropriations to liquidate contract authority.</li> <li>• Appropriations to liquidate debt.</li> </ul>

Entry	Description
	<p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of balances that have been canceled due to reappropriation.</p>
F. Anticipated rest of year (–)	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Estimates of amounts anticipated to be canceled or withdrawn during the remainder of the year for reasons specified for lines 6A, 6C and 6D under existing laws. Do not include pending rescissions.</p> <p>Use this line for reporting other transactions <i>only with prior approval of OMB.</i></p> <p>No amount should be on this line on the September 30 report.</p>
Line 7. Total budgetary resources	<p>Sum of amounts shown on lines 1 through 6. For SF 132, this amount represents the total amount of budgetary resources available for apportionment in the fiscal year for which the schedule is being submitted.</p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>This amount will differ from the amount on line 7 on the latest SF 132 to the extent that individual amounts have changed that do not require the submission of a reappropriation request (see <a href="#">section 120.36</a>).</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>This amount is not available for new obligations. See <a href="#">sections 130.6–130.9</a> for additional instructions.</p>

In a limited number of cases, the following guidance applies to specific Treasury Appropriation Fund Symbols. Affected amounts are included on line 1A:

- *Appropriations of Specific Amounts of which "Not to Exceed" a Portion Remains Available Beyond the Remainder of the Appropriation.* In a limited number of cases, the basic amount of the appropriation is available for one year (or for a fixed amount of time) and the law permits "not to exceed" or "up to" a specific amount to be available for a longer period of time or until expended.

Initial apportionment requests for these accounts should display the maximum possible amount in the Treasury account with the extended availability and the balance in the Treasury account with the lesser time availability (on this line).

Note.--Treasury will warrant the full amount in the one-year account. You should move the funds to the account with the extended fund availability using the SF 1151. This movement of funds is not a transfer because the original appropriation is for the extended availability, even though the SF 1151 is titled "Non-expenditure Transfer of Funds."

If you subsequently determine that the maximum amount is not needed in the account with the extended availability, you should submit a reappropriation request proposing to transfer the funds to the account of lesser time availability. Show this transfer on line 1.D. "Budget authority: Net transfers," 2.B. "Unobligated balance: Net transfers, actual" or 2.C. "Unobligated balance: Anticipated transfers," as appropriate.

After OMB has approved the transfer, use the SF 1151 to transfer the funds to the account of lesser time availability. Such transfers are irreversible. That is, once the availability of funds is reduced, subsequent apportionments and SF 1151 may not extend the availability of these funds.

The SF 133 should reflect the treatment of these amounts as shown on the latest apportionment approved by OMB.

- *Interest on the public debt.* For the Interest on the Public Debt account, "interest" includes both the interest paid and the change in interest payable for public issues of Treasury debt securities and for certain special issues (i.e., Government account series) of Treasury debt securities—zero coupon bonds and DoD’s Education Benefits Fund, Military Retirement Fund, Defense Cooperation Fund, and Medicare-Eligible Retiree Health Care Fund. The change in interest payable will be warranted when paid.

**Use the entries in the following table to prepare the "Application of Budgetary Resources" section of the SF 132, Apportionment and Reapportionment Schedule (for unexpired accounts only).**

**APPLICATION OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES**

Entry	Description
Line 8. Apportioned:	<p>When both Category A and Category B are used, insert a descriptive label on the Category A line to distinguish the amounts apportioned by quarter from the remaining amounts.</p> <p>All apportioned amounts by activity, project or object (category B) should be positive. Amounts apportioned by time period (category A) may be negative in order to reduce the cumulative amounts available. (See <a href="#">exhibit 121I</a>).</p>
Category A	<p>Amount requested to be apportioned for each calendar quarter in the fiscal year.</p> <p>Apportionments previously approved are not subject to change after the close of the period for which the apportionment is made.</p> <p>Where the cumulative amount apportioned through the current period is to be decreased below the cumulative amount previously apportioned through the end of the preceding period, revise the amount apportioned for the current period to a negative amount (see <a href="#">exhibit 121I</a>).</p> <p>When (1) a continuing resolution provides funds retroactively for a funding hiatus, (2) apportionment of an account's usual source of budget authority is made after the first quarter, and (3) other resources are insufficient to cover operations for the first quarter, include a single amount for the period beginning with the first fiscal quarter and ending with the quarter in which the apportionment action is taken. Put a brace in the stub connecting the appropriate number of quarters.</p> <p>Refer to <a href="#">exhibit 121F</a>. Note that space is provided in the stub column under the title: "Memorandum: Obligations incurred" for you to include the amount of obligations incurred during each time period whenever funds are apportioned by time period. The actuals should be as of the date of the latest SF 133 if more recent amounts are not available. Identify the actual period covered by such amounts in a footnote.</p>

Entry	Description
<p>Category B</p>	<p>Amounts requested to be apportioned on a basis other than calendar quarters, such as time periods other than quarters, activities, projects, objects, or a combination thereof (See <a href="#">section 120.8</a>).</p> <p>Include in the stub column a line number (8B1 through 8Bn) and a description of the activity, project, or object for which funds are requested. Coordinate the line number assigned to each number with the preparer of the SF 133 so that the same line numbers are used. Once a number is assigned, it should be reserved for that activity, project, or object only. Also, include the amount of obligations incurred for each Category B item as of the latest SF 133, if more recent amounts are not available. The periods covered by such amounts should be the same as the period for Category A, and identified in the footnote.</p> <p>Where the SF 132 has insufficient space to list the categories by which apportionments are to be made or where apportionments are to be made both by activities (or projects or objects) and by time periods within the fiscal year, add lines to the SF 132. Other than adding lines to Category B, <i>changes should <u>not</u> be made to the SF 132 without prior approval by OMB</i>.</p>
<p>Category C</p>	<p>When you plan to obligate amounts appropriated in a no-year or multi-year TAFS over more than one fiscal year, you may propose to apportion funds planned for obligation after the current fiscal year into a subsequent fiscal year. Include the amount planned for obligation after the current fiscal year on line 8C, Apportioned for future fiscal years. OMB will <i>not</i> apportion annual TAFSs and the last year of multi-year TAFSs for periods longer than one fiscal year, as this would be an impoundment (i.e., a deferral during the year, and a de-facto rescission after the funds expire).</p>
<p>Line 9. Withheld pending rescission</p>	<p>For instructions on the use of this line, see <a href="#">section 112.3</a>.</p>
<p>Line 10. Deferred</p>	<p>For instructions on the use of this line, see <a href="#">section 112.3</a>.</p>
<p>Line 11. Unapportioned balance of revolving fund</p>	<p>This line will be used primarily for public enterprise funds, intragovernmental revolving funds, and trust funds that are subject to apportionment. For these types of funds, include the amount of budgetary resources that is not apportioned (made available for obligation) in order to preserve a portion of the fund's capital so it can continue to revolve and be available for its authorized purposes (see <a href="#">section 20.12(h)</a>).</p> <p>Typically, in a guaranteed loan financing account, include the uninvested funds that serve as a reserve against loan guarantee defaults on this line.</p> <p>Do <u>not</u> include amounts deferred or proposed for rescission on this line.</p> <p>The amount on this line should equal the amount shown on line 7, less the amounts apportioned on line 8, less any amounts withheld pending rescission on line 9 or deferred on line 10.</p>
<p>Line 12. Total status of budgetary resources</p>	<p>Sum of the amounts on lines 8, 9, 10, and 11. This amount equals the amount reported on line 7.</p>

Use the entries in the following table to prepare the "Status of Budgetary Resources" section of the SF 133, Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources (for unexpired accounts and expired accounts, including accounts about to be closed and annual fund symbols that are older than five years that have legally authorized extended disbursing authority).

STATUS OF BUDGETARY RESOURCES

Entry	Description
Line 8. Obligations incurred:	<p>You are required to report direct and reimbursable obligations. See <a href="#">section 83.5</a> for instructions on classifying obligations as direct versus reimbursable. In general, "direct obligations" means obligations not financed from reimbursements. In general, "reimbursable obligations" means obligations financed by offsetting collections that are payment to the performing account for goods and services provided to the ordering entity.</p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of obligations incurred from the beginning of the current fiscal year to the end of the reporting period, net of refunds received that pertain to obligations incurred in the current year.</p> <p>Include upward adjustments of prior obligations. Do not include cancellations or downward adjustments of obligations due to recoveries of prior year obligations reported on line 4. (See <a href="#">section 20.7</a> for a discussion of the concept of obligations.)</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of upward adjustments of obligations previously incurred. Upward adjustments are limited by the amount available for adjustments. No new obligations may be incurred against expired or canceled accounts. (See <a href="#">sections 130.6–130.10</a> on expired and canceled appropriations.) For downward adjustments, see line 4.</p>
A. Direct:	
1. Category A	Amount of direct obligations incurred against amounts apportioned under category A on the latest SF 132.
2. Total, Category B	<p>Amount of direct obligations incurred against amounts apportioned under category B on the latest SF 132. Use a separate line for each administrative subdivision identified on the latest SF 132.</p> <p>Category B detail information describes the type of activity, project, etc. apportioned on line 8 of the latest SF 132. Include this as a footnote and ensure that the detail adds to the total on line 8A2. Four alphanumeric characters are used to identify subcategories.</p>
3. Exempt from apportionment	Amount of direct obligations incurred for accounts that are exempt from apportionment.
B. Reimbursable:	
1. Category A	Amount of reimbursable obligations incurred against amounts apportioned under category A on the latest SF 132.
2. Total, Category B	Amount of reimbursable obligations incurred against amounts apportioned under category B on the latest SF 132. Use a separate line for each administrative subdivision identified on the latest SF 132.

Entry	Description
3. Exempt from apportionment	<p>Category B detail information describes the type of activity, project, etc. apportioned on line 8 of the latest SF 132. Include this as a footnote and make sure that the detail adds to the total on line 8B2. Four alphanumeric characters are used to identify subcategories.</p> <p>Amount of reimbursable obligations incurred for accounts that are exempt from apportionment.</p>
Line 9. Unobligated balance	
A. Apportioned:	
1. Balance currently available	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Include the balances of amounts apportioned under category A and category B, as well as amounts apportioned by letter from OMB or by OMB bulletin. Do not include amounts apportioned but still anticipated.</p> <p>For amounts apportioned under category A, include the difference between the amount apportioned through the current period and the obligations incurred under those apportionments through the end of the reporting period.</p> <p>Where category B apportionments are based upon time periods within the year, include the difference between the cumulative amount apportioned through the current period and the obligations incurred under those apportionments through the end of the reporting period. Where funds are apportioned for the year as a whole, this entry will equal the total amount thus apportioned less the obligations incurred under those apportionments through the end of the reporting period.</p> <p>When required by OMB, show the portion of the unobligated balance that represents commitments outstanding in a footnote.</p>
2. Anticipated (+ or -)	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount anticipated and apportioned year-to-date on the latest SF 132 less amounts no longer anticipated. The amount on this line should equal the sum of the apportioned amounts on lines 1E, 2C, 3C, 3D, 4B, and 6F that are still anticipated for the current period. The amounts not apportioned on these lines should be on line 10D.</p> <p>Although this amount is not immediately available for obligation, it will become available for obligation upon realization (i.e. upon actual receipt of the anticipated collection).</p>
B. Exempt from apportionment	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of the total unobligated balance available for obligation and anticipated in accounts exempt from apportionment.</p>
C. Other available	No amount should be on this line without prior approval of OMB.
Line 10. Unobligated balance not available:	
A. Apportioned for subsequent periods	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount apportioned by time periods (in both categories A and B) that will not become available for obligation until after the reporting period, as approved on the latest SF 132. This includes both actual and</p>



Entry	Description
B. Deferred	<p>anticipated amounts available in the subsequent periods.</p> <p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount deferred as shown on line 10 on the latest SF 132. This is the amount of budgetary resources being set aside for possible use at a later date (pursuant to a special message transmitted, or to be transmitted, by the President), before the funds expire.</p>
C. Withheld pending rescission	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount withheld pending rescission as shown on line 9 on the latest SF 132 (pursuant to a special message transmitted, or to be transmitted, by the President).</p>
D. Other	<p><i>For unexpired accounts:</i></p> <p>For other balances not available for obligation, include the unobligated balances of amounts that are not included on lines 8, 9, or 10 on the latest SF 132. Include amounts on lines 3 and 4 that exceed apportioned amounts.</p> <p>This entry will include any excess of budgetary resources realized over amounts estimated to become available for obligation on the latest SF 132, when such amounts exceed the parameters set forth in <a href="#">section 120.36</a>. (Do not use this line for accounts and funds that are not subject to apportionment. Unobligated balances of such accounts will be reported on line 9B.)</p> <p>This balance will be reported as a negative amount if budgetary resources (including estimates through the end of the year) are less than reported on the latest SF 132.</p> <p>If, on the September 30 report, a negative amount is reported on this line, the amount must be offset by remaining balances. For accounts that are apportioned, the offset must be against apportioned funds reported on line 9A1 or an apparent violation of the Antideficiency Act (31 U.S.C. 1341, 1342, or 1517) will have occurred. For accounts exempt from apportionment, the offset must be against line 9B or an apparent violation of the Antideficiency will have occurred. Unrealized budgetary resources will, in effect, be considered an offset against amounts apportioned (line 9A) or exempt from apportionment (line 9B) rather than an unobligated balance not available for obligation (line 10).</p> <p>This line will be used for the un-apportioned balance of public enterprise and intragovernmental revolving funds, as well as trust funds that are subject to apportionment. For these types of funds, include the amount shown on line 11 on the latest SF 132 (un-apportioned balance) plus the amount of upward adjustments in income until a reapportionment request is approved.</p> <p><i>Appropriated receipts.</i> For the September 30 report, exclude from this line the portion of receipts collected in the current year in special or trust funds that is <i>precluded from obligation</i> due to a provision of law. The full amount appropriated is on line 1A. The portion precluded from obligation is subtracted on line 5.</p> <p><i>For expired accounts:</i></p> <p>Amount of expired unobligated balances that have not been used for valid adjustments. (These amounts are no longer available for new</p>

Entry	Description
	obligations.) The amount on line 10D should be the difference between line 7 and line 8.  For the final September 30 report before an account will be closed, the amount on this line should be zero.
Line 11. Total status of budgetary resources	<i>For unexpired and expired accounts:</i>  Sum of the amounts on lines 8 through 10. This amount equals the amount on line 7.

Use the entries in the following table to prepare the "Relation of Obligations to Outlays" section of the *SF 133, Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources for unexpired accounts and expired accounts, including accounts about to be closed and annual fund symbols that are older than five years that have legally authorized extended disbursing authority*. Lines 12 through 15 are required for all quarters.

**RELATION OF OBLIGATIONS TO OUTLAYS**

Entry	Description
Line 12. Obligated balance, net as of October 1	<i>For unexpired and expired accounts:</i>  Unpaid obligations as of October 1 of the current fiscal year net of uncollected customer payments from other Federal Government accounts. This amount will equal the sum of the beginning balance of (a) accounts payable and (b) undelivered orders, minus (c) accounts receivable from other Federal Government accounts and the non-Federal (but only if specifically authorized by law to obligate against orders from the non-Federal), and (d) unfilled customers' orders from other Federal Government accounts not accompanied by an advance, unless specifically authorized by law to obligate against orders from the non-Federal. This line should equal line 14 of the final SF 133 for the preceding year.
Line 13. Obligated balance transferred, net (+ or -)	<i>For unexpired and expired accounts:</i>  Unpaid obligations net of uncollected customer payments from other Federal Government accounts actually transferred to (+) or from (-) the account during the current fiscal year. In the footnotes, list the individual accounts from which and to which the transfers have been made. Specify the amount to be transferred to (+) and from (-) each account.
Line 14. Obligated balance, net, end of period	<i>For unexpired and expired accounts:</i>  Unpaid obligations being carried forward to the subsequent period net of uncollected customer payments from other Federal Government accounts. If receivables from other Federal Government accounts and the non-Federal (but only if specifically authorized by law to obligate against orders from the non-Federal), are in excess of unpaid obligations at the end of the period, the total obligated balance will be a negative amount.  Do not include refunds receivable.

Entry	Description
	For the final September 30 report before an expired account will be closed, the amounts on these lines should be zero.
A. Accounts receivable (–)	Amount of accounts receivable from other Federal Government accounts and the non-Federal (but only if specifically authorized by law to obligate against orders from the non-Federal).
B. Unfilled customer orders from Federal sources (–)	Amount of unfilled customer orders from other Federal Government accounts not accompanied by an advance.  Do not include unfilled customer orders from other Federal Government accounts accompanied by an advance or from non-Federal sources with an advance. See line 3C.
C. Undelivered orders (+)	Amount of undelivered orders that have not been prepaid.
D. Accounts payable (+)	Amount owed by the account on the basis of invoices or other evidence of receipt of goods and services.
Line 15. Outlays:	The sum of lines 15A and 15B must agree with net outlays reported to Treasury on the SF 224, Statement of Transactions. For Non-Treasury Disbursing Offices, the equivalent of the SF 224 is the SF 1219, Statement of Accountability and SF 1220, Statement of Transactions.  The lines of the SF 133 are related to net outlays as follows and described in <a href="#">Exhibit 130I</a> :  $\text{Outlays} = \text{Lines } 8 - (3A + 3B + 3D + 4A) + 12 + \text{or} - 13 - (-14A - 14B + 14C + 14D)$
A. Disbursements (+)	For unexpired and expired accounts:  Amount of obligations paid. Includes payments in the form of cash (currency, checks, or electronic fund transfers) and in the form of debt instruments (bonds, debentures, notes, or monetary credits) when they are used to pay obligations. Include refunds of payments made in the current year.  For the Interest on the Public Debt account, "interest" includes both the interest paid and the change in interest payable for public issues of Treasury debt securities and for certain special issues (i.e., Government account series) of Treasury debt securities (see <a href="#">section 20.6</a> ).  This is also known as "Outlays (gross)." This is a positive amount.
B. Collections (–)	Amount of reimbursements from other Federal Government accounts and other collections credited to the account from the beginning of the year to the end of the reporting period.  Include refunds of payments originally made in <b>prior</b> fiscal years that are received in the <b>current fiscal year</b> .  Note: Refunds of payments made in the current fiscal year are netted against line 8.  This is also known as "Offsetting collections (cash)." This is a negative amount.

While the above entries include tables to prepare the *SF 133, Report on Budget Execution and Budgetary Resources* (for unexpired accounts and expired accounts, including accounts about to be closed and annual fund symbols that are older than five years that have legally authorized extended disbursing authority), the Statement of Budgetary Resources is a financial statement that mimics the SF 133 format and includes the following additional lines:

Entry	Description
Line 3E. Subtotal	Sum of lines 3A1 + 3A2 + 3B1 + 3B2 + 3C + 3D1 + 3D2.
Line 8c. Subtotal	Sum of lines 8A1 + 8A2 + 8A3 + 8B1 + 8B2 + 8B3.
Line 15c. Subtotal	Sum of lines 15A + 15B.
Line 16. Less: Offsetting receipts	<p>Amounts credited to general, special or trust fund receipt accounts and distributed by agency and function from gross budget authority and outlays to produce net budget authority and outlays. The amounts are not offset at the TAFS-level but at the agency-level.</p> <p>Includes cash proprietary receipts from the public, receipts from intragovernmental transactions, and offsetting governmental receipts. The amount of offsetting receipts that are distributed to agencies and reported in this statement shall agree with the deductions for offsetting receipts as reported in the Budget (see <a href="#">OMB Bulletin 01-09 "Form and Content of Agency Financial Statements" section 6.7 for further details</a>).</p>
Line 15c. Subtotal	Sum of lines 15C – 16.

**APPENDIX G—CROSSWALK BETWEEN ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT AND TITLE 31  
OF THE U.S. CODE**

In 1982, Congress reworded and reorganized the language of the Antideficiency Act along with the rest of Title 31 of the United States Code. The intent of Congress was to modernize the language of the Act, without changing its meaning. This appendix presents a crosswalk between the provisions of law that made up the Antideficiency Act before it was modernized and the current language.

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
<p>The following contains the provisions of the Antideficiency Act, formerly section 3679 of the Revised Statutes, and section 210 of the General Government Matters Appropriation Act, 1958. (Formerly 31 U.S.C. 665, 665a, and 669.)</p>	<p>The following provides the section in Title 31 that was enacted without substantive change. Revisions to the 1982 law are italicized.</p>
<p><b>665 Appropriation</b></p> <p><b>(a) Expenditures or contract obligations in excess of funds prohibited</b></p> <p>No officer or employee of the United States shall make or authorize any expenditure from or create or authorize an obligation under any appropriation or fund in excess of the amount available therein: nor shall any such officer or employee involve the Government in any contract or other obligation, or the payment of money for any purpose, in advance of appropriations made for such purpose, unless such contract or obligation is authorized by law.</p>	<p><b>Section 1341:</b></p> <p>(a)(1) An officer or employee of the United States Government or the District of Columbia government may not—</p> <p>(A) make or authorize an expenditure or obligation exceeding an amount available in an appropriation or fund for the expenditure or obligation;</p> <p>(B) involve either government in a contract or obligation for the payment of money before an appropriation is made unless authorized by law;</p> <p>(C) make or authorize an expenditure or obligation of funds required to be sequestered under section 252 of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985; or</p> <p><i>(D) involve either government in a contract or obligation for the payment of money required to be sequestered under section 252 of the Balanced Budget and Emergency Deficit Control Act of 1985.</i></p>
<p><b>(b) Voluntary service forbidden</b></p> <p>No officer or employee of the United States shall accept voluntary service for the United States or employ personal service in excess of that authorized by law, except in cases of emergency involving the safety of human life or the protection of property.</p>	<p><b>Section 1342:</b></p> <p>An officer or employee of the United States Government or of the District of Columbia government may not accept voluntary services for either government or employ personal services exceeding that authorized by law except for emergencies involving the safety of human life or the protection of property.</p> <p>This section does not apply to a corporation getting amounts to make loans (except paid in capital amounts) without legal liability of the United States Government. As used in this section, the term "emergencies involving the safety of human life or the protection of property" does not include ongoing, regular functions of government the suspension of which would not</p>

APPENDIX G—CROSSWALK BETWEEN  
ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT AND TITLE 31

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
	imminently threaten the safety of human life or the protection of property.
<p><b>(c) Apportionment of appropriations; reserves; distribution; review</b></p> <p>(1) Except as otherwise provided in this section, all appropriations or funds available for obligation for a definite period of time shall be so apportioned as to prevent obligation or expenditure thereof in a manner which would indicate a necessity for deficiency or supplemental appropriations for such period; and all appropriations or funds not limited to a definite period of time, and all authorizations to create obligations by contract in advance of appropriations, shall be so apportioned as to achieve the most effective and economical use thereof.</p>	<p><b>Section 1512:</b></p> <p>(a) Except as provided in this subchapter, an appropriation available for obligation for a definite period shall be apportioned to prevent obligation or expenditure at a rate that would indicate a necessity for a deficiency or supplemental appropriation for the period. An appropriation for an indefinite period and authority to make obligations by contract before appropriations shall be apportioned to achieve the most effective and economical use. An apportionment may be reapportioned under this section.</p>
<p>As used hereafter in this section, the term "appropriation" means appropriations, funds and authorizations to create obligations by contract in advance of appropriations.</p>	<p><b>Section 1511:</b></p> <p>(a) In this subchapter, "appropriations" means—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) appropriated amounts;</li> <li>(2) funds; and</li> <li>(3) authority to make obligations by contract before obligations.</li> </ul>
<p>(2) In apportioning any appropriation, reserves may be established solely to provide for contingencies, or to effect savings whenever savings are made possible by or through changes in requirements or greater efficiency of operations.</p>	<p><b>Section 1512(c):</b></p> <p>(1) In apportioning or reapportioning an appropriation, a reserve may be established only—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(A) to provide for contingencies;</li> <li>(B) to achieve savings made possible by or through changes in requirements or greater efficiency of operations; or</li> <li>(C) as specifically provided by law.</li> </ul>
<p>Whenever it is determined by an officer designated in subsection (d) of this section to make apportionments and reapportionments that any amount so reserved will not be required to carry out the full objectives and scope of the appropriation concerned, he shall recommend the rescission of such amount in the manner provided in the Budget and Accounting Act, 1921 (31 U.S.C. 1 <i>et seq.</i>), for estimates of appropriations. Except as specifically provided by particular appropriations acts or other laws, no reserves shall be established other than as authorized by this subsection. Reserves established pursuant to this subsection shall be reported to the Congress in accordance with the Impoundment Control Act of 1974 (31 U.S.C. 1400 <i>et seq.</i>).</p>	<p><b>Section 1512(c):</b></p> <p>(2) A reserve established under this subsection may be changed as necessary to carry out the scope and objectives of the appropriation concerned. When an official designated in section 1513 of this title to make apportionments decides that an amount reserved will not be required to carry out the objectives and scope of the appropriation concerned, the official shall recommend the rescission of the amount in the way provided in chapter 11 of this title for appropriation requests. Reserves established under this section shall be reported to Congress as provided in the Impoundment Control Act of 1974 (2 U.S.C. 681 <i>et seq.</i>).</p>
<p>(3) Any appropriation subject to apportionment shall be distributed by months, calendar quarters,</p>	<p><b>Section 1512(b):</b></p> <p>(1) An appropriation subject to apportionment is</p>

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
<p>operating seasons, or other time periods, or by activities, functions, projects, or objects, or by a combination thereof, as may be deemed appropriate by the officers designated in subsection (d) of this section to make apportionments and reapportionments. Except as otherwise specified by the officer making the apportionment, amounts so apportioned shall remain available for obligation, in accordance with the terms of the appropriation, on a cumulative basis unless reapportioned.</p>	<p>apportioned by—</p> <p>(A) months, calendar quarters, operating seasons, or other time periods;</p> <p>(B) activities, functions, projects, or objects; or</p> <p>(C) a combination of the ways referred to in clauses (A) and (B) of this paragraph.</p> <p>(2) The official designated in section 1513 of this title to make apportionments shall apportion an appropriation under paragraph (1) of this subsection as the official considers appropriate. Except as specified by the official, an amount apportioned is available for obligation under the terms of the appropriation on a cumulative basis unless reapportioned.</p>
<p>(4) Apportionments shall be reviewed at least four times each year by the officers designated in subsection (d) of this section to make apportionments and reapportionments, and such reapportionments made or such reserves established, modified, or released as may be necessary to further the effective use of the appropriation concerned, in accordance with the purposes stated in paragraph (1) of this subsection.</p>	<p><b>Section 1512:</b></p> <p>(d) An apportionment or a reapportionment shall be reviewed at least 4 times a year by the official designated in section 1513 of this title to make apportionments.</p> <p><b>Section 1512(a) the last sentence:</b></p> <p>... An apportionment may be reapportioned under this section.</p>
<p><b>(d) Officers controlling apportionment or reapportionment</b></p> <p>(1) Any appropriation available to the legislative branch, the judiciary, the United States International Trade Commission, or the District of Columbia, which is required to be apportioned under subsection (c) of this section, shall be apportioned or reapportioned in writing by the officer having administrative control of such appropriation. Each such appropriation shall be apportioned not later than thirty days before the beginning of the fiscal year for which the appropriation is available, or not more than thirty days after approval of the Act by which the appropriation is made available, whichever is later.</p>	<p><b>Section 1513:</b></p> <p>(a) The official having administrative control of an appropriation available to the legislative branch, the judicial branch, the United States International Trade Commission, or the District of Columbia government that is required to be apportioned under section 1512 of this title shall apportion the appropriation in writing. An appropriation shall be apportioned not later than the later of the following:</p> <p>(1) 30 days before the beginning of the fiscal year for which the appropriation is available; or</p> <p>(2) 30 days after the date of enactment of the law by which the appropriation is made available.</p>
<p>(2) Any appropriation available to an agency, which is required to be apportioned under subsection (c) of this section, shall be apportioned or reapportioned in writing by the Director of the Office of Management and Budget. The head of each agency to which any such appropriation is available shall submit to the Office of Management and Budget information, in such form and manner and at such time or times as the Director may prescribe, as may be required for the apportionment of such appropriation. Such information shall be submitted not later than forty days before the beginning of any fiscal year for which the appropriation is available, or not more than fifteen days</p>	<p><b>Section 1513(b):</b></p> <p>(1) The President shall apportion in writing an appropriation available to an executive agency (except the Commission) that is required to be apportioned under section 1512 of this title. The head of each executive agency to which the appropriation is available shall submit to the President information required for the apportionment in the form and the way and at the time specified by the President. The information should be submitted not later than the later of the following:</p>

**APPENDIX G—CROSSWALK BETWEEN  
ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT AND TITLE 31**

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
<p>after approval of the Act by which such appropriation is made available, whichever is later. The Director of the Office of Management and Budget shall apportion each such appropriation and shall notify the agency concerned of his action not later than twenty days before the beginning of the fiscal year for which the appropriation is available or not more than thirty days after approval of the Act by which such appropriation is made available, whichever is later.</p>	<p>(A) 40 days before the beginning of the fiscal year for which the appropriation is available; or</p> <p>(B) 15 days after the date of enactment of the law by which the appropriation is made available.</p> <p>(2) The President shall notify the head of the executive agency of the action taken in apportioning the appropriation under paragraph (1) of this subsection not later than the later of the following:</p> <p>(A) 20 days before the beginning of the fiscal year for which the appropriation is available; or</p> <p>(B) 30 days after the date of enactment of the law by which the appropriation is made available.</p>
<p>When used in this section, the term "agency" means any executive department, agency, commission, authority, administration, board, or other independent establishment in the executive branch of the Government, including any corporation wholly or partly owned by the United States which is an instrumentality of the United States.</p>	<p><b>Section 101:</b></p> <p>In this title, "agency" means a department, agency, or instrumentality of the United States Government.</p> <p><b>Also, section 102:</b></p> <p>In this title, "executive agency" means department, agency, or instrumentality in the executive branch of the United States Government.</p>
<p>Nothing in this subsection shall be so construed as to interfere with the initiation, operation, and administration of agricultural price support programs and no funds (other than funds for administrative expenses) available for price support, surplus removal, and available under section 612c of title 7, with respect to agricultural commodities shall be subject to apportionment pursuant to this section.</p>	<p><b>Section 1513:</b></p> <p>(e) This section does not affect the initiation and operation of agriculture price support programs.</p> <p><b>Also, section 1511:</b></p> <p>(b) This subchapter does not apply to—</p> <p>(1) amounts (except amounts for administrative expenses) available—</p> <p>(A) for price support and surplus removal of agricultural commodities; and</p> <p>(B) under section 32 of the Act of August 24, 1935 (7 U.S.C. 612c);</p>
<p>The provisions of this section shall not apply to any corporation which obtains funds for making loans, other than paid in capital funds, without legal liability on the part of the United States.</p>	<p><b>Section 1341(a):</b></p> <p>(2) This subsection does not apply to a corporation getting amounts to make loans (except paid in capital amounts) without legal liability of the United States Government.</p> <p><b>Also, section 1342 (in part):</b></p> <p>... This section does not apply to a corporation getting amounts to make loans (except paid in capital amounts) without legal liability of the United States Government.</p> <p><b>Also, section 1511:</b></p> <p>(b) this subchapter does not apply to—</p>



THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
	(2) a corporation getting amounts to make loans (except paid in capital amounts) without legal liability on the part of the United States Government; and
<p><b>(e) Apportionment necessitating deficiency or supplemental estimates</b></p> <p>(1) No apportionment or reapportionment, or request therefore by the head of an agency, which, in the judgment of the officer making or the agency head requesting such apportionment or reapportionment, would indicate a necessity for a deficiency or supplemental estimate shall be made except upon a determination by such officer or agency head, as the case may be, that such action is required because of (A) any laws enacted subsequent to the transmission to the Congress of the estimates for an appropriation which require expenditures beyond administrative control; or (B) emergencies involving the safety of human life, the protection of property, or the immediate welfare of individuals in cases where an appropriation has been made to enable the United States to make payment of, or contributions toward, sums which are required to be paid to individuals either in specific amounts fixed by law or in accordance with formulae prescribed by law.</p>	<p><b>Section 1515(b):</b></p> <p>(1) Except as provided in subsection (a) of this section, an official may make, and the head of an agency may request, an apportionment under section 1512 of this title that would indicate a necessity for a deficiency or supplemental appropriation only when the official or agency head decides that the action is required because of—</p> <p>(A) a law enacted after submission to Congress of the estimates for an appropriation that requires an expenditure beyond administrative control; or</p> <p>(B) an emergency involving the safety of human life, the protection of property, or the immediate welfare of individuals when an appropriation that would allow the United States Government to pay, or contribute to, amounts required to be paid to individuals in specific amounts fixed by law or under formulas prescribed by law, is insufficient.</p>
<p>(2) In each case of an appropriation or a reapportionment which, in the judgment of the officer making such apportionment or reapportionment, would indicate a necessity for a deficiency or supplemental estimate, such officer shall immediately submit a detailed report of the facts of the case to the Congress. In transmitting any deficiency or supplemental estimates required on account of any such apportionment or reapportionment, reference shall be made to such report.</p>	<p><b>Section 1515(b):</b></p> <p>(2) If an official making an apportionment decides that an apportionment would indicate a necessity for a deficiency or supplemental appropriation, the official shall submit immediately a detailed report of the facts to Congress. The report shall be referred to in submitting a proposed deficiency or supplemental appropriation.</p>
<p><b>(f) Exemption of trust funds and working funds expenditures from apportionment</b></p> <p>(1) The officers designated in subsection (d) of this section to make apportionments and reapportionments may exempt from apportionments trust funds and working funds expenditures from which have no significant effect on the financial operations of the Government, working capital and revolving funds established for intragovernmental operations, receipts from industrial and power operations available under law and any appropriation made specifically for—</p> <p>(1) interest on, or retirement of, the public debt;</p> <p>(2) payment of claims, judgments, refunds, and draw-backs;</p> <p>(3) any item determined by the President to be of a confidential nature; (4) payment under private relief</p>	<p><b>Section 1516:</b></p> <p>An official designated in section 1513 of this title to make apportionments may exempt from apportionment –</p> <p>(1) a trust fund or working fund if an expenditure from the fund has no significant effect on the financial operations of the United States Government;</p> <p>(2) a working capital fund or a revolving fund established for intragovernmental operations;</p> <p>(3) receipts from industrial and power operations available under law; and</p> <p>(4) appropriations made specifically for—</p> <p>(A) interest on, or retirement of, the public debt;</p>

APPENDIX G—CROSSWALK BETWEEN  
ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT AND TITLE 31

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
<p>acts or other laws requiring payments to designated payees in the total amount of such appropriation; (5) grants to the States under title I, IV, or X of the Social Security Act (42 U.S.C. 301 <i>et seq.</i>, 1201 <i>et seq.</i>), or under any other public assistance title in such Act.</p>	<p>(B) payment of claims, judgments, refunds, and drawbacks;</p> <p>(C) items the President decides are of a confidential nature;</p> <p>(D) payment under a law requiring payment of the total amount of the appropriation to a designated payee; and</p> <p>(E) grants to the States under the Social Security Act (41 U.S.C. 301 <i>et seq.</i>).</p>
<p>(2) The provisions of subsection (c) of this section shall not apply to appropriations to the Senate or House of Representatives or to any Member, committee, Office (including the office of the Architect of the Capitol), officer, or employee thereof.</p>	<p><b>Section 1511:</b></p> <p>(b) This subchapter does not apply to—</p> <p>(3) the Senate, the House of Representatives, a committee of Congress, a member, officer, employee, or office of either House of Congress, or the office of the Architect of the Capitol or an officer or employee of that Office.</p>
<p><b>(g) Administrative division of apportionment; simplification of system for subdividing funds</b></p> <p>Any appropriation which is apportioned or reapportioned pursuant to this section may be divided and subdivided administratively within the limits of such apportionments or reapportionments. The officer having administrative control of any such appropriation available to the legislative branch, the judiciary, the United States International Trade Commission, or the District of Columbia, and the head of each agency, subject to the approval of the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, shall prescribe, by regulation, a system of administrative control (not inconsistent with any accounting procedures prescribed by or pursuant to law) which shall be designed to (A) restrict obligations or expenditures against each appropriation to the amount of apportionments or reapportionments made for each such appropriation, and (B) enable such officer or agency head to fix responsibility for the creation of any obligation or the making of any expenditure in excess of an apportionment or reapportionment.</p>	<p><b>Section 1513:</b></p> <p>(d) An appropriation apportioned under this subchapter may be divided and subdivided administratively within the limits of the apportionment.</p> <p><b>Section 1514:</b></p> <p>(a) The official having administrative control of an appropriation available to the legislative branch, the judicial branch, the United States International Trade Commission, or the District of Columbia government, and, subject to the approval of the President, the head of each executive agency (except the Commission) shall prescribe by regulation a system of administrative control not inconsistent with accounting procedures prescribed under law. The system shall be designed—</p> <p>(1) to restrict obligations or expenditures from each appropriation to the amount of apportionments or reapportionments of the appropriation; and</p> <p>(2) to enable the official or the head of the executive agency to fix responsibility for an obligation or expenditure exceeding an apportionment or reapportionment.</p>
<p>In order to have a simplified system for the administrative subdivision of appropriations or funds, each agency shall work toward the objective of financing each operating unit, at the highest practical level, from not more than one administrative subdivision for each appropriation or fund affecting such unit.</p>	<p>(b) To have a simplified system for administratively dividing appropriations, the head of each executive agency (except the Commission) shall work toward the objective of financing each operating unit, at the highest practical level, from not more than one administrative division for each appropriation affecting the unit.</p>

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
<p><b>(h) Expenditures in excess of apportionment; penalties</b></p> <p>No officer or employee of the United States shall authorize or create any obligation or make any expenditure (A) in excess of an apportionment or reapportionment, or (B) in excess of the amount permitted by regulations prescribed pursuant to subsection (g) of this section.</p>	<p><b>Section 1517:</b></p> <p>(a) An officer or employee of the United States Government or of the District of Columbia government may not make or authorize an expenditure or obligation exceeding—</p> <p>(1) an apportionment; or</p> <p>(2) the amount permitted by regulations prescribed under section 1514(a) of this title.</p>
<p><b>(i) Administrative discipline; reports on violation</b></p> <p>(1) In addition to any penalty of liability under other law, any officer or employee of the United States who shall violate subsections (a), (b), or (h) of this section shall be subjected to appropriate administrative discipline, including, when circumstances warrant, suspension from duty without pay or removal from office;</p>	<p><b>Section 1349:</b></p> <p>(a) An officer or employee of the United States Government or of the District of Columbia government violating section 1341(a) or 1342 of this title shall be subject to appropriate administrative discipline including, when circumstances warrant, suspension from duty without pay or removal from office.</p> <p><b>Also, section 1518:</b></p> <p>An officer or employee of the United States Government or of the District of Columbia government violating section 1517(a) of this title shall be subject to appropriate administrative discipline including, when circumstances warrant, suspension from duty without pay or removal from office.</p>
<p>And any officer or employee of the United States who shall knowingly and willfully violate subsections (a), (b), or (h) of this section shall, upon conviction, be fined not more than \$5,000 or imprisoned for not more than two years, or both.</p>	<p><b>Section 1350:</b></p> <p>An officer or employee of the United States Government or of the District of Columbia government knowingly and willfully violating section 1341(a) or 1342 of this title shall be fined not more than \$5,000, imprisoned for not more than two years, or both.</p> <p><b>Also, section 1519:</b></p> <p>An officer or employee of the United States Government or of the District of Columbia government knowingly and willfully violating section 1517(a) of this title shall be fined not more than \$5,000, imprisoned for not more than 2 years, or both.</p>
<p>(2) In the case of a violation of subsections (a), (b), or (h) of this section by an officer or employee of an agency, or of the District of Columbia, the head of the agency concerned or the Mayor of the District of Columbia, shall immediately report to the President, through the Director of the Office of Management and Budget, and to the Congress all pertinent facts together with a statement of the action thereon.</p>	<p><b>Section 1351:</b></p> <p>If an officer or employee of an executive agency or an officer or employee of the District of Columbia government violates section 1341(a) or 1342 of this title, the head of the agency or the Mayor of the District of Columbia, as the case may be, shall report immediately to the President and Congress all relevant facts and a statement of actions taken.</p> <p><b>Also, section 1517:</b></p> <p>(b) If an officer or employee of an executive agency or of the District of Columbia government violates subsection (a) of this section, the head of the executive</p>

APPENDIX G—CROSSWALK BETWEEN  
ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT AND TITLE 31

THE ANTIDEFICIENCY ACT	TITLE 31—MONEY AND FINANCE
	agency or the Mayor of the District of Columbia, as the case may be, shall report immediately to the President and Congress all relevant facts and a statement of actions taken.
<p><b>31 U.S.C. 665a. Basis of apportionment; need for funds for increased compensation for wage-board employees</b></p> <p>On and after June 5, 1957, any appropriation required to be apportioned pursuant to section 665 of this title, may be apportioned on a basis indicating the need for a supplemental or deficiency estimate of appropriation to the extent necessary to permit payment of such pay increases as may be granted those employees (commonly known as wage-board employees) whose compensation is fixed and adjusted from time to time in accordance with prevailing rates (5 U.S.C. 5102(c)(7), 5341 <i>et seq.</i>).</p>	<p><b>Section 1515:</b></p> <p>(a) An appropriation required to be apportioned under section 1512 of this title may be apportioned on a basis that indicates the need for a deficiency or supplemental appropriation to the extent necessary to permit payment of <i>such pay increases as may be granted pursuant to law to civilian officers and employees (including prevailing rate employees whose pay is fixed and adjusted under subchapter IV of chapter 53 of title 5) and to retired and active military personnel</i></p>
<p><b>31 U.S.C. 669. Apportionment of contingent funds of departments to offices and bureaus (the following passage occurs in section 669 before the semicolon)</b></p> <p>In addition to the apportionment required by section 665 of this title, the head of each executive department shall, on or before the beginning of each fiscal year, apportion to each office or bureau of his department the maximum amount to be expended therefor during the fiscal year out of the contingent fund or funds appropriated for the entire year for the department, and the amounts so apportioned shall not be increased or diminished during the year for which made except upon the written direction of the head of the department, in which there shall be fully expressed his reasons therefore.</p>	<p><b>Section 1513:</b></p> <p>(c) By the first day of each fiscal year, the head of each executive department of the United States Government shall apportion among the major organizational units of the department the maximum amount to be expended by each unit during the fiscal year out of each contingent fund appropriated for the entire year for the department. Each amount may be changed during the fiscal year only by written direction of the head of the department. The direction shall state the reasons for the change.</p>
<p><b>31 U.S.C. 669 Apportionment of use of contingent funds by DC (the following passage occurs in section 669 after the semicolon)</b></p> <p>and there shall not be purchased out of any other fund any article for use in any office or bureau of any executive department, in Washington, District of Columbia, which could be purchased out of appropriations made for the regular contingent funds of such department or of its offices and bureaus.</p>	<p><b>Section 1341:</b></p> <p>(b) An article to be used by an executive department in the District of Columbia that could be bought out or an appropriation made to a regular contingent fund of the department may not be bought out of another amount available for obligation.</p>

## APPENDIX H—CHECKLIST FOR FUND CONTROL REGULATIONS

You must include the following items in the fund control regulations you submit to OMB for approval.

**1. Statement of purpose.** At a minimum, your regulations should state broadly that their purpose is to prescribe procedures to follow in budget execution and specify basic fund control principles and concepts.

Your regulations should state that they:

- Establish policy with regard to the administrative control of funds.
- Prescribe a system for positive administrative control of funds designed to restrict obligations and expenditures (disbursements) to the amount available in each appropriation or fund account.
- Restrict *both* obligations and expenditures from each appropriation or fund account to *the lower of* the amount of apportionments made by OMB or the amount available for obligation and/or expenditure in the appropriation or fund account.
- Enable the head of your agency to identify the person responsible for any obligation or expenditure exceeding the amount available in the appropriation or fund account, the OMB apportionment or reapportionment, the allotment or suballotments made by the agency, any statutory limitations, and any other administrative subdivision of funds made by the agency.
- Provide procedures for dealing with violations of the Antideficiency Act as well as violations of other administrative subdivision of funds that are not violations of the Antideficiency Act, per se.

**2. Authority.** At a minimum, you should list the following authorities in the regulations:

- Money and Finance. [Title 31, United States Code](#):
  - ▶ Sections 1341–1342, 1349–1351, 1511–1519 (part of the Antideficiency Act, as amended).
  - ▶ Sections 1101, 1104–1108, 3324 (part of the Budget and Accounting Act, 1921, as amended).
  - ▶ Sections 1501–1502 (part of section 1311 of the Supplemental Appropriations Act of 1950).
  - ▶ Sections 1112, 1531, 3511–3512, 3524 (part of the Budget and Accounting Procedures Act of 1950).
- Title X of P. L. 93–344, found at [2 U.S.C. 681–688](#).
- Part 4 of OMB Circular No. A–11, "Instructions on Budget Execution," and related OMB guidelines.
- Other pertinent laws governing your agency's funds and appropriate agency internal regulations, if any.

**3. Scope.** The regulations should state that all organizations, appropriations, and funds are subject to the provisions contained in them. If you want to make any exemptions, OMB must first approve them. Clearly identify all approved exemptions in the regulations.

**4. Definitions, terminology, and concepts.** Your regulations should have a section that specifies that the definitions, terminology, and concepts in OMB Circular No. A-11 apply. You may restrict this to terms that are peculiar to, or have special meaning within your agency, except that you should include the identical definition of the following terms found in OMB Circular No. A-11: apportionment, allotment, suballotment, administrative division or subdivision of funds, and agency limitations.

To the extent that OMB Circular No. A-11 or Treasury regulations do not provide a definition for a technical term, this section should include a definition for the term that your agency is proposing to use in the regulations.

**5. Responsibility and functions of individuals.** Your agency regulations should describe those individuals within the agency charged with fund control responsibilities by title or position. At a minimum, they should:

- List the positions and describe the fund control responsibilities of each.
- Explain each position's responsibilities with regard to investigating, reporting, and following up on Antideficiency Act violations, as well as violations of agency limitations that are not violations of the Antideficiency Act.

**6. Actions prohibited.** At a minimum, include the following:

- *Violations of the Antideficiency Act.* List all the basic actions prohibited by sections 1341, 1342, and 1517(a) of Title 31, U.S. Code (part of the Antideficiency Act), as they are interpreted and applied within your agency.
- *Violations of limitations that do not per se violate the Antideficiency Act.* List and briefly describe all your agency's imposed restrictions, including a statement describing the conditions under which violations of these restrictions also violate the Antideficiency Act.

**7. Penalties.** Describe all criminal penalties for violations of the Antideficiency Act, as well as any additional disciplinary measures your agency imposes. In addition, provide penalties for violations of agency limitations and requirements that your agency does not consider subject to provisions of the Antideficiency Act.

The law provides that any officer or employee of the United States who violates the prohibitions of [31 U.S.C. 1341\(a\), 1342, or 1517\(a\)](#) will be subject to appropriate administrative discipline. Administrative discipline may consist of:

- Letter of reprimand or censure for the official personnel record of the officer or employee.
- Unsatisfactory performance rating.
- Transfer to another position.
- Suspension from duty without pay.
- Removal from office.

In addition, the law provides that any officer or employee of the United States who knowingly and willfully violates these prohibitions shall be fined not more than \$5,000, imprisoned for not more than two years, or both.

**8. Reporting violations.** At a minimum, your regulations should prescribe procedures for reporting apparent violations to responsible agency officials and to the President and Congress. All violations must

be reported immediately upon discovery. Antideficiency Act violations must be reported by letter to the President, through OMB, signed by the head of the agency, and by letter to Congress.

Any individual who knows of a possible Antideficiency Act violation must report it. Specify who should be notified in your regulations.

Even though you take subsequent actions to correct the cause of a violation, it does not eliminate that violation, and you must still report it.

**9. Accounting support for fund control systems.** Your regulations must specify that the agency accounting system must fully support agency fund control systems. The accounting systems should provide for:

- Recording all financial transactions affecting: apportionments; reapportionments; allotments; agency restrictions; financial plans; program operating plans; obligations and expenditures; as well as anticipated, earned, and collected reimbursements.
- Preparing and reconciling financial reports that display cumulative obligations, and the remaining unobligated balance by appropriation and allotment, and cumulative obligations by budget activity and object class.

**10. Apportionment procedures.** Normally, you describe agency procedures for requesting apportionment of funds in other directives or manuals. However, you should include the following as part of the fund control regulations:

- Briefly describe your agency's procedures for requesting the apportionment of funds. List position(s) and organizations responsible for making the request.
- Cite the basic internal agency directives covering the apportionment of funds. At your option, you may include general guidance covering apportionment action in connection with the following:
  - ▶ Supplementals.
  - ▶ Reprogramming.
  - ▶ Transfer between accounts.
- Discuss agency administrative control of funds policies that apply specifically to revolving funds, management funds, and trust funds, including those that are not apportioned. If any of these funds are not subject to the basic provisions of this regulations (see above), describe the procedures used to control them in a separate section.

**11. Policy on allotments and suballotments.** Include the general policy that allotments and suballotments will be established at the highest practical level, and each operating unit will be financed from no more than one subdivision for each appropriation or fund (the Antideficiency Act establishes these objectives). Specify the criteria for changing the allotment structure, and identify who has authority to approve such changes. Emphasize that allotments and suballotments are subject to the provisions of the Antideficiency Act.

Include the following in the section on allotments and suballotments:

- Function and purpose of allotments and suballotments.
- Restrictions:

- ▶ The sum of allotment amounts issued will not exceed the apportionment.
- ▶ The sum of suballotment amounts issued will not exceed the allotment amount.
- ▶ The amounts of allotments or other administrative subdivisions will be fixed and will be changed only when authorized by the authority who initially issued the subdivision.
- ▶ Congressional restrictions contained in appropriation acts will be enforced.
- ▶ Other restrictions which your agency may want with respect to administrative subdivisions. Use this Circular as a guide. However, you may establish more stringent requirements for the allotment of anticipated budgetary resources.
- Allotment procedures:
  - ▶ Make allotments and suballotments using formal documents.
  - ▶ Identify the officers authorized to issue allotments and suballotments as well as the officers and employees authorized to reduce them.
  - ▶ At a minimum, document the following:
    - A. Amount available.
    - B. Funding source (for example, appropriations, reimbursements).
    - C. Time period of availability.
    - D. The position title of the official responsible and other agency limitations.
    - E. Justification for changes in allotments. (In some cases, changes in allotments will create the need for a reapportionment, which requires OMB approval.)

**12. Treatment of anticipated budgetary resources already enacted into law.** Your agency's fund control regulations should state that apportionments may include estimated amounts of "anticipated" budgetary resources that are the result of *laws already enacted*. This is done to reduce routine reapportionments of such amounts as they actually become available. These are presented on the SF 132 and SF 133 on the following lines:

- Line 1E, anticipated increases (+) in budget authority (including anticipated transfers of new budget authority) into the account and anticipated decreases (-) from the account;
- Line 2C, anticipated transfers of balances of budget authority into the account (+) and out of the account (-);
- Line 3C, anticipated orders without an advance and anticipated refunds (+);
- Line 3D2, anticipated transfers from trust funds into the account (+);
- Line 4B, anticipated recoveries of prior year obligations (+); and
- Line 6F, anticipated permanent reductions (-).



You may choose not to allot amounts *anticipated to increase* (+) the total budgetary resources, even though the amount has been apportioned, until the increase actually occurs.

Alternatively, you may choose to allot amounts *anticipated to increase* the total budgetary resources before the increase actually occurs. If you choose this alternative, then the fund control regulations must require that all officials or employees who receive allotments of anticipated increases in budgetary resources should maintain constant and careful oversight to insure that these amounts materialize before they incur obligations or expenditures against this type of allotment. The regulations must also require that if actual amounts are less than anticipated, the agency will make appropriate funding adjustments and take other appropriate actions including requesting a reapportionment.

The *anticipated decreases* (–) under current law do not become part of the amount of total budgetary resources available to be apportioned. Since the OMB apportionment will not include these amounts, these amounts must not be allotted.

**13. Deficiency apportionments.** At a minimum, the regulations should state:

- Apportionments that anticipate the need for a deficiency appropriation or a supplemental under [31 U.S.C. 1515](#) will be specifically identified on the apportionment request (SF 132).
- To qualify as a deficiency apportionment, the request must be required by:
  - ▶ Laws enacted subsequent to the transmittal of the annual budget for the year to Congress;
  - ▶ Emergencies involving human life, the protection of property, or the immediate welfare of individuals; or
  - ▶ Specific authorization by law.
- When OMB approves a deficiency apportionment and transmits it to Congress, OMB is merely notifying the Congress that funds appropriated to date are being obligated at a more rapid rate than previously anticipated. This notification does not guarantee that the Congress will approve any part of any associated supplemental requests and does not authorize the use of any amounts not yet provided.



APPENDIX I—LIST OF FACTS II REPORTING PROVIDERS

**Summary of Changes**

Contact information was updated in March, 2003.

You may hire private contractors or other agencies to prepare and submit your FACTS II data. The following public service providers may be available; phone, address, and web information were last updated in March, 2003. This list is not exhaustive, and is only intended to show examples of agencies that provide these services. Inclusion on the list does not constitute an OMB recommendation.

<p>Department of Agriculture National Finance Center Customer Service Branch P.O. Box 60000 New Orleans, LA 70160 (504) 255-7801 <a href="http://www.nfc.usda.gov">http://www.nfc.usda.gov</a></p>	<p>Department of the Interior National Business Center Products and Services, Mail Stop D-2760 7301 West Mansfield Avenue Denver, CO 80235 (303) 969-7780 x2514 <a href="http://www.nbc.gov">http://www.nbc.gov</a></p>
<p>Department of the Treasury Bureau of Public Debt Administrative Resource Center Franchise Accounting Services Branch UMB Building, 8th Floor Parkersburg, WV 26106 (304) 480-7227 <a href="http://arc.publicdebt.treas.gov/fs/fsacctgstaff.htm">http://arc.publicdebt.treas.gov/fs/fsacctgstaff.htm</a></p>	<p>Department of the Treasury Financial Management Service Center for Applied Financial Management 1990 K ST. NW, Suite 300 Washington, DC 20006 (202) 874-9550 <a href="http://www.fms.treas.gov/tas/about_acctops.html">http://www.fms.treas.gov/tas/about_acctops.html</a></p>
<p>General Services Administration Agency Liaison Division 7th &amp; D Streets, SW Washington, DC 20407 (202) 708-5702 <a href="http://www.gsa.gov">http://www.gsa.gov</a></p>	



---

**APPENDIX J—PRINCIPLES OF BUDGETING FOR CAPITAL ASSET ACQUISITIONS****Introduction and Summary**

The Administration plans to use the following principles in budgeting for capital asset acquisitions. These principles address planning, costs and benefits, financing, and risk management requirements that should be satisfied before a proposal for the acquisition of capital assets can be included in the Administration's budget. A Glossary describes key terms. OMB has also published the *Capital Programming Guide* (June 1997), a Supplement to this Circular. The *Guide* is a basic reference on principles and techniques for planning, budgeting, acquisition, and management of capital assets. Agencies should consult the *Guide* when preparing their capital plans and developing their budget requests from their capital plans.

The principles are organized in the following four sections:

- A. *Planning*. This section focuses on the need to ensure that capital assets support core/priority missions of the agency; the assets have demonstrated a projected return on investment that is clearly equal to or better than alternative uses of available public resources; the risk associated with the assets is understood and managed at all stages; and the acquisition is implemented in phased, successive segments, unless it can be demonstrated there are significant economies of scale at acceptable risk from funding more than one segment or there are multiple units that need to be acquired at the same time.
- B. *Costs and Benefits*. This section emphasizes that the asset should be justified primarily by benefit-cost analysis, including life-cycle costs; that all costs are understood in advance; and that cost, schedule, and performance goals are identified that can be measured using an earned value management system.
- C. *Principles of Financing*. This section stresses that useful segments are to be fully funded with regular or advance appropriations, or both; that as a general rule, planning segments should be financed separately from procurement of the asset; and that agencies are encouraged to aggregate assets in capital acquisition accounts and take other steps to accommodate lumpiness or "spikes" in funding for justified acquisitions.
- D. *Risk Management*. This section is to help ensure that risk is analyzed and managed carefully in the acquisition of the asset. Strategies can include separate accounts for capital asset acquisitions, the use of apportionment to encourage sound management, and the selection of efficient types of contracts and pricing mechanisms in order to allocate risk appropriately between the contractor and the Government. In addition, cost, schedule, and performance goals are to be controlled and monitored by using an earned value management system; and if progress toward these goals is not met, there is a formal review process to evaluate whether the acquisition should continue or be terminated.

As defined here, capital assets are generally land, structures, equipment, and intellectual property (including software) that are used by the Federal Government, including weapon systems. Not included are grants to States or others for their acquisition of capital assets. A complete definition is provided in section 300.4.

**A. Planning**

Investments in major capital assets proposed for funding in the Administration's budget should:

1. Support core/priority mission functions that need to be performed by the Federal Government;

2. Be undertaken by the requesting agency because no alternative private sector or governmental source can support the function more efficiently;
3. Support work processes that have been simplified or otherwise redesigned to reduce costs, improve effectiveness, and make maximum use of commercial, off-the-shelf technology;
4. Demonstrate a projected return on the investment that is clearly equal to or better than alternative uses of available public resources. Return may include: improved mission performance in accordance with measures developed pursuant to the Government Performance and Results Act; reduced cost; increased quality, speed, or flexibility; and increased customer and employee satisfaction. Return should be adjusted for such risk factors as the investment's technical complexity, the agency's management capacity, the likelihood of cost overruns, and the consequences of under- or non-performance;
5. For information technology investments, be consistent with Federal and agency enterprise architectures, which: integrate agency work processes and information flows with technology to achieve the agency's strategic goals; reflect the agency's technology vision; specify standards that enable information exchange and resource sharing, while retaining flexibility in the choice of suppliers and in the design of local work processes; and ensure that security is built into and funded as part of the enterprise architecture in accordance with OMB Memorandum M-00-07: "Incorporating and Funding Security in Information Systems Investments (February 28, 2000)";
6. Reduce risk by: avoiding or isolating custom-designed components to minimize the potential adverse consequences on the overall investment; using fully tested pilots, simulations, or prototype implementations when necessary before going to production; establishing clear measures and accountability for investment progress; and, securing substantial involvement and buy-in throughout the investment from the program officials who will use the system;
7. Be implemented in phased, successive segments as narrow in scope and brief in duration as practicable, each of which solves a specific part of an overall mission problem and delivers a measurable net benefit independent of future segments, unless it can be demonstrated that there are significant economies of scale at acceptable risk from funding more than one segment or there are multiple units that need to be acquired at the same time; and
8. Employ an acquisition strategy that appropriately allocates risk between the Government and the contractor, effectively uses competition, ties contract payments to accomplishments, and takes maximum advantage of commercial technology.

Prototypes require the same justification as other capital assets.

As a general presumption, OMB will recommend new or continued funding only for those capital asset investments that satisfy these criteria. Funding for those investments will be recommended on a phased basis by segment, unless it can be demonstrated that there are significant economies of scale at acceptable risk from funding more than one segment or there are multiple units that need to be acquired at the same time.

OMB recognizes that many agencies are in the middle of ongoing investments, and they may not be able immediately to satisfy the criteria. For those investments that do not satisfy the criteria, OMB will consider requests to use FY 2002 and FY 2003 funds to finance additional planning, as necessary, to support the establishment of realistic cost, schedule, and performance goals for the completion of the investment. This planning could include: the redesign of work processes, the evaluation of alternative solutions, the development of information system architectures, and, if necessary, the purchase and

evaluation of prototypes. Realistic goals are necessary for agency portfolio analysis to determine the viability of the investment, to provide the basis for fully funding the investment to completion, and setting the baseline for management accountability to deliver the investment within goals.

Because OMB considers this information essential to agencies' long-term success, OMB will use this information both in preparing the Administration's budget and, in conjunction with cost, schedule, and performance data, as apportionments are made. Agencies are encouraged to work with their OMB representative to arrive at a mutually satisfactory process, format, and timetable for providing the requested information.

## **B. Costs and Benefits**

The justification of the investment should evaluate and discuss the extent to which the investment meets the above criteria and should also include:

- An analysis of the investment's total life-cycle costs and benefits, including the total budget authority required for the asset, consistent with policies described in OMB Circular A-94: *Guidelines and Discount Rates for Benefit-Cost Analysis of Federal Programs* (October 1992);
- An analysis of the risk of the investment including how risks will be isolated, minimized, monitored, and controlled, and, for major programs, an evaluation and estimate by the Chief Financial Officer of the probability of achieving the proposed cost goals;
- If, after the planning phase, the procurement is proposed for funding in segments, an analysis showing that the proposed segment is economically and programmatically justified--that is, it is programmatically useful if no further investments are funded, and in this application its benefits exceed its costs; and
- Cost, schedule, and performance goals for the investment (or the planning segment or useful asset being proposed) that can be measured throughout the acquisition process using a performance-based management system, e.g., Earned Value Management.

## **C. Principles of Financing**

### ***Principle 1: Full Funding***

Budget authority sufficient to complete a useful segment of a capital project (investment) (or the entire capital project, if it is not divisible into useful segments) must be appropriated before any obligations for the useful segment (or project) (or investment) may be incurred.

*Explanation:* Good budgeting requires that appropriations for the full costs of asset acquisition be enacted in advance to help ensure that all costs and benefits are fully taken into account at the time decisions are made to provide resources. Full funding with regular appropriations in the budget year also leads to tradeoffs within the budget year with spending for other capital assets and with spending for purposes other than capital assets. Full funding increases the opportunity to use performance-based fixed price contracts, allows for more efficient work planning and management of the capital project (or investment), and increases the accountability for the achievement of the baseline goals.

When full funding is not followed and capital projects (or investments) or useful segments are funded in increments, without certainty if or when future funding will be available, the result is sometimes poor planning, acquisition of assets not fully justified, higher acquisition costs, cancellation of major investments, the loss of sunk costs, or inadequate funding to maintain and operate the assets.

***Principle 2: Regular and Advance Appropriations***

Regular appropriations for the full funding of a capital project or a useful segment (or investment) of a capital project in the budget year are preferred. If this results in spikes that, in the judgment of OMB, cannot be accommodated by the agency or the Congress, a combination of regular and advance appropriations that together provide full funding for a capital project or a useful segment or an investment should be proposed in the budget.

*Explanation:* Principle 1 (Full Funding) is met as long as a combination of regular and advance appropriations provide budget authority sufficient to complete the capital project or useful segment or investment. Full funding in the budget year with regular appropriations alone is preferred because it leads to tradeoffs within the budget year with spending for other capital assets and with spending for purposes other than capital assets. In contrast, full funding for a capital project (investment) over several years with regular appropriations for the first year and advance appropriations for subsequent years may bias tradeoffs in the budget year in favor of the proposed asset because with advance appropriations the full cost of the asset is not included in the budget year. Advance appropriations, because they are scored in the year they become available for obligation, may constrain the budget authority and outlays available for regular appropriations of that year.

If, however, the lumpiness caused by regular appropriations cannot be accommodated within an agency or Appropriations Subcommittee, advance appropriations can ameliorate that problem while still providing that all of the budget authority is enacted in advance for the capital project (investment) or useful segment. The latter helps ensure that agencies develop appropriate plans and budgets and that all costs and benefits are identified prior to providing resources. In addition, amounts of advance appropriations can be matched to funding requirements for completing natural components of the useful segment. Advance appropriations have the same benefits as regular appropriations for improved planning, management, and accountability of the project (investment).

***Principle 3: Separate Funding of Planning Segments***

As a general rule, planning segments of a capital project (investment) should be financed separately from the procurement of a useful asset.

*Explanation:* The agency must have information that allows it to plan the capital project (investment), develop the design, and assess the benefits, costs, and risks before proceeding to procurement of the useful asset. This is especially important for high risk acquisitions. This information comes from activities, or planning segments, that include but are not limited to market research of available solutions, architectural drawings, geological studies, engineering and design studies, and prototypes. The construction of a prototype that is a capital asset, because of its cost and risk, should be justified and planned as carefully as the investment itself. The process of gathering information for a capital project (investment) may consist of one or more planning segments, depending on the nature of the asset. Funding these segments separately will help ensure that the necessary information is available to establish cost, schedule, and performance goals before proceeding to procurement.

If budget authority for planning segments and procurement of the useful asset are enacted together, OMB may wish to apportion budget authority for one or several planning segments separately from procurement of the useful asset.

***Principle 4: Accommodation of Lumpiness or "Spikes" and Separate Capital Acquisition Accounts***

To accommodate lumpiness or "spikes" in funding justified capital acquisitions, agencies, working with OMB, are encouraged to aggregate financing for capital asset acquisitions in one or several separate



capital acquisition budget accounts within the agency, to the extent possible within the agency's total budget request.

*Explanation:* Large, temporary, year-to-year increases in budget authority, sometimes called lumps or spikes, may create a bias against the acquisition of justified capital assets. Agencies, working with OMB, should seek ways to avoid this bias and accommodate such spikes for justified acquisitions. Aggregation of capital acquisitions in separate accounts may:

- Reduce spikes within an agency or bureau by providing roughly the same level of spending for acquisitions each year;
- Help to identify the source of spikes and to explain them. Capital acquisitions are more lumpy than operating expenses; and with a capital acquisition account, it can be seen that an increase in operating expenses is not being hidden and attributed to one-time asset purchases;
- Reduce the pressure for capital spikes to crowd out operating expenses; and
- Improve justification and make proposals easier to evaluate, since capital acquisitions are generally analyzed in a different manner than operating expenses (e.g., capital acquisitions have a longer time horizon of benefits and life-cycle costs).

#### **D. Risk Management**

Risk management should be central to the planning, budgeting, and acquisition process. Failure to analyze and manage the inherent risk in all capital asset acquisitions may contribute to cost overruns, schedule shortfalls, and acquisitions that fail to perform as expected. For each major capital project (investment), a risk analysis that includes how risks will be isolated, minimized, monitored, and controlled may help prevent these problems.

The investment cost, schedule and performance goals established through the planning phase of the investment are the basis for approval to procure the asset and the basis for assessing risk. During the procurement phase, performance-based management systems (earned value or similar system) must be used to provide contractor and Government management visibility on the achievement of, or deviation from, goals until the asset is accepted and operational. If goals are not being met, performance-based management systems allow for early identification of problems, potential corrective actions, and changes to the original goals needed to complete the investment and necessary for agency portfolio analysis decisions. These systems also allow for Administration decisions to recommend meaningful modifications for increased funding to the Congress, or termination of the investment, based on its revised expected return on investment in comparison to alternative uses of the funds. Agencies must ensure that the necessary acquisition strategies are implemented to reduce the risk of cost escalation and the risk of failure to achieve schedule and performance goals. These strategies may include:

- Having budgetary resources appropriated in separate capital asset acquisition accounts;
- Apportioning budget authority for a useful segment;
- Establishing thresholds for cost, schedule, and performance goals of the acquisition, including return on investment, which if not met may result in cancellation of the acquisition;
- Selecting types of contracts and pricing mechanisms that are efficient and that provide incentives to contractors in order to allocate risk appropriately between the contractor and the Government;

- Monitoring cost, schedule, and performance goals for the investment (or the planning segment or useful asset being proposed) using a performance-based management system, e.g., Earned Value Management System.
- If progress is not within 90 percent of goals, or if new information is available that would indicate a greater return on investment from alternative uses of funds, instituting senior management review of the investment through portfolio analysis to determine the continued viability of the investment with modifications, or the termination of the investment, and the start of exploration for alternative solutions if it is necessary to fill a gap in agency strategic goals and objectives.

## E. Glossary

***Appropriations, regular annual or advance***, provide budget authority that permits Government officials to incur obligations that result in immediate or future outlays of Government funds.

***Regular annual appropriations*** are:

- Enacted normally in the current year;
- Scored entirely in the budget year; and
- Available for obligation in the budget year and subsequent years if specified in the language (see "*Availability*," below).

***Advance appropriations*** may be accompanied by regular annual appropriations to provide funds available for obligation in the budget year as well as subsequent years. Advance appropriations are:

- Enacted normally in the current year;
- Scored after the budget year (e.g., in each of one, two, or more later years, depending on the language); and
- Available for obligation in the year scored and subsequent years if specified in the language (see "*Availability*," below).

***Availability*** refers to the period during which appropriations may be legally obligated. Appropriations made in appropriations acts are available for obligation only in the budget year, unless the language specifies that an appropriation is available for a longer period. If the language specifies that the funds are to remain available until the end of a certain year beyond the budget year, the availability is said to be "multi-year." If the language specifies that the funds are to remain available until expended, the availability is said to be "no-year." Appropriations for major procurements and construction projects are typically made available for multiple years or until expended.

## APPENDIX K—SELECTED OMB GUIDANCE AND OTHER REFERENCES REGARDING CAPITAL ASSETS

### EXECUTIVE ORDERS

Executive Order No. 12893, "Principles for Federal Infrastructure Investments," provides principles for the systematic economic analysis of infrastructure investments and their management. OMB Bulletin No. 94-16, Guidance on Executive Order No. 12893, "Principles for Federal Infrastructure Investments" (March 7, 1994), provides guidance for implementing this Order and appends the Order itself.

### OMB CIRCULARS AND MEMORANDA

OMB Circular No. A-11, *Preparing and Submitting Budget Estimates* (June 2002):

#### Part 2: Preparation and Submission of Budget Estimates

- Section [31.4](#), Full funding, requires that the agency request include full funding for procurement and construction. See section [300.6](#) for more discussion of this policy.
- Section [33.6](#), Systems acquisitions, states that agencies should develop their estimates of major systems acquisitions, including information technology systems, consistent with guidance in the *Capital Programming Guide*, the requirements of Title V of the Federal Acquisition Streamlining Act of 1994 (FASA), and the Clinger-Cohen Act of 1996.
- Section [52](#), Information on financial management, requires agencies to submit data on financial management plans, systems and resources.
- Section [53](#), Information technology, requires agencies to submit data on information technology investments.
- Section [84](#), Character classification, requires information on different kinds of investment and grants to State and local governments.

#### Part 7: Planning, Budgeting, Acquisition, and Management of Capital Assets

*Capital Programming Guide* (June 1997). The *Guide* is a policy Supplement to this Circular.

OMB Circular No. A-94, *Guidelines and Discount Rates for Benefit-Cost Analysis of Federal Programs* (October 1992), publishes periodic revisions of the discount rate that are used to produce benefit-cost, cost-effectiveness, and lease-purchase analyses in evaluating Federal activities including capital asset acquisition. The circular includes guidelines on how to use the discount rate in calculating present value of future benefits and costs; measuring benefits and costs; and treating uncertainty and other issues. This guidance must be followed in all analyses you submit to OMB in support of legislative and budget programs.

OMB Circular No. A-127, *Financial Management Systems* (revised July 23, 1993), prescribes policies and standards for you to follow in developing, operating, evaluating, and reporting on financial management systems. Revised further in Transmittal Memorandum #2 (June 10, 1999).

**APPENDIX K—SELECTED OMB GUIDANCE  
AND OTHER REFERENCES REGARDING CAPITAL ASSETS**

---

OMB Circular No. A-130, *Management of Federal Information Resources* (revised November 20, 2000), provides principles for internal management and planning practices of information systems and technology.

OMB Memorandum M-00-10, *OMB Procedures and Guidance on Implementing the Government Paperwork Elimination Act* (April 25, 2000). This memorandum provides guidance implementing on the Government Paperwork Elimination Act (GPEA), which requires agencies, by October 21, 2003, to provide for the (1) option of electronic maintenance, submission, or disclosure of information, when practicable as a substitute for paper; and (2) use and acceptance of electronic signatures, when practicable.

OMB Memorandum M-00-13, *Privacy Policies and Data Collection on Federal Websites* (June 22, 2000). This memorandum reminds agencies that they are required by law and policy to establish clear privacy policies for its web activities and to comply with those policies.

OMB Memorandum M-02-03, *2002 Discount Rates for OMB Circular A-94* (January 29, 2002). This memorandum provides the annual update of discount rates in Appendix C of OMB Circular A-94. These rates will be in effect February 2002 through the end of January 2003.

**PUBLICATIONS**

American National Standard Institute, *Earned Value Management Systems*, ANSI/EIA-748-1998, (approved May 19, 1998). Electronic Industries Alliance. Arlington, VA 22201.

Best Practices Committee, Federal Chief Information Officers Council, three separate documents:

1) *Smart Practices in Capital Planning* (October 2000); 2) *First Practices in Portfolio Management* (February 2002); and 3) *ROI and the Value Puzzle* (April 1999) (see [www.cio.gov](http://www.cio.gov)).

U.S. General Accounting Office, *Assessing Risks and Returns: A Guide for Evaluating Federal Agencies' IT Investment Decision-Making*, GAO/AIMD-10.1.13 (February 1997).

## INDEX

- A-11, Purpose of ..... xvii  
A-11, Summary of changes ..... xxi  
Accounting adjustments ..... 71.8  
Accounts, *See* Budget accounts.  
Acquisition of capital assets ..... Part 7  
Acquisition of real property ..... 33.1  
Acquisition workforce, training of ..... 22.6  
Activities, program:  
    Allocation of expenses ..... 82.2  
    Basis for classification and coding ..... 82.2  
Activity structures ..... 82.2  
Actuals 82.15  
Administrative control of funds ..... 150  
Administrative expenses:  
    Credit reform ..... 95.7, 95.11, 185.3 (a)  
    Limitations ..... 81.4 (b), 82.14, 83.6  
Advance appropriations ..... 20.3–20.4, 31.1  
Advance appropriations (baseline) ..... 80.3  
Advance approval for changes and exceptions:  
    In Part I25.3  
Advance funding ..... 20.3–20.4  
Advances ..... 20.12(b), 20.12(d)  
Advisory and assistance services ..... 83.7  
Advisory committees ..... 33.3  
After budget decisions, materials required ..... 25  
Agencies the budget covers ..... 10.4  
Agency:  
    Identification codes ..... Appendix C  
    Investment and debt ..... 86.2, 97.6  
    IT investment portfolio ..... Exhibit 53  
    Restructuring ..... 51.5  
Agency comments sheet ..... ---  
    Plan iterations ..... 220.1  
    Reflecting prior/future year performance ..... 221.4  
    Relationship between strategic plan and ..... 222.4  
    Revised final annual plan ..... 220.8  
    Timing of submission ..... 223.1  
    Use of alternative form of measurement ..... 220.6  
    Verification and validation of data ..... 220.5  
Annual program performance reports ..... 230, Part 6  
    Agency plans and schedules for achieving an unmet goal in  
    the future ..... 231.5  
    Assessing completeness and reliability of performance data  
    ..... 231.7  
    Combing the accountability report and the ..... 230.2  
    Comparing actual performance to performance goal target  
    levels ..... 231.2  
    Evaluating effect of past year performance on current  
    performance ..... 231.6  
    Format 231.10  
    Including trend data ..... 231.8  
    Other features ..... 231.9  
    Providing an explanation for non-achievement  
    of a goal ..... 231.4  
    Relationship between annual strategic plan:  
    Combining the accountability report and ..... 230.2  
    Performance plan and accountability report and ... 230.2  
    Required elements of an ..... 231.1  
    Transmittal to President and Congress of ..... 232  
    Unavailability of actual performance information ..... 231.3  
Aircraft, estimates for Government ..... 25.5  
Allocation accounts ..... 71.5, 82.15, 86.1, 97.7  
Allocation accounts, reports on budget execution ..... 130.14  
Allocation accounts (transfer appropriation:  
    Accounts) ..... 120.19  
Allocations, special instructions ..... 82.15, 83.7, Exhibit 83C  
Allowances ..... 32.2  
Alternative-fueled vehicles ..... 25.5  
Amendments ..... 110  
    Appropriations language ..... Exhibit 110B  
    Definition ..... 110.2  
    Materials required for OMB ..... 110.3  
    Program and financing schedule ..... Exhibit 110C  
Annual energy management data report ..... Exhibit 55  
Annual performance plans ..... Part 6  
    Basic requirements for resources-performance alignment and  
    coverage in ..... 221.1  
    Classified or other non-public appendices ..... 222.5  
    Clearance and public availability of ..... 223.2  
    Display of performance goals in ..... 224.3  
    Fiscal year coverage ..... 224.2  
    Format ..... 222.2  
    Full cost ..... 221.3  
    For FY 2004 ..... 224.1  
    General guidelines for content ..... 222.1  
    "Getting to Green" on Budget Performance  
    Integration ..... 225  
    Guidelines on future resources-performance  
    alignment in ..... 221.2  
    Including goals for assessing program:  
    Effectiveness ..... 220.3  
    Means and strategies ..... 220.4  
    Performance goals and indicators ..... 220.3  
Anticipated supplementals, *See* Appropriations, supplemental.  
Antideficiency Act:  
    Credit program violations ..... 145.3  
    Definition ..... 145.1  
    Fund control system and regulations ..... 150.1, 150.7  
    GAO reported violations ..... 145.8  
    OMB suspected violations ..... 145.9  
    Reporting violations ..... 145.7  
    Requirements ..... 145.1  
    Revolving fund violations ..... 145.4  
    Sample violation letters ..... Exhibit 145A–145B  
    Title 31 of the US Code and, Crosswalk  
    between ..... Appendix G  
    Types of violations ..... 145.2  
    Violations ..... 145, 145.4  
    Violations of expired appropriations and closed  
    accounts ..... 145.5  
Appendix, Budget ..... 95.2  
Applicability of instructions ..... 25.1  
Application of obligations ..... 20  
Apportionments, *See also* SF 132; SF 133.  
    Apportionment/reapportionment process:  
    And requests ..... 120  
    Approved before a continuing resolution ..... 120.15  
    Available balances of budget authority ..... 20.10, 120.12  
    Basis of apportionment action ..... 120.1  
    Claims and judgments, exempted from  
    apportionment ..... 120.7

Continuing resolutions ..... 123  
 Under continuing resolutions..... 123  
 Definition ..... 120.1  
 Exemptions from apportionment requirement ..... 120.7  
 Multi-year apportionments ..... 120.9  
 Previously approved ..... 120.1  
 Procedures for requesting changes in levels or  
 time periods..... 120.11  
 Projects, distribution of apportionments by ..... 120.8  
 Purpose ..... 120.2  
 Reapportionment of multi-year apportionments ..... 120.9  
 Time periods for apportionments ..... 120.11  
 Types (apportionment categories) ..... 120.8, 120.26  
**Appropriations:**  
 Advance..... 82.3  
 Agency operations in the absence of ..... 124  
 Anticipated on SF 133 ..... Appendix F—Line 1.E  
 Available from subsequent year ..... 82.3  
 Available in prior year..... 82.3  
 Balances ..... 82.3, 82.5  
 Contingent emergency..... 111.1  
 Contingent emergency, release..... 111.2  
 Deficiency ..... 82.3  
 Definite 20.4(d)  
 Indefinite ..... 20.4(d)  
 Justification ..... 51  
 Loans, direct and guaranteed ..... 95.7  
 Multi-year..... 31.7  
 Net (status of funds) ..... 86.6  
 Requests in thousands of dollars ..... 86.4, Exhibit 86B  
 Special and trust fund ..... 86.6  
 Supplemental, anticipated for the current or budget year:  
     In budget schedules ..... 82.10, 110.3  
     Definitions..... 110.2  
     Justification of..... 51.10, 110.3  
     In limitations ..... 82.14  
     Materials required for OMB..... 82.10, 110.3  
 Appropriations Committee, copies of SF 133 to..... 130.2  
**Appropriations language**..... 95.5  
     Authorizing legislation ..... 95.6  
     Budget amendments ..... Exhibit 110B  
 Changes in ..... 95.5  
 Credit programs ..... 95.7  
 General provisions, print material:  
     Submission ..... Exhibit 96B  
     To liquidate a deficiency ..... 82.7  
     Print material submission ..... Exhibit 96A  
     Supplemental requests ..... Exhibit 110A  
     Supplementals, print material submission ..... Exhibit 96B  
**Assets:**  
 Acquisition of capital assets ..... Part 7  
     Federal credit..... 185  
     Financial management of assets ..... 52, 52.6  
 Assumptions, basic ..... 30  
 Assumptions, economic..... 30.3  
 Audited financial statements..... 52.4, Exhibit 52  
 Authority to borrow ..... 20.4(b), 82.3  
 Authorizing legislation ..... 82.10, 96.4, 97.3  
 Automated budget submissions ..... 79  
 Automatic calculations ..... 81.2  
 Awards, cash incentive ..... 32.2

**B**

Balance sheet..... 86.2, Exhibit 86A  
**Balances of budget authority:**  
     Antideficiency Act, definition..... 145.1  
     Apportionment of available..... 120.12  
     Cancellation of obligated/unobligated balances ..... 130.10  
     Expired unobligated balances ..... 130.8  
     Obligated balances ..... 20.3, 20.4(g), 82.4  
     Unavailable collections (OMB vs TCS)..... 130.16(d)  
     Unavailable receipts..... 86.6  
     Unexpended balances..... 20.3  
     Unexpended balances on SF 133 ..... Exhibits 130C–130E  
     Unobligated balances ..... 20.4(f), 82.3  
     Unobligated balances in liquidating  
         accounts ..... 51.12, 185.29  
 Baseline, definition of ..... 20.3  
**Baseline estimates:**  
     Advance appropriations ..... 80.3  
     Basic requirement ..... 80.1  
     Credit programs ..... 80.2  
     Development of..... 80  
     Direct spending ..... 80.4  
     Discretionary offsetting collections ..... 80.3  
     Discretionary spending and collections..... 80.3  
     General rules ..... 80.2  
     Legislative proposals ..... 80.2  
     Mandatory collections..... 80.5  
     Materials in support of..... 80.8  
     In MAX schedules S and K..... 81  
     Reductions, sequester ..... 80.2  
     Regulations ..... 80.2  
     Supplementals ..... 80.2  
     Supplementals, mandatory ..... 80.6  
     Supporting materials ..... 80.8  
 Benefit payments..... 32.4  
 Benefits, personnel..... 32.4, 32.9  
 Bonuses ..... 32.2  
 Borrowing authority ..... 82.3  
**Budget:**  
     Budget data system ..... 79, Exhibit 79A  
     Concepts ..... 20  
     Congressional Budget Office, functions,  
         responsibilities ..... 10.10, 10.12  
     Decisions..... 22  
     Decisions, materials required after..... 25.6  
     Definition ..... 10.1  
     Execution ..... 15.4, 112, Part 4  
     General Accounting Office, functions,  
         responsibilities ..... 10.11–10.12  
     Information ..... 10.3  
     Preparation ..... 10.2  
     Process, overview ..... 10.5  
     Terms 20.3  
     Treasury (FMS), functions, responsibilities ..... 10.9  
**Budget, Office of Management and:**  
     Determination of changes in the level or time period of  
         apportionments ..... 120.11  
     Functions and responsibilities ..... 10.8, 10.12  
     Notification to agencies of changes in exemptions from  
         apportionments ..... 120.7  
     SF 133 supporting data ..... 130.16  
 Budget account structure ..... 51.4, 71.3–71.4  
     Advance approval of changes ..... 71.3  
     Relationship of justification to ..... 51.4, 71.3

Relationship of programs to .....	Exhibit 51
Budget accounts:	
Account level detail reporting .....	71.1
Account sequence in Budget Appendix .....	95.3
Budget Account Title file (BAT) .....	79.1
Clearing accounts, concept .....	20.11(e)
Definitions .....	20.11
Establishment of new .....	79.3
Relationship to Treasury accounts .....	71.2
Reporting information .....	71
Budget and Performance Integration .....	26.3
Budget Appendix, print materials .....	95.4
Budget authority:	
Amount of .....	20.4 (d)
Analysis of .....	81
Authority to borrow .....	20.4(b), 82.3
Automatic calculations .....	81.2
Availability of .....	20.4 (d)
In budget schedules .....	81.2, 82.3
Contract authority .....	20.4(b), 82.3, 86.7
Definite .....	20.4 (d)
Discretionary .....	20.4 (e)
Gross budget authority and outlays .....	82.6
Indefinite .....	20.4 (d)
Limitations on .....	20.4(d)
Mandatory .....	20.4 (e)
Net .....	82.6
Reported on SF 133 .....	Appendix F—Line 1
Spending authority from offsetting collections .....	20.4 (b)
Summary of budget authority and outlays .....	86.7
Unobligated balance of .....	20.4 (e)
Budget authority and outlays, analysis of .....	81
Budget Enforcement Act:	
BEA (BEACAT) estimates crosswalk .....	Exhibit E6
BEA categories (mandatory, discretionary) .....	20.9 (a)
BEA category .....	79.3
BEA data classification .....	81.3
BEA questions and problems (BEACK01) .....	Exhibit E1
Categories .....	20.9 (a), 81.3
Exempt/sequesterable .....	81.3
Mandatory (BEACAT) estimates crosswalk .....	Exhibit E6
Mandatory classifications (BEA) .....	20.9 (a)
Mandatory spending .....	20.9 (a)
Budget execution, <i>see also</i> Apportionments.	
Apportionment/reapportionment	
process .....	120.1–120.20, 121.10
Investment transactions .....	113
Reports on SF 133 .....	130, Appendix F
Service providers .....	Appendix I
SF 132, apportionment and reapportionment	
requests .....	120.21–120.40
SF 132, apportionment and reapportionment	
schedule .....	121, Appendix F
Terms and concepts .....	20
Budget justification materials:	
Analytical information required .....	51.8
Basic materials .....	Exhibit 51
Congressional .....	22.3, 22.6
Financial management .....	52.4
Initial submission .....	51
Space budget .....	54.4
Budget laws, basic .....	15.1
Budget and Accounting Act .....	15.2
Budget Enforcement Act .....	15.3

Congressional Budget Act .....	15.3
Federal Credit Reform Act .....	15.6
Government Performance and Results Act .....	15.5
Budget plan schedule (Defense) .....	86.3
Budget preparation system, <i>See</i> MAX budget system.	
Budget submissions:	
General contents .....	25.5–25.6
Revisions after final budget decisions .....	25
Budgetary resources:	
Available for obligation .....	82.3
Budget execution, report on SF 133 .....	130, Appendix F
Definition of .....	20.3
Financial management activities .....	52.5–52.6, Exhibit 52
Refunds receivable .....	20.12(c)
Reimbursements available for obligation .....	20.12(d)
Revolving funds .....	20.12(e)
Bureau identification codes .....	Appendix C

## C

Canceled and expired	
appropriations .....	20.4(c), 130.6–130.7, 130.9–130.10
Cancellation of obligated/unobligated balances .....	130.10
Capital assets:	
Acquisition of .....	Part 7
Capital asset plan .....	Exhibit 300, Part 7
Cost, schedule, and performance goals .....	300.5
Definitions .....	300.4
Full funding of .....	31.4, 300.6
Leases .....	33.1, Appendix B
Planning, budgeting and acquisition .....	Part 7
Planning and investment control .....	31.4
Public/private partnerships, research from .....	Appendix B
Relationship to information technology:	
Requirements .....	53, 300.9
Requirements .....	300.8
Scoring lease-purchases and leases of capital	
assets .....	Appendix B
Capital investment .....	82.3, Part 7
Capital leases .....	Appendix B
Capital planning and investment control .....	31.8
Capital transfers .....	82.3
Cash-equivalent transactions .....	20.8
Changes, Summary of A–11 .....	xxi
Character classification codes .....	84, Exhibit 84
Research and development .....	Exhibit 84B
Summary .....	Exhibit 84A
Checklist for fund control regulations .....	Appendix H
Chief financial officers, responsibilities .....	52.2, 52.7
Citations, legal, on language submissions .....	95.6
Civil rights, considerations in agency estimates .....	31.3
Claims and judgments, exempted from:	
Apportionment .....	120.7
Classifications:	
Activity .....	82.2
Budget Enforcement Act categories (mandatory,	
discretionary) .....	20.9 (a), 81.3
Character classification codes .....	Exhibit 84A
Character classifications .....	84
Functional classifications, definition .....	20.3
Object classifications .....	83
Receipt .....	81.3, 81.4 (e), 84.3 (b), 84.4
Clearance:	
Accountability reports .....	22.3
Budget materials .....	22

INDEX

Changes in President's budget ..... 22.4, 110.3  
 Press releases..... 22.3  
 Testimony and communications with Congress ..... 22.2  
 Clearing accounts ..... 20.11, 130.2(a)  
 Closing accounts, canceling appropriations ..... 130.9–130.10  
 Coastal Barrier Resources Act ..... 33.1  
 Codes, account identification..... 79.2  
 Codes, OMB and Treasury agency/bureau ..... Appendix C  
 Cohort..... 185.3 (c)  
 Collections ..... 20.7, 35.5  
 Collections, mandatory (baseline) ..... 80.5  
 Commercial or industrial type activities ..... 31.9  
 Committees, *See* Advisory committees.  
 Communications-electronics systems, spectrum-  
 dependent ..... 33.4  
 Compensable days and hours..... 32.3  
 Compensable workyears ..... 86.1  
 Compensation, personnel..... 32.2  
 Computer acquisitions and operations ..... 53, Part 7  
 Computer materials..... 79  
 Concepts, budgetary ..... 20  
 Congressional Budget Office..... 10.5  
 Congressional Budget Office, functions,  
 responsibilities..... 10.10, 10.12  
 Congressional budget process..... 10.5  
 Congressional consultation (strategic plans)..... Exhibit 210A  
 Congressional materials, OMB clearance..... 22.3  
 Congressional testimony and communications ..... 22.2  
 Consolidated accounts and schedules ..... 71.7, 82.13, 97.7  
 Construction funds..... 31.4  
 Construction programs:  
 Federal facilities ..... 33.1  
 Public works ..... 84.4, Part 7  
 Consultants, special rates for ..... 32.2  
 Contingent emergency funding, release of..... 111.2  
 Continuing resolutions,  
 Apportionments ..... 123, Exhibits 121D–121F  
 Contract authority ..... 20.4(b), 82.3, 86.7  
 Contractor accounting and reporting..... 52.6, Exhibit 52  
 Contractor claims..... 33.6  
 Coverage of, Reports on Budget Execution..... 130.2(a)  
 Credit, Discretionary (baseline)..... 80.3  
 Credit, summary of budget formulation requirements ..... 185.9  
 Credit programs ..... 96.5, 97.6, 185, *see also* Federal credit  
 Credit programs (baseline)..... 80.2  
 Credit reform ..... 185  
 Credit Reform Act, Federal ..... 15.6  
 Credit subsidy calculation..... 185.5  
 Crosswalks:  
 Crosswalk between Antideficiency Act and Title 31 of the  
 U.S. Code ..... Appendix G  
 Crosswalk from OMB agency/bureau to Treasury  
 codes ..... Appendix C  
 Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the P and F  
 schedule..... Exhibits 130K, 130M  
 Crosswalk from the SF 133 to Treasury Combined Statement  
 ..... Exhibits 130J  
 Current services, definition of ..... 20.3  
 Current services estimates, *See* Baseline estimates.  
 Current year data, reporting basis ..... 35.3

D

Data, supporting for SF 133..... 130.16

Date of submission, *See* Timing of submission.  
 Debt instruments ..... 20.8  
 Decisions, budget ..... 22  
 Defaults, guarantee claims ..... 185.3 (b)  
 Defense special budget plan schedule ..... 86.3  
 Deferrals..... 20.3, 112  
 Deficiency appropriations ..... 82.3  
 Diagnostic reports ..... Appendix E  
 Direct loans ..... 95.7, 185, 185.3 (d)  
 Direct obligations ..... 83.5  
 Direct spending programs (baseline)..... 80.4  
 Disbursement, definition of..... 20.6  
 Disclosure with respect to the budget..... 22  
 Discount rate ..... 185.3 (g)  
 Discretionary classifications (BEA)..... 20.9 (a), 80.3, 80.7  
 Discretionary credit accounts (baseline)..... 80.3  
 Discretionary spending..... 20.3, 20.9 (a)(b), 80.3, 81.3  
 Discretionary spending and collections (baseline) ..... 80.3  
 Distribution of budget authority and outlays ..... 82.13  
 District of Columbia, public works ..... 33.1

E

E-government..... 53  
 Economic assumptions ..... 30.3, 185.3 (h)  
 Economy Act:  
 Advances or reimbursements ..... 20.12 (d)  
 Reimbursable work with Federal agencies:  
 Under ..... 20.12 (g)  
 Transactions ..... 20.12 (f)  
 Edit checks ..... Appendix D  
 Efficiency management, energy and transportation..... 25  
 Electronic recordkeeping and transactions ..... 31.8  
 Emergency appropriations..... 20.9 (b)  
 Emergency funding, contingent, release of ..... 111  
 Employee, Federal..... 32.1  
 Employee travel, estimates for ..... 33.6  
 Employment:  
 Definitions ..... 32.1  
 Estimates ..... 32.2–32.3, 83.7, 86.1  
 FTE diagnostic report (CKFTEOBS)..... Exhibit E3  
 Overseas..... 25  
 In personnel summary ..... 86.1  
 Policies on..... 32.2–32.3  
 Employment, Federal ..... 32  
 Energy and transportation efficiency management, reporting  
 requirements..... 25  
 Entitlement authority ..... 20.3, 120.9  
 Environmental management ..... 31.2  
 Equal opportunity ..... 31.3  
 Erroneous payments ..... 25  
 Estimates and proposals, developing ..... 30–33  
 Exceptions to Part I Circular No. A–11, requests for ..... 25.2  
 Execution, budget..... 15.4, 112, Part 4  
 Executive Branch review, agencies not subject to..... 25.1  
 Executive budget formulation process ..... 10.5  
 Exempt/sequestrable. 81.3, *See also* Budget Enforcement Act.  
 Experts, special rates for ..... 32.2  
 Expired accounts ..... 20.4(c), 82.2–82.6, 96.6  
 Downward adjustments in..... 130.7  
 Reporting ..... 130.2(a), 130.7–130.8  
 Upward adjustments in..... 130.7  
 Expiring authorizations (baseline)..... 80.4  
 Explanation of print materials ..... Exhibit 95



**F**

FACTS II	20.3, 82.18, 130.2(c)
FACTS II, List of reporting providers	Appendix I
Family housing, estimates for construction of	33.1
Federal Agencies' Centralized Trial Balance:	
System II	20.3, 82.18, 130.2(c), Appendix I
Federal credit	185, 185.1, Exhibit 185M–185BB, <i>See also</i> Credit programs.
Federal credit reform, <i>See</i> Credit reform.	
Federal Credit Reform Act	15.6
Federal Employees' Retirement System (FERS)	32.2, 32.5
Federal employment	32
Federal Financial Management Improvement Act	52.2
Federal Financing Bank	
transactions	185.3 (a), 185.3 (d), 185.11
Federal funds, Offsetting collections from	82.6
Federal funds, Receipts	
classifications	81.3, 81.4 (e), 84.3 (b), 84.4
Federal housing	33.1
Federal outlays, procedures for monitoring	135
Federal payroll costs	32.6
Feeder accounts for revolving funds	71.6
FERS, <i>See</i> Federal Employees' Retirement System.	
Financial management	52, Exhibit 52
Financial statements	86.2
Financial statements, Audited	52.4, Exhibit 52, 52.5–52.6
Financial systems	31.8, 52.2–52.5, 53.3
Financial transfers object class	83.7
Financing, schedules of program and	82
Financing accounts	95.11, 185.3 (i), 185.11, Exhibits 185C–H
Flood plains, activities located in	33.1
FMS 2108 (Year-end Closing Statement)	130.16
Forecast assumptions	185.3 (j)
Foreign currencies, use of	33.6
Format of SF 132 and SF 133	Appendix F
Forward funding	20.3–20.4
Freedom of Information Act	22
FTE:	
Approved estimates vs Schedule Q (CKFTE)	Exhibit E2
Average salaries (CKFTEOBS)	Exhibit E3
Basic justification materials	51.1
Personnel summary (Schedule Q)	86.1
FTE, military	32.5
FTE, prior year actuals	32.4
FTE determination	32.3
FTE levels	32.3
FTE transfers	32.3
Full funding	31.4, Part 7
Full-time equivalent employment, <i>see</i> FTE.	
Full time equivalent (FTE)	32.1, 32.3
Functional classification	20.3, 79.3, 83.3, Exhibit 79B
Fund control system and regulations	150.1–150.4
Checklist for	Appendix H
Federal Financial Management System	
Requirements	150.6
OMB approval	150.7
Relationship between my agency's management controls and its internal and fund controls	150.3
Funding hiatus	124
Funds:	
Characteristics of	20.11
Deposit 20.11(f)	
Federal, concepts	20.11(c)
Trust, concepts	20.11(d)

Type and codes	79.3
----------------	------

**G**

Galley proofs, revising	Exhibit 95
Galleys, revising	95.5–95.12, Exhibit 95A, 95B
General provisions, print material submission	Exhibit 96B
General requirements	31
General rules	80.2
General Services Administration, rental payments to	54
GOALS (computer system)	130.2(c)
Government Corporation Control Act	95.11
Government Paperwork Elimination Act	31.8
Government Performance and Results Act	15.4–15.5
Agencies covered by	200.3
Definitions	200.2
Introduction	200
Government perquisites	31.5
Government-sponsored enterprises	25.1, 86.2
Governmental receipts	79.3, 81.4 (e)
Grants management	52.4, 53.7, 52.6
Grants to State and local governments	25, 84
GSEs	25.1, 86.2
Guaranteed loans	95.7, 95.11, 185
Guide to OMB Circular A–11	xvii

**H**

Homeland security	53.1, 53.9
Hospital care, reimbursements for	33.2
Hourly rates	32.2
Human capital	30.4

**I**

Identification codes, account	79.2, Appendix C
Impoundment	20.3, 112
Industrial activities, compliance with Circular A–76	31.9
Inflation, economic assumptions	30.3
Information technology	25.5, 53, Exhibit 53, Part 7
Infrastructure investment	51.6
Initial budget submission:	
Revisions to after final budget decisions	25
What do I include	25.4–25.5
Inpatient care facilities	33.2
Interagency groups	33.3
Intragovernmental receipts	79.3
Intragovernmental revolving funds, <i>See</i> Revolving funds.	
Investments:	
Federal securities	113
Premium or discount on investments	113.1(b)
Spending, investment and non-investment	84
Terms and concepts	113
Transactions	113
IT security	53.7

**J**

Judgments, exempted from apportionment	120.7
Judicial Branch	25.1
Justification, basic materials	Exhibit 51
Justification of budget submission	22.6, 51
Justifications, analytical material required	51.8
Justifications, supplemental estimates	110.3

**L**

Laboratories, estimates for	33.1
-----------------------------	------

**INDEX**

Language, appropriations ..... 96.5–95.8  
Laws, basic budget ..... 15.1  
Lease-purchases ..... 20.8, Appendix B  
Leases, operating ..... Appendix B  
Leases of capital assets ..... 33.1, Appendix B  
Legal citations ..... 95.6  
Legislation, authorizing ..... 82.10, 96.4, 97.3  
Legislative Branch ..... 25.1  
Legislative proposals ..... 79.2  
Legislative proposals (baseline) ..... 80.2  
Life-cycle costing ..... 53.1  
Limitation codes in MAX budget system ..... 81.4 (b)  
Limitations (baseline) ..... 80.7  
Limitations on credit programs ..... 81.4 (b), 85.10  
Limitations on revolving and trust funds ..... 81.4 (b), 82.14, 83.6, 120.27  
Line codes (Schedules A, S, R, K) ..... 81.4  
Liquidating accounts ..... 20.3, 97.6, 185.3 (k), 185.12  
Liquidating accounts, unobligated balances in ..... 51.12  
Liquidation of contract authority ..... 82.3  
List of FACTS II reporting providers ..... Appendix I  
Loans:  
    Direct ..... 20.3, 96.5, 97.6, 185.3 (d), (See section 185)  
    Guaranteed ..... 20.3, 96.5, 97.6, 185, 185.3 (m)  
    Loan asset sales ..... 185.3 (l), 185.8  
    Loan terms assumptions ..... 185.3 (p)  
    Modifications of loans ..... 185.3 (r)  
    Subsidy data ..... 185.5

**M**

Mail, estimates for official ..... 33.6  
Management improvement ..... 31.8  
Management information and issues:  
    Financial ..... 52  
    Management improvement ..... 31.8  
    Performance ..... 31.8  
Mandatory (BEACAT) estimates crosswalk ..... Exhibit E6  
Mandatory classifications (BEA) ..... 20.9 (a), 80.4–80.6  
Mandatory spending ..... 20.9 (a)  
Mandatory spending (baseline) ..... 80.4  
Material required after passback ..... 25.6  
Material weakness ..... 52.4  
MAX budget system:  
    Agency use, cost distribution ..... 31.6  
    Character classification ..... 84.4  
    Edit checks ..... Appendix D  
    Line code changes ..... 79.5  
    Line numbers, summary of ..... 81.4  
    MAX budget data ..... 79, Exhibits 79A–B  
    MAX line numbers ..... 81.4 (e)  
    MAX schedules, *See* Schedules, MAX.  
    MAX schedules description ..... 79.5  
    Overview and summary ..... 79.5  
    Relationship to Appendix printing process ..... 95.3  
    System requirements ..... 79.1  
    Technical requirements ..... Exhibit 79A  
    Use of 31.6, 79  
Means of financing, definition of ..... 20.7(f)  
Medical care facilities ..... 33.2  
Merged accounts ..... 71.6, 82.13, 97.7  
Methodological assumptions ..... 185.3 (q)  
Mid-session review ..... 10.6  
Military employment ..... 32.5

Modifications of loans ..... 185.3 (r), 185.7  
Motor vehicles ..... 25.5  
Multi-year apportionments ..... 120.9  
Multi-year appropriations ..... 31.7

**N**

Narrative statements ..... 95.9  
    Analysis of programs financed by multiple budget accounts ..... Exhibit 97  
    Credit 95.11  
    Performance goals and indicators ..... 95.9  
    Revolving funds ..... 95.11  
    Transfers in the estimates ..... 95.12  
National capital area, public works ..... 33.1  
National Science and Technology Council (Conduct of NSTC crosscuts) ..... 84.4  
Negative budget authority ..... 80.3  
Negative subsidies ..... 185.3 (t), 185.13  
Net proceeds assumptions ..... 185.3 (v)  
Non-Federal securities, investments in ..... 113  
Non-pay, definition ..... 81.3  
Nuclear reactors ..... 33.6

**O**

Object class codes and titles ..... 83.7, Exhibit 83A  
Object class line numbers ..... 83.7–83.17, Exhibit 83A  
Object class prefix ..... 83.5–83.6, Exhibit 83A  
Object class schedules ..... Exhibits 83A–83C  
Object classification for:  
    Administrative expense limitations ..... 83.6, 83.17  
    Advisory and assistance services ..... 83.7  
    Allocations ..... 83.4, 83.7, 83.17, Exhibit 83C  
    Definition of ..... 83.1  
    Direct obligation ..... 83.5  
    Education and training ..... 83.11  
    Federal civilian retirement (CSRS) ..... 83.13  
    Financial transfers ..... 83.7  
    Information technology ..... 83.10  
    Intergovernmental Personnel Act ..... 83.16  
    Intragovernmental transactions ..... 83.15  
    Limitations on administrative et al. ..... 83.6, 83.17  
    Limitations on revolving and trust funds expenses ..... 83.6  
    Military retirement ..... 83.14  
    Overtime pay ..... 83.7  
    Permanent change of station ..... 83.9  
    Personnel compensation ..... 83.7  
    Real property ..... 83.12  
    Reimbursable obligations ..... 83.5  
    Relocation expenses ..... 83.9  
Objects, distribution of apportionments by ..... 120.8  
Obligated balances ..... 20.3, 20.4(g), 82.4  
Obligations:  
    Application of ..... 20.5  
    Basis for apportionments and reports ..... 120.21  
    In budget schedules ..... 82.4  
    Certification ..... 51.1  
    Incurred on SF 133 ..... 130.5  
    MAX line numbers ..... 82.2  
    Non-performance activity lines ..... 82.2  
    By program activity ..... 82.2  
    Reporting ..... 82.2  
    Terms and concepts ..... 20.5  
Office of Management and Budget, *see* Budget, Office of Management and.

Offsetting collections.....	20.7
Automatic calculations.....	81.2
Classification.....	81.4 (c)
Discretionary (baseline).....	80.3
Estimates of.....	35.5
Line codes.....	81.4 (c)
To liquidate a deficiency.....	82.7
In program and financing schedules.....	82.3, 82.6
Receipt account data.....	81.3, 81.4 (e)
Spending authority from.....	20.12(a)
Offsetting governmental receipts.....	79.3
Offsetting receipts.....	20.7, 79.3, 81.4 (e)
OMB contacts.....	xix
One percent requirement.....	120.20
Operating leases.....	Appendix B
Outlays:	
Analysis of.....	81
Automatic calculations.....	81.2, 82.5
Calculations.....	81.2, Exhibits 81B–C
Concept of.....	20.6
Estimates of.....	35.6
Line codes.....	81.4 (d), 82.5
Procedures for monitoring.....	135
Rates.....	35.7, 81.2
Reporting.....	82.5–82.6
On SF 133.....	130.6
Summary of budget authority and outlays.....	86.8
Outyear estimates.....	20.3
Outyear policy estimates.....	30.2
Overseas employment.....	25
Overtime pay.....	32.2, 83.7

## P

P and F schedule, <i>See</i> Program and financing schedule.	
Passback, materials required after.....	25.6, 100
Pay, definition.....	81.3
Pay raises.....	32.2, 32.6
Pay rates, experts and consultants.....	32.2
PAYGO.....	20.3, 20.9 (c)
Payments between accounts, <i>See</i> Transfers.	
Payments from the public.....	20.12(h)
Payroll costs, Federal.....	32.7
Performance and Accountability Report.....	26.3, 230
Performance Assessment Rating Tool (PART):.....	26.3, 51.7, 51.9, 220, 230
Performance budget.....	26.3, 51.7, 200, 220
Performance management.....	31.8
Performance measurement, annual plans, alternative form of .....	220.6
Performance measures, financial management.....	52.4
Performance of commercial activities.....	31.9
Performance plans, <i>see also</i> Annual performance plans.	
Performance plans, goals and indicators.....	31.8, 51.7, 97.4
Permanent change of station.....	83.9
Personnel benefits.....	32.9
Personnel compensation:	
Basis for estimates.....	32.2, 81.3
In object classification schedule.....	83.7
Pay in the baseline.....	83.8
Personnel estimates.....	32.2
Personnel staffing.....	30.4
Personnel summary.....	86.1
Physicians comparability allowances, estimates for.....	32.2
Policies, basic.....	30

Policy, Administration.....	31
Policy estimates, budget authority, outlays, receipts.....	81
Pollution control and treatment, <i>See</i> Environmental management.	
Postage.....	33.6
Premium or discount on investments.....	113.1(b)
Premium pay.....	32.2
President Management Agenda.....	26.2
Print materials.....	95, Exhibit 96A, 95.B
Privacy policies.....	31.8, 53.1
Program accounts.....	185
Appropriations language.....	95.7
Data requirements.....	185.10
Definition.....	185.3 (w)
Narrative statements.....	95.11
Schedule P.....	Exhibit 185A
Schedule U.....	Exhibit 185B
Program and financing schedule.....	82
Automatic generation of data.....	Exhibit 82
Reconciliation of P&F schedule transfers.....	Exhibit E5
Refunds on schedule P.....	82.3
Schedule P.....	Exhibit 185A
Program evaluation.....	51.9
Programs financed by multiple budget accounts, analysis.....	Exhibit 97
Projects, distribution of apportionments by.....	120.8
Proposals, basis for.....	30.1
Proprietary receipts.....	20.7, 79.3, 81.3
Public enterprise funds, <i>See</i> Revolving funds.	
Public works in District of Columbia.....	33.1
Public works in National Capital Area.....	33.1
Public works programs, <i>See</i> Construction programs.	
Purpose of A–11 circular.....	xvii

## R

Radio spectrum-dependent communications-electronics systems .....	33.4
Real property purchase.....	33.1
Reapportionments.....	120.1, 121.10
Of multi-year apportionments.....	120.9
Reapportionment process/requests.....	120
Reappropriations.....	20.4 (h), 82.3
Receipts:	
Account identification codes.....	79.2
Baseline estimates.....	81.46
Character classification.....	84.3 (b), 84.4
Concepts.....	20.7
Data classification.....	81.3, 81.4 (e)
Establishing new accounts.....	79.3
Estimates changes.....	51.11
Estimates of collections.....	35.5
Estimating problems (CKRCPTS).....	Exhibit E4
General policies.....	35.5
Governmental receipts.....	79.3, 81.4 (e)
Offsetting receipts.....	20.7, 81.4 (c)
Proprietary receipts.....	79.3
Receipt account data.....	81.3, 81.4(e)
Unappropriated receipts.....	86.6
Receipts, discretionary.....	80.3
Reconciliations between Treasury and PY actuals–Schedule P:	
Criteria to suppress MAX A–11 edit checks.....	82.15(c)
Obligated balances.....	82.15
Obligations.....	82.15
Outlays (net).....	82.15(b)

INDEX

Unobligated balances ..... 82.15
Records storage..... 33.6
Recoveries of prior year obligations ..... 130.8,
See also Budgetary resources.
Reductions ..... 82.3, 82.8
Reductions, sequester (baseline)..... 80.2
Refunds:
Definition ..... 20.10, 20.13(c)
Net refunds ..... 20.12(c)
On schedule P..... 82.3
On SF 132 and SF 133 ..... Appendix F—Line 3.A.1
Regulations (baseline) ..... 80.2
Reimbursable collections..... 20.12(d), 71.5, 83.5
Reimbursable obligations ..... 20.3, 82.2(c), 83.5
Reimbursable work with Federal
agencies (Economy Act)..... 20.12(g)
Reimbursements on
SF 133 ..... Appendix F—Line 3, Exhibit 130B
Relation of justification to account structure ..... 51.4, 71.3
Relocation expenses..... 83.9, 100.5
Remedial environmental projects ..... 33.6
Rental payments for space and land..... 54
Rental payments to GSA/others..... Exhibit 54
Reorganizations ..... 82.11
Reporting, account level detail ..... 71.1
Reports:
Antideficiency Act violations, information:
Required..... 145.7
Budget execution and supporting data..... 130.16
Coverage of reports on budget execution ..... 130.2(a)
Deferral 112.8, 112.18, Exhibits 112C, 112E
Federal outlays ..... 80
Rescission..... 112.8, 112.18, Exhibit 112A
Supplementary..... 112.10, 112.18, Exhibit 112E
On unvouchered expenditures ..... 140
Requirements for schedules R and K..... 81.3
Rescission proposals and deferrals ..... 112
Rescissions ..... 82.3, 82.9, 112.1
Research and development activities ..... 25, 84
Research and development character classification
codes..... Exhibit 84B
Resources, analysis of..... 51.3
Retirement costs ..... 32.2, 32.5
Revision of Treasury actuals..... 82.15(e)
Revolving funds..... 20.12(e)
Feeder accounts ..... 71.6
Financial statements for..... 86.2
Limitations on the use of ..... 82.14, 83.6
Narrative statements for ..... 95.11
Public enterprise..... 20.3, 20.11(b), 71.2,
Exhibit 121G, Exhibit 130E
Violations of the Antideficiency Act..... 145.4
Risk categories..... 185.3 (y)
Rounding, rule for..... Exhibit 95.a

S

Schedules, MAX:
Schedule A (Budget authority and outlays—
Policy)..... 79.5, 81
Schedule C (Character classification)..... 79.5, 84
Schedule D (Budget plan) ..... 79.5, 86.3
Schedule F (Financial-balance
sheet)..... 79.5, 86.2, Exhibit 86B

Schedule G (Direct
loans) ..... 79.5, 185.11, Exhibits 185D, 185J
Schedule H (Guaranteed
loans) ..... 79.5, 185.11, Exhibits 185G, 185K
Schedule J (Status of funds)..... 79.5, 86.5
Schedule K (Receipts data-baseline)..... 79.5, 81
Schedule N (Unavailable collections) ..... 79.5, 86.6
Schedule O (Object classification)..... 79.5, 83.7
Schedule P (Program and
financing)..... 79.5, 82, 82.18, Exhibit 82
Schedule Q (Personnel summary)..... 79.5, 86.1
Schedule R (General fund credit receipt
accounts)..... 81.3, 95.4
Schedule R (Receipts data—policy) ..... 79.5, 81
Schedule S (Budget authority and outlays—
baseline)..... 79.5, 81
Schedule T (Budget year appropriations
requests)..... 79.5, 86.4, Exhibit 86C
Schedule U (Loan levels and
subsidy)..... 79.5, 185.10, Exhibit 185B
Schedule V (Performance metrics)..... 79.5
Schedule W (General fund credit receipt accounts) ..... 79.5
Schedule Y (Financing accounts—baseline).... 79.5, 185.11
Scope of the estimates..... 30.2
Scorekeeping guidelines..... Appendix A
Scoring lease-purchases and leases of capital:
Assets Appendix B
Securities, Investments in Federal ..... 82.7, 122
Security policies ..... 31.8
Sequester/exempt..... 81.3
Severance pay..... 32.2
SF 132, Apportionment and reapportionment schedule ..... 121
SF 132, Format of ..... Appendix F
SF 133 (Report on Budget Execution):
Certification ..... 130.2(d)
Consistency with actuals reported to Treasury and in Budget
..... 130.16
Copies to Appropriations Committee..... 130.2(F)
Crosswalk from the SF 133 to the P and F
schedule ..... Exhibits 130K, 130M
Crosswalk from the SF 133 to Treasury Combined Statement
..... Exhibit 130J
Description of line entries ..... Appendix F
Format of ..... Appendix F
How to report ..... 130.2(c)
Reimbursable work with Federal agencies (Economy Act)
..... 20.12 (g)
Reimbursements on..... Appendix F—Line 3.A.1
Reporting on budget execution and budgetary
resources ..... 130
Transfers ..... Appendix F
Unfilled customers' orders on ..... Appendix F—Line 3.B
When to report ..... 130.2(e)
SF 224 (Statement of Transactions) ..... 130.13, 130.16
Shared revenues, outlays for ..... 84.4, Exhibit 84
Shutdown plans ..... 124
Source category code ..... 79.3
Space, rental of, See Rental payments.
Space and related requirements ..... 33.6
Space budget justification ..... 54.4, Exhibit 54
Special funds ..... 20.11 (c)
Special schedules ..... 79.5, 86
Spectrum-dependent communications-electronics
systems..... 33.4

Spending, direct	80.4
Spending, investment and non-investment	84
Spending authority from offsetting collections	20.12(a)
Spendout, <i>see</i> Outlays.	
Standard general ledger (USSGL), definition	150.5
Statement of budgetary resources	130.16
Status of funds, schedule on	86.5
Statutory references, <i>See</i> Citations, legal.	
Strategic plan	26.1, 200, 210
Strategic plans	Part 6
Consultation and outreach during preparation	212.2
External factors	210.6
Format and other content in	211.1
General goals and objectives in	210.3
Introduction to	210.1
Means and strategies in	210.4
Mission statement in	210.2
Preparation and transmittal of intern adjustments to	213
Program coverage in	211.2
Program evaluations in	210.7
Relationship to submission of annual performance plans	211.4
Time period covered by	211.3
Timing of submission of	212.1
Transmittal to Congress and OMB	212.3
Structural barriers	33.1
Subfunctional classification	81.3, Exhibit 79B
Submission of budget materials	25.5–25.6
Subsidy calculation, credit	185.5
Subsidy data, credit	185.5
Subsidy reestimates	185.3 (x), 185.6
Summary and highlight statements	51.1
Summary of budget authority and outlays	51.1, 86.8
Summary of changes, A–11	xxi
Supplemental appropriations	110,
<i>See also</i> Appropriations; Appropriations language.	
Supplemental requests, Appropriations:	
Language	Exhibit 110A
Supplemental requests, program and financing schedule	Exhibit 110C
Supplemental requests and amendments	Exhibit 110C
Supplementals, mandatory (baseline)	80.6
Supplementals (baseline)	80.2
Systems acquisition	33.6

**T**

Tax expenditures	33.5
Tax provisions	33.5
Taxes and tax expenditures	33.5
Technical requirements for FY 2004 Budget	Exhibit 79A
Telecommunications systems	33.4, 53
Time periods for apportionments	120.11
Timing of submission:	
After passback	25.4
Financial management	52.7
Information technology	53.5
Initial OMB submission	25.4
Overview	10.5
Tort claims, estimates of	33.6
Transfers:	
Concept of	20.4 (j)

In the estimates	20.4(k), 82.12, 97.7
Between Federal	
accounts	35.4, 82.3, 82.11–82.12, Exhibit 20
Obligated balances on SF 133	Appendix F—Line 13
Reconciliation of P&F schedule transfers (TRANSFERS)	Exhibit E5
Of resources	82.11
Responsibilities in reporting	35.4
SF 133	Appendix F
Unobligated balances on SF 133	Appendix F—Line 2
Transmittal codes	79.2, 79.4
Transportation and energy efficiency management, reporting requirements	25
Travel:	
Estimates for	33.6
Government	31.5
Treasury Combined Statement	130.16
Treasury debt buyback	113.1(a)
Treasury (FMS), functions, responsibilities	10.9
Trust funds:	
Definition of	20.3, 20.11(b)
Limitation on the use of	82.14, 83.6
Status of	86.5
Type	20.11(b) (d), 79.3
Types of apportionments (apportionment categories)	120.8, 120.26

**U**

Unappropriated receipts	86.6
Unavailable receipts, Schedule on	86.6
Unemployment compensation	32.8
Unexpended balance	20.3
Unexpired accounts, reporting	130
Unfilled customers' orders on SF 133	Appendix F—Line 3.B
Unit cost	30.5
Unobligated balances, <i>See</i> Balances, unobligated.	
Unpaid obligations	20.4(g), 82.4
Unrealized discounts	113.1(d)
Unvouchered expenditures, reports on	140
US Standard General Ledger (USSGL)	82.15(a)
US Standard General Ledger (USSGL), definition	150.5
User Charges	31.10
User charges (formerly user fees)	20.3, 20.7 (d), 31.10, 79.3, 81.3

**V**

Vacancies	32.2
Vehicles, motor	25.5

**W**

Warrant	20.3
Water and sewer payments to the District of Columbia	33.6
When to report, SF 133	130.2(e)
Within-grade increases	32.2
Work-out assumptions	185.3 (aa)
Work process redesign	51.5
Workforce planning and restructuring	31.11
Workload growth	30.4
Workyears, <i>See</i> FTE.	











